THE NEW
CAMBRIDGE MODERN HISTORY

VOLUME II   SECOND EDITION

THE REFORMATION
1520–1559

THE NEW CAMBRIDGE MODERN HISTORY

VOLUME II   SECOND EDITION

THE REFORMATION

1520–1559

EDITED BY

G. R. ELTON

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CONTENTS

v

INTRODUCTION TO THE SECOND EDITION

THE first edition of this volume was written between 1953 and 1956, and the more than three decades since that time have witnessed an exceptional outburst of new research and fresh interpretations. Thus it has unquestionably become desirable to offer to readers and students a revised version of the Reformation story. Perhaps the volume should have been replaced by a totally new one, but so drastic a step was neither feasible nor yet, as it turned out, necessary. The revision was undertaken in part by the original contributors: all survivors have had the opportunity to review and where necessary rewrite their chapters. Several pieces contributed by authors no longer with us have been replaced or rewritten by living scholars. For one chapter (XVIII), which the intended author's ill health had caused to be replaced by a short and sadly inadequate note from the editor's pen, an expert hand has now been found. In the course of the operation, it became apparent that the bulk of the volume has survived the accidents of ageing remarkably well: we feel able to put this moderately revised version before the reader with a good heart.

As a matter of fact – such things will happen – the passage of time and labour has helped to justify some of the interpretations which in between appeared to be called in much doubt. Thus work on Luther himself, while placing him more carefully within his medieval inheritance, has also re-emphasized his predominant concern with matters spiritual, contrary to occasional efforts to show that he was pursuing social and political ends.[1] A major break in Reformation studies looked likely to spring from the argument that it was the towns rather than the principalities that helped to advance the new churches and faiths;[2] another appeared on the horizon when it was suggested that so far from sweeping all before it the Reformation failed because it did not achieve the complete conversion of Europe and more particularly did not lead to a social revolution.[3] Such

---

1 See the writings of Heiko A. Oberman, more especially *Werden und Wertung der Reformation* (1977; Eng. trans. 1981) and *Luther: Mensch zwischen Gott und Teufel* (1982).
2 Bernd Moeller, *Reichsstadt und Reformation* (1962: Eng. trans. 1972); A. G. Dickens, *The German Nation and Martin Luther* (1974).
3 Peter Blickle, *Die Revolution von 1525* (2 edn 1981; Eng. trans. of 1st edn 1981); Hans-Christoph Rublack, *Gescheiterte Reformation: frühreformatorische und protestantische Bewegungen in süd- und westdeutschen geistlichen Residenzen* (1978).

extremer positions have by now had to be reconsidered, though they have unquestionably contributed to a much revised version of more traditional views (ch. VII). At the same time, it remains true that old notions of triumphant progress need to be further reconsidered, as important recent work on the circumference of the main story has urgently reminded us.[1] Quite possibly, the next recension of this volume, by hands not yet engaged in the work, will look very different, but the time for that has manifestly not yet come.

Two issues call for brief notice here. Despite the attention paid to cities and peasants, we lack at present a really formed understanding of the social structure, the economic setting and indeed the fortunes of the many political entities within the upheaval of the Reformation, both inside and outside the Holy Roman Empire. In these respects we feel less confident than at one time we did. The Marxist interpretation, discovering there a successful bourgeois revolution, has had to be altogether discarded, and the attempts to substitute a failed proletarian uprising have proved unconvincing: it is evident that we need to concentrate on studying the age by means of its own conceptual framework and avoid imposing anachronistic schemes upon it. Valuable indications are found in two new chapters in this volume (II.1 and XVIII), nor did two earlier contributions (chs. XVII, XIX) altogether neglect such problems. Even so, we need to learn more, for instance, about the nobility of Europe to balance our supposed better understanding of middling and lower ranks. We need to restore comprehensibility to the story of the great inflation, once so simple (Spanish silver did it all) and now so complicatedly obscure. Administrative and political structures could do with more investigation, especially as earlier analyses have been followed up by argument only for England. The English debates on these topics, though confusing to the outsider, are a sign of life in historical studies of which one would like to see more. Commendable as is the return of Reformation scholars to a preoccupation with minds, souls and beliefs, the time has come for them once again to descend to those other realities – courts and offices, farmsteads and estates.

The other problem is perhaps more marginal but needs drawing attention to. At one time and for a brief period, it looked as though the familiar central themes of Reformation history might be put into the shadows by the so-called 'radical Reformation' – supposedly more sincere, more widespread, and more forward-looking. For a while it was believed that sectarianism, regarded as a cohesive movement, really rivalled the state-supported denominations in their hold on the people of the sixteenth century. Its appeal was supposed to be spiritual (a better way

---

1 Gerald Strauss, *Luther's House of Learning: Indoctrination of the Young in the German Reformation* (1978); *Law, Resistance and the State: the Opposition to Roman Law in Reformation Germany* (1986).

to God), social (the teaching of equality between the classes and the sexes), economic (resistance to upper-class exploitation), and moral (emphasis on amity and meekness). The widespread persecution suffered by the sects could thus be supposed to be the deplorable reaction of an order which had good reason to feel threatened by this upheaval from below. However, research less inspired by political predilections or ancestor-worship has left little of this standing. On closer inspection, the sects do not appear to have swept more than a small minority even of the lower orders into their embrace; they never formed a movement because brotherly co-operation was more commonly replaced by recriminations and dislike; their internal organisation remained hierarchical and especially conceded nothing to women. The sects never got a firm foothold in any region in which either Catholicism or Protestantism was well organised, and not even the failure of the Peasants' War drove the commonalty of Germany into sectarian ranks. The 'radicals' of all kinds – Müntzerian eschatologists, Schwenckfeldian pietists, Hutterite communists, Mennonite separatists – formed a fringe phenomenon quite familiar from earlier phases of the Christian church, exploiting the extremes of popular spirituality on the one hand and available social discontents on the other, without providing for either a really significant place in the history of religion or politics. It was truly unfortunate that the sectaries had an unhappy knack of using the most incendiary language to be found in the Bible in support of their pacifist convictions, and the outburst at Münster was naturally hard to live down for people to whom the imagery of the Apocalypse made so abiding an appeal. There should be no doubt that the authorities had little need to be as frightened as they were, especially in Catholic territories, for under Protestant rule the sects survived in penny packets; that the pitiful men and women they punished and so often slaughtered provoked those fears by their exaltation is also clear.[1]

In this edition, then, many details have been altered. The Reformation in England looks today less like a revolution produced by the conscious labours of Thomas Cromwell, though I remain convinced that it constituted a major break in the history of English society, law and government as well as religion, and that Cromwell's contribution to this outcome stood central to affairs (ch. x). Developments within both the great powers of the day – Charles V's empire and royal France – have gained greater complexity and occasionally better definition, though the outlines of the story remain reasonably familiar (chs. xi, xiii). Necessary changes and corrections will be found in just about every chapter. Nevertheless, in the upshot it looks as though the major effects of this half-century identified in

---

1 E.g. G. H. Williams, *The Radical Reformation* (1962) and E. G. Rupp, *Patterns of Reform* (1968); but Claus-Peter Clasen, *Anabaptism: a Social History, 1528–1618* (1972) and James M. Stayer, *Anabaptists and the Sword* (1972); and see ch. v.

the original (ch. 1) still seem convincing. The end of the universal church and the emergence of national states took their force from the backward-looking explosion touched off by Luther, and the age witnessed the unmistakable beginnings of European ascendancy over the habitable part of the globe.

CHAPTER I

THE AGE OF THE REFORMATION

THE concept of the Reformation as a significant and selfcontained period, with characteristics and central events and even perhaps a particular ethos of its own, has had a long life as such historical categories go. Even those who disagree with the traditional interpretation of the early sixteenth century have commonly concentrated their attack on the notion that it marks the beginning of modern times. Some historians of thought trace the middle ages right through the sixteenth century and see nothing novel in yet another controversy within the church; they would put their marker at a point where predominantly religious thinking is replaced by secular (scientific) attitudes of mind. Authors of such reappraisals do not deny the special character of the years 1520–60 looked at by themselves, but others – partisans of either Catholicism or Protestantism – are willing to do even that. If one is prepared to treat the Reformation as a temporary aberration (a chapter which even after 400 years might still be closed) or as a mere return to the true way – analyses which, though historically invalid, may be denominationally necessary – one will rob the period of much of its cohesion by doubting its spiritual and intellectual content. It is also possible to argue that the Counter-Reformation and the religious wars which extended into the next century are properly part of the same story. But historians, so ready as a rule to revise the periods into which for convenience sake they divide the subject-matter of their study, have on the whole allowed the 'age of the Reformation' to survive. It must be the purpose of this chapter to discover how far this acquiescence in an established convention is justified. What is it that gives coherence and meaning to those forty years?

In the first place, the age marked the break-up of western Christendom. The point, which might appear obvious, must be stressed because reasonable doubt has been cast on the once unquestioned uniqueness of the Reformation. It is plain enough that, long before the Lutheran attack demonstrated its unreality, the so-called community of the Latin church would not have borne investigation. Diversity, sometimes reaching the extreme of heresy, was endemic in the medieval church, and from the later years of Boniface VIII (d. 1303) onwards the papacy had been progressively less able to assert a unifying control. The previous volume described the trends of the later fifteenth century towards national churches and papal weakness, towards the secularisation of church lands and the

I

ascendancy of temporal rulers.[1] These are the features which, with the addition of the religious and spiritual upheaval associated with Luther, Zwingli and Calvin, make the Reformation; and it is then to be noted that movements like those of Wycliffe and Hus came near to supplying that missing ingredient, while the inclination of the fifteenth century to mystical practices and beliefs anticipated to some degree the denial of universal authority. It is therefore sometimes held that there was nothing novel about the Reformation, nor anything definitive, and that its importance has been overrated.

Now there is truth in these arguments, and they deserve particular attention as against the view, still sometimes encountered, that down to the early sixteenth century a genuine Christian community stood embodied in a united church under the hegemony of Rome. But the revision would go too far if it supposed that the discovery of trends towards the Reformation robbed this event of its surpassing importance. The addition of the religious controversy – so fundamental and so widely supported – changed the whole character of the ancient troubles. Secularisation, princely ascendancy over the church, religious diversity, may all have been present before 1517; but thereafter they became effective, general and predominant. The character of European politics, thought, society and religion was made over by that great outburst against the powers of the papal monarchy and the claims of the priesthood, an outburst which should not be regarded as any less revolutionary because it happened to be directed against enfeebled enemies and productive of results neither envisaged nor welcomed by the leaders of the spiritual revolution. All that will hereafter be said in this volume will testify to the overwhelming impact of the Reformation. Uniqueness is properly its hallmark, just because it shared so many features with earlier troubles in the church and yet produced so different an outcome. Despite earlier movements with similar aims and inspirations, only the Protestant Reformation resulted in a lasting division within the church that had looked to Rome.

The 'age of the Reformation' should be defined as that period during which the new churches were on the offensive. It therefore begins properly (and traditionally) with the date of Luther's ninety-five theses (1517) and extends in general to the later 1550s. The third session of the Council of Trent, which began in 1559, terminated the papacy's retreat; henceforth the Church of Rome was on the attack. Not that the Counter-Reformation had waited for this moment; as the history of the attempt to call a general council for the restoration of unity made plain, the attacker from the first provoked a resistance which grew gradually more confident and vigorous (pp. 188ff.). Resistance was helped by the continued loyalty to

1 Vol. I.

the old religion of Europe's premier prince, the Emperor Charles V. The movement against the new churches gained experience and some success in preliminary suppressions, especially in Italy and Spain; the latter was to provide not only secular leadership but also the ecclesiastical influence and example of an experienced persecuting church with a well-trained body of inquisitors. The rise of new orders proved that the old church was very far from dead (ch. xii). A dress-rehearsal for the counter-attack was staged in the England of Mary Tudor. But despite all this, despite the defeat of the German Protestant princes in 1547, the real dynamic of the age lay with the Reformation. Its German phase ended in 1555 with the Peace of Augsburg; its first English phase with the Elizabethan restoration of Protestantism in 1559. The Scandinavian kings who had established the Lutheran faith died in 1559 (Christian III of Denmark) and 1560 (Gustavus I of Sweden). In France the death of Henry II (1559) marked a period too, but its effect ran oddly counter to general experience: the suppression of Protestantism was well under way until the chaos in government after 1560 gave its chance to militant and military Huguenot power. But if the Counter-Reformation met great difficulties in France, it was none the less a good deal more selfconscious and energetic under the Guises than under Henry II. The older historians had the right of it: the period of some forty years which this volume covers can justly be defined as the age of the Reformation.

In those forty years the Reformation achieved an extraordinary spread, both rapid and wide. No part of western Christendom remained altogether unaffected by it, even though Spain, and Italy to a smaller degree, managed a measure of aloofness. Elsewhere Protestantism in one of its forms grew overnight from the fervour of a few preachers into a wide and popular movement. What gave it so general an appeal remains up to a point uncertain; no one would today be willing to list 'the causes' of the Reformation. So complex a phenomenon sprang from so many things that only a general analysis of some hundred years of history comes near to answering the question. There existed a widespread dislike of the clergy, which played its part; often it went with hostility to Rome and with fervent nationalism. Greed and envy no doubt entered into it, as did policy. But that the reformers' message answered a savage spiritual thirst, which the official church (not for the first time in its history) was failing to satisfy, cannot be denied; nor can the fact that the stages reached by the Reformation itself did not always content all those who had looked to it for nourishment, so that extremist groups soon began to develop by the side of the more acceptable revolutionaries. The preachers of the Reformation did not need political support to attract followers wherever they went, however necessary such support may have proved in the consolidation which followed the first prophetic onrush. It must never be

forgotten that in its beginning and in much of its essence the Reformation was a movement of the spirit with a religious message.

On the other hand – and this should be stressed – the Reformation was not a movement for liberty, except in a very specialised sense. Protestantism in all its forms came to reject one particular authority – that of the church and the popes – but nearly all its forms substituted some other authority and avoided the thoroughgoing individualism which has at times been associated with the movement. The Bible formed the overriding authority, its interpretation carried out by attention to the text itself without the intervention of the mediating church. The results were naturally very mixed, ranging from a genuine recovery of the Christian message to all the absurdities associated with a rigorous and uncomprehending fundamentalism. In politics, the leading reformers tended to support the secular arm; though Luther was not the subservient tool of princes and enemy of the people that he is sometimes made out to be (with quotations from his writings against the peasants), he, like most Protestants, had a healthy respect for the magistrate provided he was godly. Perhaps the last liberty to be promoted by the Reformation in the sixteenth century was that of the mind. Movements of missionary passion are not given to tolerance and scepticism, nor do they provoke such reactions in those they attack; among the first victims of this new age of religious controversy were the spirit of free enquiry and the patience extended to the nonconformist. Luther could be highly obscurantist at the expense of intellectuals of Erasmus's type; the fate of the so-called Catholic reformers of Italy (ch. XI) shows how under the pressure of the great heresies toleration of reasonable diversity changed into fierce hostility; Thomas More developed from the speculative humanist of *Utopia* (1516) into the persecuting lord chancellor of 1530.

The age was passionate, partisan and narrow. In trying to assess its achievements fairly it does not help that the passions of a time of conflict tend to baffle understanding when the content of the conflict has gone. It is sometimes argued that the twentieth century, familiar with ideological struggles and persecution, should – and does – comprehend the sixteenth century from a fullness of knowledge. It is, however, fatal to overlook the differences between secular ideologies and transcendental religion, concentrating only on their likenesses; the result (seen too often) is to read the twentieth century into the sixteenth. In some ways the Reformation is more remote from the present day than the century or so that had preceded it. The fundamental intellectual attitude of the Reformation involved the doctrine of a decline from an ideal in the past and a devoted attachment to theology and ecclesiology at the expense of other studies; neither of these is a characteristic element in western thought after 1700.

Admittedly it will be well to remember that besides the stream directly issuing from the Reformation there flowed a sizeable river of writings concerned with secular things and increasingly 'scientific' in its methods of analysis and interpretation. As one might expect, there are both traces of established modes of thinking and faint hints of great changes to come. Substantially, however, the Reformation was conservative – even backward looking – in thought: since it was avowedly intent on restoring a lost condition, it could hardly be anything else.

The desire for spiritual nourishment was great in many parts of Europe, and movements of thought which gave intellectual content to what in so many ways was an inchoate search for God have their own dignity. Neither of these, however, comes first in explaining why the Reformation took root here and vanished there – why, in fact, this complex of anti-papal 'heresies' led to a permanent division within the church that had looked to Rome. This particular place is occupied by politics and the play of secular ambitions. In short, the Reformation maintained itself wherever the lay power (prince or magistrates) favoured it; it could not survive where the authorities decided to suppress it. Scandinavia, the German principalities, Geneva, in its own peculiar way also England, demonstrate the first; Spain, Italy, the Habsburg lands in the east, and also (though not as yet conclusively) France, the second. The famous phrase behind the settlement of 1555 – *cuius regio eius religio* – was a practical commonplace long before anyone put it into words. For this was the age of uniformity, an age which held at all times and everywhere that one political unit could not comprehend within itself two forms of belief or worship.

The tenet rested on simple fact: as long as membership of a secular polity involved membership of an ecclesiastical organisation, religious dissent stood equal to political disaffection and even treason. Hence governments enforced uniformity, and hence the religion of the ruler was that of his country. England provided the extreme example of this doctrine in action, with its rapid official switches from Henrician Catholicism without the pope, through Edwardian Protestantism on the Swiss model and Marian papalism, to Elizabethan Protestantism of a more specifically English brand. But other countries fared similarly. Nor need this cause distress or annoyed disbelief. Princes and governments, no more than the governed, do not act from unmixed motives, and to ignore the spiritual factor in the conversion of at least some princes is as false as to see nothing but purity in the desires of the populace. The Reformation was successful beyond the dreams of earlier, potentially similar, movements not so much because (as the phrase goes) the time was ripe for it, but rather because it found favour with the secular arm. Desire for church lands, resistance to Imperial and papal claims, the ambition to create self-

contained and independent states, all played their part in this, but so quite often did a genuine attachment to the teachings of the reformers.

There was, however, one aspect of the Reformation which owed nothing to princes and little to the great reformers, a truly popular and very widespread movement to which it became customary to attach the name of Anabaptism (ch. v). The so-called Anabaptists turn up in many places and guises, a convenient term covering a motley collection of beliefs and behaviour which range from mad millenarianism to pietism, from the reckless use of force to pacifism, from the extremes of personal egotism to humble piety and devotion. All these men and women have one thing in common: they do not fit in with any of the established religions and thus offend the principle of uniformity wherever they go. But the persecution which they so regularly encountered arose from yet another shared quality: the movement spread among the lower orders. It contained strong elements of social protest and (or so it was thought) danger of revolution. The terror of Münster (pp. 136–7) remained a standing warning to governments, as did the *Bundschuh* uprising of the German peasants in 1524–5 in which religion joined with economic grievance. We shall not go far wrong if we see in the protean spread of Anabaptist and similar doctrines a sign of an age-old, usually obscure, social antagonism to the powers that be, an antagonism to which the Reformation, by producing an upheaval in the higher reaches of the social order, gave a chance of coming into the open. The fact that Anabaptism drew its following from the unprivileged is significant enough.

One can understand the authorities' reaction. This was an age of inflation and social unrest, expressing itself in riots and risings everywhere – especially in Germany in the 1520s and in England between 1536 and 1558. Even those who accepted the Reformation did not as a rule wish to promote social revolution; there was nothing democratic about the leaders of reform, nor would it have been particularly sensible if there had been. Anabaptism suffered terrible things, but it would be to misunderstand the movement if one were to deny that even among its moderate exponents its social implications were revolutionary. The repression which it provoked did not score anything like a complete success; not only did Anabaptist communities and their descendants survive in places, but the unrest which they represented came out later in other ways. The movement gives a glimpse beneath the usual surface of recorded history; if the manifestations were relatively few and scattered, the underlying body of hatreds and dissatisfactions may reasonably be guessed at as enormous. The repressive governments knew what they were fighting.

The complex of movements which we call the Reformation provides one unifying factor in the period under review; another, equally obvious,

appears in the reign of Charles V. The emperor ascended the throne of
Spain a year before Luther's first public appearance as a danger to the
papal government of the church; he abdicated his many dominions shortly
after the Peace of Augsburg. His empire (ch. XIII) was the last attempt at
something like universal secular rule in the medieval manner; for,
'modern' as many parts of his territories were in their organisation and
attitude, Charles himself looked upon his position in something of the
spirit of Charlemagne – a Charlemagne whose stature is less manifestly
heroic and whose dynastic preoccupations stand out rather more clearly.
But the comparison is not totally absurd, for the virtue and ability of this
greatest of the Habsburgs are becoming increasingly evident; nor is it
unhistorical, because it describes a real element in Charles's own thinking.
If Germany and the Imperial title defeated him, it is also worth notice that
he preserved the ostensible existence of that massive anachronism at a
critical time. If he was out of date in regarding himself as the champion of
the church, it must yet be conceded that his championship (readily
reconciled with a high-handed attitude to popes as such) prevented the
total lapse of central Europe to Protestantism and in Spain and elsewhere
prepared for the revival of Roman Catholicism. Charles's reign was by no
means all failure. He failed in his chief ambitions because they were
extravagant: there was no prospect of making a reality out of those
shadows of power and purpose which clung to the title of Holy Roman
Emperor. But he gave some coherence to his vast conglomerate of lands
and peoples; he assisted the economic heyday of his Burgundian home-
land; he saved the papacy; and if he was the last of the medieval emperors,
he was also the first king of Spain's golden age.

As is well enough known, Charles's larger plans for the unity of
Christendom were wrecked by the existence and growing strength of the
secular national state and its counterpart in the German principalities.
The consolidation of the territorial states of western Europe, described in
the previous volume,[1] continued energetically in this period (ch. XVII).
Indeed, at first sight the phenomenon appears to be universal in Europe.
One finds it spreading to Scandinavia, where the Reformation provided
Danish and Swedish kings with the means of establishing strong rule (ch.
VI); even in Russia, Ivan III and Ivan IV seem almost to duplicate the
work of England's Henry VII and Henry VIII, of France's Louis XI and
Francis I (ch. XXII). The real meaning of these trends is, however, less
easily assessed. In the western kingdoms monarchy might look supreme,
but it was very far from absolute. Even in France, where autocracy was
most nearly achieved, both theory and practice preserved strong traces of
the internal diversity of the past and limited kings by the maintenance of

1 For a summary, cf. vol. I.

'customary' rights; the destruction of 'liberties' which could always become dangerous to centralised monarchy had barely begun. The rise of Calvinism in the next generation released ancient disruptive forces of an essentially local and anti-monarchical hue. But at least kings of France could tax and legislate at will; no such powers belonged to those of Spain and England. Spain was as yet an alliance of kingdoms with differing constitutions, and although Castile, progressively subjected to more stringent monarchical control, grew more and more dominant, the time of genuine autocratic reorganisation came only with Philip II. England, because of her anciently strong monarchy and by the accident of Henry VIII's quarrel with Rome, provided the tidiest example of a modernised and consolidated monarchy; but England also deliberately rejected autocracy and by making the monarchy rest on the sovereignty of the king in Parliament preserved and adapted inherited constitutionalism in a new era. Scotland had to wait for Knox before drawing a line under its messy medieval politics. In truth, these western monarchies were less autocratic and selfconsciously innovatory than is commonly supposed. By comparison with the despotisms of the East, of which Turkey provided an example which western statesmen sometimes regarded with envy, their kings lacked power, and they were as yet a long way from the absolutism of the seventeenth century. Everywhere there survived remnants of past separatism and constitutional rights, asserting themselves at intervals; but only in England, where the Crown achieved a mutually advantageous alliance with the representative institution of Parliament, was autocracy rejected in principle and the way prepared for a formally limited monarchy.

If the consolidation of territorial monarchy even in the West was less complete than appearances suggest, the position farther east is more uncertain still. The fringe of containing kingdoms on Germany's eastern border – Poland, Bohemia, Hungary – was by the early sixteenth century in the hands of one dynasty, the Polish Jagiellons. Constitutionally they were characterised at this time by the weakness of the monarchy, the ascendancy of the nobility which dominated the Diets, and the absence of any effective urban or middle-class element. In the period under review the situation changed in some respects (ch. XIX). By 1560 Bohemia and such parts of Hungary as were not Turkish had fallen to the Habsburgs, and whatever else may be true of that family it knew how to look after its own. The double impact of the Reformation and the Turks assisted King Ferdinand I in his shrewd and steady, if cautious, policy of consolidation. He established an alliance with the Catholic church for which there was little precedent in the history of those countries, while the needs of war helped the Crown as the source of military strength. Ferdinand hoped to create a single political unit out of his territories, and it is very interesting to note that he recognised how useful parliamentary institutions could be

to a centralising monarchy. But his project of a single Diet for the two kingdoms came to nothing, in part because he lacked the material from which to construct a lower house and in part because the particularist traditions of the nobility were too strong: the Bohemian aristocracy tended to be heretical as well. While his advance towards monarchical authority was therefore slow and limited, it is also true that he gave to Bohemia and Hungary the beginnings of a strong government whose lack was to be so evident in the deplorable history of Poland during the next 200 years.

However, in the eastern kingdoms the increase of monarchy, though it may be traced, did not occupy pride of place. Not only was the West very much more advanced in economic maturity, bureaucratic organisation, settled government and cultural achievement; at a time when the West was improving all these things they tended to get worse in the East. As serfdom and territorial feudalism were vanishing in the West, the great plains of the East – and this includes Germany east of the Elbe – witnessed the gradual destruction of a free peasantry and the creation of vast estates – *latifundia* – with a quasi-independent jurisdiction and powers. The growth of this notorious system of *Gutsherrschaft* went a long way to balance the apparent increase in monarchical power, even in Bohemia and Hungary where kings mattered more than in Poland or Lithuania. Prussian autocracy was ultimately to establish itself by destroying the political power of this landed nobility, but especially in the lands of the Habsburg monarchy traces of the great social upheaval of the sixteenth century could be seen as late as 1918. The reasons for a development so contrary to what was happening in the West were partly economic: the opening of the eastern grain-lands brought vast profits to a class of landed lords with great estates and a safe supply of cheap labour. Partly, however, the cause must be looked for in the fact that these territories had once again become marches against an alien foe. The pressure from the Turks, to which that of Russia was later added, drew a frontier down the eastern edge of this eastern fringe which was to last for centuries. The frontier produced its obligatory phenomenon of territorially based marcher lords. Distance from the centre, the needs of defence, the enforcement of serfdom and pride of blood quickly established the semi-independence of these very wealthy men. The wonder is that monarchy maintained itself at all even in the Habsburg territories. It did so by military conquest in Bohemia (1618–20) and by alliance with the nobility in Hungary; these facts gave it a special character, but it was nevertheless selfconsciously and bureaucratically monarchical.

In theory, at least, Germany should have been another territorial unit working its way towards a proper consolidation and efficient statehood (ch. XVIII). But the German monarchy had for long been so weak that it

would have had to start from scratch, a task with which none of its contemporaries were confronted. The weakness resulted in great part from the Imperial dignity regularly associated with German kingship, in part from its elective nature, in part from the personal inadequacies of past holders, but mostly from the centrifugal ambitions and policies of the German princes. Charles V tried hard to overcome all these difficulties, but in fact he succeeded only in keeping alive the Imperial title and pretence. When he abdicated, the German kingdom had ceased to exist, even though the titles of king and emperor survived as shadows of what had been. The history of Germany from his day to that of Napoleon, or even Bismarck, is that of independent states vaguely held together by a common language and a common past, but rarely by common policy. The 1648 Treaty of Westphalia merely confirmed what Charles V's reign had already decided. The German principalities themselves fitted the general pattern of the age well enough, providing centralised consolidation on the basis of monarchical government and increased bureaucracy. As Italy – that other country to suffer the consequences of the medieval Empire – had gone in the previous 200 years, so Germany went now. Both became, in the famous phrase, geographical expressions. And as the component parts of Italy had produced strong rulers at the heads of reformed political structures, so the German princes tightened their hold on their lands. In Italy itself, this period saw the end of independence for even the particular rulers and the decline of France; the peninsula became in effect a collection of Spanish satrapies. Venice stood out, but her day was over; Genoa prospered, but accepted Spain. The papacy came to acknowledge that Borgia, della Rovere and Medici ambitions to turn the dominions of St Peter into a powerful political unit had failed, and returned to its more appropriate tasks within the church. However, for the time at least, it could not in consequence escape Spain's dominance.

If princely independence in Germany was one obstacle which made nonsense of Charles V's imperial dreams, the international situation provided another in the prolonged struggle between Habsburg and Valois (ch. XIV). This dynastic and national conflict tended to involve most of Europe. Its battlegrounds were first Italy and then the lower Rhine – the two cultural centres of the later middle ages – which in consequence yielded pride of place to more favoured regions. England played a part of sorts which in the 1520s looked important because Wolsey's jugglery created the illusion of an independent choice between the combatants. In reality English policy could never get free of the strong trade-links between London and Antwerp which, together with the ancient hostility to France, kept the country essentially imperial (or rather, Spanish) in its

sympathies, even after the divorce and the break with Rome had turned Charles V into an enemy. France, on her knees by 1528, restored the balance by allying not only with the Protestants of Germany but also with the Turk. It is easy to mock at these friendships of the Most Christian King, less easy to see how he could otherwise have held off the power of Charles V. Nevertheless, the consequences of these unscrupulous doings were serious. Not only did they materially assist the survival of German Protestantism and the Turkish domination of the Mediterranean (which in turn completed the decline of Italy), but they provoked important questions concerning the principles of international relations and law.

As was pointed out in the previous volume, the essence of international relations lay at this time in the relations of individuals and dynasties. Marriages and blood-relationships determined the alignments of states and nations. Charles V's empire was in itself the greatest triumph ever scored by that principle. But while wars thus assumed something of the virulence of family quarrels, they also took place against the background of family unity – the unity of a far-flung and insecure family still vaguely aware of its common heritage. That heritage was the old notion of united Christendom doing battle with the Infidel behind its two leaders, pope and emperor. The notion had never had any practical reality, and even as a pretty theory it had long been put among the lumber of half-conscious memories. It was the irony of this age that it should have seen even the memory destroyed at the very moment when once again an emperor showed signs of taking it seriously. Charles V did believe in his imperial mission. The fight with Protestantism was to him more than a struggle for dynastic ascendancy against disruption; it was a battle for the unity of Catholic Europe. The unity had long ceased to exist – if ever it had existed – and the centre of Charles's physical power, Spain, was the Catholic country least inclined to grant anything to the papacy; but the emperor still envisaged his task in this grandiose, respectable and impossible light. Of all the many politicians who talked about the Turkish danger and vaguely appealed to Christendom to unite against it, he was the only one willing to translate words into action. Naturally, it may be said that he was also the only one likely to profit by such united action, but this is not altogether true – all Europe would have done well to push the Turk back into Asia – nor does it diminish the element of genuine idealism in Charles's attitude.

However, the days of his ascendancy saw the end of the dream. His Imperial title and authority, so far from being an asset, proved an obstacle to the achievement of his more realistic ambitions. Instead of uniting Europe behind himself, he witnessed and in part caused the final disintegration of Germany and maintained a state of almost constant war among

the powers. Worst of all, Francis I, by calling in the sultan to assist him, proved the utter emptiness of all that talk of crusades and Christendom. International politics had long (perhaps always) been at heart a matter of power and ambition; now their true character was revealed to the naked eye. But myths have a power to bind, and the myth of Christian unity had exercised a restraining influence which now vanished for good. The assertion of the national state, the rise of national armies, ended the legends of Christendom and chivalry. Wild and horrible as medieval conflicts often were, they took place against a background of common and accepted conventions. Heralds and envoys were protected, safe conducts respected, the rules (odd rules at times) of chivalry observed in the taking of towns and ransoming of prisoners. Of course, exceptions occurred, but traditional opinion was for instance sincerely shocked by the ruthlessness of the Swiss armies, their disregard for prisoners and wounded, their lack of respect for the chivalric conventions. By the middle of the sixteenth century those who observed the rules earned indulgent smiles or contempt: Don Quixote would not have been a figure of fun a hundred years earlier. The point is not whether all these rules and conventions were observed either always, or scrupulously, or from conviction; it is that there existed a set of commonly accepted ideas, vague in parts, on the relations between political communities in peace and war which during the sixteenth century finally lost its hold in European politics.

Its disappearance left a gap which had to be filled. The very fact that such totally and admittedly anachronistic practices as the delivery of defiances by heralds still continued shows that new conventions about the way to do these things were needed. Out of this need there ultimately grew an accepted body of international law, a law, that is, governing the relations between nations (or sovereign states). The situation itself was new inasmuch as this law was to operate among sovereign and independent polities: it had and has no sanctions. Significantly, the practice of referring disputes to the arbitration of some recognised third party – a superior or an impartial authority – which had been common enough in the middle ages, declined now that dealings were between parties which recognised no superior and trusted to no one's impartiality. Direct negotiations or ultimately war were the only ways in which sovereign states could deal with each other. Both methods received attention and elaboration, in practice and in law.

In the history of diplomacy this is the period when the methods worked out on the small stage of Renaissance Italy were extended to at least the western and southern parts of Europe.[1] All the greater powers began to

---

1 The subject is discussed and admirably summarised in G. Mattingly, *Renaissance Diplomacy* (1955).

exchange resident ambassadors, and although special embassies continued to travel into foreign parts, foreign policy came to rely more and more on the regular contact of a resident representative with the statesmen of the monarch to whom he was accredited and on his equally regular despatches. To the familiar figures of Venetian, Milanese and Florentine 'orators' there were now added French, Imperial and English ambassadors. Before the period was out, some of these men had done important work and given some lustre to what had begun as a subordinate and little-regarded office. The significance of the special embassy grew increasingly more formal, despite the often exalted standing of its leaders. The outlines of modern diplomatic organisation are clearly visible. The existence of residents raised problems of law, especially of immunity. Here the early sixteenth century did not advance very far. The sanctity of an ambassador's person was recognised in theory, though there was a feeling that it operated only in the country to which he was accredited. Little respect, however, was as yet accorded to the protection of a diplomatic bag: in 1529 Wolsey even searched the papers of his fellow cardinal Campeggio before allowing him to leave the country. Houses occupied by foreign embassies enjoyed a certain amount of freedom from interference, for reasons of prudence and mutual advantage rather than because anyone accepted a principle of extra-territoriality. The rights of an ambassador's suite caused a great deal of trouble because clashes between his servants and the natives were common enough; this issue was immensely complicated by the existence of residents. All these points received discussion and consideration: the problems inherent in the new practice were beginning to be recognised. Mutual necessity and common sense established some degree of established custom long before it came to be embodied in the formal rules of international law.

War was an older problem, and one which had always had the knack of escaping any rules or conventions imposed upon it. In this period it grew in a sense more 'serious', less the personal concern of professionals who knew the rules and more the political preoccupation of great powers. It may be that the Habsburg–Valois conflict of 1520–59 merely enlarged the scale of the Franco-Spanish wars in Italy between 1494 and 1516; but the enlargement was such that it profoundly affected the place of war in the life of society (ch. xx). Growing expenses – *pecunia nervus belli* was one of the favourite tags of the day – were driving the lesser practitioners out of business; even Henry VIII, technically the head of a wealthy nation, found himself near bankruptcy when he engaged in war in the 1540s. As for that great potentate, the Emperor Charles V, he was always in financial difficulties, living off irredeemable loans and forced, in his extremity in 1552, to call piteously for help to Anton Fugger. There was much progress in military science, in equipment, in siege-craft and fortifications, in naval

practice; but the most noticeable thing about warfare in this period was the readiness of princes to engage in it who could not, in the simplest sense, afford it. The most formidable army remained that of the sultan, but even the great Sulaimān found that the technical resources of the age set a tight limit to wars of conquest (pp. 574–6).

Legal thought about war was at this time pretty well confined to the problem of the just war. No one seems to have paid much attention to such questions as the rights (if any) of prisoners, the duty of a commander to the countryside through which he passed, and the like. No one talked of humanising war. In part this was no doubt because the old rules concerning quarter or the surrender of a town still obtained at least lip-service, and in fact the wars of the period do not appear unduly marked by atrocities. Even the civilian population suffered little compared with what was to happen in the next century. The worst outrages, such as the sack of Rome in 1527, were always the work of mutineers, and the mutinies were always caused by lack of pay. A paid army – an unusual thing – was a contented army and apparently willing, within limits, to obey orders.

If the surviving body of medieval conventions explains the lack of interest shown in devising rules for conduct under arms – of regulations within armies, which are of course another matter, there were plenty – the attention lavished on the problem of just and unjust wars was also inherited from an earlier age. Oddly enough, it was not war in Europe which produced the most important treatise. The lectures, later published, which Francisco de Vitoria gave in the 1530s at the university of Salamanca were provoked by Spain's conquest of the Indies and the problem whether wars against heathens were invariably just or not. Vitoria applied common standards of justice to all wars, explicitly condemned much that had been done in America, and asserted that an unjust war – in essence one fought for purely selfish ends – should be resisted by the inhabitants of the guilty country and punished by the common action of (one supposes) Christendom. Of course, this was on the one hand an impracticable notion and on the other justified the many hypocritical leagues against one power or more in which the age abounded. More interesting in the context are Vitoria's striking high-mindedness and freedom from nationalist prejudice, as well as his knowledge of American conditions; more significant is the barrenness of the moral approach to international law. It had tradition and respectabi-lity, but it served no practical purpose. The real content of such rules as states observed in their dealings with each other will rather be found in the decisions of maritime and mercantile courts, in the treaties of the day, and in the dynastic arrangements often resembling purely private settlements of property which really determined the fates of nations. However, it

appears that the work has not yet been done which would interpret the law embodied in these highly technical documents.

The years 1520–60 thus form an unusually well-defined period. The great revolution in religion and the church, the rule of the last emperor who attempted to realise the universal claims of his title – these with their by-products in thought and learning, in constitutional changes and legal revision, in national and international affairs, give the period its unmistakable unity. But it may be said that the criteria so far used look markedly old fashioned. Some leading opinion today no longer regards politics in church and state as the historian's main concern. The prevalent passion of our day is for social history – the history, as it has been defined, of man (and woman) in society – which in practice involves a concentration on economic, social and cultural factors. Changes in political and institutional structure are held to be less significant than the ways in which people earned their living, habitually thought, or adjusted themselves in the stratifications of society. These are indeed profound questions; one would not wish to doubt their relevance, even though one may wonder whether they really merit primacy in the study of the past. At any rate, they must be considered. Is there anything in the economic and social developments of those years which might be specifically ascribed to the 'age of the Reformation'? And further, does such knowledge as we possess of the thought and attitude of the age enable us to reconstruct and describe that elusive concept, its mental climate?

Economics and society undergo their changes, but only rarely do these happen so rapidly that any half-century can claim a specific position with relation to them. Time and again, what were regarded as characteristic developments of some age have turned out to be fully apparent at a much earlier period; few weapons of analysis have proved more destructive of traditional categories than research into the realities of society. Up to a point, this is also true of the Reformation period. If one takes a longer view, it becomes apparent that the 200 years after the middle of the fifteenth century witnessed, for instance, important changes in agrarian practice and society: in the west from predominantly subsistence farming to predominantly capitalist farming, and in the east from a free peasant community to an era of *latifundia* and serfdom (ch. II, 1). Social changes include the full assertion of the English gentry, at the expense of the strata above and below them, if one may be permitted so to summarise a problem which has caused much debate. They include the increasing power of the nobility of office (*de la robe*) in France, the decline of an independent bourgeoisie in Germany and Italy, as well as the increasing strength of this element in northern Burgundy, in Holland and Zeeland.

The Reformation

They include the growing importance of the greater nobility and the decline of the lesser in central and eastern Europe, and the decline of all elements independent of the monarchy in Spain. But these phenomena, highly significant as they are, cannot be expected to accommodate themselves to the historical contours of a couple of generations. As it is, the period of the Reformation played a vital enough part in some of these trends. The Reformation produced a great movement in the land market, most strikingly in England where the dissolution of the monasteries conveyed something like one-fifth of the nation's landed income to new hands, but also in those areas of Germany and Scandinavia where Reformation meant secularisation of land. The Turkish threat and the decline of imperial power had much to do with the social developments in eastern Europe. The consolidation of monarchy had social effects wherever it made itself felt.[1]

In the history of trade and industry, too, this period is simply part of a story which extends in both directions without clear termini, a story of major trade-routes shifting to the sea-lanes and of new commercial centres gradually replacing the traditional marts of medieval Europe. The full effects of new markets and new commodities were not to be felt till later, though an interesting but as yet tentative expansion of industrial enterprise (the refining of sugar, processing of tobacco, new draperies in Flanders and England, advances – partly demanded by war – in the metal industries) can be discerned here and there before the middle of the century. One particular phenomenon, the rise and fall of Antwerp as Europe's foremost commercial centre (rivalled in the south by Lyons, the centre of Mediterranean finance), falls with some neatness into the age of the Reformation (ch. II, 2). It is also worth notice that this was the last age before the nineteenth century during which the machinations of great international financiers independent of territorial governments played a major part in affairs: the age of the Fuggers has much in common with the age of the Rothschilds, but little with what came between.[2] This is no accident. Two things destroyed the world of those great German and Italian families. One was the unreliability of princely finances which led to the failure or very serious decline of all the great houses and the growing development, especially in France, England and the Netherlands, of native financial resources. The other was the great inflation which increased the needs of government to a point where their demands became impossible to satisfy except by increased taxation. The price-rise of the

---

1 No space can naturally be found within the framework of a general history for a full discussion of these economic and social changes. In any case, these matters have been dealt with in some detail in the appropriate sections of the *Cambridge Economic History*.

2 The most comprehensive account is still to be found in R. Ehrenberg, *Das Zeitalter der Fugger* (1896; Engl. trans. 1928).

century has already been discussed;[1] here it will be enough to point out that its most serious and general manifestations came only after 1560 when the influx of American specie had made itself properly felt. England provides an exception: its worst difficulties, with prices doubling within five years, occurred in the years 1546–51 and were the direct result of government policy – expensive war financed by ruinous debasement. On the whole it is clear that these economic developments, vital as they are to an understanding of the period, do not give it any special character. Agrarian change, trading developments and inflation stretch beyond it at both ends, as indeed one would expect them to do; the period of the Reformation has its particular significance in these larger phenomena, but it is not easily to be defined in terms of them.

Touching the problem of men's minds – of 'mental climate' – one thing stands out: there was a great revival in the discussion of theological questions. The Reformation saw to that. Since this was an age of controversy, and since printing had by now got established, it was also an age of copious pamphleteering. If only the scale was new, scale matters when the difference becomes so pronounced. Luther might have been only another Wycliffe – admittedly an unlikely supposition for many reasons – if the printing-press had not given him the chance of appealing to favourable sentiments far and wide; Henry VIII would almost certainly have encountered greater difficulties in his church policy if he had not been able to employ official propaganda to good purpose; both Reformation and Counter-Reformation owed much to the spread of books. But overwhelming concern with theology did not kill writing on other topics (ch. xv, 1), and there remained traces of the earlier, more secular humanism in unexpected places. The 'new learning' provided many weapons in the armoury of anti-papal and anti-clerical writers, from Erasmus's edition of the New Testament, through the part played by the German (and later other) universities in the training of reformers, to the historical arguments (sounder than is commonly admitted) of Thomas Cromwell's propagandists. Science made some strides, though it continued to suffer from the attention of humanism with its predilection for finding things in the classical world (ch. xv, 2). The secular, often vernacular, writing of the period is of greater interest than writings on the church (the few great men always excepted): its value often endures while the ephemeral controversies are only too likely to bore and repel. But to concentrate on the non-theological output, legitimate as this is in a discussion of literature, is to run the danger of forgetting what it was that most engaged the age itself.

At first glance these forty or so years seem to lack the attraction of great

1 Vol. I.

intellects, fine writers, artists of the first rank. There are indeed many important and some pleasing writings in many European languages, but, with all respect to their other qualities, men like More, Calvin, Bucer or Loyola cannot be rated in the first flight of literary art. There is a gap in the history of political theory between Machiavelli and Bodin, though some interesting second-rank stuff came from the pens of men like Cujas and Budé in France or Starkey and Ponet in England. There is even something of a break in the history of poetry between the Renaissance in Italy and its consequences in France and England (Ronsard and Shakespeare must be relinquished to another volume) and in that of art between Michelangelo and Velásquez. The fact that the leading intellects of the period concentrated on religious matters has allowed them to be classified in another category, and rightly so; though it ought to be mentioned that Luther had a great hand in shaping the German language, that Cranmer's liturgy reveals poetic gifts of a high order, that the English pamphleteers helped their language to gain in flexibility and power,[1] that the northern vernaculars grew to adulthood in the hands of the reformers, and that altogether a concentration on theology and religion was nowhere necessarily divorced from considerations of literature. But an age whose most distinctive output consists of Protestant hymns is not primarily one of artistic distinction, and the absence of vital happenings in the field of culture must justify the omission of chapters on art and poetry. Such things as can be said about them are better said in dealing with the greater periods that came before and after.

Everything allowed for, it therefore remains reasonable to think of this age as one in which the graces of life and learning found it hard to survive among the battles into which the learned themselves rushed rather than were drawn. The revival of religious fervour worked contrary not only to tolerance but also to intellectual advance; Luther's huge awareness of the grace of God left little room for Erasmus's faith in human reason. As has already been pointed out, this goes counter to the theory that we ought to date the beginning of modern times from the first half of the sixteenth century. One must agree that the search for antecedents and straight lines of development is here quite as misplaced as usual, but it is just worth notice that one of the less obvious interests of the age lay in a field which later became very important, the study of history. The treatment which French civilians meted out to the Roman law may fairly be regarded as a striking early instance of the historical method.[2] Since the growth of a genuinely historical method is quite as significant of modern thought as science itself, it may be held that despite the 'medievalism' of its science

1 Compare, for instance, the sermons of Hugh Latimer with the devotional or controversial writings of Thomas More.
2 Cf. D. R. Kelley, *Foundations of Modern Historical Scholarship* (1970).

this period has unsuspected affinities with the mental attitudes of later times and may yet be thought of once again as a seminal age of thought, a place at present occupied by the seventeenth century. But frankly these speculations, like all speculations about ancestry in thought, are intellectual games rather than historical investigation, and dangerous games at that, because they always tend to single out in a period things that became significant in later and distant ages at the expense of the things that mattered at the time.

But can we discover a formula to describe what did matter at the time? Is it safe to think of this period under any particular heading? The fate suffered by this 'age of faith' or that 'age of reason' should warn us that even the Reformation may have been insufficiently simple to accommodate itself to the (often prejudiced) straitjackets we like to put on it. Most people will agree that because it was, among other things, a spiritual and moral upheaval of formidable proportions, it put a stamp upon the mentality of the age. But what the stamp was, and whether a single one will do, is another matter altogether in a field of problems where all answers tend to be vague and unsatisfactory at best, plainly insufficient and misleading at worst. Is 'mental climate' to be judged from the writings of the day? They may be all we have, but surely they leave out a lot – among other things, most of the people then alive. Is it to be described in terms of social conventions? Though these may have varied less from country to country than they do today, they varied so much more among the social strata that generalisation becomes very unsafe. Nor, as a matter of fact, has anything like enough work yet been done to give reality to the concept.

Take Europe's governing classes alone.[1] It would be fair to say that two highly intricate series of relationships governed their behaviour, and that neither of them has as yet been studied sufficiently to justify general statements about 'mental climate'. One was anchored in connection by blood, in the consequences of dynastic marriage at all levels. The other derived from a system of mutual obligations and favours which would seem to have done more to determine a man's action or inaction than loyalty, plain duty or plain self-interest. Much of the real powers and obligations, dependence and independence, prejudices and privileges of those who really mattered can never be discovered from a calculation of manorial possessions or an analysis of legal rights. The nobility and gentry adapted a quasi-feudal attitude to the realities of a far from feudal age,

---

1 One problem which has received some attention is that of the Christian gentleman – the ideal of old-fashioned Christian chivalry combined with Renaissance virtue – which is found here and there in the pages of Castiglione's *Courtier*, Thomas Elyot's *Boke of the Governour* (1531), etc. For this cf. F. Caspari, *Humanism and the Social Order in Tudor England* (1954).

substituting for the duty of service and the right to protection a system of doing services in the justified expectation of suitable recompense from the princely bounty. An important book, as yet unwritten, would investigate the part played in holding together the social and administrative structures of western Europe by the relationship between master and man, by the bestowal of gifts and rewards, by the possession of patronage and the search for it.[1] At the same time, signs have occasionally been found, especially among the French and Spanish bureaucracies, of a 'civil-service' attitude to office as no longer a piece of property bought or bestowed by grace, but a place of work owing duty to an impersonal state and in turn providing a living for him who fulfilled his duties well.

None of this, of course, applied below the level of the political nation – among peasants, artisans, small traders – the bulk of the people. Even the greater merchants had different conventions of their own. Concentration on their particular notions has before this led historians to see in this age something peculiarly modern, a phenomenon described as 'the rise of capitalism'. There is perhaps no need to enter once more upon that hoary topic: 'capitalist' attitudes, however defined for the purpose, are found long before the sixteenth century and were far from clear cut even among the more obvious capitalists of that age. But in such high and low variety, and where so little sorting has yet been done, who shall say what 'people' thought about the world in which they lived or what their significant attitudes were? Guesses are justified and some sound more convincing than others; every historian of the period has in him an impalpable yardstick for deciding what is and what is not 'right' for the age. But that does not mean that he can describe its 'mental climate'. Perhaps the present writer had better confess his distrust of the whole concept and leave it at that.

The attraction of the sweeping and enlightening generalisation, however dangerous, is legitimate; what distinguishes the historian from the collector of historical facts is generalisation – preferably successful generalisation. In the larger stretches of history in which it is set the age of the Reformation played its part. Sometimes it stimulated existing trends, sometimes it diverted them, sometimes – it may be – it dammed them up

1 When the Estates of Holland complained to their governor, the count of Hooghstraeten, that he was not doing enough to represent their interest at court, he replied: 'If anyone does me a favour up to here' (and he pointed to his wrist) 'I shall do him a favour up to here' (pointing to his elbow); 'but', he added, 'if anyone does me so much disfavour I shall do the same to him.' I owe this story, which so ingenuously illustrates accepted notions, to H. Koenigsberger who had to omit it from ch. XIII for lack of space but hoped that I should find room for it. He in turn wishes to record his thanks to P. A. Meilink of The Hague, for enabling him to see a transcript by E. van Bienna (ii, fos. 309f.) in the Amsterdam Stadsarchief.

for ever or for a time. Side by side, a revival of religion and the secularisation of society gained momentum. The political history of central Europe in particular took a turning that, for all the earlier indications of decay in Germany, was yet new. Signs of humanism and tolerance, which had made their appearance, went underground. These may be vague statements, but the time has not yet come for precision, the more so because older traditional convictions are in process of dissolution. Exactly what place we assign to the period in the stream of history remains after all a matter of personal judgment. The present writer feels that it is idle to credit the age with the beginning of modern times (in itself a sufficiently uncertain term) if only because its intellectual leaders looked determinedly back rather than forward. But the beginning of something else is certainly to be found here – of what one should call the ascendancy of Europe, an ascendancy which the future may well decide came to an end in 1914. We are often today exhorted by various historians and publicists to resist the parochialism of European history, to remember that compared with the empires of the east even the larger European powers were insignificant, to treat history 'globally'. Persuasive as such views can be, and doubtless relevant to the present day, they do nothing but distort if they lead one to overlook the dominant role of Europe from the sixteenth to the early twentieth centuries. In that period concentration on Europe is not parochial: it marks rather a proper appreciation of the true balance of history. European political superiority, European customs, European law and science and culture spread outwards over the globe from the early discoveries onwards, until the world was to all intents Europeanised. Of all conquests, this, which has virtually substituted the inheritance of classical antiquity for even more ancient native traditions in such time-honoured civilisations as those of India and China, has been the most penetrative. It got under way in the era of the Reformation when Spain conquered and settled the Americas (ch. XXIII) and Portugal opened up the Far East (ch. XXIV). In a sense it is astonishing that Europe – riven internally by new faiths, violent wars and private ambitions, and pressed hard by the last of the great Mongol attacks from Asia – should have had the strength for these beginnings of an explosive expansion. But then nothing so much astonishes in the history of European expansion as the prodigal waste of forces at home and the prodigious achievements of small forces overseas. European superiority in technical equipment, certainly part of the explanation, made itself felt also in these early stages.

The expansive activity shown by Europe – or rather by some individuals in parts of western Europe – is curiously contrasted with what was happening to Europe itself. Here one notes contraction, loss of territory, and a realignment of forces internally which restricted the effective potential of European energies to a narrower area, but one which happily

lay open to the oceans. The Europe of the sixteenth century was smaller than that of the fourteenth. The Turkish conquest of the Balkans and the Russian conquest of the Ukraine drove back the frontiers of medieval Europe with lasting effect. Both Turkey and Russia might pretend to be building upon the ruins of the Byzantine empire, but both were essentially less European than their alleged precursor. Furthermore, the existence of these aggressive forces on Europe's landward border concentrated vast energies upon defence and produced a degree of acclimatisation along this broad strip from Poland to Croatia which robbed central Europe of some of its European quality. The effect upon tenurial arrangements and constitutional developments has already been observed. The immediate outcome of this 'frontier-situation' was the rise of two new powers, Austria and Brandenburg-Prussia, whose beginnings one may trace to this period: Charles V virtually founded the Austrian empire when he bestowed the eastern Habsburg lands upon his brother Ferdinand, and the Reformation not only accorded the margrave of Brandenburg some handsome promotion but also so altered the balance of power in the area between Lübeck and Riga that the rise of Prussia may be foreseen a century before the Great Elector. On the seaward side, the increasing importance of the Atlantic nations needs no further stressing.

Europe, in fact, opened out; its centre dropped and its margins rose. The great line of the high middle ages had run through Germany and Italy, through the Holy Roman Empire. Subsidiary centres of significance lay elsewhere – in the region of the lower Rhine, in the axis through France reaching up to England which had been visible in the Angevin empire of the twelfth century, in the massive block of Lithuania stretching nearly to the lower Volga. But despite the early decay of the empire, Europe's centre of gravity rested in the middle; even France, whose achievements in politics and civilisation stood high, remained turned to her east, to Burgundy. Now both Italy and Germany stepped down. For some centuries the essential Europe – the expanding and conquering Europe – was to be found not in the centre, the south or the east, but exclusively in the west. This was a development to which much in the past led up and which must never be stressed to the exclusion of the continued significance and interest of other areas; but it came into the open during the early sixteenth century when the Reformation, and the collapse of Charles V's Imperial ambitions, confirmed the decline of central Europe and furthered the rise of Spain, France and England.

CHAPTER II

ECONOMIC CHANGE

I EUROPEAN AGRICULTURE

Feudal society, agriculture and economic change

UNTIL a few decades ago, historians of economic change in the sixteenth century concentrated predominantly on the towns, the centres of manufacture and nodal points for both regional and interregional trade. It was held that European expansion overseas, the opening of new markets and new sources of raw materials, above all the acquisition of the precious metals of South America, justified calling the age that of early capitalism. The fact that most people lived on the land and were engaged in exploiting it appeared immaterial in this context, inasmuch as the land and its use appeared still to be limited by 'feudal' conditions and thus could not be a part of the progressive developments which were to lead to the Industrial Revolution. However, a scheme that separated town from countryside demonstrated its inadequacy in explaining the emergence of the modern industrial societies of Europe when the attempt was made to transmit the results of a process lasting four centuries to the countries of the Third World. There those one-sided notions concerning industrialisation regularly led to failure. Thus we have come to realise how fundamental the transformation had to be which would enable an agrarian society to undertake industrial growth. A rural economy engaged in producing food, raw materials and in addition beasts as the only mobile source of energy, an economy which of necessity involved a large part of the population, needed to be transformed into an economically defined separate sector to be called agriculture – a sector capable of guaranteeing the provisioning of society in a planned and predictable fashion, but employing only a small part of the population.

Thus present-day events reoriented the study of the economic and social history of Europe; it began to concentrate on the analysis of the factors which changed the agrarian society of Europe into the modern industrial societies. As the country which gave birth to the Industrial Revolution, England still occupied the centre of discussion, on the supposition that an Industrial Revolution must have been preceded by an Agricultural Revolution. The beginnings of this latter have now been put back into the middle ages and in the process have lost their revolutionary character. Correspondingly, the beginnings of the agricultural 'backwardness' of the

23

eastern regions of central Europe have similarly been extended into the middle ages. To this notion, which explains the different rates of development in the different parts of Europe, was added the further notion of a 'European world economy' (J. Wallerstein), which accounted for the domination of Europe over the extra-European world; from this followed the latter's growing dependence and insufficient development.

Looked at from either West or East, the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries form an important stage in the transformation of the European societies. As against this, economic change in the era of the Reformation has now ceased to be regarded as in any way linked to the ecclesiastical diversification. In itself the Reformation marks no break in Europe's economic development, even though the policy of various states soon produced religious refugees who in their new countries often received a special status as carriers of economic performance; thus those groups contributed notably to the dissemination of economic innovation. But the radical movements, such as the Anabaptists, who looked to an immediate realisation of what they deemed to be the true Christian life, failed of success and were marginalised. Even so, the reformed faiths with their particular convictions concerning work, usury and the fair distribution of property were not untouched by the new tendencies in economic change that appeared from the second half of the fifteenth century onwards.

The complex situation can be graphically illustrated from the example of the Holy Roman Empire, where after all the Reformation began. Here the whole of the fifteenth century resounded with calls for a 'reformation' of church and empire. But the 'common man' in town and countryside also expected that a reform of government would remedy his economic problems, a hope clearly formulated for merchants and craftsmen in the *Reformatio Sigismundi* (1439). People ascribed the causes of the rise of some men and the decline threatening many more to the failures of the central imperial power, not to fundamental changes in the economy of Europe. Critics drew attention to local and regional manifestations of individual enrichment and manifest injustices; they called for a 'just' order which would serve the 'common weal'. Round about the same time there began in some German universities an intensive debate over the justness of great commercial gains (called usury); significantly enough, this was started by Jacob Fugger. Germany thus caught up with discussions which in the cities of northern Italy had been settled a hundred years before. The church's condemnation of the taking of interest had been evaded since the high middle ages by the purchase of property with fixed rents. In another important respect, too, Germany differed from its neighbours, more particularly from France and England. There, policy since the high middle ages had sought a relative independence for their churches from Rome, partly with an eye to restricting the diversion of sizeable ecclesiastical

profits to Rome. In Germany, this problem played its part in starting the Reformation: it appears both in the distinctly selfserving policy of the princes and in the *Twelve Articles* of the Swabian peasants, that is to say, in the programme of the Peasants' War of 1525–6. The peasants were quite prepared to maintain priests and church buildings, but the surplus of their tithe was to be spent on the community, on the 'common good'.

The changes in the economic situation, recognised as dramatic, did not find record only in the literature of the fifteenth century and the polemics of the Reformation era. Social movements in towns and on manorial estates speak as clearly. In the towns of Germany, very different matters were at issue. Sometimes townsmen wished to resist exaggerated and therefore expensive policies of their town councils; sometimes, craftsmen who had gained wealth and thus selfconfidence tried to convert their economic strength into participation in political rule; sometimes, again, journeymen rebelled against the rule of the masters. By contrast, peasant movements were unmistakably directed against a worsening in their economic and legal position, a change which threatened them through the reorganisation of princely resources in the age of the nascent modern state and a competition for power among the nobility.

It would be wrong to infer that in respect of European economic development the priorities of town and countryside should simply be reversed. For the people even of the later middle ages and early-modern period, awareness of the tension between the two was clearly matched by a consciousness of mutual dependence as well as of changes in the power balance between these two poles. This dynamic view of relations between town and countryside provides a starting point from which we may explain the peculiar qualities of the European agrarian societies of late-medieval and early-modern times – qualities which distinguish them from other agrarian societies. Resting on these premises, it would seem more sensible to seek after the phase in the transformation of the European agrarian societies which characterised the sixteenth century, rather than merely attempt to cast up an econometric balance of agrarian achieve-ments which would unthinkingly accept the standards of modern indus-trial agriculture and thus fundamentally mistake the achievements of that early-modern mode of production for society in general.

Manifestly, therefore, this understanding of the economic transforma-tion of the agrarian societies of feudal Europe places the centre of the argument within the internal dynamics of the system. Thus the discovery of the New World comes to emerge from the logic of a European economy which since the high middle ages had been characterised by a notable interaction of political expansion and economic change and growth. This dynamic which developed in the area of politics into an institutionalised interaction of monarch and estates is likewise found in the interaction,

transmitted by the institution of the market, of the economically active elements (peasants, secular and ecclesiastical landlords, craftsmen, merchants, rentiers, and wage labourers), though, of course, one should not overlook the effects of the regulatory policies touching prices, wages, money and trade pursued by ruling authorities, not to mention the direct effect of wars and ecclesiastical interdicts.

Outline of economic development in the agrarian societies of Europe since the high middle ages

The changes in the European economy of the sixteenth century belong to the longer epoch extending between the two crises of the fourteenth and seventeenth centuries. Understanding them therefore requires a brief sketch of the socio-economic system which in the fourteenth century encountered its crisis. The basic features of that system endured as long as the decisive blockages within the agrarian societies of Europe – distinct limits to food production, shortage of raw materials, and the inadequacy of mobile energy not tied to given locations – could not be overcome. The 'crisis of the fourteenth century' struck a specific manner of operations which between the eleventh and thirteenth centuries produced a tightly knit economic structure involving town and countryside, and which linked the two older systems of long-distance trade around the Baltic and Mediterranean Seas in a novel fashion.

The economic region called Europe was not identical with either the geographic area of Europe or with the Christian occident. Scandinavia was for the time being included only in respect of its coastal regions. Eastern Europe was involved only by means of long-distance trade. In this period, Russia had not achieved any density or diversification of its economy comparable to western Europe; in addition, its religious and cultural relations were far closer with Byzantium than with Latin Christianity. Except for the Iberian peninsula, the northern regions of the Mediterranean as far as the Adriatic formed a centre in the new economic unit 'Europe', whereas the Byzantine empire played only a minor role as trading partner in the transmission of the spices and luxury goods of the Far East. Nevertheless, it indicates the European importance of the trade with the Black Sea that the Asiatic plague, which caused the fourteenth-century crisis, reached the West by way of the ports of that region. In the fifteenth century, these geopolitical relations in the Mediterranean area altered fundamentally when the Ottoman conquest of Constantinople (1453) caused the eastern Mediterranean and the Balkans to withdraw from these intensive trading relations. The Ottoman empire subjected the Balkans to the service of its own economic and military needs, with the result that the region thenceforth made only a very limited contribution to

the European economy; economic activities migrated more and more into the western Mediterranean. On the other hand, in Russia the consolidation of Muscovy in the sixteenth century created the conditions for an expansion of settlement and the development of more intensive agrarian exploitation. However, it was only towards the end of the seventeenth century, in the wake of its disputes with Poland and its reaction against the Ottoman expansion, that Russia took up closer connections with central and western Europe.

It was both a precondition and a consequence of the economic separation and simultaneous linkage of town and countryside since the eleventh century that the rural population grew in number. In the earlier areas of settlement, that population intensified and widened agricultural exploitation by the introduction of complex field systems; both the number and the size of settlements grew markedly (spread of village settlements). At the same time large areas, hitherto barely or thinly settled, were opened up by means of clearances and drainage, with the new settlers obtaining favourable rights of use and ownership, while noble and ecclesiastical landlords gained territory and power. This expansion did not take place spontaneously, but increasingly as a well-organised economic undertaking financed in advance by entrepreneurs (*locatores*). The best examples are found in the territories of central and eastern Europe opened up by the German expansion eastwards: here the expansion created important foundations for new political units in eastern-central Europe from the Baltic to the Mediterranean. One can see very similar happenings in Italy, France and the Iberian peninsula (*Reconquista*). This settlement of town and country, mutually dependent and conducted with foresight, should be read as a developmental programme carried out by the agrarian societies of medieval Europe. When towns were founded unconnected to peasant settlements – as happened in the case of many mining towns – problems of supply proved solvable only so long as the mines flourished. When the 'blessings of the mountain' ceased the towns could preserve their urban status only if the miners quickly found new remunerative employment.

In this 'rise of Europe' a division of labour took place between town and countryside: the peasants specialised in agriculture and cattle-raising (to which the south and west added viticulture), while burgesses concentrated on manufacture and trade. At a first glance the towns seemed more dependent on the countryside: they had to rely on it not only for bread grain, cattle, wine, raw materials, and on its inhabitants as purchasers of their manufacturers, but they also depended on it for the maintenance of their own, usually adverse, balance of population. In actual fact, relationships were even more complex because the transmission of goods no longer constituted a simple, individual, exchange but involved the use of a

market where the different interests of purchasers and vendors on both sides intersected: in the towns, for example, those of artisans, merchants, wage-labourers, ecclesiastical and secular institutions, in the countryside especially those of landlords and peasants. In addition, the degree of peasant integration in the market depended a good deal on whether the peasants rendered their dues in kind or in money, what level of demand they developed for their own style of life, and whether there was any inducement to increase their share of the market in corn, cattle and other agricultural produce (e.g. chickens, eggs, honey, vegetables, fruit, legumes, butter, cheese, wild berries and mushrooms, herbs, flax and linen yarn). The markedly uncertain economic situation of the towns is also indicated by the fact that they felt compelled repeatedly to protect their urban economic domain by prohibiting certain industrial activities (especially cloth-manufacture and brewing) within a mile's radius and by trying to acquire also political rule over this area of economic influence, so as to be able to exercise effective control.

The localisation and concentration of manufacture and trade in the towns by no means signified the disappearance of artisans from the villages. As a direct consequence of the specialisation and intensification of peasant labours in the fields, meadows, pastures and woods, in the houses and courtyards and gardens, a small body of village craftsmen grew up specialising in the immediate needs of the peasantry (smiths, wheelwrights, saddlers and potters). For the towns the increased division of labour worked in two ways. The professionalisation of the crafts employed both for the rural neighbourhood and for exports presupposed that households, and especially working wives, were freed from the tasks of providing supplies and controlling stocks. This explains the great importance of crafts concerned with immediate needs no longer covered through the labour of housewives. One should also remember that, though the towns were limited in size in so far as they were at the same time places of fortification, outside the walls there lay variously sized fields, pastures and woodlands which the burghers themselves exploited or else rented out. In either case, that land served the maintenance of the town. Furthermore, many towns grew out of the drawing together of village settlements, the inhabitants of which, though from that time they lived in a town, continued to follow their peasant avocations as town-based husbandmen.

Peasants and townsmen in this new system of a division of labour between town and countryside played the parts of both producers-vendors and consumers-purchasers. Intensified agriculture maintained apart from the peasantry not only landlords and towns but also the inhabitants of such rural regions as could not produce sufficient grain for their own supply, that is especially cattlemen and vintners. To the division of labour

between town and countryside was added a division of labour between rural districts, usually adjacent. Since carrying corn into those regions involved high costs, the yield of cattle-raising or viticulture had to be high enough to make the exchange worth while. This kind of specialisation too depended on the existence of a demand, of a market, and not on 'natural' conditions; conditions may make it easier to raise cattle or produce wine but cannot guarantee such employment. The problems of corn transport by land did not exist for the transport of cattle because the animals moved themselves, and any loss of weight could be restored by grazing at the place of consumption.

The economy of town and countryside here described in addition took account of the unpredictability of operating in an agrarian society. The social division of labour effected an increase both quantitative and qualitative in both agriculture and manufacture; it also secured an intensification of the process of exchange in the network of local, regional and supraregional markets. Typically, however, the towns placed much emphasis on possessing a territory of their own as a 'natural' basis for supplying their inhabitants, and they built up such territories systematically right into the sixteenth century, wherever this proved possible. Any towns where territorial policy and the opening up of the hinterland encountered limits felt threatened in their further development, unless they could find new solutions to the problems: and this did happen in the fifteenth century among Flemish and Basque towns.

The new economic system of town-and-countryside rested on new social forms of production: it placed the undertaking into the hands of a married couple, engaged in producing for the market and tied into a communal organisation which represented the local and economic interests of its members. In both respects this differed fundamentally from the earlier economic system organised around the lordly demesne; that had been primarily preoccupied with the needs of the lords and had excluded the producers from trade. It was an essential component of the new form of production, in both its social and its economic impact, that the yields of agriculture and manufacture should in part remain with the producers themselves and be exploited by them. As was indicated in the description of settlement by way of reclamation, the lordly entrepreneurs relied on the selfinterest of the new settlers who for their labour received not only advantageous rights of use (in the form of fixed dues) but also the right to dispose of their property by will, commonly to both sons and daughters. Such terms of inheritance demonstrate the weight that the peasants placed upon the keeping of the lands worked by themselves in the hands of their children. As for the towns, they most urgently needed the newly gained latitude in the right to dispose of money: nothing else could have mobilised the capital called for by investment in 'trade and exchange'.

In these developments the church played an ambivalent role. Towns-men and peasants utilised the church's claims to liberty during the high middle ages in the cause of their own struggle for communal freedom and the securing of property rights. The canon law's ban on the taking of interest acquired a real meaning in this historical situation in which moneyed business became an economic reality for an increasing number of people. The church induced especially merchants to spend a part of their usurious gains on the means of grace which it itself administered. This enabled it, on the one hand, to stress the value of its own social labours – that is to say, prayer – and on the other to ease the medieval problem of poverty by means of the pious endowments proffered by the rich.

The emergence of the economy of town-and-countryside took place as a general European development, at least within the boundaries sketched at the beginning of this chapter. Of course, different regions experienced considerable differences in the relevant preconditions of geography, politics and history, not to mention the rate and outcome of this transformation. The territory of the old Roman empire – more particu-larly in Italy but also in France – could unquestionably point to a continuity of urban settlements based on manufacturing. Similarly, all regions had known for a long time some areas of intensively exploited agriculture, extensive utilisation of pasture and woodland for cattle-raising, and in the Mediterranean region old vineyards and olive-groves. The economy of town-and-countryside did especially well in regions where towns enjoyed favourable conditions, set by rivers, coastal points and fords, or intersections of ancient trade routes. Thus there quickly grew up a hierarchy of towns: sometimes in distinct urban regions as in northern Italy or Flanders, at other times through coastal or riparian towns which organised the towns in their own hinterland, as happened with the Hanseatic towns on the southern Baltic shore or at Cologne. At the same time, some rural regions with very few towns and no nobles also achieved major economic improvements, as for instance in northern and eastern Friesland. In assessing this phenomenon, however, one must remember that the wealth of these free peasants naturally depended on their production for urban markets where they themselves organised that trade and thus could retain all its profit. For a good many towns it is true that their economic function as a manufacturing centre for an agrarian neighbourhood remained poorly developed, with their military function clearly ascendant (the case, for instance, of many small towns in Hesse). Nor were all undertakings that aimed to open up the country by a combined settlement of town and countryside crowned with success. There are quite a few examples in Germany alone of towns founded which had to be abandoned or quickly declined into villages.

The new economy of town-and-countryside had grown out of the crisis of the earlier demesne economy. The place of that all-inclusive system was taken by a new manorial system resting on the division of territorial, personal and judicial rights of lordship and the new distribution of people in peasant and civic communities in village and town. The peasant's dependence on his lord remained extant in principle but received two modifications: in the first place, the urban market became the economic centre of gravity for both peasant and lord, and in the second the local peasant communities acquired not only local competence in legal, economic and social assignments but beyond that developed powers of political selfassertion. Both lords and peasants profited from a trading economy, but for the peasant it also produced a change in social status whose determinants and variables shall be briefly discussed here.

The position of the peasants in the different European regions and their different branches of agriculture itself varied a good deal. However, a general tendency to gain more rights and get the old burdens reduced can be observed everywhere. In the established areas of settlement, the peasants improved their rights partly only under the pressure of the fourteenth-century crisis. Significantly, one finds peasant communities side by side that differed in their rights at law: one condition of the newly won freedom for some peasants was the continued lack of it, or at least a serious limitation to it, among other peasant groups, for in spite of the effects of the new market economy the lords could not afford to give up many of the personal services which peasants regarded as limitations to their freedom. This fact appears very clearly in the large areas of new settlement, as for instance in the Teutonic Knights' Prussia where new settlers were largely freed from services while native Prussians remained obliged to render them. Here, too, equalisation began to occur in the fifteenth century, in the wake of the 'crisis'.

The peasants' position cannot be judged simply by the kind of rent they paid or by what its components (in money, kind or services) were. If one wished properly to judge the place of the peasantry in the system, it would be desirable to attempt a comparison with the effects of price levels upon the lords as well as to compare the development in rural wages with prices and wages in the manufacturing sector. Here we must restrict ourselves to a brief comparison between peasants and lords. At a time of growing populations and an increasing demand for corn a fixed money payment favoured the peasantry, as the gap grew between the increasing income from the sale of corn and fixed burdens. When prices dropped, the peasants' position reversed, while the lords' income from ground rents did not diminish. If the rent was paid in fixed quantities of corn, it was the lord who profited from rising prices, while in times of falling prices both lords and peasants were bound to lose over that part of the corn that they could

sell in the market. The extent of this effect, however, always depended on the quantity available for sale. Here the size of the farm and the marketable amount obtainable from respective areas played an important part. Even small fluctuations of prices forced small farms into debt, while middling ones survived and large ones often did well since they were able to store supplies, had financial reserves to rely on, and more especially often commanded credit facilities in towns. Most important of all, the duration of user rights played a crucial role in the peasants' economic and especially their social condition. They aspired to hereditary rights of possession which gave them the best freedom of action. The majority of them, however, had to be content with life tenures or less (tenures for three, six, nine or twelve years). Bavarian peasants on ecclesiastical estates came off worst: they were forced to renew their contracts every year (*Freistift*). Peasants with inferior tenurial rights need to be distinguished from leaseholders who also worked the land for short periods but did not stand in any condition of personal dependence towards the lord. One finds such leaseholders in northern Italy and France, but also in Flanders and within the hinterland of Cologne, facts which suggest that the practice indicates a close connection with a developed urban economy. At first most of these landowners were ecclesiastical institutions, but inhabitants of the towns increasingly also invested profitably in the landed property surrounding the town. Leaseholds satisfied solely the personal needs of respective owners and the demands raised in the town within whose circuit they lay. This meant a concentration on fruit, vegetables, horse fodder and commercial crops (e.g. woad, madder and hops). In northern Italy, the production of corn and wine in the immediate neighbourhood of towns was also organised in leaseholds, mostly in the form of *mezzandria* (share-cropping) under which the lessee obtained a fixed contractual share of the produce. The owner hoped that this system would enable him better to adjust the use of his land to a rapidly changing demand for produce and also a demand for the land itself. The leaseholder hoped that his intensive labour would result in a good harvest and consequently a high return for himself. It would appear that leaseholds and share-cropping, which in the fifteenth century were to spread widely especially in France (*métayage*), as early as the dissolution of the old demesne economy (*Villifikation*) in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries represented both in Italy and in north-west Europe an intensified form of the peasant economy. Increases in yields and diversification of crops owed much to new techniques; in the immediate surrounds of towns, crop rotation came to be practised, or at least farmers utilised fallow lands for commercial crops and legumes.

It has been maintained that agricultural servants, both female and male, formed an economically and demographically inactive part of the rural population. True, both kinds of servants, being by definition unmarried,

were in principle childless, but the length of such dependent status and the proportion of unmarried to married people provide significant indicators for the condition and organisation of an economy. A surplus or a shortage of both male and female servants unquestionably played an important role in the peasant economy, especially in so far as that was based on the family: at certain points in the family cycle and at the height of labour intensity during the year, the enterprise depended on wage labour. A shortage implied high wages, a surplus low ones, with respective effects upon costs, whereas an abundant supply of service labour formed an inducement to undertake labour-intensive farming with a high return in the market.

It has become sufficiently evident that the combination, since the eleventh century, of peasant and market economies sufficed to supply food to a steadily growing population in town and countryside. Corn yields could be increased by technical improvements facilitating the working of heavy soils, by stepping up the rate of work, and by increasing the share of marketable produce at the expense of domestic consumption. In terms of agricultural technology, this meant improving cultivation by using suitable ploughs, switching to a three-field system, and developing a complex interaction of corngrowing and cattle-raising (mixed husbandry). Raising cattle itself formed an aspect of corngrowing because the cattle were not kept primarily for their meat and milk, but mainly as sources of energy and dung. The towns' call for meat was covered, apart from pork, by the sale of calves, sold thin to be fattened by the purchasers (especially butchers). In most regions animals raised exclusively for their meat could not be overwintered because summer pasture and hayfields were lacking. On the other hand, draft animals, whether oxen or horses, had to be kept through the winter if the peasant economy was to survive. For their own needs the peasants relied far more on small animals with several kinds of usefulness. Thus the modest sheep provided milk, meat, hides and wool both for domestic consumption and for sale. The supply of meat and milk products (butter and cheese) to the towns' markets was taken care of by the grass regions of the lowlands, marshes and hills. It is worth notice that salted butter appeared early among the objects of long-distance trade, for instance being exported from Norway and Sweden into the corngrowing areas fringing the southern shores of the Baltic, with their sizeable towns. On the other hand, sheep were maintained in the grass lands of England with an eye to both the export of fine wools and the sale of meat, a double purpose which increased flexibility in the market and thus limited dependence on one given market.

The expansion of wine production and the growing consumption of beer should in the first place be assessed from the fact that both drinks have a high nutritional value and should therefore be treated as an

essential component of the food supply. Wine was drunk in large quantities and not only where it was grown; it was treated as an article of common consumption unless shortage, quality or long-distance transport increased its price and turned it into a luxury.

The second important achievement of agriculture lay in the provision of raw materials for use in manufactures: wool, skin for leather and parchment, vegetable fibres, dye-stuffs and hops, timber from the lords' forests as well as the peasants' spinneys.

A third achievement, commonly undervalued, was the production of energy both from animals and plants. At a time when apart from human labour animals formed the only mobile source of energy, this aspect of animal farming occupied a place of great importance and frequently competed with the calls of meat supply. This appears in mixed husbandry, where oxen and horses were kept as draft animals in arable cultivation, in the reservation of meadows of hay for the horses so indispensable in warfare, overland transport and on the towpath, and not least in the competition for oats between men and horses. The large numbers of donkeys and mules, required for transport and the operation of engines in manufacture, must also be included in this evaluation of agricultural achievements. Animal and vegetable fats furthermore played an important role, less as sources of nutrition than as a means of illumination: both olive oil and tallow found favour here. Animals and plants which produced several benefits were preferred: thus flax yielded both the fibre for linen manufacture and an oil.

The agrarian achievements discussed so far had high values in the market, but everything culminated in sheep's wool, highly esteemed for its capacity to keep people warm in an age generally short of energy. Among all the urban trades, the manufacture of woollen cloth enjoyed the highest prestige; it called for a supply of the finest possible raw material. In agricultural regions, therefore, sheep flocks became the object of privilege and at the same time competed for the available pasture with the cattle essential to the peasants' economy. This led to many conflicts between sheepmasters and peasants who were often compelled to release their stubble pastures and sheep-runs to the holders of privileges.

The availability of the rural regions for the production of adequate food supplies, raw materials and animal energy explains the disputes over the use of woodlands. Woods supplied venison, honey and wax, oak mast for pigs, continuous pasture for other animals, leaf mould as winter fodder, fuel for all households as well as for manufacturing enterprises, charcoal for metalworking and glass manufacture, timber for the vast majority of goods in daily use. Ship-building called for the specially valuable oaks, and the ubiquitous crossbow demanded yew. Typically, the consequences of the intensive exploitation of woodland first manifested themselves in

the neighbourhood of the towns. As early as the fourteenth century, the Imperial city of Nuremberg became apprehensive about its famous Imperial forest and undertook a systematic programme of afforestation. Other Imperial cities, such as Frankfurt, followed suit, as in the fifteenth century did Venice.

However, all this does not exhaust the importance of woodland. For the poor always – and in bad times for everybody – berries, mushrooms, roots and nuts were of inestimable value, supplying nourishment both fresh and dried. The importance of this 'gathered food', not produced by human hand, is very hard to assess because it was never included in the terms of renders. Much the same applies to the growth of buckwheat whose importance for feeding the rural population of various European regions cannot be overestimated, but which historians have neglected because it rarely made an appearance in the market. What they have ignored is the fact that growing corn for the market and fixing ground rents in terms of corn were possible only because millet and buckwheat saw to the feeding of the rural population.

Economic change in the 'long' sixteenth century

The economic changes of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries – Fernand Braudel's 'long sixteenth century' – sprang from the dynamic developed within the medieval economy of town-and-countryside, but the upward trend was not one of uninterrupted continuity, precisely because as a consequence of economic and demographic growth the limits of the food supply had been reached as early as the end of the thirteenth century. The fourteenth-century crisis, heralded since about 1300 by harvest failures, brought about by the Black Death after 1347, and continued in the subsequent decades by periodically recurrent epidemics, resulted in a major reduction of the population in both towns and the countryside, variously estimated (with large regional variations) as amounting to between a quarter and a third. As the population dwindled the cultivated area contracted, marginal soils were abandoned, and peasants concentrated in the villages with better soils or migrated into the towns. At the same time devastating floods destroyed valuable agricultural land along the shores of the North Sea. Middling and larger towns recovered usually quite quickly from the epidemics because immigration from the country-side continued or even increased. The immediate economic effects of the decline in population were followed a generation later by an agrarian crisis which introduced a long-term depression in corn prices, lasting till about 1450. Despite the shrinking of the cultivated area the yields obtained from the remaining and better-worked lands still stood in excess of the collapsed demand: especially in years of good harvests, the

economic situation of peasants and lords actually worsened. As against this, the inhabitants of towns gained from the low price of corn, but at the same time much manufacture lost its peasant customers and was thus also drawn in by the agricultural depression.

However, population decline, agrarian depression, and the crisis in the trades serving the demands of the countryside did not result in a long-term stagnation of the agrarian societies of Europe. On the contrary, the greater concentration of the population and low food costs produced in three successive stages an economic growth which gave a new structure to the medieval town-and-countryside economy with its many centres.

In the first phase, down to about 1450, stimulus arose at first from urban demand, altered by the effects of the crisis, for food and clothing, creating a demand beyond mere substitute which received support and reinforcement from similar needs on the part of the nobility and the princely courts. A new element was added with the widespread demand for clothing and weapons for the large mercenary armies raised by the nascent modern states during their endless disputes. Continental Europe thus began to experience developments which had appeared in Italy much earlier, during the dissolution of the old-style demesne economy under the effects of Mediterranean trade. In northern Italy, the urban communes had subjugated those of the countryside and had diverted their territorial possessions towards the needs of an urban economy and the interests of its citizens, with the result that the economic exploitation of the land could be directed by urban owners in accordance with their economic interest. Even in regions of new settlement time-limited leaseholds and share-cropping contracts began to take over because exploitation had become an object of speculation; long-term peasants' rights continued to exist only in regions well away from towns. This system of relations between town and countryside absolutely depended on maritime links with the major corngrowing areas in southern Italy and Sicily where owners of large estates, increasingly exploiting their peasantry, produced corn for export. The rise of the northern Italian cities thus rested on two pillars: on the one hand, it witnessed an early conversion of the universal town-and-country-side economy into the extension of urban dominance over the countryside, on the other it relied on a division of labour between different Italian regions from which the urban centres of power benefited. This Mediterra-nean form of division of labour is also visible, though the political circumstances differed, in the manner in which the towns of Catalonia came to specialise in textiles. Without the grain reservoirs in southern Italy and Sicily this would not have been possible because the Catalan countryside, though unquestionably fertile, could not satisfy the needs of the towns, more especially of Barcelona.

The towns of northern Italy thus became a model for a new division of

labour within the whole continent which made itself noticeable after the fifteenth century in the relationship between the continental north-west and eastern-central Europe. The growth of industry in the towns of Flanders, Holland and the Basque country depended on the ability of these coastal regions to obtain a substantial part of their food supply along the river-lines into the hinterland and across the open sea. The immediate agrarian neighbourhood adapted to the new demands for minor luxuries, started to grow vegetables and fruit in market gardens and reared cattle for their meat and milch cows for the production of cheese and butter. These endeavours to specialise had further consequences as maritime trade shifted from coastal shipping to the high seas, with journeys lengthening and without staging posts. All this stepped up the demand for provisions of dried meat, salt butter and cheese. In the Basque country and in Holland, both of which gained from the increase in maritime travel and in general possessed better natural conditions for cattle than for corn, the import of grain, increasingly from the Baltic region, grew steadily. In the sixteenth century, when northern Spain found itself overtaken by Holland in both ship-building and long-distance trade, it also lost immediate access to Baltic wheat, though that admittedly had lost its overriding importance. That novel crop, maize, for which Spain provided ideal conditions for cultivation and which also called for little labour, supplied a useful substitute.

In Flanders, the change to an intensive use of market gardens in response to the changed demand in food and commercial crops posed no problems because here most of the land had even before the crisis been held on flexible leaseholds. In addition, the Black Death had terminated many contracts, so that economic restructuring at first took place on unoccupied land. The assurance of the food supply made it possible to transfer a considerable part of manufacture, especially that of linen cloth, from the towns into the countryside. This in itself increased the rural demand for food, another stimulus for an intensified agrarian production. In this way, both manufacturing and agricultural processes grew ever more concentrated within those parts. Flanders witnessed a further new division of labour between town and countryside, partly by means of the 'protoindustrialisation' of the open country, partly by means of the direction given to agrarian production by urban interests; the towns turned to forcing the countryside into dependence on themselves and converted it thereby into urban environs. In this respect, Flanders differed from northern Italy, which still retained the traditional division of labour between town and countryside.

Similar developments occurred also at Cologne, linked by the Rhine to both the Netherlands and a large agrarian hinterland, and at Breslau which combined the advantages of a trading and manufacturing entrepôt

(for trade along the Oder and as a central place of exchange for the trade with eastern and south-eastern Europe) with those of an enormous agrarian hinterland. Cologne and Breslau in addition exemplify the widely differing opportunities open to the countryside to participate in metropolitan developments.

The marked increase in the demand for weapons, clothing and credit, which resulted from the power struggles of the nascent early-modern states, offered other towns – more particularly Nuremberg and Augsburg – a chance to participate in the new developments. These inland towns enjoyed the advantages of a relatively easy access to the supply of metals as well as the opportunity to employ water power both at home and further away in processing them. In addition, they disposed of a high degree of 'technical intelligence' derived from their specialised crafts. Thus the Nurembergers not only transformed the land outside their gates into a garden economy, but they also studded the many little rivers of the neighbourhood with mills and – as Augsburg did soon after – concentrated upon their own city all manufacturing in the small towns of a large neighbourhood. Their city council, like those of Cologne and Augsburg, laboured to secure for the work force a secure supply of bread grain and of reasonably priced wine. It laid down stocks of grain which in bad times it used to regulate prices in the market or offered to poor citizens below cost. This provident urban housekeeping offered to the suppliers (lords and peasants) a calculable demand which helped even in years of good harvests to guard them against a total collapse of prices. The increased demand for meat and milk could at first be met from the surroundings of those towns because deserted land stood available to pasture cattle and sheep, while close by there were traditional grasslands accustomed to the raising of cattle. There was plenty of labour for the labour-intensive enterprises – dairying and vegetable-growing – and they earned good money. Nor did the extension of vineyards pose any problems because the vinegrowing areas of Franconia and Württemberg did not compete with the cultivation of grains. However, in order to persuade vintners to undertake the tedious labour along the steep slopes, landowners offered them hereditary tenures. These enterprises occupied only small pieces of land, and the vintners depended on buying in bread grain, for they treated winegrowing as a monoculture.

A further demand arising out of changes in cloth manufacture also drew extending circles around those towns. Townsmen, like noblemen and courtiers, obeyed fashion, and fashion preferred light and coloured cloths, so that the demand grew for flax and hemp (manufactured with imported cotton into fustian) as well as for woad and madder. Demand served to spread such cultivation right into central Germany (especially Erfurt) and Silesia. It all helped peasants to compensate for losses of income as

corngrowing stagnated. It became customary to pay servants in part by sowing flax seed for them which they often manufactured into yarn and sold on their own account.

These alterations in the rural economy took place between the last quarter of the fourteenth century and the middle of the fifteenth, that is to say at a time when population did not increase but instead came to be concentrated in the urban centres of Europe and in favoured rural regions. The prospering towns with their neighbourhoods, subjected to such intensive agricultural exploitation, look like islands within the total picture of the rural scene, because thousands of small towns devoid of new manufacturing enterprises very rarely recovered from the effects of the peasants' desertion of the land. Country towns that reacquired their earlier position usually did this by a total change of character: they became administrative centres for great lords or princes and occasionally their towns of residence. The inhabitants of many small towns, on the other hand, which in the course of the desertions could no longer find peasants or tenants to work their lands, began to cultivate the fields outside the gates themselves. From then on, they tried to make a living from a mixture of crafts and farming. Merchants declined in both numbers and influence in those towns because the local market contracted to a point where connections with regional and supraregional markets had lost much of their former significance.

Therefore: the fourteenth-century crisis was not overcome by a restoration of the level of settlement and population attained round about 1300–40. Success was gained by an increase in the productivity of labour and the soil, by an intensification of work by means of a further subdivision of functions within the manufacturing sector, by an increased concentration of labour on the land, and by the specialisation and rationalisation of agrarian labour on the foundation of steady wage-paid employment and seasonal hire.

The second phase in the defeat of the crisis began round about the middle of the fifteenth century. Now, almost everywhere, an increase in population went hand in hand with the resettlement of many deserted regions. The clearing of the great forests had in fact begun earlier – from round about 1400 in Finland and in eastern-central Europe. However, settlement there followed a pattern different from that manifest in the resettlement of abandoned lands. As against the reclamation of the high middle ages, these regions fed only the settlers and thus produced no increase in the supply of corn to the European market, nor was there at that point yet any call for such an increase. As is shown by the dues rendered by the Lithuanians in Prussia, whether under the Teutonic Order or the duchy, we are talking about an extensive manner of cultivation. Even during the sixteenth century it proved impossible to persuade

Lithuanian peasants, whether in the Polish or the Prussian part of their settlement region, into accepting an orientation towards the market. In 1557, a land reform was carried through in the Grand Duchy which tried to convert Lithuania into a corngrowing region on the model of Poland. This reform remained confined to paper and to nominal new dividing lines on the ground; no success was obtained in respect of a more intensive exploitation of the soil or a raising of yields and renders. The peasants of Lithuania could see no advantage to themselves in all those measures; they regarded them rather as a further aggravation of lordship that they meant to resist without question. Other efforts to open up new lands on the edge of the Europe of the day also served above all to secure clear borderlines between different political entities.

The resettlement of deserted fields provides evidence for both economic changes and new models of demographic development. For not all the areas abandoned came back into cultivation, in part because low prices still rendered corngrowing unrewarding, in part because climatic conditions had changed for the worse. The latter effect has been securely established for the Alpine regions where the glaciers expanded; the cessation of corngrowing, on the other hand, in parts of Norway and in the various highlands of Germany should probably be ascribed to comparative costs. The reason why conditions prevalent before 1340 were only partly restored lay in the fact that the changes here described had created new standards for both lords and peasants, to both of whom they had also opened new means of proceeding. Peasants enlarged their holdings by incorporating abandoned fields and compelled lords to agree to more favourable rents and renders. Peasant communities, having originally put neighbouring waste land extensively to their use, as the population increased incorporated those lands within their boundaries and thus became sizeable peasant villages. In Bavaria the duke's peasants were able to purchase hereditary tenurial rights; in France and England, lords commonly had to abandon personal services and dues of carriage in order to attract new tenants. On the other hand, the lords were now able to choose for their deserted lands, without regard to any peasant occupiers, such practices of cultivation as seemed most likely to bring profit. In central and eastern Germany they first preferred to resettle the empty farms and villages with peasants and switched to pasture farming (cattle and sheep) only when they could find no new settlers. Of course, those territories, free of settlement and of peasantry, at a time of rising grain prices in effect offered themselves to exploitation by estate management. In the central parts of eastern Europe empty lands were resettled with peasants, but without any favourable conditions. On the contrary, as early as the fifteenth century the practice of binding peasants to the soil began to take charge, a practice which for instance on the large royal

demesnes of Poland contributed to increasing grain yields for export. In France, a kind of large-scale division of labour began to appear at this time between regions that put the main emphasis on either grain or wine, although no extensive monocultures developed anywhere. Sheep-farming, traditionally dominant in northern England, in the fifteenth century expanded in the rest of the country at the cost of arable cultivation with which it had previously co-existed: the combined income from the sale of sheep's meat and wool exceeded that obtainable from corn. In Denmark and Schleswig-Holstein, noble landlords quickly adjusted to the mounting demand for meat coming from Hamburg and the Netherlands; they undertook the very profitable raising of cattle for the transcontinental trade.

In the Iberian peninsula and in Italy, fiscal concerns played a greater part than elsewhere in the direction given to agriculture. The lands of the two kingdoms never produced grain sufficient for all needs, but the crown nevertheless encouraged the development of transhumance (migratory ranching) because the taxes raised on it formed a major source of income for the state. When the peasants, following the increase in population and the growing demand for corn, tried to enlarge the arable area at the expense of the pastures, they lost to the Mesta, the association of sheepmasters. Nor did the regulation of corn prices assist production: prices were fixed solely with an eye to the interests of urban consumers. In the kingdom of Naples and Sicily, the Crown of Aragon behaved rather more flexibly. True, there too transhumance had at first expanded, in the wake of abandoned lands and a growing demand for wool, but as corn grew in price and exports again became profitable sheep-farming was again restricted.

Population growth in the new economic structures began to raise the price of corn until, in about the year 1500, it equalled the cost of manufacturing and then for the rest of the sixteenth century surpassed it greatly. However, it was as early as the second half of the fifteenth century that tendencies began to make themselves felt which were to be decisive in the course of the following period.

Within the immediate or regional circuit of the urban centres, the growing demand for corn, meat and milk products also benefited the peasants, especially peasants with medium-sized or large holdings as in Holland and eastern and northern Friesland. However, if it was a question of exporting corn over long distances along maritime routes, it was the landlords and owners of estates that profited, able to skim off reserves so as to accumulate large stocks; this was as true of eastern Europe as of southern Italy and Sicily. In eastern-central Europe, thinly populated as it was, it proved possible to tie the peasants to the soil (*adscripti glebae*), so as to be able to operate large estates by means of their labour and their

stock of cattle. In southern Italy, the peasantry declined into landless labourers. In both cases, the lords increased their production for the market at the expense of the peasants' standard of living. In fairness it should be said that elsewhere too, as for instance along the shores of the North Sea large-scale corn production could not manage without wage- and day-labourers and a seasonal work force: here too the large production for the market depended on the fact that wage labourers made lower demands than an equal number of peasants. However, here there were none of the far-reaching social and political consequences which characterised eastern-central Europe and southern Italy. Yet the rising price of corn created in many European regions novel economic and social relationships between lords and peasants, estate owners and wage labourers, urban landlords and leaseholders, not to mention a new ranking order of the groups involved in the life agrarian in which the cottagers and the landless soon represented a majority.

All over Europe, the sixteenth century carried the marks of an agrarian boom. The rising price of corn, agricultural land, cattle, wool and wine were linked not only to the continuing growth of the population but also to the discovery of the New World. The demand created by the new territories across the oceans stands comparison with that which had arisen since the fourteenth century from the transformation of warfare – the change from knights and their war-bands to mercenary armies with their long campaigns and large-scale requirements. And another new centre of demand grew up around the mining towns in the mountain regions of Europe; these too had to rely for their provisioning either totally or overwhelmingly upon supply from outside.

The steady rise in the demand for food, especially corn, produced different reactions from the different groups and regions involved in production. Landlords could once again find peasants willing to settle on their less attractive lands. As they resettled the deserted parts of the highlands, the peasants, working in distinctly unfavourable conditions, mostly produced just enough to cover their own modest needs and their renders to their lords, with nothing left over for the market. In the course of the sixteenth century, the new settlers contented themselves with ever-decreasing amounts of land, until there arose settlements of cottagers. They could only survive by additional earnings from linen-weaving, metal crafts or mining. A comparable development occurred in regions which practised the custom of partiple inheritance but where the agricultural boom made working ever smaller areas feasible; here too farming might be combined with manufacturing in textiles or wage labour for well-to-do peasants and landlords. This occurred, for instance, in south-west Germany.

Elsewhere, the novel demand led to a revision of traditional practices of

exploitation. Thus, for instance, in the Swiss Jura cattle-raising gave way to corngrowing. As the price of wine rose in the middle of the sixteenth century, Castile preferred its vineyards. After Seville had become the centre of the trade with the New World, its environs were planted with vines, corn and olives.

The boom chiefly, however, operated by leading to a successful opening of new lands, as in the Netherlands, in Denmark, along the lower reaches of the Vistula, in central and northern Italy, in southern Italy and Valencia. In the Netherlands it proved profitable not only to recover lost lands but to add new ones by means of new devices in dam-building and drainage (windmill pumps). Farmers took part in this, but as the winning of new lands made ever greater demands on capital investment the enterprise became an object of urban speculation; and the actual users of the land became holders of leases. On the initiative of the Danish Queen Elizabeth, a sister of Charles V, Dutch farmers were fetched over in 1521 in order to build dams around some islands near to Copenhagen; these enclosures were meant to supply the royal court but also the town with vegetables and dairy produce. It was also Dutchmen who resettled the regions around the lower Vistula, between Danzig and Thorn, which had been abandoned in the fifteenth century. They were religious refugees (Mennonites) who in return for their colonising activities exacted both toleration and – in that region of normal peasant subjection – the liberties to which they had been accustomed at home. The recultivation was partly financed by the Mennonites themselves, but partly also by merchants of Danzig, the greater Prussian cities, or the administrators of the king's estates in Royal Prussia.

In Italy, we can distinguish several specific models for market-oriented initiatives in agriculture. The partial conversion, already mentioned, from transhumance to corngrowing in southern Italy resulted both here and in Sicily in active settlement. At the same time sugar-cane plantations were created, an enterprise which (as also in the Iberian peninsula) involved the worst possible conditions for the labourers. (In the Atlantic islands of Portugal, even African slaves were working in such plantations from the middle of the fifteenth century.) The manner in which the plain of the River Po was restructured in these centuries by various political powers is very revealing. In Lombardy it proved possible to multiply uses of the land by means of irrigation and drainage, and so to step up yields. Artificial water-meadows produced a hay harvest six or seven times a year, enormously advancing cattle-raising and qualitatively improving dairy produce (parmesan cheese). Not only did they grow so much corn that wheat could be exported to Switzerland (on the canals originally built for purposes of irrigation), but they also introduced rice as a novel food crop. From the closing years of the fifteenth century, rice became a chief food

for the Lombard population and in addition the object of export. Since its cultivation requires no draft animals and calls for plentiful labour only for some 100 to 150 days in the year, the operation was mainly in the hands of seasonal labourers from the neighbouring mountains. In the course of the sixteenth century, further canals were built to link Milan to the great lakes to the north and to the River Po. Thus Milan gained the important access to the Mediterranean, with the result that it could more cheaply import the raw materials needed for its high-class manufactures and could more favourably conduct the trade in its own products.

The republic of Venice adopted quite different methods in its agricultural activities on its mainland possessions. As Venice in the face of Ottoman advance lost first its predominance in trade and then the opportunity of covering its corn supply from overseas resources, it began in 1501 to open up the hitherto neglected hinterland in order to raise grain for the city. Irrigation and drainage, capital-intensive enterprises, were carried out by patrician capitalists, and the urban settlers, advised by agricultural experts, received initially the support of free credit and tax-exemptions. Thus there developed an intensive cultivation of wheat and rice in a totally newly created agrarian landscape, with hamlets of labourers and the villas of Venetian citizens acting as administrative centres. The settlers' economic condition was extremely modest, but apart from their wages they held a small piece of land which they could cultivate for themselves. The duchy of Este-Ferrara opted for a different form of colonisation which organised labour after the model of the old share-croppers (*mezzandria*). Here too, as in Lombardy, it was the rice fields that offered the worst living conditions to the labourer.

The tension between landowners and peasants is reflected in the agronomic literature. Though at first a sense persisted that good results depended essentially on the labour of the peasants, who must therefore be treated well, from the later sixteenth century onwards views began to prevail which were soaked in deep mistrust of all peasants and therefore demanded severe measures against idleness, falseness and cheating. Though conditions differed so widely between southern Italy/Sicily and eastern-central Europe, there too evidently urban demands could be properly satisfied if the division of the profits between the workers on and the owners of the land was adjusted to the disadvantage of the peasants.

In the Iberian peninsula, the drive for capital-intensive internal colonisation owed less to the demands of the New World than to the demands of north-west Europe, which could be easily satisfied by a maritime trade using improved sailing ships. Of large-scale projects, however, only the barrier of the Tibi valley was completed; this served the cultivation of cattle fodder, fruit, vegetables, hemp, mulberry trees and rice.

The centrality of the corn supply for a population which throughout

Europe grew steadily till about 1570 is made plain by a comparison with the meat supply. As the example of the Swiss Jura showed, it proved possible to limit cattle-raising in the face of the demand for corn. At the same time, the keeping of cattle could intensify in the immediate environs of towns. However, the demand from the conurbations could not be satisfied either locally or regionally. Thus from the fifteenth century onwards there developed a transcontinental trade in cattle which served the great cities and princely courts. Supplies came from Denmark and Schleswig-Holstein, from Poland, Hungary, Transylvania and the region of the Black Sea. Added to the cattle of Denmark, Schleswig and Poland there were the specially bred marsh cattle and the large oxen of Hungary, Ruthenia and Podolia. Unlike the effects of corn exports, those of cattle over long distances did not produce any comparable social changes in the countries of origin – the result of a flexible demand.

Like the export-dominated stock-farming, the raising of sheep for the export of wool was not linked in either England or Spain with peasant serfdom. On the contrary, shepherds enjoyed a distinctly free status, as their activities of course demanded when they were involved with migratory flocks, but it also rendered them suspect. The expansion of the sheep all over England did not diminish personal freedom, but it had some social and economic consequences because it reduced the chances for the peasant population of getting hold of a farm; rather it called for a seasonally variable number of labourers for the shearing of the sheep and the maintenance of enclosures.

As a general European phenomenon, the agrarian boom rested upon a system of long-distance trade in existence since the middle ages, which however needed the new developments in sailing technique and navigation before it could serve the increased demand for the transport of large quantities of corn and other foodstuffs. The ensuing commercialisation comprehended both the agrarian producers' orientation on a distant market and the speculations of the greater merchants. It led to the medieval division of labour between town and countryside being transmuted into a novel arrangement of agrarian and manufacturing labour in the various regions of Europe, so that the old, many-centred economy of Europe increasingly became directed towards the north-west. Radiation from this new centre brought about a regrouping of the zones of agricultural exploitation, but it continued to involve the older existing manufacturing and trading towns of importance, and the urban territories with their immediate and regional agrarian surroundings.

The agrarian boom did produce an expansion of the cultivated area and in some regions an increase in agricultural productivity, but this alone cannot explain how it became possible to feed an ever-growing population. In the resettled regions of the uplands it is possible to speak, down to

the last third of the sixteenth century, of a proportional growth of population and cultivated area, while in areas of continuous settlement the population grew without any significant increase in the agriculturally usable area. Here, however, more intensive cultivation and the use of the fallow brought higher yields. On the other hand, in newly opened river and sea marshes production was mainly directed towards supplying neighbouring or distant towns and not the rural population. The impressive figures of the long-distance trade in corn and cattle mislead somewhat; that trade benefited only people in the chief urban areas and there too served only to ease the worst deficiencies of regional production. One must also remember that the mass of imported grain did not really represent 'surpluses' in the regions of production. Amassing grain for export became possible only because the yields of the harvest had been differently divided: either the landlords had requisitioned the products of peasant labour, or cultivation had ceased to be in the hands of independent peasant enterprises and had fallen to those of more or less sizeable estates working with agricultural wage-labour. Both strategies tended to lower rural standards of living in food as well as in the buying of manufactured goods.

Taking it all in all, the still-growing population of the middle of the sixteenth century faced a deterioration in its food supply; and Wilhelm Abel is therefore right to call the second half of the century an age of 'mass poverty and famines'. It is thus no wonder that in several regions of Europe harvest failure and epidemic disease – together with regional, political or warlike events – had such devastating effects upon the population. And with such events the end of the sixteenth-century agrarian boom began to make itself felt.

The secular transformation of European agriculture is most readily discerned in the novel dimension of the intra-European long-distance trade in grain, cattle, wine and wool which is well documented in customs accounts and urban registers. However, local and regional markets constitute equally significant indicators. As Jan de Vries has shown for the Netherlands, a form of urbanisation took place in the prosperous rural areas where specialized craftsmen settled, craftsmen who worked to satisfy the local demand for minor luxuries. In those cases it is possible to observe how the commercialisation of agriculture created among the producers a new demand for manufactured goods and thus led to an economic differentiation in the countryside.

At a first glance, these conclusions would seem to support older investigations. Influenced by the political constellations of the nineteenth century, they interpreted the social consequences of agrarian exporting from the Baltic region into north-western Europe, and the export of manufactures from thence, as the roots of 'agrarian dualism', contrasting

the peasant freedom of western Europe with the peasant serfdom of the East. This contrast was read, so to speak, as the historical foundation for the nineteenth-century difference between the 'agrarian states' of central and eastern Europe and the 'industrial states' of western Europe. Sixteenth-century Europe, however, cannot be analysed in this fashion. For one thing, the distinction between peasant freedom and unfreedom was not then as clear cut as it was to become in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries; for another, central Europe and the Mediterranean region had not become marginalised either economically or politically. Unquestionably, great differences existed in the economic, demographic and social structures between the regions of manufacture in Germany, the Netherlands, England and northern Italy on one side, and eastern-central Europe on the other where density resulted primarily from mining enterprises; but comparable differences also existed within all those countries. The division of labour between agrarian and manufacturing production was extraordinarily complex; as I have tried to show, it cannot at that time be simplified into an 'international division of labour' operating in the larger-sized region.

Moreover, Polish scholars in particular have clearly demonstrated that the concept of long-distance trade is entirely insufficient for evaluating the economy of their country. If one considers that even at the best of times not more than ten per cent of Poland's grain production was exported into western Europe, and that only equivalent amounts of manufactures could be imported to serve the vendors, it becomes manifest how little we can tell about Poland's interior economy, about its own manufacturing enterprises or about the part played by local or regional markets for the use of agricultural producers. Economic developments in eastern Europe were as yet by no means so firmly determined as might appear in retrospect. This is particularly true for the peasantry. Whereas in the central and western regions of Europe peasants have since the sixteenth century steadily declined in numbers as against the strata below them, this is not true for eastern-central Europe. And here lies a crucial paradox. In the regions to the west, agrarian 'modernisation' and 'rationalisation' took place at the expense of the peasantry; in eastern-central Europe, peasants formed well into the eighteenth century the majority of agrarian producers and avoided the decline into wage-labour. The social aspects of economic change thus prove even more resistant to any straightforward description by means of a simple yardstick than does economic change itself.

2. THE GREATNESS OF ANTWERP

The 'golden age' of Antwerp is by common consent one of the most notable chapters in the history of Renaissance Europe. To the men of the

time Antwerp was, as the English diplomat Sampson put it, 'one of the flowers of the world'. Some scores of these men, princes, diplomats, artists, poets, travellers and merchants, have left on record their astonished admiration at this queen of commercial capitals. Growing in volume and rising in pitch towards the middle of the sixteenth century, this crescendo of praise reaches its climax in the Florentine Guicciardini's description of 1565, one of the most splendid epitaphs – for when Guicciardini wrote Antwerp had already passed its zenith – ever written by a foreigner on the city of his adoption. If contemporaries accounted the city unique, the historian's endorsement of their verdict is still weightier testimony, for unlike them he can measure its stature against that of its gigantic successors and yet conclude that 'never since has there been a market which concentrated to such a degree the trade of all the important commercial nations of the world'. A similar claim might be made, although in less sweeping terms, for the Antwerp money market: and it is certain that the city's discharge of both functions was an unrepeatable achievement. To borrow Unwin's analogy with Victorian England, Antwerp was not only the London of the sixteenth century, it was the Manchester as well; and we should hardly be wrong in adding the name of Bolton or Oldham, for Antwerp boasted an industrial life whose importance, neglected by the city's earlier historians, it has been left to recent writers to demonstrate.

Among the immediate causes of this florescence no single event deserves greater prominence or has a stronger claim to mark its beginning than the choice of Antwerp as the Portuguese spice-staple in 1499. It was at Bruges that the Portuguese had begun, from about 1460, to market the produce of their oceanic enterprises: but it was not until the Portuguese royal factor established himself at Antwerp that the spice-trade leapt into importance. He had already transferred himself there temporarily during the Flemish revolt of 1488–93, but this sojourn had been at the behest of the Emperor Maximilian, whereas the return in 1499 was made on his own initiative: moreover, this time he came to stay. His decision, coinciding with the success of Vasco da Gama in penetrating to the source of East Indian spices, ensured that for half a century to come Antwerp was to be the main channel of Portuguese spices into Europe. For the Portuguese colonial trade was a royal monopoly and the disposal of its products the chief duty of the royal factor. The first consignment of pepper and other goods from Lisbon reached Antwerp in August 1501. Two years later the factor concluded his first contract with an Antwerp merchant, with the result that in July 1504 a thousand tons of spices were brought up the Scheldt.

The yield of the consignment of 1504 the factor spent partly on grain, of which Portugal was then in urgent need. But normally what he wanted in exchange were metals, especially copper, metal goods, cloth and silver,

which could be shipped to Africa and the Far East to pay for more spices. It was because these things were brought to Antwerp in growing quantity by two other 'national' merchant groups already trading there, the metals by the South or High Germans, and the cloth (with some lead and tin) by the English, that for fifty years the Portuguese factor kept his residence there: and his withdrawal in 1549 was at once a consequence and a symbol of a change in conditions to Antwerp's disadvantage. But spices were a magnet which attracted other things besides metals and cloth. Unlike those goods, which travelled along short and fairly safe routes, the spices which came to meet them did so by a long sea-voyage from regions remote and insecure and in consequence underwent great fluctuations in their supply. Thus, from the outset, nothing could have prevented dealing in spices from being a gamble. But the dealers did not try to prevent this; on the contrary, they were quick to exploit the speculative element in the trade. The risks were great, but so were the rewards: and it was no accident that the same South Germans who traded copper and quicksilver for spices also threw up some of the greatest financiers of the age.

It was no accident either which had brought the Portuguese, the English or the South Germans to Antwerp, and with them the assurance, for good or ill, of unprecedented commercial and financial power; their coming was a natural culmination of the developments of the preceding period. From the eleventh century to the seventeenth the Netherlands, the low alluvial region forming and embracing the great delta of the Rhine, Maas and Scheldt, were one of the nodal points of European trade; the fact itself is well known to the point of triteness, the reasons for it are almost selfevident, and neither calls for elaboration. But just as this region as a whole constituted an economic centre of gravity, so at any given time it contained within itself a point of maximum commercial intensity: among the towns with which it abounded one enjoyed the status and power of a metropolis. From the twelfth to the fifteenth century that town was Bruges in Flanders. Then, in the course of the fifteenth century, Bruges was overtaken by Antwerp, and for upwards of fifty years Antwerp wielded a supremacy greater than that of Bruges in its heyday. Antwerp in turn went down under the combined assault of economic change and political upheaval, and this time the leadership passed to the northern fringe of the delta, where Amsterdam awaited its coming. Never so complete as Antwerp's had been, Amsterdam's supremacy lasted considerably longer and was only to pass away when the region as a whole relinquished for a time its long-held primacy.

The rise of Antwerp is thus the obverse of the simultaneous decline of Bruges. It was in the early fourteenth century that Antwerp had made its first challenge: in 1338, for example, the town had its first foretaste of its great future by becoming a centre of English trade. But in 1357 Antwerp

had become an appendage of Flanders, and for half a century its economic interests were sacrificed to those of that county. Only with the advent of the house of Burgundy was this constraint removed and the forces working in Antwerp's favour again given free play. What those forces were was the subject of a famous passage in the sketch of sixteenth-century Antwerp given by Pirenne in his *Histoire de Belgique*:[1] the deepening of the waterway from the sea, the amenities of its harbour, the rise of the English cloth trade and the advent of the High Germans, and above all the liberalism which characterised the town's approach to business problems – these were, for Pirenne, the main reasons why Antwerp forged ahead of its neighbours. To review these points briefly will be a convenient way of glancing at the results of some of the work done since his day.

Ease of access is a prime requisite of a great seaport, and since Antwerp's ascendancy coincided with the final natural improvement of its waterway to and from the sea, it is tempting to place this high among the changes operating in the town's favour. The amelioration of the western Scheldt certainly encouraged sea-going ships to make its passage instead of mooring at its mouth, in the 'road of Walcheren', and there trans-shipping their cargoes. In the 1520s the number of ships which paid the 'anchorage money' due from this direct traffic varied between six and thirty-six a year: in the 1530s the corresponding figures are 88 and 319, and thereafter the number settled down to between 200 and 300. The years which saw Antwerp at the height of its prosperity thus also saw the maritime navigation of the western Scheldt in full swing. But the system of trans-shipment was still far from superseded even as late as the mid-sixteenth century: and it is not difficult to understand why. Not only was the passage of the river by 'great ships' still a somewhat risky business, but the port facilities at Antwerp were so limited that a ship passing directly upstream might be seriously delayed on arrival. In this respect the facilitation of direct access from the sea had created, rather than solved, a problem, and in general we may conclude that its benefits, although substantial, were less decisive than has sometimes been claimed. What is clear is that these benefits were only an addition to the advantages which the town already enjoyed in its communications with a wide hinterland to the south and east. The network of waterways radiating southwards was one of the two physical features which from early times made Antwerp a natural focal point for movement from the landward side: the other was the town's location at the terminus of one of the land-routes running westwards from the Rhine towards the North Sea and the Channel. The great medieval road from Cologne to Bruges ran through Ghent and

1 1923 edn., vol. III, iii, p. 271.

Mechlin, but a branch road left this highway after its crossing of the Maas and ran north-west across the Campine towards the Scheldt estuary. This was the South German's way to Antwerp, as the western Scheldt was the Englishman's way there. It was an inexpensive route, passing through a poor countryside where provisions were to be had cheap, and was notably free from tolls and other exactions. In the villages of the Campine one may yet meet with inn-names like 'The Cologne Wagon' which preserve the memory of this vanished highway.

Before the arrival of the Portuguese, the South Germans were one of the two leading 'nations', as such groups were called, who came to do business at Antwerp. There was a time when the name 'Hanse' was written large across this page of the town's history. But it is now clear that the importance once ascribed to the Hanse corresponded more to that league's high degree of organisation, and its resulting prominence in the documents of the period, than to economic realities. By contrast, the South Germans used to be overlooked, with the exception of a few leading firms, chiefly because, as a loosely knit group, they left little trace in the archives. Based upon Nuremberg, Augsburg and Frankfurt, and linked with such places as Berlin, Breslau and Leipzig, they traded in the metals yielded by the mines of central Europe and in the fustians woven in the rural industry of the South German uplands, for both of which there was a brisk demand from all Mediterranean countries. Their big firms, the Fugger, Höchstätter, Welser and Tucher, had all begun with a combined metal and cloth trade, but in their upward progress they tended to shed cloth and to specialise in metals, above all copper and silver. Of the Mediterranean 'nations' at Antwerp, Italians took the leading place. They were important not only for their trade in costly wares, including fine cloth and the expensive Levantine spices which the cheaper Portuguese product never drove off the market, but for their commercial and financial *expertise*: the first generation of bankers at Antwerp were all Italians, successors of the firms which had until then clustered at Bruges, and later they threw up many business leaders and officials as well as, in Ludovico Guicciardini, the town's greatest publicist.

But it is undoubtedly the English who hold pride of place among the Antwerp 'nations' of this time, and the choice of Antwerp as the 'mart town' for English cloth ranks second only to the establishment of the spice-staple as the reason why merchants were drawn there from all over Europe. It was in the face of many discouragements that the English cloth trade had struggled to acquire an entrepôt in the Netherlands during the fifteenth century. The persistence which it displayed, and which was to be so amply rewarded, was a virtue born of necessity, for it was their failure to maintain themselves elsewhere along the coast of Europe which drove so many English merchants to try their fortunes in the Netherlands; there

is much to be said for the view that the rise of the English cloth trade to Antwerp, like the rise of the Merchant Adventurers' Company which came to dominate it, was a function not of the growth but of the contraction of English overseas trade as a whole. It might be supposed that this situation would have tied the Englishmen's hands when it came to bargaining about the terms of their admission. Had the Netherlands then formed a unitary state, this might well have been the case. But the union of those territories by the dukes of Burgundy was a personal one which, after the collapse of its central power on the death of Charles the Bold, waited for half a century before seriously resuming the task of state-building. Thus well into the period under review – and in some respects throughout it – the various territories, and within them their powerful urban communities, continued to enjoy a measure of autonomy, and to display a degree of particularism, which belonged wholly to the middle ages. From the English point of view this was the saving grace, for it turned their weakness into strength. One of the secrets of the privileged position which the Merchant Adventurers came to enjoy in the Netherlands was their calculated avoidance of any commitment to the sole use of one of the towns – Antwerp, Middelburg and Bergen-op-Zoom were the three chiefly concerned – which were available to them. In defence of this tactical principle they had to resist not only the blandishments of the towns themselves but also the pressure of the dukes of Burgundy, who would have preferred in their own interests to see the cloth trade organised under a compulsory staple. When in 1497, for instance, Philip the Fair sought Henry VII's approval for the erection of such a staple at Antwerp and Bergen-op-Zoom, the Merchant Adventurers set their face against it and insisted on the freedom of choice which enabled them to 'drive the townships, by fear of their withdrawing and absenting, to reform their wrongs'. The mere threat of withdrawal was not always enough, and from time to time the Englishmen transferred themselves to a rival town for a period of one or more fairs.

But it was Antwerp which was to be the English mart town *par excellence*, and it was there that they were to be joined by almost all the other trading 'nations'. Was this because these merchants found better and more enlightened treatment there, fewer restraints and greater toler-ance – in other words, was it because Antwerp was more 'liberal', more 'modern', than her neighbours? Four main conditions governed the conduct of international trade at Antwerp: the technique of the trade itself; the conditions upon which the various 'nations' were admitted; the special régime which obtained during the town's two fairs; and the policy of the Netherlands government. Of these, the first is the least important. The technique of trade was, generally speaking, common to the whole of Europe, with advances – like the double-entry bookkeeping which quickly

reached Antwerp – being usually made first in the south and brought north by their originators: but in the fifteenth century goods were bought and sold, delivered and paid for, according to much the same rules in all trading towns. It is true that after 1500 the growing volume and complexity of business at Antwerp were accompanied by some refinements of business practice: but in so far as these helped to make the town a freer and more modern business centre the credit belongs less to the town than to the merchants who devised and perfected them.

Of greater importance are the terms upon which the 'nations' came to Antwerp, for here, if anywhere, we should expect to find specific evidence of the town's liberality: and since of all the nations it was the English who secured the best terms, they are the example most calculated to bear out the argument. It is undeniable that among the privileges accorded to the English merchants by Antwerp in the half-century after 1446, the year of the first 'statute' defining their position, were several of a 'liberal' and 'modern' kind: thus in place of the old *gastenrecht*, the code of rules regulating the foreigner's sojourn, Englishmen at Antwerp came to enjoy almost complete freedom in this respect, and if they were still required to employ native brokers in their dealings with other foreigners, the scope of these go-betweens' activities, both legitimate and otherwise, was increasingly limited. But all the evidence goes to show that it was not only Antwerp which was thus relaxing the rigid aliens' code: even Bruges, which is generally represented as lagging far behind, was making perceptible progress in the same direction. Moreover, it seems certain that, far from being spontaneously bestowed by the towns, these privileges were extorted under that threat of withdrawal of which we have already heard the Merchant Adventurers boasting. The towns themselves were under no illusion as to the way in which they were being played off against one another, and on occasion they could draw together in self-defence, as Antwerp and Bergen-op-Zoom did in 1488 'against the injustices which the merchants of the kingdom of England, more than those of any other nation, commit against them'.

We are on firmer ground when we come to the Brabant fairs, the 'four markets' so famous in the history of the delta region. As instituted, or perhaps only regularised, by Duke John II at the opening of the fourteenth century, each fair was to last for two weeks only, but these had soon lengthened to six (of which in theory the first two covered the journey to, and the last two the departure from, the fair itself), so that during the fifteenth century the four fairs covered, with an overlap of two weeks, a minimum of twenty-two weeks, not much less than half the year. They were not evenly spaced, but fell into two groups. The *Paasmarkt* or Easter Fair at Bergen-op-Zoom, which opened on Maundy Thursday, was followed immediately by the *Pinxten* or *Sinxtenmarkt*, the Pentecost Fair,

at Antwerp: similarly the Antwerp *Bamismarkt* or St Bavo's Fair, which opened towards the end of August, was followed with scarcely a break by the Bergen *Koudmarkt* or Winter Fair, beginning in the last week of October. The proximity of the two towns (they were only thirty miles apart) made it easy for merchants to visit both in the course of their spring or autumn round, and this helps to explain why the two Bergen fairs, after they had lost their commercial significance (as they had largely done before 1540), could still fulfil the more modest but useful purpose of providing two of the 'settlement periods' in the financial year. Of the value of these fairs to the two Brabant towns during the fifteenth century there can be little question. Their régimes, it is true, did not differ significantly either from one another or from those of other towns: the freedom of persons and goods from legal process save in criminal causes, and their special protection against violence, robbery and similar misdeeds – these were the essential features. But the jealousy with which the towns guarded their fair-rights, and their eagerness to extend their duration, are proof sufficient of the importance attaching to them.

When we move into the sixteenth century, however, the picture changes. While the fairs remain outwardly unaltered in both towns, their real significance begins to differ. Bergen-op-Zoom continues as a 'fair town', its foreign trade concentrated within the few weeks of its two fairs and almost non-existent outside them; moreover, its fairs themselves are soon in full decline, with the number of merchants visiting them dropping steadily from some 400 in the 1520s to 100 or less in the early 1540s. Indeed, it is hardly too much to say that the Bergen fairs were kept alive only by the determination of the English cloth merchants to use them as a foil to Antwerp. At Antwerp, on the contrary, not only do the fairs themselves flourish, but they do so increasingly as the peaks of a commercial year which is becoming more or less continuous: here again, English influence was important, or even decisive, for the control exercised by the Merchant Adventurers' Company was in favour of periodicity rather than of continuity in trading, and the cloth fleets were timed to arrive during the fairs, especially the *Sinxtenmarkt*. While it appears, on the one hand, therefore, that Antwerp's trade was bursting out of its medieval fair-limits, on the other it remains true that, even when trade had attained its maximum volume, the fairs still provided the framework of the commercial year, as well as being the basis, as we shall see, of the financial calendar.

There remains the attitude of the Burgundian rulers of the Netherlands towards the rising metropolis on the banks of the Scheldt. The medieval constitution of those territories, that cumbrous mass of privileges, customs and institutions which it was the fatal mission of the Houses of Burgundy and Habsburg to attempt to suppress and supplant, for long

obstructed their freedom of action and hindered the pursuit of any consistent policy, economic or otherwise. It is therefore only in those few fields of economic policy, such as the administration of the toll and currency systems or the negotiation of commercial treaties, in which the central government had a freer hand that we must seek, at least during the earlier period, traces of partiality towards Antwerp. It was Flanders which had given the house of Burgundy its first footing in the Netherlands, and this fact continued to be reflected in its measures until, under Charles the Bold and still more under Maximilian, the persisting decline of Flemish industry and trade, and the political unruliness which accompanied it, broke that original tie. What Flanders lost, Brabant, and above all Antwerp, gained. It was the town's support of Maximilian during his ten years' struggle with the Flemish towns which forged the bond between Antwerp and the dynasty which was to last unimpaired until the advent of Philip II seventy years later. The alliance was inaugurated by Maximilian's charters of 1488 calling upon the 'nations' resident at Bruges to transfer themselves to Antwerp. These brought, among others, the Portuguese factor to the town for the first time.

If, therefore, Antwerp owed something to political good fortune during the formative years which closed the fifteenth century, it continued to enjoy the legacy of those years throughout its half-century of maturity and grandeur during the sixteenth. In the state which, for good or ill, its Habsburg rulers began to bring progressively under their direct control, Antwerp was able to boast a degree of political, religious and fiscal autonomy remarkable even in its own country. But it did so on two conditions. The first was its ability and willingness to 'support the prince in his necessities', the second its acceptance of the policy which the prince pursued with the resources thus provided. For the first fifty years of the century, which were all but coterminous with the rule of Charles V, these conditions were substantially fulfilled. The magistracy was invariably ready with the money required to confirm an old privilege or acquire a new one, to redeem a toll or farm a tax, while its wealthiest strangers made the loans which an imperial foreign policy called for increasingly. In the same way, the town accepted, with no more than an occasional complaint, a policy which it could either approve or, so far as its own interests were concerned, neutralise. This was notably true of religion. In an age of rising intolerance the magistrates used the town's privileges to protect its business community. They were not interested in small fry, who furnished the great majority of the Antwerp martyrs, many of them under the generic term of 'Anabaptists'. But anyone who mattered in the business world, whether one of the 'New Christians' who flocked to Antwerp from Portugal or an errant member of one of the Catholic 'nations', would be given the manifold protections of municipal law and custom. It was the

growing rift between this attitude and the government's policy which more than anything else estranged them, especially after 1555. Had the government not been so financially dependent upon the town and its money market, it might have struck earlier against this privileged obstructionism. As it was, Granvelle could counsel Philip II to foster the trade of Ghent as a counterpoise to Antwerp – Ghent, which had given no trouble since its overthrow in 1540 and which would be easier to manage than the 'overmighty subject' on the Scheldt. It was an idea far removed from that of 1488.

Until a generation ago the only figures relating to Antwerp's trade at or near its peak were those of Guicciardini. Writing of the years about 1560, when decline had perhaps already set in, Guicciardini gave a series of round sums of the value of the various commodities imported into the town each year. Out of a total value of nearly sixteen million gold crowns, English cloth accounted for five millions, or nearly one-third; next came Italian wares, especially fine cloth, amounting to three millions, Baltic wheat at nearly one and three-quarters and German wines at one and a half millions, and French wines and Portuguese spices each at one million. Spanish wines and wool, German cloth, French *pastel*, English wool and French salt, representing progressively smaller sums, made up the total. These traditional figures may now be compared, thanks to the work of Belgian historians, with total figures of Antwerp's exports for certain years obtained by multiplying the yield of taxes levied by the Netherlands government upon the country's export trade to help to pay for the French wars. Chief among these taxes were that of 1 per cent laid upon all exports in 1543–5 and that of 2 per cent levied upon goods exported to southern Europe in 1552–4. The totals thus derived include one of about 1,100.000 pounds Flemish[1] for all exports, both by land and water, from Antwerp for the twelve months February 1543 to February 1544, and one of more than 1,200.000 for the twelve months following, while the yield of the one-half per cent tax of November 1551–January 1552 represents an annual total of two and a quarter millions. Since the government was, in a fiscal sense, less interested in the import than in the export trade, we are less well informed about it: but there is an import figure corresponding to that for exports in 1551–2 of roughly 1,600.000 pounds.

Wide as may be their margin of error, these and similar figures bear out

[1] Here, as elsewhere in this section, the term 'pounds Flemish' means the pound of 240 groschen, not the pound of 40 groschen, or Carolusgulden, in which the accounts in question were made up. The totals given here thus equal one-sixth of those taken from the accounts themselves, plus an estimated addition for the exports of the Merchant Adventurers which, as De Smedt has shown (*De Engelse Natie te Antwerpen*, vol. II, pp. 437, 441), are not represented in them.

what can be inferred from non-statistical evidence, that the volume of trade passing through Antwerp varied considerably at different periods of the town's 'golden age'. A broad indication of this pattern of commercial activity is furnished by the figures, published in 1939, of the yield of the toll of Iersekeroord, or toll of Zeeland. This was the principal toll levied upon traffic using the waterways of the Scheldt delta, including the western Scheldt between Antwerp and the sea, a route which probably accounted for one-half of the town's trade. Since the toll was usually farmed, most of the figures are those of the annual rents paid by lessees, but from time to time the actual yield is recorded. Taken together, these figures point to the conclusion that the 'golden age', the years between 1500 and 1560, was made up of three fairly well-defined phases: an opening phase of intensely rapid expansion during the first twenty years of the century, followed, after a recession during the next ten years, by some twelve to fifteen years of stability at about the maximum so far achieved, and then, from the late 1540s, by a dozen years of violent fluctuation, during which new high records alternated rapidly with deep troughs of depression.

The trade totals of the 1540s and 1550s can be made the basis of some instructive comparisons. Used to measure the trade of Antwerp against that of other Netherlands ports, they show that the town was handling between 70 and 80 per cent of the country's foreign trade, eloquent testimony to the extent to which the whole region had become, in Pirenne's phrase, only a suburb of the metropolis. Again, the export totals of the years 1543–5, the equivalent of about £900,000 sterling, are nearly three times as great as the corresponding figure for London and about half as much again as that of all English ports put together. One notable feature is that Antwerp appears to have enjoyed a 'favourable' balance of trade. In view of the large loans raised by foreigners in Antwerp, we might have expected an import surplus representing the service of these loans. That the reverse seems to have been the case is a tribute to the importance of the town's industrial effort in converting its imports of raw materials and semi-manufactures into finished products of greater value.

It is generally believed that the trade of sixteenth-century Antwerp was predominantly 'transit' in character, that the town was little more than a great entrepôt for goods produced elsewhere than in the Netherlands and passing through it to more or less distant destinations. In fact Antwerp did a good deal more than act as a conduit for a stream of trade set in motion elsewhere. For not only was the town itself an important final market for many goods, but the industrial life which it shared with the surrounding region was an integral part of its commercial activity. The 'special trade', to use a convenient modern term, thus generated or quickened consisted, on the import side, of foodstuffs, raw materials and semi-manufactured

goods, and on the export side of goods produced or processed within the town or in the surrounding region. Antwerp was the largest town of the most densely populated part of northern Europe. A mid-sixteenth-century estimate of 3,000,000 for the population of the Netherlands is probably something of an exaggeration – a modern authority would reduce it to less than two – but density was certainly greatest in Flanders and Brabant, with the latter accounting for more than half a million. Antwerp's own resident population increased from less than 50,000 at the opening to about 100,000 by the middle of the century, when the town ranked, in point of size, next after the six greatest cities in Europe; and there was the large floating element of visiting merchants, shippers and travellers. The victualling of this urban concentration required a continual flow of trade. The produce of local agriculture and fisheries, together with great quantities of fuel in the form of peat, arrived week by week for the town's sustenance and warmth; while its possession of the three staples of grain, fish and oats meant that it also handled much of the food imported from abroad for the whole of Brabant. A number of these imports underwent processing at Antwerp which brought them within the scope of industrial activity: fish-curing, sugar-refining and soap-making were early promi-nent there.

By far the most important branch of the special import trade was that concerned with textiles. By the sixteenth century there was little spinning or weaving done at Antwerp, but cloth-finishing had developed into a major industry: in 1564 the cloth-dressers' guild alone counted 1,600 masters and apprentices. The bulk of the cloth dressed at Antwerp came from England, for those who bought English cloth usually had it finished in the town before carrying it to its destination. In 1565 the Antwerp magistracy estimated the annual importation of English cloth at upwards of 700,000 pounds Flemish, of which more than 400,000 pounds' worth were for re-export; since the cost of finishing processes averaged one-third of the wholesale price, the town's earnings from this branch of its trade may have reached 100,000 pounds Flemish. Besides the cloth itself, the finishing industries needed various other imports. First in rank was alum, the indispensable mordant for fixing colours (it was also used in making copper). After the discovery of the deposits at Tolfa in the Papal States, Charles the Bold had forbidden the import of alum from any other source, and in 1491 Philip the Fair and Maximilian had strengthened the monopoly by making Antwerp the staple for alum. The trade itself was in the hands of contractors, generally Italians, but the town assumed responsibility for the payment of a duty of 25 shillings a last: as the trade grew the sum involved became very large, until in 1555 it was redeemed by a capital payment of 240,000 pounds Flemish. Next come the dyes which the alum was used to set. The Antwerp dyeing industry had three stock

colours, black, blue and tan. Not until after the middle of the century did the Antwerpers find an alternative to woad as the source of their blue dye, and this woad (the French *pastel*) formed a principal import from southern France, Spain and Portugal, while some was re-exported to neighbouring countries. The opening up of the world brought new dyestuffs. Indigo was known at Antwerp from soon after 1550, but was not used in dyeing until somewhat later, and the redwood from which Brazil took its name, although among the earliest items of the Portuguese trade, only slowly replaced the traditional madder. Cochineal came in from about 1550.

A marked feature of the other new industries which developed at or near Antwerp was their growing consumption of metal. The armaments industry rose and flourished under the stimulus of the French wars; while the weapons and armour sold at Antwerp partly came in ready made from Germany or from the valley of the Maas, some of them were made at Antwerp or at nearby Mechlin from imported metal. An impression of the abundance of artillery can be gathered from the fact that at the ceremonial entry of Prince Philip in September 1549 about a thousand guns were ranged outside the gate through which he entered the town. Another flourishing industry was bell-founding, for which the innumerable steeples which soared above that flat landscape kept up a brisk demand.

It is clear that out of the total volume of Antwerp's imports no small proportion was moving into rather than merely through the town, either to be consumed there or to leave it again only after fashioning at the hands of local craftsmen. The corresponding export trade included, besides the major items already mentioned, a host of things which contributed to that rising standard of material comfort and cultural progress which characterised the age: furniture of all descriptions, floor- and wall-coverings, tapestries, paintings and statuettes, ornaments and jewellery, glassware, books, papers and maps, and the musical instruments for which the Netherlands were renowned. The list is lengthened and diversified by the wide range of goods produced elsewhere in the Netherlands and brought to the town for disposal, like the 'new draperies' turned out by the rural cloth industry of Flanders or the cloth towns of the northern provinces, great quantities of which were carried from Antwerp by the Spaniards and Portuguese.

It is a commonplace that Antwerp's trade was handled almost exclusively by foreigners and that natives played a subordinate, even a negligible, part in it: this was Guicciardini's view and, like most of his *dicta*, it was long accepted without question. So far as the main branches of overseas trade are concerned it is indeed substantially correct: from the outset it was Englishmen, Germans, Portuguese and Spaniards who brought their wares to Antwerp and carried one another's away, not Antwerpers who

went in search of these things. In this respect sixteenth-century Antwerp
occupied a position markedly different from that soon to be taken by
Amsterdam, whose overseas trade was largely the creation of the Hol-
landers themselves. But it would be wrong to conclude either that the
Antwerpers had from the beginning tamely acquiesced in this state of
affairs or that it left them with nothing to do but 'stand and wait'. At least
during the earlier phase of the town's ascendancy, the Antwerp merchant
fleet had not been wholly negligible. In European waters we hear of
Antwerpers who trade actively with their near neighbours and even
penetrate the Baltic, and outside Europe of their sporadic efforts to
emulate the great voyages. It was between 1510 and 1520 that the
enterprising Dirk van Paesschen was organising his luxury trips for
pilgrims and traders to Italy and the Levant, and in 1521 that three
Antwerp ships made the voyage to the Far East from which only one
returned. But in measure as the town's trade grew, its own part certainly
became more passive. This was, to no small extent, a result of the hostility
which the earlier efforts had provoked. In the Baltic the Antwerpers had
fallen foul of the Hanse; in England they struggled against mounting
discrimination; above all, their essay in breaking the spice monopoly
incensed the Portuguese and might, if persisted in, have jeopardised that
golden trade. There was, of course, nothing exceptional in all this;
merchants were everywhere called upon to face jealous rivals as well as
natural hazards. If the Antwerpers showed less fortitude than, say, the
Hollanders, it was because they already had so much more to lose by
trade-wars and so much more to gain by accepting the role assigned to
them. There was still plenty for them to do. Trade called into being a
whole range of 'commercial services', and while some of these, notably the
financial ones, also passed into foreign hands, others retained a more
'national' character: thus the notaries public, who flourished on commer-
cial documentation, were usually natives, as were those more numerous,
but less respectable, intermediaries, the brokers, although these became
more cosmopolitan as time went on. One form of business which made
great strides and yet remained largely in native hands was the commission
agency; one of these firms, Van de Molen Brothers, has left a unique
record of its dealings in the form of more than a thousand letters dating
from 1538 to 1544.
    A simple division of the Antwerp trading world into foreign and native
elements ignores that intermediate group of strangers who became domi-
ciled in the town and assimilated to its life. Of these foreign colonies the
largest was the Spanish. The political connection put Spaniards on a
different footing from other strangers and swelled their numbers with non-
commercial figures, chiefly officials and soldiers. In the 1540s about fifty
Spanish merchants were ordinarily resident, and by 1560 the total had

risen to one hundred, with perhaps an equal number of servants and factors. The Portuguese seem to have been numerically about half as strong, while the English colony probably amounted, towards the middle of the century, to fifty or sixty individuals or families, and the Italian 'nations' – Genoese, Florentines and Luccese predominating – to about the same number combined. Frenchmen were numerous, but there are no figures for them, and the Germans also remain indeterminate. All told, by about 1550 there were probably some 400 to 500 merchant strangers domiciled at Antwerp, with an equal number of foreign dependents.

Not all of these foreigners settled there for life, and they included individuals at every stage of assimilation. The factor of a foreign firm spending some years in the town and then returning home might be counted a foreigner still, but a merchant establishing himself there, marrying into a native family and rearing children to whom it would be home, would have moved in the direction of 'naturalisation'. But few strangers took the final step of becoming citizens. Between 1533 and 1582 only 179 individuals of Mediterranean origin, Spaniards, Portuguese and Italians, were admitted to the freedom of the town, and in only two of those years did the number exceed ten: during the same period no more than twenty-three Englishmen became citizens. Clearly, only a small minority of foreign-born residents decided, for whatever reason, to throw in their lot with the town's. Yet it is among this small group of Antwerpers 'by adoption' that we find some of the leading figures of the business world. Erasmus Schetz, who inherited copper, married into spice, and transmuted both into one of Antwerp's largest personal fortunes, belonged to it, as did Gillis Hooftman, the sugar king. These men were as influential as any undiluted foreigner in shaping the town's destiny.

There was very little wholesale buying or selling for cash at Antwerp: cash purchasers were hard to come by and could exact a discount of up to thirty per cent. Of the various forms of credit payment in use the most regular was the division of the sum involved into parts and the fixing of separate days of payment for these parts: the customary division was into three parts, the first payable at the forthcoming fair and the others at the two succeeding fairs. One circumstance which helped to make this arrangement, long established in all European trading countries, all but universal at Antwerp was the convenient intervals which separated the fairs. By the sixteenth century the 'settlement periods', which had originally fallen within the fairs, had come to follow immediately after them: ten days were normally allotted but these could be extended, and with a little adjustment the four 'settlement periods' could be made the basis of

quarterly payments. By an ordinance of 1521 the four periods were timed
to begin early in February, May, August and November, the first two
being the settlements of the two Bergen-op-Zoom fairs and the others
those of the Antwerp fairs.

It was on the dual foundation of credit purchases and bill payments that
the trade of Antwerp was borne. To contemporary merchants it was
selfevident that without these facilities trade upon the scale to which they
had become accustomed would have been impossible. 'Merchants', de-
clared Sir Richard Gresham in 1538, 'can no more be without exchanges
than ships at sea without water.' The provision of the necessary credit was
the chief function of the sixteenth-century banker. Although the mutual
dealings between merchants which had characterised exchange operations
in the later middle ages lasted on into the sixteenth century, by that time,
especially in great trading centres, the buying of bills, and other forms of
advancing money, were increasingly taken over by bankers. The indiscri-
minate use of the word 'merchants' to denote both traders and bankers
shows that there was as yet no clear differentiation. The universal
tendency of traders, once possessed of some capital, to forsake trading for
banking was everywhere noticed and deplored. Clement Armstrong's
denunciation of the 'rich old merchants' who 'occupy their money by
exchange' was echoed a generation later by Guicciardini, who spoke of
both gentlemen and merchants employing 'all their available capital in
dealing in money, the large and sure profits of which are a great bait'. But
in so far as these merchants-turned-bankers took over and improved the
enormous business in commercial bills, they represented a necessary stage
in specialisation and helped to eliminate some of the disadvantages
attaching to the older practice. They relieved the trader of the necessity to
find his opposite number and they supplied a much-needed element of
confidence. There was much defaulting on bills: payers continually refused
to honour them, often alleging that they had never heard of the drawers. A
merchant who dealt with a well-known firm which had agents or corre-
spondents in all the chief centres was less likely to encounter this difficulty
and consequently found it easier to persuade creditors to accept bills in
payment.

In the sixteenth century there was no regular discounting of bills; they
were bought and sold outright and redeemed on maturity. Interest
normally ran at three per cent per fair, or twelve per cent per annum, and
brokerage at one-half per cent. Thus if a London banker bought a 'usance'
or one-month bill at 26s. 8d. Flemish to the pound sterling, about 4d. of
this rate represented the profit from interest and brokerage, leaving a 'net'
exchange rate of 26s. 4d. If, simultaneously, an Antwerp banker was
buying a similar bill on London, he would deliver for every pound he was
due to receive there this 'net' figure of 26s. 4d. minus the 4d. due for

interest and brokerage, that is, 26s. Thus an identical exchange rate was normally represented on the Bourse and in Lombard Street by two figures differing by 8d., and it was always the Antwerp rate which was the lower. For bills at longer terms, or at times when money was 'tight', interest was higher and the gap between the two figures proportionately greater. A banker buying a bill and arranging for its collection abroad thus derived from the transaction a profit which could be calculated beforehand. But if he wished to bring his money home again he had to repeat the process in reverse: in the language of the time, he had to 'rechange'. It was this 'change and rechange' (Latin *cambium et recambium*, Italian *ricorsa*) which constituted the simplest and most widespread form of exchange speculation. The element of uncertainty arose from the fact that the banker could not tell in advance the rate at which he would be able to rechange. He could, however, insure against an unfavourable movement by the various devices which went under the name of 'agio', and these could be used to make profits as well as to avoid losses. Exchange fluctuations, and the variations in interest rates with which they were closely connected, provided the sixteenth-century financier with one of his two major fields of speculation. (The other was the movement of commodity prices, and in particular the prices of wares which, like spices, were irregular in supply and could be 'cornered'.) The conditions of success were then, as now, adequate funds and the ability to move them rapidly in pursuit of marginal advantages. The chief markets involved were Antwerp itself, the South German towns, especially Augsburg, the cradle of German high finance, Lyons, Genoa and the Italian cities. The axis Antwerp–Augsburg was the monopoly of the big German firms, the triangle Antwerp–Lyons–Italy that of the Italians.

Among other branches of speculative business at Antwerp one of the safest and most lucrative was real estate; since the demand for accommodation of all kinds in the town was always ahead of the supply, the buying of land or buildings for a 'rise' was an attractive proposition in which foreigners took an active share. (It was, however, a native, Gilbert van Schoonbeke, who pioneered the greatest of these undertakings, the development of Antwerp's New Town, to the north of the original site, in 1548.) Then there were various forms of insurance. Merchants undertaking long or dangerous voyages were in the habit of insuring their lives during their absence, and out of this practice there developed something resembling modern life insurance: this was, however, frowned upon owing to its many abuses – for one thing, it led to an increase in homicide – and was forbidden in 1571. Marine insurance was in hardly better case. Considering its importance to the commercial world, its unsystematic character is something to wonder at; entrusted for the most part to notaries and brokers, it developed during the first half of the century with

a minimum of control and was riddled with abuse and fraud. The first ordinance against these appeared in 1550, and in 1559 the Piedmontese J. B. Ferufini was appointed controller; ten years later Alva issued his important ordinance on the subject. With so much that was akin to gambling as part of the daily round at Antwerp, it is only to be expected that gambling proper would be rife there. The lotteries which were soon to become the vogue all over Europe took their rise at Antwerp, but another popular form of gambling until its prohibition in 1544, wagers on the sex of children, seems to have been brought there from Spain.

If Antwerp had remained in the sixteenth century simply what it had become in the course of the fifteenth, the commercial and financial centre of the Burgundian Netherlands, it would have played a considerable but limited role in European finance. What transformed the town's role in this respect was the dynastic tie which linked the Netherlands, first with the empire, and then with Spain. Thus drawn into the web of Habsburg dominion, the Low Countries were laid under contribution to Habsburg power; fighting men, weapons of war, shipping, all these entered into the account, but as time went on it was the financial resources concentrated at Antwerp which came to outweigh all else. Since Lyons played a similar part in French government finance, the long-drawn-out struggle between Habsburg and Valois involved a contest in stamina between these two money markets in the course of which both were stimulated into important advances in technique. It was the French war of 1511 which first led the Netherlands government to use Antwerp for loan operations, and from that date until 1542, the year which marked the dividing line between growth and maturity in the money market, public borrowing, while remaining spasmodic, became more frequent. The Netherlands government – and the same is true of other borrowers, save that the Portuguese transactions, being bound up with the spice trade, had a character of their own – raised loans to meet particular needs as they arose; there was no attempt at systematisation and the terms were short. Ehrenberg dates from 1516, a year in which the government borrowed the then large total of 50,000 pounds Flemish, the adoption of the fair-calendar for the timing of loans. Sums were then borrowed for periods varying from one to four fairs, that is, from three months to a year, and if necessary they were 'prolonged' on the same basis. Charles V's ordinance on the dating of the 'settlement periods' was probably not unconnected with his own interest in these dates.

In negotiating these loans the governments concerned relied almost exclusively upon a small group of leading financiers. Besides the Fugger, Höchstätter, Welser, and other South German Houses, whose chief transactions with the emperor originated elsewhere, but who are found doing an increasing amount of government business at Antwerp, the

principal names were, at the outset, those of the Frescobaldi and Gualter-
otti, the last two great Florentine Houses in the Netherlands, and later
those of the Spaniards De Vaille and Moxica and of Lazarus Tucher, the
first of the Antwerp 'money kings'. The restricted nature of the market,
combined with irregularity of demand, meant that interest rates were
high and erratic; in the course of the single year 1516, for example,
the Netherlands government raised loans at between 11 and 31 per cent
per annum, and in the two years 1520–1 at between $15\frac{1}{2}$ and $27\frac{1}{2}$ per
cent. During the 1530s the rate fell steadily to between 12 and 15 per
cent, and although between 1539 and 1542 it tended to rise again, partly
owing to the government's clumsy meddling with the financial system, by
the end of this period the lowering of the rate and the smallness of its
fluctuations bespeak considerable progress in the management of the
business.

The fifteen years between 1542 and 1557 saw financial operations of
unprecedented magnitude at Antwerp. With the outbreak of the new
French war the Netherlands government itself greatly increased the size
and frequency of its borrowings; in 1543 alone it raised over a quarter of a
million pounds Flemish, a figure several times greater than that for any
previous year. Moreover, Charles V now began to borrow heavily on
Spanish account through the Spanish royal factor. Even so, the combined
Habsburg demand was at first outstripped by that of the emperor's
English ally. During the last four years of his reign Henry VIII borrowed
at Antwerp not far short of a million sterling, or about a million and a half
Flemish, to finance his share in the war. Meanwhile, the third royal
borrower, the king of Portugal, continued to raise money on a big scale
against the delivery of spices and is said to have owed half a million
Flemish there in 1543. Notwithstanding the size of these totals, there were
few occasions during these years when money was really scarce, and the
shortages did not last long. Nor did interest rates rise. In general they
ranged between 12 and 15 per cent, the level to which they had fallen
during the 1530s. Moreover, they were now much steadier than ever
before. Clearly, the supply of money was adequate to the demand. For the
capital accumulation which enabled Antwerp to shoulder these great new
burdens the money market had to thank the forty years of commercial
preeminence enjoyed since 1499. But for the machinery by which this
capital was mobilised into these huge credits the governments concerned
had to thank the financial experts upon whom they had come increasingly
to rely.

The greatest of these experts in the Antwerp of the 1540s was the Italian
Gaspar Ducci. His career is an epitome of most of the financial develop-
ments of the age. Beginning as a commodity broker and commission
agent, in which capacities he made big deals in several of the staples of

Antwerp trade, he gravitated in the accustomed manner into finance. Operating mainly between Antwerp and Lyons, he quickly became the greatest exchange speculator of the time. Ducci was not content to profit by the normal discrepancies in interest rates and exchange rates; he used his own resources to create plenty and scarcity of money alternately at each end of his line of operations, driving up the rates to his own profit and to the undoing of his competitors, especially the Florentines. To the violent hostility which his methods aroused on commercial grounds there was added the suspicion provoked by their political implications. For Antwerp and Lyons were the financial strongholds of rival and often warring governments, and Ducci's activities cut across this alignment. Yet it was to this king of the financial jungle, who was moved by nothing save the spur of his own unbounded avarice and ambition, that the Habsburg monarchy was chiefly indebted for that mobilisation of the financial power of Antwerp which carried it through the 1540s and early 1550s. The chief instrument which Ducci employed for this purpose were the *Rent-meestersbrieven*, the bonds which the receivers-general of the Netherlands issued in their own name but which were secured upon the revenues coming into their hands. They were 'bearer bonds', redeemable by whoever came into their possession, and were thus readily negotiable, being in this respect the counterpart of commercial acknowledgements of indebtedness whose widespread use as negotiable instruments had been given legal recognition by an ordinance of 1536. What Ducci grasped was that the regular issue of such bonds would both serve the government directly by attracting small-scale capital and also indirectly by linking its borrowing more closely with commercial borrowing. At Lyons the same object was to be achieved by the 'King's Letters' issued by the French government.

It was the Antwerp world of high finance which was smitten by the first of the catastrophes of the third quarter of the century. In 1557 Spain and France declared themselves bankrupt, and three years later Portugal did the same. For the bankers who had lent the two Iberian governments such great sums these were heavy blows: they saw their loans compulsorily converted into five-per-cent annuities, which meant not merely a drastic reduction of interest but a large-scale amortisation of funds. But they were not the only ones to suffer. The state bankruptcies were followed by those of public authorities in the Netherlands, among them the receiver-general and a number of towns, and these by a host of private ones: the recent mobilisation of small-scale capital by the money market and the investment boom now spread the effects of the failures far and wide.

    The financial crisis was in itself a shock from which recovery would not

be rapid or easy; but it had been heralded and accompanied by distur-
bances, less sensational yet more ominous, in the world of trade. First in
point of time, and perhaps in significance, had been the discontinuance, as
a permanent institution, of the Portuguese royal factory in 1549. What-
ever the reasons for this step, or its immediate consequences, it symbolised
the passing of an age. Half a century of relative stability in the pattern of
the spice trade, with Antwerp as its centre, was to be followed by twenty
years of dislocation and scarcity in the course of which a different pattern
would emerge, a pattern in which Europe would draw its spices direct
from Lisbon or from the reviving Levant route and Antwerp would sink
from preeminence to parity with other towns, especially the ports of the
Mediterranean, in its handling of this trade. One of the changes which
may have weakened the Portuguese dependence upon Antwerp was the
ease with which, from soon after 1545, silver needed for the East Indies
could be scooped up out of the great stream which then began to flow into
Spain from the New World and thus the supply of European silver, which
the Portuguese had previously obtained from the South Germans at
Antwerp, be the more readily foregone: perhaps another was the willing-
ness of those same purveyors to deliver their other metals elsewhere than
on the banks of the Scheldt. The huge list of copper goods covered by a
three-year contract between the Fugger and the royal factor in 1548 was to
be delivered at Lisbon.

For the English cloth trade these were also years of strain. The steady
expansion of that trade since the beginning of the century – London
exports rose from some 50,000 pieces a year in 1500 to twice that figure by
the early 1540s – was quickened by the currency debasement from 1544 to
reach its peak in 1550, when the London total was over 130,000. But then
the simultaneous effect of temporary saturation in the market, of rising
English prices, and of the devaluation of 1551 intended to bring these
down, was to deal the trade a severe blow and to leave it unsettled for
more than a decade. In this situation English efforts to find new markets
and to reach old ones directly, and the sharpening of measures against
foreign (including Antwerp's own) competition, induced a worsening of
relations which, within a dozen years, was to provoke a complete stoppage
of trade and the first removal of the 'mart' outside the Netherlands.

It was this weakening of the pillars of Antwerp's trade, more than the
damage to the financial superstructure, which brought the 'golden age' to
its close about 1560. The great upheavals, which would cast those pillars
down, were yet to come – in 1566, 1576 and 1584–5: and even after those
disasters the town would be far from prostrate. Indeed, with the dwindling
and departure of the strangers who had so largely created and so richly
profited from the golden years, native energies would to some extent

reassert themselves: thus the years 1562–5 saw the erection of a number of Antwerp companies for trade to the Baltic and the Mediterranean. But Antwerp's role henceforward was to be, in more than this sense, a 'national' one, a reversion to what it had been before the great currents of European politics and trade had made this town the centre of the economic world.

THE REFORMATION MOVEMENTS IN GERMANY

I F T H E Reformation can be said to have begun with a single dramatic event, it was not the alleged posting of Luther's ninety-five theses on the door of the Castle Church in Wittenberg on 31 October 1517. It was rather the stage-managed burning of the papal bull *Exsurge domine*, which Luther committed to the flames before the Elstertor at Wittenberg on 10 December 1520, along with the books of canon law. The entire university was invited to witness this public act of defiance of the church's highest authorities, and after the dignitaries had gone home, students took over the ceremony by holding a parodied procession with a puppet of the pope and a mock papal bull, which they burned along with the books of Luther's opponents. Not long afterwards the first outbreak of collective violence in support of the cause of religious reform took place in Erfurt, the other university town with which Luther had close personal connec-tions and where he found a mass of enthusiastic supporters. Events there on 11–12 June 1521 first took the form of a rowdy student protest against a ban on Luther's supporters among the city's two collegiate chapters. This turned into an organised anticlerical riot, as journeymen and country-folk in town for the mid-week market joined in to sack over forty clerical houses and premises of the town's nominal overlord, the archbishop of Mainz. The Erfurt town council possibly connived at the riot and it certainly used the occasion to force the town's clergy to surrender many of their privileges in return for protection against further popular wrath.

Innumerable events similar to the public demonstration in Wittenberg or the Erfurt 'Parson-storm' were to mushroom overnight in Germany in the early 1520s, turning 'Luther's cause' into a massive religious, social and political upheaval. All involved some combination of public defiance of ecclesiastical authority, festive irreverence towards orthodox religious cult and institutions, revivalist religious fervour, anticlericalism, socio-economic grievance, the passionate involvement of students, artisans and countryfolk, and the not-infrequent complicity of civic authorities willing to exploit the situation to secure secular control over the clergy and the affairs of the church.

Martin Luther was an unlikely figure to precipitate a revolution. He was born in Eisleben in the county of Mansfeld on 10 October 1483 and died there on 18 February 1546. In between he spent virtually all his life in the provincial confines of Thuringia-Saxony, and most of it in the tiny

69

university town of Wittenberg. He spent his formative student years from
1501 to 1505 at the university of Erfurt, where he took his M.A., but
rather than pursuing the family preference for a career in law, he had
entered in 1506 a mendicant order, the Reformed Congregation of
Augustinian Eremites. The order had important connections in the
university of Erfurt, and after Luther took his first theological degree at
the University of Wittenberg he returned to Erfurt to lecture in 1509. His
talents had clearly destined him for high office, for his order sent him to
Rome on official business in 1510, before he returned to Wittenberg to
complete a doctorate and take up a chair in theology in 1512. Luther's
early career was by no means that of a reclusive friar cut off from the
world, but of a potential high flyer actively engaged in the academic and
ecclesiastical life of two of central Europe's leading universities.

Luther was primarily an academic theologian, but one for whom
religion was no mere academic matter. He approached his membership of
a monastic order with a burning desire to achieve spiritual perfection
which would admit of no compromise, attempting to live out a rigorous
monastic piety through what can only be called a form of spiritual
athleticism. His continual awareness of the perceived imperfection of his
own performance combined with a scrupulosity over fulfilling the de-
mands of religious laws and prohibitions to cast him into black spiritual
despair. It is not surprising that he sought a solution to his unresolved
spiritual agonies outside his own inner resources, nor that he as a gifted
theological scholar was driven into ever deeper biblical, patristic and
theological investigations, a potent mixture of religious emotions and
intellectual exploration. By immersing himself in study of the Bible,
Luther found there both the source of and the solution to his inability to
fulfil the demands of the law. He resolved his spiritual crisis on the basis of
a Pauline insight that the individual could not attain perfection through
human endeavour alone; righteousness came only from God in the form
of justifying grace given in response to faith. The living Word of God in
the Bible was the unshakeable rock on which he could found spiritual
certainty, and his fusion of spiritual, emotional and intellectual conviction
was to make him a unique personality in his own time.

This experience has been seen in retrospect as the central theological
event from which the Reformation was to flow, and there has been much
discussion about the date of Luther's 'reformation breakthrough'. It is
possible that he had resolved his own spiritual difficulties before 1516,
although his was a restless spirit, never standing still in exploration of his
major theological and spiritual concerns. Luther was also a 'reactive'
thinker, never following any line of thought through completely or
pursuing its full implications until challenged to do so. His existential
streak led him to react to fresh circumstances and demands by throwing

up fresh thoughts, by elaborating on doctrines enunciated earlier, and by drawing out implications of which he was at first only half aware. It was in this manner that he was led to break with the formal authority structures of the church, without ever setting out consciously to be a rebel.

It is far from certain that Luther's spiritual anxieties were typical of the religious experience of the majority of lay people of his time. It often seems as though the propagation of his religious message worked by first arousing those anxieties before offering a solution to them. The question of the 'state of religion' in Germany at the beginning of the sixteenth century is complex. Certainly there is no evidence of any effective 'dechristianisation' nor of a church in decay, its bereft children thirsting in despair for the refreshing spiritual draught that only Luther could bring. The evidence points rather in the opposite direction, that the generation before the outbreak of the Reformation was characterised by a deeply felt religiosity and an intensification of piety. Yet merely to replace a picture of religious decay with one of over-luxuriant growth still fails to understand the complex chemistry of the rich soil in which the Reformation took root.

For most people of the later middle ages religion had two aspects, functional and soteriological: it was about salvation and about Christian life in the world, offering a means of coping with the anxieties and tribulations of this life as well as assured access to the next. Both were combined in the central experiences of religious cult, the mass and the annual liturgical cycle. These expressed in cultic form the Christian mysteries of salvation as well as providing a form of sacred order for secular life. All religion was based on a sacramental world view, which saw profane existence as dependent on the operations of sacred power, a power which could be applied through the agency of the church for the benefit of both body and soul. The sacramental system was many-sided: the formal sacraments were an automatic means of access to saving grace, as well as being enmeshed in a complex of social practices. Alongside them were the sacramentals, an elaborate structure of benedictions, exorcisms and blessed objects through which sacred power could be employed to meet, bodily, psychic and spiritual needs, often independently of the clergy who imparted this power through their exorcisms and blessings. At the heart of this system stood the central mystery of medieval Catholicism, the most powerful manifestation of the sacred in the profane world, the Real Presence of Christ in the eucharist. This doctrine was inseparable from the perception of Christ's sacrificial and saving death on the cross, completed in his resurrection. Far from being 'unchristian' or semi-pagan, late-medieval religion was powerfully Christocentric, stressing as its main doctrine the Incarnation of Christ and his saving death. It was the humanity of Christ, especially his willingness to suffer for the sins of all,

that formed the focal point of piety. In many ways, Luther's discovery of Christ as the sole mediator of salvation is unthinkable without this emphasis, to which he was merely to give another theological dimension.

Beneath the layers of officially sanctioned doctrine and religious practice there was a flourishing world of 'folk' religion, characterised by a desire to maximise opportunities for access to the sacred beyond those offered by the institutional church. Whether this occurred through the images or relics of saints or holy persons; through pilgrimages to sacred places, where one hoped to experience both spiritual and bodily healing; through new devotions, collective and individual, such as those to Corpus Christi, the Sacred Heart, the 'true image' of the suffering Christ, or the rosary; or through access to cunning folk who offered apotropaic and healing magic, folk religion was characterised by an immense variety of religious opportunity and experience. For some this may have represented spiritual uncertainty, assuaged by an account-book mentality which sought to heap up as many spiritual 'insurance policies' as could be afforded; for others, it may have been a form of sacred conspicuous consumption, through which the well-to-do could more effectively pursue the 'purchase of paradise'. It is undeniable that a cash nexus had crept into religious practice from two sides, from those with a lottery mentality, willing to pay to maximise their chances in the game of salvation, and from those who refused to provide religious services unless the price was right. It was in this free market place of the sacred that the traffic in indulgences grew up and flourished, virtually as a stock exchange of salvation. The role of the clergy, policing and prohibiting many of the manifestations of folk religion yet exploiting them financially, led to a deep rift in religious life that was expressed in a virulent anticlericalism.

Anticlericalism has been singled out as the most potent source of discontent with the state of the church and as an essential propellant of the explosion of reform movements. It can be understood as a reaction against the excessive power wielded by the clergy by virtue of their special status as an ordained priesthood. Such power took several forms: the clergy held important economic and legal privileges; they often exercised secular political power, in the person of prince-bishops or prince-abbots; they laid claim to special social status, setting themselves apart from and above other persons in the community; and they had the power to control moral and social behaviour through the confessional, where they could withhold absolution from the unrepentant sinner. This often led to accusations of clerical hypocrisy, especially about sexual mores, for the clergy were seen to condemn lay sexual offences while being far from blameless themselves, not least in the matter of concubinage. Finally, they controlled access to the most assured channels of grace, the sacraments, while the all-important sacramentals depended for their efficacy on a

priestly blessing. To ensure a monopoly of sacred power, the clergy also sought to outlaw the attempts of lay people to apply sacred power instrumentally for their own purposes through unapproved use of sacramentals or recourse to popular magic.

The charge of hypocrisy probably featured most strongly in lay anticlericalism, the contrast between what the clergy professed to be and how they were seen to behave. But more often they were accused simply of abuse of power, of tyranny and deceit in the way they dealt with their flocks. The most powerful revelation to flow from Luther's theology was that all this elaborate structure of power rested on a false premise. The corollary of his view of justification through the saving grace of Christ was the removal of all intermediary figures in the process of salvation, leading to the doctrine of the priesthood of all believers. Its devastating implication for the institutional church was that priests were not specially privileged religious persons and that they could not lay claim to any special powers over lay people, much less demand money for their exercise. The propaganda for religious reform of the 1520s repeatedly drove home this message – the clergy had cheated and deceived the people of Christ in order to maintain their own power and tyranny.

It is one of the many ironies of the Reformation, therefore, that the state of the clergy actually appears to have been improving at the very time that they were drawing most fire from propagandist critics. The fifteenth century saw a trend towards professionalisation, with the beginnings of a graduate clergy and attempts of episcopal visitors to introduce new standards of decorum into the behaviour of parish priests, setting them socially and morally apart from their parishioners. There was provision of handbooks and manuals on how parish clergy were to carry out their tasks, such as Johann Ulrich Surgant's 1503 *Manual for the Parish Priest*, as well as collections of postils, or model sermons, and catechisms containing basic doctrine. Printing made possible the wider distribution of such handbooks and of liturgical manuals, while extending the available range of pious works such as the *Ars moriendi* and the so-called *Biblia pauperum*, both of which were as likely to be found on the shelves of the clergy as of pious educated lay people. Indeed, the high proportion of manuals of piety found in the early output of printers may have been due in great part to extensive clerical readership. This explains why the bulk of the first-generation leaders of the reform movements were religiously sincere, well-educated clergy, often with university degrees and holders of established ecclesiastical offices. The Reformation was essentially a movement for reform of the church led from within by its own clergy.

The way in which the German church was socially stratified was also to determine many of its institutional reactions to reform. At its highest

levels, it was undeniably a 'nobles' church', its most eminent offices the preserve of princely and aristocratic families. This certainly influenced the generally cautious reaction the aristocracy were to give to religious reform. At another level, that of urban foundations and benefices, it was staffed by the children of the urban classes. This undoubtedly contributed to the desire of German burghers everywhere to take control of religion and the religious institutions within their own walls. Urban corporations and burgher families of means founded new benefices, sought to control the fabric and financing of their churches, and looked to have a say in the appointment of their clergy. In the towns, at least, the church was a 'burghers' church'. This burghers' church could also be called a 'local church', for each urban community tended to view itself as Christendom in miniature. We could even speak not of the church universal but of an agglomeration of thousands of local churches. The most meaningful ecclesiastical unit was the parish; above it, and often more remote, stood the diocese, where the church dignitary most frequently encountered was likely to be the episcopal financial or legal official, rather than the bishop. The same was true of rural religion, which emphasised the sacredness of place, and which guarded jealously its local saints and even its local devotions to Christ or the Virgin, so that there appeared to be many Christs or Virgins. Rural religion, no less than urban religion, was local religion.

In such a situation, the tendency for the pope to extend claims to supremacy over national and local churches was bound to be a double source of conflict and resentment: at the level of the 'political nation', anxious to preserve German independence, and at that of the local parish, where the papal hierarchy could appear even more distant. The attempt to finance the papacy's growing needs as a secular principality on the basis of fees, taxes and the exploitation of indulgences created hostility and alienation. When first humanists and then reformers began to denounce papal claims to hegemony as bogus and positively unchristian, they found a willing response, not only among the 'political nation' or the ordinary laity, but also among innumerable clergymen, whose freedom of local action was no less curtailed by the extension of Roman power. The success of the reform movements therefore owed a great deal to currents in the very ecclesiastical structures they criticised and ultimately did much to undermine.

There were also other religious impulses which fed into the movement that grew up around 'Luther's cause' and which influenced the nature of its early development. The most important was the yearning for religious reform itself, stretching from Pierre d'Ailly and Jean Gerson, over Nicholas of Cusa to the Fifth Lateran Council of 1512–17, where Aegidio of Viterbo, the General of the Augustinian Order, proclaimed the arrival

of the long-awaited 'age of reform'. There were fifteenth-century move-
ments of piety which exerted a powerful influence on Luther's generation
– the *Devotio moderna* and the mystical piety represented by Tauler and
Meister Eckhart, whom Luther so much admired. These mystical tenden-
cies certainly influenced only a tiny minority, but more widespread was a
pronounced apocalyptic mood, a sense of some imminent 'great change'
in the fate of the world, which would inaugurate the long-awaited reform.
This took both pessimistic and optimistic form. The pessimistic empha-
sised the moral decay of the age and the failings of church and clergy; they
predicted that the wrath of God would befall the entire world because of
it. The optimistic expected the arrival of a new 'age of the Spirit', which
would see a great outpouring of God's grace in the world, and renewed
activity of the Holy Spirit. The great upsurge of religious fervour and the
preaching of the Word in the early 1520s were greeted by many as a
fulfilment of these expectations.

Luther benefited from this apocalyptic mood in several ways. A series of
popular prophecies built up expectations of the coming of a prophet or
holy man who would proclaim the coming of the 'Age of the Spirit',
chastise the clergy and restore the church. This figure was identified with
Luther by both friend and foe alike, and the Wittenberg professor was
incorporated into a medieval prophetic tradition which led to him being
proclaimed as a divinely sent prophet, a term which he himself was willing
to accept by the 1530s, taking up the mantle conferred on him by
Friedrich Myconius, who in 1529 called him 'a prophet of the Lord to the
Germans'. Luther was also to benefit from a widespread enthusiasm for
saintly or supernaturally inspired figures. Such desires had produced near-
ecstatic religious response to situations as diverse as the preaching
missions of John of Capistrano or of the Cardinal Legate Nicolaus of
Cusa, or the mass movement which developed around the so-called Piper
of Niklashausen. The thirst for such holy men is reflected in the propa-
gandist image of Luther which emerged between 1517 and 1520. This
image may have owed much to the nature of Luther's most popular
published works in that period, which were pastoral and consolatory
rather than theological and polemical, but by 1520 he was certainly being
presented to the reading public as a living saint, reflected in the most
common visual image of him as a friar with a halo, holding the open book
of the Bible and with the Holy Spirit hovering above him. Certain features
of the cult of St Martin of Tours were transferred on to this public image;
he was compared with the greatest saints of the church, such as St
Augustine or St Gregory the Great, and even with Christ himself. Such
adulation was eventually to transform itself into a cult of 'Saint Luther'
with numerous associated prophecies and miracles, a cult which continued
until well into the eighteenth century.

The widespread enthusiasm for 'Luther's cause' was therefore as much
due to the expectations brought to him by his fellow Germans as to the
message he had to offer. It is difficult to quantify the range and variety of
ways in which different groups and individuals responded to the *'affaire
Luther'* as it became a matter of mass public attention. It seemed as
though a thousand different flowers had blossomed overnight in a dry
land, and the religious feelings that watered this upsurge were just as
diverse. This explains why we should not expect always to find a
straightforward or uniform reaction to what were perceived to be
'Luther's teachings'. Luther's initial criticism was directed against the
penitential system, embodied in the structure of confession, contrition and
penance, which had become so closely linked to abuse of indulgences.
Indulgences formed part of an elaborate financial network spread across
Germany and feeding directly to Rome, like a gigantic monetary version
of an electric grid, adapted to draw power from the consumer rather than
to supply it. The indulgence issue was highly suitable for winning the
sympathy of the 'political nation' of the Holy Roman Empire of the
German Nation, since it gathered up several grievances into a single issue:
incipient cultural nationalism and resentment at Italian contempt for
Germans as 'barbarous', hostility to Roman financial influence, and
resentment at clerical dominance. At a more immediately religious level,
there were also those who found the demands of the penitential system,
with its associated structure of rules, observances and prohibitions, to be
burdensome and tyrannical. Yet there is no secure evidence that this was
so widespread that we can speak of a general anxiety about the penitential
system. Most ordinary Christians went to confession only once a year and
had no reason to find the confessional or the indulgence system burden-
some, however much they may have reacted against the cash nexus built
into it. For many it was not the promise of release from spiritual anxiety of
the kind that Luther had experienced that appealed, but simply the
message that forgiveness should be free and unconditional.

Although the indulgence controversy embodied a central issue in
Luther's personal and theological perceptions of salvation, it was only a
precipitant for a more complex process that was to bring many other
matters to the fore. Luther became such a central figure in subsequent
events because of the manner in which his 'cause' was taken up by others,
and often pushed into areas he had not intended. Important at the outset
was his position in one of central Europe's fastest-growing universities.
His personal charisma and his teaching at the university of Wittenberg
created a nucleus of dedicated followers willing to go to any lengths in his
support. Wittenberg had already begun to establish its popularity as a new
university, but Luther's teaching put it, and the study of theology, on the
map. From 1512 to 1520 he lectured on various books of the Bible, but

especially on the Epistle to the Romans, embodying in his lectures his distinctive theological views and infusing them with his own brand of passionate spiritual commitment. He also preached regularly in the university church over these years, casting his theological insights into more practical applied form. His impact on his student audience was certainly electrifying, especially once he became the centre of wider public attention.

Luther's ninety-five theses were not meant as any kind of dramatic protest. Someone else, possibly in academic or humanist circles at Wittenberg, was responsible for launching them into print, for he had never intended them for wider circulation. They were written in Latin, and cast in the rhetorical, often polemical style of the scholastic disputation. Turned into German, printed and reprinted, they took on a public polemical tone that made them an unintentional focus of opinion. They circulated rapidly among the world of the literate and the theologically alert, although their relevance to local events in Saxony, where Cardinal Albert of Mainz had instigated a controversial indulgence campaign, undoubtedly secured them, in reputation at least, a rather larger audience. Albert responded to Luther's well-meaning gesture in sending him a copy by referring them to Rome to be dealt with by the highest authority, essentially asking for Luther to be rebuked and silenced. As Luther moved through the various stages of the hearings consequent upon this citation – at the Heidelberg Chapter of his own order in April 1518, his interrogation before the Cardinal Legate Cajetan at Augsburg in October 1518, the Leipzig Disputation of July 1519 and his eventual citation to the 1521 Diet of Worms – he found growing support from learned opinion. His own university stood behind him, and he had the support of the network of German humanists, especially those in Erfurt, and of key officials in and around the court of his prince, the elector of Saxony. Luther also began to write feverishly, taking advantage of a printing press eager for his works. By 1520 he was established as a bestselling author in German, interestingly enough not for the theological polemics in which he was constantly involved, but for his works of pious and pastoral admonition, such as his Exposition of the Ten Commandments or of the Pater Noster, or his sermon on prayer, preparation for death or the contemplation of the sufferings of Christ. These were traditional themes of lay piety, given a new dimension by Luther's application of his own distinctive theological insight.

Luther was not popularised by his own works alone, however, but by a host of publicists and propagandists, who took up and publicised his 'cause' on several fronts at once. A flood of popular pamphlets was let loose, aimed at intervening with 'public opinion' on his behalf, and effectively appealing over the head of the 'political nation' which had

signally failed to secure him a fair hearing at Worms. Among the
outpourings of print were illustrated broadsheets and visual depictions
aimed at the illiterate and semi-literate, often linked to oral forms of
communication such as doggerel rhymes and ballads. There was also an
upsurge of preaching, much of it polemical and agitatory in tone, and
there were numerous public demonstrations of the kinds typified in the
events in Wittenberg and Erfurt. These formal means of communication
seeking support for 'Luther's cause' were turned into an effective 'public
opinion' by the more informal means through which people's ideas were
shaped, by personal exchange in numerous private discussions and
conversations: at the workplace, in the home, in the inn or bathhouse, on
the market square or wherever people gathered to share views and
opinions. Like all good propaganda, the printed literature created the
fiction that it represented 'public opinion', the views of the 'common
man'. However, the real formation of public opinion occurred orally,
through forms of personal interaction by which people made sense of and
internalised the issues that concerned them.

This complicates attempts to understand the reception of Luther's
ideas. Confessional historiography has always attempted retrospectively
to identify 'pure' doctrines to which the success of Luther and the
Reformation are directly ascribed. The major points of 'Luther's teach-
ings' were certainly capable of being presented in direct and simple
propagandist terms and many became slogans in themselves: Christ as the
only mediator, the Bible as the sole immediate source of religious truth,
the freely given grace of salvation through justification by faith, the
priesthood of all believers, or the rights of the Christian community to
direct its own affairs. However, these could also be intermingled with
traditional religious ideas, and understood or developed in ways other
than Luther had intended; often the negative implications of such
doctrines seemed to predominate, assisted by the savage criticism directed
by evangelical propaganda at traditional religious cult and established
ecclesiastical institutions. It was not long before ardent supporters of
Luther's cause were as concerned as his opponents that the implications of
'justification by faith alone' had led many into antinomian behaviour.
Like all revolutions, 'Luther's teachings' could be validly seen to have
unleashed forces as destructive as they were creative.

These forces were not wholly disintegrative, however, for three elements
combined to turn 'Luther's cause' into a more positive and farreaching
demand for reform. First, certain general principles very quickly emerged
which enabled the very diverse responses to his 'message' to be grouped
around a few simple propagandist ideas, providing an apparent unity of
purpose and direction. His supporters invoked support for 'the Word of
God' and 'the gospel', and added the potent populist notion that the

'common man' relying on the Bible alone could determine salvation without the priest or the monk. Such ideas could be seen as authentically rooted in 'Luther's teachings' while unifying, however artificially, the enormously varied range of religious response. The result was a broad-meshed 'evangelical message', carried forward by a wave of enthusiastic preaching in support of the new cause. This was the second positive element, that the cause of the gospel was propagated in and through a powerful preaching revival, such that the preaching of the Word provided an elementary religious experience for both preachers and hearers. The third element involved the creation of an 'evangelical movement'. A widening array of individual personal convictions in response to the 'evangelical message' might be seen in retrospect to add up to something like an abstract 'evangelical public opinion', but this would never in itself have created such widespread demand for reform. If the numerous demands for religious reform had not taken the form of a social movement, they would have run themselves into the sand.

A movement involves forms of collective action undertaken by people sharing a common consciousness united in a desire to change the existing order. Such forms of action are generated by impatience for change and lead to rapid and immediate action carried out by non-institutional means. We can see the process exemplified in the evangelical movement in Wittenberg in the years 1520–2. The mood of rebellious festivity aroused by the burning of the papal bull on 10 December 1520 prevailed throughout the following year, with carnival satires against the pope on Shrove Tuesday 1521, and disruption of the annual mendicant round of the Hermits of St Anthony in October, when their sermons and their attempts to consecrate St Anthony's Water, a form of holy water believed to possess apotropaic powers, were interrupted. Within the university, various theologians were at work drawing the practical consequences from many of Luther's teachings – that the mass was an abomination because of its sacrificial nature, and that the laity had the right to take the chalice in communion. A commission was set up to consider how best to reform liturgical ceremonies, radical solutions were propounded, and some began to act on them at once. On 29 September, Philip Melanchthon and his students received communion under both kinds in the parish church, and the Wittenberg Augustinians ceased holding private masses on 13 October 1521. The approach of All Saints' Day 1521 saw fiery preaching against the mass and student threats of disruption such that the provost of the Castle Church advised not holding mass at all on that day.

Vigorous preaching against the mass, monasticism, prayers for the dead and indulgences was conducted in October and November by the Augustinian Gabriel Zwilling and by Justus Jonas, a former member of the Erfurt

humanist circle. In November Zwilling led a mass exodus from the Augustinians, and further disturbances broke out in the first week of December, when the mass was disrupted on three consecutive days, followed by a warning of more serious disturbance if it were not stopped completely. On Friday, 6 December, a body of armed students and nobles marched around the town with pipe and drum until midnight, threatening to storm the monasteries and strike all the monks dead. The protest against religious ceremonies began to intermingle with wider communal discontents. During this week, a crowd of citizens forced their way into the town hall and presented the town council with articles setting out their demands, which were referred for mediation to commissioners from the elector of Saxony. Disruption of the liturgy continued over Christmas and New Year, and there were threats of iconoclasm, leading to official removal of images from all parish churches. On New Year's Day, Andreas Bodenstein von Karlstadt, a university professor who took the lead in forcing the pace of change, publicly celebrated a 'reformed' mass, in which the congregation were invited to take communion under both kinds even if they had not confessed or fasted. He capped this by betrothing a sixteen-year-old girl from a nearby village and inviting the university and town council as witnesses. The turbulence also spread to surrounding villages and small towns near to Wittenberg. The town council took action to bring religious affairs under control, curtailing the more fevered preaching and issuing statutes to regulate church affairs, in particular laying down a form of 'reformed mass'. They closed the Franciscan and Augustinian houses and inventoried their contents, abolished begging and set up a poor chest drawn from the funds previously devoted to confraternities and mass foundations. These reforms were later repudiated both by the elector and by Luther as too rapid and radical, but they were prototypical for numerous formal acts of religious reform throughout Germany, as was the trajectory of events in Wittenberg as a whole.

Reform movements of this kind were remarkable for the speed with which they spread across the length and breadth of Germany, so that within a few years not only the religious life, but also the social and political life of Germany was in turmoil. The fervour and spiritual dissatisfaction generated by evangelical preaching and propaganda produced desire for change and led to demands for reform being presented to secular and religious authorities. The act of formulating demands, of organising petitions for reform, led to the creation of an 'evangelical' consciousness infused with a 'holy militancy' that could easily spill over into direct action. Preachers often gave the lead, if not by their militancy of action, at least by the vehemence of their speech. Impatience for reform took on the shape of 'reformation by provocation': disruption of the sermons of those who did not preach the 'pure Word of God', disturbance

of church services, ceremonies and processions, abuse of the clergy, attacks on their persons and possessions, sometimes extending to mass expulsions of all clerical persons from the community, attacks on images and other cult objects, the forcible seizure of churches and enforced alteration to religious cult.

A central role was played by the preachers, and it was indeed the range and variety of both preachers and preaching that took the evangelical movement well beyond the normative control that even a figure as charismatic as Luther could impose. The evangelical movement brought to prominence many persons who developed their own distinctive understanding of the issues of religious reform, who gave different emphases to, or drew different implications from, Luther's doctrines, or who developed their own understanding of how reform was to be carried through. Former friars such as Gabriel Zwilling or Johann Schilling in Augsburg not only brought their newly aroused religious passion to their preaching, but a preaching style learned in the mendicant orders which played effectively on popular emotions and attracted mass followings. The range and variety of such preachers is immense: the faint-hearted humanist Johann Sylvanus Egranus, heckled by Thomas Müntzer's supporters in Zwickau; the wandering preacher Hans Maurer, who traversed the area between Strassburg, Basel, Freiburg and Württemberg in 1522; the so-called 'peasant of Wöhrd', Diepold Beringer, a theologically schooled ex-monk active around Nuremberg who passed himself off as an illiterate peasant; men such as the placid former Franciscan Eberlin von Günzberg, who explicitly embodied in his sermons social-critical and utopian themes; the former Dominican Jakob Strauss, preacher in Eisenach, who attacked the Christian validity of usury and the tithe; and unruly and visionary figures such as Andreas Bodenstein von Karlstadt or Thomas Müntzer.

The last two deserve special attention because they developed vastly different notions of reform from those of Luther, especially about how it was to be implemented. Karlstadt held that one should not delay reform in the interests of those who were reluctant or uninformed, nor wait on a tardy secular power to sanction it, and he was instrumental in driving forward the Wittenberg movement of 1522. Müntzer went a step further, demanding a chiliastic reform carried out by the elect, if necessary by the violent overthrow of the 'tyrannical' authorities who opposed it. In south Germany, yet a different emphasis emerged, influenced by the thought of Zwingli, who had developed quite independently of Luther a version of 'evangelical doctrine', and an associated concept of religious reform and how to pursue it. This Zwinglian version of reform was more aware of socio-economic and political issues than Luther or many of his adherents, and was to produce a variant of Reformation peculiar to south Germany and Switzerland.

Many preachers and many of these versions of reform mingled social and economic questions with those of religious reform. There has always been dispute over how far response to the evangelical message was determined purely by religious rather than by socio-economic issues. We can now see the falsity of separating the two in a world where religion provided a guide both for life in this world as well as towards the next. It was in any case impossible from the start to separate social questions from the gospel, especially as Luther had not done so in his early populist tracts. His opinions on the concomitant need for social reform ranged from the rights of parents to control the marriage of their children, the problems of publicly sanctioned prostitution, conspicuous consumption, the treatment of vagrants, beggars and poor relief, to usury, monopolies and commerce. What struck a chord in almost all social classes was the evangelical propaganda attack on simony, the selling of the means of access to salvation through payments for performance of the sacraments, which featured alongside indulgences as a means through which the church had been turned into a profit-making institution, more interested, as the propagandists liked to put it, in skinning its flock than tending to their pastoral needs. However, even more explicitly economic issues were given a religious dimension: the social effects of a money economy, early capitalist economic practices, the attempts of feudal landlords to extract as much as possible from their tenants were all condemned as contrary to Christian ethics, as infringements of the norms of justice and brotherhood found in the Bible. The question of lending on interest struck an especially strong chord, as it echoed a long medieval tradition of condemning usury. The tithe was also a source of resentment, since it had in many places been incorporated or acquired by secular lords and so had been detached from its justification as a form of community support for pastors. Evangelical preaching called its very existence into question, with the revelation that it was nowhere found in the New Testament. Finally, Roman law was accorded a special place in the catalogue of hatred and injustice, being regarded as having destroyed the protection of loyal and customary law, and enabled a new class of lawyers to fleece those unfortunate enough to be involved in its tortuous forms of litigation.

It was not only that evangelical preachers found it difficult to separate strictly religious from social or political concerns – it was also politically impossible. Where a secular government was reluctant to act on demands for reform, or where it actively tried to repress them by prohibiting preaching or expelling evangelical preachers, its authority could be called into question, leading to questions of sovereignty, political authority and communal control becoming embroiled in the cause of the gospel. Luther, as a social conservative, proved to have little understanding for many of the social or political demands which were entangled in the evangelical

cause. His general counsel was to leave matters to the assumed benevolent paternalism of a ruling authority. If the authority was unwilling to redress grievances, he had little advice to offer beyond forbearance. Numerous other evangelical preachers refused to follow this passive line and encouraged more direct action. It was often in this way that even limited religious demands led to social and political upheaval.

The social composition of the supporters of the evangelical movements has long been a matter of interest, with the conventional wisdom being that they found more ready support among townsfolk than in the countryside. However, the towns were not an undifferentiated social mass, and support for the cause of the gospel must be carefully distinguished by social group. The earliest and strongest enthusiasm came from students and humanists, and it was rare to find a university town untouched by this fervour, although Cologne and Ingolstadt stand out as exceptions. Humanist circles in Strassburg and Nuremberg mediated the initial ideas into those two towns, while humanist-trained bureaucrats also played an important part in securing at least a permissive response on the part of several territorial governments. Close to humanists were printers, artists and woodcarvers, all of whom were to profit from the market opened up by evangelical propaganda. Printers were usually well educated, well informed, pragmatic and mobile individuals, untrammelled by guild restrictions and, until uneasy governments began to impose stricter forms of censorship, unhindered in their ability to transmit the most heterodox and lurid of opinions. Their shrewd business sense led them to sniff a new opportunity in the religious and political controversy that swirled around Germany in the 1520s. Many may well have been aware of the possibilities because of the proven popularity of religious literature well before the reformation movements appeared, although many also seem to have had a personal eagerness for the new ideas. On the other hand, political and social élites gave a mixed response: urban patricians were often under-represented among evangelical supporters, well-to-do merchants often over-represented.

Such groups were small and although strategically important would hardly have constituted a mass urban following unless evangelical ideas had appealed to wider groups in the urban population. The numerical bulk of support in towns always seems to have come from the middling artisan classes, ranging from wealthy trades such as goldsmiths over moderately well-off trades such as furriers to the poorer crafts such as shoemakers. Weavers, smiths and gardeners all appeared as strong supporters of the gospel in different towns, in many places attesting their allegiance to evangelical ideas through the corporate views of their guilds. It is difficult to trace the response of women and the young, for the evidence on the former is sparse and that on the latter is inconclusive,

since they often attracted attention disproportionate to their numbers. We also have no reliable estimates of how far the clergy responded to evangelical ideas, however strong they may have been among the leaders of the reform movements.

Outside the towns, the initial and lasting response to evangelical ideas from countryfolk remains a matter of uncertainty. There is evidence of mass interest in evangelical ideas in many areas, as countryfolk streamed into towns to hear popular preachers, and a few preachers were active in the countryside or in small market towns from which they could exert an influence on the peasantry. Propaganda for reform depicted the typical supporter of the gospel as a peasant, embodied in Karsthans, the 'evangelical peasant', wielding his flail in defence of the Word of God. Certainly, unless we could document a widespread response to evangelical ideas among the peasantry, we could speak on the reform movements as a mass phenomenon only in a very limited sense. There was undoubtedly some kind of broader rural enthusiasm for the gospel, although its nature and extent remain unclear and controversial, as we shall see later. Thus, the most easily identifiable support for the evangelical cause was urban.

Because the demand for religious reform found its most ready response in the towns, it has been said that the Reformation was an 'urban event'. It has also been common to emphasise how easily religious reform took root in imperial and free cities. The independence of these towns ensured the incipient reform the necessary free space to develop, while the trend towards lay control of the church was perhaps strongest in these German city republics. They were centres of printing and often had a flourishing intellectual life, which offered a reception first to humanist and then to evangelical ideas, as occurred in Nuremberg, Strassburg or Augsburg. However, it was not free or Imperial cities alone that served as fertile ground for the evangelical movements. Any city with considerable autonomy or claims to it was also a potential host, such as Erfurt, Göttingen, Braunschweig, Hanover or Königsberg. The clustering in northern and central Germany of such autonomous towns favourable to reform has led to the formulation that there was a 'Hansa city Reformation' to match the 'Imperial city Reformation' of the south and south-west. However, there seem to be few grounds for accepting this as a distinct analytical category. What determined the ability of any town to accept a reform movement was possibly more its political freedom of manoeuvre than any such constitutional or economic distinction. There were also limitations on how far even Imperial or autonomous cities could respond to the new ideas. The presence of powerful clerical institutions could act as a brake, as occurred in Cologne and Regensburg, and this was most marked in episcopal cities with resident bishops, such as Würzburg, Bamberg, Mainz or Salzburg. Fear of Imperial disapproval and consequent economic

disadvantage held some Imperial cities back from a formal commitment to religious reform for almost a generation, as in the case of Worms, Speyer or Regensburg.

We can also point to powerful movements for reform in many territorial towns in northern and central Germany. The episcopal cities of Magdeburg and Halle saw the emergence of movements as powerful as those in the south. In Electoral Saxony, Zwickau was the most prominent example, but the evangelical movement also flourished in smaller towns such as Altenburg, Borna, Dobien, Eilenburg, Grimma, Herzberg, Jessen, Leisnig, Lochau, Neustadt on the Orla, Orlamünde, Schmiedeburg or Schlieben. These were small territorial towns, many the seats of district government, and we must add to them such 'new towns' as the mining centres of Annaberg or Schneeberg. As small market towns or farm towns with populations of 2,000 inhabitants or less, they were more typical of the norm for German towns than the great commercial centres which have usually attracted the attention of the Reformation historian. Discerning overall patterns of 'urban reformation' thus becomes more complex than used to be the case when only a small number of towns had been singled out for attention. The notion of a 'burghers' Reformation', rather than an 'Imperial city' or 'Hansa town Reformation' seems more adequate as a description of the variety of urban settings in which reform movements arose – it applies to all towns, whatever their constitutional status, thus encompassing territorial towns, Imperial cities, Hansa towns, great metropolises and tiny farm towns: Nuremberg and Basel, Erfurt, Memmingen or Kitzingen. However, the notion of a 'burghers' Reformation' is in itself rather analytically imprecise, and a further component has been advanced, linking it with trends towards communalism apparent in urban polities during the later middle ages.

'Communalism' is a notion founded on the high value attached to the commune as a basic socio-economic unit amid the dissolving feudal order of the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries. It involved a drive to achieve self-government and autonomous local administration, expressed through demands for elected representation and participation in organs of government. It was paralleled by a drive for 'communalisation' of religious life, expressed in the desire of local communities to elect their own pastors, producing a basic receptivity to the doctrine of the priesthood of all believers. The desire for each community to gain control over the means of salvation and even to determine its own doctrine led virtually to an autonomous local church, reflected in the tendency of the early evangelical churches to speak of the 'Church of Erfurt', the 'Church of Strassburg' or the 'Church of Wittenberg' in analogy to the New Testament 'Church of Ephesus', 'Church of Corinth' or 'Church of Rome'. This urban 'communal Reformation' could be said to originate in

pressure 'from below' to effect reform, especially by means of pressure exercised through the organised urban commune. The actual implementation of reform was carried out by the town council, but with the participation of the commune, or if not directly with this participation, at least through the council acting as the executive organ of the commune and in its interests.

There is a flaw in conceptualisation here, however, if we are to see the 'burghers' Reformation' as a communal phenomenon, for in the long run it was hardly ever the commune which took over control of the local urban church, but rather the town council. Thus, the cities did not create a church grounded primarily in a communal principle and directly controlled by the community, for it was ultimately town councils that came to exercise control of the reform movements. There are also certain difficulties about the use of the concept of the 'commune' as the constitutive element of a paradigm of the urban Reformation. It ascribes to the commune an ideal-typical status which makes it virtually synonymous with the mass of the urban population, as in the associated notion of the 'common man'. Yet most communes in the legally constituted sense encompassed no more than a segment of the population of any given town, usually excluding women, apprentices, servants, labourers, all dependent persons, the marginal and the vagrant – all people to whom the evangelical message must have had something to say which was not filled with the resonances of communalism. Moreover, the German towns of the early sixteenth century were highly fractionalised societies, rent by multiple conflicts and competing allegiances. Each town might contain a predominant weight of people with minimal, if any, legal stake in the community, but who were expected to share in its fate passively and subordinately. The idea of the commune was held up as a hegemonic value to which all were supposed to give allegiance, but the precise content of the notion remained a matter of political conflict, invoked by urban oligarchs, guilds representing sectional interests, corporations with a geographical focus such as a 'town quarter', or mixed ecclesiastical and local government units such as the parish.

The attempts of urban rulers or ruling classes to create and project the fiction of a unified and idealised commune, often drawing on and manipulating civic rituals, were far from successful. Many people were willing to tear apart the thin veil of civic unity in pursuit of their own interests, not just from below but also from the highest social groups in urban society, for many well-to-do townsmen were willing to encourage or lead revolts against established authority. This is revealed by the curve of urban disturbances in the decade and a half around the initial reform movements. There were thirty-four such revolts or disturbances in the years 1509–17, and a steeply rising curve after 1521: sixteen in 1521, fifty-

two in 1522, forty-four in 1523, forty in 1524 and fifty-one in 1525. It has been argued that it was the introduction of religious reform which served as a means of overcoming such disunity and restoring an essential consensus to the towns. Yet this is simply to swallow the self-justifying propaganda of evangelical activists. There were too many examples which revealed the contrary, that it was the evangelical movement itself that was seen as dangerous or divisive, and for that reason religious reform was delayed, as in the case of Ulm, Augsburg, Worms or Regensburg, or rejected completely, as in the case of Cologne, Würzburg or Bamberg. A third model, that of Erfurt, which accepted religious disunity by allowing religious parity to Catholic and Lutheran and separating religious and political allegiance, was to become a norm for many Imperial cities after 1555. Even where religious reform was formally introduced in the name of the commune and communal unity, this did not automatically establish or restore civic consensus, or lessen social or religious conflicts, adequately shown by the examples of Strassburg or Zwickau. In short, religious reform was no wonder-working form of social superglue, providing the ideal fit for a communal ideal. In the towns at large, we should be extremely sceptical about the notion of the commune being anything more than a pragmatically chosen vehicle on which religious reform sometimes rode to success.

A 'communal Reformation' has also been discerned in the countryside, taking the form of a distinctive 'peasants' Reformation'. The rural commune also sought a form of communal self-government and autonomous local administration. Rural communes therefore responded to the notion of electing their own pastors, as well as to the broader aspiration of bringing the church under local control, in all its legal, economic, political and religious aspects. For the peasantry, it has been argued, the principle of *sola scriptura*, the demand to adjudge right Christian life by the norms of the gospel alone, supplied a specifically evangelical dimension to this communalisation process. In its rural form, the idea of the 'communal Reformation' has a certain congruence with Zwinglian notions of the role of the church in society, and for this reason, perhaps, most evidence adduced to support it has been found in south Germany. Even here, however, it can be argued that the rural commune was far from identical with the rural community, that the commune represented no principle of unity and that the peasant understanding of the communal ideal was highly pragmatic. The ideal of community was certainly formulated and invoked during the early reform movements, although it was an ideal most intimately linked to the peasant revolts of 1524–5, and may have owed as much to formulation by preachers and urban intellectuals as to any genuine 'peasant' conceptualisation. There is a further difficulty about the concept, whose congruence with evangelical principles is crucial to the

notion of a 'communal Reformation'. This in turn depended on the
demand of each community to elect its own pastors as an expression of
belief in the priesthood of all believers. Yet this demand and doctrine, and
indeed the associated principle of reliance on Scripture and godly law
could easily have been raised and satisfied without pursuing any of the
further implications involved in the notion of a 'communal Reformation'.
Moreover, the principle of reliance on Scripture alone was not confined to
communalism, nor was it always a uniquely distinguishing feature of
solutions to the problem of religious reform, as will be seen in a later
chapter. A princely reform on Erasmian principles, as was briefly enter-
tained in Baden or in Jülich-Cleves, could easily have given assent to the
same idea. Indeed, it was a feature of the evangelical movements of the
1520s as a whole that just what was 'evangelical' and 'according to
Scripture' was ambiguous and ill defined. It was the gradual definition of
this term with an increasing content of Lutheran theology that was to set
the framework for 'Reformation'. The 'peasants' Reformation', indeed
even the most ideal-typical version of a 'communal Reformation', was
surely only possible within the context of a social revolution. There were
undeniably elements of it present in the Peasants' Revolt of 1524–5, but
the defeat of the peasants ended that possibility before it had ever been
really propagated.

The near-revolutionary upheaval called the German Peasants' War for
a few months in 1525 threatened the overthrow of the established political
order. The massive accumulation of discontent that provoked mass
peasant rebellion in the years 1524–6 is not difficult to discern. It was
compounded of numerous economic, legal, political and communal
grievances, of which economic grievances played perhaps the predomi-
nant role. The extension of labour services and heriots, increases in both
direct and indirect taxation, restrictions on the informal peasant economy
through which most small farmers supplemented their purely agrarian
incomes, the denial of access to wood, water and grazing and the problem
of peasant indebtedness were all explicitly economic grievances. However,
economic issues also lurked behind other grievances which were at first
sight legal or political. The manipulation of ancient legal rights to impose
new obligations, the redrawing of leases and interference with inheritance
laws, abuses of wardship, the extension of fines and penalties by reclassify-
ing offences all served to increase the incomes of landlords or feudal
overlords. The growth of bureaucracy to underpin incipient territorial rule
was financed by allowing officials to draw salaries from the exploitation of
established feudal rights, whose fees and incomes could be increased
arbitrarily without any cost to the ruler. This mass of grievances was
initially formless and chaotic, and the earliest revolts were far from
radical, taking the form more of withdrawal of labour rather than open

rebellion. The peasants merely ceased work and gathered together in bands as a means of forcing their lords to consider their grievances, with the evident intention of negotiating an agreed settlement, if necessary by seeking the arbitration of third parties. Two things turned this essentially low-key form of protest into a large-scale rebellion and near revolution – the emergence of a political dynamic over the winter of 1524–5, which was to broaden the revolt beyond local and regional boundaries, and the formulation of more general programmes which provided a qualitatively different thrust to the growing supra-territorial rebellion.

The political dynamic was a result of the lords' initial refusal to consider negotiations with the peasants, in combination with their weakened military state. The Swabian League proved to be ineffective as a rapid-response peacekeeping force. It was short of money and most experienced troops were involved in the Italian war against Francis I, until the Imperial victory at Pavia on 24 February 1525 freed them to return home. The League army under Georg Truchsess of Waldburg was first able to take the field on 29 March 1525. The nobility in south Germany and Franconia also proved to be a fragile support for the existing order, either fleeing in terror before the peasant bands, or surrendering meekly, sometimes offering to join the peasants as their 'Christian brothers'. Thus, until mid April 1525 peasant organisation went on unchecked, the formation of peasant bands snowballing until there were 43,000 peasants assembled in bands in Upper Swabia and 19,000 in Franconia. These peasant bands went through an accelerated political-learning process, with the emergence of skilled and articulate leaders, who began to formulate wider political goals and to create new forms of political and military organisation. The revolt spread in waves from Upper Swabia and the Black Forest into Alsace, Tyrol and Franconia and onwards to the Thuringian Forest and Saxony. The virtual political collapse of several important ecclesiastical princes such as the prince-abbot of Fulda, the bishops of Bamberg and Würzburg, and the acceptance of the peasant terms and conditions by some minor princes such as the counts of Henneberg and Schwarzburg seemed to show a movement sweeping all before it, and the formal capitulation of the archbishopric of Mainz on 7 May 1525 seemed to have brought the foremost principality in Germany to its knees. The revolt expanded to encompass urban discontent – indeed, in Upper Franconia small territorial towns such as Königshofen, Mellerstadt or Münnerstadt took the lead, as also occurred in Thuringia and parts of Saxony, where the peasantry was slow to react. As plans were laid for a peasant parliament in Heilbronn in mid May and a reformed Imperial constitution was drafted, Germany seemed on the brink of a far-reaching political revolution.

This political dynamic was unthinkable, however, without the ideologi-

cal contribution of more generalised programmes and principles which
enabled the many localised revolts to transcend particularist boundaries.
Here it is undeniable that evangelical ideas played a central role, although
it has been a long-standing Protestant tradition to deny any genuine
evangelical involvement in the revolt. It was first and foremost the
intervention of various leaders, mostly inspired by the ideas of the gospel
and the possibility of gaining biblical justice, who brought about this
transformation. The most direct and significant intervention was made by
the Memmingen preacher Christoph Schappeler and the furrier Hans
Lotzer who boiled down the multitude of petty grievances from the
numerous Upper Swabian grievance lists into just Twelve Articles,
creating a programme which was to become normative for the revolt
throughout the rest of Germany, even in areas where several of the
grievances did not apply. They added to this a powerful preamble,
drawing legitimation for the revolt from the Bible, and creating the central
programmatic notion that where social and economic grievances could
not be justified in Scripture, they should be abolished. They introduced a
central notion of the movements for religious reform with the demand for
communities to elect their own pastors and to exercise communal control
over religion. They adapted the notion of the liberty of the Christian to
cover a demand for the abolition of serfdom and free access to wood,
water and game. Although the overall political and social thrust of the
Twelve Articles was that of moderate reform, the use to which it could be
put as a legitimating programme made it *de facto* a revolutionary
document.

Although radical religious ideas could be found as early as the Hallau
articles of July 1524, the significant injection of evangelical principles into
the rebellion occurred some time late in February 1525. Around the same
time a more radical organisational form made its appearance, the idea of a
'Christian Union' of the peasantry, encapsulated in the 'Christian Union
of the Peasants of Upper Swabia' of 6 March 1525. This created an
entirely new political concept of a supraregional peasant 'Christian
brotherhood', structured on radical egalitarian social principles encom-
passing all social classes. It was inspired by evangelical ideas, and was
indeed enforced by an oath invoking Christian justice, brotherly love and
the Word of God, which was to be taught and preached 'purely and
clearly, with all its fruits and without the addition of human teaching', a
distillation of all the keywords of the evangelical movements of the 1520s.
The idea of the peasant band as a Christian brotherhood seeking Christian
justice and upholding the Word of God was one of the most powerful
innovations of the German Peasants' War, creating what was certainly an
institutional form of great revolutionary potential. Yet it is a measure of
the limitations of the peasant revolt that this potential remained

untapped. It is a matter of dispute whether the Christian Union was intended as a radical political model, or merely a strategic tool to supply an *ad hoc* form of military organisation for a politically fragmented peasantry. In favour of the latter interpretation is the ease and rapidity with which the Christian Union dissolved following the Treaty of Weingarten of 17 April 1525, in which Georg Truchsess promised a negotiated settlement of their grievances if the peasants would disband, relinquish their oaths of allegiance, be obedient and pay their dues as of old until adjudication could be arranged. The revolutionary potential was undoubtedly there, but it had scarcely been realised by the peasants or most of their leaders. The same is true of similar forms of organisation which emerged in Alsace and Franconia, and certainly of Thomas Müntzer's distinctive notion of a League of the Elect in Thuringia. The revolt was too shortlived for the political dynamic to translate itself into any really revolutionary dynamic.

The Peasants' Revolt was easily crushed, in the south by the activity of Georg Truchsess of Waldburg, in Thuringia by the energetic action of Philip of Hesse, the only German prince to show boldness and initiative in opposing it, and in Franconia by Margrave Casimir of Brandenburg. The reprisals were savage and disproportionate to the blood shed by the peasants, who often showed a greater willingness to Christian forgiveness in the midst of warfare than the princes, whose desire to punish rebellion and to purge the spectre of their own ineffectiveness overrode any feelings of compassion for the vanquished. Both evangelical and orthodox authorities combined to put down the rebellion, but the former were the more embarrassed as a great debate arose about the role of the new religious ideas in provoking the revolt. The orthodox were able to feel vindicated in their judgment, passed from the beginning of the 1520s, that the storm of religious heterodoxy and innovation led directly to rebellion. The evangelical replied that it was not the preaching of the gospel that was a cause of rebellion, but the repression of it. Here, however, they were in the weak position of having to face two ways at once, for alongside the 'repression' argument they had to admit that many evangelical preachers had played a leading role in encouraging social discontent and supporting the revolt. They mostly followed the line that Luther had taken very early in the evolution of the movements, that this was not true preaching of the gospel, but a false, 'fleshly' interpretation of it, pursuing worldly interests under the 'pretext of religion'. Luther's views of the revolt had begun with even-handed criticism – the peasants had justified grievances to which the authorities ought to respond, but they were wrong to seek redress through revolt. However, he quickly shifted ground to total condemnation of the rebels and to a call for princes to punish them without mercy. Even the most fervent admirers of Luther would be forced to conclude that his

attitude was less than constructive and, as one prominent Lutheran called it, positively unchristian. Luther had himself swallowed the bitter draught of rejection at the hands of the peasants, as he tried to still disturbance by a preaching tour through his own homeland, the Mansfeld valley and Thuringia, in the second half of April 1525. His advice was rejected, and he became confirmed in his view that the entire enterprise was not only ungodly but a positive work of the devil. It has been said that the peasants had misunderstood Luther, but he had patently failed to understand them; indeed, he revealed in his comments on the Erfurt peasant articles how little understanding or even sympathy he had for communal aspirations. Lack of understanding on his part was to be met by disillusionment and lack of respect from the peasantry, who saw him as pusillanimous and self-interested. Nowhere more than here did the public charismatic image of Luther collapse so dramatically when faced with the contradictions presented by his true self.

The consequences of the Peasants' Revolt for the progress of religious reform were profound. Orthodox princes held the link between preaching of the gospel and rebellion to be established beyond doubt. Evangelical authorities consciously sought to detach religious reform from social protest and threw their emphasis on to the need for clergy who would preach obedience and who would not raise uncomfortable social or political issues. The 'godly preacher' virtually became the conformist preacher. Evangelical preachers were to uphold the rights of secular authority, and those who were only mildly critical of it ran the risk of being silenced or dismissed from their posts as seditious. Hermann Mühlpfort, the mayor of Zwickau, himself a determined adherent of Luther's ideas and an active advocate of evangelical policies, ruefully summed up the new atmosphere at the end of 1525 with the comment that henceforth people would have to keep silent on matters of injustice or risk being stigmatised as rebellious.

The peasants gained little from the revolt, despite some minor forms of recognition of their political role during 1525–6. Many of these concessions were subsequently ignored or repudiated as exacted under duress. The 1526 Diet of Speyer did recognise that there were some grounds for peasant complaint; a committee offered limited concessions on serfdom and access to game and forests, but these were omitted from the final Recess. If the peasants achieved anything, it was because they had given their lords a fright, forcing them into taking a more pragmatic and responsive line on peasant grievance. This was no altruistic concession – the lords recognised the need for a strong peasantry and territorial rulers were encouraged not to push too far their demands for compensation and reimbursement of the costs of the war. There were calls for the total disarming of the peasantry, but most rulers realised that this would leave

them more exposed than was prudent, and where this prohibition was enacted it was not always enforced. Fugitives were soon readmitted to their goods and property with a leniency that contrasted with the savagery exercised in the immediate heat of victory. However, the lords kept a wary eye on possible flickerings of the flame of discontent, and even a generation later potentially seditious subjects were interrogated on their conduct during the events of 1524–6.

The defeat of the peasants put an end to the evangelical social movements of the early 1520s. There certainly were scattered instances after 1525 of popular movements linking social grievance to religious reform, largely in the towns of north Germany. In Lübeck in 1528–30 and in Hanover in 1533–4, religious reform virtually took the shape of political and social revolution, while in Braunschweig and Göttingen the acceptance of evangelical religion as the towns' official religion led to the exclusion from office of the former ruling élite. Yet the number and intensity of these incidents were in no way comparable to those of the years 1520–5. Moreover, the steam went out of rural enthusiasm for the cause of the gospel. In Alsace, for example, the peasantry continued to show enthusiasm for 'evangelical preaching', but the determination of Catholic authorities not to concede it and the disinclination of evangelical rulers to encourage demands that might open the door to social unrest, led to a loss of religious fervour. By the 1540s, the complaint was of peasant indifference to reform, rather than of their enthusiasm for it. There is evidence of interest in a 'peasants' Reformation' in parts of Switzerland, but political circumstances were rather different there, and even in a confederation of urban–rural republics, certain kinds of reform met with little response. Zurich provides an interesting example. In the early 1520s evangelical preachers sought to arouse rural support by telling the peasants that if they would commit their lives and goods for the cause of the gospel, their new-found evangelical freedom would be to their advantage. Accordingly the Zurich peasantry in 1525 applied to their urban overlords for remission of the tithe, since it was clearly not grounded in the Word of God. However, they were told that although the gospel did not command giving the tithe, it also did not command not giving it, and it should be paid out of Christian love. The preacher Johannes Stumpf later recorded how little pleased the peasantry were with this reply: 'many came to a great hatred of the preachers, where before they would have bitten off their feet for the gospel'. When the Reformation took institutional shape, it was in a form vastly different from anything projected during the period of the popular movements. The evangelical movements were to be replaced after 1525 by a different kind of reform, which was to lead to what has traditionally been called the 'Lutheran Reformation'.

THE REFORMATION IN ZURICH, STRASSBURG AND GENEVA

THE Reformation in the cities of the Rhineland and of Switzerland has its own character. Here a whole set of circumstances, geographical, political, cultural, gives a different pace and direction to the impulses of change which worked out differently in the landed principalities of Germany or the unified kingdoms of France and England.

By the end of the middle ages, many of the European cities had achieved independence of their temporal or spiritual overlords, and had come to exercise rights of intervention in ecclesiastical affairs which the Reformation extended and accelerated. It counted for much in Switzerland that the diocesan framework bore no relation to the all-important cantonal structure. The balance of internal forces varied from city to city. In Berne there was a persistence of aristocracy, in Strassburg a cathedral chapter and collegiate churches, in Basel a resident bishop, while in Basel also the craft guilds became an instrument of reforming pressure and the presence of a university offered facilities for propaganda which in Zurich and Strassburg devolved upon the parochial clergy. In Switzerland military prowess, prosperity, independence gave stimulus to alertness and selfconfidence. 'My lords of the council' in Zurich were accustomed to regulate important affairs and to control events after a different manner from the small town politicians of the Saxon cities. Wackernagel's fine picture of Basel at the beginning of the Reformation, with its great houses, its famous publishers, its artists and scholars, gives due place to the merchants, rich men furnished with ability, who could throng the lectures of Oecolampadius with an intelligent and devout awareness of great issues.

In these cities there is continuity between humanism and reform. The great Swiss and Rhineland sodalities made possible the transition, not only from 'good letters' to 'sacred letters' – the study of the sacred languages and of the Fathers, with the new tools and texts – but beyond that to what we may call evangelical letters, to the biblical humanism of which in the 1520s Zurich, Basel and Strassburg afford impressive evidence. These cities, still small enough for all those of account to know one another by name, were naturally attracted by the concept of a Christian commonwealth. Luther had established the two great dimensions of the church, Word and Sacrament, and had powerfully recalled the church to the centre of its existence, the present rule of Christ. Now a third dimension emerged, 'the discipline of Christ' and with it a whole set of

94

problems concerning the Christian circumference. Notable among these was the relation between the *jus reformandi* of the godly magistrates and the pastoral discipline of the church. In the first years of the Reformation, when all the older ecclesiastical machinery was hindered, blocked and in the hands of vested interest, the evangelical pastors, themselves with no power of jurisdiction, found the godly magistrate to be literally a godsend, an effective, competent instrument for getting things done. Only later did second thoughts suggest some of the dangers which lay before the Reformed Churches in tapping ancient sources of moral and political power. By this time the magistrates themselves were reluctant to yield anything of their authority, the more so as they were sensitive and suspicious of a new clericalism. The revolt of the Anabaptists in the cities came sharply up against this Christian office of the magistrate, though in their ways they, too, often upheld the doctrine, in a more apocalyptic setting of a Christian commonwealth.

But impersonal considerations alone do not explain the Reformation. They were men who made it, and when we think of it, surprisingly few in relation to the creative work which they achieved. These groups of scholars, preachers and pastors are of surprisingly impressive calibre. Most of them were good men, many of them great men. The cities of Zurich, Strassburg and Geneva stand out in the story because Zwingli, Bucer, Calvin were giants.

ZURICH

Of all the reformers, Ulrich Zwingli (1484–1531) was most at home in his environment. Not for nothing did an enemy murmur over his dead body, 'A rotten heretic, but a good confederate.' Born on 1 January 1484 in the village of Wildhaus, high in the Toggenburg valley, the sights and sounds of the mountain-sides lived again in the imagery of his speech and writing.

Taught Latin by his uncle Bartholomew, the dean of Weesen, he went to schools in Basel and in Berne, and in 1498 to the university of Vienna. Here he met a group of Swiss scholars, including the polymath Vadianus and the obstreperous Glareanus, who combined devotion to the classics with enthusiasm for the newer disciplines of geography, mathematics, medicine. Zwingli was sent down, and we need not seek with the pious biographers for some highly spiritual and creditable reason, since these young Swiss threw their weight about, and there is a field of undergraduate indiscretion which stops well short of the disgraceful. But he was allowed to come back and finish his course, and went on to the university of Basel where he took his M.A. in 1506 and made contact with Thomas Wyttenbach, a teacher of the 'via antiqua'. In after years Zwingli paid repeated tribute to him. In 1506 he went to Glarus as priest, and in the

next years combined study and pastoral care as best he could. He made at
least two trips with the Swiss troops into Italy. He also joined a circle of
humanists, and though the precious classical allusions of this mutual
admiration society must be discounted, he was eminent among them and
attracted in 1516 the favourable notice of his hero Erasmus, whose Greek
New Testament was of great moment for him.

In 1516 he accepted the benefice of Einsiedeln and there effectually
withstood the indulgence seller, Bernardino Samson, without any rebuke
from the pope, whose pensioner he became and remained until 1520. In
1518 his friend Oswald Myconius nominated him for the post of 'people's
priest' in the Great Münster in Zurich. Despite a facility for playing
musical instruments which shocked the more staid, and the more serious
blemish of a sordid affair with a barber's daughter in 1516, he was
appointed to an office which in itself might have counted for little, but
which in fact became the key to the Reformation in Zurich.

The older historians stressed his humanism and thought of him as an
intellectual concerned with practical abuses at a superficial religious and
theological level. The learned studies of modern Swiss scholars have
demolished this facile view and, though they have not closed their own
case, have decisively reopened a number of questions. It seems that
Zwingli was trained in the 'via antiqua' and read a good deal of Scotus
(though how much simpler would be the explanation of his eucharistic
doctrine were there evidence that he had been a nominalist!). He had some
evident contact with the Platonism of the Florentine Academy, though the
paucity of his references forbids us, again, to press this too tempting
source of his sacramental 'spiritualism'. His debt to Erasmus is beyond
question. It stimulated his enthusiastic study of Greek and his Erasmian
preference for Jerome and Origen among the Fathers, for it was only later
that he became increasingly indebted to Augustine. Unlike Erasmus,
however, he valued the Old Testament highly and for its sake was
prepared to work away at Hebrew. It has been suggested (by Cristiani)
that the year 1516 was critical in his development, as the year of the New
Testament of Erasmus, the year when the concordat between the pope and
the king of France hardened his mind against the papacy, and the year of
his moral crisis, which it is thought might have driven him to the help and
comfort of the Scriptures. Another important date is 1519 when the
plague brought him to death's door. The fine hymn which he composed
after his recovery suggests the deepening of his religion by this intimation
of mortality, though we ought not to read too much into the famous lines:

> in Haf bin ich
> mach gantz ald brich
> ('Thy vessel am I, to make or break')

It is certain that Zwingli's religion became more and more centred on the Bible, to which the key was not philology alone, but faith:

At last I came to the conclusion, 'You must leave all the rest, and learn God's meaning out of his simple Word.' Then I asked God for light, and light came.

This, after all, is the man who put the evangelical invitation, 'Come unto me, all ye that are weary and heavy laden' upon the frontispiece of his writings and at the heart of his liturgy. Wernle's saying that 'Providence takes in Zwingli's thought the place of Grace in Luther's' is worthy of discussion but does not perhaps do justice to the Christocentric element and the extent to which the doctrine of Providence (even in the famous exposition of the *Summum Bonum* in his great sermon of 1529) has been thought through in biblical terms. There is, of course, a persistent humanist fundament, and to the end his writings abound, a little self-consciously, in classical allusions. Though he had reasons for stressing his independence of Luther, it may well be a fact that he shared the general enthusiasm of the humanists in 1518 for the 'German Hercules'.

When the new preacher took up his duties on 1 January 1519 and announced that he would depart from precedent by preaching right through St Matthew's Gospel, the Zurich Reformation had begun. 'O Blessed are those princes, cities, peoples among whom the Lord speaks freely through his servants the prophets' (*Complanationis Isaiae Prophetae*, 1529). Zwingli exalted the conception of a Christian community, a prophetic commonwealth, a city under the Word. His Reformation was begun, continued and ended through the agency of prophetic preaching. Shortsighted and with a weak voice, he lacked the gifts of the popular orator, but his preaching is the secret of his dominance of the great city, and not all his actions in the small or great council can match it in importance. It is something with few parallels (Calvin, Knox, Latimer?) – this continuous biblical exposition, adjusted to the practical needs of each changing day, in a community small enough for everybody to be known, and where all the effective leadership in the city sat under the Word. The historicity of the mandate of 1520 whereby the council-authorised evangelical preaching has been questioned, but of the fact there is no doubt; this scriptural preaching went on here, first of all the cities of Switzerland.

One of its first-fruits related to the traffic in mercenary soldiers. It is anachronistic to speak of Zwingli's pacifism, for he lacked entirely the controlled meekness, the doctrinaire belligerence of the modern opponent of war. The tension in his mind, which was real, reflects a division in Swiss sentiment generally. On the one hand was pride in Swiss arms, renowned and courted throughout Christendom, which partly evoked and partly reflected interest in the military art. Zwingli, who covered his copy of Josephus's *Jewish Wars* with topical remarks, was recognised by his

friends as more than an armchair strategist. There is a revealing remark by
Vadianus, 'We love the use of weapons, as Zwingli loved it, not for the
purpose of revenge, but to maintain and protect the truth.' His sketch of a
campaign (1524) is an extraordinary document, treating of strategy and
tactics and commissariat, with rules for chaplains and music for the
trumpeters, but it was seriously intended and received. On the other hand,
most of the Swiss had a conscience about mercenary war. With the trade
in arms an ugly element of venality had entered into Swiss politics,
aggravated by bribes and pensions. And the Swiss did not always win.
Zwingli witnessed the bloody fray of Marignano, and the defeat at
Bicocca (1522) swung opinion when the news came to bereft villages and
to widows and orphans, and the cripples limped home. Zwingli saw war at
first hand, from the battlefield to the village memorial. His *Eine Göttliche
Ermahnung* (1522), despite its Erasmianism, its rhetoric, is a genuine
revulsion. His early hostility towards the entanglement of his country in
the great game of power politics, which finds sharp expression in his
political poem, 'The Labyrinth' (1516), with its cry 'Is this what Christ
taught us?' became a burning conviction. He urged it from the pulpit until
it bore fruit, first when, alone among the cantons, Zurich refused to
bargain with the king of France, then against the formidable Cardinal
Schinner and the pope himself, until in 1522 the council decided to have
done with mercenary war.

Oscar Farner has shown how in 1525, once the initial crisis was over,
Zwingli's daily preaching took a more and more practical turn, examining
urgent affairs within the orbit of the Word. Zwingli's biblicism was more
radical than Luther's, leaving a much narrower field for liberty in things
indifferent. He put forward a Carlstadt-like programme with a Melanch-
thon-like caution. He could make the startling admission that there was
little biblical support for tithes or the baptism of infants. He made
Scripture the basis for the demand that images and pictures be removed
and choirs and church music abolished. But in 1522 he walked circum-
spectly, always careful to keep behind the pace of events. On Ash
Wednesday a group of reformers deliberately broke the Lenten fast in the
house of the printer, Froschauer, but Zwingli characteristically refrained
from touching the two smoked sausages which were the emblem of revolt,
though he defended the principles of the innovators in his bold sermon *On
the Choice and Free Use of Foods*. In July Zwingli and his friends
petitioned the bishop of Constance to permit clerical marriage and were
ignored. (Zwingli himself married in that year, though he did not publicly
announce the fact until 1524.) In July there arrived the Franciscan Francis
Lambert of Avignon, tall and gaunt, stooping over his donkey, who rides
through the story of the Reformation from one city to another, like a Don
Quixote after El Greco. He lost in spectacular fashion a debate with

Zwingli about the intercession of the saints. A few days later the burgomaster issued an order in favour of evangelical preaching, 'from Scripture, to the exclusion of Scotus and Thomas and the like'. At the end of the year, Zwingli wrote in his *Archeteles* a crushing retort to the protests of the bishop of Constance and foreshadowed a whole programme of reform.

This he now embodied in sixty-seven articles (19 January 1523) which began with a summary of the gospel, and went on to attack the authority of the pope, transubstantiation, intercession of saints, fasts and pilgrimages. There followed, by command of the council, a public disputation on 29 January 1523. Johann Faber, the capable vicar-general of the bishop of Constance, was badly outmanoeuvred. What he had taken to be a disputation on the usual lines, which could be put out for arbitrament to some distant theological faculty, he found to be a great public demonstration at which decisive action was to be taken.

He found an audience of 600, which included the council, while the evangelical preachers formed a group, great Bibles open before them in the three sacred languages, ready for an argument in German which all the audience would understand. Fatally, he tried to carry it off with silence, and then decided too late to argue. When he cried, 'There must be a judge', Zwingli retorted, 'The Spirit of God out of Holy Scripture itself is the judge' – begging some questions, but carrying the audience fervently with him. In fact, the day had already been decided by the announcement of the burgomaster that in default of an answer Zwingli should continue to preach. After iconoclastic riots in the autumn, a second disputation followed in October in which Zwingli's colleague Leo Jüd attacked the use of images and Zwingli the mass. By the end of the year the break with diocesan authority was complete, and in the following summer organs, relics and images were officially removed from the churches and the religious houses in the city were dissolved. In 1525 there was a renewed attack by Zwingli on the mass, which was abolished on 12 April. It was followed by the appearance of Zwingli's communion service, in which he presided over a table laid with beakers and wooden vessels, at which the seated faithful communicated first, the ministers after, in a commemorative rite of great simplicity. There appeared also a new order for baptism. Zwingli's liturgical reforms of 1525 were the conclusion of his half-way measures of 1523. He instituted a preaching service with prayers, which some have thought to be the descendant of the medieval service of prone (and so different from the rite of Strassburg, with its eucharistic pedigree). More original was the office of 'prophesying' which replaced the early morning choir service. Zwingli began this in 1525 when the Anabaptist movement was afoot, and the name does not indicate a preference for spontaneity and subjectivism but, as a study of 1 Corinthians 14 reveals,

control and regulation in a service of biblical exposition where in turn the
preachers add their comment to what has gone before. In the 'prophesy-
ings' the Old Testament was expounded; there was a New Testament
exposition in the afternoon. The great Zurich Bible was in part the result
of these services, the fruit of the collaboration of a group of distinguished
scholars who seconded Zwingli, Leo Jüd, Pellicanus, Bibliander. The
Zurich version of the psalms penetrated into the Netherlands and England
in translation with an influence which has not been fully detected and
explored. In May 1525 a court was set up to regularise and control
marriage, and in 1526 regulations were issued for the general overseeing of
public morals, these being extended in 1530.

Zwingli cordially accepted the *jus reformandi* of the godly magistrate.
His concern for Christian discipline is evident in the sixty-seven theses,
though his conception, as Ley suggests, may have been more prophylactic
than remedial, too much influenced by Old Testament considerations. Yet
though in 1526 the council took over the power of excommunication 'in
the name of the whole church', they worked in collaboration with the
pastors and until 1531 under a dominant influence from Zwingli. In 1528,
in an important letter to Ambrose Blaurer in Constance, Zwingli stressed
that the Kingdom of God has to do with external things, and called upon
the senators there to do their duty of reform. In his exposition of the
Christian faith in the last year of his life, there is the famous phrase: 'A
church without the magistrate is mutilated and incomplete.' To a growing
emphasis upon the godly magistrate he had been impelled by the contra-
diction of the Anabaptists, whose prominent leaders in Zurich, Conrad
Grebel and Felix Manz, came from his own pupils and disciples. Whatever
its origins elsewhere, the movement in Zurich could put up a specious
appearance of being consistent, thoroughgoing Zwinglianism. Zwingli's
own hesitations about infant baptism, his doctrine of original sin (the
thought of it as a disease – *Morbus, Präst* – even if the disease be plague-
like, lacks the intensity of an Augustinian or Lutheran doctrine of guilt),
his liturgical simplifications, his eucharistic views, the Anabaptists could
claim to have carried to their logical end. But the sharp contradiction
came at the heart of Zwingli's doctrine, the Christian commonwealth and
the office of the magistrate. In a fiery interview, when Zwingli told the
rebels that the time when the mass should be abolished was for the council
to determine, Manz shouted, 'No, the Spirit of God is the one who must
decide.' Zwingli fully endorsed the savage sanctions which the Swiss cities
now applied against the Anabaptists and which sharply reduced what had
been a fast-growing movement. He himself became more and more
involved in theological controversy about the eucharist, and we could
have spared some of these polemic tracts for more positive works like his
fine *Commentary on True and False Religion* (1525). His own theology was

deeply spiritualist, imbued with the dichotomy between letter and spirit. For him a great text was 'The flesh profiteth nothing.' He abhorred the notion that sensible things could convey spiritual grace. Thus for him the sacraments are not the means whereby the invisible God meets fallen man, but rather pledges and symbols, marks of the covenant between God and the elect. Once convinced of a symbolical explanation of the Words of Institution in the eucharist, he stressed more and more that Christ's body is in heaven, and that he is present in the eucharist only in the unity of the Godhead. The most striking of his eucharistic tracts is his *Amica Exegesis* (1527).

Zwingli strongly felt the political weakness of Zurich against the Catholic cantons and the power of Austria. He dreamed to see his city at the head of a great evangelical confederation and in 1528 succeeded in building the Christian Civic League which by 1529 included Bern and Basel, Constance, Biel, Mühlhausen, Schaffhausen, St Gall, and in 1530, Strassburg. He thought it might stretch out to join hands with the German princes of the League of Torgau, and if need be was prepared to make alliance with France or Venice. He became more and more tempted to the thought of a spoiling and preventive war and by 1529 had created a formidable military force. But perhaps his leaders had heeded his sermons too well in earlier years, for while the troops fraternised the politicians parleyed, and the result was the first Peace of Cappel, an appeasement of which Zwingli cried in disgust, 'The peace you want means war: the war I want means peace.' Certainly in the next months the strength of his alliance melted away, so that at the Colloquy at Marburg it was Zwingli who had tears in his eyes at the breakdown of the projected evangelical coalition. In 1531 he desperately engineered economic sanctions against the Catholic cantons (oddly announced from the pulpit on Whitsunday) and provoked a fatal military retort in October. On the eve of battle, Zwingli met the young Bullinger and in tears said farewell – 'Dear Henry, God keep you. Keep faith with our Lord Christ and his Church' – and disappeared into the night. The day of battle was full of muddle, disaster and, it may be, treachery. There were thirteen preachers among the Zurich troops, including the abbot of Cappel. Zwingli's broken body was found upon the field, treated with contumely and burned. How he died will never be known, but, as Köhler has said, he did not wear a steel helmet, a great sword and an axe for purely ornamental purposes.

The second Peace of Cappel, though it put an end to the adventurous foreign policy of Zurich, was not as disastrous as it might have been, and Henry Bullinger carried on the Zwinglian tradition with pious modification. The statue of Zwingli, with Bible and sword in his arms, would have seemed to Luther an evil mingling of two kingdoms which invited and merited the doom it had received. But it is easy for our judgment of

Zwingli's politics to be too much affected by the military disaster which befell them, and we ought not to undervalue the boldness and vision of his hope of an evangelical Swiss Confederation, with Zurich at the head. For Zwingli's was no ignoble dream, a commonwealth in which God might speak freely through his servants the prophets in every part of the public and private life of a Christian community.

Within a few weeks of the death of Zwingli, there came a second blow in the death of the Basel reformer, Johannes Oecolampadius (1484–1531). A scholarly, introverted spirit, Oecolampadius is among the most attractive of the reformers. Bearded, with pendulous nose, sallow of complexion, peering through his spectacles at some codex, he could have sat for Rembrandt's 'Philosopher'. 'Such a man', sighed Luther of his defection to the sacramentaries, and he saw in him Icarus, beguiled by the Daedalus of Zwingli. Born in Weinsberg in Swabia, Oecolampadius came in contact as a student with the 'sodalitas litteraria Rhenana' which included the great names of Reuchlin and Wimpheling among the older men, and among the younger generation Brenz, Bucer and Melanchthon. He studied in Heidelberg, Bologna and Tübingen, took his D.D. and acquired an amazing mastery of Latin, Greek and Hebrew. When his friend Wolfgang Capito went to Basel in 1515 as professor and preacher in the Münster, Oecolampadius went in the more modest role of proof-corrector in the great house of Frobenius and helped launch the great New Testament of Erasmus, writing many of the philological notes. He was next employed on the Erasmian edition of Jerome and introduced into the world of the Fathers of the fourth and fifth centuries whose scholarship, asceticism and piety fascinated him, so that the study of the Fathers became an engrossing occupation. Thus in Oecolampadius we touch an authentic and important element in the Reformation, one which has more in common with the Oxford Movement than the Evangelical Revival, finding in the 'Old Fathers' new tracts for later times.

He produced one after another a series of translations and printed texts of the Greek Fathers, beginning with Chrysostom. He came into friendly contact with the humanists of Augsburg and Nuremberg, Pirckheimer and the brothers Adelmann, who secured him the appointment of preacher in the cathedral of Augsburg. He found the pressure of ecclesiastical work rather a 'treadmill' and suddenly disgusted his friends by entering the Briggitine Order in its Bavarian house at Altomünster ('Thoroughly scruffy, and as you know, run by women!' wrote Adelmann in disgust), an order of men and women which specialised in scholarly and late vocations. But he was soon disillusioned and in 1522 left the monastery, leaving his precious library behind and taking refuge with Bucer in the castle of the Ebernburg. In November he arrived with Hutten in Basel, where he saw his latest translations through the press and exercised his right as a doctor

to lecture in the schools. He was soon appointed a professor and began there a work of amazing concentration, for apart from Simon Grynaeus he had not the band of distinguished evangelical colleagues who supported Zwingli in Zurich, or who formed such an impressive team in Strassburg. Soon he was lecturing in three languages on book after book of the Old Testament as well as in German to a burgher audience of several hundreds. He began to preach first in St Martin's and then in the Münster. In 1522 he formed a close friendship with Zwingli and began a correspondence which leaned heavily on the Zurich reformer. In 1524 the eucharistic controversy began, and Oecolampadius brought his knowledge of the Fathers to the help of his friends. His *De genuina verborum Domini* ... (1525) became the handbook and arsenal of the Sacramentarians and the object of attack from Catholics like Fisher and Cochlaeus, as well as from the Lutheran Brenz.

In May 1526 there was a public disputation in the town of Baden; the Catholics had profited by the lesson of the Zurich disputations to pack the conference and to invite a doughty protagonist in the famous John Eck. With typical circumspection, Zwingli would not go, pleading the refusal of the council to allow the visit, even under a safe-conduct, and contenting himself with sending little helpful notes to Oecolampadius who found himself outnumbered, outvoted and bearing almost alone the burden of the evangelical cause. He did well, for while Eck roared and rampaged in his most impressive manner, Oecolampadius held his ground with quiet dignity, and with a strength which showed how much he had grown from the scholarly dilettantism of a few months before. The next disputation in Bern, in 1528, was an evangelical field day. Zwingli, Bucer, Capito and others preached about the city, Oecolampadius characteristically choosing as his theme, 'Of the love of Christ for his church'. Reform followed swiftly in the city of Bern, but in Basel there was a strong Catholic element in the council and a coherent group of Catholic preachers. The crisis came at the end of 1528. That Christmastide armed bands of Catholics and evangelicals walked through the streets at night. But at a meeting on 4 January it was seen that the evangelicals were in their thousands, the Catholics in hundreds. After a few hours of not very wild iconoclasm had shaken the city, the council announced on 8 February that the mass would be abolished and all images removed in Basel and the surrounding countryside. (Erasmus, Glareanus and their friends packed their bags, for quieter pastures.) On 1 April 1529 came the great reforming ordinance, with its new frame for parochial organisation, education and public worship. In the next months Oecolampadius exercised a genuinely episcopal oversight over the church, which on the Zurich model began to organise a system of synods. From the time when as a young man he had held in Basel the office of penitentiary he had been concerned about

Christian discipline, which his study of the moralist Greek Fathers had encouraged. He became more and more concerned to safeguard the spiritual discipline of the church and to differentiate it from the police action of the Christian magistracy. This important distinction he expounded in a great operation in 1530 (*Oratio de reducenda Excommunicatione*), which Staehelin justly claims to be of first-class importance in church history. Oecolampadius distinguished between the pastoral discipline of the church, which is remedial and which seeks to restore the penitent, and the sanctions of the magistrate. He put forward a plan for the establishment of lay elders who should exercise this discipline and would represent the preachers, the congregations and the council. He hoped that his plan might be adopted by other cities in Switzerland, but found them reluctant to abandon the powers already exercised by the magistracy and highly suspicious of a new evangelical clericalism. Bucer shrewdly suggested that Oecolampadius's scheme smacked more of 'patristic severity' than 'Pauline lenity' though he was considerably impressed by the plea for spiritual autonomy, and through him, the distinction between the two powers, dangerously blurred, was re-introduced into evangelical discipline in the Strassburg system which Calvin would later stabilise and trim into a method of permanent importance.

The news of the battle of Cappel threw Oecolampadius into deep grief which brought on physical illness, a carbuncle which became fatal in its venom. On 22 November he said goodbye to his family and his pastors. At one point, when asked whether the strong light was painful, he smote his breast and smiling faintly, punning on his own name, he said 'Abunde lucis est.'

In Basel, Oecolampadius was followed by Oswald Myconius in the office of chief preacher or *antistes*. He was a fine pedagogue, but lacked academic distinctions and left this side of things very much to Simon Grynaeus. In 1534 there arrived Andrew Carlstadt who was appointed professor in the university and within a few months had conjured up a characteristic and most ugly rumpus. Myconius had always been a little sensitive about his lack of academic standing. Carlstadt now began to pitch over and against one another the authority of the ministry (the parochial clergy under Myconius) and of the teaching church (the university). He, who a few years before had derided all academic dignities, now insisted that none should teach in the city below the rank of doctor and that all must take the degree and so become liable to academic university discipline, a situation not eased by the patronising concession that the examinations might be waived in the case of Myconius and Grynaeus! It was an unhappy affair which broke the heart of Grynaeus and roused Myconius to an unwonted ire. The death by plague in 1541 of Carlstadt brought the affair to an end, and he departed this life leaving

behind a crop of poltergeist phenomena and a bitter pathetic widow in her forties, crippled from the endless pains of traipsing behind her husband on his incessant wanderings.

In Henry Bullinger Zurich had found a gifted leader. Lacking Zwingli's genius and his capacity for political adventure, from which in any case the second Peace of Cappel had finally excluded the city, he was content to be an exemplary pastor and teacher, one whose vast correspondence with all the leading reformers of Europe made him into a figure of eirenical importance second only to the more diffuse energies of Bucer. It is Bullinger's Zurich rather than Zwingli's which made the Swiss contribution to the English Reformation in the reigns of Edward VI, Mary and Elizabeth.

Myconius had produced a confession of faith in Basel in 1534. Zurich and Basel collaborated in producing in 1536 the second confession of Basel or the first Helvetic Confession, a work of distinction and authority. In 1549 the important *Consensus Tigurinus* between Bullinger and Calvin opened the way for the reconciliation of all the Swiss Reformed Churches. In 1566 Bullinger's second Helvetic Confession followed, which was adopted by most of the Swiss reformers. Bullinger's sermons and polemical chronicles, while lacking the stamp of profundity or originality, made possible the transition of reformed Christianity from the work of Zwingli to the achievement of John Calvin.

STRASSBURG

The Imperial Free City of Strassburg occupies a distinctive role in the story of the Reformation. In the Rhineland plain, strategically more vulnerable than the cities of the Swiss Confederation, it was fatefully within the orbit of imperial authority. From its position at a great European crossroad, it drew a thriving, energetic prosperity, and it is no accident that it was a Strassburg reformer who (in Bucer's *De Regno Christi*) gave Protestantism its first rationale of what has been called 'the gospel of hard work'. From the time of the *Schwörbrief* (1482) its constitution involved an intricate welding of oligarchic and democratic balances which worked reasonably well, while frequent elections ensured that the opinions of the craft guilds would be well ventilated. More than in most cities, the magistrates could hold a watching brief, while it is important that the city found, in this period, a great statesman in Jacob Sturm.

There was a flourishing book trade, and the city was early involved in circulating the works of Luther and Melanchthon. The pioneer of the Strassburg Reformation was Matthew Zell (b. 1477) who in 1521 as priest and penitentiary began to preach in a side chapel in the cathedral. His

eloquence and his attacks on abuses swelled the congregation, and when
the authorities forbade him the use of the stone pulpit in the great nave,
which had been built for Geiler of Keyserberg, the guild of carpenters
made him a wooden pulpit from which he preached to congregations
which numbered over 3,000. In May 1523 Wolfgang Capito arrived in the
city. Capito (1478–1541) was a doctor in three faculties, law, medicine and
theology. He had been professor in Basel and cathedral preacher. As a
Hebraist of eminence, he had been a respected collaborator of Erasmus.
He had then been chancellor and chaplain to Albert, archbishop of Mainz.
Perhaps a more granite-like character might have made the office momen-
tous in the story of the Reformation. But he could ill bear on the one hand
the attacks of Catholics, and on the other the reproaches of Wittenberg,
and left for what he hoped would be a more placid existence as provost of
the collegiate church of St Thomas in Strassburg. One interview with Zell,
however, persuaded him to wholehearted participation in the strenuous
war for reform. Somehow Capito seems to have belonged to that class of
'coming men' who never emerge after all, for his stature seems gradually
to diminish, and the verdict of history has been to put him high up but in
the second class among the reformers.

   Capito came to Strassburg as a person of recognised academic and
ecclesiastical eminence. Very different was the case of Bucer, who arrived
in the same month, poor, unemployed, unknown, and who yet within a
year had become 'the soul of the church in Strassburg'. Martin Bucer
(1491–1551) was educated in the fine Latin school at Schlettstadt and
entered the Dominican order so young that he had little difficulty later on
in getting release from his vows. His friend Beatus Rhenanus introduced
him to the works of Erasmus, of whom he became a devotee. Then, in
1518 he heard Luther speak at the Heidelberg chapter of the Augustinians,
and that day was won to the cause of reform and to an enthusiasm for
Luther which no amount of rebuffs could ever quench. He became
chaplain to von Sickingen in 1521, and after the Knights *sic* War went to
Wissemburg and thence to Strassburg. Zell was immensely impressed and
soon had the newcomer expounding the Bible, until the guild of gardeners
asked him to be their priest in the church of St Aurelia. In October there
came Caspar Hedio, a D.D. of Mainz and a scholar of versatility. They
were joined by Lambert of Avignon. The result was an impressive co-
operation in the biblical theology which was a supreme need of the
reformers in the 1520s. Capito lectured on the Old Testament and Bucer
on the New. Hedio lectured on Greek, then turned to church history and
to the Latin Fathers, and began a German translation of Augustine.
Commentary followed commentary, and in them an exact philological
exegesis became the basis of theological exposition (Lambert on Hosea,
1525, Capito on Habbakuk in the following year). Bucer poured out a

flood of almost illegible writings, including commentaries on the gospels and on Ephesians, while in 1529 he produced a commentary on the Psalms which ran into five editions and was hailed by Calvin as one of the magisterial works of the age.

At the end of 1523 the council published (on the Zurich model) a mandate authorising evangelical preaching. This was followed by a demand from the preachers for a public disputation. But the reformers were not the only ones with memories, and the bishop of Strassburg, seconded by the chapters of the collegiate churches, evaded an open conflict. At the end of 1523 Matthew Zell was married, openly, in the cathedral. The excommunication, in the next months, of seven eminent married priests served only to show the weakness of episcopal authority in the city. In 1523 the preachers had produced a reasoned statement why images should be abolished, and this came about without much of the violence which occurred elsewhere. In 1524 came the great reorganisation of parishes under evangelical preachers, new measures of discipline, and the beginning of educational reforms which were to culminate in the famous academy under John Sturm.

It was of the essence of the Reformation according to Bucer that public measures must go hand in hand with explanation and the instruction of public conscience. None knew better the worthlessness of reformation by public law alone. Thus in 1523 he produced the striking little tract *That nobody should live for himself alone, but for his neighbour.* In 1524 the liturgical reform was heralded by a lucid rationale (*Grund und Ursach . . .*). In 1538 when the new civic order was fully established there came the impressive document, *Of the Pastoral Care (Von der wahren Seelsorge).* Bucer acceded to the *jus reformandi* of the magistrates. But from 1530 onwards he was impressed by the plea of Oecolampadius for an autonomous church discipline. The appointment by the authorities in 1530 of churchwardens, the *Kirchenpfleger*, involved a certain tension between their and Bucer's interpretations of the office. These lay officials found criticism of the preachers a congenial duty, and it was with alacrity that they reported to the council that Hedio was longwinded and that Bucer preached above the heads of most of the congregation. But Bucer did succeed in 1534 in getting some recognition that these lay officers represented a scriptural office, and were in fact elders of the church. His concern for church discipline turned in another direction. Perhaps taking a hint from Luther's *Deutsche Messe* (1526) or from the conventicles of the sectaries, he proposed to form *Gemeinschaften*, small Christian cells, in which groups of laymen exercised a mutual cure of souls. Though not favourably regarded by the magistrates, these met until 1550. On 20 February 1529 there came the formal abolition of the mass, by 184 votes to 1, 94 voting for delay, and 21 being absent from the council. In 1534,

following a synod in which the magistrates presided, there came a definitive settlement on the basis of sixteen articles of faith presented by the preachers, followed by an ordinance of discipline in 1535, the influence of which persisted until 1789.

Partly by reason of its situation, but more because of the eirenical temper of its rulers, Strassburg became the great city of refuge of the Reformation. The city achieved a noble record for the relief of suffering. When the peasant armies swarmed across Alsace in 1525, Zell, Capito and Bucer met the leaders at Altdorf. Their severe rebukes were treated by the rebels with respect. But in the dreadful aftermath the citizens of Strassburg, under the leadership of the pastors, more especially of Mrs Zell, the founding mother of all vicars' wives, produced food, clothing and shelter for the homeless multitudes. In 1529 the good work was repeated under the impact of a great famine, and many thousands were succoured. Not for nothing had Bucer added 'love' to the three dimensions of the Protestant church (Word, sacrament, discipline).

Almost all the great exiles came to Strassburg. What a list it is! Lefèvre, Farel, Lambert, Calvin; Carlstadt, the Zwickau prophets, Denck, Hetzer; Sattler, Kautz, Rothmann, Hübmaier, Hoffmann, Joris, Servetus, Schwenckfeld, Franck. There were many groups of humbler sectaries who found refuge. Zell and Capito especially were impressed by many of these visitors, knowing they were not all fanatics. They agreed with them about the inwardness of true religion, the importance of a godly life. Yet there were enough obstinate and truculent fanatics to drive the authorities to take action in an edict (27 June 1527) banning the sectaries and threatening all who gave them refuge, though the repetition of this enactment in following years suggests the difficulty of its enforcement. Capito seems more than once to have been carried away by their doctrines, most notably by Schwenckfeld. In 1529 he was seriously ill, and the death of a beloved wife drained him of his energies. Bucer, who had a great way of marrying off his friends, made, in an incredible 'open letter' to Margaret Blaurer, a vicarious proposal which that formidable bluestocking turned down, enabling Bucer's second thoughts to succeed by the winning for his friend of the merrier widow Wibrandis Oecolampadius ('sancta, hilaritatis facilitatisque incredibilis') who would one day become the second Mrs Bucer. But Capito never quite got over his melancholy and died of plague in 1541.

On 16 February 1524 Theobald Schwarz introduced a German mass in the cathedral. It was the beginning of creative experiment which produced twenty-four interesting liturgies in the next ten years. The dominant influence was Bucer's. Brightman has criticised the extent to which the didactic element protrudes in Bucer's liturgies, but we must remember that for him this was only one aspect of a general reformation in which at each

point explanation and instruction must accompany change. First in importance came the restoration of the primacy of the Word in preaching and the exposition of the Scripture. There is the story of how Bucer erased from the cathedral service books the ascriptions of the divine Name which late scholasticism had pitched against one another in subtle dialectic, inscribing in their place the words 'Our Father'. Like Oecolampadius he made provision in his eucharist for silent prayer. He gave to congregational hymn-singing so important a place that it has been claimed that for Bucer 'the church is built round the hymn', and of the many collections issued during these years the most beautiful is the hymn book of 1541. With Münzer in Allstedt, Strassburg led the way in services of vernacular matins and vespers for the congregation. Roussel described the worship in the city in 1526:

> At five in the morning there is a sermon and common prayer, and again at seven o'clock in each church. Next, at eight the people are called together, but this time in the cathedral alone, and there a sermon is preached to them. Preceding and following the Word of God are songs, translated from the Hebrew psalter into the language of the people ... Again at four hours after breakfast a meeting of the people is held in the same church and in like manner the work of Christ is performed.

Bucer's order of baptism attempted to avoid Roman and Zwinglian extremes, while his concern for Christian education led him to stress, more than any other reformer, the importance of confirmation.

His two characteristic themes are the pastoral care and the doctrine of the church. Following Luther and Oecolampadius he expounds the thought of the church as the communion of saints. He begins with predestination, with the elect who are chosen in Christ. But it is of great practical importance for Bucer that, by an act of charity, Christians may assume that those who live godly lives and share in the worship and sacraments of the church are in fact members of the elect, and that therefore the exercise of Christian discipline, including the fencing of the Lord's table, becomes possible. His expositions of the epistle to the Ephesians, and especially of the fourth chapter, stress the importance of the scriptural ministry which he thinks of as fourfold – pastors and teachers, elders and deacons. Of all the reformers he is the most missionary-minded, and as Margaret Blaurer teasingly called him, 'a fanatic for unity'. Bucer and Capito believed, and this is an important trait of the Strassburg Reformation, that while unity was essential in primary matters, there were other issues about which Christians might agree to differ. So Bucer could write: 'Flee formulae, bear with the weak. While all faith is placed in Christ, the thing is safe. It is not given for all to see the same thing at the same time.'

In the eucharistic controversy he badly queered his pitch as a mediator by two inexcusable gaffes, inserting his own views without advertisement into what were intended to be official translations of works by Bugenhagen and Luther, so that when they met at Marburg we can understand why Luther wagged a finger at him and said 'You rogue!' But when he read Luther's eucharistic confession in 1528, he realised that he had misunderstood him to mean a localised and circumscribed presence, and he became convinced that agreement was possible, persisting after the failure of the Marburg Colloquy. For himself, he could use the realistic language of the Fathers to convey a spiritual doctrine of the true presence, and would say that the body and blood of Christ are really delivered (*exhibentur*) to the faithful, that the impenitent receive the body and blood of Christ to their judgment, but that the godless receive only bread and wine. Though he would not accept the eucharistic article of the Augsburg Confession in 1530, and with a Baxter-like alacrity produced the *Confessio Tetrapolitana* (of Strassburg, Constance, Memmingen, Lindau), he pressed on at Schweinfurt (1532) and Kassel (1535) until he brought off the Wittenberg Concord of 1536 with Melanchthon, though he continued to seek agreement with the Swiss at Basel (1536) and Zurich (1539). With Calvin and Melanchthon he attended conferences with Catholics at Worms, Hagenau and Regensburg (1539–41 and again in 1546), and although these broke down, a genuine understanding was reached between them and the mediating theologians, Gropper, Pighius, Contarini, in important matters concerning justification and the work of the Holy Spirit.

In 1546 came the military disasters of the Schmalkaldic war, and Jacob Sturm, on bended knee, had to sue for pardon for his proud city at the feet of the victorious Emperor Charles V. The emperor would have nothing to do with a new confession of faith proffered by Bucer and insisted that Strassburg must sign his Interim. This Martin Bucer altogether refused. In his growing age, amid much physical weakness, he picked out the most laborious among his many invitations and adventured with his family towards the distant, uncouth, backward land across the sea. In England he lived, and taught in Cambridge as Regius Professor of Divinity, until his death. King Edward VI gave him the royal gift of a stove, which gave off nostalgic continental blasts of brimstone to offset the dank mists of the fens. In gratitude he gave back a princely offering, the treatise *De Regno Christi*. This noble document sums up all the dreams and plans (most of them now shattered) of the twenty-five years of the Strassburg Reformation. It is in part a practical retrospect, but at another level reads like a wonderful premonition of seventeenth-century puritanism. Above all it attempts the accommodation of the reign of Christ to human history in terms statesman-like and prophetic enough to be treated with respect.

The Interim bore its fruit. When better days came for the Strassburg Protestants, Bucer's work was overlaid by a triumphant and intransigent Lutheranism under Marbach and Pappus. Bucer's Strassburg, therefore, never became comparable with Luther's Wittenberg, Zwingli's Zurich or Calvin's Geneva. He himself in reputation has not attained to the first three. A heavy earnestness, a lack of humour, an incurable verbosity limited the range and influence of his writings. In a well-meaning way he got across so many people that we suspect a defect of temperament. But he was greatly admired and really loved, as a truly great man and as a 'character', not least in the England of his latest exile. He had, says M. Strohl, a 'charisma for assimilation' and was hospitably aware, beyond most of his contemporaries, of the many-sidedness of truth. That is why, of all the fierce voices of that contending age, he hails those today who labour, as he laboured, for the Peace of Jerusalem.

GENEVA

In John Calvin, France added a new and vital quality to a Protestantism too deeply imbued with a Teutonic spirit. It is as though the Spirit of the Pities, foreseeing what the grim Furies would do with the Reformed Church of France in coming days, snatched from them its beginnings, and made possible this great offering, decisive, superb, lasting, to the churches of the Reformation.

The Reformation in Geneva takes its rise in close connection with reform in the city of Bern. Bern, thriving, ambitious, aggressive, with its eyes on the Pays de Vaud, was the one city strong enough to withstand the duke of Savoy and the Catholic bishop of Geneva, and it encouraged the city of Geneva to seek an independence from temporal and spiritual suzerainty, which by 1536 it had almost attained. In Bern itself a strong patrician element acted as a brake on change. But the activities of Berthold Haller (1492–1536) and Sebastian Mayer resulted in the great disputation of 1528 to which all the leading Swiss reformers came and in which Capito and Bucer took prominent part. The result was the formal abolition of the mass, on 7 February 1528, and the adoption of the Reformation, with its rapid extension into the adjacent commanderies. In this work the leaders were William Farel (1489–1565), a pupil of Lefèvre, of moderate learning, little practical sense, but fiery and fearless eloquence, Antoine Froment (1510–84) – these two Frenchmen – and Peter Viret (1511–71), a native of French Switzerland and soon to be the reformer of Lausanne. Farel, after evangelising Aigle and Neuchâtel, came to Geneva on 4 October 1532 but had to leave at once. Froment remained, disguising reformed propaganda under the cover of a modern language school. The conflict in Geneva was violent and bitter on both

sides. The Catholic party behaved with incredible indiscretion, fanning the flames of an already powerful anticlericalism, while the agitation of the Dominican Furbiti only brought the intervention of the council of Bern on behalf of the reformers. Farel re-entered the city on 20 December 1533. A disputation in January 1534 routed the opposition, and in March Farel was allowed the use of a Franciscan chapel. The attempt of the bishop to subdue the city by force enabled the reformers to show their solidarity with the cause of civic freedom, which they were able to sustain. An attempt to poison the reformers won them still more sympathy. In May and June 1535 there was a public disputation at which the Catholics made a lamentable showing. In August the councils of the city ordered the mass to be suspended. In the following February ordinances were passed regulating public morals and church attendance. On 21 May 1536 the general council met in the cathedral and swore solemnly, with uplifted hands, to live according to the Word of God. The victory of the reformers had been swift, but the leaders knew only too well that it was superficial and precarious. As Calvin said later: 'They had preached. They had burned images. But there was no real reformation. It was all in the melting pot' (*tout était en tumulte*). This was the situation when, two months later, John Calvin passed through the city, and was memorably intercepted by Farel.

John Calvin (1509–64) was born at Noyon on 10 July 1509, the son of a notary of sufficient influence to secure for his son, at the age of twelve, a cathedral benefice to support his education. In 1523 he went to the university of Paris, to the Collège de la Marche. There he learned Latin from the great Mathurin Cordier and developed a style of Ciceronian delicacy. He then studied theology, perhaps under John Major, a famous exponent of the 'modern way'. He took his M.A. degree in 1528 and went next to Orleans where he studied law under the eminent Pierre de l'Etoile. It may be that at this time he began to learn Greek under the Lutheran Melchior Wolmar. But he soon moved to Bourges, where there was a group of humanists, and became wholeheartedly devoted to the study of good letters. His father died in May 1531, and, free to go his own road, Calvin returned to Paris and the study of the sacred languages, taking his doctor's degree in law at Orleans. In Paris he wrote his first book, an edition of Seneca's *De Clementia* which appeared on 4 April 1532. It is very much a young man's book, a little too bedecked with learning, coruscating too showily with classical and patristic allusions. It did not sell. But it is evidence of his thoroughgoing humanism, and as M. Wendel says, 'Calvin always remained more or less the humanist he was in 1532.' But at some time in the next months he underwent a change of mind which was more than the intellectual transition from good to sacred letters. God 'subdued my heart to docility by a sudden conversion' (*subita conversione*

ad docilitatem subtegit) runs the famous enigmatic testimony of his later preface to the Psalms. He now became an associate of dangerous friends. One of them, Nicholas Cop, the rector of the university of Paris, delivered an official address on 1 November 1533 which roused a storm. It now seems unlikely that Calvin had any hand in the making of this oration, which was in the main an unimpressive patchwork of Erasmian and Lutheran citations, made inflammatory mainly by its protest against persecution. But as a result of it many reformers, including Calvin, went into hiding. He made his way to Poitiers and Angoulême, and again to Orleans where he wrote his first theological tract, the *Psychopannychia*,[1] a disquisition on the state of the departed which suggests that in his mind classical and biblical ideas were not fully integrated. The fury about the 'placards' (October 1534) induced Calvin to leave the country, and to seek the city of scholars, the city of books and Erasmus, Basel. There he printed a little book. He did not take it to one of the great publishers of the city, but to the rather amateurish establishment of Thomas Platter. With a bold, elegant epistle to the king of France, it appeared to be just another rather lengthy primer, an octavo of 532 pages, simply entitled *Christianae Religionis Institutio*. Neither publisher nor author could have dreamed that they had given to the world one of its normative religious documents. He went on to Italy to the court of Margaret of Navarre and the company of compatriot poet exiles. He seems to have made a trip to Paris on urgent family business, and to have made a wide detour on his return, around the embattled armies of Francis I and Charles V, which brought him by chance through the city of Geneva. He, whose hopes and plans lay all in the world of letters, was now rudely summoned into the rough world of practical reform. Only the awful conjuring of Farel at his most prophetic saved him from the great Erasmian refusal. But once he had accepted this call he never again faltered.

Calvin began quietly in Geneva, as reader in Holy Scripture in the church. At the beginning of October 1536 he attended a disputation in Lausanne. At the tired end of a wearying debate, the audience woke sharply to attention when the lean, fastidious stranger rose and rattled off from memory a phenomenal chain of citations from the Fathers, references and all, with a casual ease which told them that, that day, a portent had appeared.

The council of Geneva, like those of Basel, Bern and Zurich, was in no wise minded to admit a new Protestant clericalism. But Calvin believed with Oecolampadius and Bucer that it was vital for the church to control its pastoral discipline. In January 1537 he submitted articles for the reorganisation of the church, and a confession of faith in which explicit

1 In part, this tract was an attack on Anabaptism.

mention was made of discipline. Farer and Calvin then became involved in a long and angry wrangle with the scholar Pierre Caroli who charged them with dabbling in Arianism and a suspicious reluctance to endorse the Athanasian creed. The debate was carried into the synods of Bern and Lausanne, to the eventual discomfiture of Caroli. None the less, suspicions were aroused in Bern which came to a head when Farel and Calvin refused to accept the Bernese liturgy which the council of Geneva had accepted over the heads of the preachers. At the same time the council denied the pastoral right of excommunication. Calvin and Farel were then dismissed the city.

Calvin's stay in Strassburg (1538–41) was fruitful. It has been said that he went there a younger theologian and returned an ecclesiastical statesman. As pastor of the French congregation he had cure of souls over a compact society. He learned much from practical collaboration and theological discussion with the Alsatian reformers and above all from Bucer. Bucer's emphasis on the doctrine of the church and upon pastoral care found congenial echo in his own mind. Bucer had stressed the doctrine of predestination and as early as 1536 had treated this in a Christocentric setting. Bucer it was who insisted on a scriptural ministry, and thought of it in terms of pastors, teachers, elders and deacons. The Strassburg liturgy was a model for Calvin's simpler rite, while both agreed on the value and importance of congregational psalm singing. As M. Strohl has said, we must not confuse influence with imitation, and Calvin transmuted what he learned into his own idiom, his own superb clarity.

He wrote important tracts. The *Letter to Sadoleto* is a fine piece of apologetic. In 1539 he published a revision of the *Institutes* enlarged by two chapters. In 1541 he produced the French translation, which was seen to be a literary masterpiece and a landmark in the history of the French language. His *Little Treatise of the Holy Supper of our Lord* (1540) was a notable exposition of an eirenical nature, between the Lutheran and Zwinglian extremes. In August 1540 he married Idelette de Bure. A few weeks before, the council at Geneva had decided to ask him to return. 'I would submit to death a thousand times rather than to that Cross on which I had daily to suffer a thousand deaths', he complained to Farel. But he went, and that strange relationship with Geneva, which de la Tour has likened to a marriage of convenience, persisted to his death. The magistrates were eager to please. They allotted him a house, the famous No. 11 Rue des Chanoines, and a sufficient stipend. Characteristically, he went immediately to the council on arrival with a plan of reform and demanded that a commission be set up forthwith to deal with it.

The *Ordonnances Ecclésiastiques* (20 November 1541) show that Calvin, unlike many of his followers, was no doctrinaire but a statesman willing to accept concessions and limitations. The scriptural doctrine of the church

and ministry is expounded in the fourfold frame of pastors, teachers, elders and deacons. The bone of contention was still discipline and the right of excommunication. The lay elders were nominated by the magistrates. The consistory was a church court, but the preachers and elders met under the presidency of one of the four syndics of the city. The elders could exercise a general moral oversight, but had no power to impose sanctions or to excommunicate, apart from the consent and co-operation of the magistrates. Not until 1555 did Calvin get his way. By this time there had developed an important controversy among the Swiss churches and two ideologies struggled for mastery in the Pays de Vaud: Calvin's with the clear distinction between civil and ecclesiastical discipline, and that of Zurich, whose doctrine of the godly magistrate was expounded at Bern by Wolfgang Musculus, the precursor of Erastus.

Calvin had to accept other modifications: a eucharist quarterly rather than monthly, the imposition of hands in ordination to be discontinued, the meeting of preachers for 'fraternal admonition' (to be held weekly in Calvin's intention) to be quarterly. The council kept firm hold on its prerogatives in regard to the appointment of teachers, marriage regulation and civil crime. Calvin published his *Forme des prières et chants ecclésias-tiques*, a revision of his earlier services in Strassburg. He issued a revised catechism in French and Latin in 1542. He was a great preacher, and the regular biblical preaching of the reformers in Geneva became here as elsewhere a prime agency of reform. But he cared much for education, and invited the best teachers he could get, Mathurin Cordier and then Sebastian Castellio. Deeply impressed by the academy of Strassburg under John Sturm, he did not rest until in 1559 Geneva had erected its own fine academy under the rectorship of Théodore Beza. One by one, in successive edicts, Calvin attempted to win the great, profligate multitude to habits of right virtue by a network of measures which touched every part of life and whose sanctions spared neither high nor low. Naturally he had many enemies, and the old pressure groups used religious devices for political ends. The affair with Caroli left him sensitive to the charge of unorthodoxy. The expulsion of Castellio in 1544 came after a sharp theological quarrel, of which the question of the authorship of the *Song of Songs* was the occasion rather than the cause. More serious was the burning of Servetus. Michael Servetus (1511–53) was a Spanish scholar of versatile gifts. The bent for novelty which enabled him to make at least one important medical discovery was dangerously turned to the critical investigation of the doctrine of the Trinity and his *On the Errors of the Trinity* (1531) horrified most contemporaries and brought him in danger from the Inquisition. Denial of the divine Name was not only heresy but often blasphemy and had been inscribed as such in the law of the Christian empire for a thousand years. He had also written a vitriolic attack on

Calvin's *Institutes* and Calvin had given fair warning that if he ever showed up in Geneva he would get short shrift. This was in fact meted out to him when he had the folly and effrontery to appear in a Genevan congregation in 1553. He was arrested and condemned. That Calvin attempted to get the sentence commuted from burning to execution is a concession which only a Gilbertian casuistry could make impressive, and the death of Servetus, though endorsed by most public opinion of the age, has seemed to posterity the gravest blemish on the record of Calvin's Geneva.

In the last years of his life Calvin dominated the city, an honoured and respected leader, one whose shy nature hid an attractive friendliness which the multitude never saw. Geneva had become the great city of refuge and a centre of evangelical instruction and propaganda. If it seemed to be to some, as to John Knox, 'the most perfect school of Christ', its catechumenate, like that of Origen, never forgot the horizon of martyrdom. From Geneva there went out a ministry, trained, disciplined, committed, the nearest Protestant counterpart to the Society of Jesus. Within a few years 161 pastors went into the Reformed Church in France, already a 'church under the cross'.

Calvin's *Institutes* have been called the Protestant *Summa Theologica*. But it was much more than a theological compendium for the learned. This exposition of the economy of redemption was also a prospectus of the church militant on earth, a handbook for Christian warriors. In 1543 the new Latin edition had grown to twenty-one chapters. In 1550 the work was divided into sections and paragraphs, now of thirty-three chapters. Finally, in 1559 came the great definitive edition, enlarged by more than a fourth, in eighty chapters. Some of it is ephemeral, and the controversies with Osiander, Westphal and Servetus spoil the shape. But here, at last fully deployed, are all Calvin's majestic intellectual resources, the full stretch of biblical and patristic knowledge (there are 341 quotations from Augustine).

Calvin was one of the greatest patristic scholars of the age, and the greatest biblical theologian of his generation. The Bible was the important thing. We who strain with all our historical imagination, who swoop on every precious gleam among the evidence, to come close to these men and women of four hundred years ago must never forget that they did precisely this, with even greater intensity, and with much more at stake, to comprehend the holy prophets and apostles, to hear the Word of the Lord. Calvin lectured twice a week for many years on the Bible, and published commentaries on all the books of the New Testament save Revelation, and on many books of the Old Testament, including a great commentary on the psalms. Into his writings he took up all that was profitable in the reformers before him. He has imbibed Luther much as St

Thomas is saturated in Augustine, even though he differs from him about the relation of gospel and law and the doctrine of the eucharist. He learned much, too, from Bucer and from his friend Melanchthon.

The older view that his dominating conception is the sovereignty of God, even when this is interpreted in terms of sovereign grace, has been modified by theological research which in recent years has brought to the fore its Christocentric reference. He joins together what twenty years of Protestant controversy had begun to part asunder, the doctrines of Word and Spirit: the great watchwords, 'Sola fide: sola gratia'; 'Sola Scriptura'; 'Soli Deo Gloria'. The doctrine of predestination has to be seen in the context of the late medieval exposition of the subject, and Calvin can hardly be blamed for all that later Protestants have made of it. And if we think his doctrine perverse as well as wrong, we must remember that for Calvin what is inscrutable in the divine will is but the darkness of excessive light. Calvin treats with impressive reverence of the ineffable goodness, the infinite condescension of God in passages which achieve a solemn and moving beauty, even though he lacks something of Luther's tenderness and joy. His austerity, real as it is, lacks something of the hardness of the Zwinglian *Hartseeligkeit*.

In the sacramental controversy he was fortunate in coming at a time when the initial bitterness was past, and when Bucer had kept alive the hope of mediation. He insisted on a true, spiritual presence in which the faithful, ascending by faith into the heavenly places, receive the strength and virtue of the body and of the blood of Christ. He shared in the conferences with the Catholic theologians in 1539–41 and never ceased to hold the brave hope of a free, Christian council which might join all the divided churches. His great correspondence with reformers in many lands shows remarkable freedom from insularity, a rare gift for imaginative understanding of conditions and temperaments very different from his own.

Calvin, as has been often said, is the reformer of the second generation, the giant among the epigoni. Protestantism had been slowing down, its initial impetus spent, divided, tired, disheartened. After Calvin it is once more on the move, singing on the march, ready to strike new blows for liberty. He restored the exhilaration of Christian comradeship. He renewed the brave vision of the Word going forth conquering and to conquer.

THE ANABAPTISTS AND THE SECTS

THE traditional idea according to which there is an intrinsic connection between the 'Reformed Churches' led by the likes of Zwingli, Bucer or Oecolampadius and the Anabaptists is broadly correct. Switzerland, south Germany and the Netherlands were the home territories of both Reformed and Anabaptists, while Anabaptists and other nonconformists were less prominent in Lutheran lands. Lutheran churches tended to be organised by secular rulers, while in Zurich, Strassburg and Basel long-established structures of guild government legitimised the popular pressure that accompanied the Reformation. It was easier to establish nonconformist conventicles where the commoner's initiative in the church could not be totally denied than in places where he was expected to be an obedient subject in this as in all other matters. The communal elements in the 'Zwinglian' version of the Reformation made it generate 'sects' in a way that authoritarian Lutheranism did not. To this extent the old debate about whether Anabaptism began in Saxony in 1521 or in Zurich in 1525 was correctly settled in favour of Zurich.

Religious radicalism, however, was endemic in all regions of the early Reformation, in the years between the Diet of Worms (1521) and the Peasants' War (1525). During this time the princes who later organised Lutheran territorial churches still evaded responsibility for the Reformation. To fill the vacuum created by the interacting conservatism of Luther and the princes, radical figures like Andreas Carlstadt and Thomas Müntzer took the lead in implementing changes in religious practice and articulating a non-Lutheran theology. They made it a matter of principle that there should be no 'tarrying for the magistrate' in the reform of the church. Carlstadt held that the Reformation could be carried out wherever there was evangelical faith, even in small communities or individual households. While Luther was in exile at the Wartburg, Carlstadt administered the Lord's Supper in both kinds in Wittenberg on Christmas Day 1521, abandoning the traditional practice that restricted the wine to the clergy alone. Later he put aside clerical garb and academic titles and declared himself a 'new layman'. His was the first voice raised to challenge the belief in the real presence of the body and blood of Christ in the bread and wine of the communion elements. Thomas Müntzer, too, challenged the authority of the clergy, not only that of the old papal prelates but also of the new 'scribes' who were especially learned in scriptural exegesis. He

wanted to worship not the dead letters of the Bible but a God who spoke in the abyss of believers' souls. In his parish in Allstedt in Saxony, he was the first to implement a German service of worship. When neighbouring Catholic rulers persecuted their subjects for flocking to Müntzer's services, he told the Saxon princes that they must either decide to use their sword to protect the gospel or see it taken from them and handed over to the commoners. Both Müntzer and Carlstadt attacked infant baptism. In his *Protestation* of 1523 Müntzer pointed to its institution in the first Christian centuries as the key to the decline of the church. Carlstadt wrote a dialogue against infant baptism, attacking Luther, that failed to get past the censorship in Basel in 1524 but was published anonymously in Augsburg in 1527. These initiatives of the Saxon radicals were marked by an extreme anticlericalism. In Luther's eyes both Carlstadt and Müntzer betrayed theological incompetence by failing to distinguish between the Law and the gospel. He warned his rulers that both were possessed by a spirit of violence, even though Carlstadt, unlike Müntzer, persisted in using the language of non-violence. The Saxon princes co-operated in thwarting Carlstadt and Müntzer with expulsions and dismissals wherever they attained temporary influence. The two Saxon radicals stand at the beginning of nonconformism in the German Reformation. In different degrees their ideas and examples were absorbed by the main groups of Anabaptists and by other nonconformists, for example, Melchior Hoffman, the furrier missionary to Livonia, and Caspar von Schwenckfeld, the lay noble reformer of Liegnitz in Silesia.

Just as it is no accident that the Reformed Reformation and Anabaptism were centred in the same territories, so it is not coincidental that Switzerland and south-west Germany, the earliest scenes of Reformed and Anabaptist activity, were the regions of the German Peasants' War of 1525. In the beginning all three phenomena were intertwined and shared a common debt to political and religious communalism. The threat of the Peasants' War led the Reformed cities to dilute their communalism and to establish magisterial Reformations. The defeat of the Peasants' War led the Anabaptists to retreat from communalism into a separatism more like Ernst Troeltsch's 'sect type' than the form in which they had first emerged in 1525. Even so, the continuing Anabaptist movement of the late 1520s appeared to the various magistrates as a threatening continuation of the common people's resistance of 1525. The prosecution of Anabaptism in the late 1520s was justified as a continuation of the suppression of the Peasants' War. It was sufficiently successful to transfer the geographical centres of Anabaptism in the 1530s and later to a refugee community in Moravia and to a new mutation of the movement in Westphalia and the Netherlands.

The earliest form of Anabaptism arose in close connection with the

Zwinglian Reformation and rural resistance movements in north-eastern Switzerland – that is, in Zurich and its dependencies and the lands of Schaffhausen and St Gallen. The Swiss had, since their military victories of the fourteenth century, expelled feudal overlords, but Swiss cities, particularly Zurich and Bern, continued to hold restless peasant populations in uneasy subjection. The Reformation and Anabaptism provided yet another setting for these recurring urban–rural conflicts.

Zwingli's position that the tithe, a very substantial tax on the peasantry, was not based on divine law (*göttliche Gerechtigkeit*) was directed against the higher clergy who extorted tithe payment under pain of canon law penalties including excommunication. Some of Zwingli's radical adherents, the rural priests Simon Stumpf, Wilhelm Reublin and Johannes Brötli, turned resistance to tithe into an attack on the established system of clerical finances and appointments, centred in Zurich. These priests wished their villages to expropriate the tithe for local purposes, more particularly as a basis for self-directed reformations in the manner advocated in Carlstadt's writings. When this issue came to a head in July 1523 Zwingli supported continuation of centrally controlled tithe collection (under human law and human justice, of course), while the group that later became Anabaptists sided with the villages. This group was led by Conrad Grebel, a humanistically educated son of a Zurich patrician family. In his eyes Zwingli had shown himself to be just another 'scribe' in supporting the 'Turkish-tyrannical' policies of the Zurich government. The tithe issue later became one of the main rallying points for resisting rural subjects of Zurich, particularly in the territory of Grüningen, in the riots and assemblies of the spring and summer of 1525. The leader of the rural resistance, Hans Girenbader, himself became a prominent Anabaptist. Grebel, preaching believers' baptism in Grüningen in the wake of the 1525 uprising, told his hearers of Zwingli's alleged encouragement of the Zurich government to suppress the rebels with a cannonade. The idea of independent village churches choosing and dismissing their own pastors, and controlling their own tithes, was one on which early Anabaptists and rebellious peasants could join. In the eyes of Zurich's main deputy in Grüningen, the governor Jörg Berger, Anabaptism was but a continuing phase of the villagers' resistance to the religious and political authority of Zurich.

Grebel and his supporters insisted that the laity should take the Bible into their own hands and no longer be misled by 'scribes' like Zwingli who claimed superior knowledge of the Scriptures. They pressed from 1523 onward for immediate abolition of the mass and the removal of the images of Catholic worship, which they regarded as 'idols'. Here they followed in the footsteps of the Wittenberg movement, which Carlstadt had led in 1521–2 before it was suppressed and Carlstadt himself silenced by the joint

action of Luther and the Electoral Saxon court. In 1524 the opposition of the Grebel group to Zwingli and the Zurich magistrates crystallised into an impassioned attack on infant baptism. The first actual refusals of infant baptism occurred again in the Zurich villages of Witikon and Zollikon, the spheres of Reublin and Brötli. Infant baptism had frequently been questioned in the early years of the Reformation: in a tentative way by Zwingli and the Strassburg reformers, and trenchantly by Müntzer and Carlstadt. A conventicle of laymen in Zurich led by the bookseller Andreas Castelberger took up the issue in the winter of 1523–4. By the fall of 1524 the radical leaders in Zurich and its dependent territories were alert to the positions of Müntzer and Carlstadt and sought a common front with them on baptism. They had tracts by Carlstadt printed in Basel and distributed among their supporters. By the intervention of the Basel pastor Oecolampadius, Carlstadt's statement on baptism was not published then, but the Zurichers did get to read his absolute rejection of the right of any ruler or pastor to slow the progress of church reformation. Conrad Grebel began to compile a collection of scriptural proof texts against infant baptism. In December the group demanded talks with Zwingli and the pastors on the matter of baptism. When these talks led to no conclusion Grebel's associate, Felix Mantz, made a Protestation to the Zurich councils. The government decreed a formal disputation to settle the matter on 17 January 1525. Grebel, Mantz and Reublin represented the dissidents against Zwingli and the pastors. In this debate we learn for the first time of the radical party's view that, since infant baptisms were invalid, new adult baptisms were necessary for all Christian believers. After the disputation the Zurich government decreed the immediate baptism of all unbaptised children. It forbade the continuation of lay meetings to discuss baptism and exiled all non-citizens among the prominent dissidents – specifically, the rural pastors Reublin and Brötli and the bookseller Castelberger. The banishments were decreed on 21 January. On that same night, apparently, the group responded by baptising each other in Felix Mantz's mother's house in Zurich. The account of the event preserved by the Hutterites assigns a prominent role in these baptisms to Conrad Grebel and to a relative newcomer (not well known enough to be included in the banishment decree), Jörg Blaurock, a priest from Graubünden.

The Zurich baptisms are viewed in hindsight as the founding of the Baptist-Mennonite confessions, but the participants were no more consciously founding a church than Martin Luther, when he did whatever he did do on 31 October 1517. The 'sect type' of Christianity (as defined by Max Weber and Ernst Troeltsch) would hardly have appealed to them, because, in early 1525, they lacked its quietism and social withdrawal. It was Zwingli who developed the polemical notion that baptism was an

unimportant external matter for the Grebel group, that they were really out to create a 'separate church'. To him this meant that they intended to divide both the political community and the supporters of the Reformation in the city and territories of Zurich. They had no such dastardly intentions. But their lay baptisms and lay communions, which continued and spread in the next weeks and months, did mark a new stage in the popular Reformation. Now popular religious initiatives were directed not merely at influencing governmental policy towards supporting the Reformation, as had happened frequently in the years since 1521; nor was religious Reformation carried on in sovereign indifference to secular authority, as Carlstadt recommended. Now a form of nonconformist Christianity was created in conscious opposition to the more-or-less established clergy of the Reformation, and in contempt of the rulers who supported them. Similar things had happened a century before in Hussitism and the same thing was to occur on a much larger scale a century later in England, but for the German Reformation this was something new. Thomas Müntzer, it has been convincingly suggested, extended his anticlerical anger from the Catholic clergy to the Lutheran 'scribes', to the 'Big Jacks', the rulers. The Zurich Anabaptists extended the self-assertion of commoners and laity from an attack on the old clergy to a questioning of the integrity of their rulers, to a rejection of their humanistically educated Reformed pastorate. When they 'took the Bible into their own hands' they had no idea where God and history would lead them.

The Peasants' War broke out in Upper Swabia and reignited itself on the Upper Rhine in the same days that the Zurich baptisms took place. Anabaptism began to spread then in regions where the traditional authority of secular rulers was tottering before a massive refusal of obedience by the common people. They expected from the Reformation a 'divine justice' that would truly transform their conditions of everyday life. The historical moment was made to order for the expansion of nonconformist religion. The earliest Anabaptists responded to their surroundings; not only did they want to restore baptism as they read about it in the Acts of the Apostles, they wanted to follow the prescriptions of Acts 2 and 4 about Christian community of goods.

Two of the exiles, Reublin and Brötli, went directly from villages outside Zurich to Hallau in the Klettgau, the place that led the rural subjects of Schaffhausen in resistance against tithe, serfdom and compulsory labour services. Within days they had transplanted themselves from one Swiss rural–urban conflict to another. They took over the church of Hallau from an unpopular pastor and baptised most of the population. Reublin, joined by Conrad Grebel, became very active for the new baptism in the Schaffhausen–Waldshut–St Gallen area at the same time that its authority structure was destabilised by systematic disobedience

from unprivileged commoners both in the countryside and in the towns. By Easter 1525 Reublin had won a very important adherent to Anabaptism in Balthasar Hubmaier, the university-educated pastor of Waldshut. Waldshut, in Austrian territory neighbouring the Swiss Confederation, had been resisting Habsburg suppression of its Reformation since 1523 and was now allied with armed bands of peasants. Hubmaier is the probable author of one peasant programme, the *Artikelbrief*, and the editor of another, the *Verfassungsentwurf*. In later months Anabaptist Waldshut gave Anabaptist Hallau armed support in one of its quarrels with the government of Schaffhausen. In Schaffhausen itself the leading pastor, Sebastian Hofmeister, turned against infant baptism, as he moved a very reluctant council towards religious innovations under pressure from armed peasants outside the walls and the aggressive vinegrowers' guild in the city. Gaining courage from the defeats of the rebels in the empire, the Schaffhausen government in August conducted a military action against the vinegrowers and expelled Hofmeister. The Anabaptists also gained a mass following in St Gallen in 1525, and here, too, they were most successful outside the city walls. There the former school master, Hans Krüsi, preached against tithes and conducted adult baptisms. The energetic preaching of Grebel, Mantz and Blaurock in the territory of Grüningen after its peasant uprising was suppressed has to be viewed in much the same light. In Grüningen many of the pastors had at first supported the villagers in their grievances but then quickly made their submissions to the Zurich church and government. The Anabaptist preachers filled the vacuum in moral authority left by the Grüningen pastors. Jörg Berger, the Zurich governor, repeatedly complained of the sympathy that Grebel, Mantz and Blaurock enjoyed in Grüningen. Krüsi was promised protection by the villagers of rural St Gallen but was taken by surprise by a Catholic bailiff and hurried off to Luzern for execution. Reublin and Brötli were actually defended by the villagers of Hallau against Schaffhausen's attempts to arrest them. Only the final destruction of peasant resistance in this area in November in the battle of Griessen put Hubmaier, Brötli and Reublin to flight. This early version of Swiss Anabaptism which spread behind the shield of peasant militance can hardly be regarded as nonresistant, even though few Anabaptist leaders explicitly justified military resistance in the manner of Hubmaier. The peasantry, armed to parley rather than to fight, preferred to sack the provisions of monasteries (as in Grüningen) rather than to attack persons, and was weakened in its resolve by pastors like Christoph Schappeler of Memmingen who insisted that it was far better for Christian people to suffer injustice than to take up the sword. Given this confusion among the resisting people themselves, it is hardly surprising to find it among the Anabaptist preachers who mingled with them.

Anabaptism itself, not to mention the unrest of rural subjects and unprivileged townsmen with which it became associated in 1525, was definitely subversive of the authority of the Swiss governments. A repression was bound to come, even though in the states that were then adopting the Reformation this involved a painful action against former friends and allies of the Reformers. When the Zurich government decided to imprison the dissenters and to put them on short rations until they yielded, two jailbreaks ensued, first by the Grüningen Anabaptist leadership in December 1525, and then by Grebel, Mantz and Blaurock themselves in March 1526. At that point the Zurich government invoked the death penalty. The baptisers were to be drowned. Grebel had died of natural causes in 1526, but Mantz, captured in Grüningen following his jailbreak, was drowned in the Limmat River in Zurich on 5 January 1527. Further, the Zurich government demanded the execution of Jakob Falk and Heini Reimann, two leaders of the Grüningen Anabaptists. The Grüningen court, claiming final jurisdiction and regarding the hounding of Anabaptists as part of a Zurich campaign against Grüningen autonomy, refused. Bern eventually arbitrated the dispute between Zurich and Grüningen; the death sentences were upheld. There are records of about seventy executions of Anabaptists in Switzerland, forty of them in the territories of Bern.

After 1525 the centre of Swiss Anabaptism was displaced from the territories of Zurich. During the years from 1526 to 1529, while the conflict between Catholics and Reformed was not yet settled in Basel, that city was a major refuge for Anabaptists. After 1530 the greatest concentration of Anabaptists was found in the territories of Bern including the Aargau, but the north-east regions of Schaffhausen, St Gallen and Appenzell remained an important secondary centre. Swiss Anabaptism was the most important source of the Anabaptist conventicles in the neighbouring parts of the empire, Swabia and the Upper Rhine region, and Jörg Blaurock contributed to the beginning of Anabaptism in the Tyrol, where he was burned at the stake in 1529. To the middle of the century the 'Swiss Brethren' outside of Switzerland were about twice as numerous as the Swiss Anabaptists themselves.

The tone for the later course of Swiss Anabaptism was set by the 'Brotherly Understanding of Some Children of God about Seven Articles', a document drafted under the leadership of Michael Sattler in February 1527 in Schleitheim, one of the rural villages belonging to Schaffhausen. Zwingli remarked upon its wide circulation when it was first drafted. It was used by Hutterites, Marpeck brothers and Mennonites and, because its themes became so important for the Anabaptist groups that survived the sixteenth century, its influence has been more assumed

than proven. A careful textual study of the actual circulation and use of the Schleitheim Articles is very necessary.

Sattler was the prior of a Benedictine monastery in the Black Forest. He left it and made contact with the first Zurich Anabaptists sometime in 1525. His association with Reublin was especially important. Reublin was probably with him at Schleitheim, directed him to mission work for Anabaptism at Horb in Württemberg and helped to memorialise Sattler's martyrdom at Rottenburg am Neckar on 20 May 1527. The Schleitheim Articles circulated together with the accounts of Sattler's trial and execution, and they may have gained authority because of this association with one of the important early pieces of Anabaptist martyr literature.

The Seven Articles treated the topics of baptism, the Lord's Supper, leaders of Anabaptist congregations, the ban, separation from the world, the sword and the oath. The ban, based on Matthew 18, made expulsion, shunning or avoidance the ultimate instrument of discipline in the Anabaptist congregations. The ban replaced the sword of the magistrate which was deemed necessary to maintain order among worldly people but had no place among Christians. Rulers were not acceptable members of the nonconformist congregations; to have included them would have produced 'division in the body of Christ'. Oaths, the cement of sixteenth-century society, were forbidden in the New Testament, so Christians should refuse to swear them. In the keystone position was Article 4 on separation:

Truly all creatures are in but two classes, good and bad, believing and unbelieving, darkness and light, the world and those who have come out of the world, God's temple and idols, Christ and Belial; and none can have part with the other . . . From all this we should learn that everything which is not united with our God and Christ cannot be other than an abomination which we should shun and flee from. By this are meant all popish and antipopish works and church services, meetings and church attendance, drinking houses, civic affairs, etc.

Extended treatises on separation, primarily concerned to defend the Swiss Anabaptists' refusal to attend Reformed Church services, appeared in the 1530s and 1540s. From 1531 to 1538 a number of disputations between Reformed pastors and Anabaptists were organised by the government of Bern, as an alternative to prison and execution for ending Anabaptist nonconformity. The themes of these disputations stayed very close to the Schleitheim Articles. Another topic in the Bern disputations was the Swiss Anabaptist viewpoint on community of goods and usury. An Anabaptist congregational ordinance now preserved in the Bern archives, written in the same hand as the earliest version of the Schleitheim Articles, had established a norm from Acts 2 and 4: 'Of all the brothers

and sisters of this congregation none shall have anything of his own, but rather, as the Christians in the time of the apostles held all in common, and especially stored up a common fund, from which aid can be given to the poor, according as each will have need, and as in the apostles' time permit no brother to be in need.' The first rural Anabaptist congregation after the baptisms of January 1525, that of Zollikon, practised community of goods in this sense. All members of the congregation continued to live and work in separate households (as implied in the account in Acts), but needy households were helped from a common fund consisting of the contributions of wealthy members. Moreover, everyone was expected to work; it was unacceptable to disturb the unity of the group by having some of its members living as *rentiers* on income from usury. One Bernese Anabaptist, Heinrich Seiler from Aarau, in a statement of 1529 pointed to the connection between the exclusion of rulers and that of *rentiers*: 'No Christian can be a ruler, because rulers collect tithes and get income from investments, and people who do that cannot enter the kingdom of God.'

So the Swiss Anabaptists moved from the experience of 1525, in which they interpreted the Reformation as a broad commoners' movement to erect divine justice for everyone, to a separation in which they tried to remain pure from the ongoing wickedness of the everyday world. They avoided Reformed Church services, declined civic oaths and excluded men of political and economic affairs, lest they produce a 'division of the body of Christ'. Swiss Anabaptism was such a pure expression of the laymen's, commoners' anti-authoritarian impulse in the Reformation that censorious congregations tended to destroy the authority of their own leaders. Pilgram Marpeck would later criticise them, remarking that in a properly ordered church it was rather the business of the shepherds to pasture the sheep than of the sheep to discipline the shepherds. The tradition in Anabaptism that stemmed from Grebel and Sattler was first of all singled out and given a name by other Anabaptist groups that wanted to maintain an identity distinct from them. In the 1540s the Marpeck brotherhood and the Hutterites began to call this group 'Swiss Brethren', although they might appear in Swabia, Alsace or even Moravia as well as in Switzerland. Particularly in the territories of Bern, and then by seventeenth- and eighteenth-century immigration via the Palatinate to Pennsylvania, this group did maintain itself despite sporadic persecution. For the immediate sixteenth-century future, however, Anabaptism enjoyed its main flourishing elsewhere in lands of relative tolerance, first Moravia, and then the Netherlands.

In May 1526, on the Day of Pentecost, Hans Denck performed believers' baptism on Hans Hut in Augsburg. Denck had been a humanist schoolmaster in Nuremberg until January 1525, when he was expelled because his mystical religious beliefs failed to meet the pastors' and

magistrates' test of Lutheran orthodoxy. We are informed by Oecolampa-
dius that Denck then was invited to Mühlhausen, to be schoolmaster there
while Müntzer and Pfeiffer were its leading pastors and while it was allied
with the peasant armies of Thuringia. Apparently fleeing Mühlhausen
before it was captured by the princes' armies, in the fall of 1525, Denck
associated with Swiss Anabaptists in St Gallen; and then, after baptising
Hut, at the end of 1526 and the beginning of 1527, we find him travelling
about in the Rhineland with Melchior Rinck. Hans Hut and Melchior
Rinck were both in the peasant army at Frankenhausen on 15 May 1525,
the day of Müntzer's fatal defeat. We do not know who initiated Denck
into Anabaptism, but it hardly matters. Although Denck, Rinck and Hut
were all independent figures with their own approaches to Anabaptism, all
three belonged to the group of Reformation radicals on whom Thomas
Müntzer exerted a decisive influence. They were the three most authorita-
tive leaders of Anabaptism in south and central Germany and Austria,
even though neither Hut nor Denck survived 1527 and Rinck was
permanently imprisoned from 1531 onward. In the areas where they set
the tone for Anabaptism it became a movement marked by the same
mystical and apocalyptic themes that dominated Müntzer's writings.
There is no good ground for the notion that when these figures underwent
believers' baptism this amounted to some sort of conversion experience
that obliterated Müntzer's influence. In fact, one of them, Hans Hut,
explicitly criticised the 'ordinance' of the Swiss Anabaptists (Schleitheim
Article 6) that forbade the carrying of weapons. As far as one can measure
such things, the Müntzer-inspired Anabaptism of south and central
Germany and Austria was as distinct from that of Switzerland, where
Müntzer was but a peripheral figure, as, say, the official Reformations of
Strassburg or Basel were distinct from that of Electoral Saxony.

   Again, as in Switzerland and neighbouring Waldshut, early Anabap-
tism in south and central Germany and Austria had a decisive relation
with the Peasants' War. But there was a fundamental difference. In
Switzerland Anabaptism spread hand in hand with rural unrest. In the
southern territories of the empire Anabaptism followed the Peasants'
War; it frequently appealed to persons like Denck, Hut and Rinck who
had been involved on the side of the commoners. Its bitterness also was a
reaction to the only real military activity in the Peasants' War, the princes'
brutal suppression of the bands of commoners which is estimated to have
cost 100,000 lives. Of course, it must be remembered that in south German
Imperial cities such as Augsburg, Strassburg and Esslingen, where there
were many Anabaptists, few would have been involved in the 1525
uprising.

   When Hans Hut, the most influential leader in the southern regions of
the empire, learned in 1526 that common laypeople were conducting

believers' baptisms, this was for him the sign of God's new covenant with his elect. As Hut rethought the defeats of 1525, Müntzer and Pfeiffer were the two slain but unburied witnesses of the apocalypse prophesied in Revelation 11. Three and a half years after the end of the Peasants' War God's judgment would descend on the wicked, the same clerics and rulers condemned by Müntzer. This judgment would take the form first of a Turkish invasion, after which the little band of Anabaptist covenanters would complete the work of vengeance. This placed the end of the world, when God's people would draw their sword from its sheath, sometime in 1528. In the meantime Hut travelled frenetically through Franconia, Swabia, Austria and as far as Moravia, bestowing the 'sign' of baptism (a cross of water on the forehead), and thinking of his task as the assembling of the 144,000 elect of Revelation 7 – the people who would be spared in the coming judgment. It is hard to guess whether or not Hut's followers would have actually resorted to insurrection had he not been apprehended and died in prison in Augsburg before the end of 1527. Especially in Franconia Hut and his lieutenants were Peasants' War veterans appealing to the desire for revenge of other Peasants' War veterans. A closely related group of Anabaptists under Hans Römer, another survivor of the battle of Frankenhausen, planned as an act of vengeance for Müntzer's death to set fire to parts of Erfurt on New Year's Day, 1528. Throughout Thuringia and Hesse, the territories in which Melchior Rinck was most influential, although the apocalyptic message was more muted, again Anabaptist leaders were frequently survivors of the Peasants' War. One of them, Heinz Kraut, persisted in addressing his learned theological interrogators with the familiar 'du', and on the scaffold facing execution in 1535 he repeated the old slogan of peasant resistance, 'When Adam delved and Eve span, who was then the gentleman?'

Hut's message of apocalyptic vengeance for the Peasants' War became problematic for many of his followers even before the failure of his predictions in 1528. In a major meeting of Anabaptist leaders in Augsburg in the summer of 1527 Hut agreed to make his ideas about the end of the world an esoteric teaching, not to be shared with the less-advanced rank and file. A counter influence to this may have come from Denck, best known for his writings, one of which defended free will, and his scholarship, for example his joint translation with Ludwig Haetzer of the prophetic books of the Old Testament. In Hut's group another tack was taken by Leonhard Schiemer, who has an even better claim than Jörg Blaurock to be called the founder of Tyrolean Anabaptism. He kept the precise prediction of the end of the world but abandoned the connection with the Peasants' War, calculating the last three and a half years of tribulation from the Swiss authorities' first killing of Anabaptists. Pervasive among the nonconformist groups created by Hut and his co-workers

was a distinctive teaching called the 'gospel of all creatures', in what might seem to be a misreading of the Great Commission of Mark 16:15: 'Go into all the world, preaching the gospel *to* all creatures.' (In fact, the distinction between dative and genitive forms is ambiguous, too, in the New Testament Greek). The gospel of all creatures taught the God–man relationship to the illiterate, short-circuiting the Bible and the 'scribes'. God, it said, used his chosen ones just as people used all creatures. The creature was there to serve man, the grape to be crushed, the grain to be ground, the chicken to be killed and plucked. In the same way God subjected those whom he loved to tribulation and suffering, not only the dark nights of the soul that Müntzer wrote about, but also the martyr's deaths that befell Hut, Schiemer and so many of their group. This punishment of God's beloved was paternal, it brought salvation. The baptised believer should await it with *Gelassenheit*, a 'holding still', a 'yieldedness' to the divine will that was a familiar part of the conceptual world of late-medieval German mysticism.

Gelassenheit played a great role, too, in the Hut group's approach to community of goods, where it meant the detachment from preoccupation with material things that Thomas Müntzer had written about in his polemics against Luther and the princes in 1524. According to Müntzer the great of this world immerse themselves in material luxury and they force a kind of materialism on the poor as well, by compelling them to devote their every thought to earning a bare livelihood. Thus they were like the Pharisees, whom Jesus denounced for neither entering the kingdom of heaven themselves nor letting others go in. Hut expected the institution of community of goods to come together with the slaying of the wicked at the end of the three and a half years of tribulation. Some of his followers sold their property in compliance with Jesus's command to the rich young man (Matthew 19:21), confident that they would be amply rewarded at the looming apocalyptic moment. Even after the disappointment of 1528 Augsburg Anabaptists excluded property-holders from the Lord's Supper. Some of Hut's Austrian followers prescribed that in Anabaptist households family members and servants should share equally. For the Swiss Anabaptists, characteristically, community of goods was the outcome of a congregational ordinance that tried to imitate the church of the apostles. For the followers of Hut, it was, in the tradition of Thomas Müntzer, an overcoming of the sinful flesh which expressed itself in the cleaving to creatures.

The late 1520s were a time of rapid growth and equally rapid collapse for the south German Anabaptists. Claus-Peter Clasen identified records of *c.* 4,400 Anabaptist converts in the first five years in south and central Germany, Switzerland and Austria, roughly the same as the total for the entire two succeeding decades. He found records of 352 executions in 1528

and 1529, more than 40 per cent of the recorded Anabaptist executions between 1525 and the Thirty Years War. In fact, 80 per cent of the recorded Anabaptist executions in south and central Germany, Switzerland and Austria took place before the beginning of 1534. The ruthless policy towards the Anabaptists came from Catholic authorities, especially the Habsburgs, their instrument the Swabian League, and the dukes of Bavaria. At least 85 per cent of the Anabaptist executions in the regions mentioned were carried out by Catholic rulers.[1] The late 1520s were the period when the Hut-influenced type of Anabaptism spread in Austria, the Tyrol, Bavaria and the sphere of influence of the Swabian League. The emperor issued a mandate decreeing the death penalty for Anabaptists in January 1528; in March a similar mandate was promulgated by the Swabian League, which sent out punitive expeditions conducting summary executions without trial of Anabaptists and supposed Anabaptists, who often turned out to be ordinary supporters of the Reformation. One of the leaders of the Augsburg congregation, the patrician Eitelhans Langenmantel, met his death at the hands of an execution squad of the Swabian League. Only Catholic governments applied the cruel death by burning; only Catholic governments executed recanters (by some more 'merciful' mode than burning, to be sure). However, in the Second Diet of Speyer in 1529, best known for the evangelical Estates' Protestation on behalf of the Gospel, the Protestants co-operated in approving a mandate that gave the death penalty for Anabaptism the status of Imperial law. Generally they did not, in fact, execute rank-and-file Anabaptists. Undoubtedly in the eyes of many rulers, given the content of Hut's bloody apocalyptic vision, the imprisoning or killing of Anabaptists was a suppression of rebellious embers from the Peasants' War and/or a preventative measure against a renewed Peasants' War. The Swabian League's anti-Anabaptist mandate of 1528 was explicit about this: something had to be done, because 'Anabaptism is breaking in and increasing more and more' and 'Anabaptism leads to new revolutions and uprisings.' Not even the news from Münster was enough to stoke the ebbing fires of persecution in 1534; but by then it was evident that the Peasants' War would not be renewed, and besides south German Anabaptism had been pretty much broken.

Simultaneously with the intense persecution of 1528 and 1529 came the disappointment of the apocalyptic hopes that Hut and Römer and their followers had fixed upon 1528. Numbers of prominent leaders reacted by

---

1 Claus-Peter Clasen, *The Anabaptists in South and Central Germany, Switzerland and Austria. Their Names, Occupations, Places of Residence and Dates of Conversion: 1525–1618* (1978), pp. 5–11; Claus-Peter Clasen, *Anabaptism. A Social History, 1525–1618. Switzerland, Austria, Moravia and South and Central Germany* (1972), pp. 370–4.

an inner emigration, a rejection of external religious observances, which Reformation scholarship has called 'spiritualism'. Before his death from natural causes in Basel in 1527, Hans Denck expressed regret that he had involved himself in baptism and the building of nonconformist convent-icles. Strassburg, a provisionally tolerant city until the establishment of the Reformed Church Ordinance of 1533, was a meeting place for Anabaptists moving towards spiritualism in the early 1530s: Jakob Kautz, Hans (Bünderlin) Vischer and Christian Entfelder. This was probably the background of Sebastian Franck, too, before he published his *Chronika, Zeitbuch und Geschichtsbibel* in Strassburg in 1531. This world chronicle, a major publishing success, insinuated that all historical orthodoxies, Cath-olic, Lutheran and Reformed, bore the mark of the devil. The truth of God had been maintained by history's hunted heretics. The Anabaptists, thought Franck, sensed something of this truth, but they obscured it by setting up orthodoxies and externalities of their own.

Bünderlin and Entfelder had been in Moravia. The alternative to the inner emigration of spiritualism was an outer emigration to the one country where Anabaptists could practise their form of Christianity. In the late 1520s and early 1530s such influential figures as Pilgram Marpeck and Leopold Scharnschlager saw their activities in Strassburg and the Rhineland as under the direction of 'the church in the land of Moravia'. From the years of persecution, 1528–9, Moravia became the magnet for fleeing Anabaptists in the southern parts of the empire – from the Tyrol, from Swabia, from Hesse and Thuringia. They were drawn to its religious freedom, returning to their homelands only in periods when Moravia, too, was swept by persecution. Aside from the new, Melchiorite, Anabaptism of the north, from the 1530s onward the story of Moravian Anabaptism was, very largely, the Anabaptist story.

Formally included in the Holy Roman Empire but not a part of its day-to-day politics, the united realms of Bohemia and Moravia had a legally secured tradition of tolerating a variety of Christian churches – the outcome of the bloody, inconclusive Hussite Wars a century earlier. Particularly in Moravia Catholicism was very weak among the nobility in the early sixteenth century. When Ferdinand of Austria inherited these lands in 1526, he was not able to apply the policies of suppressing heresy that were characteristic of the other Habsburg lands.

Balthasar Hubmaier led the Anabaptist flight to Moravia, arriving at Nikolsburg (now Mikulov) in the late spring or summer of 1526. He won both the resident bishop and the temporal lord of the town to Anabaptism and began to set up an Anabaptist version of the socially conservative magisterial Reformation that followed the princes' victory in the Peasants' War. Hubmaier's approach was antithetical to that of Hans Hut, whose apocalyptic expectations were saturated with the social resentment of the

defeated rebels. Hut's visit to Nikolsburg in the spring of 1527 led to a personal rupture between the two leaders. Hubmaier declared that the baptism he taught and the one Hut taught were as different as heaven and hell, Orient and Occident, Christ and Belial. Hubmaier had the greater appeal to the settled Moravian population, but Hut's social radicalism was more popular among the refugees from South Germany. Driven out of Moravia, Hut was arrested in the fall of 1527 in Augsburg, while Hubmaier was extradited from Moravia to be burned at the stake in Vienna in 1528; but the divisions among their followers continued.

In March 1528 a group of two hundred refugees under Jacob Wiedemann split from the Nikolsburg congregation in order to practise the nonresistance and community of goods that they found lacking there. They moved to nearby Austerlitz to establish their own settlement. The years 1528 and 1529 marked a peak of Anabaptist persecution in the empire. In 1528 refugee groups from Silesia under Gabriel Ascherham and from Swabia under Philip Plener also settled in southern Moravia and adopted a community of goods similar to that practised in Austerlitz. In the next year Jakob Hutter, the major Anabaptist leader from the Tyrol, visited Moravia, seeking a safe place for his followers. The Tyrol was especially important for the Anabaptist immigration to Moravia. It had experienced a particularly strong and long-drawn-out version of the Peasants' War under Michael Gaismair in 1525 and 1526. The Catholic church and Habsburg rule were regarded by the Tyrolean peasantry as exploitative foreign impositions, yet the ferocity of Habsburg Catholic persecution assured that nonconformist Anabaptism would be the only version of the Reformation to surface in the Tyrol. Thus the legacy of the Peasants' War was strong popular sympathy for Anabaptism in the Tyrol. Jakob Hutter himself is first described as a man with a gun, and a number of personal associations connect Hutter's followers with those of Gaismair. It was a situation like the one described for Grüningen, where Anabaptism flourished in the bitterness following a suppressed rural rebellion; but in the Tyrol the scale of the nonconformist movement was larger, and the anticlerical and antigovernmental hatreds were more intense.

The years from 1528 to 1533 were marked by a series of struggles over leadership in the refugee settlements in Moravia. Accusations of lack of rigour in the practice of community of goods were used against one another by virtually all competing contenders for leadership. The schism of 1533, in effect caused by Hutter's claims to personal authority, left the groups hopelessly split for the immediate future. Most of the leaders, including Hutter, perished in a fierce persecution in 1535 and 1536, when King Ferdinand used the Münster kingdom to frighten the Moravian Estates into banishing the Anabaptists. In the longer run the Moravian

nobles allowed the Anabaptists to re-establish their settlements, and the Hutterites survived and absorbed the competing groups, except for a minority called Swiss Brethren or Marpeck brothers who continued to live in single family households.

The transcending of the single family household as the basic economic and social unit, and the fundamental weakening of the authority of the family, was the key to the creation of tightly integrated Hutterite settlements of about 500 persons. Undoubtedly the result of the influx of thousands of homeless Anabaptists from various regions of the empire, these living arrangements provided the basis for a total community of life. Children were taken from their parents after weaning, educated for crafts or agriculture, and then married under the supervision of the elders. The superior craftsmanship of the Hutterites enabled them to buy surplus grain and to live at a very satisfactory standard for the time. During the depression in the vinegrowing regions of Swabia in the 1570s the Hutterite missions were particularly effective there. Leasing their lands from Moravian nobles, the Hutterites maintained some of the apocalyptic tension of Hut's version of Anabaptism, considering themselves sojourners in a strange land 'in these last, dangerous times', awaiting the return of the Lord. Their missions can be seen, too, as a continuation of Hut's 'sealing' of the apocalyptic elect, although they served the practical purpose of recruitment in years when the Peasants' War and the intense persecution of Anabaptists had faded into the past. By the end of the century about seventy Hutterite settlements with a total population ranging from 20,000 to 40,000 flourished in Moravia and the neighbouring part of Hungary. Governed by a tight oligarchy of servants of the Word and servants of temporal needs, they had achieved the essential goal of Michael Gaismair's radical manifesto, the Tyrolean *Landesordnung* of 1526, that is, to create a realm of commoners without professional priests, rulers or merchants. It was a disarmed realm, of course, which was easily smashed by the Habsburg Counter-Reformation at the beginning of the Thirty Years War. The Hutterite world, which embodied both the Swiss Anabaptists' preoccupation with rules and Thomas Müntzer's *Gelassenheit*, the breaking of attachment to material things, was the mature fruit of both the Anabaptism of 1525–6 and the Peasants' War of 1525–6.

The most significant theologian of south German Anabaptism, Pilgram Marpeck, stands rather apart from the social currents that played such an important part in the movement. A councilman, burgomaster and mining magistrate at Rattenberg in the Tyrol, he lent money to Archduke Ferdinand at the time it was needed to suppress the Peasants' War. But as a man of evangelical sympathies he balked at the task of hunting down Anabaptists and fled his home in 1527. His engineering skills made him valuable to Strassburg until 1531–2, when Bucer refused to tolerate his

nonconformity and had him exiled. The same professional skills led the government of Augsburg to turn a blind eye to his muted nonconformity in the last twelve years of his life up to his death in 1556. He entered into quarrels with various spiritualists, with Schwenckfeld, with the Hutterites and with the Swiss Brethren, not to mention the official Reformations of the places where he tried to establish residence. His group's large body of writings (in which he had the leading part) involved selective borrowing from Luther's anti-spiritualist tracts, from Schwenckfeld, and from the Münster Anabaptist Bernhard Rothmann in one of his earlier, less offensive, writings. So Marpeck emerges as a gifted, eclectic, lay theologian with followers in Alsace, Graubünden, various south German cities and in Moravia. Since his writings, which draw upon the *Theologia Deutsch* and Hut's gospel of all creatures and stress the humanity of Christ and the distinction between Old and New Testaments, are generally regarded as of more theological substance than those of Menno Simons, he has received particular attention in the twentieth-century revival of Anabaptist studies.

The Anabaptism of the northern part of the empire and the adjacent Habsburg–Burgundian Netherlands did not begin until 1530. It distinguishes itself from Swiss–south German Anabaptism as an Anabaptism without the background of the Peasants' War. In the 1520s in the Netherlands pro-Reformation sentiment took the form of a general questioning of the miracle of the sacrament – the real presence of the body and blood of Christ in the communion. The conventicles of Sacramentarians – as the doubters were called – included many prominent future Anabaptists, David Joris of Delft and Jan Matthijs of Haarlem among them. The Habsburg government's response was strong enough to suppress the educated leadership of the Sacramentarians, but it was not a widespread bloody persecution. City and territorial governments in the northern Netherlands tended to protect religious dissidents, partly because they saw the campaign against heresy as a pretext for strengthening central authority at Brussels and the Hague.

Many persons from the now leaderless Sacramentarian movement were mobilised in the 1530s by a charismatic apocalyptic preacher, the Swabian furrier Melchior Hoffman. Gifted apparently with a talent for mastering the dialects of far-flung Germanic lands, Hoffman at first became prominent as a messenger of the Wittenberg radicalism inspired by Carlstadt in the cities of Livonia. Active there from 1522 to 1526, he was involved in iconoclastic outbreaks and eventually turned into an embarrassment to the university-educated Lutheran clergy in its efforts to consolidate the Reformation. Hoffman was a tireless publicist, at one point owning his own printing press. From 1526 his tracts declared that the end of the world was to be expected in 1533. Eventually, in 1529, he was banned from Lutheran territories for taking the position on the Lord's Supper

that was more or less shared by Carlstadt, Zwingli and the Dutch Sacramentarians.

Strassburg proved a very fateful city in Hoffman's development and in the future course of Anabaptism. When Hoffman arrived there in 1529 it tolerated the presence of several varieties of Anabaptist as well as spiritualist individualists like Franck and Schwenckfeld. When the usual difficulties developed between Hoffman and the educated pastorate of the magisterial Reformation, he searched in the colourful, heterogeneous world of Strassburg nonconformity for his own sectarian distinctives. If what marked the character of Swiss Anabaptism was a set of rules of practice – not swearing oaths, not carrying weapons, not serving in the magistracy, Hoffman and Strassburg bequeathed to the Anabaptist–Mennonite groups of the north a series of characteristic ideas. Northern Anabaptism, too, lacked a school theology; still, several of Hoffman's ideas followed it from the sixteenth well into the seventeenth century. This was especially the case with his idiosyncratic Christology, worked out in interaction with Schwenckfeld and the Strassburg lay preacher, Clemens Ziegler. It placed a heavy stress on the divinity of Christ and minimised Mary's role in the Incarnation; otherwise, Hoffman's reasoning went, Jesus would have been tarnished by original sin and could not have been the guarantor of human salvation. Hoffman's ethical perfectionism borrowed from earlier Strassburg Anabaptists an affirmation of human free will, strengthened by the notion that conscious sins committed after illumination could not be forgiven. In 1530 he wrote the *Ordinance of God*, which affirmed the baptism of adult believers as the sign of the covenant between God and man. What created a chasm between him and other Strassburg Anabaptists, however, was his claim of personal charisma for himself as the messenger of the apocalypse, and his appointment of Strassburg as the heavenly Jerusalem of the last days. Although he hoped for a revolution from above, carried out by the council in Strassburg, which the Anabaptists would assist only with prayer, his notions of a theocratic kingdom were regarded as dangerous. This apocalyptic programme led the Strassburg government to pursue Hoffman as early as 1530 and finally to keep him imprisoned in the ten years following 1533. In the early 1530s he was active further north, particularly in Emden and East Frisia, from whence his followers spread into the Netherlands. When some of his Amsterdam followers were executed in 1531, Hoffman suspended adult baptisms for two years, until the date when he expected the end of the world. In the early thirties the Melchiorites were a significant nonconformist group in Strassburg, the Netherlands and adjacent parts of north Germany. They were far from being a mass movement and would probably never have become one, had it not been for their astonishing success in Münster in Westphalia. The 'baptist' tenet

was not so strongly held among Melchiorites as among Anabaptists in the
south. Various later Melchiorite groups would follow Hoffman's practice
in 1531 and suspend or abandon adult baptism.

On 14 February 1533 a treaty between the prince-bishop of Münster
and the self-governing city of Münster recognised the establishment of the
Reformation in that city. The city had a long-established communal
tradition. In times of crisis the political notable families that dominated
the council could find their decisions vetoed by 'new people' of equivalent
wealth but lesser status who ran the United Guild, and who were expected
to be more responsive to the community at large. The change in religion
led to a virtual replacement of the 'old notables' by 'new notables' in the
council elections of 1533, so that now the new people ran both the council
and the United Guild. The reformer of the city was Bernhard Rothmann.
His theological preferences were eclectic but he borrowed heavily from
Swiss and south German sources. To judge from its communal ethos and
the theology of its reformer, Münster should have had a popular,
Reformed Reformation. This, however, was absolutely impossible.
Zwingli and Oecolampadius were dead and the Strassburg reformers,
seeking a concord with Wittenberg, had disavowed their earlier Sacramen-
tarianism. The Reformation in Münster had only been possible because of
the favour of Philip of Hesse, the leader of the Schmalkaldic League,
which since 1531 had been extending protection to the adherents of the
Augsburg Confession. The Lutheran theologians of Marburg and Witten-
berg rejected the church ordinance of the Münster Reformation that
Rothmann had drawn up and tried to whip him back into Lutheran
orthodoxy. Rothmann reacted to this pressure by inviting Melchiorite
preachers from Jülich to join him in Münster. This group of radical
preachers led by Heinrich Roll not only confirmed Rothmann in his
Sacramentarianism but convinced him that baptism should be extended
only to adult believers. By August 1533 Rothmann was very successfully
defending adult baptism in public debates. In November he and the
preachers from Jülich published the *Confession of the Two Sacraments*, a
classic peaceful Anabaptist statement which Pilgram Marpeck later
adapted to the purposes of his brotherhood. Although the precise
sequence of events is unclear, Jan Matthijs's decision to ignore Hoffman's
suspension of baptism and to reinstitute adult baptisms among Melchior-
ites in the Netherlands in late 1533 was connected with Roll's arriving in
Amsterdam with Rothmann's *Confession* that same December. Rather
than to say, as has been traditionally done, that Dutch prophets brought
Anabaptism to Münster, it is more precise to say that the radical turn of
the Münster Reformation ignited Anabaptism in the Netherlands.

The importance of Münster was even greater in February 1534. From
November 1533 to February 1534 an internal struggle went on in the city

that more or less evenly divided the new notables who had initiated the Reformation the year before. Some, centred in the council, deplored the irresponsibility with which Rothmann and his following had violated the Imperial mandate of 1529 outlawing Anabaptism. They favoured a Lutheran order in Münster for obvious reasons; but it is hard to escape the impression that Lutheranism had very shallow roots in Münster. The other notables, centred on the aldermen of the United Guild, concluded that expulsion of the Anabaptists would mortally endanger the city's Reformation and probably cause it to lose its independence to the prince-bishop. This struggle within the leadership climaxed in a dramatic confrontation in the centre of the town for three days, 9 to 11 February, in which the armed Anabaptist townsmen faced their opponents. The Anabaptists wavered between being sheep for the slaughter in the New Testament manner and warding off the ungodly with Old Testament militance. They saw three suns in the sky, an entirely explainable meteorological phenomenon, observed by Martin Luther at another time and place. It was decided on 11 February that the Anabaptists should not be expelled. The council's authority collapsed, a lot of non-Anabaptists fled the city and a predominantly Anabaptist council was elected later in the month. The Anabaptists' coming to power in Münster was regarded as literally miraculous in Münster and the Netherlands. It gave the second 'messenger of the apocalypse', Jan Matthijs of Haarlem, impressive credibility when he declared that Münster, not Strassburg, was the appointed refuge for God's people, and that they had better hurry to get there, because this world would end at Easter (5 April 1534).

In March 1534 there were attempts at mass immigration to Münster from Westphalia and the Netherlands. Social excitability was at a high level in the Netherlands, because the thirties were a period of war, pestilence and unemployment. These miseries could be viewed as the signs of the last times that the apocalyptic sections of the Bible foretold. The Münster Anabaptists promised that all the immigrants' needs would be provided for; but they did, too, ask their followers to bring money. It is probably incorrect to view the trek to Münster as a poor people's crusade. Barend Dirks, a contemporary artist, depicted the Anabaptists setting out for Münster in a painting in the Amsterdam City Hall; his caption read: 'They sold jewels and clothes, land and property, in every nook and corner; hurrying on board ship with great desire, prophesying the quest for a new God.'

Most of the thousands who set out for Münster did not get there, but submitted passively to disbandment with confiscation of their money and arms. The authorities could not contemplate the mass slaughter of these people, rather swept along by apocalyptic excitement than by revolutionary militance. So they released most of the trekkers, who formed the

membership pool of the Anabaptists, the persons who were mobilised in the spring of 1535 for actions in support of Münster like the seizure of Oldeklooster and the attack on the Amsterdam City Hall. At this time there was no opposition in Melchiorite circles against the summons to Münster. Even figures like Jan Matthijs of Middelberg and Jacob van Campen, who would later show independence of instructions from Münster, probably participated in the trek.

From the beginning of the siege of Münster until Easter Jan Matthijs, the Haarlem baker, enjoyed absolute authority in the city, overawing the elected council and the political notables who had brought the Anabaptists to power. During this time all money and jewels were confiscated and a serious beginning was made at community of goods. When the prophesied supernatural deliverance did not come, Jan sallied out against the bishop's army and in effect committed suicide on Easter Day (5 April 1534), thus abruptly removing himself from the situation he had done so much to create.

Although he assumed the trappings of a Davidic kingship and proclaimed that he would rule the whole world, Jan Matthijs's successor, Jan of Leyden, never regained his predecessor's legitimacy and authority either in Münster or the Netherlands. But he did organise a successful defence of Münster for more than fourteen months after Jan Matthijs's death, including the defeat of two assaults on the walls in May and late August 1534. The bishop was able to continue the costly siege, in which Lutheran and Catholic princes co-operated, only with extensive financial aid from the empire, justified by the threat that the Anabaptists allegedly posed to the public peace. Imperial legislation put in place after the Peasants' War was used to suppress the Anabaptist theocracy. Internally King Jan organised a series of careful power-sharing arrangements between the immigrants and the local notables who had co-operated in the Anabaptists' taking power. Community of goods extended only so far as to meet the practical needs of a besieged city. The family household remained the basic unit of life and work, unlike in Moravia, and the local residents vetoed a plan for a general exchange of houses and non-movable properties. After September 1534 the lavish royal court reinforced privilege and inequality. The notorious institution of polygamy in the summer of 1534 was clearly to the personal liking of Jan of Leyden, but it also had a basis in the widespread interest among Reformation radicals in a regenerate sexuality, in which holy offspring would be produced without lust or passion. In a situation where the women significantly outnumbered the men (c. 5,000 to 2,000) and where the women's labour was essential to the defence, polygamy had the convenience of assigning the women to male-officered households. Although women were eventually permitted divorce as a corrective to the worst abuses of the system, the entire

rationale of polygamy in Münster was traditional and misogynist, aimed at restoring the natural lordship of men that had been lost with the degeneracy of the world. It is bizarre to consider it a chapter in the liberation of women. Indeed the rallying of a traditional élite to Anabaptism in Münster led it to maintain, or even accentuate, the privileges of the rich and of men.

Karl-Heinz Kirchhoff's prosopographical study of Anabaptist property-holders native to Münster, based on records of Anabaptist property confiscated following the bishop's conquest of the city, shows an astonishing normality in distribution of wealth among Münster Anabaptists. The social structure of the Anabaptist property-holders turned out to be very similar both to that of post-Anabaptist Münster and to the comparable city of Hildesheim. Kirchhoff arrived at a similar result by contrasting the Anabaptist ruling élite with the Anabaptist rank and file. Despite official community of goods, persons who had been rich property-owners in the old order were represented in disproportionate numbers among the political leaders of the new régime.[1] Despite the expected end of the world, the universal kingship, community of goods and polygamy, in Münster many of the basic patterns of life continued unchanged from the old order to the new. A far more genuine social revolution occurred in Anabaptist Moravia than in Anabaptist Münster.

After Easter 1534 Münster's authority in the Netherlands eroded. Directives from Münster were questioned by the leaders of Amsterdam Anabaptists. Some voices, Obbe Philips and perhaps David Joris, began to criticise Münster's turn from the peaceful path of Melchior Hoffman. Militant Anabaptists, too, questioned the prophetic credentials of Jan of Leyden, and set up their own prophet in Jan van Batenburg. In these circumstances the attempts of Münster emissaries to stir up a revolt among the Dutch Anabaptists in the spring of 1535 had very meagre results. Deprived of all hope of outside help, weakened by hunger, and betrayed by deserters who helped the besiegers to organise a surprise attack, Münster was conquered on 25 June 1535. King Jan and two of his close associates were interrogated, then submitted to a barbaric public execution, after which the three cages hanging in the church tower to display their physical remains became a landmark of Counter-Reformation Münster.

With the fall of Münster the Melchiorites split into a number of antagonistic groups. The characteristic principles of Münster, the physical kingdom and polygamous marriage, came under strong attack. A meeting of several kinds of Melchiorites and Münsterites at Bocholt in Westphalia in August 1536 gave prominence to the next important leader, David Joris

---

1 Karl-Heinz Kirchhoff, *Die Täufer in Münster 1534/35* (1973), pp. 35–44, 77.

of Delft. David's aim was to try to unite the quarrelling factions with ambiguous formulas, to isolate the most militant element, the crop-burning, church-robbing gang of Jan van Batenburg, and generally to pacify the recently revolutionary Anabaptists, without making them entirely abandon their hopes for taking their revenge at the last judgment. On various levels his was a programme of spiritualisation. Although David at first continued adult baptism and Melchior Hoffman's distinctive Christology, he sanctioned his followers' outward conformity to Catholic religious practices. Soon after Bocholt, in December 1536, David experienced a visionary state, lasting more than a week, which confirmed him as the hoped-for Promised David of Old Testament messianic prophecy. This David, however, was deemed to be a much lesser figure than his Old and New Testament prototypes, King David and Jesus Christ. He was but a servant of Christ, yet possessed by the higher wisdom of the last days, and assigned the task of gathering the apocalyptic elect. The belief in the final restitution of all things by a new David came straight out of Bernhard Rothmann's propaganda tracts for the Münster kingdom, but, following Sebastian Franck's world chronicle, David Joris eschewed external, worldly majesty or vengeance. He spiritualised Münsterite apocalyptics.

Jan van Batenburg's execution in 1538 greatly enhanced David's authority, even though sporadic recurrences of violent, half-criminal Anabaptism continued for forty-five years after the fall of Münster, finished finally only with the execution of Jan Willems of Roermond in 1580. In 1538 David journeyed to Oldenburg to receive the allegiance of Münster refugees who settled there, and then to Strassburg, where Melchior Hoffman's closest followers declined to accept his authority. His following seems to have been concentrated in the cities of the Netherlands, especially Holland. The majority of the Davidites were artisans, a significant minority being of high birth or education. After several years as a fugitive with a price on his head he took refuge in Antwerp from 1539 to 1544; and then for the last twelve years of his life, until 1556, he lived under an assumed name in Basel. In the Antwerp period he abandoned adult baptism, further muted his apocalypticism and devoted his time especially to publication and correspondence. The two editions of the *Wonder Book* in 1543 and 1551 were the centre of a corpus of more than 200 separate titles. His formless writings constituted the most ambitious Anabaptist publishing venture. David tried to create something akin to Sebastian Franck's spiritual church hidden among all nations and creeds. In his last years he joined his Basel friend, Sebastian Castellio, in arguing for religious tolerance and condemning the execution of Michael Servetus. At least until he left Antwerp, David was the most prominent Melchiorite sect leader. Only afterward was he eclipsed by Menno Simons.

Menno Simons was a Frisian, a Catholic priest, some of whose writings betray a good humanist education. He was influenced by Sacramentarian ideas and was a keen, sympathetic observer of the early Melchiorite current. It is very likely that Menno's brother was the Peter Simons, a figure of authority in Münster, who lost his life in the uprising at Oldeklooster near Menno's parish in April 1535. Early in 1536 Menno left the priesthood to join the followers of Obbe Philips, people who had received baptism from Jan Matthijs and his apostles but who quickly distanced themselves from the militance of the Münster kingdom. About 1540 Obbe left the movement, taking the spiritualist position that he and his associates lacked a proper divine calling to baptise and to organise congregations. Obbe's brother, Dirk Philips, Leonard Bowens and Menno became the most prominent elders in the nonconformist fellowship after he left. Unlike David Joris, their work centred outside the Habsburg Netherlands in relatively more secure areas. They were active in North Sea and Baltic Sea cities such as Emden, Lübeck and Danzig, as well as Schleswig-Holstein and lower Rhineland territories around Cologne. A series of writings starting in 1539 with the influential *Foundation Book* established Menno's position as the leader of the fellowship.

From the late 1540s the great majority of the Anabaptists executed in the Netherlands were untouched by Münsterite influence and affiliated with Menno Simons. Since the Habsburgs executed a minimum of 1,500 Anabaptists for heresy in the northern and southern Netherlands in the period between the late 1540s and the early 1570s, about twice the number that Claus-Peter Clasen has been able to document for Switzerland, south and central Germany and Austria between 1525 and the Thirty Years War, we are dealing with a movement of substantial dimensions. Leonard Bowens's diary contains records of over 10,000 baptisms that he performed personally, and the historian Karel Vos, decidedly not a Mennonite apologist, estimates a Mennonite fellowship of 100,000 members in hundreds of congregations after William of Orange extended toleration to the Netherlands Mennonites in the 1570s.[1] In sheer size the Mennonites outstripped the Hutterites in the late sixteenth century, but in influence on their society they were overshadowed by the Calvinists who led the Dutch war of independence against Spain.

The Mennonite fellowship continued to show definite marks of its Melchiorite and Münsterite antecedents. Melchior Hoffman's peculiar Christology was an important doctrine for Menno. For him the pristine heavenly flesh of Christ was a guarantor of the pure body of Christ, the historical fellowship of baptised believers. A high Christology became linked with the belief in the congregation 'without spot and wrinkle',

1 Karel Vos, 'Revolutionnaire Hervorming', *De Gids*, 84, 4 (1920), 450.

composed of individuals who were regenerated brothers and sisters of Christ. Menno felt himself called to recover the strayed flock of Anabaptists who had followed the false prophets of Münster and the corrupt sect leaders like Jan van Batenburg and David Joris who succeeded them. There was no other foundation of the church than Jesus Christ, who was the only David who was promised. No personal revelations should be preferred to the Bible. But the charismatic authority of Melchior Hoffman and his successors was at least partly continued in the strong authority of Mennonite elders. They, rather than the congregations, pronounced the ban, calling for total shunning of the lapsed, including one's own spouse, children or parents. The outcome was predictable: the elders excommunicated each other, producing continual splinterings, first the Waterlander schism in Menno's lifetime and then, shortly after Menno's death in 1561, the major schism between the Frisian congregations and the refugee Mennonites from Flanders. A shadow has been cast over Menno's historical reputation on account of his weak leadership that failed adequately to resist Dirk Philips's and Leonard Bowens's rigorist approach to the ban, with all its potential for schism.

Menno died in the midst of the persecution of his followers in the Netherlands in a refuge provided by a wealthy supporter in Schleswig-Holstein. As part of his distance from Münster he renounced community of goods as a passing phase in the history of the early church. The Mennonites adjusted well to the commercial capitalist prosperity of the newly independent Netherlands, dominating whale and herring fishing with their unarmed boats. They did not take the sword in the Dutch wars of independence against Spain, but their nonresistance did not mean neutrality. They supported the anti-papist cause with their prayers, and their money. In the seventeenth century they influenced their government to intervene with its Swiss co-religionists to tone down the persecution of Swiss Anabaptists. They turned their considerable wealth to works of international philanthropy, first assisting fellow Mennonites in the Baltic area, but soon extending their generosity to the remnants of the Hutterites, to Swiss Brethren, Schwenckfelders and even to Huguenots after the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. Former gestures of hostility to the broader society, like not carrying arms and not swearing oaths, became the harmless sectarian distinctives of tolerated nonconformists. Conservatives who saw and understood the accommodation of the Mennonites to the surrounding Dutch culture tried to recall their congregations to vigor by memorialising the sufferings of the martyrs. After its publication in 1660, the *Martyrs Mirror* enjoyed an authority among Mennonites second only to the Bible.

Clasen's analysis of the Anabaptists in Switzerland, south and central Germany and Austria shows us a group of commoners; only 2 per cent

were persons of noble birth or intellectual distinction. Peasants outnumbered craftsmen, although the typical Anabaptist leader was a craftsman, like Hans Hut or Jakob Hutter. In the 1520s 40 per cent of the Anabaptists in the south whose residence is known came from cities, the rest from small towns, villages and farms. Afterwards the proportion of urban Anabaptists fell steadily, so that in the second half of the century it was only one in twelve. There was no specific attraction of distinct occupational groups to the Anabaptists.[1] In the lands affected by the Peasants' War they came from the same undifferentiated ranks of common people from village and town who had supported the uprising. After the persecution of the late twenties in the south the small group of leaders of wealth and distinction was largely eliminated: Conrad Grebel, Michael Sattler, Hans Denck and Balthasar Hubmaier were dead; only Pilgram Marpeck remained. The Hutterite leaders were mostly craftsmen, but peasants were not totally excluded from their directing group. Statistical work like Clasen's has not yet been done for the Melchiorite Anabaptism of the north, but the preliminary impression is that towndwellers and craftsmen were numerically more prominent there than in the south.

What, then, is the meaning of the Anabaptist experience? In lands where fierce persecution made it impossible for the Reformation to come in an official mode, supported by persons of birth, wealth and intellectual distinction – in the Tyrol and, until the 1550s, in the Netherlands – the underground Anabaptist conventicles were the sole vehicle of the Reformation. Better than any Protestant group the Anabaptists maintained the laicism and anticlericalism of the early Reformation. They underwent the most severe religious repression of the sixteenth-century German Reformation – a reasonable estimate is that about 4,000 were burned, drowned or put to the sword. They justified their nonconformity and the sufferings it entailed by the judgment that the official Protestant churches 'produced no fruits', no 'improvement of life'. They scorned the wars that the Protestant churches soon became involved in, drawing on anticlerical traditions of contempt for the wars of the papacy. Some of the contemporary reformers, Heinrich Bullinger for instance, commented on the sobriety and probity of life of individual Anabaptists; but, given their theological outlook, they dismissed this as hypocrisy and selfrighteousness. Like the Quakers after them, the sectarian Anabaptists represent the ethical rigorism that can grow up on the soil of a suppressed revolution. Reading their Protestant Bibles with the eyes of the oppressed, the Anabaptists not only deluded themselves that they were a reincarnation of the primitive church, but they made an important contribution to the Christian critique of war and property.

1 Clasen, *Anabaptism. A Social History*, pp. 305–34.

CHAPTER VI

THE REFORMATION IN SCANDINAVIA
AND THE BALTIC

DENMARK

IN THE early 1520s the Reformation took root in Denmark and quickly spread over a wide area. As in Germany, the ground had been prepared beforehand. There were many signs in the later middle ages of an increasing need for religion among the people, as well as numerous complaints that the church was on the decline and willing to abuse its power. With few exceptions the bishops were inadequate for their tasks – noble landowners without any real sense of the religious needs of the age. Bishoprics and greater benefices were reserved for the aristocracy, which meant that the higher clerics were closely bound to the nobility and the gap between them and the parish priests was wide. Humanism was widespread among the clergy, many of whom had studied at foreign universities.

One of the most important representatives of this biblically based humanism and of the movement for Catholic reform was the Carmelite friar Paulus Helie who in 1520 became the head of the order's new foundation in Copenhagen, while at the same time lecturing on the Bible at the university. His ideas rested on the Bible which he interpreted according to the Fathers of the church. He violently attacked the worldliness of the clergy and the customs and superstitions fostered by the church, but although he had originally hailed Luther as a welcome ally, he completely rejected him when he realised that the Lutheran movement was leading to a break with the church, for 'abuse does not abolish use'. Though consistent, Helie's standpoint was untenable. His biblical humanism was, however, of considerable historical importance because it eased the transition from the religious life of the later middle ages to evangelical Christianity. The accomplishment of the Reformation in 1536 did not mean any violent break; practically speaking all the clergy remained in office.

Apart from Helie, Christian Pedersen must be mentioned as a leading representative of biblical humanism. He was a canon in Lund and had studied for several years in Paris where he had published a number of devotional, liturgical and historical works. Later he gave his support to the Reformation and published in Antwerp Danish translations of the New Testament (1529), the Psalms of David and a number of Lutheran pamphlets. After this he lived as a printer in Malmö for a number of years.

144

The idea of Catholic reform was also supported by the king, Christian II (1513–23), and is apparent from his laws and church reforms. Christian II wished to advance the interests of the Crown, the burghers and the peasants at the expense of the nobility and clergy. The church keenly felt the effects of his wilfulness: he appointed and dismissed bishops as he thought fit, and the recklessness of his rule actually caused a rebellion in 1523 which forced him to flee the country. Until 1531 he lived in the Netherlands, engaged in plans for reconquering his kingdom. After a visit to Wittenberg in 1524 he was converted to Lutheranism and had the New Testament translated into Danish. This, the first Danish translation of the New Testament, was sent to Denmark and had much to do with the quick spread of the Reformation.

After Christian II's flight from Denmark, the council elected his uncle, Duke Frederick of Schleswig-Holstein, to the throne. In his coronation charter Frederick I promised to uphold the rights and privileges of the church and to persecute those who preached Lutheranism. Soon, however, he adopted another attitude: as far as possible, he would uphold the remaining rights of the church, but at the same time, and until a general council should arrive at a final settlement, he would allow any doctrine which was in agreement with the Bible.

At the same time a popular evangelical movement was gaining ground. Its first known centre was the market town of Husum in Schleswig, where Herman Tast preached Lutheranism perhaps as early as 1522. Schleswig became an important point of entry for the Reformation. Here, where Frederick was not bound by the Danish charter, a Lutheran party was formed by some of the nobility who also became the king's leading advisers in the kingdom proper. At the Diets of Rendsburg (1525) and Kiel (1526) the clergy failed to persuade Frederick I to suppress heresy. His eldest son, Christian duke of North Schleswig, eagerly supported the Reformation: he had been present at the Diet of Worms where Luther had made a lasting impression on him. In 1528 Haderslev and Torning provinces were reformed in accordance with a Lutheran church ordinance, the Haderslev Ordinance, which affected some sixty parishes. Celibacy was abolished; if a priest did not wish to marry, he had to provide the duke with a reason. Liturgically the ordinance was conservative. Priests were ordered diligently to teach their congregations the Word of God and the catechism, to inculcate obedience to authority (among other things, in connection with the payment of taxes), and also to persecute the Anabaptists who were gaining some influence in the duchies.

In Jutland the evangelical movement came into the open at Viborg in 1526. It was here that Hans Tausen, the most important of the Danish reformers, was active. He was a monk of the Order of St John from the monastery of Antvorskov in Zealand who in the course of several years'

university studies had acquired a solid humanist education. In 1519 he took his master's degree at Rostock and thereafter studied in Copenhagen under Paulus Helie, at Louvain, whence his uncommon command of Hebrew presumably derived, and from May 1523 for about eighteen months at Wittenberg. After his return to Denmark in 1525 he was moved to the monastery in Viborg where the prior allowed him to teach and to preach in public. After he had preached for several months amidst great acclamation from the burghers his support for the Reformation became so pronounced that he was expelled from the order in the spring of 1526. In October of the same year the citizens of Viborg obtained a royal letter of protection which appointed him chaplain to the king and so withdrew him from the bishop's jurisdiction. A strong evangelical movement developed. A printing-press was established from which a number of pamphlets in support of the Reformation were distributed. Before long Tausen found a helper in Jørgen Jensen Sadolin, who (also in 1526) was granted permission by the king to found an ecclesiastical college in the town. By ordaining Sadolin and marrying his sister, Tausen plainly indicated his break with the Catholic church. Soon the Reformation had carried the day in Viborg. Tausen and Sadolin became parish priests at the churches in the two mendicant monasteries, while twelve superfluous churches and monasteries were pulled down. At the same time evangelical preachers were sent to several of the towns of eastern Jutland, and Lutheranism also spread far and wide in the country districts. In Funen we hear of Lutheran influence at Assens where Peder Laurentsen, a former follower of Helie, worked zealously for the Reformation.

In eastern Denmark the important trading centre of Malmö became the heart of the evangelical movement. Its connections with the great North German towns were of great importance, as ships bringing merchandise also carried evangelical preachers and pamphlets to Denmark. The movement began in 1527 under the leadership of the priest Claus Mortensen Tondebinder and the monk Hans Olufsen Spandemager. In 1529 an evangelical seminary was founded which counted among its teachers men like Peder Laurentsen and the Carmelite Frans Vormordsen, a learned humanist. The reformers in Malmö also had a printing press at their disposal, and a number of their polemical, devotional and liturgical works survive. The first Danish hymn-book, containing translations of Luther's hymns, was published in 1528 and was followed by new and enlarged editions. In the same year a new Danish order of service, the Malmö mass, was published, based on Döber's *Nürnbergmesse* and Luther's *Deutsche Messe*. In 1529 the council decided to carry out an evangelical reform. In Copenhagen the evangelical movement came into the open in 1529 with the appointment of Tausen to St Nicholas's Church, and by the following year there were four Lutheran preachers in the city.

The Diets held at Odense in 1526 and 1527 and at Copenhagen in 1530 were responsible for decisive ecclesiastical legislation.

In 1526 the Odense Diet decreed that in future bishops should apply to the archbishop and not to the pope for consecration and that the fee should be paid into the treasury. As members of the royal council, the bishops had some measure of responsibility for this decision which broke the link between the Danish church and Rome, but they succeeded none the less in persuading the king to take steps against the evangelical movement. They promised changes along the lines of Catholic reform, but demanded that letters of protection, which encroached on their sphere of jurisdiction, should be withdrawn, and that in future no one should be allowed to preach without a bishop's licence. The king merely replied that his letters protected no injustice and that he had not commanded anyone to preach anything but the Word of God. The decisions on future church policy made at the Odense Diet were to a great extent influenced by social conditions at home and political developments abroad. Christian II, popular among the burghers and peasantry, constituted a considerable threat; it was expected that his brother-in-law, the Emperor Charles V, who had just been victorious against France, would give him military assistance against Denmark. At the same time there were peasant rebellions in Jutland and Scania, the rebels refusing to pay tithes and other dues on the ground that the churches were neglected and the Word of God was not being preached.

At the 1527 Diet the bishops demanded that the peasant leaders should be punished, the ancient privileges of the church upheld, the letters of protection revoked, and also that priests should be forbidden to marry and monks to leave their monasteries. The king certainly promised the prelates that he would uphold the privileges of the church, as he also confirmed the duty of the common people to pay tithes, but he would not support the legal authority of the bishops. He replied in famous words:

The Christian faith is free. None of you desires to be forced to renounce his faith, but you must also understand that those who are devoted to the Holy Scriptures, or to the Lutheran doctrine as it is called, will no more be forced to renounce their faith. Both parties believe that they are in the right, but as yet there is none to judge. His majesty is king and judge and has power over life and property in this kingdom, but not over souls ... Therefore shall every man conduct himself in a way which he can justify before Almighty God on the Day of Judgement, until a final decision is made for all Christendom.

The king promised to grant no more letters of protection, but at the same time he took everyone under his protection who preached a doctrine which could be defended by the Bible. Frederick I thus adopted the attitude familiar from the German Diets of that day, the latest of which

had been that of Speyer in 1526: until a general council had decided in the struggle between the conflicting faiths, toleration must prevail. The Word of God in the Bible is the church's sole foundation; but its interpretation, whether Catholic or evangelical, is a matter of personal choice. On the basis of this decision the king felt obliged to refuse the demand that he should oppose the evangelical preachers and communities; priests were allowed to marry and monks to leave their monasteries 'on their own responsibility'.

A legal basis for a tolerant organisation of the church was thus created. The church in Denmark was now divided into the official Catholic church and an independent evangelical church. But this legal arrangement could not be maintained in practice. Many parishes received Lutheran priests from the patronage of the king and of sections of the nobility with Lutheran leanings, and when, in 1529, after paying the king 3,000 guilders for his election, Joachim Rønnow was acknowledged as bishop of Roskilde, he had to promise not to prevent anyone from preaching the gospel. Both sides were eager to reach a final decision, asserting that the rival party was heretical, unbiblical and therefore illegal. In addition the prelates referred to the king's promise in his coronation charter that he would persecute the Lutherans.

In July 1530 the Diet met at Copenhagen. A new feature was that evangelical preachers, twenty-one in all, were summoned to answer for their teachings. The prelates had the assistance of the most important Danish theologians, including Paulus Helie, together with a number they had summoned from Germany. It may have been the king's intention to hold a disputation between the parties in the German manner to solve the religious problem, but he is unlikely to have desired a final accomplishment of the Reformation, as the Lutherans believed. He had to assure himself of the support of the bishops and of the church for the large military expenditure which the political situation demanded. The danger from Christian II, who had once more gone over to Catholicism, was now imminent. In Denmark it was considered that with the support of the emperor he was now in a position to gather an invasion fleet. In view of this the Danish bishops had to make great concessions to the king's financial demands, but in return they asked that he for his part should also oppose the Lutheran movement. While these negotiations were taking place the evangelicals prepared a confession of faith, the Copenhagen Confession, as a basis for the expected disputation and preached on its articles to great crowds bitterly opposed to the prelates and their supporters. The disputation, however, never took place. A number of theses were exchanged by the two parties, but they could not agree who should judge the outcome. The Catholics demanded a learned theologian as judge, while the Lutherans thought the diet sufficiently competent to

decide whether their simple faith was in agreement with the Bible. Similarly there was disagreement over language: the Reformers would only argue in Danish, whereas the prelates demanded the Latin tongue which would have kept the matter from the people. Finally the negotiations broke down, which presumably suited the king best. In its ecclesiastical section the Diet's decree merely confirmed the *status quo*, and both parties left in disappointment.

The Copenhagen Confession (*Confessio Hafniensis*), which was probably composed by Peder Laurentsen, was, then, of no historical importance, but it is of great interest as an expression of the Reformation in Denmark as distinct from elsewhere. It differs from the Augsburg Confession – of which it is entirely independent – by its pronouncedly polemical, popular and untheological form. The Danish reformers had sprung from biblical humanism and had not experienced Luther's struggles in the cloister. Their humanism and insistence on biblical truth was related to an earlier, humanistic Lutheranism of the sort that existed in the early 1520s in the large cities of southern and northern Germany which provided the inspiration for the movement in Denmark. The Lutheran doctrine of justification had a less fundamental importance among the Danish reformers than for the theologians of Wittenberg. The central feature is a simple, undifferentiated, biblical Christianity which especially stressed demands for reform and was partly based on a non-Lutheran interpretation of the Bible: in the medieval manner it thought of the Scriptures as a book of laws, 'the law of God'. The Confession is reminiscent of the writings of the Malmö Reformation, which on the whole were more radical than those of Tausen and Sadolin.

The years until the death of Frederick I (1533) witnessed a progressive dissolution in the Catholic church. The mendicant friars suffered particularly; they were driven from the towns, often by violence. Before long the secularisation of church lands was in full swing. In 1530 all landowning monasteries in Zealand were granted away in fief. In Funen, which so far had been more or less untouched by the Reformation, Bishop Gyldenstjerne, who favoured reforms, took Sadolin as his assistant. In 1532, when Gyldenstjerne was sent to Norway to oppose Christian II who had at last landed there, Sadolin planned a visitation of the diocese by means of which the clergy were to be reformed according to Luther's Shorter Catechism and the Augsburg Confession, which he now translated into Danish. In 1537 Sadolin became the first evangelical bishop of Funen.

After the death of Frederick I the prelates sought to regain their lost command. At the Diet of Copenhagen in 1533 they opposed the choice of Duke Christian and tried instead to elect a brother of his, as yet a minor, whom they hoped to bring up in the Catholic faith. The interregnum brought great misfortunes to the country, and civil war followed. The

archbishop's excommunication of the Scanian preachers caused a riot in Malmö in 1534. Copenhagen and Malmö made an alliance with Lübeck which sent an army to Zealand under the leadership of Count Christopher of Oldenburg. A peasant rising broke out in north Jutland. Then, in the summer of 1534, the nobility of Jutland elected Christian III as king, and thanks to a well-equipped mercenary force he soon succeeded in reconquering the kingdom, entering starving Copenhagen in August 1536. Victory left the king with an enormous debt. In vain he asked the church for help. Encouraged by his German advisers, he therefore decided on a *coup d'état* which led to the dismissal of the bishops and the secularisation of church property. In future the kingdom was to be governed by the temporal authorities alone; bishoprics would be purely spiritual posts. The bishops were made responsible for the misfortunes of the war because they had delayed the election of a king. Their lands and tithes were seized by the Crown which thus trebled its income. In return the king was to pay the new evangelical bishops (at first called superintendents) and to support schools and hospitals. In October 1536 the Estates accepted the new order. The bishops, too, with the exception of Rønnow, soon resigned themselves to the situation and continued their lives as nobles and landowners.

The king immediately took the initiative in drafting a new evangelical church order. Even before the Estates met he had tried without success to persuade Bugenhagen and later Melanchthon to come to Denmark. In January 1537 a commission consisting of Lutheran preachers and members of the chapters was set up to frame a new ecclesiastical constitution. By April the final draft was ready to be sent to Wittenberg for Luther's approval. After a final revision by Bugenhagen, who went to Copenhagen in the summer of 1537, and by some of the king's advisers, Christian III proclaimed the new (Latin) Church Ordinance on 2 September 1537, the day on which Bugenhagen ordained the seven evangelical bishops in Copenhagen cathedral. The difficulty of carrying out the decrees of the ordinance, however, made it desirable that it should be proclaimed as a general law by king and council, and in 1539 a diet in Odense accepted a Danish translation with certain amendments and additions as the 'true' ordinance. The Church Ordinance of 1539 (printed in 1542) remained the constitution of the Danish church until Christian V's Danish Law (1683) and Church Ritual (1685), and it was partly incorporated into these. Although it was actually intended to be valid for the entire kingdom – Denmark, Norway and Schleswig-Holstein – it finally applied only to Denmark (with Norway) as conditions in the duchies necessitated a special Low German ordinance which was adopted by the Diet of Rendsburg in 1542.

The ordinance is founded on the conception of the Christian state. Supreme authority in church matters belongs to the king as the Christian

leader, but ecclesiastical affairs are to be in the hands of the church's own representatives. A sharp distinction is made between Jesus Christ's unchangeable ordinance (the preaching of the Word, the administration of the sacraments, the Christian upbringing of children, support for the servants of the church and the schools, and care of the poor), and the king's decree which is to serve that of Christ and in which alterations can, if necessary, be made. Divine service is dealt with at great length, as are sermons and ritual, schools, status of bishops and priests, and so on. Subject to royal confirmation, bishops are to be chosen by the clergy in the towns of the diocese. In the towns the clergy are to be chosen by the mayor and council, and in the rural districts by respected men of the parish together with the dean. The aristocracy's right of patronage is preserved. The type of Christianity contained in the ordinance is Lutheranism, as formulated by Melanchthon. Once the Reformation was established, the direct influence from Wittenberg also became much more powerful. The preachers' simple belief in the Bible gradually gave way to a Christianity dictated by Luther's catechism. The evangelical awakening of the years of strife before 1536 lost heart; the congregations became passive, and growing emphasis was laid on the church as an institution and on the dignity of the clergy.

Of the seven new bishops who on 2 September 1537 were consecrated by Bugenhagen – without the apostolic succession, as Bugenhagen was only a priest – the most important was Peder Palladius who became bishop of Zealand. He had not taken part in the Reformation struggle in Denmark, but had studied for six years at Wittenberg where he became a doctor of theology in June 1537. Highly recommended by Bugenhagen, Luther and Melanchthon, Palladius did not disappoint the confidence which Christian III showed in appointing a man of only thirty-four as the premier bishop in the land. His famous *Visitation Book*, which shows his rare ability as an ecclesiastical administrator and popular speaker, is a cultural document of supreme importance, typically Danish in its combination of seriousness and warm humour. By 1543 Palladius had managed to visit the 390 parishes in his diocese, but his influence stretched far beyond. He was the king's adviser in all ecclesiastical affairs; he counselled his colleagues and presided over the meetings of the bishops. He also occupied himself with church matters in Norway and Iceland. As a professor at the university, which had been re-founded after a period of decline, Palladius gave frequent lectures and was an influence on the students. His theological writings were read throughout the Protestant world. Most famous was his introduction to the biblical writings, *Isagoge*, of which sixteen Latin editions were published as well as translations into German, English, Polish and Danish. In addition he published a large number of treatises in Danish. From a theological point of view Palladius

was a disciple of Melanchthon, but he did not follow Melanchthon's subsequent deviations from the teachings of Luther.

Hans Tausen, 'the Danish Luther', was not one of the new bishops in 1537. He became a lecturer in Hebrew at the university and in 1538 also began to give lectures in theology and to act as a priest in Roskilde cathedral, where Catholicism was still strong. Only in 1541 was he made bishop of Ribe. As such he laboured to found schools and hospitals and sought to improve the training and financial position of the clergy. He had many difficulties to combat: the ignorance and superstition which were widespread among the laity, Anabaptism, recalcitrant members of the nobility, and so on. Of Tausen's important works mention should be made of his translation of the Pentateuch (1533), a *Book of Sermons* (1539), an important guide for the clergy, and a hymnal of which several editions are known.

The first evangelical bishops wore themselves out in their work for the establishment of the Reformation and died about 1560. This marks the end of the first generation of the Reformation. Christian III also died in 1559 after leading the Reformation both as king and by his personal example. The time was full of difficulties, poverty, ignorance, the survival of Catholic custom, and numerous complaints of a decline in the people's moral standards such as always follows in the wake of great spiritual upheavals. None the less there was a spirit of optimism about this generation. They knew that they had left the darkness of popery for 'the bright day of the gospels' (Palladius). The most important and permanent heritage which the Reformation left for posterity was the simple Danish service and the uncomplicated Christianity of the catechism on which the coming generations were raised. For its most significant monument we have the great *Christian III's Bible* of 1550, the first Danish translation of the Bible in its entirety.

NORWAY

After Christian III's victory in Denmark, the Reformation and the Church Ordinance were also introduced into Norway. Politically, culturally and religiously, the land was at this time passing through a depression. Even though there were here and there faint traces of Catholic reform and biblical humanism, the Reformation came to Norway on the whole without preparation, and it never produced a popular movement as in Denmark.

The first Lutheran preacher in Norway was a German monk, Antonius, who was active among the Germans in Bergen in 1526. His teaching caused considerable unrest in the town and made the Germans more defiant in their attitude towards the church and the local population. In

1529 Frederick I issued letters of protection to two evangelical preachers in Bergen, one of whom, Jens Viborg, was later to become parish priest there. In Stavanger, too, and also in Finmark faint Lutheran influences are discernible. Some of the nobility were at the same time beginning to break fasts and to adopt evangelical customs, but they were especially eager to take possession of the church's property. In 1528 a number of monasteries were seized, and soon the secularisation of church property was in full swing.

The most important defender of the Catholic church and of Norwegian independence was Archbishop Olav Engelbrektsson, an able and learned man, but politically unstable. During his journey to Rome in 1523 to obtain the papal bulls of confirmation he had sworn fidelity to the exiled Christian II. After his return home in 1524 he took part in the royal council's denunciation of Christian II and the election of Frederick I as king of Norway. However, Frederick I was obliged to sign a strict charter, which, like the Danish one, contained a clause on the persecution of Luther's disciples. Meanwhile there was soon a distinct cooling off in relations with the king, among other things because Frederick supported the preachers in Bergen. When in 1531 Christian II landed near Oslo in an effort to win back his lost kingdom by way of Norway, the archbishop and the highest-ranking clergy supported him. After his imprisonment Trondhjem was visited by a Danish fleet, and Olav was obliged to humiliate himself and come to terms with Frederick I. After the death of the king in 1533 the archbishop endeavoured with the help of the emperor to get Christian II's son-in-law, a German count, installed as king, but with Christian III's victory in Denmark in 1536 Norwegian independence and the rule there of the Church of Rome were soon at an end. Before a Danish fleet reached Trondhjem in 1537 Olav Engelbrektsson had fled to the Netherlands where he died the following year.

Norway was now subjected to Denmark; its council ceased to exist, and Norwegian independence was greatly reduced. By order of Christian III the Reformation was to be carried out in Norway as in Denmark. In 1539 the Diets in Oslo and Bergen accepted the Danish Church Ordinance. The bishops' possessions were seized by the Crown. A large part of the church's treasures was taken to Denmark to be melted down. On the other hand, the Danes proceeded cautiously in introducing liturgical and doctrinal reforms so as not to provoke unnecessary opposition. It was also some time before new bishops were installed. The bishops of Stavanger, Hamar and Oslo were imprisoned. The last of these was reinstated in 1541, and the dioceses of Hamar and Oslo were combined. The diocese of Trondhjem remained without a bishop until 1546. Only Bergen received a new bishop immediately. In 1536 the chapter there had chosen its archdeacon, Geble Pederssøn, as bishop. He was a Catholic and a

humanist with a master's degree from Louvain, but he soon joined
Christian III, so that he not only avoided the fate of the other bishops but
was even taken up by the king as an evangelical bishop and ordained by
Bugenhagen in 1537 together with the Danish bishops. He retained part of
the see's former income which among other things was used in the work of
reconstruction carried out by the church. Geble Pederssøn was the friend
of Bishop Palladius whose Latin *Interpretation of the Catechism for
Norwegian Parish Priests* (1541) was published in several editions.

The introduction of the Reformation into Norway did, however, meet
with considerable difficulties. In general the priests were untouched by
Lutheranism, and consequently many parishes were for a period without
an incumbent. The population clung to its traditions, and Catholic
customs continued to be observed for a very long time. Many complaints
were heard of widespread poverty and low moral standards among both
priests and laymen. A special difficulty was created by the fact that Danish
was the official language. The Bible, the catechism and the hymnal were
not translated into Norwegian. The Reformation was thus preached in a
partly incomprehensible language and in every way used to further Danish
culture in Norway. It never became a popular movement, and it took
decades to educate the people in the Lutheran faith. The most important
of the bishops of the Reformation was Jørgen Erikssøn of Stavanger
(1571–1604), a powerful figure filled with the spirit of the Reformation
who brought order into church affairs. As a guide to priests he published a
collection of sermons which are considered to be the most important
literary monument from the Norwegian Reformation. A Norwegian
Church Ordinance was proclaimed in 1607.

ICELAND

Iceland, too, was completely unprepared for the Reformation. Its last two
Catholic bishops, Øgmundur Pállson of Skálholt and Jón Arason of
Hólar, were both men of note who ruled their sees with a firm hand. Their
theological training was presumably slight, but Jón Arason was a poet of
some importance. As was usual among the clergy in Iceland, he was
married and had several children. At one time there was a threat of open
conflict between the two bishops. However, at the *althing* of 1526, where
both arrived accompanied by large armed contingents, they came to
terms, and after this, fear of their common enemy, advancing Luthera-
nism, bound them closer together.

Nothing is known of the beginnings of Lutheran influence in Iceland.
Regular trading communications with Germany, and especially with
Hamburg, must have introduced Reformation pamphlets into the
country. In 1533 the *althing* adopted a resolution that 'all shall continue in

the Holy Faith and the Law of God, which God has given to us, and which the Holy Fathers have confirmed'. At the same time, Oddur Gottskálks-son, who had adopted the evangelical doctrine after a stay abroad lasting several years, returned to Iceland where he became secretary to the bishop of Skálholt. Here he translated the New Testament into Icelandic, but did not otherwise publicly appear as a champion of Lutheranism. He was not ordained, but lived as a farmer on his own farm.

The first real representative of the Reformation in Iceland was Gissur Einarsson, who during a period of study in Germany had become acquainted with Lutheranism and became assistant to the bishop of Skálholt in 1536. For the time being, however, he did not express his Lutheran sympathies.

After the victory of the Reformation in Denmark Christian III attempted to introduce it into Iceland. In 1538 the Church Ordinance was put before the two bishops at the *althing* and promptly rejected. The Danes proceeded in a high-handed fashion, among other things dissolving the monasteries. The aged Bishop Øgmundur, who was almost blind, now resigned his position and recommended Gissur Einarsson as his successor. The latter was sent to Copenhagen to be examined by the theologians there, and in March 1540 the king appointed him superintendent of Skálholt.

It proved, however, difficult for this bishop of twenty-five to maintain his position. Both the old bishop and the clergy turned against him. In 1541 a royal emissary went to Iceland to promote the acceptance of the ordinance. Bishop Øgmundur was arrested in a revolting manner and died on the difficult journey to Denmark. The envoy succeeded in getting the ordinance accepted by the diocese of Skálholt, while it was still rejected in Hólar, largely because of the influence of Jón Arason. Bishop Gissur, who was ordained by Palladius, made energetic attempts to organise the church in his large diocese according to Lutheran principles, despite unfavourable circumstances. In the course of frequent visitations he opposed Catholic ceremonies and superstition, exhorted the clergy to marry, and improved their financial situation. He persuaded Oddur Gottskálksson to translate a German collection of evangelical sermons and commanded the priests to obtain this together with the translation of the New Testament which was published in 1540. He himself translated parts of the Old Testament together with the Church Ordinance.

Gissur Einarsson died as early as 1548, and despite opposition from the clergy Jón Arason now also took possession of Skálholt diocese. He took Gissur's successor prisoner, upon which he was outlawed by the king. Soon after this he and two of his sons were arrested and handed over to the Danes. As the Danes dared not keep them in Iceland throughout the winter and could not get them transported to Denmark, the prisoners

were executed in November 1550. In 1552 Hólar diocese also submitted to
Christian III and accepted the Church Ordinance. With this the external
opposition to the Reformation was broken. Church property was secular-
ised and the systematic plundering of churches and monasteries began.

The new bishops now had the difficult task of promoting the observance
of Lutheran principles and community life, but they did not make much
progress. In both dioceses church manuals and small hymn-books with
Danish hymns in bad translations were published. In the cathedral towns
schools were established to train the clergy. Bishop Palladius showed a
special interest in Icelandic conditions and acted as a sort of chief
inspector for the church in Iceland. Only several decades later was the
Reformation so firmly established that a growing religious life can be
observed. Of special importance was the able and energetic Gudbrandur
Thorláksson, bishop of Hólar from 1571 to 1627, who devoted his
energies to the Christian education of the communities and an improved
training for the clergy, and also published some ninety pamphlets. In 1584
the first Icelandic translation of the Bible in its entirety was published.
However, Bishop Gudbrandur, who was one of Iceland's greatest bishops,
belongs properly to the period following the Reformation.

<center>SWEDEN</center>

In Sweden the Reformation, introduced under Gustavus Vasa (1523–60),
took a course very different from that in Denmark. Episcopal traditions
and the independence of the church were far stronger, and the period of
transition lasted for a greater number of years, approximating to an
organic development rather than a sudden break. Outside Stockholm the
Reformation depended little on a popular awakening. The attitude of the
king was of first importance.

Gustavus Vasa became the leader of the national uprising against
Christian II of Denmark in 1521 and was elected king in 1523. His
objective was a strong Crown in an independent nation. The position of
the church as a state within a state had therefore to be destroyed and its
superfluous properties confiscated by the Crown. The king's most import-
ant adviser on church affairs was Laurentius Andreæ, the chancellor and
archdeacon of Strängnäs, a man of great political ability who after
studying abroad was well acquainted with the ecclesiastical problems of
the later middle ages and favoured Catholic reform. Accordingly he
formulated a programme for a national church. He argued that, since the
church was the community of the faithful, the Christian people, its
property belonged to the people whose king administered it. The Bible
and not the pope's decree was the supreme authority, and Luther's
writings must therefore be read and tested in the light of God's Word.

The archbishopric was vacant during the first tempestuous years, as Gustav Trolle, who had remained faithful to Christian II, had fled to Denmark. As the pope still supported him another archbishop could not be elected for the time being. Little by little the king filled vacant bishoprics with reliable men who favoured Catholic reform. In 1524 direct contact with the pope ceased when the king sought in vain to be allowed to retain the annates. The most important of the Swedish bishops and the most energetic opponent of Lutheranism was old Hans Brask of Linköping, who as early as 1522 threatened to excommunicate those who bought and read Luther's writings. Through the numerous German merchants in Stockholm Lutheranism began to gain a footing.

Sweden's great reformer was Olavus Petri. He was born at Örebro in 1493, the son of a blacksmith. From 1516 to 1518 he studied at the university of Wittenberg, the centre of humanism, where he took his master's degree in 1518. There he gained his broad humanistic education and his knowledge of Greek and Hebrew. Presumably he watched Luther developing into a reformer during those years. In the autumn of 1518 Olavus became secretary to the bishop of Strängnäs, and in 1520 he was ordained deacon and became a teacher at the cathedral school. His move over to the Reformation was a harmonious development; only gradually did he grow aware of the extent of Luther's thought. Though he always felt himself to be the disciple of Luther, his authority was the Bible. Nevertheless, from 1523 his message was quite clearly Lutheran. At the Diet of Strängnäs in that year, Gustavus Vasa's attention was drawn to Olavus, probably by Laurentius Andreæ who, like the king, soon realised the importance of the new religious ideas in the field of ecclesiastical policy.

In 1524 Olavus Petri became clerk to the city and began to preach in Stockholm, gaining a considerable influence. The city was half German, and a German Lutheran, Nicolaus Stecker, became parish priest. In 1525 Olavus married. Bishop Brask now delivered violent attacks against him and the Lutheranism he was preaching. In a letter to the king he described Olavus's marriage as a mark of shame not only for the Swedish church, but for the whole of Christendom. Gustavus Vasa replied that with his limited knowledge he found it strange that the clergy should be excommunicated for marrying, which was not forbidden by God, but not for fornication, which was. This sort of marriage was accepted abroad, and he therefore suggested that they should await the decision of a general council.

Positive attempts were also made to uphold the ancient faith. The printing press of Uppsala Cathedral published a number of important devotional works. Upon the king's instigation, however, the press was removed to Stockholm, where as a counter-measure Olavus Petri pub-

lished an evangelical devotional book, *Useful Instruction* (1526), the first publication of the Swedish Reformation. The treatise, which began Olavus's comprehensive and momentous production, is based on Luther's *Betbüchlein*, but is otherwise more marked by south German humanistic evangelicalism than by Wittenberg. Reformation pamphlets from Nuremberg and Franconia had reached Sweden by way of Königsberg and were studied by Olavus. The first Swedish translation of the New Testament, which appeared in 1526, was probably his work, done in co-operation with Laurentius Andreæ. In the main it follows Luther's German version, but it is based on the Strassburg edition of 1523, the first literary proof of Olavus's connection with south-western Germany. He also made use of Erasmus's Greek edition and Latin translation. The Swedish New Testament was of great significance, both from a religious and a cultural point of view.

Developments in Sweden were accelerated by the progress of the Reformation in Germany, the Baltic and Denmark in 1525–7. Of special importance was the connection with Duke Albrecht of Prussia who concluded a treaty with Gustavus Vasa in 1526 and had Reformation pamphlets sent to Sweden. Prussian envoys stayed with the king while he was making preparations for the Diet of Västeras in 1527. In 1526 Gustavus Vasa attempted to arrange a religious disputation between the learned Thomist, Peder Galle of Uppsala, and Olavus Petri. In Switzerland, southern Germany and northern Germany disputations had been adopted to decide the ecclesiastical struggle. However, Peder Galle would give only a written answer to the questions put by the king. Olavus composed a detailed reply to this, *Answers to Twelve Questions*, which he published in 1527 together with Galle's statements. This pamphlet, in which Olavus, using the Bible as his basis, gave a clear and simple presentation of the evangelical doctrine, stressing the preaching of the Word of God as the church's sole duty, was of decisive importance in ecclesiastical politics and a direct preparation for the Diet of Västeras.

In the summer of 1527 the king summoned this momentous Diet. There he reviewed the miserable political and economic situation in the realm: revolt in Dalecarlia, Lübeck's demand for repayment of the war debt, and so on. In such conditions he said he could not reign, but he made no proposals himself, asked the Diet to find a way out of the difficulties, and put the blame on the rich prelates. He denied the rumours that he was to introduce a new religion and offered to have a disputation take place before the assembly. It was quickly decided to support the king in his struggle against the peasant revolt in Dalecarlia which could also have repercussions for the nobility and clergy. In order to reach a decision in the ecclesiastical struggle, the reformers now sought to arrange the disputation. On behalf of the bishops, however, Brask rejected the idea as

unnecessary: the church had already decided what the true faith was, and he would not argue with heretics. He certainly promised the king financial help, but demanded that the church's privileges should be maintained and that the pope's sanction should be obtained for all ecclesiastical changes. In this the nobility supported him. In a fury the king renounced the throne and withdrew. By dint of separate negotiations with the various estates, the reformers, who had been in mortal danger, succeeded during the stormy days that followed in obtaining a hearing for the king's demands. One of the Catholic reform bishops offered to give way on political and economic matters, but held fast to the Catholic doctrine and liturgy. This put an end to the solidarity of the bishops. The king's abdication was in fact a clever political move. The assembly now voted for a considerable reduction in church property; the bishops' palaces together with their 'superfluous' property and that of the cathedral chapters and monasteries were confiscated by the Crown. The nobility recovered all the property given to the church since 1454. Even the disputation took place, and the Estates noted that the reformers justified themselves well and that they only preached the Word of God. It was decided that the pure Word of God should be preached in the entire kingdom – the principle of toleration familiar from Denmark and Germany. The Diet of Västeras destroyed the church's privileged position in political and legal matters, while the ecclesiastical organisation and the authority of the bishops in all internal matters was retained. The problem of Sweden's relations with the Holy See was passed over in silence. After the meeting of the Diet, Bishop Brask fled the country.

Formally the Diet of Västeras only decreed that both parties should enjoy religious freedom as long as they could justify themselves by the gospels, the pure Word of God which both Catholics and Protestants acknowledged as the supreme test. In fact, the decision of the Diet involved not only a change in church politics but also a religious upheaval, since it legalised the preaching of Lutheranism. The way was now open for the reformers' propaganda.

The following years were difficult ones. The king's harshness in reducing the wealth of the church – he even confiscated church bells and fixtures – and the people's dislike of the Lutheran movement caused constant revolts which Gustavus Vasa put down with a firm hand. The changing fortunes of the Reformation abroad influenced his attitude towards the Swedish movement. However, after the formation of the Schmalkaldic League, which gave greater security to Protestantism in Germany, he adopted a patently anti-Catholic position.

In his important sermon on the occasion of Gustavus's coronation in 1528, Olavus presented the reformers' view of the relationship between church and state. He based his arguments on the idea of a popular church

and described the positions of bishop and priest as identical; their sole purpose was to preach the Word and to rule people's consciences with its help. Temporal authority was ordained by God and must therefore be obeyed by all; but the king was also subject to the laws for which all the people together were responsible. The authorities' duty towards the church was to defend it so that it could freely preach the Word. In 1528 Olavus Petri translated Luther's *Book of Sermons* and published a number of polemical writings opposing Catholic ceremonies and customs, the sacraments, confession, celibacy, monastic life, etc. His production dominated the entire book market. In the next few years his numerous writings assisted in a gradual transformation of the Swedish liturgy and the acceptance of services in the vernacular. In 1531 he published the Swedish mass.

In the same year, his brother Laurentius, thirty-two years old, was appointed archbishop. The immediate occasion for this was the king's desire to celebrate his marriage and the crowning of the queen in as splendid a fashion as possible. As the pope supported the exiled Gustav Trolle, none of the Catholic bishops could accept the archbishopric. Therefore Gustavus Vasa had to choose an evangelical bishop, and he considered Olavus's younger brother to be a suitable candidate. The consecration took place according to Catholic ritual, that is to say with the retention of the apostolic succession, although those who officiated at the consecration made a secret declaration that they were acting under pressure.

Laurentius had studied at Wittenberg where Melanchthon especially had influenced him. He had had a broad theological and humanistic training, was possessed of qualities both as an organiser and as a teacher, and in addition had a fine ear for the divine service and liturgical language. His ability to adapt himself to the demands of the situation, which did not mean that he lacked firmness, enabled him throughout all the ensuing changes to retain the confidence of a restless and despotic king. During his more than forty years as archbishop he had a great influence on the Swedish Reformed Church.

In 1536 the archbishop held a synod at Uppsala. There it was decided that priests everywhere should preach the pure Word of God, and that Olavus Petri's Swedish Mass and manual should be introduced throughout the country. Celibacy was abolished. When the king gave his silent consent to the resolutions of the synod, the break with Catholicism was complete and the Swedish church had now officially become an evangelical Swedish national church. New editions of Olavus Petri's book of sermons, hymnal and mass were published. Luther's Shorter Catechism also appeared in Swedish for the first time, and the honour for this seems to be due to Olavus. The church's great task now was to educate the

people in the evangelical faith. The reformers therefore laid special stress on teaching the catechism and on family prayers, which were just beginning to become customary.

To give some idea of Olavus's incredible capacity for work during these years, mention must also be made not only of his Swedish–Latin diction-ary, but also of his *Judge's Rules*, which still form the introduction to the Swedish book of laws, and his *Swedish Chronicle*. Thanks to these two works he has had an enormous influence on Swedish life and culture.

The years immediately following the synod brought considerable pro-gress to the Reformation in every way. But soon new difficulties arose in its relation with Gustavus Vasa whose policy towards the church was always fluctuating. Round about 1538, a change of mind led him away from the reformers' idea of the church. The king's pride and suspicion were growing. Influenced by conditions in the German Lutheran churches, he now began to lay increasing emphasis on the idea that the magistrate was appointed by God and that all subjects had a duty to obey him. He wished to promote the victory of Lutheranism, but the church was to be completely subjected to the king. This policy led to a quarrel with the reformers who maintained the old Swedish policy of the equality of all before the law; their ideal was a Swedish popular church under the leadership of the bishops and with independence in all internal matters. The three reformers were in agreement on this point. The people do not belong to the ruler but to God and are therefore free citizens. As one preaching the Word of God, Olavus boldly stressed the responsibilities of the authorities and violently attacked their misdeeds.

The apparent cause of the break was a sermon preached by Olavus Petri. In Sweden as elsewhere the period of religious strife had led to a serious moral decay. Catholic discipline had gone, and the new evangelical message had not yet penetrated the nation's life. In a sermon at Stock-holm, Olavus violently attacked the increasing tendency to swear and curse, and he made it plain that the king did not present the people with a good example. About the same time as this sermon was preached – and it was printed at the beginning of 1539 – Laurentius Petri incurred the king's wrath by complaining that he was not putting sufficient funds at the disposal of the schools. Gustavus Vasa, who always went in suspicion of the bishops, accused the archbishop of wanting to regain the ancient episcopal powers. He was allowed to keep his position but was forced into the background, and as the king's representative a German Lutheran, George Norman, became in fact the leader of the church. Legal proceed-ings were instituted against Olavus Petri and Laurentius Andreæ who were condemned to death on 2 January 1540 after a biased trial. Both were, however, pardoned in exchange for heavy fines. The intention had merely been to compromise them so that they should not stand in the way

of the king's new church policy, and they soon recovered the king's confidence. In 1542 Olavus became parish priest in Stockholm, while Laurentius lived in retirement in Strängnäs until his death in 1552.

George Norman now became 'superintendent' of the Swedish church. He was a typical disciple of Melanchthon and prepared the way for Melanchthon's theology and conception of the church in Sweden. The Reformation was to be carried out according to the German pattern and with German thoroughness, both in doctrine and in ceremonies. The independence of the church and the bishops disappeared, and new diocesan leaders had to be found. This so-called German period lasted only for a comparatively short time, from 1539 to 1544. Norman carried out extensive visitations, ruthlessly enforcing the Reformation in the parishes and plundering the churches of their silver and valuables. In 1542 the most serious of all the revolts against Gustavus Vasa broke out in southern Sweden. It was caused chiefly by social and economic discontent and was directed against the king's trade regulations which were ruining the border population in Smaland and Blekinge who traded with Denmark. But Catholic priests fanned the flames, and their objective was to reintroduce the Catholic faith. The emperor and other foreign rulers were also interested in the revolt which Gustavus Vasa succeeded in putting down in 1543 after it had spread far up into Sweden; but before he could succeed he had had to rescind the 'German' church edicts and reintroduce the older Swedish system. Norman still retained the confidence of the king, but now became his political adviser.

The revolt had shown the king the need for a complete break with Catholicism and the firm establishment of the hereditary national monarchy. The important Diet of Västeras of 1544 therefore officially pronounced Sweden to be an evangelical kingdom, the entire Diet engaging 'never to renounce the faith which has now arisen'. The worship of saints, requiem masses, pilgrimages and other Catholic customs were forbidden. The monarchy was made hereditary in the house of Vasa.

In the course of the following years a change took place in the popular attitude to religion. Negatively this was the result of the suppression of Catholic customs and old heathen superstition; wayside crucifixes were removed and the fraternities were dissolved. Positively it was the result of evangelic preaching and the teaching of the catechism. In 1541 the brothers Petri published the magnificent Vasa Bible, the first Swedish translation of the Bible in its entirety, which proved to be of great importance for Swedish Christianity, language and culture.

After 1544 Laurentius and Olavus Petri together with the bishops once more held leading positions. Relations with the king were in the main good. Yet Gustavus Vasa's suspicions of the bishops and therefore of the Church's independence remained. He would have no 'government by

priests'. New bishops were no longer given the title, but were called *ordinarii* or superintendents, their position being reduced to that of royal inspectors in the church after the fashion of the German superintendents. In order to reduce the power of the bishops, several dioceses were divided and 'superintendents' put in the new dioceses which were left without chapters. The old chapters almost disappeared. The churches, and now even the presbyteries, were subjected to further confiscations of property and fittings, so that the economy of the parishes was seriously threatened. One point of light was the educational system which now began to take a definite shape; it was to play a decisive part in bringing the people up in the Christian faith.

Until his death Olavus Petri remained the king's adviser in several important concerns. His last years were darkened by personal sorrows. After his death in 1552 and that of Norman in 1553, Laurentius Petri stood unchallenged as the leading figure in the church. Like his brother before him, he almost completely dominated the book-market. Apart from his work on the translation of the Bible and such books as were necessary for conducting services, his literary production included a large number of polemical writings and works of a practical religious nature. The archbishop's great period came especially after the death of Gustavus Vasa in 1560. His capacity for work and his initiative in all the spheres of church life were outstanding. In the theological struggles of the day he maintained the middle way of the old Swedish Lutheranism.

Throughout his life the archbishop showed a special interest in the drafting of an evangelical ordinance for the Swedish church. A final draft was put before the king in 1547, but it was not accepted because Laurentius continued to uphold the reformers' ideal of an independent church under the protection of the state with freedom in all internal matters. During the following years the archbishop sought to regulate church affairs by provisional decrees covering separate spheres. These statutes were included in the final draft of the church ordinances which were published in 1571 and accepted by a synod at Uppsala in 1572. Formally the church ordinances adopted the standpoint of the 1527 Diet of Västeras. The Word of God, the Bible, is the confession of the Swedish church and the test of its laws. Any dependence on German Lutheran confessional writings is rejected. Luther and Melanchthon are given equal weight. Similarly, in deliberate contrast to the manner in which the German churches were ruled by their princes, stress was laid on the relative independence of the Swedish church whose representatives were the bishops. They were to be chosen by clergy and laity, the final decision resting with the king. Priests were ordinarily to be appointed by the congregations. The order of service and liturgical practice were dealt with at length. An elaborate form of worship showed great respect for medieval

tradition. The schools were put into the hands of the church: the ordinances bear the stamp of Melanchthon's pedagogy and humanism. To help in the church's task of educating the people, Lutheran church discipline and private confession were introduced. These ordinances of 1571 formed the basis of subsequent developments and had the same significance for the church of Sweden as the Church Ordinance of 1539 had for Denmark.

In 1560 Gustavus Vasa died soon after signing his will in which he expressed his simple Lutheran faith, the faith of a layman. In 1573 the archbishop followed him. Therewith all the main figures in the tempestuous Swedish Reformation had passed away, and the first chapter in the history of Swedish Lutheranism was closed.

FINLAND

At the time of the Reformation Finland was under Swedish rule, so that it largely followed Swedish developments in church affairs. However, the actual work of reform was carried out by some young Finns who had become acquainted with the new movement during their studies in Germany. The Finnish Reformation has its own special character. The transition from the middle ages to the Reformation took place there without the disturbances which otherwise characterised this period.

At the end of the middle ages the Catholic church in Finland still retained its full glory. Its bishops and prelates were able men who through studies abroad had acquired a considerable theological training. The lower-ranking clergy were certainly less well equipped, but the usual complaints of abuses within the church play no part worth mentioning in the Finnish church at this time. Developments had not been so rapid nor the demand for reforms so forceful as elsewhere. The Reformation was here an affair of bishops and clergy; it was conservative and traditionalist and did not result in any popular movement, as it did in Denmark and Germany. With Latin predominating in its ritual, the medieval church had not been able to fill the people with a true Christian faith, but when the Roman superstructure of sacramental magic, justification by works and the worship of saints was done away with, the reformers were able to touch hands with the true religious life of the later middle ages, with its reverence for Christ, the mystery of the Passion and penance which in evangelical form provided the transition of the new age. The writings of Agricola show this clearly. The reformers were aiming at a personal faith, and in their efforts they gave Finland a liturgy and a religious literature in the vernacular. Finland's reformer, Mikael Agricola, became the founder of the written Finnish language.

From the ecclesiastical point of view Finland consisted of one diocese, with Åbo as its seat. In 1528 the pious seventy-year-old Dominican Martin Skytte became bishop. He was a biblical humanist and a Catholic reformer, had studied abroad, at Rostock among other places, and was not entirely averse to the ideas of the Reformation. He supported young Finns in their studies at Wittenberg, and later these same men became the pioneers of the Reformation in Finland through their activities as teachers at the cathedral school, Finland's clerical seminary in fact if not in name. On his appointment Bishop Skytte had had to promise Gustavus Vasa to take care that the priests preached the Word of God in accordance with the decision of the 1527 Diet of Västeras. Because of opposition from the members of his chapter he appears to have adopted a cautious attitude, with the result that a royal letter of 1528 ordered him to follow the evangelical doctrine and to take less notice of his canons. The reduction in church property which was also decreed at Västeras had its effect during his period as bishop: the bishop's palace of Kustö was pulled down, church property confiscated, tithes seized by the Crown, and churches and monasteries robbed of their treasures.

In the 1520s Lutheran influence made its entry into Finland. The first 'Lutheran' was Peder Särkilaks. Born of a noble family, the son of a mayor of Åbo, he returned to Åbo in 1523, after several years of foreign study in Rostock, Louvain and perhaps also Wittenberg among other places, there to become canon and later archdeacon. Särkilaks preached against the Roman worship of saints and images, celibacy and monastic life. His words aroused some opposition among the members of the chapter, but as a teacher at the cathedral school he exerted a great influence on the young people who listened enthusiastically to these new and liberating ideas. He died early in 1529.

Towards the east, Viborg and the school there became the centre of the Reformation movement. The town's links with the neighbouring city of Reval and the Baltic states, among the German population of which the Reformation spread quickly in the 1520s, were of considerable importance. By 1529, and perhaps as early as 1526, Viborg had a parish priest, Peder Soroi, with Lutheran tendencies. Mikael Agricola, the real reformer of Finland, also started from Viborg. He was born about 1510 in the parish of Perna in southern Finland. After studying at the school in Viborg he went to Åbo in 1528 where he became the bishop's scrivener and later his secretary. In Åbo Särkilaks's message made a profound impression on him. He preached evangelism in the cathedral and during the bishop's visitations also in the rural parishes. Agricola was one of the young people whom the bishop decided to send abroad to study, and in 1536 he went to Wittenberg. He returned in 1539 and began a literary

production which soon gave the Finnish Lutheran Church both the New Testament and other parts of the Bible, together with church manuals in the vernacular. After nine years as principal of the cathedral school in Åbo he became assistant to Bishop Skytte, in which capacity he undertook extensive tours of inspection throughout the country. After the bishop's death in 1550 Agricola succeeded to the post, but as the king was at the time considering a reorganisation of the dioceses he was not appointed bishop until 1554. The diocese was then divided and a new one created at Viborg, presumably to reduce the bishop's power. Agricola proved zealous and worked hard for his clergy and flock, but he was not to occupy the position for long. In 1557 he was sent to Moscow with other representatives to negotiate peace between Russia and Sweden. On his way home he fell ill and died on the Karelian Isthmus in 1557.

Agricola's importance rests on his literary output which has justly earned him the name of 'the father of written Finnish'. His translation of the New Testament was finished by 1543, though not published until 1548; based on the Greek Testament, it used Luther's German translation as well as Erasmus's Latin version and Olavus's translation. In addition it incorporated most of Luther's introductions and marginal notes, including the important introduction to the Epistle to the Romans. Agricola's most interesting work was *A Biblical Prayer Book* (1544), a manual for priests in the fashion of the day with varied and complex contents, filling 875 pages of small size. He translated not only Reformation writers (Luther, Melanchthon) but also humanists (Erasmus) and mystics (Schwenckfeld). A large number of liturgical prayers were taken from the Åbo Missal. After the synod at Uppsala in 1536 the publication of liturgical books in Finnish became an urgent necessity, but only with Agricola's book of ritual and *Order of the Mass*, both of which (based on Olavus Petri's corresponding works) appeared in 1549, did Finnish religious life take on a definite shape. Agricola also published a book on the story of the Passion as well as some of the prophets and the Psalms of David (1551). In his introduction to the translation of the New Testament and the psalms he included some information on the conversion of Finland to Christianity, the Swedish colonisation of Finland, Finnish topography, families and dialects, the gods of the heathen Finns, and so forth, all of which bears witness to his humanist interests.

Characteristic of Agricola's reforming activities was his reverent attitude towards tradition. He accepted the essential elements of the evangelical faith – justification by faith, the new life in God, and the profound reverence for the Word of God – but otherwise he often held fast to a vague and traditionalist point of view, as for example on the doctrines of purgatory and Mariology. The mysticism of the Passion and late-medieval piety in general always retained an important place in his

religious thinking. His prayer book contains a collection of prayers for Passiontide. Similarly he retained the feast of Corpus Christi, the most popular feast of the later middle ages and the mainstay of the medieval mysticism centred in the sacraments. Agricola's conservative attitude is also apparent in the practical work of reform. He wished the Reformation to be introduced with caution. Like Luther he wanted enlightenment to go before reforms, but unlike him he generally avoided polemical attacks on the institutions of the Catholic church. His was a profoundly religious nature. The strength of his writings does not lie so much in theology and theory as in the reverence and practical Christianity which they reflect. He laid great stress on prayer. Several of the introductions to his writings bear witness to his considerable pastoral abilities. He addressed himself to the clergy, censuring ignorance and carelessness and encouraging them to carry out their tasks faithfully in a chaotic period of change. As the reformer of Finland Agricola made possible the transition from medieval piety to a Lutheran form of Christianity; thanks to his tolerant attitude towards various forms of religious life and doctrines, and his stress on practical Christian life, he stands as the typical exponent of Finnish religiosity.

The Lutheran Reformation won a more complete victory in the Nordic lands than in any other country. Varied political and national conditions produced two main types, one Danish–Norwegian–Icelandic and the other Swedish–Finnish. The Nordic churches are still national Lutheran churches to which to all intents the entire population belongs.

THE BALTIC

The evangelical movement reached the Baltic states round about 1520; its progress was speedy, especially among the German population in the towns. The unhindered progress of the Reformation was favoured by the struggle for power among the bishops, the city councils of the three most important cities (Riga, Reval and Dorpat), and the Order of the Teutonic Knights to whom the greater part of the region belonged. The grand master, Walther von Plettenberg, sought at first to maintain a balance of power between the three political powers in the area in order to prevent interference from outside. This policy failed, because the burghers and the knights, both of whom had Lutheran leanings, soon joined forces against the bishops, and when the latter sought help abroad, even from Russia, the country disintegrated and its various parts were subjected to neighbouring states.

At the Diet of Wolmar in 1522 the representatives of the towns and the knights joined forces to oppose the domination of the bishops. Protests were lodged against the publication of the Edict of Worms and the bull of

excommunication against Luther, asserting that a land which was con-
quered by the sword should not be ruled by the bishops' power of
excommunication. No side was taken in the actual religious struggle, but it
was decided to await the decision of a general council some time in the
future. When the Diet met again in Reval in 1524 the estates decided 'to
maintain the Holy Word of God and His gospels, without the teachings of
man or any additions whatsoever', and to defend this to the death. Now
the Reformation could make rapid progress. Though a powerful evangeli-
cal movement already existed in the larger towns, the history of the Baltic
Reformation is a stormy one containing several instances of churches and
statues being pillaged and destroyed, as in Riga and in Reval in 1524 and
in Dorpat in 1525 where a riot was caused by the German fanatic
Melchior Hoffmann.

Riga provides the most interesting chapter. Its reformer was a person of
note, Andreas Knopken. A native of Pomerania, he became a curate in
Riga in 1517. Knopken was influenced by the ideals of humanism and
even corresponded with Erasmus. After a few years' stay in Riga he went
to the school at Treptow in Pomerania of which Bugenhagen was the
principal. Knopken had studied there previously and under the guidance
of Bugenhagen he continued his humanistic studies, occupying himself
especially with the study of the Bible and the Fathers of the church. After
1520 the ideas of the Reformation reached Bugenhagen and his disciples
through Luther's main writings. A powerful movement resulted which
caused the bishop to intervene. While Bugenhagen joined Luther in
Wittenberg, where he was to carry on his activities, Knopken together
with a number of pupils from Livonia went back to Riga in 1521. Now an
evangelical, he resumed his clerical duties at St Peter's Church and soon
collected a considerable following by his teaching. In his polemical
writings against the prevailing order he was moderate. Apart from his
sermons he lectured to the citizens on the Epistle to the Romans. After
copies had circulated in manuscript, Knopken's commentary was pub-
lished in 1524 in Wittenberg with a preface by Bugenhagen, and several
editions followed. In the form of practical homilies, and polemically
directed against what Knopken called the perverted doctrine and the
abuses of the Church of Rome, the author here gave a summary of
evangelical teaching, especially of the doctrine of justification as it was
evolved by Luther and Melanchthon in the 1520s.

The evangelical movement in Riga soon took on considerable propor-
tions and had the support of the mayor, Conrad Durkop, and the city
clerk, John Lohmüller. Archbishop Linde then requested the grand
master to intervene. But Plettenberg would not resort to repressive
measures, suggesting instead a public disputation, like those arranged in
other countries, to solve the religious problem. On 12 June 1522 a

disputation accordingly took place in the choir of St Peter's between Knopken and some of his Catholic opponents on the basis of fifteen theses from his commentary on the Epistle to the Romans. Knopken refuted the attacks of his opponents and proved that his doctrine agreed with scripture. The result of the disputation, which was attended by several members of the city council (including Durkop) and a large number of the congregation, was that the council decided to introduce the Reformation. As the archbishop had rejected a request for reforms and the appointment of evangelical preachers, the council together with the older of the city's two fraternities appointed Knopken archdeacon at St Peter's Church.

While Knopken was a conservative Lutheran theologian, moderate in his demands for reforms, Sylvester Tegetmeier, appointed pastor at St James's Church, was a passionate man whose radical demands for reforms soon resulted in destructive iconoclastic attacks on the churches and monasteries of the city. In March 1524 the two parish churches of Riga, St Peter's and St James's, were pillaged. The altars were destroyed, the relics removed, and statues and pictures of the saints dragged out and burnt in a great bonfire outside the city. At this time St Peter's Church had more than thirty-two chapels and altars. Later the cathedral itself was stormed and desecrated under the leadership of Tegetmeier. With the threat of bloodshed about, the city council early one morning had the hated Franciscans move outside the city. In May the Catholic priests were driven out. At the same time the council seized the treasures of the cathedral, but in August the interior was once more subjected to desecration. Even the magnificent statue of Our Lady was dragged from the high altar to the River Dvina to undergo the ordeal by water and be burnt.

At the same time relations between the burgers and the archbishop grew steadily more strained. When the archbishop died in 1524 and Bishop Blankenberg of Dorpat-Reval was chosen as his successor, the council declared that in future they would not acknowledge any bishop as a temporal lord. In an important pamphlet, *That the Pope, Bishops and Clerical Estates Shall Not Possess or Rule over Land or People*, Lohmüller presented the citizens' point of view. At the same time a request for protection was made to Plettenberg. After some hesitation he took over the temporal government of the city and in a declaration of 21 September 1525 assured the Lutheran church of extensive liberties. During the subsequent developments the interests of the citizens, the nobility and the grand master were bound closely together. At the Diet of Wolmar in 1526 the Estates suggested that Plettenberg should establish his rule over the whole of Livonia as an evangelical prince, as Duke Albrecht had done in Prussia, but Plettenberg refused. Meanwhile he was soon obliged to take steps against the archbishop. When the latter sought help both from the emperor and the pope, indeed even from the Russians, he was proclaimed

traitor and imprisoned. After ostensibly submitting to Plettenberg he was
released, but in August 1526 he left Livonia only to prefer accusations
against the grand master to the emperor and the pope. However, he died
abroad the following year. His successor Thomas Schöning was only
interested in regaining the bishop's privileges and wealth; in return he
confirmed the rights and liberties of the Lutherans.

At the end of the 1520s the organisation of the church and the order of
service took on definite shape. In 1527 Dr Johannes Briesmann from
Königsberg, a conservative Lutheran theologian who played a consider-
able part in the Reformation in Königsberg and East Prussia, was called
in. Together with Knopken he evolved an order of service for Riga which
was published in Rostock in 1530 and introduced the same year. The
ordinances committed decisions on church matters to the council, two
members of which were delegated for the purpose. While these 'superin-
tendents' and the mayor were to attend to the church's outward affairs,
the internal administration was the business of the 'chief priest', later
called the clerical superintendent. In 1532 it was decided that Knopken
and Tegetmeier should alternate as chairman in the clerical council for
periods of six months each. Through their elders the congregations also
took part in the administration of the church, as in the choice of priests,
the care of the poor, and church discipline.

At the beginning of the Reformation the church's position in the other
Baltic cities was roughly like that in Riga. Next to Riga the most
important city was Reval whose Church Ordinance of 19 May 1525 is one
of the oldest Lutheran ordinances. There the new doctrine was preached
by Johannes Lange, Hermann Marsow and Zacharias Hasse. As in Riga,
the movement quickly gained a foothold in the city guilds and led to
violent clashes with the Dominicans who were particularly hated by the
people. When the preachers vainly offered the monks a disputation on the
true faith, the council decided to organise reform and decreed that for
three consecutive Sundays evangelical priests should preach in the abbey
church to enlighten the monks. At last things came to such a pass that a
furious mob broke into the abbey church on 14 September 1524 and
destroyed the 'idols', altars and other articles of value. Soon afterwards
the Churches of the Holy Spirit and St Olaf were razed to the ground,
while St Nicholas's Church only escaped the same fate because the
churchwardens had barred the doors and filled the keyholes with lead. The
council, however, soon gained control of the situation and decided on the
day after the riots that those who had robbed the churches of their
valuables should deliver them to the town hall, as otherwise proceedings
for theft would be started against them. But at the same time it was
decreed that people who owned altars, statues of the saints, and the like in
St Nicholas's Church should take them down and remove them, or they

would be confiscated. In January 1525 the monks were turned out of the city.

A few days after the storming of the churches the three evangelical preachers submitted proposals for a church ordinance, which, as stated above, was accepted by the council in May next year. The characteristic aspect of this church ordinance, as in that of Riga, is a differentiation between the church's spiritual mission and its temporal administration, the latter being committed in its entirety to the council and the congregation; at the same time the chief priest (*oberste Pastor*) was made independent of the council in the carrying out of his duties, responsible only to God and his conscience. Johannes Lange was chosen for this exacting task; he wore himself out in his work for the accomplishment of the Reformation and died young in 1531.

Officially, the Reformation had won the day throughout the whole country when in 1554 the Diet of Wolmar proclaimed freedom to preach the gospel and general religious toleration. The continual struggles between the grand masters and the bishops who, in order to retain their power, made alliances with neighbouring states, led, however, to the speedy dissolution of the country. In 1558 Ivan the Terrible broke into Livonia and ravaged it in such a fearful manner that the country completely disintegrated.[1] The separate parts sought protection from the neighbouring states and were soon incorporated into them. The division was completed between 1559 and 1561. The greater part of Estonia came under Sweden. The bishopric of Øsel fell to Prince Magnus of Denmark who, however, was not capable of deriving any advantage from the situation. Livonia, together with Riga and Dorpat, was incorporated into Poland-Lithuania, while the Livonian grand master kept Courland as an hereditary duchy. Despite the political dissolution, Lutheran Christianity and the church ordinances continued to flourish.

1 Below, pp. 620–1.

POLITICS AND THE INSTITUTIONALISATION OF REFORM IN GERMANY

'I SIMPLY taught, preached, wrote God's Word: otherwise I did
nothing. And then, while I slept or drank Wittenberg beer with my
Philip and my Amsdorf, the Word so greatly weakened the papacy
that neither a prince or emperor inflicted such damage upon it.' If Luther
actually spoke these words recorded in his *Table Talk*, he betrayed either a
faulty memory or a poor grasp of political realities. It is true that he often
exerted little influence on the storm that swirled around him, although he
stood at its epicentre, but it was certainly not true that the Word did it all.
The long-term success of demands for religious reform, even in the limited
form it was to take in Germany, depended in the last resort on politics,
which in turn crucially influenced the institutional shape it was to take.
From the very beginning, the reform of religion was so entangled with
political issues of many different kinds, that it could never give rise to an
unpolitical Reformation: to put it bluntly, without politics, no
Reformation.

As soon as 'Luther's cause' became a matter of public debate, the fate of
religious reform was tied to princely politics within the Holy Roman
Empire, for Luther's very survival depended on the protection afforded
him by the elector of Saxony, Frederick the Wise. Frederick was certainly
convinced of Luther's sincerity and integrity by advisors such as his
chaplain Georg Spalatin and his chancellor Gregor Brück, but his
willingness to take this protection to its limits was also influenced by a
streak of anti-Habsburg politics shared by many other princes of the
empire. The Edict of Worms of 26 May 1521 consolidated this political
trend. It had been drafted by Imperial councillors as early as 8 May, but
its presentation was delayed until so many princes had departed from
Worms that it was passed only by a rump Diet. Some of the most powerful
princes of the empire challenged its legality and held themselves not to be
bound by its terms. From 1521 there was an energetic campaign to have it
rescinded, led by successive electors of Saxony (Frederick the Wise and,
from 1525, John the Constant), the elector Palatine, the elector of
Brandenburg and Landgrave Philip of Hesse. Other princes showed
remarkably little enthusiasm for its enforcement; only George the
Bearded, duke of Saxony took energetic measures, followed rather
reluctantly by the dukes of Bavaria. The reform movements grew up in the

resulting political vacuum, relying for their continued development on the permissive attitude taken by political authorities, both princely and civic. The failure of the Edict of Worms was largely the failure of German political authorities to enforce it.

The urgent problem of the evangelical movement was, therefore, born under the star of high politics, and whatever its forms of development in popular politics during the early 1520s, all solutions entertained by the ruling élites of Germany remained within that sphere. The earliest proposal, approved by virtually all orthodox princes and prelates, was a National Council of the German church, an idea which found its strongest resonance at the 1524 Diet of Nuremberg. Indeed, some regarded the 1526 Diet of Speyer as exactly that kind of gathering. Although the Diet was patently a secular political assembly, the idea was given plausibility by the presence of the clergy as an estate of the empire and by the influence wielded by secular authorities in past councils of the church. However, this phantasm was quickly dissolved by a more important political decision. The 1526 Recess of Speyer allowed each sovereign authority to determine the regulation of religion 'as the laws of the empire and the Word of God allowed'. The formula contained a crucial ambiguity in each of its terms, for exactly what the 'laws of the empire' permitted in the area of religion was a matter of dispute, as was the 'Word of God' and what it allowed. Indeed, dispute over the meaning of 'the Word' was quickly to shatter the broad evangelical movement in many religious fragments, ensuring that there would never be any kind of uniform or unified 'Reformation'. None the less, the Recess of Speyer was seized upon by secular authorities, both princely and urban, as an excuse for assuming control over religion and for proceeding with the implementation of formal changes to religious cult and institutions. Above all, it seemed to establish a *ius reformandi*, a 'right of Reformation', as a law of the empire, setting up a notion which was to be central in the emergence after 1529 of 'Protestantism'. At one level, it was no more than a continuation of late-medieval claims by secular princes to interfere in church affairs, and was a right claimed even by the ultra-orthodox Duke George of Saxony, for example by conducting visitations and enforcing reform of monastic institutions. At another, the *ius reformandi* became a useful tool to advance claims to sovereign authority asserted by petty princes or towns seeking independence.

There were two compelling reasons for princes to seek some kind of constitutional foothold to bolster their control over religious affairs. The first was the acute problem of social order revealed by the events of 1524–6; the other concerned the complex legal issues raised by any attempts to change institutional forms of religion. The German Peasants' War had made a number of things plain to ruling authorities throughout Germany.

Religious radicalism when linked to social radicalism had an unpredict-
able potential for upheaval. All rulers were aware how narrowly Germany
had escaped revolution, and continued peasant truculence ensured that
many years passed before princes and nobles could sleep easily in their
beds without the fear that some small spark could once again light the blue
touch-paper of revolt. They were also aware that the nobility had proved
to be a broken reed as any kind of policing force, for most had cravenly
capitulated before massed ranks of poorly armed peasants. There were
further grounds for suspicion of the nobility, namely their ambivalence
about the entire question of religious reform. The pre-Reformation
church has rightly been called a 'nobles' church' and, more controver-
sially, the entire style of pre-Reformation religion has been described as
overtly aristocratic, fostering saints, shrines and pilgrimages linked to the
masculine ethos of the hunt and the crusade. These cults took their place
within an 'Imperial religion' in which God was represented as a distant
sovereign ruling in Imperial majesty, and the Virgin Mary as an Imperial
queen, exercising the aristocratic lady's right to plead for mercy for the
condemned. This 'imperial cult' was favoured by the upwardly mobile
'new nobility' of the fifteenth century, but aroused the hostility of the
more communitarian forms of religion which emerged in German towns,
the seedbed both of reforming ideas and of the evangelical movements of
the 1520s.

    It is understandable, therefore, that the nobles' response to religious
reform was ambivalent, even confused. The spontaneous enthusiasm
brought by many petty nobles to the evangelical cause was quickly
inhibited by the events of the Knights' Revolt of 1523 and the many
inglorious episodes of the peasant rebellion. After 1526 most minor nobles
were consciously on the defensive, but few were able to follow the path
taken by some of the south-west German nobility, who were able to opt
out of princely control and become immediate subjects of the empire,
creating a myriad of petty Imperial counts and barons. Their role as the
traditional counsellors of princes was also under threat, as low-born
bureaucrats and administrators, especially those of burgher background
with legal training, began to staff the councils of princely governments.
Where they could, they expressed their collective opposition to such
developments through assemblies of local Estates, their attempts to
frustrate or limit princely policies often taking the form of opposition to
princely religious policy. Thus, it was almost predictable that the nobility
would lean in the opposite religious direction from their sovereign prince,
favouring orthodoxy where the prince heavily supported reform, or
turning evangelical where the prince was strongly orthodox. The most
notable examples of this trend are found in Styria and in the Habsburgs'
Austrian territories, where the evangelical movement found stronger

aristocratic support than in Germany. This noble opposition could prove to be no more than a minor irritant, but it was always a factor to be taken into consideration when a prince sought to exercise his *ius reformandi.* Hesse provides the most interesting example, where Landgrave Philip in 1526 sought to introduce evangelical reform through agreement with his Estates. Unwilling to confiscate monastic and church lands directly because of his fear of noble reaction, Philip reached a compromise by which monastic revenues were paid into a separate chest controlled jointly by princely councillors and noble commissioners, with expenditure from the chest to be supervised by a committee of the Estates. Revenues from two former convents were to be devoted to the support of poor noble-women, the landgrave was to receive 41 per cent of the remaining revenues, and 59 per cent was to be devoted to educational and pious ecclesiastical uses. Such a compromise was perhaps dictated by the fact that Philip was not yet fully secure in his status as a sovereign prince of the empire, although in the long run he was able to gain sole control over these revenues, for the supervisory committee never met.

The Hessian example illustrates the mutual suspicion and mutual need of princes and nobles. It also suggests the degree of difficulty faced by princes seeking to take charge of religious reform when faced with a minefield of legal complexities, the second reason why a *ius reformandi* was so welcome. It has often been said that the Reformation simplified the old medieval problem of dual jurisdiction, the contending claims of canon and secular law, by simply abolishing the former and imposing secular jurisdiction alone. This is misleading in many respects, not the least of which is the fact that canon law did not disappear but was retained, for example, to regulate marital questions, for want of anything better in its place. More importantly, the legal issues of religious reform were not quite that simple. The sequestration of church property was a breach of property law, intervention in appointments to benefices interfered in the secular legal rights of patrons, and the cessation of religious endowments and foundations was a breach of private contract. The success of religious innovation depended on how far it could be effected by relying on some form of sovereign authority to lend it weight and deter legal and political reprisals. Imperial cities thus had an advantage in their ability to innovate quickly and efficiently; autonomous cities such as Erfurt or Magdeburg had to risk having the alterations reversed if their sovereign overlord opposed them, or else face crippling lawsuits and protracted feuds; territorial towns such as Zwickau had to rely on the willingness of their overlords to approve and uphold the innovations. Yet even where innovation could be carried through by virtue of sovereign authority, lawsuits could still be brought before the Imperial Chamber, involving great financial and political cost.

The initial reaction of those sovereign authorities who wished to rush ahead with innovation was to appeal to a higher law, 'divine law' as enshrined in the Word of God, but this proved to be a dangerous weapon, for there was nothing to hinder its appropriation by their subjects, who might produce their own reading of 'divine law'. A safer strategy was to fall back on the *cura religionis*, the traditional duty of the Christian magistrate to 'protect the church', and numerous civic authorities had exploited this in the early 1520s both to appoint evangelical preachers and to confiscate clerical property and suborn the clergy 'for their own protection'. Allied with the new demand that a Christian magistrate should actively further the Word of God (perhaps the sole point on which princely thinking agreed with the views of Thomas Müntzer!), the argument was developed to justify the princes' intervention in religion, and ultimately secular control of the church. It was most explicitly applied in the 1527 Saxon Church Visitation, a groundbreaking event which laid the basis for a type of institutionalised reform which had been envisaged by none of the early reformers. Its religious justification was most cogently expressed by Justus Menius in 1538, arguing that just as the Christian prince must personally believe in and live by the Word of God, so he must also ensure, according to the measure of authority with which he is invested, that the true faith is everywhere taught, professed and practised according to the Word of God, just as a father of a family has the duty to exhort his wife, children and servants to learn and practise the true faith and its true profession. None the less, the legal status of the princely *ius reformandi* was to remain ambiguous, especially when it extended to confiscations and dissolutions. It was not until the 1544 Recess of Speyer that Imperial Law recognised any princely right to exercise a 'Christian Reformation' over churches and abbeys.

The *ius reformandi*, whether wielded by a princely or a civic authority, concerned only the legal justification for institutional reform. The exact measures by means of which this was carried out were more complex, although an essential similarity developed throughout most of Germany. The first step was the cessation of the Latin mass, and its replacement by a reformed German mass, with the distribution of communion under both kinds. Monks and nuns were encouraged or forced to leave their houses, and monastic incomes and properties were inventoried and placed in a 'common chest'. The same occurred with privately funded masses and endowments, as well as with other pious foundations such as altar lights, candles, processions or paraliturgical ceremonies. The consequent loss of clerical incomes was compensated for by the provision of a salary for those pastors allowed to remain in office, sometimes through monies taken out of the newly created common chest. There was often a reorganisation and rationalisation of parishes and church benefices,

providing the opportunity to replace those clerics who were old, infirm or opposed to the innovations. Since these changes were usually implemented in opposition to episcopal authority, a new hierarchy of authority was created, with a superintendent fulfilling the role of the bishop. The resulting ecclesiastical unit, the superintendency, was closer to the idea of a 'local church' than the old structure, for it often corresponded to the size of an administrative district or province rather than the larger and more cumbersome diocese. The more overtly liturgical and ecclesiastical–administrative measures were often accompanied by statutes controlling social and moral behaviour: regulation of begging, prohibition of prostitution, cohabitation and fornication, condemnation of gambling, squandering and idle living, exhortation to piety, obedience and deference to authority. The most usual means of enacting all these regulations was to embody them in a comprehensive set of ecclesiastical statutes, a *Kirchenordnung*, issued by virtue of the sovereign authority of the legislating body, be it a prince or town council. This means of institutionalising reform ensured that the new religious structures were set up under secular control, and it gave a distinctive character to the churches that emerged from the process.

The procedure was by no means an inspired creation of the reform movements, but merely a continuation of socio-political trends from the pre-Reformation period. It was a common assumption of all polities at the beginning of the sixteenth century that their primary function was to maintain an overall control of social and political order, encapsulated in the notion of 'police' (*Polizei*). 'Police' was constituted by a maze of regulations ranging from the petty economic detail in guild statutes and ordinances, over market regulations, price and wage controls, the stimulation of industry and commerce, repair of roads, hospitality for foreign visitors, provisions of fuel and building timber, fire regulations, health and hygiene laws, and laws against begging and vagrancy to the disciplining of morals and manners in prohibitions of gambling, swearing, squandering or immoderate drinking. These were usually summarised in comprehensive *Polizeiordnungen* or *Landesordnungen*, of which those issued in Württemberg in 1495 and 1515 are exemplary models. These ordinances initiated many reforms which have erroneously been ascribed to the influence of the Reformation. The control of begging and vagrancy provides the clearest example. Numerous urban statutes enacted at least two generations before 1520, expressed the view that mendicancy was an activity far from sanctifying, and in some places the giving of charity was accompanied by a doctrinal test administered by a Poor-Law official, reflecting the conviction that the beggar was not automatically a 'good Christian'. Only local beggars were to be tolerated, controlled by the use of beggars' signs or licences, and non-local beggars were to be expelled.

The Regensburg Poor Law Statutes of 1515 were a model of the new attitude. The evangelical versions only added a further theological justification for a trend already in progress, and even the apparent major innovation of the Reformation period, the institution of a 'common chest' from which the poor were supported, was not new, for it had already been anticipated by princely legislation in Württemberg at the end of the fifteenth century. Similarly, regulation of marital and sexual conduct by secular authorities was well advanced before the Reformation, especially the assertion of parental rights to determine the marriage partners of their children, a means of ensuring orderly transmission of inheritance and avoiding elopements and seductions of minors.

These trends represented a drive for wider social control by magistrates, another manifestation of which was the desire to subordinate the clergy to secular jurisdiction. We can even discern a theoretical justification for the trend in the *Defensor pacis* of Marsilius of Padua, who provided a number of arguments anticipating sixteenth-century attempts to take secular control of the church. Marsilius did not challenge the priority of religious over secular aims, but he refused to allow the clergy and ecclesiastical hierarchy any coercive control over lay Christians. Salvation was to be attained by reliance on Scripture, as interpreted by the consensus of all faithful believers. The same popular consensus created civil authority to maintain a condition of peace, to be upheld by secular magistrates acting in their name. State authority, whether it be that of a prince or a city, had the right to rule over clerical persons and to dispose of whatever might be provided for their support. What was not required for such purposes should be devoted to the common good. Here we find, quite independently of evangelical theology, a justification of many of the social policies usually associated exclusively with Reformation thought. The *Defensor pacis* was written in 1324, but Marsilius's views were taken up by fifteenth-century conciliarist opposition to claims to papal supremacy, an important intellectual progenitor of the Reformation; indeed, he came close to formulating a position akin to the doctrine of the 'two kingdoms'. The institutionalisation of reform in the sixteenth century, with state control of the church as part of a wider regulation of social and economic life, was 'Marsilian' as much as it was Lutheran.

The enacting of ecclesiastical statutes, however, constituted only the most formal means of instituting religious reform. There was still the question of practical regulation and supervision of the church. This was achieved by adapting a traditional instrument of ecclesiastical supervision, the visitation. Indeed, in all territories of any size, the *Kirchenvisitation* was perhaps a more important means of carrying through religious reform than the *Kirchenordnung*. The demand for visitations to ascertain the condition of individual parishes was voiced quite early during the evan-

gelical movements. The lead may have been given from the orthodox side as the bishop of Merseburg conducted a two-week visitation around seven towns in his diocese in April 1524 to ascertain the state of religion there. Only slightly earlier, the Zwickau pastor Nikolaus Hausmann had called for a visitation to deal with the variety of doctrines and practices that had sprung up like weeds in the wake of evangelical preaching. Following the upheaval of 1525 in Thuringia, the Eisenach preacher Jakob Strauss had called for such a visitation in order to root out unreliable and seditious preachers who had led the peasants astray. The first formal use of this instrument to effect reform was subsequently undertaken in Electoral Saxony in 1527, a thorough visitation and examination of all parishes in the territory that was to take three years to complete. The Saxon Visitation combined many purposes at once: it focussed on the state of the clergy, their incomes, their religious knowledge, their morals, their fitness to preach and administer the sacraments; it also interested itself in the 'state of religion', manners and morals of parishioners; it tried to ascertain and improve local educational provision; and it set about a major reorganisation of religious cult, finances, local foundations and institutions. Here was the practical side of religious reform at work. Each pastor, priest, preacher or minor cleric had to undergo interrogation and, if necessary, correction. If found unsuitable, he was either given instruction and time for improvement, or else retired on a pension. Local endowments and ecclesiastical incomes were rerouted to provide salaries for the reformed clergy, with any surplus being used for a common chest. It was a massive administrative and financial upheaval and reorganisation.

The visitation determined the character of the new church that it created. First, it was only possible because of more efficient bureaucratic methods of princely territorial government. It was carried out as an act of state, by princely commissioners, usually composed jointly of theologians, jurists and administrators, the last often local district governors. In effect, it gave secular princes an unprecedented control of the church. However, it was difficult to provide theological justification for what we might most appropriately call a 'Marsilian revolution'. Almost all reformers held that it was the intermingling of secular and religious interests that had led to the corruption of the old church, and the corollary of this position was a church wholly free from the supervision of secular government. This was a position only taken up in its purity by the religious radicals stigmatised as Anabaptists. In practice, the reformers were perfectly willing to see secular authority advance religious reform, as long as it was of the right kind, for was this not the godly duty of the Christian magistrate? (Where it was not of the right kind, that is, carried out by princes of the old persuasion, it was condemned as 'spiritual tyranny'.)

In Lutheran Saxony this secular intervention, almost certainly

influenced by concern about social as well as religious order, was justified
by recourse to the idea that the prince was acting as an 'emergency bishop'
(*Notbischof*). In strict terms, the supervision of the cult, manners and
morals of the church was the function of the bishop; however, since the
bishops had patently failed in their duty to promote the Word of God, it
was necessary for the Christian magistrate to assume this function as a
temporary, emergency measure. The Instructions for the Visitors in
Saxony, drawn up by Philip Melanchthon in 1528 justified the essentially
Marsilian exercise in this way. Yet whatever the theological or intellectual
plausibility of such an argument, the 'temporary measure' became a
permanent feature of the Reformation church: it was a Marsilian state-
church. A further theological legitimation of this new institution was
provided by Luther's doctrine of the 'two kingdoms', which separated the
spiritual and secular realm, but allowed the civil ruler a limited protective
power over the church and the right to regulate 'external' matters, those
which did not affect the spiritual aspects of salvation. The visitation
commissions were constructed to reflect this view, matters of doctrine or
theology falling within the purview of the theologians and 'externals'
within those of the jurists or administrators. It was reflected also in the
new ecclesiastical structure of a church organised around superintendents
supervising a number of parishes within a discrete district. Everywhere
that the visitors of 1527 established this structure, they merely chose for
the new ecclesiastical unit the existing Saxon administrative districts. This
underlined the nature of the new church, for the new clergy were civil
servants, employed by the princely government, the church itself another
'department of state' whose structure coincided with that of secular
government. Here was a local, communal church *par excellence*, but one
with little in common with the concept of the 'communal Reformation'. It
was, rather, a local bureaucratic church, suited to the imposition of
conformity and uniformity. The dualism of church government implicit in
the notion of the 'two kingdoms' was reflected in the dual control of
superintendent and district governor (*Amtmann*). Yet this distinction
proved to be difficult to maintain in practice. Not only was there to be
continual debate over exactly what constituted 'externals', but there was
no doubt in case of dispute which official was superior.

   The same problem emerged in those areas which took the more positive
Zwinglian line, that the role of the Christian magistrate was actively to
promote the advancement of right belief and sound doctrine. This was to
be carried out in conjunction with, and under the advice of, the preachers
of the Word, the reformed clergy. It was characteristic of Zwinglian
church organisation, and subsequently of that of the 'reformed religion',
that the clergy were organised in a local synodal structure, with lay
representatives sitting alongside the clergy in a consistory which was

entrusted with the supervision of religious matters and the control of morals and manners. However, it is significant that secular authorities almost never allowed a clerical majority in such bodies, nor allowed them to exercise punitive or coercive functions – the Genevan Consistory was to remain an exception in this regard. Since the lay members were usually coterminous with ruling lay élites, secular control of the church was preserved. Where some Lutheran principalities adopted a consistorial structure, it was more in name and always remained subject to overall princely control. In all these cases, the church had become merely a spiritual arm for carrying out the purposes of the secular state. This was most clearly seen when princes later changed religion, especially within the evangelical tradition, for unsuitable clergy were expelled and a new conformist clergy installed in their place. Even orthodox principalities anxious to introduce religious reform without breaking from the papal church adopted many of these measures in the same 'Marsilian' spirit, the most prominent example of which is found in the 1532 *Kirchenordnung* of the duchy of Cleves.

State control led to several embarrassments for a church which saw its origins in Luther's demand for freedom of belief without secular coercion. In Saxony, Luther quickly fell into dispute with other Lutheran theologians about the interpretation of his doctrines and from 1536 he was embroiled in debate with Johann Agricola about the latter's assertion that the gospel freed people from the Law. Accused of antinomianism and of encouraging libertinism, Agricola was imprisoned in 1539 before managing to escape and flee for his life. These disputes intensified following Luther's death, with the revival of a cult of Saint Luther and the insistence of some of his epigones that his doctrine was immutable and as sacred as Scripture itself. In 1553 the superintendent of Eisleben and former professor of theology at Wittenberg, Georg Major, was accused of error for arguing that good works were not totally without value, and Justus Menius, one of Luther's earliest supporters in Erfurt, who was held to have given Major too much support, also had to flee from his post. In 1559 pastors accused of synergism, the belief that people were not purely passive in their salvation by faith, were hauled from their beds at night by a troop of armed men and imprisoned for their errors. Here, as elsewhere in territories which institutionalised the Reformation, the principles of evangelical reform had been transformed into a system which encouraged religious rigidity and intolerance.

The consequences of the doctrine of the 'two kingdoms' were rather different from Luther's intentions, and we are justified in speaking of a 'bureaucratisation of religious life'. Indeed, some of the leading doctrines of the evangelical movements were compromised or neutralised by these developments, not least the 'priesthood of all believers' and the right of

local communities of believers to elect their own pastors. Luther himself
had, in any case, retreated from the wider implications of such doctrines
early in the 1520s. In 1524 he challenged the right of the community at
Orlamünde to elect Karlstadt as their pastor, largely because he held that
they had made a misguided decision. After first questioning the validity of
the election and accusing Karlstadt of preaching without a proper call, he
then challenged the right of the town council to approve his appointment
in the name of the community, arguing that this was the affair of the
prince and his laws. The previous year Luther had qualified the right of
any Christian to preach or interpret the Word, arguing that this was the
right of the properly trained theologian and the properly called pastor.
The implications of both these changes in his position was to re-establish a
hierarchical professional priesthood in all but name, and from the
beginning Lutherans refused to accept any pastor without a special mark
of ordination. Whether unordained clerics could preach became a point of
dispute within Lutheran churches in the 1530s, and acrimonious debates
over the question went on until the 1550s. Moreover, the dangers of
subjective interpretation that were thought to arise from laypeople
reading the Bible unsupervised for themselves, especially that represented
by Anabaptists who clearly had the better of the Lutherans in the debate
over infant baptism, even meant that direct access to the Word of God
was restricted. The Word was encountered in supervised, controlled form,
through preaching, through the catechism, through 'correctly' annotated
editions or through works of commentary. It is a myth that the Reforma-
tion in any unqualified sense either put the Bible into the hands of the laity
or fostered its reading by the ordinary layperson. Indeed, in all these areas
we are justified in speaking of the 'lost doctrines' of the Reformation.

The view from the grassroots, from the parishes, further complicates
our understanding of how the new state-church worked in practice.
However far-reaching the institutional changes embodied in *Kirchenord-
nungen* and *Kirchenvisitation*, the actual progress of reform was slow and
hesitant. Most Lutheran state-churches adopted a policy of moderate,
gradualist reform whereby the outward form of religious cult changed as
minimally as was conformable with evangelical doctrine. The mass may
have been celebrated in German, but it was still substantially the same text
as the traditional ceremony, the celebrant often using merely a translated
version of the old mass-book, suitably adapted to allow for Lutheran
belief. For a long time, the celebrant continued to wear vestments,
performing the office at the altar with his back to the congregation.
Communion under both kinds would have been a striking innovation, but
the wafer-host was retained, as was the elevation of the host following the
consecration, accompanied by the ringing of bells. In the old religion, the

elevation of the host attested that the bread had become the body of Christ, and was held aloft for the adoration of the congregation; now it was intended merely as a pious practice, a matter of indifference. However, for the traditionally minded, this could blur the difference between old and new, and the Lutheran doctrine of 'consubstantiation' allowed virtually the same awe and reverence to be shown to the host as before. A pastor who dropped a consecrated host or who put consecrated bread away with the unconsecrated aroused scandal and complaints among the congregation. In addition, many sacramental and paraliturgical practices from the old belief could not be so easily removed, such as the churching of women or funeral ceremonies. Confession continued in Lutheran Saxony as a 'pious practice', although the frequent insistence of pastors that parishioners should confess before taking communion set it so close to Catholic usage that the practical difference was negligible, especially when laypeople felt that the secret of the confessional had been breached, or absolution and admittance to communion were refused for 'unrepentance', as sometimes surfaced in complaints against pastors.

The inculcation of the new doctrines was also slow and tentative, spread over many years, and limited by the availability of teachers and adequately trained pastors. Here we find one important reason why the implementation of reform was so hesitant. The 1527 Saxon Visitation revealed that the number of committed evangelical clergy already in place in the rural parishes was not great, and the supply of trained Lutheran pastors was insufficient to meet pastoral needs. The bulk of the parish clergy who were asked to implement religious reform at the grassroots were in fact those members of the old orthodox clergy who showed their willingness to conform. The Visitors were not unaware of the problems that this brought, but were unable to do anything else. Friedrich Myconius, the new superintendent of Gotha, in 1528 held that the interrogation of the old clergy should be conducted intensively enough to prevent them dissembling. Each priest should have to preach trial sermons at the district seat, before the superintendent and local notables, with a double interrogation by the Visitors, followed up by an annual inspection. However, this procedure was too time-consuming and costly, and the plan for an annual visitation proved impracticable. Certainly, most clergy of strong or evident orthodox sympathies had probably been rooted out by 1530, but there was no real means of a rigorous check on the timeserving, the indifferent or the incompetent. In the end, visitations were conducted at intervals of three to five years, but this allowed ample scope for rural religious life to fall well below what was considered ideal. Numerous political upheavals of the first generation of the Reformation and the interleaving of orthodox areas amid the patchwork pattern of evangelical

territories ensured that the process of creating a reformed Lutheran population would be slow, and that many remnants of older popular religion would come to co-exist with the new.

The consequences of the *ius reformandi* were therefore immense and unpredictable. However, the discussion so far has concerned only developments internal to polities adopting reform. The survival of these developments depended on the way in which the 'high politics of reform' were worked out within the empire, where the princes' *ius reformandi* did not become a major issue until 1529. Since 1521 the enforcement of the Edict of Worms had been entrusted to the regency government appointed to run the empire during Charles V's absence. Its implementation depended on who presided in the regency and on the willingness of local authorities to put it into effect. When the Diet of Speyer met in 1529, the scene was set for a confrontation over religion. King Ferdinand, presiding in place of the absent Charles V, had been energetic in applying the Edict of Worms in the territories under his control and was determined to reverse the princes' interpretation of the 1526 Recess. However, he was also distracted by his own state-building ambitions in Eastern Europe, and no less determined to rally German support against the Ottoman Turks in defence of his newly won, but far from secure, kingdoms in Bohemia and Hungary. The emperor, under the influence of conciliatory Erasmian advisers, regarded the matter of religion as the most important item for the Diet, placing the Turkish risk much further down the agenda. By a mischance, the emperor's instructions on how to conduct the Diet's business were delayed, so that Ferdinand was able to substitute his own proposals. Opposition to the Turks was to take first priority, and in order to achieve this he offered what he regarded as a compromise on the religious issue: reaffirmation of the Edict of Worms and preservation of the status quo as of 1529 until a future council of the church. The small group of Lutheran princes reacted strongly, seeing it as less than a compromise, for it would halt the further progress of religious reform in their territories and prevent its spread to territories still orthodox. This would deny what they now regarded as their unassailable *ius reformandi*. However, the Lutherans represented only a tiny fragment of the 'political nation': five princes and fourteen towns. Faced with a majority decision against them, all they could fall back on was a traditional constitutional weapon, a formal 'act of protest'.

The 1529 'Protestation of Speyer' became the basis on which 'Protestantism' evolved, so it is important to reflect on its nature. The essence of the 'protest' was the insistence of a minority in the Diet that it would not be bound by a majority decision, invoking the principle that obedience to the Word of God weighed more heavily than the majority decisions of men. The latter were not legally binding because 'in matters concerning

God's honour and the salvation of our souls, each has the right to stand alone and present his true account before God'. This implicit claim to a right of resistance was the basis on which traditional Protestant historiography was to construct the principle of 'freedom of conscience', held to be one of the central principles of the Reformation. Yet this is a highly selective interpretation of the 'Protestation of Speyer'. Freedom of conscience applied to sovereign authorities, not to the mass of their subjects, for it has to be understood within the context of the *ius reformandi*, which effectively meant the right of a secular ruler to demand that his subjects accept without question the reshaping of the religious life in his territory. Indeed, far from being a principle of individual freedom, it became the basis of a demand for spiritual uniformity. In practice, this freedom meant the right of reforming princes not to be hindered in their desire to change religious cult or institutions, but made no concessions to orthodox consciences. The orthodox were submitted to every pressure to change their belief, in the conviction that this was a false belief which deserved no toleration. The same had occurred to the peasant rebels of 1525, who were denied any right of protest or right of resistance based on the Word of God, and it was to be extended to the treatment of those religious radicals labelled as Anabaptists. The principle that error has no rights and that there is no freedom of conscience for a false belief was applied to many such evangelical dissenters. Where a certain embarrassment about the infringement of the Protestant principle was unavoidable, the fiction was resorted to that Anabaptists were not persecuted because of their belief, but for their disobedience in stubbornly adhering to it when its erroneous nature was pointed out to them. Thus, the practical working of the *ius reformandi* was a one-sided principle of intolerance and selective freedom of religion for sovereign authorities. Some imperial cities sought to uphold the spirit of 'evangelical freedom', most notably Strassburg, but even here this meant only the freedom to hold divergent beliefs in private, but never to disseminate them.

Many of these consequences took time to emerge. Initially the term 'Protestant' was intended as a jeer, and the 1529 Protestation certainly provoked a constitutional and political crisis in the empire. The depth of the crisis is shown by the speed with which an attempt was made to resolve it at the Diet of Augsburg in 1530. In many ways, the circumstances for a settlement of the religious issues were more favourable than at any time in the previous decade. Charles V returned to Germany for the first time since 1521 and, under the influence of moderate Erasmian advisers, was inclined to be conciliatory in the search for a settlement. International politics also favoured reconciliation. Since the Sack of Rome in 1527, the pope was politically dependent on the emperor, peace had been achieved with Francis I in 1529, and the pressure of the Turkish threat lessened

after their withdrawal from the gates of Vienna. Of the three possible means of dealing with the crisis identified by Charles's Spanish adviser Loaysa – negotiation, calling a General Council of the Church, or subduing the Protestants with force – he favoured the first. Indeed, the irony of 1530 was that all sides were willing to be conciliatory. The statement of belief drawn up by Philip Melanchthon and presented by the 'Protestants' was moderate and left scope for reconciliation. Orthodox opinion was presented by Luther's old adversary of the Leipzig Debate, John Eck, in the form of 404 articles of Catholic belief, and there followed two months of negotiation in which agreement was all but reached on at least one central point of dispute, justification by faith. Yet there was an underlying streak of suspicion and intolerance which gradually became dominant. Luther, who was not allowed out of Saxony for his own safety, took up residence in Coburg Castle, the place in Saxony nearest to the Diet, and sought from there to stiffen the resistance of the 'Protestant' negotiators, especially the too-conciliatory Melanchthon. For Luther, the papal church was the church of the Antichrist with which no compromise was possible, and he constantly sought to frustrate attempts at mediation. The emperor developed a distaste for what he saw as the pride and arrogance of the Protestants in claiming exclusive concern for the truth and the Word of God. Some orthodox princes also lost patience and began to demand that the Protestants be treated as obstinate and notorious heretics who should lose all political rights and privileges. In the end, the Diet broke up in discord, with threats of force from both sides.

The 'confession of faith' presented by the 'Protestants' in 1530 became as the Confession of Augsburg a foundation statement of their belief, although it was a very improbable document to serve as the religious credo of what developed into a major Christian denomination. Worked out to meet a particular political need and composed with an eye on doctrinal compromise, it left some crucial issues untouched and others ambiguous or undefined. More to the point, it represented only a minority of evangelical opinion and excluded a wide range of those who responded to the evangelical message. The five princes involved, the elector of Saxony, Landgrave Philip of Hesse, Margrave Casimir of Brandenburg-Ansbach, Wolfgang of Anhalt and Duke Ernest of Braunschweig-Lüneburg, formed a north-central German block of Lutheran princely opinion, but it could hardly be claimed that all of their subjects were enthusiastic supporters for the gospel. Indeed, in 1530 the task of propagating distinctive 'Protestant' views still lay before them, and their assertion of their *ius reformandi* did no more than create large numbers of 'involuntary Protestants'. The fourteen cities which also subscribed to the Confession of Augsburg were predominantly south German, but represented no more than a total of 125,000 inhabitants.

More significantly, the evangelical movement had already been split between its Lutheran and Zwinglian variants, with the major point of disagreement occurring over the interpretation of the eucharist. Following through the consequences of the anti-sacramental thrust of early evangelical belief, many reformers came to an understanding of the eucharist which saw it purely as a symbolical commemoration of Christ's saving death, as a form of thanksgiving in which Christian believers proclaimed themselves to be disciples of Christ. The sacrament of the eucharist thus became merely the Lord's Supper. By a curious inversion of terminology, wholly characteristic of the polemically tinged labelling of the age, those who denied any sacramental quality in the eucharist were called 'Sacramentarians'. Luther, however, was sufficiently traditional and conservative not to follow this theological logic through completely. He rejected the orthodox doctrine of transsubstantiation, whereby the act of priestly consecration made Christ physically present in the species of bread and wine, yet he was unwilling to deny that there was any kind of physical presence of Christ in the sacrament. Where the 'Sacramentarian' position held that Christ was only present by faith in the hearts of believers celebrating the Lord's Supper, Luther continued to insist on a real physical presence in a sacramental form usually described as 'consubstantiation', repudiating as subjectivist the argument based on Christ's presence merely in faith. Luther's position was theologically complex, not to say complicated, and it was difficult to uphold against such as Carlstadt and Zwingli with whom he fell into controversy over the doctrine. Although 'Sacramentarian' opinion was scattered throughout Germany, the weight of Zwinglian views in the south made it a matter of urgency to resolve the disagreement, especially in powerful urban centres such as Ulm and Augsburg, where rival 'Zwinglian' and 'Lutheran' preachers soon began to clash over the understanding of the doctrine. The shrewdest political brain among the princely adherents of Lutheranism, Philip of Hesse, attempted to mediate a reconciliation through a meeting between Luther and Zwingli held at Marburg in 1529, the so-called Marburg Colloquy. Here, however, the two views remained as far apart as ever, and the evangelical movement remained split between its Lutheran and Zwinglian variants. The eucharistic controversy was the most damaging of the multiple doctrinal disagreements that arose within the evangelical movements, and ensured that there would never be any evangelical unity, merely a sectarian proliferation.

The crisis of 1530 was not of long duration, for the reappearance of the Turkish threat, combined with the desire of King Ferdinand to consolidate his position in eastern Europe and the willingness of Charles V to make a further gesture of conciliation, led to a temporary resolution in the so-called Nuremberg Agreement of 1532. This introduced a kind of truce

in the religious issue by incorporating the Protestants into the general peace of the empire, assuring them that although they stood in breach of the Edict of Worms they would be free from attack, and all legal suits against them in the Imperial Chamber as offenders against the laws of the empire would be withdrawn. Once again there was a great deal of goodwill on both sides, however much all parties were aware that the showdown was postponed rather than resolved. The settlement of religious issues among the political nation now proceeded on two fronts, through a series of colloquies throughout the period 1530–44, where theologians strove to resolve doctrinal differences, and through the policy of calling a General Council of the Church. Imperial politics, however, determined that the showdown could be put off almost indefinitely. Charles V soon found himself distracted by other issues – in Italy from 1536, against the Ottoman advance in the Mediterranean, which led to his Algerian campaigns in 1541, and against the king of France in 1542. Ferdinand's attention was taken up with defending his own territories from the Turks from 1532 onwards. The Protestant dissidents thus gained the breathing space afforded by a series of truces similar to that agreed in Nuremberg: at Frankfurt in 1539, Regensburg in 1541 and Speyer in 1544. This pro-tracted stillstand collapsed completely in 1546, when the emperor began to renew demands that imperial law be enforced, and the Protestants fell back on their now solidly entrenched right of resistance.

That the religious disputes in the empire took a generation to come to a clash of arms is testimony to the enormous willingness on all sides to seek compromise and act in a conciliatory fashion. The majority of the 'political nation' probably regarded the religious divisions as a cause of great regret, and were unwilling to accept the fact of a lasting schism. For a generation, there were strong hopes that some means could be found to reconcile differences, and many placed their hopes on a future General Council of the Church. The tragedy of this last and most-favoured solution was that each of the main parties involved gradually came to understand rather different things by it. When a General Council was finally called to meet at Trent in 1545, no one was satisfied with its terms and conditions. Charles V had tried to reach a compromise by having the council meet on Imperial territory, although closer to Rome than to the heartland of Protestantism in north-central Germany. The pope was unhappy with this solution, for he wished it to be independent of Imperial supervision. The German Protestants, and many others who expected it to effect both reconciliation and wide-reaching religious reform, felt it was not a genuinely universal council, but one too dominated by Rome – it was not 'catholic' but 'Roman'. In any case, they would not recognise any council as universal in which they did not participate on an equal footing, and there was a powerful streak in their mentality that regarded the pope

as the Antichrist and the papacy as an irredeemable work of the devil. For those who held such views, no compromise was possible. Luther was the chief voice amongst them, and from 1545 he unleashed a savage and often scurrilous campaign to discredit the new council as a work of the devil. Charles V had also become increasingly unsympathetic to the Protestant viewpoint, declaring at the 1546 Diet of Regensburg that 'reformation' should not mean taking up a new faith. In effect, he began to present the Protestants with the simple choice of returning to orthodoxy or being condemned as heretics.

War in 1546 was, therefore, the result of suspicion and failure of goodwill on both sides. Such suspicion was of long standing, particularly from the evangelical side which feared in 1525 that the Peasants' Revolt might be exploited as an excuse to act with force against evangelical authorities as inciters of rebellion. As early as June 1525 Duke George of Saxony had sought to create an alliance of orthodox princes in the so-called 'Dessau League'. In reaction, Philip of Hesse, who had emerged as the most enterprising and decisive figure among the evangelical princes, hatched a scheme for a confederation of evangelical princes and towns on the model of and as a counterweight to the Swabian League. He tried to set this in motion first in 1526 and again in 1528, when the political hoaxer Otto von Pack revealed an alleged conspiracy of orthodox princes for a surprise attack on evangelical territories. This incipient political paranoia was renewed in 1530, when Philip feared that an orthodox league would definitely be formed to attack the Protestants after the Diet of Augsburg, given plausibility by Charles V assembling troops during the Diet. These troops were actually for use in Spain, but Philip became convinced that the politico-religious conflict would sooner or later end in war. He finally succeeded in creating his evangelical confederation in the Schmalkaldic League of 1531, a defensive alliance of the 'Protestant' princes of 1529, now joined by the counts of Mansfeld and a significantly reduced number of cities. Philip was also instrumental in bringing about the collapse of the Swabian League when its renewal fell due in 1534.

Philip of Hesse was driven by a fateful combination of evangelical commitment and antipathy to the Habsburgs, and his subsequent career was perhaps more of a hindrance than a help to the evangelical cause. However, the political scene in the empire was further complicated by a strong reservoir of anti-Habsburg feeling among orthodox princes. This ensured that there was little response to attempts by King Ferdinand to revive the Swabian League in 1535 and 1547. The absence of the emperor, plus the absence of any reliable force to back up orthodox demands for coercion of the Protestants, probably ensured the peace over religion until the 1540s. Ironically, the freedom that Charles V then won from non-German affairs to turn his mind to the issue of religion in Germany had

the effect of rekindling the long-standing Protestant paranoia about a sudden attack. In 1544 Charles V concluded the Peace of Crépy with Francis I, in which the French king promised to help enforce measures against the Protestants if they refused to accept the decisions of the General Council of the Church. Other princes of the empire, the dukes of Bavaria and Maurice of Saxony, seemed willing to support the emperor's plans as a means of elevating their own status, the latter in particular harbouring ambitions to usurp the electoral office of the Saxon elector, John Frederick. Maurice of Saxony and Margrave Alcibiades of Branden-burg-Culmbach, both Protestant princes who were effectively to support the emperor in the Schmalkaldic War by their neutrality, are examples of how far political considerations had come to overrule religious allegiance at this time.

One final restraint remained to hold the contending parties back from warfare, namely Protestant reluctance to rebel against established authority, mingled with respect for the emperor as head of the empire. Although the question of resistance was raised at the time of the 1530 Diet of Augsburg, the charisma of the imperial office, even where the emperor might be thought to be acting unjustly, counselled only passive disobedience. By 1546, however, Protestant thinking on resistance had undergone a broad change, not least in its attitude towards the emperor. The apparent willingness of Charles V to ally himself with the purposes of the Antichrist-pope, and to act as the tool of papal claims in Germany by supporting a fake general council, meant that he could no longer be regarded as a truly German emperor. Protestants now began to see what might have been evident in 1521 – that Charles was a foreigner, a Spaniard willing to use Spanish forces to subdue Germans on German soil. This was at best a partial insight – they were unaware of the reality of his position as the head of an extended empire, of which Germany was only a part, and whose competing problems and claims for attention he had to balance out as best he could. However, it was sufficient to overcome the last reservations about offering him armed resistance. Their own theology continued to provide some inhibition, to the point where the Protestants of the Schmalkaldic League still felt it necessary to argue that they were acting in self-defence, even if they struck the first blow, as occurred when war broke out in mid 1546. Justus Menius published his *Lesson of Self-defence* (1546) in justification of the Schmalkaldic League's actions, arguing that Catholic war against the Protestants was part of a long-term plot in existence since at least 1530. Alluding to the three alternative solutions that had been proposed to the emperor on that occasion, he claimed that the two peaceful paths, negotiation or a general council, had not seriously been tried; 'negotiation' had meant dictating to the Protestants, a 'general council' had meant the papal-dominated Council of Trent.

The outcome of the Schmalkaldic War of 1546–7 was defeat for the Protestants, first a series of small defeats, then a decisive victory for the emperor at the battle of Mühlberg on 24 April 1547. The Elector John Frederick was captured, Philip of Hesse surrendered two months later. Charles V was finally victorious in Germany, and at the 'armed Diet' of Augsburg in 1548 he was able to dictate peace terms. His proffered settlement of the religious issues was intended to be both conciliatory and purely temporary, an 'Interim' until the Council of Trent had concluded its deliberations. The Augsburg Interim made some concessions to Protestant belief, especially on the doctrine of justification, and Protestant married priests were to be tolerated, while they were also allowed to continue their practice of giving communion under both kinds to the laity. The touchy question of the restoration of church properties seized by Protestants since 1521 was sidestepped. Some Protestant leaders responded, arguing that in certain 'matters of indifference' (*adiaphora*) where fundamental doctrine was not at stake such compromises were permissible. However, in Saxony Maurice, now elector, thought it expedient not to alienate too many of his new subjects in Luther's homeland, issuing his own local version known as the 'Leipzig Interim' which permitted many of the externals of Catholic practice while seeking to retain the core of Protestant doctrine. None of this was sufficient either to heal the wounds of war or to satisfy hardline Protestant opinion. Led by the city of Magdeburg, which became a citadel of irreconcilable Protestantism, many Protestant leaders denounced the Interim as the fair face of the devil and chose to resign their posts rather than be a party to the work of the Antichrist. Magdeburg not only unleashed a bitter propaganda campaign against the Interim, but in refusing to accept it within its walls provoked the ban of the empire and prolonged siege. In justification of its position, the city produced in the 'Magdeburg Confession' the first full-blooded Protestant justification for rebellion and resistance, to be set alongside the 1525 peasant-war tract *To the Assembly of Common Peasantry* as a contribution to the modern theory of revolution.

Magdeburg was isolated in its total resistance to the Imperial settlement of 1548, yet somehow Charles V managed to snatch defeat from the jaws of victory. By 1552 he was embroiled in a renewed religious war, from which the Protestants emerged victorious. A chain of circumstances bound the emperor and weighed him down to defeat. The first session of the Council of Trent turned its face against compromise reform and seemed likely to opt for dogmatic rigidity. Moreover, the pope adjourned the sitting in 1547, to reconvene in Bologna, so removing the figleaf that this was a council held on Imperial soil. This destroyed most of the justification for accepting the Interim as an inadequate but temporary measure pending a more acceptable settlement. Moreover, the Interim's

provisions on cult and doctrine quickly became unworkable without the clergy to carry them out. In territories where its implementation was attempted, such as Württemberg, either the existing clergy refused to co-operate or else it proved impossible to find sufficient orthodox clergy to replace them. Almost a generation had passed since a Catholic clergy last manned the parishes of Protestant territories. The last orthodox incumbents had either died off or been scattered to the winds, for those most firmly in support of the old religion had been ejected. Those who had been willing to compromise with the new religion were hardly the ideal personnel to carry out, even in part, a reliable restoration of the old faith. If any of the old clergy could be found, they were often too infirm to do the job, and new priests were a matter for the future. The Interim was doomed at the grassroots level, and it was as little satisfactory to Catholics as to Protestants.

Charles V was also frustrated by the turn of high politics. He was at loggerheads with his brother Ferdinand, for his essentially Spanish interests clashed with Ferdinand's central and eastern European ambitions. Sibling rivalry had long since crossed the two brothers' attempts to co-ordinate policy. For most of the 1520s and 1530s, Ferdinand had largely been left with the day-to-day task of dealing with the Protestants, yet he was conscious that he did not wield the authority to act decisively on that issue. From being rigidly opposed to heterodoxy, Ferdinand gradually became more pragmatic in his approach, while Charles gradually became more rigid. Political relations between the brothers were strained by Ferdinand's knowledge that Charles paid less attention to the Turkish threat in eastern Europe than elsewhere, culminating in Ferdinand facing the Turks almost alone throughout the 1540s. In 1547 Charles began to entertain the idea that his son Philip should succeed Ferdinand as emperor, at the expense of Ferdinand's son Maximilian, and that henceforth the Imperial dignity should alternate between the Spanish and Austrian houses. This rivalry extended to the Habsburg marriage with Mary Tudor, where Ferdinand wished to enter his son in competition with Philip's suit. Thus Ferdinand showed little enthusiasm for coming to Charles's aid when the German princes rebelled in 1552.

Maurice of Saxony, now secure in his electoral dignity, proved an unreliable ally. He had been able to keep his troops under arms by virtue of being entrusted with the task of subduing Magdeburg's resistance to the Interim. He was thus cynically able to lead a renewed revolt of the Protestant princes under the banner of protecting German princely liberties against the Emperor. The imprisonment of John Frederick of Saxony and Philip of Hesse created Protestant martyrs, especially when Charles seemed to prolong Philip's captivity unnecessarily, while the plan for an alternating succession seemed to undermine the rights of the

electors. Some of these protestations ring hollow, although there was doubtless a fear, especially among north German princes, of a strong imperial monarchy emerging on the back of religious defeat of the Protestant cause. However the ambition of Maurice of Saxony, frustrated in his desire to add the bishoprics of Halberstadt and Magdeburg to his new dignity, was the decisive factor in pushing them into action. The rebels' lack of scruple was reflected in their willingness to intrigue with the king of France to cede imperial territory (the bishoprics of Metz, Toul and Verdun) in return for his support. Charles faced a French invasion in the north-west and princely rebellion in the south, and was forced by the latter to flee across the Alps for safety. Ferdinand struck an agreement with the rebellious princes by the 1522 Treaty of Passau, leaving Charles to stand alone, but the neat lines of a Catholic versus Protestant confrontation were further confused when Margrave Albrecht Alcibiades denounced this betrayal of the 'Protestant cause' and set about his own campaign of plunder and pillage, after which he took service with the emperor! As Charles withdrew from German soil, never to return, Albrecht Alcibiades began a reign of terror in 1553, which produced two separate alliances of Catholic and Protestant princes to oppose his lawlessness. The death of Maurice of Saxony and the defeat and expulsion of the rabid margrave in July 1553 laid the ground for a settlement on the basis of restoring order in the empire. It was to be an order dictated by the particularist interests of victorious princes, for whom confessional allegiance had become a subsidiary matter to establishing a lasting political peace.

By 1554 Ferdinand was no longer willing to accept a secondary role in the empire. Charles had insuperable misgivings about any settlement of religion that either made concessions to the Protestants or involved recognising continued division in religion, but he had become disillu-sioned by his unsuccessful attempts to deal with German problems. Accordingly, he relinquished to Ferdinand the task of finding some settlement of religion at the 1555 Diet of Augsburg. The circumstances under which a peace was agreed have been seen in retrospect as of immense symbolic significance. The emperor had disengaged from Ger-man affairs, and no papal representative was present. The death of Julius III in March 1555, followed by the brief reign of Marcellus II, who died in May, meant that a new pope was unable to work out a policy until the Diet, which met from March to September, was well advanced with its discussions. The new pope, Paul IV, in any case took the rigid line that the papacy alone was competent to resolve religious matters, so that he refused to recognise the final settlement. Charles V took a similar line, and the Peace of Augsburg was a settlement made by the German Estates amongst themselves, independently of the old medieval universalist powers of pope and emperor.

The Peace of Augsburg was also a settlement made from political expediency, in which religious interests were pushed into the background. Protestant princes were certainly anxious to secure a favourable peace that would increase their particularist power and strengthen their role as reforming princes, yet they remained in a minority. The Catholic princes were just as anxious to secure their own interests, and Ferdinand was concerned with the continual threat of the Turks. The negotiations were marked by a complicated process of manœuvring, hampered by the absence of the electors and most major princes – of the leading Protestant princes, only the duke of Württemberg was present in person. A three-way tussle of interests soon emerged: the Protestant electors seeking to have their new control over the church recognised and if possible extended; smaller princes hoping to secure themselves against future imperial action; and cities seeking peace and guarantees for their own insecure position, but whom most princes treated with contempt. Ferdinand was under pressure to make concessions to avert the renewal of war, yet able to use delaying tactics to moderate the demands of the Protestants. Thus, what was achieved at Augsburg in 1555 was not a religious settlement, but only a 'public peace' which was regarded merely as an emergency interim settlement. This provisional character was further accentuated by the fact that Ferdinand had privately made certain concessions, outside the public negotiations. It was no more than a political compromise, badly stitched together and with weaknesses in each of its seams.

The terms of the 1555 Peace of Augsburg were complex and full of implications for the subsequent history of the empire over the next three generations, but seven provisions deserve highlighting. First, all Estates of the empire, both Catholics and the adherents of the Confession of Augsburg, were guaranteed full personal and legal security, and the latter, as a minority, were guaranteed security in the exercise of religious cult and for the ecclesiastical structures and customs 'as are now established or as may in future be established'. Second, secular Estates were allowed freely to choose the confession to which they wished to adhere, and to demand that their subjects also follow it. This recognised princely sovereignty over religion. The operative argument on which this principle was based was *Ubi unus dominus, ibi una sit religio*, ('where there is one ruler, there should be only one religion'), later reformulated into the tag *cuius regio, eius religio*. Third, a right of emigration (*ius emigrandi*), without detriment to property, was allowed for subjects who did not wish to accept the religion of their prince, a principle foreshadowed in 1530 in the demand that Catholic subjects should not be forced to live under a Protestant ruler. Fourth, ecclesiastical principalities were not permitted to turn Protestant, the so-called 'Ecclesiastical Reservation'. Should an ecclesiastical prince wish to change religion, he must give up his rule and office. The discontent

of the Protestant Estates with this provision led to the fifth point, a private concession by Ferdinand, issued as a supplementary document and not part of the Peace of Augsburg, indeed not even printed with the public copies of the settlement. This so-called *Declaratio Ferdinandea* conceded that nobles and cities within an ecclesiastical principality who were already adherents of the Confession of Augsburg could continue to remain so. Sixth, the free and imperial cities were guaranteed the existence of the status quo where both religions already existed side by side, a measure largely designed to protect Catholics in cities re-Catholicised by the 1548 Interim. Finally, secular princes were to retain ecclesiastical property they might have seized up to the Treaty of Passau of 1552, excluding any property immediately subject to the empire.

The implications of this settlement were immense. First, it did not claim to settle any of the religious issues. Indeed, the Peace of Augsburg was somewhat ambiguous, for it both declared itself to be an 'eternal' peace, yet it was to remain in force only until the religious issues were finally settled, either through a 'General Council of the Church', a national assembly of the German church, further colloquies or Imperial negotiations. Thus, it claimed to be merely an enabling framework allowing a proper religious settlement to be worked out and was at best a recognition that no settlement was possible through the use of force. There was another important feature: however much later historians, and especially the nationalist historians of the nineteenth century, were to see the Peace of Augsburg as a breach of old universalist assumptions, it was actually founded on those very assumptions, for it still presupposed that reestablishment of religious unity was the only desirable goal, and that the Holy Roman Empire was so tied up with the church that a unified church in a unified empire was the only feasible solution.

The settlement certainly made concessions of momentous importance. It removed the threat of legal proceedings against religious dissenters and effectively suspended spiritual jurisdiction over Protestants. Thus, adherents of the Confession of Augsburg were no longer subject to the laws of heresy (although they were soon enough to create their own). Yet this was a very limited form of toleration, since it did not extend either to Anabaptists or other religious radicals, nor to the adherents of the 'reformed religion', increasingly labelled as Calvinists. These legal concessions were guaranteed by permitting a restructuring of the Imperial Chamber to allow evangelical members to sit on its benches, and by proclaiming the settlement's legal precedence over all earlier secular and ecclesiastical law. In this sense, it was a massive innovation, recognising that divergence in religion was not *ipso facto* a sign of disloyalty to the empire. Another aspect of the settlement was anomalous: ostensibly it was a traditional agreement between the head of the empire (or his representa-

tive) and the Estates, similar to every imperial Recess. Yet it was also an agreement between two factions defined on narrow confessional lines, the Catholic party and that of the Confession of Augsburg. It simultaneously excluded large sections of evangelical opinion and disguised the minority position of the favoured Protestants, who were accorded parity detached from the question of majority or minority status. The political–constitutional implications were at first sight tidier, for it apparently enshrined the principle of federalism and particularism in the constitution of the empire, and recognised the territorial principality as the normative unit within a tripartite structure of secular princes, ecclesiastical princes and imperial cities. However, there were two anomalies here, the first ecclesiastical, for it created a territorial church for Protestants, alongside an Imperial church (*Reichskirche*) tied to the Catholic ecclesiastical principalities. This Imperial church would continue to provide offices for German princes and so hinder reform through Catholic renewal, except in so far as this might depend on the personalities of individual bishops. The second was the exclusion of other forms of evangelical religion, raising the problem of how to deal with a prince who chose to adhere to the 'reformed religion', technically illegal under the new law of the empire. The Elector Palatine was in this position in 1555, although he dissembled and subscribed to the settlement. However, Calvinist princes remained a destabilising element, especially when they set out to overthrow the settlement completely, and they were eventually to shatter this fragile compromise by the end of the century.

In the meantime, both Protestant and Catholic princes were to take full advantage of what the settlement allowed. Its continuation for the next two and a half generations perhaps depended on the new weapon it provided to the former who now saw their position legalised and who were able to argue from the position of law and right, so setting another legitimating principle alongside the more theological principle of 'God's Word' on which they had relied up to that date. This was a culmination of a series of legal concessions made to them since 1526 in which their religio-political position was gradually built into the imperial constitution. Yet the Peace of Augsburg did not bring lasting peace. It was quickly rejected by strictly orthodox Catholics, and there was regular Catholic encroachment on its provisions. This was matched by Protestant dissimulation, through attempts to breach its provisions wherever possible to further the spread of Protestantism, while invoking them if that served the cause better. The 'Ecclesiastical Reservation', the position of the imperial cities and the *Declaratio Ferdinandea* were all points of future dispute, while the intermediate nobility sought to appropriate the terms of the *cuius regio* principle and to assert their own *ius reformandi*. The story of the tensions endured by this unsatisfactory compromise and its final collapse in 1608

must be told elsewhere. It has been said that it guaranteed thirty years' peace in the empire, but this is deceptive, mistaking for absence of heat the slow simmering of a pot before bubbles break surface and it finally boils over. From the beginning it was merely another anomaly among many in the history of religious reform. It certainly set the seal on the institutionalisation of the reform movements, but the religio-political centaur that was Protestantism had created an equally improbable life-form, the confessional territorial state-church. If Luther was right and the Word did it all, it had indeed moved in mysterious ways.

POLAND, BOHEMIA AND HUNGARY

N OT the least notable successes of the Protestant Reformation of the sixteenth century were scored in the three kingdoms which constituted the eastern frontier-land of the Latin church: Poland, Hungary and Bohemia. The historical interest of the fortunes of the Reformation in these lands is due largely to the peculiar form given to its manifestation east of Germany by those political, social and economic characteristics which distinguished this area from western Europe. For whereas in Germany, the Netherlands, France and Britain we can observe the impact of reformative ideas on societies which were already enjoying the benefits of strong monarchy, where aristocratic separatism had already been largely defeated, where commerce and the towns were increasingly potent, and where society was no longer based on an adscript, service-rendering peasantry, in the countries east of the Elbe, the Böhmer-wald and the Leitha we can watch the impact of the Reformation on a society where kings were weak and noble landlords strong, where medieval Parliaments were still dominant, where the towns were relatively few, small and impotent, and where serfdom was being ever more widely and severely established and legalised. The western Slavs and the Magyars had ever since their admission into Christendom constantly been stimulated by the importation of techniques, art forms, institutions, ideas and persons from the earlier developed societies of Germany, Italy and France, and had given to them a character that was peculiarly Polish or Czech or Magyar. That process of importation and modification was in the sixteenth century applied to the principles and practices of the religious reformers of Wittenberg and Geneva.

The church in Poland was at the beginning of the sixteenth century as ripe for reformation as any in Europe. The good relations between Poland and the papacy which had subsisted from the eleventh to the fourteenth century had become strained by the consistent support given by the papacy to Poland's rival, the Teutonic Knights. Not till 1505, when Julius II counselled the grand master to take the oath of allegiance to Alexander, king of Poland, was this feeling of tension relaxed. The Polish kings, too, had been engaged in a struggle with the papacy over the higher patronage in the Polish church, the outcome of which was that, though the primate, the archbishop of Gniezno, was provided by the curia, the bishops and the

greater abbots were elected on royal recommendation, usually to the damage of the reputation of the church for piety and virtue.

During the conciliar period Polish churchmen had been among the leading exponents of the theory and practice of conciliar sovereignty, had been almost the sole supporters of Hus at Constance, had remained faithful to the Council of Basel to the end, and had learned the habit of criticising the government and practice of the papacy. Reformist senti-ment, particularly in the theological faculty of the university of Cracow, continued throughout the fifteenth century and survived to provide a seed plot for Erasmian ideas in the sixteenth. The prescription by Martin V and the Council of Basel for regular provincial and diocesan synods had borne fruit in Poland: Polish canon law and capitular statutes had been codified and clerical abuses such as drunkenness, concubinage, dancing, dicing, taverning, absenteeism and the forcing of ill-paid vicars to supplement their pittances by engaging in such unsuitable occupations as inn-keeping, had all been revealed and condemned, but not eradicated, by frequent synods. As elsewhere in Europe, the Polish prelates of the early sixteenth century were as likely to be saints and scholars as worldly cynics. The prelates, regular as well as secular, were of noble birth: in 1515 Leo X accepted a request of the Polish Parliament that no one should be admitted as canon or prebendary who was not *ex utroque parente nobilis*, a principle which the Parliament confirmed in 1538, adding abbots and priors to the list. Religious houses, which had greatly increased in number and wealth in the fifteenth century, were infected by the epidemic diseases of worldliness, concern for property, failure of religious enthusiasm, love of ease, and obscurantism. Humanism passed the Polish cloister by. The parish clergy, most of them nominees of the local landlord or town council, were often but indifferent shepherds of souls, ignorant, negligent, poor and socially inferior. Since 1406 the episcopal courts had secured the recognition by the state of their exclusive jurisdiction over the delicts of clerics and offences against clerics, as well as in all matters of marriage, dower, probate, contract, if confirmed by oath, and heresy. This wide and indiscriminate ecclesiastical jurisdiction was particularly galling to the nobles and gentry who, even though the prelates were their brothers and cousins by birth, found the church courts an obstacle to their acquisition of church property, a constant interference with their freedom of conduct and belief, and an insult to their aristocratic independence.

The ecclesiastical position of Poland on the eve of the Reformation differed fundamentally from that of the states of western Christendom in that Poland harboured schism within its borders before ever the New Religion arrived. Not only was the Ruthenian population of Galicia still predominantly orthodox, but the Russian inhabitants of the grand

principality of Lithuania even more firmly still maintained their orthodox faith and Slavonic liturgy. The efforts of the Jagiellon rulers of Poland and Lithuania to establish and support the Greek Catholic Church which had been born of the Union of Florence in 1439 had ultimately failed. Thus during the great struggles of Protestant and Catholic the majority of the people of Lithuania acknowledged the orthodox metropolitan of Kiev as their head and the majority of the Ruthenes the orthodox bishops of Galicia. The Roman Catholic archbishop of Lvov exercised authority over a minority of immigrant mendicants, landlords and burgesses.

The state of religion and the church in Hungary at the beginning of the sixteenth century was similar to that in Poland, though the greater feebleness of the Jagiellon kings of Hungary, Vladislav (Ulászló) and his successor Lewis (Lajos) II, and the consequent greater power of the Hungarian magnates and prelates made the Hungarian church more worldly and political even than the Polish church. Its Angevin kings, Charles Robert and Lewis I, and more recently its native rulers, John Hunyadi and his son Matthias Corvinus, though they had failed to destroy the political and economic power of the nobles, had reduced the Hungarian church to the condition of a department of state, a condition which continued even when Corvinus was succeeded as king by Vladislav 'Very Well' in 1490 and he by his young son Lewis II in 1516. The wearer of the crown of St Stephen claimed to have inherited those apostolic and legatine rights which tradition said had been conferred on the first Hungarian king by Sylvester II in the year 1000. The strong kings of Hungary of their own motion, and the weaker kings at the behest of their all-powerful magnate counsellors, therefore nominated archbishops, bishops, capitular clergy and the abbots and priors of royal foundations, and the pope was content merely, and often belatedly, to confirm the royal appointments. The possession of this royal patronage at a time when the Hungarian monarchy was as weak as it was at the beginning of the sixteenth century meant that the Hungarian prelacy was the private property of the few great families which controlled the Crown and monopolised the church. Few humbly born Wolseys or Cranmers occupied the rich sees of Hungary when they were assailed by Turks and Lutherans. The same families which provided the prelates in person also, together with the other nobles and gentry, nominated as patrons the main body of the secular clergy. Only in the towns, where patronage was owned by the town council, was any part of the Hungarian clergy not the nominees of the nobility. In these circumstances it is not surprising that the church in Hungary showed little of that activating piety, virtue and learning which might have made it able to survive intact the simultaneous impact of Turkish invasion, Protestant incursion and civil war.

Like Sigismund of Poland, King Lewis II had many subjects of the

orthodox faith: in Transylvania, the Vlach shepherds preserved with their Romance language their orthodox faith and institutions and the Slavonic rite; in the Bánát and in the Bácska lived a growing number of South Slavs, chiefly Serbian in speech, but all orthodox in faith and practice.

The position of Bohemia on the eve of the Reformation was unique. Most of its inhabitants accepted a faith and practised a religion which the church condemned as heretical; they were members of the Hussite national church which was undoubtedly schismatical. During the century of its existence Hussitism had established itself as the religion of most of the peasants, farmers, gentry and townsfolk of Bohemia; the Catholic minority was composed largely of magnates and their dependants and of the German-speaking inhabitants of the towns and villages of the frontier districts. The Hussites did not differ from the church profoundly in doctrine or practice. There was in fact only one serious obstacle to reunion: the Hussite claim that the chalice should be given to laymen at the eucharist. Even this they believed was not a doctrinal matter, but merely one of use; they were merely asking the church to forego a custom which had been only comparatively recently introduced and to permit a return to a practice which, as pope and councils had admitted, had been that of Christ and his apostles and of the early church. But the Councils of Constance and Basel (the latter after some havering) and, in 1462, Pope Pius II had pronounced communion of the laity *sub utraque specie* an heretical practice, for the church, as well as the more realistic Utraquists, knew well that something more than liturgical use was in question. The Hussites maintained that the cup for the laity was not merely beneficial and preferable, but *de precepto divino* and therefore necessary for salvation; that is why they gave it to infants immediately after baptism. Therefore what made Utraquism the basis of a schism which lasted from 1415 to 1620 was that the Utraquists denied that the authority of the church as expressed in papal or conciliar decrees could override the authority of the Scriptures. Thus the Czechs had raised the fundamental issue of authority long before Luther challenged the church's right to sell indulgences. The services in the Hussite churches had been greatly simplified; vestments were less ornate, and few sacred pictures and images had survived the iconoclasm of the earlier, more enthusiastic years; the vernacular was largely employed in the pulpit and at the altar; Hus and his fellow martyr Jerome of Prague were commemorated as saints; the Scriptures had been translated and were widely read, and there was a great wealth of hymns in the vernacular which were sung at public and private worship. But while it is true that the pre-Reformation Hussite church had a 'Protestant' appearance, it is also true that doctrinally it was conservative. Despite some radical aberrations in the earlier 'Taborite' period, the Utraquists had continued to accept the teaching of the church about

transubstantiation and all the seven sacraments. Though they had de-
stroyed many crucifixes and many pictures of the Virgin, they did not deny
honour to her or to the saints. They did not deny the efficacy of good
works; their Christology and soteriology were perfectly orthodox; and
they maintained the celibacy of the clergy. The Hussites were divided
about one fundamental question: there was a conservative right wing
which sought for speedy reunion with the church on the sole condition of
the concession of the privilege of communion in both kinds for the laity;
but the majority, both of the clergy and laity, proud of what had been
achieved, believing that they were chosen by God to lead the world back
to the acceptance of a scriptural, uncorrupted, moral and popular
Christianity, proved amid the storms of the sixteenth century fundamen-
tally unwilling to surrender the ecclesiastical and political independence of
what had become in fact a national church.

The Hussite church comprised nearly all those subjects of the Bohemian
king who received the communion in both kinds; its clergy were those who
so administered it. Most of the parish churches were occupied by
Utraquist priests, who were provided with modest salaries but who
received no fees. In the countryside the incumbents were usually the
nominees of the local landlord; in Prague and the other royal towns they
were either elected by their parishioners or nominated by the magistrates.
The ordination of priests still proved a difficult problem; the Hussites were
anxious to maintain the principle of episcopal ordination; they wanted a
canonically consecrated archbishop of their own, but the church had
refused to give them one. The Hussites therefore had to get their
candidates ordained where they could and had had recourse to the
compliance of the archbishops of Venice or other Catholic prelates who
were not over-careful to conform to papal policy in this matter. In default
of an archbishop of Prague (the see remained vacant from 1431 to 1561)
the government of the Hussite church was in the hands of two admini-
strators and a consistory, both nominated by the Estates. Ultimately
sovereignty in the Utraquist church resided in the lay and not exclusively
Utraquist Estates, though important questions of faith and morals were
usually discussed and often decided in occasional assemblies of the clergy
and university masters.

The secular head of this schismatic church was, since 1471, a Catholic
king who had sworn at his election to maintain the 'Compactata' of 1436
which enshrined the liberties of the Hussite community. The Catholic
Jagiellon kings, Vladislav and Lewis, were not zealous to coerce the
Hussites, but they permitted some recovery of the Catholic church; in
particular many of the magnates, who in fact governed the country
between 1471 and 1526, were Catholics or had reverted to Catholicism.
The other strongly Catholic element was the German population of the

border areas and of towns with a predominantly German population. In the first generation of Hussitism the church had been robbed of nearly all its landed property; the estates of the bishoprics and of the monasteries had been seized not only by Hussite lords and gentry and the Hussite towns but also by King Sigismund who had used them to purchase the support of those nobles and towns which remained faithful to him and the church. During the years 1419 to 1434, all monastic houses had been despoiled of their property, most of them had been demolished or burnt to the ground; the monks and nuns had been expelled; many of them had been killed. But during the short period, 1436 to 1439, when the Catholic kings Sigismund and Albert had reigned, and during the long period of Jagiellon rule, something had been done to restore the Catholic church in the country. The chapter of the archiepiscopal see of St Vitus and its administrator were recognised by king and pope as the supreme Catholic authority in the kingdom, though the Catholic administrator was often absent in Catholic Plzeň (Pilsen) or at the king's other court in Buda. A miserable fragment of their former property was restored to cathedral chapters, and half a score monasteries were reconstituted, but the number of the monks and nuns in them was small and they, like the chapters, were kept poor by the unwillingness of the new owners of church lands, Catholic almost as much as Hussite, to surrender their loot.

It is notorious that schism breeds schism. In its earlier years the Hussite movement had been fecund of sects within itself: Taborites, Horebites, 'Orphans', Adamites and 'Pikharti'. But the more conservative, middle-class faction of the 'Praguers' or 'Calixtines' had destroyed or absorbed most of these sectarian groups, except for the last, the 'Unitas Fratrum', which had survived persecution by Catholic and Hussite rulers alike and in the early sixteenth century was, though a small minority of the nation, a vigorous and important element in the national religious life. The Church of the Brethren preserved the most radical and democratic elements in earlier Hussitism: its scriptural theology, its puritanical and evangelical practice, its democratic government by autonomous congregations occasionally collected in general assemblies of the whole communion, where the faith was defined, policy determined, and the 'bishops' or 'seniors', the priests, deacons and deaconesses, and the executive or 'narrow council' were elected. A movement which had been at first one of artisans and small farmers had been steadily broadening its social basis and now counted a number of the well-to-do and influential lords among its members. This development had only become possible because in the last decade of the fifteenth century the Brethren had by a large majority discarded the pacifism, the condemnation of war, capital punishment and service on juries and as magistrates, which they had learnt from Peter Chelčický at their first formation. Under the statesmanlike leadership of

their 'senior', Brother Lukáš, the Church of the Brethren was well prepared to play a vigorous part in the Reformation not only of Bohemia, but of Poland also.

Any student of the beginnings of the Reformation in central Europe must ask the question of how far the ground had been prepared by the advent of Hussites and Hussite ideas to the neighbours of Bohemia. It is fashionable today, particularly among Czech Marxist historians, to ascribe great influence to Hussitism, particularly in Poland, Hungary and Roumania. It was certainly considerable in Germany and northern Hungary, and appreciable in Poland and Moldavia. But when every scrap of evidence has been assembled there seems hardly enough to make it possible to say with assurance that either Poland or Hungary had been so much affected with Hussitism as to make them much more susceptible to Protestant ideas than they would have been had there been no Hussite schism. There is virtually no evidence at all of Hussite influence abroad during the fifty years before the coming of the Reformation.

A more influential factor than the dissemination of Hussitism in facilitating the reception of the Reformation in Poland and Hungary was humanism. It had come to Bohemia as well, but there it was a matter of a few individual men of letters, usually of noble birth, for the Charles University of Prague did not provide a centre for the new learning as did the university of Cracow; nor did the royal court in Prague, for since the union of the Bohemian and Hungarian Crowns in 1490 the king usually kept his court in Buda. This court of Vladislav and Lewis II in Hungary not only had preserved some of the Renaissance culture that had been imported by Matthias Corvinus, but it was in lively contact with Germany, especially after the marriage of Lewis to Mary of Habsburg. Some of the enquiring spirit of German humanists was communicated to Hungary by the visits or residence of German lords, knights and men of letters. Hungarians were already in correspondence with Erasmus. It was much the same in Poland, where the university of Cracow and the court of Sigismund I, and even the cathedral chapter, welcomed and fostered the new learning. German, Swiss and Italian humanists (for example, Buonacorsi) visited Cracow. There were humanist Polish prelates such as Grzegorz of Sanok, archbishop of Lvov, and humanist Polish nobles like Jan Ostroróg. Queen Bona's chaplain, the Italian Franciscan Lismanini, conducted a circle of enquirers in Jan Trzecieski's household; Jakub Uchański, later to be archbishop of Gniezno, was a member of it. Many Polish nobles and many of the German merchants of the Polish towns sent their sons to be educated in German and Italian universities.

Visiting Germans and returning natives early brought news of Luther's doings to Poland and Hungary. Merchants, students, ambassadors, courtiers and travelling booksellers began to spread the exciting news

from Wittenberg and Worms in the districts nearest to Germany and Austria, and by the time Luther was safely ensconced in the Wartburg Lutheran arguments and practices were being repeated from Danzig and Cracow, from Sopron (Ödenburg) and Buda, from mining towns in Slovakia and the German towns of Transylvania. Here and there, particularly in the towns, a parish priest would begin to preach in the vernacular doctrines which smacked of reform. Every such expression of criticism or demand for reform was named 'Lutheran' by the scared and offended prelates and princes, but that does not mean that these reformers of the first decade either deemed themselves or were thought by their hearers to be avowed disciples of Luther. Many preachers and congregations slipped into reformist opinions and practices without realising that they were drifting away from the church and with no conscious desire to identify themselves with the Wittenberg heretic. It was the authorities of state and church who branded every critic with the opprobrious name and thereby made the progress of Lutheranism appear more rapid and widespread than it was, and in so doing probably drove many who would have been content to try to reform the church from within into a schism which they at first abhorred. Certainly for many years in both Hungary and Poland there were many laymen, like the Palatine Tamás Nádasdy and the Polish royal secretary Frycz Modrzewski, and many prelates and parsons, who remained champions of reform in an Erasmian sense without ever leaving the church; and many parishes also, particularly in northern Hungary, which, though openly Lutheran in faith and practice, long paid tithe to and recognised the ecclesiastical authority of the Catholic prelates. There was no catastrophic and deliberate mass secession from the church in either country. What we observe is that here and there a parish priest will begin to use the pulpit more and more for expounding current concepts about the necessity for repentance as well as penance, about venerating rather than worshipping the Virgin and her image, about duty to the living being more important than devotion to dead saints, about fasting not being an end in itself. Such casual and uncoordinated reformist preaching was increasingly accompanied by such innovations in practice as the simplification of vestments, the use of vernacular hymns and the deliberate breach of Friday and Lenten fasts. Typical of this early stage was the situation at Nagyszeben (Hermannstadt) in 1526 as described in a letter written by the chapter of that town to Archbishop László Szalkai of Esztergom:

In the city of Szeben ... a certain schoolmaster has set up a school where the Nicene creed is sung in German as are other cantilenae related to the mass and the divine office.... Ecclesiastical jurisdiction is almost completely destroyed, for almost all spurn the courts, saying that they have secular judges and will not come before priests .... They insult the most holy blessed Virgin Mary, neglect the

exequies of the dead, declare the saying of Hours to be foolish, and want to persuade nuns and other religious women to quit God's service.

The German-inhabited towns of northern and eastern Hungary were natural points of infection with the new *lues teutonica*; their links with Germany were close; they treasured their Germanity for which they found welcome expression in the Germanisation of their religious life. Their citizens, returning from visits to Germany, brought back the products of the Lutheran presses, and the flood of Reformation literature was swelled by the wares of colporteurs, despite the fate of one of them who was burned in 1524. This first martyr of the New Religion in Hungary was the servant of a brother of the reformer Conrad Cordatus who had been a favourite preacher at the Buda court of King Lewis and Queen Mary. Indeed, so little did people at first associate reforming zeal with Lutheran heresy that not only Cordatus, but other German reformers such as Johann Henckel, were high in favour there. Of Henckel the humanist Cracovian physician, John Antony of Košice, wrote in 1526:

> When I was in Hungary I saw no one who was more welcome to the queen, the king and the other optimates of the kingdom, nor anyone who was more ready to express in his sermons at home and abroad on every occasion sheer admiration for the great Erasmus.

Nevertheless, the youthful king was easily induced to give his name to an effort to root out the Lutheran weeds. The legate Borgio persuaded him to order the burning of Lutheran books in 1524, and seems to have been instrumental in inducing the Hungarian Parliament in 1523 to ask the king 'as a Catholic prince, to proceed against all Lutherans and their supporters by capital punishment and forfeiture of all their goods as public heretics and enemies of the most holy Virgin Mary'. Only when the reformers seemed to be provoking social revolt did the state take effective measures, as happened in the mining districts of Slovakia. Queen Mary's favourite preacher, Conrad Cordatus, and Johann Kressling, a parish priest of Buda, were arrested in 1525 for having disseminated Lutheran ideas among the miners of Banská Bystrica (Besztercebánya) and Kremnica (Körmöcbánya), and the next year Borgio reported to the pope that 'the *villani* who work in the copper mines, which the Fuggers operated, have risen in arms. Four thousand of them have attacked the town church and have incited the *villani* of the neighbourhood, chiefly those who are German.' A commission under the famous jurist Verböczi was sent to enquire into the cause of the rising and its leaders were executed as rebels and Lutherans.

In Poland also it needed the coincidence of religious with social and political revolt to induce king and parliament to vigorous action. Here too it was in the most Germanised part of the kingdom that the clash

occurred. By the Treaty of Thorn (Toruń) of 1466, West Prussia had been
ceded by the Teutonic knights to Poland. Its towns – Danzig, Thorn, and
Elbing (Elbląg) – were thoroughly German. From 1518 students and
merchants brought back Lutheran writings which influenced some of the
German clergy of Danzig to champion reform in the parish pulpits. The
leaders were a trio of friars: the Dominican, Jakub Knade, the Franciscan,
Alexander Svenicken and the Carmelite, Matthias Binewald. They were
left undisturbed until 1523 when the number of their adherents had grown
so large that the local bishop, Maciej Drzewicki, had one of the Lutheran
preachers arrested. Such strong pressure was exercised by his adherents
that the bishop was forced to release him after six months. This success
seems to have gone to the heads of the Danzigers who, at the end of 1524,
attacked and destroyed those Danzig churches and monasteries which
they regarded as the centres of opposition to reform. The patrician town
council acted vigorously and arrested the ringleaders. The religious
conflict was by now involved with a social struggle of the craftsmen,
journeymen and urban proletariat against the patrician government of the
merchants and financiers. The excited people demanded the abolition of
taxes and the publication of the financial proceedings of the town council.
On 22 January 1525 the insurgents invaded a meeting of the town
assembly and forced it to enact certain measures of reform. When they
were not immediately enforced the insurgents expelled the council and
installed a new one which at once began to legislate in a Lutheran sense:
Catholic usages were stopped, church property was seized for the city, all
religious houses but two were abolished, reformed pastors were appointed
to the parish churches. The displaced patrician magistrates appealed to
King Sigismund. The king and his council were obviously disturbed by the
social revolt and the danger that Danzig and all West Prussia might be lost
to Germany, and the Polish Parliament urged the king to go in person to
restore the old political and religious order; the West Prussian *Landtag* at
Marienburg (Malborg) concurred. In April of 1526 Sigismund, supported
by an army of Polish nobles, entered Danzig and at once set up a special
court to deal with the heretic rebels. The revolutionary town council was
dismissed; the old ecclesiastical order was re-established; the Lutheran
leaders were arrested and fifteen of them were executed; the former
magistrates were reinstated. In July of the same year Sigismund published
a decree which made death the penalty for apostasy from the church.

The coming of the Reformation to central Europe down to 1526 had
been gradual and limited; it had begun to affect primarily the German
communities, but had hardly yet greatly influenced the native Czechs,
Poles and Magyars, or the nobility of those nations who were later to be
its most effective patrons and supporters. The ensuing rapid development
of central-European Protestantism was given impetus by a series of

political events, the first of which was the revolution in the relations of those hitherto inveterate enemies, Prussia and Poland. Since the conversion of Lithuania at the end of the fourteenth century the Teutonic Order had ceased to have any legitimate function; it had steadily lost ground to Poland and had surrendered West (Royal) Prussia to Casimir IV in 1466. The last grand master, Albrecht of Hohenzollern-Ansbach, had already in 1512 begun preparations for the conversion of East (Ducal) Prussia into a secular duchy. In April 1525 he did fealty to Sigismund I who enfeoffed him as duke; as such Albrecht became a member of the senate, the upper house of the Polish Parliament. Three months later, in July 1525, Albrecht acknowledged himself a Lutheran and renounced his semi-clerical character so that he could marry and make his duchy hereditary in the Hohenzollern family (it was inherited by the elder Brandenburg branch a hundred years later); by the first post-Reformation application of the principle of *cuius regio eius religio*, Albrecht made Lutheranism the state religion of his Prussian duchy. These events were very important for Polish Protestantism, for not only did Albrecht henceforth (he lived until 1568) protect and foster Protestant interests in the Polish senate, but he contributed greatly to the spread of Lutheranism in Poland, by giving hospitality to religious refugees from Poland, and by encouraging the printers of his capital, Königsberg, to provide evangelical literature, not only in German, but also in Polish, in the first instance for his own Polish-speaking subjects in Masuria. A Polish version of Luther's *Shorter Catechism* was published there in 1530; Polish hymn-books and confessions followed; in 1544 he founded a Protestant university at Königsberg.

The political event which profoundly affected the religious history of Hungary and Bohemia was the battle of Mohács, where, on 29 August 1526, Sultan Sulaimān's guns wiped out the Christian army which had tried to obstruct his victorious progress from Belgrade to Buda.[1] Mohács set in train a series of events which profoundly affected the history of King Lewis's two realms. Lewis was himself killed as he fled from the stricken field. His brother-in-law, Ferdinand of Habsburg, became king of Hussite Bohemia; he was also elected by a minority of Hungarian lords and prelates king of Hungary, but not before the majority had elected the *voivode* of Transylvania, the richest of the native magnates, John Zápolyai, rival king. For twenty years Hungary was distracted and devastated by bitter civil war which Ferdinand waged from his base in north-western Hungary and King John and his successor from their stronghold in Transylvania. At the same time Hungary was subjected to a succession of Turkish invasions: the siege of Vienna in 1529 was only the high-water-

mark of a succession of destructive incursions; almost every important town in Hungary, including the archiepiscopal see of Esztergom, was at some time besieged and occupied by the Turks. From 1541 they remained permanently in the land, establishing the pashalik of Buda, and occupying a great triangle of territory, its base on the Sava–Danube line and its apex in southern Slovakia. From that time Hungary was virtually three separate states: Habsburg Hungary in the north-west, the principality of Transylvania in the east, and the pashalik of Buda; the civil war and the war with the Turks continued with only brief intermissions until 1606.

The primary importance of the civil and the Turkish wars in the history of religion in Hungary is that they were a catastrophe for the Hungarian hierarchy. Of the sixteen prelates of the kingdom, seven were killed at Mohács: the two archbishops, László Szalkai of Esztergom and Pál Tomori of Kalocsa, and the bishops of Györ (Raab), Pécs (Fünfkirchen), Csanád, Nagyvárad (Grosswardein) and the titular bishop of Bosnia. The church in Hungary never recovered throughout the sixteenth century. There were long vacancies in many of the sees, partly because the popes were unwilling to alienate the rival kings by confirming the nominations of either of them. There was no archbishop of Esztergom at all from 1573 to 1596, and even before that the primate usually had to reside at Trnava (Nagyszombat) in western Slovakia, because Esztergom was for long periods in the hands of the Turks. The other archbishopric, that of Kalocsa, was almost perpetually in Turkish hands and there was no archbishop confirmed to it between 1528 and 1572. The sees of Csanád, Gyulafehérvár (Karlsburg), and Szerém (Sirmium) were left pastorless for long periods while they suffered occupation by the Infidels. No Catholic bishops resided in the pashalik of Buda, where Protestant preachers, tolerated by the Turks as fellow iconoclasts, met with little Catholic opposition. If sees were not left vacant they often suffered from the almost equally debilitating evil of having two rival claimants appointed by the rival kings, each seeking to attract the revenues while they absented themselves at one or other of the rival courts. Some bishops apostatised to Lutheranism, like Ferenc Thurzó, bishop of Nitra, who in 1534 became a Lutheran and twice married, and András Sbardellati, bishop of Pécs, who in 1568 married a wife and was deprived of his see; Márton Kecseti, nephew of the primate and bishop of Veszprém, and Simon of Erdöd, titular bishop of Zagreb, also became Protestants. Other bishoprics were sometimes made impotent by the conversion of their revenues to help pay for the expense of the holy war, or even completely secularised. In 1528 Ferdinand I pawned the revenues of the see of Györ for 15,000 florins to his treasurer, Johann Hoffmann, from whom they passed into the hands of the lay lord, Pál Bakics, a great sequestrator of church lands though he was totally indifferent in matters of religion. In 1534 King John Zápolyai

sought to retain the support of the rich (Lutheran) magnate, Péter Perényi, by giving him the episcopal revenues of Eger (Erlau). This did not prevent him from going over to Ferdinand five years later.

Mohács not only crippled the Roman church in Hungary, it also gravely hamstrung the monarchy. As Ferdinand I showed in his Bohemian kingdom, he was a patient, shrewd, realistic defender of the Catholic unity of Christendom. But in Hungary he was powerless to save it. The strength of his position there depended on his ability to win or purchase the support of the Magyar nobles whose castles were the key to the military problem. Therefore neither he nor King John could afford to be too nice about the religious proclivities of any potential adherent. They were both Catholics, but neither dared insist on the conformity of his supporters; both were prodigal of the incomes of bishoprics and monasteries, and both were therefore the chief agents in the process of secularisation of ecclesiastical property which was at the same time the ruin of the church and the best guarantee of the survival of Protestantism. Neither Ferdinand nor John made any serious attempt to arrest the spread of Protestantism in Hungary; it is true that Ferdinand summoned a parliament to Pressburg (Bratislava; Pozsony) in 1535 which decreed that all the property of ecclesiastics and seculars unlawfully occupied since 1526 should be restored, and when at Nagyvárad in 1538 a temporary peace was made, one of its clauses decreed a general restitution of church property. The expropriators paid not the slightest attention to either of these decrees.

Between 1526 and the establishment of the Turks permanently in central Hungary in 1541 Lutheranism spread with great rapidity, not merely in the German areas of Slovakia and Transylvania, but also in the more purely Magyar areas, for now the Magyar magnates had seen its spiritual and material attractions and became the active agents of its propagation. Much of the groundwork was prepared by lords who never left the church, but who supported Erasmian scholars, hymn-writers, and translators of the Scriptures whose printed works gave an impetus to Protestantism which neither their authors nor their patrons intended. János Sylvester, whose translation and publication of the New Testament in Magyar was of basic importance to Hungarian Protestantism, was the protégé of the Catholic magnate, Tamás Nádasdy, and apparently himself never broke from the church. But many, in this period perhaps most, of the magnates openly embraced Protestantism. As they exercised unrestricted powers of ecclesiastical patronage in their estates they were able to fill the village churches with Lutheran clergy whose parishioners had no choice but to submit to Protestant doctrine and practices. Protestant magnates thus brought whole counties over to Protestantism. The process

throughout the kingdom was accelerated by the growing number of avowed Lutheran pastors, some of them native Germans, Silesians or Germans from Bohemia, most of them Hungarian Germans, who had often been to Wittenberg for part of their education; some of the most active Lutheran preachers were apostate monks or friars; some were Slovaks. During the period of the civil war the Lutheranisation of the German towns of Slovakia and Siebenbürgen (Transylvania) continued. The town councils of Košice (Kassa; Kaschau), Banská Šťavnica (Schemnitz), Banská Bystrica (Neusohl), Kremnica, Prešov (Eperiesch; Eperjes) and Levoča (Löcse; Leutschau) appointed German Lutheran 'predicants' and schoolmasters; nor did they neglect their Slovak fellow townsmen, for at Šťavnica and at Bystrica there were appointed 'Wendish' preachers, Polish Protestants from Silesia.

Lutheranism also rapidly spread in Transylvania during the reign of John Zápolyai, especially in the 'Saxon' towns. The Transylvanian 'Sachsen' were a privileged and chartered community, and it was their chief magistrate or 'count', the influential Mark Pemfflinger, who from the first encouraged Lutheran preaching. Nagyszeben, Brassó (Kronstadt) and Nagyvárad (Grosswardein) were the earliest Lutheran centres; Johann Honter, who came to Nagyvárad in 1533, became the leader of the Transylvanian Lutherans.

In the purely Magyar part of Hungary Lutheranism was spread by the preachers, many of them Magyars, whom the magnates favoured and maintained in their courts and castles. The most eminent of them was Mátyás Dévai Bíró. Bíró was originally a Catholic priest; but he is recorded as a student at Wittenberg in 1529 and 1530, where he became the friend of Luther and Melanchthon; on his return he was patronised first by Tamás Nádasdy and Ferenc Batthyány, and then by Péter Perényi; he established Lutheranism on the estates of all three lords. A feeble attempt to check his activities was made in 1533; he was arrested and sent to Vienna to be examined by the bishops there, but he escaped to continue his labours henceforward without check. Bíró's reply to the charges made against him at Vienna provides a valuable illustration of Lutheran teaching in Hungary at the time: he admitted to a belief in communion in both kinds for the laity, the doctrine of the remanence of the substance of the bread and wine in the host after its consecration, in salvation *sola fide*, and in the priesthood of all believers, and he disavowed the doctrine of purgatory, complete freedom of man's will, and the practice of extreme unction. Bíro's work amongst the Magyars of the Tisza valley was ably assisted by such fellow missionaries as István Magyari Kiss of Szeged who laboured here and in central Hungary even after the Turkish occupation. Kiss was exceptional in that he seems to have worked independently of the

patronage of the lords and to have approached the peasants directly. By
1547 the centre of Magyar Lutheranism was the chief town of the upper
Tisza, Debrecen.

The disaster of Mohács profoundly affected the course of the religious
history of the kingdom of Bohemia as well as that of Hungary. The
Bohemian Parliament was scared and bribed into electing Lewis's brother-
in-law, Ferdinand of Habsburg, as his successor. Though it was one of the
conditions of his election that he promised to give equal consideration to
the Catholic and Hussite confessions, the Czechs had got for themselves a
king very different from his predecessors. Ferdinand shared the monarchi-
cal policy of his contemporaries and kinsmen on the thrones of western
Europe. He set a high value on religious uniformity and made it his policy
to reconcile his Utraquist subjects with the Church of Rome and to
prevent the establishment of the new sectarians in the kingdom. Ferdi-
nand indeed was no zealot; he was prepared to urge the popes and later the
Council of Trent to concede things which were not essential to the faith,
such as the cup for the laity, the marriage of the clergy, and the
appointment of a Bohemian archbishop, for he realised that Utraquism
was for the moment too strongly established to be eliminated by the
limited powers at his disposal; moreover, Ferdinand was too dependent
on the support of the Czech nobles, most of them Utraquists and the
possessors of church lands, for him to be able to proceed to immediate and
open war with the schismatic Bohemian church. But his policy in respect
of the other non-Catholic sects was different, for here he believed he could
rely on the support of the Utraquists. He tentatively tried to get the
Bohemian and Moravian Parliaments to support a campaign against the
well-established and growing sect of the Bohemian Brethren; but the
Brethren now had sufficient influence amongst the lords, and the executive
force at the disposal of the king and the Parliaments was too small for him
to be able to restrict the growth of the Brethren's community before 1547.
Nor was Ferdinand able to arrest the progress of Lutheranism in Bohemia
and Moravia. This danger was not in itself as serious as it was in Hungary
and Poland, for the Czech subjects of Ferdinand had already achieved
their own reformation of religion. It was therefore predominantly among
the German-speaking Bohemians that Lutheran views and practices
spread. As early as 1520 Lutheran ideas had begun to percolate into the
Teutonic fringe of Bohemia and into those towns which still had a
considerable German-speaking population. During the first twenty years
of Ferdinand's reign we find German Lutheran preachers being inducted
by town councils to parishes in towns in western and northern Bohemia,
such as Pilsen (Plzeň), Asch (Aš), Joachimsthal (Jáchymov), Kaaden
(Kadaň), Aussig (Ústí nad Labem), Elbogen (Loket), and Olmütz (Olo-
mouc) in Moravia. Though the Czech Utraquists would not accept

Lutheran views about salvation by faith alone or about clerical marriage, good relations between Hussites and Lutherans were furthered by Luther's acknowledgment of his own debt to the pioneer work of John Hus, a debt which he amply repaid by the encouragement he gave to the publication of Hus's writings and of Hussite hymn-books, vernacular Bibles and treatises in Germany. Even closer were the friendly relations of the Bohemian Brethren with Luther; after the death of Brother Lukáš in 1528 the succeeding 'seniors' of the Brethren, in particular the courageous and masterful Brother Augusta, expected some sort of union of the two communions. Yet another link between the German and Czech reformations was made by the arrival of German Anabaptists in the Czech lands. By 1526 there were more than a thousand of them settled in southern Moravia. Though Ferdinand made repeated efforts to induce the Moravian Parliament to expel them, these Anabaptist refugees from southern Germany, Switzerland and the Tyrol were too valuable to the Moravian lords as craftsmen, for there were skilled millers, weavers, locksmiths, potters, and even physicians amongst them, for the Diet to execute decrees against them. There was some savage but spasmodic persecution. After the execution of its first leader, Balthasar Hübmaier, in 1528, the Anabaptist colony in southern Moravia was given new life by the arrival of the radical Jakob Hutter from the Tyrol in 1529. From then onwards, though Ferdinand continued to urge the Diet to the enforcement of persecuting measures which achieved occasional and partial success, the Anabaptist community survived, diminished but persistent, under the protection of the local landlords.[1]

In the kingdom of Poland the progress of the Reformation was not disturbed by any great crisis like that of Mohács nor complicated by the existence of a schismatic church such as existed in Bohemia. Under the powerful protection of Duke Albrecht of Prussia, the Lutheranism of the German towns of Royal Prussia, Danzig, Elbing, Thorn and Braunsberg (Braniewo) survived the crusades of 1526. He was the protector of the former Dominican Andrzej Samuel and the preacher Jan Seklucjan, who were spreading the new religion in Poznań (Posen); when criminal proceedings were successfully taken against them in 1542 Duke Albrecht gave them refuge in his capital of Königsberg, where Seklucjan published his Polish-Lutheran Confession and his Polish translation of the four gospels. The province of Great Poland, next-door neighbour to Brandenburg, was the first to suffer the impact of Lutheranism. There some of the great landlords patronised the heretical preachers. In Little Poland too and in Lithuania the new doctrines began to be heard. In Cracow as early

1 Cf. above, pp. 131–3.

as 1528, burgesses and nobles began to listen to and applaud the Reformation sermons of Jakub of Iza. But much of the activity in Cracow was still as Erasmian as Lutheran. The king's secretary, the Alsatian Jost Dietz (Decius) and the castellan of Cracow, Seweryn Boner, maintained a lively correspondence with the humanists of Germany.

King Sigismund I, like Ferdinand I, was anxious to conserve his realm in united fidelity to Rome. But though he detested and feared apostasy he was not blind to the faults of the church or to the justice of much that was alleged by its critics. He roundly rejected the suggestion made to him by John Eck that he should treat the Lutherans as vigorously as Henry VIII was doing in England. Sigismund's young and domineering second wife, Bona of Sforza, gave free play to the radical and dangerous activities of her favourite preacher, Francis Lismanini. But Sigismund could not altogether resist ecclesiastical pressure and therefore reinforced the measures enacted by provincial and diocesan synods against the Lutherans by a series of edicts and statutes. In 1523 he raised the penalty for the importation of heretical books to that of death by burning; in 1534 he ordered all his subjects in heretical universities to return; the death penalty was decreed for disobedience in 1540, but in 1543 it was removed; it is clear that all such edicts were widely disregarded. Only the prelates showed any great zeal against Protestantism and even they were not unanimous: Leonard Słonczewski, bishop of Kamieniec, and Jan Drohojowski, bishop of Kujawia, were at least sympathetic to Lutheranism. On the other hand, the provincial synod of Piotrków in 1542 decreed the strongest inquisitorial measures against heresy. The church courts spasmodically punished such offences as neglect of fasts, the distribution of heretical literature and heretical pronouncements against the doctrines of purgatory, transubstantiation and auricular confession. But, after the suppression of the Danzig revolt, there were no burnings at the behest of the church courts, with the exception that the sixty-year-old Katherina Weigel was burned in 1539, but whether as a Lutheran, Arian or Judaiser is not clear. Thus until Sigismund I's death in 1548 the Reformation in its Lutheran form made steady if unspectacular progress in Poland; it had seduced only a small fraction of the people: some of the magnates favoured it, and reformist ideas were popular amongst the intellectuals and had planted themselves in the towns. The most powerful element in the state, the lesser nobles and gentry, were not yet profoundly influenced by this German and Erastian form of the new religion. But already before 1548 another body of religious thought which would have for them a greater appeal was becoming known in central Europe, the doctrines of John Calvin.

Calvin's name and fame were known in Bohemia from 1536, but his theology and system of church government never secured a great hold in

that country, for the majority of the Czechs were well satisfied with Hussitism and the Bohemian Germans with Lutheranism. There was however a mid-century crisis in the history of the Bohemian Reformation. When the Schmalkaldic War began in Germany in 1546 the Bohemian Parliament, in defiance of Ferdinand, prepared to assist John Frederick of Saxony; his defeat at Mühlberg on 24 April 1547 left the Czech rebels at the mercy of Ferdinand who characteristically used his strong position to weaken the constitutional position of the Diet and the towns, but was careful not to offend the lords on whose support he still had to rely. He did take tentative measures to subordinate the Utraquist church by seeking to control the appointment of its clerical administrators and lay 'defensores'; but he soon prudently returned to his policy of seeking the restoration of religious unity by the incorporation of the Hussites in the Roman church. He also sought to use the opportunity afforded by the abortive rebellion of 1547 to make an effort to get rid of the Unity of Brethren for good. With the support of the Parliament and the conservative Utraquist leaders the edict of 1508 against the 'Pikharti' was renewed in 1547 and the next year a royal edict ordered all Brethren to conform or go into exile. Many of them were driven out and sought refuge in hundreds in Prussia and Moravia. Under the leadership of one of their 'seniors', Jiří Israel, many found a refuge in western Poland, under the protection of Andrzej Górka, Jakub Ostroróg and other Polish lords. By 1551 the Bohemian Brethren were well established; in their centres at Toruń, Poznań, and Leszno they attracted adherents from the Polish *szlachta* and townsfolk. Not all the Brethren left Ferdinand's dominions, for Bohemian magnates, such as the lord of Pernštejn, had no desire to lose valuable serfs and craftsmen and therefore protected the Brethren on their estates from persecution. Nor could the royal edict be enforced in Moravia, whither many of the exiles fled and where the Unity continued to flourish. Ferdinand had further sought to weaken the Unity by arresting its senior bishop, Jan Augusta; he was kept in prison from 1547 to 1564 and at first subjected to savage torture, but despite his absence the Unity survived the years of persecution and after Ferdinand's death flourished again under the leadership of Jan Blahoslav, who as historian, theologian and above all as a translator of the Bible from the original tongues, proved himself to be the greatest leader of the Unity before Comenius.

Ferdinand seized with great skill the opportunities afforded by the Counter-Reformation to solve the religious problem of Bohemia. He brought Peter Canisius from Vienna to establish a Jesuit community in Prague in 1556; he endowed a Jesuit university there in the Clementinum and schools in both Prague and Olomouc. In 1561 Ferdinand also at last persuaded the curia to restore the Catholic archbishopric of Prague in the person of Antonín Prus. Prus laboured hard to complete the reconcilia-

tion of the Hussites, even going so far as to ordain some of their clergy. He
and Ferdinand seemed nearest to success when, on 16 April 1564, they
persuaded Pius IV, in defiance of the decrees of the Council of Trent, to
issue a *breve* permitting the giving of the communion in both kinds to the
laity within Ferdinand's dominions. But it was too late. All but the most
conservative of the Hussites rejected the opportunity of ending the schism;
indeed, in 1567 they got Ferdinand's successor Maximilian II and the
Bohemian Parliament to concur in the formal abolition of the *Compactata*
and to recognise an independent Utraquist church governing itself
'according to the Scriptures'. Ferdinand's policy had failed. Despite all his
efforts, Catholicism in Bohemia and Moravia continued to decline; the
Jesuits had little success; the religious houses, with the exception of those
of the Premonstratensians, withered away, and everywhere not only the
Utraquists but even more the Lutherans continued to win towns and
villages from the old faith. By the end of Maximilian's reign Protestantism
was so well established in Bohemia and Moravia that it needed a disaster
of the magnitude of that of 1620 to uproot it.

Though there was little room for Calvinism in Bohemia, in Poland and
Hungary there was a large and powerful class for which it had a strong
attraction, the native middle and lower nobility. They were already jealous
of the wealth of the Roman church and hostile to the wide jurisdiction of
its courts; on the other hand the German character of Lutheranism made
it unwelcome to Polish and Magyar gentlemen; nor was its doctrinal
conservatism and its subservience to the authority of the secular sovereign
attractive. Calvinism, however, seemed to the landlords to suffer from
none of these defects. It was not German, not even predominantly French.
It was radical, uncompromising, logical and above all republican. Its
denial of any authority, papal or monarchical, over religion had a
powerful appeal to a class which was fighting and winning, in both
countries, a war for the sovereignty of the landholders. But it was above
all the presbyterian government of Calvinistic churches that won the
adherence of the Polish, Lithuanian and Magyar nobles and gentry. A
church in which at every level from the local presbytery to the national
synod the pastors were elected or nominated by the laity, and where the
lay elders were the dominant element, was the precise ecclesiastical
counterpart of what the landlords were in the course of achieving in the
secular government of their county, provincial and national assemblies.[1]

The conversion to Calvinistic Presbyterianism of many of the Polish
lords and gentry was not so much the work of foreign missionaries as an
internal development. The writings of Calvin, Beza, and Bullinger began
to exert their influence in the decade in which Sigismund II Augustus

became king in 1548. Polish laymen and clergy, some of them hitherto only vaguely Erasmian, others already Lutherans, drifted into acceptance of the Genevan theology and ecclesiastical practice. Three men were particularly influential: first, the immensely rich Mikołaj Radziwiłł 'the Black', who brought all his vast estates and innumerable dependants over to Calvinism. The second was Jan Łaski (Johannes à Lasco), perhaps the noblest figure produced by the Polish Reformation. He was of noble birth, the nephew of a former primate. He had gone first to Ducal Prussia where he had organised the Protestant church; but his doubts about the validity of Lutheran theology had compelled his departure. For three years Łaski was in London, in the latter part of Edward VI's reign; there he formed and led a congregation of foreign Protestants. The accession of Mary compelled the resumption of his travels, but his refusal to accept the Augsburg doctrine of the eucharist caused him to be driven out of Copenhagen, Rostock, Wismar, Lübeck, and Hamburg. A meeting with Calvin in Frankfurt seems to have completed his conversion. In 1557 he returned to Poland. For the remaining three years of his life he worked with the support of Lismanini and Radziwiłł for the establishment of a national Polish evangelical church; but neither the Polish Lutherans nor the Bohemian Brethren's church in Poland would accept his theology or his organisation. The third builder of the Polish Calvinistic community was Feliks Krzyżak or Cruciger. He was first a Lutheran priest in Secemin and in 1554 the Lutherans of Little Poland elected him superintendent of the Lutheran churches of that province. But the clerical character of this church government was so little pleasing to the lords that in the same year at a synod in Pińczów it was decided that a number of nobles, distinguished by their virtue and wisdom as the *Praecipua Membra Ecclesiae*, should be elected to support and defend the clerical 'seniors', who were instructed to employ the advice of the nobles in their decisions. By 1557 this Evangelical Church of Little Poland had acquired a fully developed system of Presbyterianism. Though in theory burgesses and peasants were eligible for the presbytery, in fact the *szlachta* dominated the church as elders and patrons. Calvinism became the dominant element in the Polish province of Little Poland and in Lithuania; in Great Poland and Prussia Lutheranism and the Bohemian Brethren retained their supremacy.

Until the middle of the sixteenth century the Lutherans had had almost a clear field in Hungary. We do indeed hear of Zwinglians or 'Sacramentarians' in Nagyszeben in 1530 and at Debrecen after 1540; but it seems probable that they were in fact Anabaptists expelled from Zwinglian Zurich. In 1533 the chief magistrates and judges of the thirteen Spiš (Zips) towns were ordered to take measures against certain Anabaptists there; in 1535 they were refused a settlement in Péter Perényi's town of Sárospatak. But they were no considerable element in Hungarian Protestantism.

Calvinism, on the other hand, achieved a success as rapid and striking in Hungary as it was having in Poland. As in Poland it was welcomed by the native lords, who had little sympathy with the German burgesses and their German religion and who welcomed the possibility of lay domination which Presbyterianism afforded. In Hungary, too, Calvinism was propagated not by missionaries but by native converts. Mátyás Bíró, as a good Magyar, drifted from Lutheranism into Calvinism and took the largely Magyar town of Debrecen with him; after 1560 it was the 'Hungarian Geneva'. Bíró was helped in his Calvinisation of the Magyar lords and lands of the Tisza valley and Upper Hungary by the priest Lénárt Heckel and his patron Péter Petrovics. The apostle and organiser of the Calvinist community in north-eastern Hungary was Péter Melius Juhász, for twenty-five years bishop in Debrecen. He was a mighty polemist, and it was largely due to him that the confession of faith of 1561, the *Confessio Catholica* of the Magyar Calvinists, was strictly Genevan in its doctrines of the Lord's Supper and predestination. In Transylvania the progress of the Reformation was arrested as long as the powerful and notorious Fráter György, bishop of Nagyvárad, was master of King John Zápolyai's widow Isabella and infant son John Sigismund. But with Fráter György's murder in 1551 the floodgates were opened again, and among the Magyar lords of Transylvania Calvinism spread rapidly. In 1563 the Transylvanian Calvinists produced their Confession at Kolozsvár (Klausenburg, Cluj). The Reformation in Transylvania from 1551 to 1571 was in no way hindered by the rulers of that country. John Zápolyai's widow Isabella lived on the revenues of the secularised bishoprics of Nagyvárad and Gyulafehérvár; the secularisation of church property was completed by the Transylvanian Diet in 1557; the monasteries and the monks disappeared. Indeed, had it not been for the election of a Catholic prince, Stephen Báthory, in 1571, the Roman church in Transylvania might have disappeared. Meantime during the principate of his predecessor John Sigismund (1559–71) the Protestants had a free hand; the Diet of 1564 in its fifth article declared:

The Kolozsvár Magyar believers [i.e. the Calvinists] and the Szeben Saxons [i.e. the Lutherans] having fallen into disputes, for the peace of the realm it is permitted to both factions to practise their religion, and the preacher in any town or village shall not compel its inhabitants to conform to his religion, but the town or village is free, whatever the religion of its preacher, if he does not please them, to expel him.

This local religious autonomy probably meant in practice that the will of the local landlord prevailed.

   This famous 'Transylvanian toleration' was in fact not due to the victory of a principle quite alien to the sixteenth century, but merely the

result of the weakness of the monarchy and the equality of power of the Lutheran-German towns and the Magyar-Calvinist lords. But this peculiar tolerance in Poland and Transylvania provided a refuge and a sphere of activity for that form of Protestantism which theologically and socially was its logical ultimate form, namely Socinianism.

There had been occasional accusations of Anti-Trinitarian error in the welter of theological speculation in Bohemia during the fourth and fifth decades of the sixteenth century, but no persistent body of such heresy appeared anywhere until the arrival of a number of expatriate Italian theologians who found in Poland and Transylvania a final refuge after Calvin had made even Geneva too hot for them. It is one of the most curious phenomena of the Reformation that its most extreme theological and social manifestation should have originated in the two countries, Spain and Italy, where otherwise it was least successful. But it is not really surprising that the native country of humanism and rationalism, of Lorenzo Valla and Savonarola, should have given birth to and expelled a score or so of extreme eccentrics who did not stop in their examination of the bases of the faith before they came to a criticism of its fundamental doctrines of the Atonement and the Trinity. These men, Giovanni Gentile, Lelio Sozzini and his nephew Fausto Sozzini, Francesco Stancaro, Giovanni Alciati, Bernado Ochino and Giorgio Blandrata, all of them moved by the potent combination of piety and learning, had come under the influence successively of Erasmus's disturbing textual criticism of the New Testament, of Calvin's theological radicalism and of the revived knowledge of Neoplatonic philosophy and of patristic Christological controversy. Like Arius and Nestorius they had been convinced that Athanasius had misled the church into constructing an unnecessary, irrational and erroneous mystery of the Trinity. Erasmus's deliberate omission of the 'comma of John' from his first two editions of the New Testament had led them to question the scriptural authority for the orthodox doctrine.

The Anti-Trinitarian movement in Poland may be said to have begun with the appointment of Stancaro to the chair of Hebrew in Cracow in 1549. During the next twenty-five years his fellow countrymen, the elder Sozzini, Gentile, Alciati, Pauli, Ochino, Blandrata and finally Fausto Sozzini all found a refuge, more or less permanent, in Poland. They were welcomed by the more theologically adventurous leaders, lay or clerical, of the Calvinist communities in Little Poland and Lithuania. But the publication of Stancaro's Nestorian treatise *De Trinitate et Mediatore Nostro Jesu Christo* in 1559, and a little later of Ochino's *Dialogus* and Gentile's *Antidota*, alarmed the more conservative majority of the Polish Calvinists so far that a breach was inevitable. In 1562 the Anti-Trinitarians broke with the Calvinistic church of Little Poland and set up their own 'Lesser Community'. To it adhered a growing number of native

Poles: Calvinistic clergy, many of them originally weavers, spinners, or artisans of other crafts, such as Piotr of Goniądz, Grzegorz Paweł of Brzeziny, Walenty Krawiec and Marcin Czechowic. It seems that the dominance of the *szlachta* in the Reformed Church was often the occasion for the secession of its ministers to the Arians. The new sect attracted many and retained the loyalty of a few of the great lords and gentry, but its basis was, like that of the Anabaptists, the craftsmen and shopkeepers who saw in it the only hope of realising those dreams of freedom from social oppression of which they had been disappointed by Lutherans and Calvinists alike. The Polish Anti-Trinitarians consciously shared many of the social and moral ideals of Anabaptists to whom they sent a mission of enquiry in Moravia; in their synods from 1562 onwards they repeatedly discussed the lawfulness of bearing arms or of taking life and of serving as magistrates or jurymen. Individual clergymen amongst them from time to time condemned the lordship of man over man, the ownership of hereditary property, and preached that all men, noble and cleric as well as peasant and artisan, should live by the labour of their own hands.

   Sigismund Augustus, together with the largely Protestant Diet and the Catholic hierarchy, made half-hearted efforts to rid Poland of these latest heretics. In 1564 some of the Italian heresiarchs were compelled for a time to leave the country. The only other country where the authority of the state was so weak that they might expect to find some freedom was Transylvania. Stancaro and Blandrata had already visited it and sown the seeds of Anti-Trinitarianism amongst the Calvinists of eastern Hungary. In 1563 Blandrata became body-surgeon and privy councillor to the prince of Transylvania, Zápolyai's son John Sigismund. He and others from Poland worked so persuasively amongst the Transylvanian Magyars and Szekels that they converted many to their heresies, including John Sigismund himself and some of his court and clergy. But the most important convert was the 'bishop' of the 'Kolozsvár', or Calvinistic Transylvanian community, Ferenc Dávid. The publication of his *De Falsa et vera Unius Dei Patris, Filii et Sancti Spiritus Cognitione* in 1567 marked Dávid's full secession to Anti-Trinitarianism. In the same year the Transylvanian Diet at Torda allowed free preaching to all sects. In 1568, when the prince openly adhered, the Great Church at Kolozsvár became Dávid's seat as 'bishop' of the Transylvanian Arian church. As in Poland, there was also in Transylvania much bitter controversy among the Anti-Trinitarians; in 1579 both Blandrata and Fausto Sozzini condemned Dávid for his extreme Unitarianism, and Dávid spent the last months of his life in prison. Nevertheless the Transylvanian Anti-Trinitarian church survived these storms to endure as a living community to our own day.

   The half-century which followed the appearance of Luther's Reformation treatises saw an almost continual growth of Protestantism in central

Europe. Thereafter the tide began to turn. Tolerant rulers died and gave place to champions of the Catholic church: in 1571 the Arian John Sigismund was succeeded as prince of Transylvania by the Catholic Stephen Báthory who four years later was elected king of Poland; in 1576 the tolerant Maximilian II was succeeded as ruler of Austria, Bohemia and Hungary by the Spanish-educated Rudolf II. The new generation of rulers found their realms divided between the two faiths. In Poland the great majority of the people was still Catholic, but there were four organised dissident churches: the Lutherans, now based on the acceptance of the Revised Augsburg Confession of 1551; the Calvinists, united in the Helvetic Confession of 1568; the Bohemian Brethren in Great Poland; and the Unitarian community, still not agreed on its theology or permanently organised. In that fraction of Hungary which the Habsburg king ruled, the Catholic church was in 1576 still prostrate despite the efforts of Archbishops Oláh (1553–68) and Verancsics (1569–73) to revive it by the introduction of the Tridentine programme and an unsuccessful attempt to establish the Jesuits in Trnava. The Lutherans of the mining towns, German and Slovak, had developed their own organisation out of the *Confessio Pentapolitana* of 1549. In Transylvania and the adjacent counties, ruled, usually under Turkish suzerainty, by the princes of the Zápolyai and Báthory families, the three Protestant churches, Lutheran, Calvinist and Unitarian, were organised and dominant; the Catholic church in Transylvania seemed to be perishing of neglect until Báthory interfered to preserve the remnant from extinction. The Calvinists and Unitarians each also had an organisation in Turkish Hungary, where Catholicism was barely preserved by the devoted labours of the Franciscans in the sixteenth century and of the Jesuits in the seventeenth. In Bohemia and Moravia during the reign of Maximilian II the sects had consolidated their supremacy, not only the majority church of the Utraquists and the growing Lutheran community, but even the still harassed Unity of Brethren who, especially in Moravia, were increasing in numbers and influence.

The achievements of the forces of the Counter-Reformation in central Europe had not been great before 1576. Besides archbishops Oláh and Verancsics in Esztergom, the archbishop of Prague, Antonín Prus, and his colleague in Olomouc, Bishop Vilém Prusinovský, and in Poland Archbishop Uchański and his much abler and more effective colleague, Cardinal Hosius, bishop of Warmia (Ermland), had all embarked on the Augean task of reforming their own church; Jesuit settlements, seminaries and schools had been established in Slovakia, at Prague and Olomouc, and in Poland and Lithuania. Though, except in Poland, their success had hitherto been small, yet the Protestants were sufficiently alarmed to try to resolve their sectarian differences. In Bohemia in 1575 the Utraquists,

Lutherans and Brethren agreed on a common confession of faith, the famous *Confessio Bohemica*, which, though it did not create a united Bohemian Protestant church, did help them to present a united front to Rudolf II and his Counter-Reformation. In Poland the Calvinists and the Bohemian Brethren had made an agreement of mutual recognition at Koźminek in 1555, but it was not until 1570 that the imminent demise of the sonless Sigismund II compelled the Polish Protestants to take precautions against the accession of a more militantly Catholic king. At Sandomierz the Calvinists, Lutherans and Polish Bohemian Brethren made a *Consensus Mutuus*, having with the greatest difficulty agreed on a eucharistic formula whose involved vagueness alone made it generally acceptable. The Sandomierz agreement provided for occasional general synods of the three sects, but it fell far short of being an organic union. When, in January 1573, it seemed certain that Henry of Anjou would become king of Poland, the Polish Protestants, in collaboration with some of the Catholics drew up at Warsaw a 'Confederation', a charter of religious liberty. Andrzej Firlej is said to have presented it to Anjou in Paris with the words, 'Si non jurabis, non regnabis.' In the event neither the Sandomierz *Consensus* nor the Warsaw 'Confederation' proved effective to save Polish Protestantism from the full flood of the Catholic counter-attack. It was never in Poland, as it was in Bohemia, so strongly based on broad national support that it needed military disaster to destroy it, nor did Polish Protestantism, unlike Hungarian Protestantism, have the advantage of a continually weak and divided monarchy. It is ironical, but nevertheless in the logic of history, that the only part of central Europe in which Protestantism survived the Counter-Reformation was in the shattered kingdom of Hungary.

CHAPTER IX

THE REFORMATION IN FRANCE, 1515–1559

FOR A full measure of the Protestant Reformation in France in the first half of the sixteenth century, we must look beyond the insurgence itself to the closing settlements. In their own way they marked a stage. After so much feuding and fanatic bigotry, the new men at the forefront of affairs came willingly or unwillingly to temper the righteousness of their cause with mingled feelings of chagrin, exhaustion, and uneasy compromise. The dynasty of Valois-Angoulême had faded and disappeared, leaving Henry of Navarre to claim the rich patrimony of the Crown. In a jaunty mood of elation he may well have said that Paris was worth a mass. Yet, when on 25 July 1593 before the archbishop of Bourges in the great church of Saint-Denis he abjured the tenets of his Protestant upbringing, the moment of truth and disillusionment was patently clear: France remained staunchly Catholic. He had to recognise that profound reality before validating his inheritance. For all the show of undeniable pugnacity, the Protestant cause could not reach beyond the posture of a minority. Its stance and conduct betrayed the very attitudes of a minority. All the more striking, therefore, was its success in carving out a niche of recognition in the structured life of France. Here lay one of the great dramas of early modern Europe and summed up a host of novelties, crises of conscience, deeply felt desires for reform as much by those who followed the path of revolt as by those who remained in or returned to the doctrines and traditions of Catholicism. The Reformation in the early sixteenth century presented a predicament at the heart of France.

The special import of that predicament became increasingly manifest in the final settlements imposed by the Protestant minority in the Edict of Nantes (April 1598). Imposed indeed, for the *parlement* of Paris finally bowed in submission (25 February 1599) only after strict injunctions from the king; and other *parlements* followed, passing the edict but refusing to recognise the Protestant religion. Across the provinces of France, they expressed an enduring loyalty to established doctrines mingled with a pervasive sense of insecurity. The edict proved to be not so much an affirmation of toleration, more a recipe for defence in which the Protestants could encapsulate their cause. As Lucien Febvre explained in his study of the fertile but wayward genius of François Rabelais,[1] the

---

1 *Le Problème de l'incroyance au XVIe siècle: la religion de Rabelais* (1942).

intellectual furniture of the sixteenth century was such that innovation could but replace one set of beliefs with another; it was a century when men wanted passionately to believe. Few could contemplate a society without the all-embracing unity of a single religion. That explains a great deal about the Edict of Nantes, for it conveyed privileges and consolidated positions captured in the preceding decades. It also raised hedges of protection and here and there even fortress towns. In the end, this high point of Protestant achievement hardly lasted a century.

At the same time, we must observe that the Reformation in France shared a common purpose with other religious movements. It is all too easy to explain them by their conflicts, but their similarities were often striking. Opponents grew up, lived, studied, were formed in a similar environment. Thus, the emergence of the rigorous doctrines and mission- ary zeal of Calvinism (Jean Calvin published his *Institutio religionis Christianae* in Latin in 1536 and in French in 1541) accompanied the founding and rapid expansion of the Society of Jesus (the first vows in 1534 and full papal approval in 1540). Both at first rejected much of the behaviour and national constraints of their predecessors. Then the closing decrees of the Council of Trent (1543–63) launched the Counter-Reforma- tion and guided generations in the Catholic faith. These various forms of extremism in counterpoint indicated the scale of a widening struggle for spirituality in the first half of the sixteenth century.

Such introductory points of view would not be complete without setting the religious movements in their political and social context. The church in France did not, and indeed could not, live apart from the state. Protestant reform in adopting an increasingly radical posture presented a double problem: on the one hand, the heresy of doctrine came under ecclesiastical jurisdiction; while on the other hand, the claims of religious minorities to live as enclaves and carry weapons against the king became heresies of state and drew down the full weight of royal justice. In the early sixteenth century, the monarchy in France grew rapidly in competence as it developed and created those institutions which embodied the expansion typical of early dynastic states. Protestant reform was but one of the robust problems with which it had to contend. The population increased and so there were more people to govern. The Frenchmen who lived with the Edict of Nantes could have been double the number at the time of the Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges (1438)! In the mid sixteenth century, price- inflation gathered momentum disrupting traditional systems of values and eroding fixed incomes. Not least those of the monarchy, for royal revenues stretched taut to pay for costly wars first in Italy, then against the Emperor Charles V. These entailed large tax-levies, borrowing, and debt creation, all requiring exceptional fiscal ingenuity. The discovery of the

oceans stimulated commercial activity on the trade routes of the Atlantic and this altered the bias and location of the economy of France in which landed (and so customary) interests still predominated. By no means least, Francis I was a child of the Renaissance and enthusiastically patronised the mundane styles which suffused the visual arts. In so doing, he seemed to give encouragement to new ideas percolating through the recently perfected discovery – by divine inspiration so Gargantua wrote to Pantagruel – of printing. The early reformers were above all publicists and the printing-press became an apt instrument for radical opinion. Few eras in the history of France have been subject to such a broad concomitance of fundamental change. In this climate of transformation and adjustment, Protestant reform challenged not only immemorial doctrines and practices, but also the axiom in expanding Europe that government should hold to one king, one law, one faith. Such considerations indicate both the complexity of the problem and the capacity of the Reformation to persist and prevail in the face of determined opposition.

In the reigns of Francis I (1515–47) and his son Henry II (1547–59) these issues emerged and sharpened. In the first period until 1525–34, spiritual and intellectual enquiry went forward in relative peace. There were differences of opinion but as yet no serious rifts in society. It was thus full of nuances, coloured by the interplay of ideas and personalities but lacking clear definition. As allegiances began to falter, people grew to maturity knowing only a sundered Christendom, riven by hardened opinions and divided in loyalties. In the following discussion, the chronicle of reform takes shape as a triptych of three main panels: first, the developing relationship between church and State in France at a time when, as elsewhere in Europe, the monarchy was purposefully set on enlarging central authority and dominating the resources of the realm; second, the early influence of the Reformation from the revolt of Luther which merged into an *entente* between humanists and reformers sharing liberal attitudes and enquiry; third, the aggravation of disputes between radicals and reactionaries both on the left and on the right, when the monarchy found itself confronting now one, now the other, a double menace of heresy and civil insurrection.

First, then, how did the relationship between church and state develop? At the accession of Francis I, the Church of France – the Gallican church as it was often called – enjoyed an individual character and relative independence. This derived particularly from the Pragmatic Sanction settled at a national synod in Bourges (7 July 1438), which embodied claims set out in the decrees of the Council of Basel. These 'ancient liberties and freedoms of the Church of France', as the Paris *parlement* asserted in 1461, gave a

semblance of isolation, and formed a hedge against both the resurgence of papal authority in doctrine and the political reverses suffered by Rome and the Papal States.

The accession of Francis I, however, opened a new perspective. Flushed with victory from his memorable two-day battle against the Swiss and Milanese (13–14 September 1515) at Marignano (Melegnano, 16 km. south-east of Milan), the young king promptly made the most of his success. He opened talks in Bologna with Pope Leo X. Both had a prime objective – to abolish as far as possible the principle of elective office. That settled, there remained the sharing of spoils. The Concordat (or papal treaty) signed in Rome on 13 August 1516 and quickly approved by the cardinals in Lateran Council (19 December 1516) offered advantages to both parties. Francis I recognised that papal authority was no longer subject to ecumenical councils and agreed that annates (the first year's revenue from an ecclesiastical benefice) should once more be sent to the Camera Apostolica in Rome. In return, the monarchy had the right to levy tithes on the clergy; and more important still, to nominate all archbishops, bishops, abbots and priors in the kingdom, an uncertain number but perhaps some 1,600 preferments. Marino Giustiniano, the Venetian ambassador, writing in 1535, said it gave the power to nominate 10 archbishops, 83 bishops, 527 abbés, and countless priors and canons. At a stroke and a year before Martin Luther nailed up his protest at Wittenberg, Francis found his own solution to the perennial problem of *regnum et sacerdotium*, and it lasted until the Revolution (1789). Unlike subsequent treaties, the Concordat took for granted that the religion of France was Catholic. Francis I was careful to consolidate this position. A French church was built in Rome, San Luigi dei Francesi (1518–89), and it became a scene of prestigious national ceremonies on the day of Saint Louis. The powerful but controversial d'Este family came to supervise French interests with the *Protection de France* at the Holy See. Thus, the old national identity of the Church of France was writ large into a royal Gallicanism and this formed in advance policies of the monarchy towards Protestant reform.

The Concordat marked a stage in the growth-path of royal power, in settling the question of who should rule in France. Some observers claim that little changed, but that would be, as in many historical debates, a facile oversight. Nomination rather than election to high ecclesiastical office was in keeping with the venality of office-holding in early modern France, even if old elective practices died hard. Indeed, the archbishop of Lyons raised the issue in his opening speech to the Estates General of 1576, insisting that offices should be elective, not venal. Gradually, the new procedures made their mark. As prelates came and went, so pools of influence were created. The adherence of the higher clergy to royal

interests brought increasing political advantage to the Crown. In the centuries which followed, it is remarkable how many cardinals and prelates sidled along the corridors of ministerial power or went on embassies abroad; and above all how lightly they wore their clerical hats. Before entering on preferment, they took a strict oath of fidelity to the king, sworn in the great Chambre des Comptes. At first, the disputes over elections in cathedral chapters and monastic houses dragged on, but gradually the dust of opposition settled. Where monastic vows were required, it became customary to divide the duties: the nominee to office carried out the administration and pocketed the emoluments *en commende*, while the spiritual life of the house went on under a *prieur claustral* or *abbé en second*.

The Concordat had another political dimension. Some prelates sat in the *parlements*, often with the right to vote. Thus, in Paris, the *conseillers* included the archbishop of Paris, the abbé de Cluny (called the *abbé des abbés*), and other spiritual lords; in Toulouse, the archbishop of Toulouse and the abbé de Saint-Sernin; in Dijon, the bishops of Dijon, Autun, Chalon-sur-Saône, the abbés of Cîteaux and Saint-Bénigne; in Rouen the archbishop of Rouen, the abbé of Saint-Ouen, and the bishop of Sées. *Parlements* were final courts of appeal with, it should be noted, the right to register (and delay) royal decrees. No doubt the courts were prompt in furthering their corporative interests but the presence of prelates gave more strings to royal influence. Certainly, the *conseillers* were adamant in opposing the clauses relating to appointments to vacant benefices. Leo X issued a bull (15 June 1518) and Francis I sent peremptory *lettres de jussion*. Paris bowed in submission on 22 March 1518; and other *parlements* followed: Toulouse on 22 November 1518, Bordeaux on 1 April 1519, but Dijon not until 12 March 1523.

The train of events tended to blur the distinction between royal and ecclesiastical justice. The *parlements* as courts of appeal had ultimate cognizance in cases of heresy and their punishment. In 1527, in order to allay opposition from rival jurisdictions, Francis I transferred ecclesiastical cases to the royal *Conseil*, but this came at a special time when he was bent on recovering his authority after a damaging captivity in Spain.[1] Nevertheless, in the growing definition of different forms of authority and obligation, the monarchy remained stubbornly opposed to admitting the final decrees of the Council of Trent (December 1563). The *avocat-général* of the Paris *parlement*, Servien, later declared (1616) that it was not a council but a convocation, and that in the 'legality' of France, while matters relating to Catholic doctrine were welcome, foreign political interference was not. Royal authority and Gallicanism, in effect, faced a

1 See pp. 232, 244–5.

double menace – Protestant reform at home and supra-national ultramon-
tanism from Rome.

The church emerged from the middle ages reputedly the richest institu-
tion in France. In giving the king leverage with the clergy, the Concordat
had important fiscal implications, and at all levels. In the parishes, the *curé*
had his part in assessing the *taille* (the heavy and arbitrary property tax),
making announcements from the pulpit and adjudicating disputes among
his flock. The king could levy tithes on the church, which nevertheless
retained the right to hold a national synod or *assemblée du clergé* at
regular intervals. They preferred to vote a *don gratuit* rather than be
subject to a direct tax-levy. In the rising struggle against heresy, the church
came to rely on the secular arm, and agreed to pay. Soon, it seemed
natural for the king to use the substance of the church as his own. The
Venetian ambassador, Marino Cavalli, commented (1546) that formerly
papal consent was necessary but now no longer; that proverbially the
French king levied, the clergy paid, and the pope kept quiet. An edict
(February 1544) transferred the audit of the tithe accounts to the royal
Chambre des Comptes. In allowing the Crown access to the wealth of the
church, the Concordat effectively fended off outright secularisation. It
acted as a lightning-conductor to royal depredation and prepared, at least
in part, a stumbling-block for Protestant reform.

The victory at Marignano brought another advantage to the monarchy:
peace with the Swiss. The Treaty of Fribourg (29 November 1516) settled
many matters, not least outstanding subsidies amounting to 700,000 gold
écus (equivalent to 2,358 kg. of fine gold). Article XIII stipulated that the
treaty 'doit durer à perpétuité' and so ushered in the famous *paix
perpétuelle* which, like the Concordat, lasted until the Revolution (1789).
A subsequent treaty (7 May 1521) set out conditions for mutual defence
and in return for liberal pensions to various dignitaries gave Francis I the
right to recruit in the cantons for not less than 6,000 and not more than
16,000 men. During his reign he may well have called some 120,000 Swiss
to his colours. Henry II later organised them into regiments. These well-
armed, professional soldiers formed an élite, and indeed protected the
royal person, for they provided (in return for prompt payment) a
bodyguard at court. As the Reformation colonised Switzerland, this
reliance on Swiss mercenaries created further divisions of loyalties; the
Protestant cantons sometimes pressed the king to exercise moderation in
his religious policies.

The events of 1515–16 contributed to the enlargement of royal auth-
ority by playing down the notion of elective office and submission to the
constraints of councils. Royal competence gradually took over the ground
won from these ancient practices. And gradually, too, as more royal
nominees infiltrated the upper ranks of the Gallican church, claims of

Divine Right grew in substance. In an age of pushing nation states, political theorists inclined to support authority. Thus, in the *Regalium Franciae libri duo* (1538), Charles Grassaille subscribed to the claim that the king could nominate prelates and tax the church. It was just a century since the Pragmatic Sanction of Bourges! The growing popularity of studies in Roman law further reinforced the principle of authority, and gave weight to the pretensions of monarchy, especially in disputes which proliferated in a society increasing in numbers and contesting the use of resources and property. Schools of law and lawyers in Toulouse, Montpellier, Lyons, Bourges, Orleans, Paris persistently returned opinions which trimmed local rights and the principle of consent in the affairs of state. Although the term *raison d'état* made its appearance only at the turn of the century, there were already many nuances in the consolidation of absolutist ideas which the monarchy ramified over the country.

Francis I still had a kingdom to make his own. The assertion of royal authority was in full progress in the early sixteenth century. The incorporation of the province of Brittany was a revealing example of the convoluted manoeuvres to increase his title. Charles VIII had married Anne de Bretagne (1491) and so had his successor Louis XII (1499), each with an eye on the duchy as dowry. Francis (as comte de Valois et d'Angoulême) married Claude de France (18 May 1514), the daughter of Louis XII and Anne. Then, Louis XII made him an outright gift of the duchy by letters patent (27 October 1514). It was still necessary for the Estates of Brittany (1532) to pass a formal act of union to confirm his title in perpetuity. In 1570 came the so-called definitive incorporation to the Crown, but the union was not finally settled beyond all doubt until 1598, at the time of the Edict of Nantes. The Estates of Brittany clung to a vestige of independence by voting a *don gratuit* for the province – as also claimed by other provincial estates sitting in Toulouse, Aix, Montpellier, Rouen, Dijon, Grenoble. The king had ways of bringing these assemblies to his way of thinking, but aggravating delays often ensued. More difficulties followed from other extensions of territory. Henry II won Boulogne (1549); the three bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun (1552); and the port of Calais (1558). These increases in title meant that in the sixteenth century the kingdom was not in steady state. The Reformation drew some advantage from these changing commitments.

The growing range and competence of monarchy called in turn for an enlarged administration. The king's writ did not always run freely through the length and breadth of his kingdom. There were liberties or rather freedoms of manoeuvre between institutions and customary rights. An older system of great officers and their retinues no longer coped with the tasks of government and between 1535 and 1542 Francis I abolished most of their appointments and nominated special commissioners in their place.

These were not new but belonged, as Roger Doucet observed, to a long tradition, with precursors in the *missi dominici* of Charlemagne and the *enquêteurs royaux* of the thirteenth century. Now, they reappeared as special envoys. Jean Feu, a *président* in the *parlement* of Rouen, went on secondment to Provence to settle the publication of the edict of 1535. These commissioners or *maîtres des requêtes*, proved to be apt instruments in the suppression of heresy, akin to inquisitors. A series of royal letters patent of 5 August 1545 gave commissions to *conseillers* of the *parlement* of Paris to pursue and punish heretics in the provinces – Claude des Asses in Anjou and Touraine; Jacques le Roux in Sens; Louis Gayant in Orleans, Blois and surrounding territories; Guillaume Bourgoing in Bourbonnais. On this occasion, the *parlement* made no demur; the orders were registered within the week. Henry II extended these developments in 1551 and again in 1553 when twenty *maîtres des requêtes* were in post, six of them on circuit in the provinces. These officials played an important role in the early reign of Henry II in asserting royal authority, especially during the war against the Emperor Charles V when he had a pressing need to raise revenue. Already in 1556, the function of *surintendance* appeared in the lists and foreshadowed the office of *intendant*, put to such good use in the next century under the Bourbons. Even in 1635 the documents still referred to 'ces commissaires du Roi ou intendants'.

The tightening hold of government was specially concerned with taxation and the efficiency of the fisc. Francis I needed a long purse to pay for administration, to keep his armies in the field, and not least to lay out the conspicuous splendour of his court. The Venetian ambassador observed that he drove his subjects hard, meaning that he did not hesitate to tax them to the hilt. Any property or right could be made to yield a share of income, and in a violent society subjects and dependants paid for protection. The first area of co-ordination was the revenue service, and in the first half of the sixteenth century there were several significant developments. At the beginning of the century, the revenues from the royal domains were paid into ten regional tax-offices which kept separate accounts. At the top, Francis now created the *Epargne* or royal chest (by letters patent of January and February 1523). It sat first at Blois (a preferred royal residence) and then from 1532 in the Louvre in Paris. Next came the appointment of a *trésorier de l'Epargne*. In 1542, these developments went a stage further with the organisation of the realm into sixteen *recettes générales*. In 1551, Henry II created a *trésorier général des finances*, thus effectively transforming the *Epargne* into a central fund into which all provincial revenues were paid. This system lasted until 1666 when Colbert converted it into the *Trésor royal*.

The second important fiscal development was the enlargement of royal

credit by establishing the *rentes sur l'Hôtel de Ville* (15 October 1522, at the beginning of the first great war against the Emperor Charles V). These bonds effectively anticipated revenue and created a permanent base for the royal debts – the interest was secure, for Francis I was meticulous in paying on time by assigning income to meet the charges; the capital was repaid when royal finances permitted. His successors were not too careful in honouring their commitments and in time lowered the royal credit rating. A further development was the organisation of the floating debt. This came from the formation of syndicates of merchant bankers soon to be known as *partisans* for they joined together in composite loans or *partis*. The monarchy extended its credit in the financial market of Lyons, where the quarterly fairs acted as an international clearing-house for bills of exchange. Funds could be raised by carrying over commitments from one fair to the next. The repayment of November 1547 included a syndicate of Florentine, Lucchese and German merchant financiers. The *parti* of 1552 consolidated debts to be paid off over four years at 16 per cent. The important *grand parti* of 1555 was a further agreement to roll-over royal debts. In this context, we should note two aspects of the Florentine connection: their merchants were the most influential of the 'nations' in Lyons dealing in foreign exchange; and in 1533 Henry married a Florentine, the redoubtable Catherine des Médicis. The Crown thus gained access to borrowing from her family in Italy. The surge in credit came to a sorry end in 1557 when the king was unable to pay the interest on time and thus set in train a major crisis which severely impaired his freedom of financial manoeuvre. In 1559, the total royal debts amounted, so it was said, to some 36 or 38 million *livres*, equivalent to about three years' public revenue.

The early Reformation in France became entangled in these developments. It gathered strength from the distraction of the monarchy in foreign campaigns, and in the changing balance of diplomatic fortune. Francis I inherited a royal dream of empery in Italy, at that time the hub of wealth in Europe. It was resplendent with urban grandeur and private opulence. The Valois kings felt a pressing need to cross the Alps and run through the plains with more in mind than offering a helping hand to the pope. Campaigning in the Peninsula became almost a way of life, even when it entailed terrible losses among the nobility and costs which rose with every expedition. Phillipe de Commines later wrote sadly that 'pour toutes enseignes n'y est memoir d'eux que pour les sépultures de leurs prédecesseurs'. The heavy military expenditures in Italy nevertheless at first gave Francis I an aura of striking, brilliant success.

That fortune did not last long, for the balance of power in Europe began to shift. On 11 January 1519, the Emperor Maximilian died; his

throne was officially up for election but in reality for auction. Francis I at
once joined the bidding against Charles of Ghent, already king of Spain
and so provided with credit from the firm of Fugger of Augsburg and
treasure from the New World. This carried the day (15 June), and he
became Charles V, the last of the Holy Roman Emperors to pursue the
will-o'-the-wisp of universal empire. In winning the election, he dramati-
cally upset the balance of power in Europe, and opened a sequence of wars
between Valois and Habsburg. In the first, France suffered the major
defeat of Pavia (25 February 1525). Francis I himself was taken prisoner
on the field,[1] 'de juste guerre', claimed Charles V; and gained his freedom
six months later only by agreeing to the humiliating Treaty of Madrid, a
huge indemnity, the exchange of his two sons, and a joint commitment to
root out the Lutheran sect. The papacy supported France in the League of
Cognac (22 May 1526), but the following year the Imperial armies turned
on Rome and put it to sack (6 May 1527). The master of Italy thus
mastered the Holy See. In losing that struggle, France faced a double
opposition – from the Papal States now in the wake of Spain and the
empire, and from an ultramontanism progressively at odds with the
Gallican church.

   Francis I soon found that the change in fortune had repercussions out
of all proportion to the events themselves. The dynastic and political
power of the Habsburgs raised up a broad consortium of states on his
northern and north-eastern frontiers: Burgundy and the Low Countries,
Franche-Comté, together with other states of Germany and the empire.
The military reverses confused issues by driving France into alliances
against the emperor. These expedients divided loyalties and ultimately
favoured the Protestant cause. On the one hand, after the defeat of Pavia,
Francis I sought the unlikely assistance of Sultan Sulaimān, at that time
marching through the Balkans, destroying the Hungarian army at
Mohács (1526) and bringing his siege train to the very gates of Vienna
(1529). In the West, the Valois–Habsburg rivalry opened out a great
Franco-German dialogue. The more Charles attempted to stifle resistance
among the German princes, the more Francis I found occasion to intrigue
and confront the Imperial forces. Such *rapprochements* and *ententes* with
the Protestant princes were sometimes open, sometimes secret – as in the
tacit support given to the Schmalkaldic League (formally established in
1531); in the restoration by Philip of Hesse of the Lutheran Duke Ulrich
to Württemberg (1534) from which he had been banished fifteen years
earlier by the Swabian League; and in the prelude to seizing the strategic
three bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun. The Protestant princes
naturally supported Luther and his great religious movement. Francis I

1

temporised, dallied with foreign alliances, and found with no doubt more than a pang of conscience that they impaired his resolve to stifle Protestantism in France.

The second panel of our triptych describes the arrival of the early Reformation in France where it merged with humanistic studies and spontaneous initiatives for reform. Once on the throne, Francis I carried public life into spacious days. After the severity, even gloom, of Louis XII and Anne de Bretagne, his court seemed to bustle with activity, rich display and splendid occasions. Population was on the increase; the restless drive of Spain and Portugal opened up wider horizons. The visual arts drew colour and imagery from the styles of the Italian Renaissance. To those in the know, everything seemed alive and on the move. Not that all was well, for the towns voiced complaints of depression. The old urban industries and guilds faced decay from the competition of manufactures in the countryside. No doubt the ways of making things, the daily round of work, the customary skills passed from generation to generation, changed little; but for those with incomes to spend or money to borrow, for those with ease and fortunes, the styles and fashions from abroad became all the rage. A wave of new ideas leavened artistic activity in France. Humanism implied a revival of the past to create something fresh and brilliant.

The adoption of Renaissance ideas gathered momentum as the military campaigns in Italy began in earnest in 1495. King after king went on campaign in the Peninsula and came to know at first hand the resplendent city republics. Sometimes they sought out powerful and wealthy allies such as the d'Este family, so adept in the brilliant display of private opulence. The spirit of emulation was intense. Cartloads of *objets d'art* crossed into France. And artists quickly followed in person. Charles VIII (1470–98) brought back Girolamo de Fiesole; Louis XII (1462–1515) the Giusti brothers, the landscapist Dom Pacello de Mercogliano, the sculptor Guido Mazzoni, the architects Fra Giocondo and Domenico Cortone. By the time Francis I reached the throne, the stream was in full spate and he followed with zest. During his reign, he invited artists with an open hand: Francesco Primaticcio from Bologna; Girolamo della Robbia from Florence; Niccola Dell'Abate; Benvenuto Cellini; Sebastiano Serlio ... The great Leonardo da Vinci came in 1516 to die three years later at Clos-Lucé near Amboise.

The Valois had a special liking for the Loire. Charles VIII was born at Amboise; Louis XII at Blois; Francis I further south at Cognac. They built and embellished their châteaux with expansive enterprise and stylistic novelty. In profile, these still looked like castles, being Gothic in substance with prominently high-pitched roofs. But the decoration was unmistakably Renaissance. The famous *cour d'honneur* in the château of

Blois makes a striking example of the dramatic changes. The Gothic wing of Louis XII (1503–4) already showed Italianate decoration. Then came the great wing of Francis I (1515–24) combining the upward movement of the Gothic with strong horizontal divisions. The central feature was an outstandingly beautiful octagonal newel staircase, with elegant balusters entirely in the Italian style. This same exuberance embellished the château of Chambord, started as a medieval fortress (1519), but quickly glossed with the Renaissance. There, the salamander, the emblem of Francis I, appeared repeatedly on walls and ceilings, but always in a different posture. The key-note of the early reign was irregular regularity, almost as if anything was possible. After 1550, perhaps after 1540 if we follow the classification of Louis Hautecoeur, a reaction brought the beginnings of the classical style in France, emphasising order, regularity and symmetry; using severe horizontal lines which were both impressive and authoritarian. In Blois, this dominates the third section of the courtyard built much later by François Mansart (1635–38), and rounds out this architectural evolution. The transition in the middle of the sixteenth century from free expression – what the Protestant zealots dubbed 'honteuse licence' – to an ethos of strict order is directly relevant to the developments discussed in this chapter.

While observing that Italian artists of the Renaissance mastered the representational arts, we should not overlook the strong and very different native traditions. Medieval art in France had achieved so much with soaring Gothic cathedrals and illuminated scripts. Those styles and traditions lingered on and flourished anew. At the close of the fifteenth century, French artists worked at court and in the great seigneurial houses. Some received special acclaim: Jean Fouquet (*c*. 1420–*c*. 1480), the portraitist of Charles VII; Michel Colombe (*c*. 1430–*c*. 1513), who sculptured the tomb of the Duc de Bretagne in Nantes; Jean Bourdichon (*c*. 1457–1521), who created the scintillating Book of Hours for Anne de Bretagne. The influence of Flemish art appeared in the tapestries and silver plate which arrived at court, and perhaps too in the style of Jean Clouet the Elder (1475–1541), also a royal portraitist. French or naturalised-French artists quickly adopted the new styles from Italy and with impressive results: the architects Pierre Lescot who worked on the Louvre, Philibert Delorme at Anet, Jean Bullant at Ecouen; the sculptor Jean Goujon with his work for the façade of the Louvre and the reclining form of Diana at Anet. Yet, the mental attitudes which preferred traditional styles did not entirely disappear. In Rouen, the *parlement* acquired the magnificent Salle des Procureurs (in 1493, when it was still the *Exchiquier*, for it did not become a *parlement* until 1515) of which the style was unmistakably late Gothic. Nearby, Jean Goujon soon designed the equally famous west portal of Saint-Maclou after the new ideas of the

Renaissance. In a generation, there lay a tension between old and new, a conflict of interests between those looking to the past and those adopting the latest fashions. These waves of liberty and discipline came out clearly in the work of two great masters of French prose – the exuberant François Rabelais and the unbending reformist Jean Calvin – who reflected radical ferment and reaction in the creative arts and society in the first half of the sixteenth century.

The first tremors of the Reformation came into this society, exhilarated by conspicuous consumption, new styles and fashions; by a sense of splendour so well displayed in the Field of Cloth of Gold (7 June 1520); and perhaps, too, distracted by an illusion of being constantly on the move as the court shuttled between Paris, Saint-Germain-en-Laye, Fontainebleau, the more distant châteaux of the Loire, or disappeared abroad on campaign with the armies in Italy. At first, the movement for reform had a diffuse and uncertain format. It drew colour from the great personalities in the drama. Three major streams of influence can be detected, initially from Germany and Switzerland, and then more directly French in origin and soon located in Geneva.

The first stream flowed from the revolutionary decision on 31 October 1517 of an Augustinian, Martin Luther (1484–1546), to protest against some doubtful practices in the Catholic church with ninety-five theses nailed to the door of the Castle-church at Wittenberg. In the light of subsequent events, his stance was relatively moderate, particularly in respect to the sovereignty of the state. At the time, the interest of France lay in Italy and so the first eddies and flurries of the Reformation on her northern borders came without too much notice. They found convenient routes of access in the thriving trade with the Low Countries, Switzerland, and Germany, and at all levels – from great and privileged merchants of Antwerp, Cologne, Frankfurt, Augsburg, Ulm, Nuremberg, some dealing in cloth, others in silver from the Tyrol and central Europe; to bands of pedlars and camp followers who liked the easy life of the fairs of Lyons meeting quarterly and providing immunity from search and customs duties. And among them were preachers with books and ideas – all slipping across the frontiers and spreading out into the provinces. When discovered, these new insurgents were named as Lutherans. In the early 1520s, now here, now there, prohibitions and condemnations were quickly on the way. The papal bull of 17 May 1525 expressly forbad heretical books in France, naming only Lutherans and their heresy, 'propter libros errores lutheranos continentes qui ad loca regni Franciae delati fuerunt haeresis lutherana huiusmodi in aliquibus locis dicti regni pullulare coepisset'. Francis I followed it with an order (10 June 1525). On 30 August 1533, another bull against Lutherans and again Francis I vented his displeasure at the heretics swarming in Paris by writing to *parlement*

(26 November 1533) condemning 'cette maudite secte hérétique'. The harsh edict of July 1540 specifically named Lutheran doctrines. In 1559, Anne du Bourg, a *conseiller* in *parlement*, defended them with sincerity and soon paid dearly with his life.[1]

A second line of Reformation, progressively more radical and uncompromising, came from the teaching of such men as Andreas Bodenstein (1480–1540), alias Karlstadt or Carlstadt; Thomas Müntzer (*c.* 1489–1525), who led the Anabaptist sect in Thuringia until his capture and execution in the Peasants' War; and Ulrich (Huldrych) Zwingli (1484–1531), appointed *Leutpriester* to the Großmünster in Zürich (1518) but later killed in the battle of Kappel. A central theme concerned salvation, the sacraments and the mass. The celebration of Corpus Christi – the *Festum Eucharistiae* or Blessed Sacrament – had become the fifth major feast in the Christian calendar, spreading rapidly from the Low Countries through Germany. The procession of Corpus Christi probably began in Cologne and was both an extension of the religious celebration of mass and a social ritual when clergy and local dignitaries filed through the town in their vestments and robes attending the host on display. Although the movement of the Reformation is often explained as a revolt within the unity of Christendom, there are other aspects of the problem, which remain difficult to comprehend in their entirety. Rural Europe was still permeated with beliefs and practices from a pre-Christian civilisation and these came face to face with a religious and Christian revival in the towns. The *Augenkommunionen* and blessings with the host had been denounced in Zurich by Felix Hemmerli (1388/9–1458/9). Now radical opinions gathered momentum. Carlstadt took a militant stance on images in his diatribe *Von Abtuhung der Bylder* (Wittenberg, 1522). Luther retorted in *Wider die hymelischen propheten von dem bildern und Sacrament* (Wittenberg, 1525) but did not reject them out of hand. Zwingli questioned the sacrificial nature of the Mass. In Article XVIII of his sixty-seven *Schlußreden* (January 1523), he maintained 'that Christ having sacrificed himself once and for all ... the mass is not a sacrifice, but is a remembrance of the sacrifice and assurance of the salvation which Christ has given us'. In subsequent years he enlarged on his belief in sacraments as living faith in Christ. He was thus at odds with Luther who held to the doctrine of real presence in the eucharist. When the two met in Marburg (October 1529), they were unable to resolve their differences, and this failure opened a rift between the Reformation in Germany and that in Switzerland. In France, these radicals were called *Sacramentaires*. The royal declaration of 14 November 1559 commissioned an enquiry into those who supported 'les Sacramentaires, ou ceux qui sont entachez d'autres crimes d'hérésie'.

1 See p. 261.

A third and enduring force in France carried the titles of Protestant and Huguenot. The term Protestant gained currency slowly after the Diet of Speier (1529). As for Huguenot, the origins of the word are very obscure. It may have been used in France in the fourteenth century. Some consider it a derivation of *Eidgenossen* from Switzerland. Whatever the origin, it applied to French Protestants in the 1550s. The philologist Emile Littré put a date of 1560 on its first appearance in writing, and then not in Paris but Languedoc.

This movement followed the teaching of Jean Calvin (1509–64). While Luther, Carlstadt and Zwingli were all born in the early 1480s, Calvin came a generation later and added sophistication to the theological debate. He drew on his predecessors, particularly Zwingli, but while the early reformers spent much energy on revolt and refuting idolatry, Calvin provided thinking of deeper consistency. In the compromise *Consensus* (1549), the city of Zurich, for so long the preserve of Zwingli, gave first place to his doctrine of Spiritual Presence in the eucharist. He dedicated the second Latin edition (1539) and that in French (1541) of his *Institution de la religion chrétienne* to Francis I. This important letter justified his cause but took the king to task, declaring him accountable to criticism from the Scriptures. The authorities at once reacted to the danger. The declaration of *parlement* (1 July 1542) explicitly condemned the new publication. The edict of Châteaubriant (June 1551) punished fugitives to Geneva, forbade sending money there to buy books, and even ordered the return post to be opened. So began the dominant movement of French Protestantism. At first it seems that the term Huguenot was pejorative and *Religion réformée* preferred. However, in circles of government that title, and likewise *Eglise réformée*, won no support. After the Edict of Nantes (April 1598) the sect could find public acceptance only as the *Religion de la qualité de l'édit*, or the contemptuous *Religion prétendue réformée*.

About 1520, however, these squabbles were all in the future. Francis I and his courtiers were debonair and full of the zest of life. If he met with rebuff in Germany in the corrupt election for the crown of Holy Roman Emperor, all the more reason to ignore it and turn his redoubtable arms on Italy. Behind the smoke-screen of war, the Reformation crept into France, helped along by the popular appeal of the writings of Martin Luther. His warm, human style appealed to the heart. It reverberated in the works of Farel, De Maigret and others; and not least, of Marguerite d'Angoulême (1492–1549), the sister of Francis I, and later by marriage (1527) to the much younger Henri d'Albret, queen of Navarre. As so many others, she fell under the persuasive influence first of Jacques Lefèvre and then of Guillaume Briçonnet. In a flight of religious zeal, she published *Le Miroir de l'âme pécheresse* (Alençon, 1531), which became a minor classic of the early Reformation. Listed as suspect by the Sorbonne

(1533), it went through several editions: Paris (1533); Lyons (1538); and, importantly, Geneva (1539). In 1548, none other than Elizabeth, daughter of Henry VIII, brought out a translation in English. Piety, intellect, royal lineage gave Marguerite considerable influence, and when she offered patronage or protection, her wishes carried weight.[1] Thus, in the early years of the reign of Francis I the first surge of the Reformation seemed to find acceptance as easily in humble communities so widely dispersed, as by great personalities. That, too, was a sign of a relatively open and momentarily receptive society.

The rapid improvement in printing turned reformist opinions into explosive propaganda. Rabelais, writing in the guise of Gargantua's letter to Pantagruel, commented on the impressive changes in his lifetime, that

> the whole world is full of learned people, of erudite tutors, of extensive bookshops, and I am advised that not even in the time of Plato, of Cicero, of Papinian was there such a facility for study as can now be seen ... I find brigands, hangmen, adventurers, horse-dealers at present more learned than the teachers and preachers I used to know.

Books quickly gave intellectuals material to study in secret and preach in public. Every printing-press opened into a network of distribution and influence. There is ample evidence of how religious books in French found their way to the fairs of Frankfurt and Antwerp. At Basel, Froben applied his considerable talents to bringing out the writings of Erasmus, Lefèvre, Farel and others. In Protestant Strassburg, the printing trades gave shelter to religious fugitives, not least those who slipped from France. Among them, we find the celebrated cases of Jacques Lefèvre and Guillaume Farel, on the run from impending arrest. The printing-shops in Neuchâtel and Geneva served an international market, for it was easy enough to pass books over the frontier into France. And there too, presses were soon at work – in Meaux, Lyons, Alençon, Paris ... In 1539, a strike among the printers of Lyons came before the authorities to show these skilled journeymen at the forefront of technical change but at odds with the discipline imposed by machines and printing deadlines; with their masters over remuneration in money and kind; with society in general over carrying swords and other offensive weapons, and brawling at the slightest provocation. But still books poured from the presses. In 1519, Froben wrote to Luther that 600 volumes were on their way to France and Spain, and added that 'they are sold at Paris, they are read even at the Sorbonne'. In 1520, some 1,400 copies were sold at the Frankfurt fair. In the print runs of the time, they sometimes touched bestseller status. In France, numerous groups of scholars waited eagerly for deliveries. 'Everything

coming from you and Germany', wrote Jacques Lefèvre at Meaux to Guillaume Farel in April 1524, 'brings me the greatest pleasure.'

These publications carried the message of protest widely and to all levels of society. They arrived smuggled in casks, packs, and bales of merchandise, tucked into pedlars' knapsacks. So much so that the edict of Châteaubriant (June 1551) ordered printers and booksellers to open their consignments in the presence of 'deux bons personnages qui seront commis par les facultés de théologie'. For every instance of this covert trade discovered and brought before the courts, there must have been countless others hidden from history. The rapid propagation of Reformist polemics created a force which escapes precise measurement. Occasionally we come across striking evidence that the diffusion of these tracts was not limited to the sects or those wavering in allegiance to the Catholic church. There is one such instance in the will of Miffant, a lesser nobleman in Normandy. It is dated about 1559, the year in which the Index of Prohibited Books appeared in Rome. Miffant evidently was Catholic for he listed legacies of images of the Virgin and the Saints; and he revealed a taste for literary and intellectual subjects by leaving a library of considerable interest. Among the 149 volumes, we find the *Cortigiano* of Castiglione, the *Odes* and *Amours* of Ronsard, works by Machiavelli, Pliny, Plato, a series of texts by Erasmus, and not least the *De Anima* of Melanchthon, condemned by the Sorbonne in 1522.

If we believe the Venetian ambassador, even the poorest in France in 1535 were learning to read and write. But the ideas from Germany and Switzerland came in Latin or German vernacular, and so were for the eyes and minds of small groups of intellectuals. When translated into French, the impact was more immediate. Translators were in demand. They swarmed about the printing-shops, often scholars of renown, among them Desiderius Erasmus. Their dedicated and sensitive work gave a gloss of quality and sophistication to the religious debates, and so widened their appeal. Thus, we find François Lambert, a Franciscan fugitive in Germany in 1522, who became in 1526 the protégé of the landgrave of Hesse; Guillaume Dumoulin, who lived in Wittenberg itself in 1525 and moved to Strassburg; and there were many others such as Louis de Berquin, Antoine Papillon the friend of Erasmus, Lempereur, Dubois – all close to the movement for religious reform.

How many German tracts appeared in French translation? We can find a dozen before 1535. Thus, for examples: *La Summe de l'escripture saincte, et l'ordinaire des Chrestiens, enseignant la vraye foy Chrestienne* (Basel, 1523; and a second edition in 1544); *La Manière de lire l'Evangile et quel profit on en doibt attendre* (Antwerp, 1528); *Prophétie de Jesaie de l'enfant nouveau né Jesuchrist* (n.p., 1527); *Le Livre de vraye et parfaicte oraison* (Paris, 1529); *La Consolation Chrestienne contre les afflictions de ce monde*

et scrupules de conscience (Paris, probably 1528); *Le Pater noster faict en translation et en dyalogue par la Royne de Navarre* (undated, but the original to which it was added, 1519); *Sermon de la manière de prier Dieu et comment on doibt faire processions et rogations* (n.d.). Robert Estienne enhanced his reputation as a printer with outstanding printings of the Bible, making excerpts in 1522, 1541, 1542, 1543 and 1546; and full editions in 1528, 1535, 1540, 1545 and 1546. All these interrelated activities of translators, printers, booksellers, pedlars, merchants, provided France with material enough to challenge accepted notions and traditions.

That challenge was part of a much wider enthusiasm for humanistic studies, a vigorous and robust national enquiry; and at the same time, a broad movement of scholars, artists, and their pupils who wandered from country to country in search of sustenance and patrons. They lived off a latent anticlericalism, which had gone on for centuries, mocking at clerics and their indiscretions. The writings of Pierre du Val were comedies of doctrine. The revolt of Luther struck a chord in this broad spectrum of dissent. Erasmus wrote his *Moriae encomium* (1511) in happier days, and had it printed in Paris. For all his urbane raillery, he nevertheless remained true to the Catholic faith. The same surge of humanistic scholarship carried away the fussy Jacques Lefèvre, but with a different outcome. In his commentaries to *S. Pauli Epistolae XIV ex vulgata editione, adjecta intelligentia ex graeco, cum commentariis* (Paris, 1512), he made the key-note statement of belief which separated him from the dogma of the Catholic church. In this he anticipated Luther but only partly agreed with him. Similar signs of dissent can be found in *La Déploration de l'Eglise militante* (Paris, 1512) by Jean Bouchet:

> Cessez, cessez me donner ornemens
> Calices, croix et beaux accoutrements ...

At the top, some prelates felt a sense of unease. The bishop of Autun voiced his opinion in 1534 that 'we have come to the point when only, or almost only, the most cowardly and most unworthy aspire to such an honourable profession'. And Mathieu Malingre sang in 1533:

> Rien ne m'y sert: François ne sa grant mance
> Estre vestu de noir, de blanc ou gris;
> Je laisse aussi Dominicque et sa pance
> Je viens à toy car tout bien est comprins
>   En toy mon Dieu.

The religious revolt brought a whole culture into question. Styles, decorations, colours, customs which suited the bright Mediterranean sometimes seemed out of place in a colder northern light. As an institu-

tion, the Catholic church had already settled a considerable part of its human resources in Italy. After Adrian VI (1522–3), and for more than four and a half centuries, only Italians were to wear the papal tiara. We have but to look at the ecclesiastical map of Europe about 1500 to appreciate how many prelates swarmed in the Peninsula and how thinly they were spread in northern Europe.[1] The strategic archbishopric of Cologne reached into Holland. The even bigger archbishopric of Mainz had a mere dozen bishops to serve from the Alps to the Elbe. Wittenberg, where Luther raised his standard of revolt, was in another see but still on the Elbe. As for France, it was reasonably covered in the Midi, but the massif central and north-west were more sparsely provided for. And then in the Gallican church as we have already seen, the higher clergy were increasingly drawn into the train of royal politics.

The humanistic movement for reform in France clustered about pre-lates and adventurous personalities, in selected places, sometimes in the north of the country. Jacques Lefèvre (1455–1536) came from Etaples. Then the spotlight focussed on Guillaume Briçonnet (1470–1534) from a wealthy Parisian family of professionals – lawyers, merchants, financiers, officers of state. His father, Guillaume Briçonnet le Jeune, the powerful minister in turn of Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, and a cardinal at the close of his life (1514), had given his son an exceptional introduction to clerical preferment. He received a canonry at an early age, then the bishopric of Lodève (1504) and the abbey of Saint-Germain-des-Prés in Paris (1507). He served on the famous Council of Pisa (1511) which led to the Lateran Council (1512) to reform abuses in the church; and later in the negotiations leading to the Concordat, during which he received the bishopric of Meaux (31 December 1515). A brilliant career indeed, but it made him all too well aware of clerical shortcomings.

Briçonnet had that breadth of mind which at once made him a catalyst in the early days of the Reformation. He quickly gathered about him a group of friends and scholars distinguished by bold, humanistic studies. The point of encounter between them was an evangelical zeal for the Scriptures. His quarters became a hive of learned activity, first at Saint-Germain-des-Prés in Paris, then at Meaux where the resources of his bishopric offered patronage to the liberal-minded and a safe haven for the provocative. Jacques Lefèvre left Saint-Germain and arrived there at the end of 1520, already ageing but still hard at work; he was appointed to administer the leper hospital (11 August 1521) and then became vicar-general (1 May 1527). The voluble and eloquent Gérard Roussel (1480–1550) soon found a place as treasurer of the chapter. The scholars Vatable

1 See 'Europe: Ecclesiastical, *c.* 1500', in H. C. Darby and Harold Fullard (eds.), *The New Cambridge Modern History*, vol. xiv, *Atlas* (1970), pp. 66–7.

and De Quincey came, and so too the theologians Martial and Mazurier (who received the living of Saint-Martin in Meaux); Pierre Caroli, who abandoned the Church on more than one occasion and abjured with equally disquieting frequency; the militant Guillaume Farel who finally left for Neuchâtel; and others besides. In 1523, Lefèvre brought out his translation of the four gospels; and in 1527, his translation of the Old Testament.

Thus, the people of Meaux at large found themselves in the mainstream of new ideas from Germany. Accomplished preachers appeared in the pulpits; scholars published outstanding work leaning to Pauline doctrine. It was not as if the town lay in some remote provincial backwater. Rather the reverse: it was a vantage-point on the Marne, some forty kilometres north-east of Paris, on the route taken by invading Spaniards in 1543. And in contraflow it pointed the way to Metz, Trier, Frankfurt and on to Luther country. The community of Meaux became more than a galaxy of leading figures; at their side were cohorts of smaller folk, craftsmen and journeymen of all kinds, such as fullers, wool-carders, cloth-workers. They too were beginning to stir, just as across the border in south-west Germany the Imperial Knights (1522) and the peasants (1524–5) were taking up arms. The little 'flock' of Meaux had both appeal and ability to relay ideas in France. Briçonnet was the guiding light but already he had a more general reform in mind, and in particular the redemption of a distinguished soul at the top of society, that of Marguerite d'Angoulême, to whom he became friend, confidant and confessor. She too put her faith and salvation in the sole merits of Christ.

Once established in his diocese, Briçonnet busied himself with restoring discipline among the lower clergy. He ordered priests to reside in their parishes (15 October 1516), but the fact that he reissued the order on 7 January and again on 27 October 1520 made plain that there were stubborn opponents to residential requirements. The reform was so reasonable and moderate for the good conduct of the diocese that it is difficult to explain the violent objections it nevertheless aroused among the more obscurantist of his clerics. They felt alarmed by change and their minds closed to new opinions. In 1520 already, the widening divisions brought his friend Josse Clichtove (d. 1543) to declare formally against dangerous innovations. And Briçonnet himself gradually felt obliged to return openly to conformity and publicly affirm his adherence to traditional doctrine. When called to order in Paris in 1522, he agreed to take drastic measures against the books and other publications of Luther. The following year, once more in Meaux, he issued a decree on 15 October against selling or concealing such books; on 13 December he forbade parish priests to give house-room to preachers suspected of Lutheran or

other untrustworthy opinions. In March and April 1524 he came into the open and attacked doctrines which questioned fundamental dogma, and at the same time tried to restore the spiritual quality of churchmanship in his diocese. The behaviour of Clichtove is a good example of the complex and troubled reactions to the early Reformation, so complex indeed that it is understandable why many of his contemporaries were often confused and unhappy. Guillaume Farel (1489–1565) was already moving further to the left when he wrote to Cormalle Scheffer (2 April 1524) that 'notre France reçoit déjà avec la plus grande joie la parole de Dieu'. Within his own immediate circle that may have been so, but for France in general he clearly exaggerated. There was every shade of opinion, and when we look closely at those already mentioned – Briçonnet, Lefèvre, Roussel, Farel, Clichtove – how is it possible at this distance of time to recapture the nuances of their inner beliefs, to put them in categories? Each one differed from the other, and all were involved in a subtle process of change.

In the late 1520s, particularly in the years 1525–34, a sequence of events contributed to harden attitudes in the intellectual and spiritual debate. Developments both domestic and foreign aggravated a situation which was far from simple and already on the point of deterioration. The Catholic church was alert to the challenge to the unity of Christendom. In France, any affront to the church weakened the establishment, not least the social tripod of the Estates in which prelates had a prominent place. It was therefore prompt to buttress recognised patterns of conduct, oppose schism, and call for support.

Two bodies were prompt in coming to the rescue. They were the *parlement* of Paris and the *faculté de théologie* in the university, both provided with scholars and archives. The first acted as the civil arm of the law; the oldest of the final courts of appeal in France, it had extensive jurisdiction reaching from Poitiers to Lyons, to Picardy. It defended a corporative position against attempts to extend royal power as well as against innovations in religion. The second took to holding its meetings, informally about 1516 and formally after 1554, in the Société de Sorbonne, an independent foundation for training theologians. And so in the period we are discussing they met *en Sorbonne* and acquired that title as a body. The faculty enjoyed an outstanding intellectual reputation in Europe, hence the aphorism to plead 'like a doctor of the Sorbonne'. They had few doubts that Paris came first; others could dispute for second place. It seemed only natural for Henry VIII of England to defer to them for advice on his impending divorce. In 1532, the merchants of Antwerp raised questions about the propriety of contracts and usury. Later, Ignatius de Loyola considered Paris the most suitable place outside Rome for a college. Even Luther in less contentious times was generous in praise

but no doubt had good reason to regret his approval. The academic
authority of the faculty went hand in glove with the civil judiciary of the
parlement to form a powerful force for repression.

Their combined diligence soon took effect. When the pope condemned
Luther's works, the faculty of theology followed with a similar embargo
(15 April 1521). In the following August, *parlement* outlawed heretical
books but they continued to crop up everywhere. In 1523, the theologians
noted them again in Paris. And also in the provinces – in Bordeaux and
Grenoble; in Bourges (1524); in Normandy (1525). Arrests followed the
discoveries, as a matter of course. Many humble people were taken and
questioned, but in Paris the most distinguished by far was Louis de
Berquin. In May 1523, agents searched his lodgings and found works by
Luther and Melanchthon. Only the direct intervention of Francis I, no
doubt on the private pleading of his sister Marguerite, saved him from
further persecution. In August that year, Jean Vallière was not so
privileged; he went on trial, was found guilty, and burned in Paris, an early
victim in a long line of martyrs, but he was not condemned specifically for
Lutheranism.

The progressive hardening of attitudes came during the first war (1521–
9) between Francis I and the Emperor Charles V. In order to prosecute the
war, it was necessary to secure civil unity during the frequent absences of
the king on campaign. In some measure this state of affairs condoned the
uncompromising activity of both *parlement* and the theologians. Already
in 1523, Guillaume Farel felt it necessary to slip away to Basel. In 1524, as
Jacques Lefèvre was completing his French version of the New Testament,
the circle of Meaux began to feel threatened. Some returned to the fold, as
did Caroli and Maxurier: in January and February they reaffirmed their
submission to the Catholic church. Others held out: in December, De
Maigret went to prison.

Then came an extraordinary event which transformed the tone of
politics in France: the Imperial army routed the French at Pavia, taking
Francis I prisoner on the field of battle and sending him to Madrid. The
cloud of suspicion over Meaux darkened. Briçonnet came under suspi-
cion. He tried to prove himself by mounting a renewed search for heretical
books. Shortly afterwards, the Franciscans of Meaux denounced him for
curbing their sermons. In October and December, the Paris *parlement*
called him to answer their accusations, and in particular that he had
distributed in his diocese 'des livres en françois qui estoient tous erreur et
hérésie'. In October, Lefèvre and Roussel fled to Strassburg.

With Francis in prison abroad, the queen mother assumed control and
appealed to the pope for help. He responded by giving cognisance of
heresy to four judges in *parlement*, two ecclesiastical and two lay (May
1525). Francis received the news in Madrid with undisguised annoyance;

he wrote at once to *parlement* to suspend the trials. Restored to freedom, but leaving his two sons hostage, he lost no time in galloping back to Paris to put matters straight. In April, his sister Marguerite once more managed to secure the return of Lefèvre and Roussel. However, *parlement* was in no mood for moderation and on 12 March 1526 again condemned Louis de Berquin. He remained at liberty only on the personal insistence of the king, who on 8 October once more wrote sternly to the court, 'Nous vous mandons . . . délivrer ledit Berquin.' His motives were mixed, for his main concern was to restore his own authority.

Free-thinking went hand in hand with civil disobedience. Increasingly, the king was not in a position to act from strength. His authority was impaired by the defeat of Pavia and the humiliating conditions imposed first in the Treaty of Madrid (14 January 1526) and then in the Treaty of Cambrai or Ladies' Peace (3 August 1529). By this last treaty, the king agreed to redeem his sons for the huge ransom of two million gold *écus*, of which 1·2 million (equivalent to 3,955 kg. of fine gold)[1] were to be paid in a lump sum at the moment of exchange (1 April 1530). This put a heavy strain on his finances, already stretched by extraordinary war-levies. When Francis called on the Assembly of Notables (1527) to maintain his honour and pay the ransom, the cardinal of Bourbon took occasion to remind him of his duty to uphold the spiritual dignity of the church. Provincial synods of the church met in Paris, Bourges and Lyons to agree to the financial levies, but they also used the occasion to review the problem of heresy.

They first met in Paris under the presidency of the primate of France, Cardinal Antoine Duprat, chancellor, bishop of Albi, archbishop of Sens. The meetings dragged on from 3 February to 9 October 1528, dealing first with the church's share of the ransom and the means to raise it. At the same time, it debated the serious problems of religious life and ecclesiastical discipline. The synod called on Josse Clichtove to explain himself. He had been the preferred disciple of Lefèvre d'Etaples but now came out with a stinging attack on Luther's teaching. He was clearly anxious to prove his conformity and at once brought out a printed version of his discourse, the *Compendium veritatum ad fidem pertinentium, contra erroneas Lutheranorum assertiones, ex dictis et actis in Concilio provinciali Senonensi, apud Parisios celebrato* (Paris, 1529). The decrees of the synod reaffirmed the dogma and the authority of the church; it alone had the right to decide what was heretical and what was orthodox in printed matter; it alone could define doctrine and any questions concerning the mass, sacraments, salvation, and grace. In addition, it issued decrees to strengthen parish discipline, leaving preaching to the regular orders.

1 The monetary reform of July 1519 debased the gold *écu* by 2·2 per cent; cf. above p. 228.

The synod of Bourges had the Cardinal de Tournon as president. It too was much exercised with controlling heretical sermons and publications. Although printing encouraged literacy, the intricacies of doctrine required careful explanations and pulpits were among the preferred media. As Michel François has aptly remarked, they diffused the ideas of the Reformation. The Catholic church keenly appreciated this and strove to exercise tighter controls. However, the weak link lay in the particularism of the country. Indeed, we can hardly speak of a Church of France when the initiative lay in provincial assemblies rather than a national synod. The diocesan map did not have the same profile as the political hierarchy. Without insisting on this fundamental diversity in the sixteenth century, the territorial mosaic of France nevertheless set a serious obstacle to coordinating ecclesiastical and civil controls. The monarchy increasingly asserted its claims to authoritarian rule and so provided a central point of unity; but the country was huge, the king's writ stumbled over customary rights, waited on the grudging approval of provincial *parlements*, and above all suffered from the imbalance between Paris and the regions which repeatedly played a powerful rôle.

The meetings of these provincial synods nevertheless quickened the pursuit of Lutherans. There were executions in Paris in October 1527 and December 1528; in Rouen, Pierre Bar was condemned (June 1528), not as a Lutheran but for having denied the divinity of Christ. A fresh attack was launched against Louis de Berquin, who had escaped conviction so often. He now went to prison for the third time (1528), and on this occasion without reprieve; after trial he was executed (17 April 1529). The chronicles of justice record numerous other arrests of suspects and some of these also ended in executions: at Langres in 1529; at Dijon in 1531, 1534, 1536, 1538, 1539; at Beaune in 1534; at Tours in 1526, 1530; at Bordeaux in 1530, 1534, 1535; at Montpellier in 1532, 1533, 1535, 1536, where it was reported that 'the greater part of the town are Lutherans'; at Toulouse in 1530, 1532, 1538; throughout the south, for example, at Cahors, Castres, Mende, Rodez, Montauban, Carcassonne; in several towns in Normandy; and not least in Lyons. They became martyrs for a cause and their fates heralded a bitter and bloodstained future. On this note of heightened tension, the first phase of the Reformation in France drew to a close.

The third panel of our triptych opens new and very different perspectives in France. The urbane consensus between evangelical enquiry and human-ism began to falter, split and sunder. It seemed that a growing society could not maintain that happy sense of harmony and mutual trust which had consolidated the Gallican church. The mounting troubles upset the composure of society during the mid sixteenth century.

The end to *entente* between humanists and reformers was of outstand-
ing importance. While it is not possible to detect an abrupt break in the
evolution of the Reformation, there were nevertheless subtle changes in
the attitudes of the leading personalities. Intellectuals and writers had
survived under the generous protection of open-minded patrons. Clément
Marot became virtually a prisoner but enjoyed considerable freedom to
come and go with the benign countenance of the bishop of Chartres.
Etienne Dolet found a quiet corner in the service of the bishop of Limoges.
Gérard Roussel, as we have already noted, had the constant sympathy and
protection of Marguerite de Navarre, and this saved him on more than
one occasion from the rigours of the law. De Maigret led a sheltered life
with the Du Bellay family. And Guillaume Briçonnet was generous in
providing clerical patronage. All this conformed to the style of living in a
society manifestly insecure but knit together by ties of blood, honour,
dynasty, great household and apostolic succession. Humanists and
reformers formed societies of retainers in the same pattern, and their
protectors acquired brilliance and status, trains of substance and prestige.

However, attitudes were changing and a new phase opened with the
gradual transformation, even disappearance, of this more-or-less-happy
state of affairs. Patrons became uneasy at the untoward turn of events,
and were less and less inclined to be seen offering comfort and support to
suspect intellectuals. As domestic patronage and protection waned, dissi-
dents began to look elsewhere, even abroad. At the top of society, Francis I
reached forty, losing some of his youthful charm and turning more to the
conscious exercise of authority, if not downright manipulation of power.
Men of moderation were out of fashion, less acceptable at court. The time
was passing when it was possible to see both sides of an argument; and
who indeed would stand up for the benefit of doubt?

Humanists had been ready to heal past wounds but the environment
was less and less sympathetic. For men such as Guillaume Du Bellay, on
mission to the German princes in 1534, there hardly seemed much
freedom of manoeuvre to make good the rifts in the church, just as
Melanchthon had faced similar rebuff. What most removed the gloss from
these years was the passing of an older generation endowed with open
minds and temperate wisdom: Briçonnet died in 1534 at the age of 63;
Lefèvre in 1536 at 81; and the incomparable Erasmus in the same year at
70. They belonged to a line of grand masters, and they left the scene to
younger men of lesser stature.

The widening divide between scholars and religious revivalists was soon
clear and complete. The severity of persecution cut a swathe through the
world of urbane learning, bringing pangs of remorse, sometimes open
repentance, sometimes assertive independence. The time for action was
approaching, for popular violence was always just below the surface calm

of society in France. A folk song (dated before 1555) summed up the
feelings of militancy, taking the uncompromising theologians of the
Sorbonne to task with scorn and resentment:

> La où la clarté se porte
> L'obscurité sortira.
> L'Evangile qu'on rapporte
> Le Papisme chassera
> > La Sorbonne bigotte
> > La Sorbonne se taira.

But it did not keep quiet. Rather the reverse: it hunted down religious
dissent with ruthless energy, and this brought a chill wind into the grove of
academe. About 1530 Francis I created royal *lecteurs*, at first to teach
languages, the nucleus of the future Collège de France. The initiative may
have come from Guillaume Budé with the aim of bringing some modera-
tion among the feuding scholars. Naturally, Messieurs de Sorbonne were
up in arms; and the reason for their protest can be seen in the words of
Noël Béda that 'les livres grecs où hébrieux en la Saincte Escriture
viennent la pluspart des Allemaignes où peuvent avoir esté les livres
changez. Et quant à l'hébrieu, plusieurs juifs qui font imprimer leurs livres
hébraiques sont luthériens.'
  The persecutions and heresy-hunts only deepened in severity, defining
allegiances, bringing nearer the time for armed conflict. The executions of
Louis de Berquin in Paris and Jean de Caturce in Toulouse (1532) made
them celebrated martyrs of the early Reformation, but their fates should
not hide the long list of more humble victims. Indeed, the ethos of
Renaissance culture in France contained the seeds of a powerful anti-
popular movement. This was not peculiar to France, for Luther acted in
much the same way when he deserted the German peasants in their revolt.
Different from the relaxed, even dilettante, relationships between human-
ism and evangelical reform in the early years of the reign, the widening
divisions now served only to bring out the increasingly popular aspect of
the Reformation. To some extent that had always been present; the
dispute between Guillaume Briçonnet and the Franciscans over their
sermons in his diocese was one striking example.
  Popular appeal beyond the *literati* became a key-note in the spread of
Calvinism. There were rousing Huguenot songs, above all, psalms to be
chanted in unison through the streets, an alternative to the processions of
Corpus Christi. An edition of psalms came out in German (1524) but the
French psalter of Clément Marot (1497–1544) had the greatest influence.
He was the son of a poet, a colourful figure at court and a survivor from
Pavia, but under suspicion after the affair of the placards. He brought out
thirty psalms in translation, *Trente Pseaulmes de David mis en françoys par*

Clément Marot, valet de chambre du Roi (Paris, 1541); and then as refugee
in Geneva a further forty-nine (listed as fifty), *Cinquante Pseaumes de
David, mis en françoys par Clément Marot* (n.p., 1543), with a prefatory
letter from Calvin dated 10 June 1543. Between 1543 and 1560, this ran
through some twenty-eight editions. Théodore de Bèze (Beza) completed
the psalter, starting in 1553, reaching seventy-nine in 1556 and the full
collection in 1560.

The shared work, usually attributed to Marot, had an enthusiastic
reception with twenty-five reprints in a year. Together with Calvin's final
edition of the *Institution de la religion chrétienne* and his Bible, the French
psalter became an exhilarating force in the popular Reformation in
France. Psalm 68, translated by Bèze, was the preferred war-song of the
Huguenot armies. In Rouen, in 1550, we find a priest teaching his pupils a
prayer by Clément Marot for grace at meals. In March 1560, an English
envoy Francis Edwards wrote from Dieppe that the local people met
nightly in the market-place to sing the psalms of David. The *Chronique de
Rouen* (24 March 1560) described crowds, their faces covered, singing
through the streets of the city, 'chantans et submumurans les pseaulmes et
cantiques de David traduitz en langaige vulgaire et rithme come par
Clément Marot'.

This critical change in the direction of the Reformation took place
about the years 1533–4. Two events, scandals even, marked the turning
point. The first in 1533. Gérard Roussel chose to preach his Easter sermon
in the Louvre before Marguerite de Navarre. The Sorbonnists at once
denounced his free-thinking on faith, the church, and the veneration of the
saints, just as they had recently condemned her *Le Miroir de l'âme
pécheresse*, printed with the sixth psalm by Clément Marot. Francis I
supported his sister and treated the incident as an affront to his royal
dignity, a trial of strength. Once more events showed how religious dissent
confused the exercise of civil authority. A commission of enquiry under
Cardinal Duprat and the bishop of Paris (18 May 1533) decided that
Roussel should remain at liberty but that Béda should be made a
scapegoat and banished from the capital. The reaction was short and
sharp but enough to persuade the Sorbonne (8 November) to retract the
earlier condemnation. All returned to calm on the surface: the king had
reasserted his authority, a serious confrontation had been avoided, voices
of moderation had prevailed, and with them it should be noted the cause
of the Reformation at the top of society.

The second event, far more revealing and serious in its consequences,
exploded in the following autumn like a clap of thunder: the affair of the
placards. In the night of 17–18 October 1534, printed posters appeared
everywhere – in Paris, Orleans, Rouen, Blois, Amboise. The title was
intentionally provocative: *Articles véritables sur les horribles, grands et*

importables abus de la messe papale inventée directement contre la Saincte Cène de notre Seigneur, seul médiateur et seul sauveur Jésus-Christ. At the time, the king was at Amboise and news of the posters greeted him in the morning. His reaction was a burst of fury, understandable when he suffered an affront both to his majesty and to personal honour. Radical reform was using the popular press for insolent disobedience to sovereign authority.

The affair removed in a trice protection from above. Relentless pursuit followed. By 16 November, some 200 persons had been arrested, of whom twenty-four were condemned to death. The majority were humble people; some were ribbon-makers returning from Germany with proscribed books. The harsh *ordonnance* of 29 January 1535 followed, but soon calm and moderation returned. By the *déclaration* of Coucy (16 July 1535), the king offered an amnesty provided the fugitives abjured within six months. At the same time, he forbade anyone 'to read, dogmatise, translate, compose or print, either in public or in private, any doctrine contrary to the Christian faith'. This closed the affair, but marked a divide in the evolution of the Reformation.

This became clear with the emergence of a more radical, uncompromising section in the mainstream of humanistic consensus, the *Sacramentaires*. The dispute between Luther and Carlstadt was already a decade old; the Marburg debate between Luther and Zwingli had taken place in 1529, and the latter had died two years afterwards on the battlefield of Kappel. Now the radicals in France came to public notice. The text of the placard is attributed to Antoine de Marcourt, originally from Lyons, a *docteur* of the Sorbonne, formerly in the printing trade in Lyons, and then appointed by Guillaume Farel as first minister of Neuchâtel (1531). A month after the appearance of the placards, he published his *Petit Traicté très utile et salutaire de la Saincte eucharistie de N.S. Jésu-Christ* (Neuchâtel, November 1534), which bore a striking resemblance to the text of the placards. As often happens in significant moments in history, the full impact emerged slowly, leading away from the humanism of the past, but there were two particular aspects to be noticed. First, a growing radicalism in doctrine went along with detachment from the state. This anticipated the position later assumed by Calvin in the further development of the Reformation. And second, the government had until this point pursued heresy in France with ancient laws originally passed under Philip Augustus (1165–1223) and Louis IX (1215–70). Now there was a fresh departure with the repressive ordonnance of 29 January 1535, specifically against Lutherans. Although the *déclaration* of Coucy offered a return to moderation, a distinct change had been made in the legislative treatment of heresy.

Whatever else may have contributed to restore momentary calm,

developments in Italy certainly played a part, enough at least to distract the royal attention abroad. On 24 October 1535, came the death of Francesco Sforza, the last of the dukes of Milan. His lands lay across a main access route to the Peninsula, and this coveted advantage led to another dispute between Valois and Habsburgs. Francis I asserted a claim acquired through Claude de France from the concessions (in 1504 and 1509) by the Emperor Maximilian to her father Louis XII. To increase the pressure, the Most Christian King made an alliance with the infidel Turk (March 1536) to create a rearguard diversion. His armies then stormed and took Turin (April 1536), but the war dragged on until the contestants at last agreed to patch up their differences in the Truce (rather than Treaty) of Nice (18 June 1538), officially to last ten years. Whatever the chagrin of the moment, the agreement influenced the course of religious affairs in France, for at a subsequent meeting in Aigues Mortes in the following August the two monarchs agreed to fight the spread of heresy. The policy of repression thus sharpened and the protest it aroused can be seen in the anti-royalist song (1546) by Eustorg de Beaulieu (*c.* 1510–65):

> Je ne croy point qu'un tel Prince ne sente
> Quelque malheur et que Dieu ne l'absente
> De plus regner, veu ses férocitez;
> Tant qu'il perdra ses villes et citez,
> Et sera mis dehors par main puissante.

The heightened persecution coloured the closing years of the reign of Francis I. The last decade deteriorated into a chronicle of tragic acts out of all keeping with the genial composure of twenty years before. The edict of December 1538 had ordered the sovereign courts to give 'tel ordre, soing et regard pour tout leur ressort, sur ceulx qui sont entachez desdictes hérésies'. The *déclaration* of 24 June 1539 and the edict of Fontainebleau of June 1540 entrusted the repression of heresy to lay judges, that is to the *parlements*. The commissioners setting off on circuit in 1545 showed the orders being put into effect. Francis I carried out a major reform of the judicial system in the edict of Villers-Cotterêts (August 1539), which in the section dealing with the strikes of printers in Paris and Lyons stated that 'sur l'humble supplication de nos bien aimés les maîtres imprimeurs des livres de notre bonne ville et cité de Paris, contenant que pour acquérir science à l'honneur et louange de Dieu notre créateur, et maintention soutènement et delation de la saincte foi catholique et sainte chrétienté par l'universel monde et décoration de notre royaume'.

How that was achieved is a long story. Suffice it to say that the catalogue of victims lengthened. In 1542, the Sorbonne drew up a list of proscribed books; in 1543, it finalised the twenty-four articles of Catholic faith which Francis I accepted without demur (23 July 1543). In 1544, it

enlarged the list of forbidden books. All these attacks on the Protestant
Reformation received confirmation in the Treaty of Crépy (18 September
1544) in which Francis I solemnly renewed his promise to fight heresy.
This became evident in the crushing of the Vaudois, already decided by
decree (18 November 1540), but now carried out with ferocity against the
inhabitants of Cabrières and Mérindol (1545). One estimate counted 3,000
victims of whom some 250 were executed. In August the next year,
Etienne Dolet, famous as printer and humanist, was condemned and
burned in Paris in the Place Maubert. Another *cause célèbre*, this time a
raid on a conventicle in the house of Etienne Mengin in Meaux which led
to some sixty arrests. Fourteen did not repent and were burned in a circle
of stakes in the market place (7 October 1546). Francis I himself died on
31 March 1547 after a reign begun in brilliance but closed in cruelty.

Henry II lost a father and gained a crown on his own birthday. He was just
twenty-eight and said to be very religious. The monarchy changed in
person but not in policies. If anything, repression deepened. The history of
Protestantism in France now entered a decisive stage.

The crux of the matter lay in the rigorous doctrines of Calvin. Jean
Calvin, or Cauvin (1509–64), was born in Noyon, Picardy, the second son
of Gérard Cauvin, a diligent diocesan official, from a family which
originated in Pont-l'Evêque. Evidently they were not averse to contro-
versy – his *arriviste* father was excommunicated after a dispute over his
accounts (1529) and later, likewise, his brother. And Calvin himself was
no stranger to nepotism and clerical wire-pulling for he received a
cathedral benefice, more a scholarship, at the age of twelve, was chaplain
of Sainte-Martin-de-Martheville at the precocious age of eighteen and
then *curé* at Pont-l'Evêque the following year. In the destiny of the
Reformation in France, his personality was of outstanding importance
and deserves special mention. He was an *homme du nord*, undemonstra-
tive, dedicated, given to silence, but deeply motivated. Unlike Luther,
unlike Zwingli and Carlstadt, he grew up in a divided Christendom; and
crucially for the Reformation in France, he was French by birth and
upbringing, by speech and mental furniture. Even when he lived abroad,
his publications slipped across the frontiers and quickly found a wide
clientele. His numerous letters went to groups and militants in the
provinces, here with advice and encouragement, there with plans and
orders, forming a generation and establishing a sect in his own name. As
his thinking matured and his prose-style acquired that remarkable Gallic
limpidity, his teaching became a driving, dynamic force. His ideas
expressed in the vernacular had immediate access to the minds of radicals.

The customary date for the rapid diffusion of his teaching is the

appearance of his *Institutio religionis Christianae*. The title recalled the *Institutio ecclesiae Christianae* (1521) of Erasmus. The manuscript was finished in Latin, probably on 23 August 1535, a mere ten months after the affair of the placards; but the printer completed his task in March 1536. It went through many revisions and reprintings, nine more during Calvin's lifetime, a few in Strassburg but mostly in Geneva. And it grew in size: while the 1536 edition had six chapters, the last in 1559, which he revised in person (printed in Geneva and regarded as definitive) had eighty. The French version of 1541, which used the second edition of 1539, had seventeen chapters. It is significant that this edition was even more in demand than that in Latin, running through some fifteen impressions in Calvin's lifetime, all but two after 1551. As version followed version, his thought matured, became more refined, and at the same time more rigorous and authoritative, even authoritarian. Together with his influential *Confession de Foi* (1559), he set out the dependence on the gospels. This received formal approval from the General Synod in Paris (28 May 1559) that 'tout ceste Escriture Saincte est compromise ès livres canoniques du vieil et nouveau Testament'.

It would not be possible in this allotted space to explain all the nuances of his thought. His theology on predestination and election, on the sufficiency of the Scriptures for salvation, and on two sacraments of baptism and of the eucharist or Lord's Supper in both kinds were fundamental to the destiny of his sect. In the divine mystery of the Lord's Supper, he maintained that the giving of bread and wine were symbols of the body and blood of Christ but were more than remembrance for they imparted the Spirit of Christ. The General Synod in Paris (1559) followed this doctrine 'par la vertu secrète et incompréhensible de son Esprit, il nous nourrit et vivifie de la substance de son corps et de son sang. Nous tenons bien que cela se fait spirituellement . . . pource qu'il est céleste, il ne peut estre apprehendé que par foy.' At the political level, the organisation of his sect decided in advance the further development of the Reformation in France. It was Presbyterian, each community being ruled by a consistory of an elected minister, elders, and deacons, in the style of the City of God in Geneva. This cellular structure imparted a flexible, almost revolutionary, capacity to resist frontal attack, but it also conflicted with the central authority of the king.

The reign of Henry II marked a watershed in the destiny of the country. The late sixteenth century presented an image very different from that which existed a century before – in human size, horizons, knowledge of the world, hopes and aspirations. In the 1550s, long-term trends began to make themselves clear. A sign of the changing tempo of life can be seen in handwriting. We have only to compare the journals of two notaries who

served the Lyons fairs, Dorlin in the 1530s to 1550s and De la Forest in the 1560s to 1580s to see the increasing cursiveness of their scripts and the general quickening press of affairs. In the mid-century, France approached the verge of living with a population of twenty millions and all that that pressure of numbers implied. Land hunger drove peasants to edge into the forests, and against this the early ordinances of Francis I had shown the restraining hand of authority. After the mid-century also, the prices of food and other necessities rose rapidly under a combination of inflationary forces – money, war, transfer costs, land-rents, taxes ... in brief, the characteristic signs of excess demand. What tensions existed in the countryside were even more apparent in the towns. Changes occurred in the cloth trades and their marketing; the older draperies faced competition from lighter cloths with their different manufacture, which particularly affected cities such as Rouen with competition from cottage industries. Then there were new lines such as printing. The strike of printers in Lyons (1539) provided a sudden glimpse into the intricacies of industrial stress. In the so-called crisis of the mid-century, elements of lethargy from the past combined with new and creative lines for the future.

After 1540, even more clearly after 1550, the regional mosaic of France began to change, as some provincial capitals or central places lost position while others appeared to gain. Towns along the great highways were specially vulnerable to such adjustments, and when we speak of towns we can also imply heresy. Humanism and Reformation in France were an intrinsic part of urban living, sharing in prosperity and decline, in the social contrasts of poverty and wealth, in resenting taxes and other fiscal levies which disrupted communal equanimity. At the onset of the Reformation, it is remarkable how widespread and diffuse were the expressions of religious dissent. The role of the great 'continental' cities was much in evidence: Meaux, Tours, Amboise, Bourges, Troyes, Montpellier, Dijon, Lyons. The wealthy trading city of Lyons was a good example. It had thriving quarterly fairs, which in the late fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries made it a great international clearing-house where dealers gathered from the four corners of Europe, and at the same time the financial capital of France. The so-called bankruptcy of 1557 shook its credit and reputation, and two decades later an even greater crisis in 1575 confirmed a disruption rather than permanent eclipse of its affairs. Elsewhere, Paris and Rouen shared these crises and they too had special problems. It could not be said that all was well with France in the mid sixteenth century; rather the nation faced a range of difficulties apparently without immediate remedy.

In the years 1540–60 – these dates must be taken as approximate – the Mediterranean region continued to have important centres of activity, but elsewhere selected provinces turned progressively towards the Atlantic.

The great geographical discoveries opened the oceans and naturally some regions benefited more than others. The trade of the maritime cities grew as the nations bordering on the North Sea took advantage of the opportunities for commercial expansion. France had much to offer – wines of quality, salt, grain in time of plenty, and excellent manufactures of cloths, linens, metals, and paper. In return, there were imports of luxuries, and, being adjacent to Spain, bullion and specie. The huge influx of silver from America, directed through the Casa de la Contratación in Seville, was a dominant trend in the second half of the sixteenth century. This wave reached Antwerp and the northern markets in the winter of 1553–4, gradually squeezing out the trade in German silver. Monetary history provides some evidence of the changing regional emphasis in France;[1] the Atlantic ports in the provinces of Guyenne, Brittany and Normandy were among the first to draw direct benefit. Such commercial development called for unexpected adjustments in a society in which agrarian pursuits and wealth still predominated. As the Reformation became more radical, so the new ideas arrived in a land of great diversity and in the course of profound change.

The studies of Marc Bloch have shown how one region differed from another, how the individualistic village systems in Brittany, lower Normandy and the Midi contrasted with the more composite settlements in the Ile-de-France. When expansion took place, it required time for the tentacles of government to catch up with new areas of growth. Maritime cities had access to the freedom of the seas, and this also meant contacts with Reformist influences in England and the Low Countries, and through the Low Countries in Germany. In contrast, in the continental cities, established groups reasserted control with comparative ease and closed the ranks. There remains a great paradox to explain in the diffusion of the Reformation in France. It would seem logical enough that the regions closest to the direct influence of Germany and Switzerland should have offered the toughest and most persistent resistance. Once open to Lutheran teaching, however, the provinces of Champagne and Burgundy became indifferent, even hostile, to Calvinistic ideas. They fell by default under the influence of the powerful feudal dynasty of the Guises, forming with adjacent Lorraine a broad corridor of Counter-Reformation leading from Italy to the Low Countries and controlled by Spain. In the northern and eastern regions, the Reformist communities seemed to lose control, although pockets here and there held out. Paris gradually asserted its authority and encompassed Rouen. At the outbreak of the civil wars (1562), the latter city was in open revolt and even welcomed foreign troops

1 See F. C. Spooner, *The International Economy and Monetary Movements in France, 1493–1725* (1972), chapter 4.

to confront the king; but it soon returned to loyal allegiance and by the 1580s shared with Paris the honour of being one of the 'eyes of the Catholic League'.

By contrast, in the Midi and south-west the Protestants became deeply entrenched. We have only to look once more at the edict of April 1598, by which the Huguenots retained some forty-eight hostage towns, four-fifths of them in the *généralités* of Bordeaux, Poitiers, and Montpellier; and five free cities, namely Montauban, Sainte-Foy, Nîmes, Uzès, and La Rochelle. The edict, after all, was signed in a great maritime city – Nantes.

Such alignments in the provincial balance of France reflected some measure of the mounting tension in the economy and society. However, even the most cursory description of such very complex processes of fundamental change calls for the utmost caution. The full information to clarify the issues is not available. Nevertheless, in the formation of these trends, the years covered by the reign of Henry II played a significant part.

Domestic considerations alone did not decide the outcome of his reign. France could not escape the power struggle in Europe, a struggle for both dominion and religion. Indeed, France became caught in the backwash of events in the empire. The Peace of Augsburg (25 September 1555) combined religious and territorial settlements. Princes and Imperial cities gained the right to decide their worship, and if necessary, under the *ius reformandi*, to adopt Protestantism. Thus, the schism started by Luther won recognition, justified so it seemed by collaborating with civil authority. The hostilities between Henry II and Charles V, however, were costly on both sides and stretched credit to the limit in the great financial markets. It is easier to understand the religious peace in the light of the immediate sequels: the Truce of Vaucelles (5 February 1556) between France and the empire; the abdication of Charles V (25 October 1555 for the Low Countries, and 16 January 1556 for Spain and her dependencies); and the financial crises (1557) when both Henry II and Philip II of Spain admitted in public that they could not pay their creditors. The affairs of Europe dragged on into the attrition of diplomacy which heralded a general pacification. The Treaty of Cateau-Cambrésis (1–3 April 1559), one of the great settlements in the history of Europe, effectively closed for France a cycle of wars with the empire and above all for Italy. It opened with another hand a Franco-German dialogue, presaged by the acquisition of the three bishoprics of Metz, Toul, and Verdun; and the growing competition with nations along the North Sea, signalled by the capture of the port of Calais. At the same time, peace abroad served only to divert attention to the domestic conflicts in France.

The Peace of Augsburg finally set the revolt of Luther within the bounds of sovereign power, *cuius regio, eius religio*. Ominously, it made no concessions to Calvinists, nor even to sects, which preferred to organise

militant cells and reject the claims of territory or rather of national obligations. And so began in earnest the long and unremitting contest between two revivalist armies, formed under the discipline of two great leaders: Jean Calvin and Don Iñigo López de Loyola (1491–1556), later beatified (1609) and canonised (1622), Saint Ignatius. Their struggle passed without interruption to their successors, a conflict written indelibly in the religious history of Europe, indeed of the world.

At this point, it is rewarding to consider them in more detail for although in diametric opposition they proposed solutions which bore remarkable similarities. Both knew France intimately, both were formed by their student days in Paris. They may even have met in the Collège Montaigu; it would have been a strange encounter indeed! But if not in person, at least in intellect, for Calvin went there some time after 1523 and received the degree of *Magister artium* in 1528. Ignatius de Loyola arrived that year. He later moved to the Collège Sainte-Barbe and took his degree of *Magister artium* in 1534. Then, on 15 August, he made vows with companions in the chapel of Sainte-Marie at Montmartre, and so began the Society of Jesus. Pope Paul III gave it approval, verbally at Tivoli (3 September 1539) and formally in the bull *Regimini militanti Ecclesiae* (27 September 1540). Ignatius de Loyola was the first superior general and when he died the Society mustered almost a thousand members and a world organisation of twelve divisions in Europe, the Far East, Brazil, and Ethiopia. It would not be possible to understand the religious tensions in the mid sixteenth century without noting the dynamic force with which the Society grew. By 1626, it numbered 15,544 members; it could hardly grow again with such extraordinary verve. At the same time, over the centuries which followed, there were superior generals of the Society promoted from Italy and Spain, later occasionally from Belgium, but none from France.

For Calvin, the year 1534 was also decisive, the moment of revelation when he broke with the Catholic church. On 4 May, he renounced his two benefices; and after the affair of the placards fled to Strassburg, taking with him the manuscript of the *Institutio*. Both men began characteristically by rejecting some past modes of conduct, the formality of monastic robes, and above all the constraints of national sovereignty, which in France was enshrined in the territorial commitments to the Gallican church. They found their strength in flexibility, in groups and enclaves which were well ordered, well instructed, better informed. It seemed only natural, therefore, that both recognised the commanding influence of education and the printed word. The printing-presses of Geneva found universal recognition and in 1559 Calvin established the Academy, promoted later to the University of Geneva. For Loyola the founding of colleges was a driving necessity and they were justly famous. The 1550s

saw the establishment of two outstanding foundations in Rome: the Collegium Romanum (1551) and the Collegium Germanicum (1552).

In Paris, the way to found a college was not so smooth. There was certainly support from the cardinal of Lorraine who pushed the project forward. By letters patent (January 1551), Henry II gave permission to 'construire, des biens qui leur sont aumônés, une maison ou collège en la ville de Paris', but it became a reality only a decade later.

At the time, the king was hardly a free agent. There were pressing reasons of state to weaken his resolve. War with Charles V loomed and Henry II connived with Maurice of Saxony and the other Protestant princes in Germany. These liaisons came into the open only with the last of the great Valois–Habsburg wars (1552–59). The moment was hardly propitious for a Jesuit college in Paris; in August 1551, it precipitated a real Gallican crisis. Both *parlement* and the Sorbonne fiercely opposed recognition of the Society and the threat it presented to the Gallican church, for the Jesuits did not share the same national and nationalist commitments. After the initial upheaval of war (which began with the French seizure of the three bishoprics), Henry II returned to the task, issuing new letters patent (10 January 1553) and then direct *lettres de jussion*. The Sorbonne kept obstinately to its opposition to the Society (1 December 1554), and with such effect that the royal decrees did not have final registration by the *assemblée du clergé* until September 1561, and then on the eve of civil war. Outside Paris, the Society made more immediate progress. It received the informed support of Guillaume Du Prat (1507–60), bishop of Clermont (by inheritance at the age of twenty-one). He had been involved in the plans to found the first Jesuit college in Paris, and had even offered a house there belonging to his bishopric (this eventually became the Collège de Clermont, and later Louis-le-Grand). In 1555, in his own diocese, he founded the famous Jesuit college at Billom. The influence of the theologians trained in these colleges reached far. From the end of the century, they became the royal confessors. And not least, they transformed the Sorbonne itself. In December 1603, *parlement* sent a *remonstrance* to Henry IV which pointed to the powerful influence of Jesuit education: 'lors de leur establissement, ils n'avoient point de plus grand adversaire que la Sorbonne; à présent, elle leur est favorable, parce qu'un nombre de jeunes théologiens ont faict leurs estudes en leurs collèges'.

The transition from Francis I to Henry II brought little change in government policy. Persecution and repression were the order of the day. On 20 July 1546, Francis I banned the remarkably fine Bibles of Robert Estienne. In the same vein, the edict of Fontainebleau (December 1547) forbade printers and booksellers to print and sell books without the express permission of the Sorbonne, and particularly mentioned those

coming from Germany and Geneva. On 3 December 1547, Henry II ordered *parlement* to administer 'bonne justice et principalement sur le faict des Luthériens'. However, the radicals were already moving beyond the positions of Luther.

As the troubles deepened, the king felt it necessary to apply even harsher measures. For summary justice, he revived within the *parlement* (2 May 1548) the dreaded *Chambre ardente*, originally an *ad hoc* court meeting by candlelight which now became more concerned with martyrs' fires. It had extensive jurisdiction – in Champagne, Brie, Ile-de-France, Picardy, Maine, Anjou, Touraine, Poitou, Aunis, Angoumois, Beauce, Orléannais, Sologne, Berry, Nivernais, Lyonnais, Forez, Auvergne, Bourbonnais, Morvan and Maconnais. Then came the edict of Châteaubriant (June 1551) with forty-six articles. While leaving minor cases to the ecclesiastical courts, it assigned crimes of sedition to the newly appointed *juges présidiaux* and put heavy restrictions on the printing and publishing trades. Nevertheless, once more the hands of the king were not entirely free. When by edict (July 1557) he attempted to set up a tribunal of inquisition with three members, *parlement* offered strenuous objections, and so did the Swiss cantons and the German princes – an unusual alliance of interests. Later, a *déclaration* (February 1559) punished heretics as criminals.

The catalogue of protest serves to show how Calvinism spread through French society. On the one hand, it found support among the lesser nobility – for example, Antoine de Bourbon, Louis de Condé his brother, the nephews Montmorency – often of a younger generation, aged about forty or less. However, the Reformation made little progress in two social strata – among officials and office-holders; and among peasants, so widely dispersed and predominant a section of society. Indeed, it became a wide-ranging popular and largely urban movement (at least that is a conclusion we can draw from the cases coming before the *Chambre ardente*). In the late 1550s, Protestantism made rapid progress. After 1553, preachers trained in Geneva began to infiltrate the towns and provinces, spreading the gospel according to Geneva, organising conventicles, creating a surge of spiritual sentiment of great significance. In that year, Philibert Hamelin reached Saintonge. In 1555, De Launay and François de Morel arrived in Paris and established a church. Other groups of Calvinists gave signs of life – in 1553 in Poitiers and Angers; in 1556 in Bourges; in 1557 in Blois, Rouen, Caen, La Rochelle, Lyons, Aix, Bordeaux, Issoudun, Anduze; in 1558 in Dieppe, Le Havre, Tours, Saintes, Montargis, Saint-Jean-d'Angély, Marseilles, Bergerac, Sainte-Foy, Montoire-sur-le-Loir; in 1559 in Nantes, Tarascon, Gap, Valence, Gien, Villefranche, Châteauroux, Thouars, Nérac. Between 1555 and 1562, some eighty-eight pastors reached France from Geneva. An estimate of 1558 put the number of

churches with ministers at thirty-four. In 1561, Admiral Coligny claimed, according to Cathérine des Médicis, that there were 2,150. Whatever the figure, their presence became clear when a general synod composed of seventy-two churches from Normandy, the Loire, and Poitou gathered in Paris (26–29 May 1559) with François de Morel as president. It created an outline for a Protestant church in France, meeting under the very eyes of the Sorbonne. The expansive force of the movement astonished contemporaries, even Calvin himself. In 1560, he wrote uneasily to his followers in Montélimar that 'nous vous prions de vous tenir restreints . . . nous ne voyons pas qu'il soit requis vous advancer si fort. Plus tost il nous semble qu'il suffit bien que vous taschiez et mettiez peine d'augmenter le trouppeau et recueillir les povres brebis esparses et cependant vous tenir quois, sans rien changer pour les temples.' It was remarkably sound advice from the uncompromising old man in Geneva, who himself had experienced the heavy hand of established order. But those in Montélimar showed little inclination to follow his counsel. Over France as a whole, the train of events was leaving moderation behind, slipping out of the control of men and nations.

The fate of the Protestants lay in the alternation of war abroad and upheaval at home. In 1556, France agreed to a truce; and that at a time when the harvest failed, sending food prices soaring. In Paris the July 1557 price of best wheat was more than double that of two years earlier. Heretics were blamed and Henry II made a firm resolve to settle for peace and clean up his kingdom. The import of the change in hostilities was not lost on the leaders in Geneva, that an end to the war in Germany would open the gates to persecution. Jean Macard, newly arrived in Paris from Geneva, quickly warned Calvin on 17 August 1558 of the impending menace, 'si le Roi obtient la paix, il engagera, comme il l'affirme, tout son âme et tous ses biens dans une guerre contre les luthériens [sic] pour détruire jusqu'à la racine et leur race et leur nom'. On 3 April 1559, the Treaty of Cateau-Cambrésis received the final signatures and settled peace on Italy and with the Catholic powers. It gave Henry II the freedom to take insurgence in hand. The edict of Ecouen (June 1559) declared war on the Protestants 'nous ne voullons aulcunement estre troublés par les damnés entreprises des hérèticques ennemys de nostre dicte foy et religion'. In the summer of 1559, Henry was adamantly set on breaking the momentum of Calvinistic reform.

Then came an event to throw everything into uncertainty. On 29 June 1559, Henry II met with injury while jousting with the Comte de Montgomery at the wedding feast for his daughter Elisabeth de France (1545–68) and Philip II of Spain. His Renaissance predilection for ostentation proved his undoing: on 10 July he was dead. Nobles grieved; the populace rejoiced. The weak minority of Francis II led into political

vacillation and civil war. The significance of this turn of events can be seen in the case of Anne du Bourg (*c.* 1520–59), a nephew of Antoine du Bourg, formerly president of the Paris *parlement* and Chancelier de France. A former professor of civil law in Orleans and then in 1557 *conseiller-clerc* in the *parlement* of Paris, he was summoned along with others in April 1559 to explain his conduct. In a long discourse, he pleaded with great sincerity that Lutherans were both God-fearing and loyal to the king. Henry II nevertheless clapped him in the Bastille and the interregnum sealed his fate. *Parlement* convicted him on 21 December and to forestall an intervention from the Count Palatine had him executed and burned two days later at the Hôtel-de-Ville. According to Florimond de Raemond (*c.* 1540–1601), 'tout Paris s'estonna de la constance de cet homme', a martyr from *parlement*.

And so by 1559, the Huguenots had the makings of an identity: a theology in the definitive edition of the *Institution*; a Bible in the vernacular; a confession of faith; a popular psalter; a general synod; a roll of martyrs in Jean Crespin's *Le Livres des Martyrs ... depuis Jean Hus jusques à cette année présente* (Geneva 1554); a leader of intellect in Jean Calvin under the sounding-board of Geneva, so near to France. All this formed a religious sect, but it faced the combined strength of monarchy and Gallican church and so aggravated a political dilemma: who should rule in France?

The emblem of Francis I was a salamander breathing flames with the motto *nutrisco et exstinguo*. The Reformation, like the salamander, burst into a fire which ultimately he, his son, and his son's sons could not quench. The religious map of France changed in colour as Protestantism spread and won adherents. After the third civil war (1569), they retreated to the south, towards the Atlantic, finding a stronghold in La Rochelle. There, the access to the oceans turned in their favour bringing allies from other countries. Such a simplification can be made only with the greatest caution, for we lack the evidence for full corroboration. Few can doubt, however, that the Reformation wrote a great enigma into the history of France. In the end, it endured but did not prevail, even when Huguenot troops performed heroic feats of valour and fortitude. Rather the Gallican church took over the contest. Drawing on the doctrinal resurgence of the Council of Trent, in all but name the Catholic Reformation, it moved from strength to strength, won back the initiative, and finally remained supreme in the spiritual heartland and destiny of France.

CHAPTER X

THE REFORMATION IN ENGLAND

NGLAND, as is notorious, wore her Reformation with a difference. While elsewhere a religious upheaval carried in its wake political and constitutional reconstruction, England's march away from Rome was led by the government for reasons which had little to do with religion or faith. There are of course circumstances, feelings and passions, as well as indifferences which explain the English Reformation. The dislike of priests and the pretensions of the church, which appeared all over western Europe, had not left England untouched. A whole folklore of the disreputable cleric testifies to a common opinion whose significance is quite independent of its accuracy. The abuses of the church – simony, nepotism, pluralism, ostentatious wealth, corruption, worldliness – gave pause to good orthodox Christians like Thomas More who only started to deny them when denunciation had become linked with heresy. Since 1515, Thomas Wolsey, the great cardinal,[1] had governed church and state and had given a concrete and comprehensive example of all that was wrong with the former. Like his master, the pope, he had done the work of this world and paid merely formal attention to the work of the next. The extenuating circumstances which later ages may discover – his buildings, his patronage of the arts and learning, his tolerance – seemed to his own age only to aggravate his unashamed worldliness. There were truer Christians among the English clergy than Wolsey, but both in high places and in low, among the bishops and in the parishes, the not-so-spiritual greatly outnumbered the rest. A bench of bishops, promotion to which had for two centuries lain through royal service, through the careers of the lawyer, the diplomat, and the civil servant, could indeed be (as it was) a model of efficiency, hard work, even rectitude; but it was unlikely to offer much spiritual guidance or even undertake the reform of undoubted abuses. Bred in the system, the rulers of the church necessarily perpetuated it.

To this general dislike of priests – this refusal to be any longer ruled by them – the laity added other more obvious desires. The church excited

---

1 Thomas Wolsey (c. 1475–1530), son of an Ipswich grazier, fellow and bursar of Magdalen College (Oxford), king's almoner 1509, bishop of Lincoln and archbishop of York 1514, chancellor 1515, papal legate 1516, etc., etc. He derived his eminence from offices granted by both king and pope, but though he paid lip-service to the latter it was really on the former that his power depended.

262

hatred by the wealth it had and the wealth it sought. About one-third of England's lands was in ecclesiastical hands: great lords like the abbot of St Albans or the bishop of Winchester (both of which benefices Wolsey added to his archbishopric of York) controlled larger revenues than any temporal nobleman. The gentry, who had obtained the use of much monastic land on lease, now wished to convert their rights into true tenure; schemes of expropriation had a long history. The current exactions of the church, in particular the tithe, caused constant resentment. The fees taken by the clergy in the performance of their office and especially for burials (mortuary fees), and the revenues collected by the ecclesiastical courts, had come under attack on many occasions in the previous centuries. The courts, once so useful, were by this time mostly hated. Supposedly corrupt, dilatory and incomprehensible, they also represented a degree of interference in private lives that could not be paralleled on the secular side. Moreover, they stood for that fatal thing: the church as a separate organisation, a state within the realm.

All these feelings, ancient but none the less vigorous and in fact increasing in strength, are commonly summed up under the title of anticlericalism. Assuredly England was anticlerical: it had little respect, much dislike, and often virulent hatred for all the institutions of the church.[1] The feeling was particularly marked in the populous south, especially in London, where a famous case of 1514–15 demonstrated its strength. A London merchant, Richard Hunne, arrested on suspicion of heresy, was found hanged in the bishop's prison. The bishop swore it was suicide; a coroner's jury accused the jailer and the bishop's chancellor of murder. There ensued uproar and rioting in the city and in Parliament, and though the chancellor escaped with a fine the church came ill out of the affair. Hunne's real crime was that he had appealed to secular jurisdiction against an excessive mortuary fee, and the unpleasing attempt to rig the record by burning his dead body for heresy is a sad reflection on the state of mind of the clergy. Hunne was not forgotten when Parliament at last got its chance of attacking the church.

It is, however, important to remember that all this anticlericalism did not mean that heresy was rampant in England. On the whole, the nation, in any case more formally than profoundly pious, adhered to orthodoxy. Lollardy, the last decline of Wycliffe's scholastic attack 150 years earlier, played only a small part in the Reformation. More formidable was the newer heresy of Lutheranism which was beginning to spread at the universities. In 1524 William Tyndale fled the country, to publish an

---

1 Recent attempts to deny a role to anticlerical feelings have been sufficiently answered by A. G. Dickens, 'The shape of anticlericalism and the English Reformation', *Politics and Society in Reformation Europe*, ed. E. I. Kouri and T. Scott (1987), 379–410.

English translation of the Bible and lead the stirrings of English Protestantism from abroad. (In 1536 he was caught and burned by the Imperial authorities.) In Cambridge, a discussion group dubbed 'Little Germany' began the academic response to Luther's teaching; when Wolsey transferred some Cambridge divines to staff his new college at Oxford, he inadvertently infected the other university. The bishops tried to do their duty, and the martyrology of the Church of England begins in these years with men like Thomas Bilney and John Frith. Wolsey's secular temper kept the persecution in check; after his fall in 1529, Thomas More, the layman who succeeded him as chancellor, encouraged the bishops to act. But all in all, while the Church of England may rightly look back to Tyndale, Tyndale would have remained a lost voice in the wilderness but for the king who hated him and whose beliefs were set down in his book against Luther (*Assertio Septem Sacramentorum*, 1521), for which pious and moderately learned work a grateful pope had given him the title of Defender of the Faith. English anticlericalism was secular, not evangelical. Nor should we look to intellectual movements for a cause of the Reformation. England had heard of the 'new learning', of the humanist revolution in the schools, as much as any country; had she not harboured Erasmus, and had not Erasmus and his friends looked to the young Henry VIII as to their great patron? But the first generation of English humanists remained true to the church; in More and Fisher they supplied two of the very few martyrs of the papal cause. If the English Reformation began as a movement neither of the spirit nor of the mind, it was none the less devastating, enduring, and deserving of respect.

The real mainspring of the Reformation was political. All the anticlericalism of the people, supported by such nationalist objections to a foreign pope's interference in England as might be found, would not have led to a break with Rome if the Crown had not thought it necessary to deal with the papal control of the church. For the church represented a franchise, a liberty in the medieval sense, independent in its laws, its courts, and its sway over the spiritual life of Englishmen. English kings always had means of interfering in ecclesiastical affairs: they taxed the clergy and by agreement shared in the appointment of the hierarchy. But, as Henry VIII was to discover with an unconvincing air of surprise, the clergy owed allegiance to two masters. The English church did not in strict accuracy exist at all; there were only the two provinces of Canterbury and York, parts of the universal Latin church subject to the monarchical rule of Rome. The court of Rome drew a very large number of cases each year from England by appeal or revocation; the canon law of England was the canon law of Rome; the English clergy paid sizeable revenues to Rome. In the fourteenth century, when kings and lords in England had found their rights of patronage threatened by the growing papal habit of 'providing'

incumbents for benefices all over Europe, legislation was passed to protect the 'regality' of the Crown against such invasion – the acts of provisors and praemunire about whose restricted intention so much uncertainty prevailed that the sixteenth century was able to use them in a novel and sweeping manner. But throughout the fifteenth century and later, the English Crown maintained the friendliest relations with Rome, and England was the most papalist of countries. Henry VIII's effort against Luther and the pope's bestowal of the famous title only continued a well-established tradition of co-operation, at that time visibly embodied in Wolsey's position as Henry's chancellor and the pope's legate. If anyone suffered from this bland agreement it was the English church, polled and harried by both its masters.

It is, of course, true that there were occasional difficulties in the relationship, especially over those liberties of the church which went contrary to the energetic royal policy of consolidation. The clerical privileges of benefit of clergy and sanctuary endangered the restoration of order, the first by allowing every criminal who could claim to be even in minor orders his first crime free, and the second by offering refuges to escaping criminals in general. Legislation to limit the evil effects of these rights was passed both under Henry VII and in the early years of Henry VIII, and a law of 1512, which deprived those in minor orders of their clergy, served to provoke a conflict which revealed the latent troubles. In 1515 Robert Winchcombe, abbot of Kidderminster, preached a sermon against it, to find himself answered by Henry Standish, a friar and later bishop of St Asaph. Convocation tried to proceed against Standish who sought the king's protection, and in the course of the ensuing debate Henry had occasion to remark ominously that kings of England had never had superiors on earth. Patently he had neither doubts nor surprise in the matter: it had never occurred to him that any power outside England could possibly thwart him.

It is not too much to say that the Reformation got under way when he found that in this he was wrong. The gentry and nobility might resent clerical wealth, the people might despise priests and hate the tithe and fear the summoner who called them to the incomprehensible and annoying processes of the archdeacon's court, but while the king stood by the pope the church was safe – safe from both reform and Reformation. The importance of Henry's desire to divorce Catherine of Aragon is just this: it turned the king from the pope's protector into the pope's foremost enemy. Thus it released the feelings against church and pope which had hitherto been impotent to break down the defences behind which this 'foreign potentate' sheltered. Without the divorce there would therefore have been no Reformation, which is not at all the same thing as to say that there was nothing to the Reformation but the divorce. The strength and rapid

spread of the flood indicate the amount of genuine and spontaneous feeling that underlay the Reformation. Moreover, as the sequel was to show, once England had broken with Rome the purely political beginning of the Reformation very quickly acquired a truly religious and even a truly spiritual companion force.

A word must be said about the attitude of the church itself. Its collapse was neither so sudden nor so uncontested as is commonly supposed, but it was still on the rapid side. Before 1529 no cleric in England (except a few heretics) doubted the papal claim to be, under Christ, supreme head of the church, even as none could assert this claim after 1534 without jeopardy of his life. The church in England may have been Catholic before and after the Reformation, but Anglican it was certainly only after it. At first it had no reason to defend itself, for it was not so much subjected to attack as made to remember that the king had his rights and that it owed some allegiance to the Crown. The battle was lost before ever the pope came under attack. Furthermore, Wolsey had inadvertently prepared the church for its doom. By means of his autocratic legatine administration he had for the first time established some sort of lasting unity in the two provinces; he had weakened the viability of the church by concentrating all power in his hands and turning the bishops into mere agents of his greatness; he had lessened ecclesiastical influence by driving all bishops but himself from the royal counsels;[1] by his unpopularity he had convinced the church itself of the dangers inherent in papal power; finally, in his fall he was to provide the enemy with a useful tactical weapon for reducing the church to subjection. When Wolsey's baleful influence is properly studied, the really surprising thing is not that the church gave in to Henry VIII but that after fifteen years of the cardinal's vigorous and selfish rule it had sufficient strength to resist as much as it did.

Some time in 1527 Henry VIII came to the conclusion that in marrying his brother's widow he had sinned against the divine law. God's wrath, he thought, was manifest in the fate of his offspring. Stillbirths, miscarriages, and deaths in infancy had left him with only one legitimate heir, Mary, now eleven years old. There has been much doubt whether Henry was really concerned with the problem of the succession or merely used it to cover his improper desire for Anne Boleyn and his discreditable disgust with the ageing Catherine. The doubtful and insecure succession certainly troubled him. Neither he nor his nation had yet forgotten the difficulties of

---

1 One curious immediate effect of the Reformation was to strengthen the clerical element in the king's council. Stephen Gardiner, appointed secretary in 1528 and a bishop in 1530, was the first bishop to hold office since Wolsey became chancellor in 1515, and there were on an average four bishops on the council in the 1530s.

the preceding century; if the dynasty, and peace with it, were to be assured, it seemed very necessary for the king to add to his legitimate heirs. At the same time, he unquestionably was in love with Anne. But his own mind did not analyse matters in so rational a fashion, for with all his strong will, quick intelligence and learned interests the king was essentially a man of little depth. He had the egoist's supreme gift, the superb conviction that right is always on his side. Hypocrisy did not enter into it: his conscience invariably, and quite sincerely, amalgamated the demands of reason and desire into an assurance of righteousness. He did not think that he wanted to exchange wives or secure the succession, and had better find a respectable cloak for such desires; he thought that he was sinfully living with Catherine and had better have the matter cleared up. Thus all these points of policy and personality became a question of canon law.

The steps for dissolving an awkward dynastic marriage were clear enough: the pope could declare it null on one of the many grounds provided by canon law, and ordinarily the pope was quite ready to oblige crowned heads of Henry VIII's proven devotion to the Holy See. But in this instance two obstacles appeared. One arose from the circumstances of the marriage: the problem of Catherine's earlier contract to Henry's brother had then, of course, been realised and had been solved by a papal dispensation. Clement VII was therefore being asked to deny his own powers to dispense with the law of Scripture. More important still, soon after Henry first opened negotiations in the matter, the sack of Rome and capture of the pope by imperial troops put Clement in the power of the one man who would force him to refuse Henry's request. Charles V was Catherine's nephew, and both his strong family sense and his belief in dynastic prestige drove him irrevocably to oppose the dissolution of his aunt's marriage.[1] Spanish influence and Clement's timidity were too much for Wolsey. Repeated embassies and two years' negotiations resulted only in the granting of a commission to him and to Cardinal Campeggio to try the case in England, with a secret commission to Campeggio to let the business come to no conclusion. However, apart from showing up Catherine's innate dignity and goodness, the unsavoury proceedings brought no progress. Skilful delays protracted action, till Wolsey was driven desperate by the growing danger that Clement would give in to Spanish pressure, annul the commission, and revoke the case to Rome. The cardinal knew his king well enough to prophesy that such action would bring about his own downfall and with it the fall of the church's independence in England. In July 1529 Wolsey's world collapsed around him. Pressed by Charles V, Clement revoked the case; Campeggio

---

[1] It is sometimes argued that Charles V cannot have cared all that much for a middle-aged aunt, but that is to forget that family feelings were to him the case of policy (cf. p. 342).

prorogued the legatine court till October, or rather till doomsday; and the Peace of Cambrai between France and Spain ended Wolsey's last hope of yet once again reversing the Italian situation.

Thus ended the attempt to settle the divorce by peaceful co-operation with Rome. Its obvious protagonist, the pope's legate, was quickly disposed of: by October Wolsey had full experience of the readiness of princes to discard the unsuccessful councillor. Deserted by all, deprived of the chancellorship, accused of praemunire and threatened with permanent imprisonment, the cardinal threw himself on Henry's mercy. This at least saved him from the vindictiveness of personal enemies and left him with the archbishopric of York, but his political life was at an end. After fifteen years of ruling England and manipulating Europe, he could not believe it. Though he went north to devote himself to his ecclesiastical duties, he never reached York and kept in touch with affairs at London. Within a year his enemies had evidence of burrowings behind the scenes; arrested for conveyance before the council, the old man died on his way south at Leicester Abbey (November 1530). His fall and death mark the end of an order of things.

Having failed to get Rome's co-operation by persuasion and request, Henry now cast about for an alternative policy. Sir Thomas More took the vacant chancellorship, under pressure and in return for a promise that he would not have to involve himself in the business of the divorce. Even though he thus cut himself off from the only political issue that mattered in those years, he had put himself into a disastrously equivocal position from which only martyrdom was to release him. The other ministers inspired little confidence. Among them Stephen Gardiner, principal secretary since 1528, was the ablest; but throughout a career spanning the next twenty-five years, Gardiner could never quite reconcile his sincere devotion to the Tudor Crown with an equally sincere attachment to the pretensions of a political priesthood. For nearly three years Henry virtually devised such policy as there was. His aims remained fixed: a new wife and a safe, legitimate succession; nor could he rid himself of the conviction that both could only be achieved by papal sanction. But since the pope would not please him of his own free will, it was now necessary to force compliance upon him by threats, appeals and hostile demonstrations. The calling of Parliament naturally suggested itself. Like all kings of the Western kingdoms, Henry VIII called Parliament when he thought it might be of use to him, and the awed admiration commonly bestowed on his alleged political genius misses the mark. It would have been surprising if at such a moment of crisis the Estates had not been summoned. This is not to say that Henry did not display considerable skill in using Parliament. He wanted from it ready co-operation and could not, therefore, ask for subsidies; moreover, memories of 1523, when Wolsey's

financial demands had led to a most disturbed and unsatisfactory session, counselled caution. But Parliament eased the difficulties of the Crown (another of Wolsey's legacies) by cancelling the king's debts, and it helped to bring the Church of England to a more compliant frame of mind. The Commons at least remembered not only Richard Hunne but all the many cases in which ecclesiastical abuses of exactions had troubled the laity. The king gave them a chance of freely airing their grievances, and the priests soon felt the terrible alarms which a French envoy had prophesied for them. Committees of lawyers drafted bills limiting mortuary and probate fees and attacking such evils as non-residence, pluralism and the gainful employment of the clergy in secular pursuits. The whole system of church courts came under attack, though for the moment this produced only a passionate remonstrance from John Fisher, bishop of Rochester.

However, this spontaneous outburst of popular resentment did not directly help the king: the divorce made no progress. It now turned on the question whether Clement VII would permit a solution in England or insist on trying the case in Rome (which Henry resolutely refused to contemplate), and nearly three more years were filled with pointless negotiations and recriminations. Henry talked darkly of using Parliament to settle matters, but when his legal advisers declared such spiritual matters outside its competence (December 1530) this single promising line of attack was abandoned. Instead there remained nothing but a bluster which declined in vigour as time passed, attempts to use France as a mediator, and the typical and typically futile enterprise in 1530 to convince the pope by means of the opinions of selected universities that Henry's case was just. This had been suggested by an obscure Cambridge divine, Thomas Cranmer, who was rewarded with an archdeaconry. Though ever since early in 1527 Henry had employed learned men to collect materials designed to buttress both his demand for the annulment of his marriage and his claim that his 'Imperial' crown justified independent action by and in England, neither learning nor propaganda had so far advanced his cause by one inch.

In January 1531, when Parliament and the Convocations met again after a prorogation lasting since December 1529, a step of greater purpose was taken: the whole clergy in their Convocations surrendered to an indictment of praemunire – for exercising their spiritual jurisdiction in despite of the king's rights! – and bought a pardon for £118,000. At the same time they acknowledged Henry as 'their only and supreme lord and, as far as the law of Christ allows, even supreme head'. In this surrender lay the germ of a revolution, but for the moment Henry showed no signs of pressing its implications. According to his own interpretation, the title gave him only temporal and no spiritual rights of headship. The reservation which Fisher and Archbishop Warham had inserted made plain that

the king had not yet replaced the pope as supreme head of the English church, for the law of Christ, however defined, clearly traversed this. Loudly though Henry might thunder, fearful though the clergy and Catherine's supporters might be, Rome would not yield to this shadow-boxing, and even over his own clergy the king had not yet achieved that degree of control which Francis I, for instance, enjoyed by means of the Concordat of 1516. Late in 1531 Henry's evident bankruptcy in ideas produced a crop of rumours that he had decided to abandon the quest.

At this critical moment, however, he found the man who could resolve his difficulties. Thomas Cromwell, late a servant of Wolsey's, who had entered Parliament in 1529 and been working his way up in the king's councils ever since, was a man of low birth and powerful intelligence; he had travelled widely and read widely; one way and another, as a merchant, a solicitor, and Wolsey's general agent, he had acquired a penetrating understanding of the political scene both at home and abroad. Unusually free from preconceived notions, he was capable of taking the most radical decisions and executing them brilliantly; since, in addition, he understood the value of tradition and was devoted to Parliament and the common law, he always built on firm foundations. Once Henry was persuaded that the lawyers (and he himself) had been wrong – that the divorce did not need papal sanction and that Parliament could act in the matter – the way was clear. It is by now manifest that Cromwell did not 'invent' the concepts which were to govern his policies: these had a longish, though largely unproductive, history behind them. Nor did he personally think up every detail of the programme carried out in the 1530s. His vital contribution lay in the pulling together of scattered and varied ideas; adding his own convictions, he transformed debate, doubt and dreams into the reality of the constitutional structure he wished to create – a unitary state and a reformed commonwealth. His intention was to create a selfcontained and selfsufficient realm: a sovereign national state which, using the civilian concept of *imperium* existing in any polity whose ruler did not recognise a superior on earth, he called the empire of England. His own most important contribution to the structure of this state was his understanding that this 'empire' could in England be expressed in the sovereign legislative action of the king in Parliament, embodied in statute. Freeing statute of that older limitation which wished to test it by reference to some external law – the law of nature, the law of Christendom (Thomas More's test) – he held that it was omnicompetent and must be obeyed.

The work was done in four sessions of Parliament. In 1532 Cromwell utilised some of those Commons' grievances of 1529 to force the clergy into surrendering authority over its laws to the Crown (the Submission of the Clergy) and promoted a measure which deprived the pope of the annates or first-fruits from England, though Henry's reluctance to go to

extremes led to the inclusion of a clause which postponed the effect of the act at the king's pleasure. Thus at last the real attack on the papacy had begun, with the undermining of its legislative and financial powers over the church in England. In 1533 the great Act in Restraint of Appeals to Rome destroyed the most important weapon of papal interference in English affairs by prohibiting appeals from courts inside the realm to courts outside it. Its famous preamble outlined Cromwell's theory of the state by describing the empire of England. The two sessions of 1534 completed the work by transferring to the Crown all other papal powers in the church, such as the granting of dispensations, the appointment of bishops, and the right to tax freely. The Act of Supremacy (1534) merely declared that the king was supreme head of the Church of England and must be regarded as such. A treasons act of the same year added the penal sanctions to the claim. In the meantime the divorce, having ceased to be the real issue, had resolved itself. Once Cromwell's policy had gained the king's ear, the resistance of Anne Boleyn was quickly overcome. By January 1533 she was pregnant and a secret marriage was celebrated. In that month Thomas Cranmer found himself giddily promoted to Canterbury; Warham, ready for martyrdom and about to stand fast, had died in 1532, and Gardiner, who was angling for the place, had fallen out of favour during the negotiations over the Submission of the Clergy. In May Cranmer used the powers conferred by the Act of Appeals to declare Henry's first marriage void, and in June Anne was publicly married and crowned queen. The expected reaction from Rome (declaring these proceedings invalid and summoning Henry to return to Catherine), the king's appeal in October to a general council – these were but formalities. The Act of Appeals had declared war, and though for years to come there was to be talk of negotiations and pretence that the unity of Christendom had not been broken, the schism was plain.

The king's position was straightforward. He derived his supremacy from God: by virtue of his kingship he was also God's vicar on earth as far as his temporal dominions extended. The notion could claim an ancestry going back to Constantine. It is not true to say (though it has been said) that his supremacy was in any sense parliamentary. No one supposed that such an office could rest on an act of Parliament: the statutes all took the fact for granted. Nor was the supremacy at this time exercised in or through Parliament: it was personal, monarchical, even despotic, as had been the pope's from which it derived. This appeared most plainly when in 1536 Henry by commission transferred all his ecclesiastical powers – the whole royal supremacy – to Thomas Cromwell as vicegerent in spirituals, a transfer which rested solely on the supreme head's own authority. Nevertheless, Parliament occupied an essential place in the revolution. For practical reasons, and since the sanctions available to spiritual

jurisdiction could not guarantee a revolution, the supremacy had to be enforced through the ordinary courts of the realm. That meant that penal legislation, establishing new treasons, had to be added to the body of the law, an addition which only statute – only parliament – was competent to make. This basic necessity, together with Cromwell's devotion to the certainty and definition of statute, accounts quite sufficiently for the surprisingly parliamentary air of the revolution. When in due course the English church needed a definition of doctrine, the true faith was similarly decreed by the supreme head but on occasion given enforceability by Parliament.

However, the first exercise of the supremacy did not concern itself with the establishment of religious truth. The dissolution of the monasteries has at times been allowed to usurp the first place in the story, and though in fact it is of less importance than the establishment of the supremacy it remains a striking event. In one sense, the attack on the monasteries proclaimed as essential a break with the ecclesiastical past as did the emancipation from Rome, and it is possible that Cromwell thought the religious orders dangerously papalist, though in fact there is no evidence that they were any less English than the secular clergy. But in the main the attack must be seen as the one result of all that hatred of clerical wealth: the Crown needed money and the gentry needed lands. No one now takes very seriously the charges of corruption which Cromwell's agents collected in their general visitation of all monasteries late in 1535; while everybody pays careful attention to the *Valor Ecclesiasticus*, compiled a few months earlier on the basis of a general fiscal enquiry, which recorded with surprising accuracy the total wealth of the church. The *Valor* not only provided a basis for the assessment of first-fruits (one year's income due from all newly beneficed clergy) and tenths (an annual levy of one-tenth of all clerical income), but it also supplied the necessary stimulus for the dissolution. In 1535 all houses with less than £200 a year were declared dissolved; in the years 1536–9 the greater monasteries accepted voluntary or forced surrender; in 1540 the whole expropriation was rounded off with an act vesting all such property in the Crown.

All orders of regulars and friars thus vanished from England in four years. The dissolution was carried out in an orderly and efficient manner, with a surprising degree of consideration for the dispossessed, provided they did not resist dispossession. Adequate pensions – abundant in the case of abbots and priors – were allotted and paid; there was astonishingly little physical suffering. The Crown gained an additional income of well over £100,000 a year which roughly doubled the ordinary revenue. From the first, however, some of the lands were passed on. Leading ministers and courtiers benefited from the few free gifts made; others had to pay fair value for what they got or be content with leases. After 1542 a decline in

administrative efficiency and a revival of wasteful war led to wholesale alienation, and by the end of Edward VI's reign the Crown retained little of the new lands. The royal coffers had enjoyed a great capital influx which in turn had been wasted. If the dissolution was undertaken to secure the financial independence of the Crown, it failed; on the other hand, the landed gentry old and new, established shire families as well as younger sons, rising yeomen and merchants all buying land, had succeeded in spreading the interest in retaining the monastic estates throughout the politically influential part of the nation.

All this vast upheaval did not pass off without opposition, though what strikes one most forcibly about the opposition is its lack of co-ordination. From the first many men both high and low had stood by in wonderment at doings which it was quite widely thought would lead to disaster, but success, assisted by Cromwell's careful and lawful policing,[1] brought its reward in quieting such fears. More serious were the objections of those who stood by the papal supremacy. In 1534 a poor distracted servant girl, Elizabeth Barton, who had acquired the name of the Nun of Kent by wild preaching against the divorce and stage-managed pronouncements for the pope, was executed together with her clerical sponsors. Later in the same year, the first succession act demanded an oath to the new state of affairs which was refused by few to whom it was tendered; but Thomas More, John Fisher, and the monks of the London Charterhouse were among them. These provided the martyrs of the old faith: executed in 1535 after dubious trials and, in the monks' case, torture in prison, they stood alone for conscience against conformity. (Of course, there were some who supported Henry for conscience' sake.) More's case was the hardest. Trained as a royal servant and a politician, he had wrestled long with himself before deciding on his steadfast course, but so careful was he during his imprisonment to save his private conscience privately that only Henry's vengefulness and doubtful evidence at his trial led to his end. When next year Queen Anne was added to the tally (for treasonable adultery, but really for having ceased to please the king) Henry's reputation as a sanguinary monster was established. While one must admit the king's intelligence and political skill, one really cannot deny that there is much truth in this verdict of contemporaries and posterity.

Whatever Europe's horror, England took the revolution quietly enough, until the dissolution brought matters to a head in the north, the least settled part of the realm. Here disaffection, never altogether absent, had been gathering since Henry first showed signs of breaking with the pope. Resentment of control from the centre, dislike of a policy (pursued since Edward IV) which tried to break down the ancient but disruptive

---

1 Cf. G. R. Elton *Policy and Police* (1972).

loyalties of the border region, anger over the spread of sheep-farming and
enclosure, annoyance at the Statute of Uses (1536) and its attack on the
gentry's illegal but well-established practices in devising lands by will, all
these combined with a growing fury over the religious changes to produce
a rising whose membership was quite as mixed as its motives. Even so,
discontent needed to be managed and guided, a task discharged by a
group of traditionalist courtiers who had suffered a political defeat when
the overthrow of Anne Boleyn was followed not by a return to the old
ways but by the final rise of Cromwell to dominance under the king. To
them and their adherents, the northern risings constituted a case of
politics pursued by other means: they hoped that the protest would
persuade Henry to abandon his innovating policies. Trouble which first
broke out in Lincolnshire (October 1536) spread quickly to Yorkshire.
Here the movement found its leader in Robert Aske, a lawyer of York
who popularised its banner with the five wounds of Christ and thought of
the rising as a pilgrimage, the pilgrimage of grace. The rebels' demands
centred round religious conservatism: they wanted the heretical bishops
and statesmen punished and asked that the monasteries be restored. But in
addition they displayed the particularism of the north and the selfishness
of the gentry as well as of the common people. For a time the rising looked
dangerous, especially because the government had no forces to suppress it;
but neither Henry nor Cromwell ever hesitated in their course. Negotia-
tions and their own dissensions kept the rebels north of the Humber; the
rest of the realm remained absolutely loyal; the king's lieutenant, the duke
of Norfolk, collected a sort of army; and after a promise of pardon Aske
told his followers to disperse (December 1536). Lesser troubles in the next
few months enabled Henry to break his word: his vengeance was terrible,
and Aske himself died on the scaffold. The movement has attracted much
sympathy as the last manifestation of medieval England and the common
people's resistance to the Reformation; in fact – if one excepts Aske and a
few sincere men – it only proved the waywardness of those notoriously
restless parts and the folly of basing a political protest on them. Its chief
result was to induce Cromwell to reorganise the Council of the North
which proceeded energetically with the important task of destroying the
line of the Trent which had divided England in two since the Norman
Conquest. What must really strike the unbiased observer is not that the
north revolted against Tudor rule and the break with Rome, but that the
larger and vastly more populous south showed itself quite content with
both.

The suppression of the pilgrimage of grace and the progressive destruction
of the remaining monasteries ended the first phase of the English
Reformation – the political phase marked by the reconstruction of the

body politic and the triumph of the national state. The years 1536–59 were to see the working out of the problems raised by that revolutionary change: the nature of the royal supremacy and the faith of the Church of England. These internal difficulties, both political and doctrinal, suffered further complication from the shifts of the European scene and the needs of England's foreign policy, not to mention the troubles caused by a major economic crisis. If Cromwell dominated the first and critical phase, it is not too much to say that Cranmer stood in the middle of things in the second. A slow and honest scholar, firm in his convictions while he held them but progressing through inner changes throughout those years, the archbishop of Canterbury presented a very different figure from the ruthless and statesmanlike vicegerent, who, however, clearly shared the preference for a reform in religion which could lead to a Protestant Reformation. Cromwell's was undoubtedly the more powerful personality and more certain purpose, but Cranmer's gentleness and relative tolerance are more attractive qualities. They were very good friends.

Henry VIII seems to have thought that the break with Rome could be carried through without altering the doctrine and worship of the English church. He, if no one else, apparently credited the persistent pretence that there had been no revolution, only a restoration of the proper and ancient organisation. But elsewhere the political Reformation was beginning to stir up religious turmoil. The small yet vocal group of divines who had embraced the doctrines of Luther and Tyndale thought their time had come, and Cranmer, pursuing the studies which had first turned him from orthodoxy in his Cambridge days, felt inclined to support them. Cromwell tended the same way: eager to find allies against the potential dangers of a Franco-Spanish alliance, he sought them among the Lutheran princes of Germany who at least had a similar interest in keeping the pope down and the emperor occupied. The signs were clear but by no means bright: there was to be some cautious drifting away from existing practices and beliefs, especially those which, depending on the doctrine of purgatory, were particularly obnoxious to the reformers. The Ten Articles of 1536, enforced by the vicegerent's Injunctions on clergy and laity, embodied this compromise: they 'lost' all sacraments except the three accepted also by the Lutherans (baptism, holy communion and penance) and cautiously adumbrated a growing hostility against the practice of praying to the saints and for the dead. The Injunctions deserve notice because they ordered every parish to possess and exhibit a Bible in the native tongue. In 1539 the appearance of an official translation (the 'Great Bible', based on the work of Tyndale and Miles Coverdale) enabled the church to obey. The characteristic instrument of English Protestantism thus appeared at an early stage in the battle.

However, 1536 was also the year in which Catherine of Aragon died and

Anne Boleyn was executed, the year in which France and Spain renewed their endemic wars. Henry thus saw no further need for these manœuvres in the direction of Lutheranism; as soon as external pressure ceased, he always arrested Cromwell's attempts to create an anti-papal block in northern Europe. In 1537, therefore, as the king (remarried to Jane Seymour) gained a son and lost a wife, he refused to authorise the publication of a primer, *The Institution of a Christian Man*, which tried to build on the cautious advance of the Ten Articles. But in the summer of 1538 the continental powers concluded the Peace of Nice; for a time it looked as though they would at last turn upon England and exploit such disaffection as they could find there. Cromwell temporarily got a free hand. He busied himself with strengthening the neglected defences of the country; he satisfied his own desire for security and Henry's dynastic fears by wiping out the Pole and Courtenay remnants of the Yorkist line who had mingled family ambition with treasonable activities on behalf of the old faith and the pope; and he pursued his reformist policy with renewed vigour in the Injunctions of September 1538 in which he attacked 'superstitious practices', shrines and pilgrimages. He also made a fresh attempt to form a Lutheran alliance. But he was beginning to raise doubts in the king's mind; the danger against which he was planning seemed never to be coming. Cardinal Reginald Pole's mission early in 1539 showed up the unwillingness of the great powers to do more than call Henry names, while at home, on the other hand, the trumpet calls of the reformers and the attacks on such ancient centres of devotion as St Thomas Becket's shrine at Canterbury were exciting trouble. The people of England had accepted the substitution of Henry for the pope with marked equanimity, even though many in the north had resisted the assault on their familiar monasteries. Real uneasiness came only when a generation of little spiritual zeal, used to the formal devotions and propitiatory devices which was all that by this time the Christian religion meant to a large number, heard some of their clergy call these comforts in doubt, deny the efficacy of prayers to saints and masses for the dead, and denounce as superstitious the wonderworking intercession of images and shrines. The religious Reformation certainly began in the 1530s, as the immediate result of the political upheaval which removed an ancient barrier against dissent; in its turn it immediately began to breed that religious passion, that *furor theologicus*, so characteristic of the next 150 years and so very different both from the formalism of the order overthrown and the cold lucidity of Cromwell's mind.

By 1539 the country was stirring in a swelling murmur in which one may discern the signs of a crisis of faith and conscience. The king and his government saw in it the signs of trouble: the country was being torn in

two by the upstart arrogance of the new religion and the boorish stubbornness of the old. However, a word from on high would settle all questions and still debate. Thus Parliament and the Convocations were summoned to meet in April 1539, an unusual time – being near summer and the season of sickness – which points to the urgency of the problem. Prolonged debates both in the ecclesiastical assemblies and in the House of Lords produced at last a definition of dogma, the famous Six Articles which decreed Catholic orthodoxy. They marked a triumph for the conservative bishops, led by Gardiner, over Cranmer and Cromwell; the king accepted them when he saw them supported by majority opinion. However, though they continued to mark the official standard of ortho- doxy, they remained virtually dormant: there was no wholesale per- secution of Protestants while Henry lived, though a few were to suffer.

The act did, however, end Cromwell's policy of a gradual advance towards Protestantism. The minister himself survived a difficult session still in the saddle, but he was sufficiently disturbed to make the fatal mistake of forcing Henry into a distasteful marriage. The projected alliance with the League of Schmalkalden was abandoned in May 1539; instead, Cromwell found a new wife for his master in Anne, daughter of the duke of Cleves, whose territories commanded the Imperial route from Italy to Burgundy. From first seeing her, Henry hated Anne of Cleves. The marriage in itself was not the occasion of Cromwell's fall, but it pre- disposed the king to listen to his minister's enemies. For some five months early in 1540 the bitter battle was waged behind the scenes. Personal hatreds and international considerations played their part; but ostensibly, and up to a point actually, the struggle was between the conservatives and reformers in religion. Henry continued to trust, or at least to support, Cromwell to the very end; at last persuaded by specious lies that his vicegerent was a heretic, he had him arrested on 10 June and executed, after attainder without trial, on 23 July. In the meantime, Cranmer and Parliament had obediently freed the king from Anne of Cleves.

Cromwell's fall was a disaster for England, for despite Henry's smug assumption of statesmanlike qualities there was no one left who could direct affairs with his skill, perspicacity and assiduity. To the Protestant cause it proved much less disastrous. Cranmer retained the king's confi- dence: a strange relationship between men totally unlike yet held together by mutual admiration and even devotion. Furthermore, powerful as he was, the king could not singlehanded stem a tide which, almost single- handed, he had let loose; all his querulous complaints about disunion and brawling over religion availed him nothing. At the head of the church itself the clear purpose was lacking, for until Henry died matters were in the charge of one who only excelled in opportunism. But if his qualities

prevented the king from giving the storm direction, they also saved him from the rash and doctrinaire measures of the next reign. As it was, he held for six years a quivering kind of balance between the parties.

The immediate ascendancy of the conservatives after Cromwell's fall ended when their nominee for the royal bed, Queen Katharine Howard, was executed for treasonable unchastity (1542). A year later, alliance with Spain and the excesses of the reformist zealots tilted the balance a trifle the other way. The English Bible was reserved by statute to wealthier men; a new primer (*The Necessary Doctrine and Erudition for Any Christian Man*) removed all traces of Lutheranism from that of 1537; the Catholic bishops attempted several times to be rid of Cranmer as they had been rid of Cromwell. But before long events once more advanced the Protestants. At court the younger generation, led by Prince Edward's uncle, the earl of Hertford, and by John Dudley, Viscount Lisle, was turning towards the new ideas and Henry recognised the shape of the future when he committed his heir to the tuition of so good a Protestant as Sir John Cheke. Late in 1546 the Howards, secular mainstay of the Catholic faction ever since Cromwell's rise to power, at last took a wrong step. The old duke of Norfolk was not to blame: he had proved his skill by surviving two nieces both of whom had married and offended the king. But his son, Henry earl of Surrey, not only showed traces of an irresponsible and immature leaning towards reform but also talked of his descent from Edward I. The Howards had plenty of enemies, and when Henry VIII died, on 27 January 1547, Surrey was dead on the scaffold and his father a prisoner in the Tower under sentence of death (which was never carried out).

Certainly, the last years of Henry VIII did not see any formal advance in the direction of the religious Reformation. The Act of Six Articles remained to protect orthodoxy, and occasional burnings of Protestants underlined the fact. Cranmer, busy translating the litany, kept his labours to himself. At the same time, of course, Henry withdrew not a step from his position as supreme head, and several papists died as traitors to mark the king's determination on that point. In those years the church was, on the face of it, truly Henrician: as Catholic in doctrine as Rome itself, but schismatically divorced from Rome as a body of Christians. Yet from the first the existence of an anti-papal Protestantism on the continent jeopardised this idiosyncratic compromise. Sooner or later, the reformers would grow stronger; sooner or later, the 'Henricians' would realise that they could only maintain their Catholicism if they abandoned the royal supremacy. It was because he saw this that Henry never trusted Gardiner or the other orthodox bishops and left the country at his death in the hands of a Protestant boy with overwhelmingly Protestant advisers. In the last resort the king could not destroy what he and Cromwell had built.

The essence of the Henrician Reformation lay in the sovereign national state's triumph over the church in England; the changes in religion – in faith and dogma – usurped the place of first importance only when Henry was gone.

These changes did not, however, take long once the Crown had fallen into the powerless hands of Edward VI. The six years of his reign (1547–53) witnessed a revolution in religion as great as the jurisdictional revolution of the 1530s. Henry VIII was no sooner safely interred than the signs of Protestant triumph began to appear thick and fast. The late king's attempt to prevent any single councillor from gaining the ascendancy over the rest broke down at once: the earl of Hertford, with the assistance of Sir William Paget, had himself created lord protector and duke of Somerset and proceeded to rule in his nephew's name. Somerset certainly had some striking qualifications for the part. Not only was he the country's foremost military commander and the king's uncle, but he also suited the reforming party whose strength on the council gave him the upper hand. Unfortunately, his character and skill were not up to the task. Though generous, liberal in politics, and ostensibly willing to remedy the griefs of the poor, he also proved arrogant, greedy and tactless in his dealings with his equals. Above all, he showed none of that penetrating political skill – that nose for the right moment and the right action – that had brought the Tudors so far. He began by removing the fierce laws of the last reign which had enabled the government to suppress religious dissent. The Act of Six Articles went, as did the treason acts; communion under both kinds was permitted; Cranmer published a book of *Homilies*, attack on which brought Gardiner to the Fleet. The government had shown which way they intended to go.

The Edwardian Reformation, which created a Protestant Church of England, proceeded in two clearly defined stages. In the first place it achieved a moderate Protestantism in the Prayer Book of 1549, supplemented by an act permitting the clergy to marry (1549) and an ordinal enacted in 1550. This last removed all vestiges of priesthood from the English clergy: they were to be simply ministers of the Word in the Protestant manner. The Prayer Book itself, containing a simplified set of services which centred on the psalms, Scripture readings, and appointed collects rather in the manner suggested by such Catholic reformers as Reginald Pole and the Franciscan Cardinal Quiñones, was plainly Protestant in its attitude to the sacraments of which only baptism and holy communion remained. The last proved the crux of the matter: the religious controversies of the reign concentrated on the sacrament of the altar – the quarrel between the mass and the communion service, and the problem of transubstantiation. Cranmer, whose mind devised and whose pen wrote nearly all the formularies and service books, had himself believed in the

Real Presence as late as 1546, or at least he had never denied it in Henry's reign. But from 1547 he came under the influence of an invasion from the continent. The repeal of the repressive legislation attracted to England a number of the leading reformers, called in quite deliberately to assist the archbishop with his problem of discovering true religion and imposing it on the Church of England. Martin Bucer at Cambridge, Peter Martyr Vermigli at Oxford, John à Lasco and Francis Dryander – from Germany and Italy, Poland and Spain came some of the best known of the new theologians. The strongest influence on Cranmer was now Zwinglianism, embodied in that pope of Zurich, Henry Bullinger, to whom English Protestants were to look for aid and advice for some thirty years. But Cranmer refused to go all the way with Zwingli on the eucharist and arrived at a characteristic definition midway between the sacrifice of the mass and mere commemorative service of the Swiss persuasion.

The first stage of the Reformation was thus Protestant enough, but somewhat reserved. True to his liberal temper, Somerset would not enforce the Prayer Book by more than a permissive act, nor did Cranmer feel sufficiently sure of his ground to abandon all contact with the Catholic past. But in the event the Prayer Book pleased few. The continentals accepted it with hesitation and decided against it as soon as Gardiner, since July 1548 in the Tower for publicly opposing Protestant preaching, discovered that it could be given a Catholic interpretation. The pressure on Cranmer to go further increased; in particular, 1550 brought to the fore the first of those puritan spirits whom English Protestantism was to produce in such quantity. Sincere, ardent, uncompromising, foulmouthed, and intractable, John Hooper proved a problem not only to political divines but also to such radicals as Nicholas Ridley, bishop of London. Neither Cranmer nor Ridley, least of all the council, felt inclined to respect Hooper's pernickety scruples over vestments and ornaments, but since good Protestant bishops were hard to come by they needed his services. In the end Hooper gave way to the extent of accepting the see of Gloucester (Worcester being added later), but his spirited defence of extremism helped to push the church further into reform.

Nevertheless, the real pressure came from another quarter. After all, the English Reformation had never been the exclusive preserve of religion and theologians; politics and the lay power had always mattered more. In 1550 the lay power was in transformation. Somerset's enemies on the council outnumbered his friends; his policy of deliberately neglecting his colleagues had seen to that. In 1549, a year of crisis, the powerful gentry of whom the council was representative had had a bad fright when two simultaneous risings shook the state. Of these, the Cornish rebellion seems to have been in the main a reaction against the religious innovations: the Cornishmen complained of the alien Prayer Book and Bible, in a language

as strange as Latin but less familiar. More serious was the great rising of the Norfolk peasantry, known from its leader as Ket's rebellion, which for a time established almost a separate political organisation in East Anglia. Here the main motives were agrarian grievances, especially the enclosure of common lands and arbitrary rents, while in religion Ket and his followers seem to have had Protestant sympathies. To Somerset's enemies these differences appeared immaterial; the disorders showed that he had failed in the first duty of Tudor governments. His religious innovations had provoked Cornwall; his social policy – investigations into illegal enclosures and attempts to enforce the law against the gentry themselves (1548) – had encouraged Ket and his men. These allegations were in part unfair, but that matters little. The council's indignation, fed also by the protector's personal ambitions and the failure of war in France, boiled over: under the leadership of John Dudley, now earl of Warwick and soon duke of Northumberland, they turned on Somerset, arrested him, and finally (1551) had him executed on a spurious criminal charge. The sorrow of the people at 'the good duke's' death both displayed the reason for his unpopularity with his equals and the essential impotence of this sort of popular feeling.

Northumberland's triumph was at first designed to look like a Catholic reaction, but it soon turned out to be the prelude to an even more energetic pursuit of the Reformation. The duke, an able administrator and energetic politician, might have made a good servant to a typical Tudor monarch, but left in undisputed charge he proved far too unscrupulous and selfseeking to do anything but harm to the realm. Representing, with others, those rising men who depended on Crown bounty and confiscated lands for their start in prosperity, he could not but favour the most extreme anticlerical policy. The dissolution of the monasteries had left behind much unsatisfied appetite which Somerset had served in 1547 when he carried through an intention of Henry VIII's by dissolving and appropriating the chantries. These small foundations, mainly intended to support a priest to say masses for the founder's soul, were certainly obnoxious to the reformers who denied purgatory and disapproved of intercessory prayer; they were also landed property. The notion that their dissolution destroyed a flourishing system of grammar schools has been shown to be untenable; on the contrary, the sixteenth century did more than its predecessor for education, and some of the nationalised lands were in fact used to endow it. But the bulk assisted the landed gentry. All that now remained for the plundering were the lands of the secular clergy, especially the bishops, which could best be confiscated by displacing the existing prelates and extorting concessions from their successors. Somerset had shown the way when he largely expropriated the see of Bath and Wells. Self-interest thus dictated a Protestant policy to Northumberland,

whose relations with reformed divines strongly suggest that he entertained far more genuine feelings for the reform than used to be supposed. In the past, mistaken approval for Somerset has tended to be balanced by mistaken dislike of his successor.

Thus the reformers, English and foreign, who for a time had feared for their achievements, in fact found the new duke even more agreeable than the old. Cranmer soon produced a revised Prayer Book (1552) which discarded the remains of Catholic doctrine still found in its predecessor and came down entirely on the side of Protestantism, though he continued to believe in a spiritual presence in the eucharist which elevated that sacrament above the utter simplicity of the Zwinglian service. The book removed all those traces of 'popery' that à Lasco and the rest had objected to; as regards both doctrine and ceremonies the English church had now followed the example of the continental Reformed churches. A rigorous Act of Uniformity not only made all other forms of worship punishable by heavy penalties but also enforced attendance at the services of the state church. In 1553 Cranmer added a coping stone to the edifice with the Forty-two Articles – a formulary of faith to which all the clergy were required to subscribe and which throughout is entirely Protestant, though not without those touches of backward-looking compromise which reveal the archbishop's essentially cautious approach to innovation.

England was now a Protestant country, at least so far as legislation and decree could make her one. In truth the changes at the top had as yet made little impression. Ardent Protestantism was found in some quarters. The king himself, since Somerset's fall something of a factor in affairs, held by it with the inhuman passion of an adolescent indoctrinated since child-hood; the higher clergy had been carefully selected to include a growing number of men favourable to the new way of thinking (though the foremost preachers of the day, Hugh Latimer and Thomas Lever, being men given to criticising the powers that be, held no episcopal appoint-ments); with some at least of the gentry and the products of the universities, a genuine belief in the reformed religion came even before the interests of the landowner. But no one was more fully aware than Cranmer that the truth as he now saw it would have to be inculcated in the nation, both clergy and laity, by a prolonged course of propaganda and enforcement, and his projected code of canon law – the *Reformatio Legum Ecclesiasticarum* completed in 1553 but never enacted – was designed to provide weapons in this fight. The country at large seemed at best indifferent; the old forms of worship continued to be used in many parts where the clergy and the local magistrates had no joy in the innovations. It has been said that the Edwardian Reformation went but skin-deep. There is insufficient evidence for confident statements about its effective extent; but it is clear that, like the Elizabethan settlement later, its endurance

depended on a period of use and enforcement, and that political accidents deprived its protagonists of the necessary time.

One other point is worth noting about the Edwardian Reformation: it ended the Henrician type of royal supremacy in the church, the personal and virtually despotic kind. Not only was the position of the supreme head weakened by the tenure of a child; the really important change occurred in the phrasing of statutes. Where Henry VIII used Parliament to supply enforceability to decisions made and justified by the supreme head in person, the Edwardian Parliaments participated in the exercise of the supremacy when the legally established form of worship became a schedule to an act of Parliament. Elizabeth ultimately inherited her brother's rather than her father's position in the church, adding weakness to it by being a woman and as such unfitted for the full headship; though she fought tenaciously to keep her Parliaments from interfering in matters ecclesiastical, she could never deny their right to participate and had to retire to a second and lesser line of defence by quarrelling over the right to initiate legislation touching the church.

As the year 1553 drew on it became plain that Edward VI had little time to live. Unless something were done he was bound to be succeeded by his sister Mary, Catherine of Aragon's daughter and an unshakeable adherent of the Church of Rome. To contemporaries such a succession signified a complete reversal of religious policy: in the sixteenth century governments everywhere dictated in such matters, and the cataclysmic changes in England are readily understood if one remembers that people held obedience to the lay power, whatever its religious views, to be enjoined by the divine law. Northumberland, however, had gone too far to hope to survive a turn of the wheel. From his fears grew the most outrageous and hopeless conspiracy of a century filled with many handsome specimens. Determined to maintain his power, the duke attempted to subvert the succession, exclude Mary, and crown instead Lady Jane Grey, heir to the Suffolk claim to the throne, whom he married to one of his sons. His daemonic energy and ruthless vigour carried the day in the council, but Edward's death in June proved his plot to be a mirage. The nation, resolved to have a true Tudor, acclaimed Queen Mary; as Northumberland moved against her into East Anglia, the council in London deserted him; in the end the princess succeeded to the Crown without any trouble at all. Northumberland, as was the way of things, suffered on the scaffold, but Mary's mercy for a time saved the lives of the other conspirators including that of the innocent sixteen-year-old pawn.

Thus there began the short period of the Catholic reaction, when for the last time England formed part of the church which looked to Rome. Unfortunately for Mary, her policy and her memory, it was also the first time that England formed part of the Habsburg territorial complex.

Mary's overriding ambition was to restore the realm to the true faith, to obtain papal absolution for the sin of schism, and to eradicate heresy. Charles V, on the other hand, saw in the accession of his half-Spanish cousin a fine opportunity for bringing England within the circle of power which his family had built up by skilful and lucky marriages. From first to last the two policies never ran on sufficiently parallel lines. The emperor welcomed England's return to the papal fold, but he wished to prevent vigorous action against Protestantism and a sincere restoration of Mary's simple faith because he feared that such steps would lead to disruption and therefore lessen England's value to his own European policy. He felt this the more strongly because he intended to secure Mary's hand for his own son, Philip, archduke of Burgundy, a marriage which was in fact celebrated early in 1554 after the strong opposition of part of the English council had been overcome. The opposition and hostility of the nation never relaxed: Philip was at best but tolerated, while Englishmen and Spaniards discovered the ancient truth that contact between nations of very different temper and traditions is more likely to produce enmity than amity. The Spanish match pleased the queen, but it involved the country in somebody else's war, resulted in the loss of Calais, destroyed unity and purpose in the English government, and did not even prevent the persecution of Protestants which Charles V, however much he approved it in principle, saw to be a serious mistake in the circumstances.

The total sum of the reign's achievement has often been described as sterility, but more recent studies of the age have clearly demonstrated the error of that verdict. The queen's advisers initiated some sensible policies designed to repair the social and economic ravages of recent years, and they took their spiritual duties seriously in a country much of which was willing enough to return to old and familiar ways. However, promising beginnings of secular reform and a resurgent papalism never got very far because once again time and fate worked against them. At the same time, some recent assessments have been a bit too indulgent to a régime which sanctified bigotry and at every crucial moment lacked the will to follow through. England was restored to Rome. The instrument chosen to bring about this consummation of Mary's devout wish was Reginald Pole, cardinal of England, who unfortunately turned out to be one of those honest and brilliant theorists who make such indifferent statesmen. Some thirty years earlier Thomas Cromwell had warned him not to suppose that the teaching of the philosophers could be applied to the things of this world, but this lesson Pole (some may think, to his credit) never learned. After he had broken with his kinsman Henry VIII in 1536, he was for a time employed in futile campaigns to raise opposition to the king among the monarchs of Europe; thereafter he retired to a congenial life of study and religion. Now, however, his hour had struck. Fetched from retire-

ment, he journeyed towards his native land with papal bulls of absolution in his pocket and eager to restore the realm to its ancient obedience. He met two obstacles. One was the fear of the English ruling classes – everybody who mattered, that is – that a return to Rome would involve a surrender of the lands taken from the church since 1536. The other was Charles V's desire that no disturbing factor should enter into England until his son was safely established there. Thus from late in 1553 until November 1554 the pope's legate waited in the Netherlands for licence to cross the narrow seas and carry out his mission of reconciliation.

In the meantime Mary tried to get some of her Counter-Reformation from Parliament. To her mind, the anti-papal legislation was invalid in itself, but she had to yield to those, including Gardiner (now chancellor and chief minister), who declared that only Parliament could undo what Parliament had done. The first Parliament of the reign (October 1553) repealed the Edwardian legislation but refused to re-equip the government with the secular weapons against heresy which Somerset had discarded. The second (March 1554) would do nothing at all, except attaint the participants in Sir Thomas Wyatt's recent rebellion which had, among other things, led to the execution of Lady Jane Grey and her relatives in the Tower. At last in November that year, Philip having now consolidated his position as king of England and full reassurances having been given that the secularised lands would not be mentioned, Pole was allowed to come to England, and a third Parliament met to repeal the Henrician legislation and humbly beg the legate for the pope's forgiveness. The work of twenty years thus vanished overnight; the schism healed, all that remained was to punish its surviving authors and stamp out the remnants of heresy.

In fact, the rest of Mary's reign centred round the great persecution which is all that remains of her in the general memory. The third Parliament re-enacted the old heresy laws, but even before this signs had appeared that action would be taken. Edmund Bonner, bishop of London (with Lincoln and Norwich the diocese most affected by Protestantism), had angered the politicians by trying to proceed against heresy before the laws were in force again. Gardiner, too, showed that his own desertion of the papal cause in Henry's reign had not weakened his determination to deal with the consequence of such weakness in others. Mary and Pole, convinced of the need to eradicate heresy, must take much of the burden of guilt; personally gentle and merciful as no doubt they were, they had the fanatic's fatal gift of being able to distinguish between the individual (to whom one is kind) and the cause (for which one kills).

The council found it easier to approve the persecution because by and large only the lower orders were involved. The leaders of Protestantism had fled abroad in some numbers; throughout the reign, English commu-

nities at Frankfurt, Geneva and Strassburg were carrying on, not without internecine quarrels, the traditions of English Protestantism and preparing for the day of their return. Four of the leaders, however, suffered: Hooper, Latimer, Ridley and Cranmer were burned as relapsed heretics. The rest of the 273 known victims who perished in the fires of Smithfield and elsewhere were mostly small men – artisans, shopkeepers, labourers – with an astounding proportion of women. Many of them were fanatics and some may have held opinions (Anabaptist and the like) for which a Protestant government would also have persecuted them. None the less, and not without justification, this concentrated attack and the deliberate spreading of the burnings *in terrorem populi*, reinforced admittedly by John Foxe's successful propaganda work (*Acts and Monuments*, first published in 1563), made the English for centuries hate Catholicism as a cruel and persecuting religion. Life was always cheap in the sixteenth century; the age was full of easy killings at law; yet a case-hardened generation reacted with horror to these burnings for religion's sake. Whatever else one may think of the persecution, it was a political error of the first magnitude.

The worst feature of the Marian restoration of Rome was that it contented itself with persecution and attempted nothing like a true spiritual revival. There were no signs of religious fervour or eagerness to lead men in the right way: Pole was old and worn out and even in the end suspect of heresy, while the other bishops had long ago lost their integrity. Everything remained political. Before the reign ended, Pole was to be excommunicated by a mad pope for purely political reasons, and Mary was to see her husband and her spiritual father at loggerheads. The truth is that in England only Protestantism, however thinly spread so far, represented a genuine spirit of religion. The country may have been attached to the mass and the old ways, but the old ways were eminently distinguished by the absence of real conviction or genuine faith. Admittedly conviction and faith were to produce conflict and persecution, but the history of Mary's reign itself shows that such results may be achieved not only by fanatics but also by the worldly. If England was to be rescued from the creeping corruption of selfseeking and greed which had spread ever wider since the restraining hand of government had failed in 1547, she would need not only a return to good government but also an infusion of an active faith. In the 1550s Rome could not offer this; perhaps unfortunately, and certainly much to Elizabeth's annoyance later, Geneva could.

When Mary and Pole died on the same November day in 1558 they knew that their policy had failed. They had ejected suspect clergy and seen heretics burned; on the face of it, England was as soundly Catholic as she had been before Henry VIII misdoubted his marriage. In fact, however, the reign had destroyed Rome's chances of ever again ruling the English

church. The war, the loss of Calais, the ascendancy of Spain had combined with the reaction against the persecution to turn the nation at last away from its past. Anticlericalism, dislike of the papacy, and eagerness for church lands were no weaker than they had been thirty years earlier; now experience of Spanish and popish influence had further prepared the ground for an acceptance of Protestantism of which there had been few signs during the violent advance of Edward VI's day. Worst of all for the future of Catholicism in England, Mary never produced the child for whom she longed both as a woman and as a queen. She would be succeeded by her sister Elizabeth, Anne Boleyn's daughter and thought throughout the reign to be a danger both to the Catholic reaction and the Spanish dominance.

These were fears that the event proved right. Whatever her own private religion (a point never quite settled), Elizabeth found herself the virtual nominee of the Protestant faction. The exiles flooded back, refreshed by their sojourn in the new paradise. The Parliament that met in January 1559 contained its enthusiastic core of good Protestants, and they found the queen's government anxious to lead them in the direction they meant to go. By the summer of 1559 the Acts of Supremacy and Uniformity had once again broken the link with Rome and restored the royal supremacy (weaker than Henry VIII's in theory and foundations but as formidable in his daughter's hands) and the Protestant Prayer Book to the Church of England.

CHAPTER XI

ITALY AND THE PAPACY

IN the states of the Italian peninsula, as in the rest of central and western Europe, the news of the activities and doctrines of Luther, followed by those of Zwingli and later by those of the Anabaptists, the Anti-Trinitarians and Calvin, fell on ground ready to receive it. Among the numerous ecclesiastics, memories of Savonarola's preaching were not always propitious; thus the best-known Italian translator of Holy Scripture along Lutheran lines, the Florentine Antonio Brucioli, was violently hostile to Savonarola.[1] But there were the hopes raised by the Fifth Lateran Council (1512–17) especially in certain Florentine and allied circles in contact with the Venetian patrician and Camaldolese hermit, Blessed Paolo Giustiniani (1476–1528);[2] there was a desire for greater morality and austerity of life in the laity, the hierarchy and the curia; people were fully aware of the 'abuses' originally devised to meet the needs (in money and staff) of the financial administration and the centralised policy of the church, not just the needs of the Holy See as an Italian state in matters of politics and war. There was also a strong desire for a more spiritual conception of Catholic religious life: for men like Giustiniani (and his friends included Gasparo Contarini, a Venetian nobleman, later to become famous as a cardinal) the consequence of such an infusion of the spirit occupied pride of place. These leanings were not in any way meant to affect the spheres of dogma, liturgy, discipline, traditions, the fundamental structure of the church, or the papal authority, but would, it was hoped, be capable of supplying these with energy enough to purify the church 'in capite et in membris'. Among the laity stirrings similar to those of the clergy were often to be found; but judgments more like the classic attack on clerical vices by the historian Francesco Guicciardini were also common.[3]

Expressions of this sort cannot be interpreted as favouring the actions of Luther, of the princes who protected him, or of his followers. They were

---

1 G. Spini, *Tra Rinascimento e Riforma, Antonio Brucioli* (1940.)
2 H. Jedin, 'Contarini und Camaldoli', *Archivio Italiano per la storia della pietà*, vol. III (1953). This aspect of Giustiniani and his friends has only recently been set in perspective, and research is in progress for the publication of his writings and letters. And see below, p. 316.
3 On the whole period, cf. H. Jedin, *Girolamo Seripando* (1937: 2 vols. with documents; Eng. translation, without documents, 1956).

manifestations of anticlericalism among the laity, and of an 'anticurialism' among many ecclesiastics which lacked any real conciliarist basis. Nor must the at first rapid spread of the doctrine of justification by faith, and the widespread and considerable interest taken in it by humanists, theologians, preachers and the common people, be taken to mean that the reformers north of the Alps were gaining converts; the doctrine had been discussed by theologians and philosophers in the fifteenth century, and while the German and Swiss reformers used it as a dogmatic basis for the reorganisation of the hierarchical structure of the church and its relationship with the laity and the civil authorities, for the majority of Italian ecclesiastics interested in it the expectations it aroused were of a kind to encourage merely conferences and discussions, and propaganda among individuals, often accompanied by semi-clandestine activities and a sort of political ambiguity which is characteristic of the Italian Protestant movement in its higher reaches. Thus when P. Carnesecchi[1] procured certain of those ecclesiastical benefices whose bestowal by the curia on persons unwilling to carry out the duties attaching to them was bitterly criticised as an abuse, he and his friends rejoiced at it; such benefices made it possible to assist poor and persecuted Protestants.

After the Italian expedition of Charles VIII of France, the Italian states had become theatres of war and their courts the object of diplomatic rivalry among the great powers. The ambitions of Cesare Borgia, idealised by Machiavelli because of the chances of unity and independence which they had offered to Italy, were but a memory a mere fifteen years after the death of Alexander VI and his son (1503). Julius II (1503–13), continuing the work of Cesare Borgia, thoroughly reorganised the civil and military administration of the states of the church. His attempt to extend the papal dominions to their ancient boundaries brought him into conflict with Venice. But his military and political action in the international field, designed to promote 'the freedom of Italy' (*libertà d'Italia*) against France, Spain and the empire who were disputing the Italian territories amongst themselves, succeeded only in fighting off the power of France and left the policy of the Holy See in the control of the other powers. Nevertheless the watchword 'freedom of Italy' – the independence of the Italian states from France, Spain and the empire under the implied hegemony of the pope – remained the guiding principle of the papal policy until 1559. Having once again consolidated the Papal States, Julius II called the Lateran Council (1511) which should have initiated the work of Catholic reform. Though Leo X (1513–21) lived through the beginnings of the Lutheran Reformation and the resumption of the struggle between the powers in the rivalry of Charles V and Francis I, he continued the policy

of Julius II. He assisted the Imperial side in return for additions to the Papal States and benefits for the Medici family. Adrian VI (1522–3) during his short pontificate could do little in politics for the cause of reform. Clement VII (1523–34), on the other hand, was above all concerned with the enlargement and consolidation of the Medici interests and, profiting from the confused situation, attempted to gain lands and fiefs for his relatives. However, the eventual consolidation of Charles V's power, which put an end to these efforts, was not the sole reason for Clement's change of policy when he aligned the Holy See against Spain rather than France; as pope he regarded the imperial supremacy and ascendancy as dangers to the church, the more so because Charles V did not refrain from intervening in favour of Catholic reform and a general council. Thanks to the weakness of Clement VII, his French alliance and his Medicean policy, the programme of 'freedom of Italy', interpreted as equivalent to 'the liberty of the church', had changed its meaning since the days of Julius II. After Charles V had permitted the sack of Rome, the forces of the Italian states ceased to offer firm support to the papacy; Florence rebelled against Medici rule, Venice attempted to seize papal territories, and the French ally showed himself incapable, blind and unfaithful. In 1528, in return for a promise to restore Florence to the Medici, Clement VII deserted the 'Italian' cause (as Andrea Doria had done before him) and altogether abandoned the idea of Italian liberty. Yet it was only in 1530 that the Medici returned to Florence as its dukes; they were henceforth subject to Spain and closely tied to the Holy See.

With Paul III (1534–49) the policy of the papacy, internally devoted to the strengthening of the Papal States, changed internationally to a neutrality which was not only a deliberate programme but also proved effective. Since Charles V's ascendancy in Italy was henceforth uncontested, it was also in the interests of the papacy as an Italian power – and of the pope as a member of the Farnese family who enriched and aggrandised themselves even at the expense of papal territories – that the Holy See as an international power should remain neutral. At the same time, this was in the interests of the Catholic church itself; peace was needed for the preparation of the council and the carrying through of Catholic reform. Pier Luigi Farnese, a son of the pope and favourably disposed towards France, was killed in a plot planned by the Spaniards (1547); on the other hand, the anti-Spanish conspiracy of the Fieschi in Genoa (1547) failed, as did that of Burlamacchi in Lucca, directed against the Medici and therefore against Spain (1546). Under Paul III the policy of the Holy See – leaving aside the pope's nepotism and the internal problems of the Papal States – began to be less concerned with Italian issues as such and more with the issues of religion and the Universal

Church, that is, with the problem of the general council. While Clement VII had always put off calling one, Paul III began to issue summons from 1536 onwards. But the difficulties caused by the wars, by French sabotage, and by disputes with Charles V over its organisation, postponed its opening until December 1545.[1] The choice of venue fell upon Trent, near the borders of the Habsburg possessions but an Italian city independent under its prince-bishop. Owing to the plague and the fear of Imperial interference (from Innsbruck – much nearer than Rome), the council was in 1547–9 transferred to Bologna and then prorogued by the pope. The fact that at Paul III's death in November 1549 Reginald Pole's chances of succeeding were considerable shows how by this time purely ecclesiastical interests had got the better of Italian political interests. Julius III (1550–5) took no active part in Italian questions (the wars of Parma, 1551, and Siena, 1553–4) except in vain attempts at pacification. The neutrality which he observed did not reflect deliberate policy but was imposed by necessity, for the Holy See found itself in a disastrous financial position. In 1551 Julius III reopened the council at Trent, but he was once more forced to prorogue it when the religious wars in Germany endangered the town. He had no share in the Jesuit advance in Europe and beyond, or in the Catholic restoration in England. The pontificate of Marcellus II (1555) was too brief to be of any consequence. Under the Neapolitan Paul IV (1555–9) the papal policy of neutrality was temporarily suspended; the pope resumed anti-Spanish activities which in the end led to a war. Despite the intervention of Henry II of France, the Spanish troops of Philip II not only re-established Spain's supremacy in Italy (1556) but at St Quentin (1557) finally overcame those of France. On this occasion, though for a brief moment only, Venice allied herself with the papacy, while Cosimo I of Tuscany confined himself to acquiring Siena as a Spanish fief. After 1556 the Carafa pope devoted himself only to his family and to the problems of Catholic reform and Counter-Reformation.

It will be seen that to begin with (1518–34) the Italian religious scene was dominated in the curia, and in the circles connected with it, by the conflict between the emperor and the popes over the question of the council. Throughout the whole period it is to be noted that Italian writers of anti-Lutheran treatises – there were at least sixty-three of them before 1536 – did not deal with strictly Italian questions but concerned themselves rather with those which formed part of the general ecclesiastical debate, conducted in the main by Dominicans and Franciscans. At first the traditional theme *De Potestate Papae* predominated. Many even of the churchmen who were interested in the Pauline doctrines as propounded by Luther and in that great novelty, their application (favoured by peoples and princes) to the reform of the Christian church, city by city and state by

state, were not so much concerned with the Italian situation and the church in Italy as with the fate of the Catholic church and Christianity in general. The division of the peninsula into various states, the confusion arising from the loss of 'Italian liberty' or independence, and the presence of foreign civil and political authorities (French, Spanish and Imperial) had resulted in the absence of a specifically 'Italian' church. Giberti and his few companions stood alone. During this first period there occurred some individual conversions to the new German and Swiss doctrines.

It must be noted that, generally speaking, historical research into the whole Italian religious movement for the period 1519–63 has confined itself to studying the diffusion of Protestantism in Italy. No modern research has taken into account the differences between the various states, and those between the cities and the countryside; none has attempted to establish the characteristics and true meaning of a movement which up to a point made its presence felt everywhere in the monasteries and among the clergy, in schools, courts, offices and shops. It involved not only differences in dogma or doctrine and the general behaviour of intellec-tually or socially outstanding individuals, but also affected such things as popular religion, the lives of the lesser clergy, and the administrative and economic structure of church and state.[1] However, from a general Italian point of view it can be said that sympathy with and interest in the ideas and practical schemes of reform established beyond the Alps penetrated all social levels from the peasant to the prince, from the artisan to the professor of law. Even after the work of ecclesiastical repression had begun the movement enjoyed the favour of many prelates and some princes and the benevolent tolerance of others.

We have least information about the early years (1519–30). Some names of individuals are recorded because they fled to Protestant countries or suffered some sensational condemnation; the authorities, whether favour-able or not to reform of the church in the Catholic sense, fought the new heresy only in its open and avowed forms, as when the epistles of St Paul and the writings of the reformers were read and used openly for polemical purposes. But except to the ecclesiastical authorities, and not even to all of them, the dangers represented by the new preachers of repentance did not seem very great amid the misery of wars and occupation, and there was also some uncertainty as to dogma. The first to distribute the works of Luther and Melanchthon in Italy was a bookseller of Pavia, Francesco Calvi, a friend of Erasmus; this was as early as 1519 and done purely in the

---

1 M. Berengo and A. Ristori are investigating Lucca; E. Pommier is studying Anabaptism; and cf. S. Caponetto, 'Origini e carratteri della Riforma in Sicilia', *Rinascimento*, 7 (1956), 219–342; F. Chabod, *Per la storia religiosa dello Stato di Milano durante il dominio di Carlo V* (1940).

way of business, with no intention of promoting religious propaganda.
Round about 1519 the works of Melanchthon, published pseudony-
mously, were read in Rome and in the curia, until they were denounced.
The commercial centres of Pavia, Venice, Bologna and Milan, and the
university of Padua acted as distributors. Luther was the man most talked
about, and heretics in Italy were known for a long time generically as
Lutherans: in one case at Ferrara the prosecutor spoke of 'sacramentarian
Lutherans', a term that would have horrified both Lutherans and
Zwinglians. In any case, except for the Waldenses who allied themselves
with the Zwinglians (and later with the Calvinists) and resumed proselytis-
ing after 1532, it was a story of individuals, not groups. Not even at the
court of the famous duchess of Ferrara, Renée of France, was there any
real proselytising: her court simply harboured converts. She had come to
Ferrara in 1528, a deeply religious woman with strong humanist interests
which subsequently widened to embrace the new religious and doctrinal
movement.

However, individual cases or isolated groups occurred even earlier
(1521, 1523, 1524, 1530). In 1531 Lutheran doctrine seems to have been
fashionable among the students of the university of Padua. In the city of
Venice the anxiety of the authorities not to interfere with German trade by
imposing a rigorous censorship on religious discussion, together with the
traditional caution of the senate, its concern for the interests of the
printers, and the many foreigners at the university of Padua, assisted
propaganda by the innovators and the dissemination of their writings
which had begun in the monasteries as early as 1520. The year 1530 saw
the beginning of trials, condemnations and executions, but the dominant
note in the record is one of complaints from the ecclesiastical authorities
about the indifference or excessive tolerance of the civil authorities, for
example in the matter of control over books by transalpine heretics; and
preaching on texts from St Paul, obviously very fashionable, was wide-
spread. The political relations between the Venetian government and the
Holy See, varying with the ups and downs of international politics, also
influenced the situation.

In the kingdom of Naples, apart from Waldensian colonies in Calabria
who behaved like their co-religionists in Piedmont, the movement was
largely confined to the capital and became important only in the following
decade. In other cities and states, too, the movement began to make its
presence felt towards the end of this early period (Bologna, 1533) or in the
next decade. It did not, however, remain confined to localities. Preachers
(drawn nearly always from the Franciscan, Carmelite, Augustinian and
Benedictine orders) moved from city to city, favoured by the fact that
repressive action was still carried out at episcopal level – by each bishop in
his own diocese – and in a manner which differed with place and

individual. Zeal in supervision was variable, and the repression of heresy was often even accompanied by an uncompromising correction of the most notorious and scandalous abuses. Thus by moving from place to place preachers could avoid all danger and carry the new teaching elsewhere. In the form of one confession or another it also attracted people who were tied to no particular locality, principally members of religious orders, aristocratic ladies and various humanists of clerical origins whose mutual intercourse cut across political and administrative boundaries. Their presence was especially noticeable in those states which depended directly or indirectly on the emperor. During this early period, because of the desire to promote the convocation of the general council, because of the emperor's political struggle against the Francophil Clement VII, because of Erasmian influences in the imperial chancery (which suited the 'imperial' policy of Charles V seen as the representative of all western Christendom), and also as a means of political pressure on the popes, those who inclined to the new doctrines and to a criticism of ecclesiastical, and above all papal, abuses were given considerable freedom of movement in practice if not in theory.

The bishops' action should have been promoted and co-ordinated by the papacy which soon began to issue bulls, briefs and missives reviving (on information received) the themes of the encyclicals against Luther, the Lutherans and their followers of other denominations. In fact, however, by the side of the Dominicans and Franciscans, who from the very beginning urged a pamphlet war against Luther, there were others in the curia, especially during the pontificate of Clement VII, who were so favourable to a reform of the Catholic church that they often looked upon the champions of a church renewed in religion, morals and institutions – champions who arose in the various dioceses of Italy, in the convents, or in aristocratic society – without any desire to persecute and even at times with sympathy.

These were the leaders of what came to be called 'Catholic reform' and what at this early stage may be called evangelism: a movement, that is, for the renewal of the traditional Catholic religious life through emphasis on ethics and religion, on the gospels and the epistles of the apostles. This emphasis in no way implied a rejection of the dogmatic, liturgical and hierarchical tradition, and still less of the unity of the church, but was simply a means of purifying all these and restoring them to their evangelical beginnings. It was linked with movements both European and Italian for the reform of standards and the conduct of the clergy including not only the administration of the church but also morals, instruction and education at all levels, alms-giving, charitable works, the care of the poor, hospitals and so forth. In the fifteenth century much had been achieved, as for instance the reform and reorganisation of the orders. These move-

ments now resumed their work with a certain tendency to revive the religious activity and conscience of the secular clergy, a tendency often accompanied by attacks on the orders, especially on the Mendicants. Generally speaking, the protagonists were people born in the previous century who had entered the curia or church life under Leo X and Clement VII with ecclesiastical titles but frequently with political duties. One of the most famous and typical of these, Matteo Giberti (1495–1543), thought by his contemporaries the model of a bishop and a diocesan reformer, was during this early period secretary and political adviser to Clement VII whose anti-Imperial and anti-Spanish policy he inspired and guided in the conviction that this was the policy which would lead to the 'freedom of Italy' and the freedom of the Papal States as one of the principal powers of Italy. At the same time, however, Giberti was said to be one of the earliest members of that group of ecclesiastics of an austere life, given to prayer and charitable works, who were determined to renew the church in order to renew Christendom, a group (*Oratorio del Divino Amore*) which included Gaetano di Thiene, Luigi Lippomano, Gian Pietro Carafa (the future Paul IV) and Giacomo Sadoleto, and was soon to be connected with men like Gasparo Contarini, Reginald Pole and others. It was only in 1528, after the failure of the anti-Spanish policy which he had pursued in the curia, that Giberti retired to his diocese and completely devoted himself to it, thus acquiring his fame among his contemporaries. He founded a printing-press which published religious works, especially the Fathers, and, gathering round him men of great religious, literary and political repute, occupied himself with instructing his flock, both the lower clergy and the people, in faith and morals. Unfortunately, there is no modern study of this figure.

By the time that Clement VII's pontificate was nearing its end men like Giberti were taking part in the government of the church in different ways. Frequently they acted as protectors of those bishops who in their sees were trying to promote a reform of the moral standards of the people, the return of the clergy to a stricter discipline, instruction, and a simple, comprehensible and edifying style of preaching. Naturally, they incurred accusations of heresy from their adversaries. With the pontificate of Paul III these men, on the explicit instructions of the pope himself, assumed the direction of the reform movement of the church from within. The names of new cardinals, amongst whom many mentioned above are to be found, and such writings as the *Consilium de Emendenda Ecclesia* (1536) were the more striking manifestations. The movement, demonstrating the pope's willingness to act directly, also provided an alternative to the imperial propaganda on behalf of Catholic reform in the Erasmian sense and of the council. By this time the papacy as a spiritual authority could no longer keep to general declarations of neutrality whilst pursuing its own policy as

an Italian state; it had to be truly neutral. However, neither this, nor the increasingly urgent need of a positive reply to the questing faithful and to the accusations of Lutherans and Zwinglians, constituted the whole problem: interest in the new doctrines and their preaching was producing signs of restlessness in the more serious-minded clergy, and the controversy, emerging from the monasteries and studies, was spreading through the courts and the lower orders. Without any departure from tradition, this necessitated certain departures in philosophico-theological methods and interests. Because of this, as also because of the middle position in theology which many of these men sought to take up on many fundamental questions of dogma, and even because of the persecution which several of them subsequently suffered as favourers of heresy, a sort of historical legend has grown up round them; a legend which sees them as men who wanted to renew and really reorganise the church, providing her with new organs adapted to the new society and to the newly emerging European political scene. Because of their conciliatory spirit they have been spoken of almost as if they had been 'liberals'; did they not recognise the need for reform and therefore admit a good deal of right and reason in the reforming activities north of the Alps, and did they not show (privately) tolerance towards those who studied and discussed the new doctrines?

In point of fact they tended to be backward looking in anything that concerned the reform of the church. They wished to restore the good old days, removing the abuses, decadence and corruption which to a certain extent justified the Protestants in public opinion. The famous *Consilium* proposed to eliminate and correct abuses in the curia which had become evils of the church; to suppress dangerous philosophical teaching; to remove Erasmus's *Colloquia* from the schools; to institute a censorship of books. Even in the most serious problems they adhered to the traditional point of view, as in the matter of the relations between bishops and non-resident clergy, or those between bishops and the orders (especially the preaching and confessing orders) which the *Consilium* resolved in such a way as to reaffirm the bishops' authority. The middle position in theology in general started from an undogmatic spirituality which was patristic, or philosophically Neoplatonic, or of a Pauline type of evangelical piety in origin, all these positions dating from the preceding century or from the period before Luther. The new situation produced among theologians by Luther, Zwingli and later Calvin, who had epitomised the practical consequences of the new doctrines by the creation of new systems of church organisation, was not taken into account; and formulas of compromise were sought to maintain or restore that which above all else seemed most important and necessary, that is to say, the unity of the church. Moreover, many of the Lutheran evangelical formulas were not considered heretical in themselves; especially in the hands of Melanchthon

and after the publication of the *Augustana* (1530), the reforms achieved by Luther and the Protestant princes and cities did not seem so dangerous and inflammatory as the extreme and scandalous Zwinglian reform. There thus appeared signs of the assumption that the 'revolutionary' period of the Lutheran Reformation was over; it was acquiring an institutional character and, in spite of polemical formulas and changes in organisation, was reverting to tradition. This, however, was only one aspect of the question, and a general one at that; even the most famous representative of that very group failed to bring about an agreement at the Colloquium of Regensburg (1541), though one was desired and attempted. Luther disowned Melanchthon, the pope disowned Contarini.[1]

The movement in favour of Protestantism or 'Lutheranism' quickened and became more intense in the years between 1535 and 1549. In Piedmont, the Waldenses enjoyed some freedom under the French government because the occupying forces included members of the reformed churches even in their higher ranks, and because the civil authorities adopted a tolerant attitude. In the duchy of Milan the movement spread and grew stronger with the support of the local civil authorities and in spite of the decrees of the Inquisition. In 1539 Austin friars were preaching heresy to a following of laymen and a few Franciscans; in the years thereafter those concerned were not only clergy but in one case even a merchant. In 1541 an investigation into the activities of Lutheran and Zwinglian students at Pavia developed into an attack on the preachers who had spread the new doctrines at Milan, Tortona and Pavia and who until the arrest of the students had not been denounced by anyone. Later there were cases at Pallanza (1543 or 1544), Cremona (1547) and especially at Casalmaggiore where a Franciscan preacher, who had adopted Calvinism and gathered round him a dozen disciples and propagandists, had captured almost the entire town and also made converts at Cremona. Between 1547 and 1548 some thirty people were arrested – presumably the ringleaders, who would be the most convinced and active – and these included gentlemen landowners, members of the middle class, a doctor, an apothecary, artisans and a peasant; both rich and poor. Throughout the whole period episodes of this nature recurred; friars preponderated, but in Cremona a strong group of laymen was arrested and tried between 1550 and 1552. There, too, the men were of different social classes: a doctor, a cobbler, a bookseller, a goldsmith, a merchant, a servant and a lawyer. Most of those involved were gentlemen of leading families; and the authorities deplored the fact that the evil was spreading from the populace (artisans and peasants) to the gentry. This time the group was a properly organised community which was in contact

1 Above, p. 188.

with other similar communities, a congregation on the Calvinist model; even after this dispersion there are records of it down to 1576. The groups received some indirect and involuntary aid from the continual resistance of the local civil authorities to the interference of the inquisitors.

Religious disputes are recorded in Mantua about 1541, but there is no earlier information. In 1545 a denunciation accused laymen, ignorant of Holy Writ and grammar, artisans by profession, of arrogating to themselves the right to discuss religion. In 1539 one source suggests that heretics, protected by Cardinal Morone's vicar, were more dangerous and active at Modena than elsewhere. Here a Sicilian, Paolo Ricci (called Lisia Fileno as a humanist, and probably to be identified with Camillo Renato, later the master and mouthpiece of the Anabaptists and Anti-Trinitarians in their Grisons exile), gathered a small community together which apparently met regularly in private houses. The group was composed not only of scholars and men of substance, but also of uneducated and illiterate men; it comprised not only men but also women, and they argued about faith and the law of Christ not only in private houses but in the market place, in shops and churches. The fame of Modena spread north of the Alps, and Bucer sent a letter of congratulation and exhortation to the brethren in that city. Ricci, who was arrested and taken to Ferrara, abjured, but several Catholic preachers who were sent to Modena refused to go because of the general opinion that the town was completely Lutheran and dangerous. The official attitude to scholars was still one of persuasion and benevolence. In 1542 Cardinal Giacomo Sadoleto wrote to Ludovico Castelvetro – the philosopher, literary critic and philologist who in 1555 had to flee to the Grisons because in the course of a literary disputation the poet Annibal Caro had denounced him as a Lutheran – to warn him that doubts about his orthodoxy had been raised in consistory; but he contented himself with the assurances given by Castelvetro on behalf of himself and his whole group. From then on the public movement ceased and the clandestine movement is obscure, but four of the names of 1539 reappeared in 1555.

These years too saw the greatest Calvinist activity which centred on Renée of France. Calvin's journey to Ferrara in 1537, to preach at the duchess's court and with her favour and blessing make proselytes, created a sensation, but the French preacher's stay (his name was only discovered later) was short owing to the intervention of Duke Ercole II. Calvin's letters to Renée, full of encouragement and exhortations but also of reproaches for hesitations and weakness, reveal that same blend of political calculation over the action of converted princes and faith in the miraculous power of the Word of God preached in all its purity which we find in Zwingli ten years earlier. In Italy, too, the reformers' conviction that as the chosen instruments of Providence they were carrying out a

work willed by God led to the same mixture of active conspiracy and ascetical spirituality. By converting a few important prelates and a few princes they hoped to repeat the successes of Luther.

Even after she had left Italy, the duchess continued her correspondence with Calvin, Bullinger and C. S. Curione; she had earlier intervened to defend persecuted Protestants like the then celebrated Fanino Fanini of Faenza. In this instance the duke supported her, seeking to delay the execution of the death penalty which Fanini had incurred by resuming his preaching after a previous recantation. It was important to Ercole II that he should keep the favour of the population of the Romagna which had common boundaries with the Papal States and Tuscany. Also to be found at Renée's court were the humanist Fulvio Pellegrini Morato and his daughter, the learned Olimpia Morata, famous in Protestant circles for her humanist teaching and her wanderings after she left Ferrara in 1551. By her own account, at any rate, Olimpia Morata typified the conversion from Pomponazzi's kind of humanism with its rationalist bias to Calvinist Christianity. All this did not, in fact, amount to very much, but it had great notoriety. The duke was obliged not only to keep an eye on the duchess, which in any case had been done right from the beginning, but also to keep her outside the city, confined in a large villa where she lived till his death when the hostility of her son Alfonso, a devout Catholic, forced her to return to France (1559). The papacy enjoyed feudal rights over the duchy of Ferrara and was always trying to annex it to the states of the church, an ambition in which it succeeded towards the end of the century; the Este could not afford to allow Renée's policy to go forward.

On the Venetian mainland, Vicenza was a strong centre of Protestantism. In 1546 Paul III addressed himself directly to the *podestà* and captain of the people there, with a reference also to the forthcoming meeting of the council at Trent, in order to shake them from their 'tepidity'. Strong groups of Anabaptists continued to exist there even after 1546 when mention of Lutherans ceases. Apart from talk of Anti-Trinitarianism there is not much information about Padua during this period, after the first wave of Lutheranism round about 1531; the students were left in peace, and only in 1550 was the question of Lutheran students at Padua raised before the Council of Ten. In Venice itself efforts at repression were half-hearted on the part of the senate and the Council of Ten, but during the pontificate of Paul III the papal nuncio was very active in denouncing and arresting Lutheran preachers among whom Franciscans predominated. The work was continued by his successor who, however, asked for powers to absolve those who repented and to grant a certain latitude in the reading of new books. Those involved were unfrocked friars and educated laymen, but also artisans, and this was worrying. The priests were less numerous. The fame of the Venetian movement became so great that in

1539 someone thought he could write to the senate in Melanchthon's name to offer advice on the reform of clerical abuses, pointing out, however, that the more extreme movements were being suppressed in Germany and warning them about the spread of the Anti-Trinitarian doctrines of Michael Servetus. In 1540 came the first Venetian edition of the *Trattato utilissimo del Beneficio di Jesu Christo crocifisso*, the most widely read Protestant tract produced in Italy which was also translated into French, Spanish and German.[1]

From 1541 the repression grew more intense. Nevertheless, that the movement continued in Venice is shown by the popularity of another book, the *Tragedia del Libero Arbitrio* of Francesco Negri of Bassano, also widely read and translated. There were three editions in quick succession, in 1546, 1547 and 1550. However, the most interesting Venetian case was that of Baldassare Altieri, a native of the Abruzzi and secretary to Sigismund Harvel, English ambassador to Venice; he availed himself of his diplomatic immunity to engage in propaganda and especially to establish contacts among Lutheran groups. In 1542 he was deputed by the congregations of Venice, Vicenza and Treviso to write an account of them for Luther. Altieri turned for help in that direction, above all because the new situation had ushered in a time of flight, imprisonment and fear; he begged the wonder-working German reformer to intercede with the Protestant princes of the League of Schmalkalden to put pressure on the senate and obtain toleration of worship and conversions until the conclusion of the council. That this would have been sufficient to rekindle the movement and extend it considerably is a point on which Altieri is in agreement with other sources. For the time being he obtained nothing and had to revert to the protection of the English ambassador in Venice; however, from 1546 he was also able to represent himself as the agent of the landgrave of Hesse and the elector of Saxony, though not of the powerful Schmalkaldic League. In 1548 the English ambassador died, and Altieri, having been dismissed, sought help from Switzerland. In 1549 he approached Bullinger for the appointment of resident representative in Venice of Bern and Zurich, but all he got were letters of recommendation. In any case, the collapse of the Schmalkaldic League marked a change in Venetian policy towards both pope and emperor. Altieri died in 1552, and with him failed another attempt to involve the fate of the Italian Protestant group with politics and diplomacy. The history of the movement is similar in the regions of Istria and Friuli: preachers and reforming

1 The author was the Benedictine monk Benedetto Luchino (Benedetto da Mantova), not Aonio Paleario as was believed for three centuries. Cf. B. Croce, 'Il "Beneficio di Cristo"', *La Critica*, 38 (1940), 115–25; and B. Luchino, *Beneficio di Cristo* (introduction and notes by Mariano Moreschini, 1942).

bishops were welcomed enthusiastically by a considerable part of the populace, but remained isolated at the time of the repression and were subsequently arrested or forced to flee.

The same thing happened in Lucca where, at practically the same time, there were gathered several famous figures: Peter Martyr Vermigli, Curione, Count Martinengo and Girolamo Zanchi, all afterwards leaders of the Italian movement well known abroad, and the humanist Aonio Paleario of Veroli, a native of the Papal States who was to acquire fame through his trial and condemnation (1567–70) as well as through his progress from pantheistic humanism to the teaching of Valdés which is apparent in his writings. This group at Lucca was the first to be attacked by the Holy Office by means of pressure on the political authorities who, because of Cosimo I's struggle for hegemony in Tuscany, found themselves on the defensive. The Burlamacchi conspiracy (discovered in 1544: Francesco Burlamacchi was beheaded in Milan in 1548 after long and painstaking controversies) was directed against the Medici and Spain and may have contained an element of 'Savonarolism'. At all events, in 1545 the senate of Lucca compelled the citizens to go to mass and fulfil all their other obligations, and the edict was repeated in 1549. During this period dissatisfaction began to impel a considerable number of families to migrate from Lucca to Geneva where, with Count Martinengo as their pastor, they formed the strong core of the Italian colony. The greater part of the emigration, however, took place between 1559 and 1560.

Little is known about Florence. There were some religious disputes in 1525, but contemporaries and historians were and still are preoccupied with the loss of Florentine liberty and with echoes of Savonarola. In 1544 Pietro Gelido, Cosimo I's agent in Venice, showed an interest in Lutheran literature and then fled from Italy. In 1548 Ludovico Domenichi, a copyist and translator who also produced a version of Sir Thomas More's *Utopia*, was sentenced to ten years' imprisonment for translating and printing Calvin's *Nicodemiana*; he was, however, pardoned. In 1551 a veritable Spanish *auto-da-fè* was held at Florence, involving public recantations by twenty-two people and the burning of heretical books. Princess Caterina Cybo (d. 1557), who lived in retirement in Florence, was in touch with the circle of Valdés but not apparently with any local groups. There is no information available for Pisa, but in the other Tuscan university town, Siena (which passed to the Medici in 1552), disputations were held in the *Accademia degli Intronati*. In 1541 the city authorities had to pass a decree prohibiting the discussion of doctrines condemned by the church, and it was necessary to repeat this in 1545. There was talk, too, of blasphemy. In 1548 it was the circulation of heretical books that was most worrying, and a list of the names of suspects included people in every walk of life. The presence of German Lutheran students gave some cause for concern.

In 1543 a very severe Roman edict was required against heretical books; it mentioned Rome, Ferrara and Bologna as the centres of publication and distribution. Groups from Bologna and Modena were corresponding with Bucer at Strassburg to seek clarification in disputes over the eucharist. In 1549 many people from Bologna were sent to the Holy Office at Rome, but they were set free after Paul III's death; at their own request they were then tried and acquitted under Julius III. In 1550, however, it was thought necessary to institute a tribunal of the Inquisition at Bologna. The Protestant movement was here connected with the university and linked with groups at Modena and Ferrara.

The years 1535–50 witnessed the appearance, consolidation and spread of the Anabaptist movement and Anti-Trinitarian tendencies; at the same time, the group centred upon Valdés also began to develop.[1] These movements had this in common that they extended over various parts of Italy and were not localised. The people who took part in them were in contact with one another and moved from Sicily to Milan without any local attachment to diocese, monasteries or courts, but simply as individual members of large communities with virtually no formal organisation, though Venice can be called a centre of Anabaptism (of which it supplies most of the evidence), while Naples was the centre of the Valdesiani. The position of this last group was between the Catholics, Lutherans and Calvinists on the one hand and the Anabaptists and Anti-Trinitarians on the other. The movement was aristocratic, comprising nobles, leading ecclesiastics, humanists and great ladies. It spread through the halls of great houses and monasteries, through courts and chanceries, as well as through conversations and correspondence. It cannot be said to have had an organisation of even the most elementary kind, such as was that of the Anabaptists; as in the case of the Anti-Trinitarians, one is faced simply with an intellectual stream. Yet nearly all the Valdesiani were in direct or indirect contact with Juan Valdés until his death; they were and remained in touch with one another, and the preaching of one of their number, Bernardino Ochino, attracted and moved crowds. It must also be added that the movement was peculiarly Italian, not only in that it extended throughout the peninsula but also in that nearly all the followers of that Italianate Spaniard were themselves Italians. In addition, the greater number of religious and intellectual leaders who favoured religious and ecclesiastical reform in Italy, even beyond or against the desires of Rome, at first adhered to his circle, whether they were in contact with Valdés himself or with his friends.

Juan Valdés, a brother of that Alfonso who held office in Charles V's

---

1 *Valdesiani*, the disciples and followers of Juan Valdés; not to be confused with *Valdesi* (Waldensians).

chancery and (like his brother) an Erasmian humanist, had come to Rome in 1529 in the emperor's train and remained at the court of Clement VII as imperial agent. When Clement died Valdés went to Naples where he settled permanently in 1534. There he gathered round him a group of friends who rested their discussions and meditations upon religious questions solely on the authority of Scripture and the Fathers. Preferring to dwell on ascetic and mystical subjects, they took for granted, explicitly or implicitly, a general belief in the fundamental tenets of salvation by faith and Christ's sacrifice and of the soul's direct relationship with God. This enabled them to avoid clearly defined theological positions and to attribute no essential importance to the precepts, rites and sacraments of the church; considering observance or non-observance of these indifferent (*adiaphora*), Valdés advised his followers not to neglect them if they proved necessary for other reasons, but to interpret them in a mystical sense. Thus, unlike Renée of France and her followers, Valdés's group had no need to celebrate the Lord's Supper according to the Calvinist rite, nor to avoid hearing mass, as was demanded of Lutherans and Calvinists. Valdés himself, in fact, died most devoutly in the bosom of the Catholic church (1540).

Among his followers and visitors we find a future strict Calvinist like the Marquis Galeazzo Caracciolo of Vico, the Capuchin general Bernardino Ochino (later to die among the Italian Anabaptists who had migrated to Moravia), Isabella Briceño (a noblewoman who died in Basel among the Zwinglians), as well as the Princess Caterina Cybo and the celebrated Giulia Gonzaga who both withdrew to Catholic nunneries and, though suspected, were not touched by the Inquisition – though no doubt their rank had something to do with that. Both these last died in the bosom of the church, as did Vittoria Colonna who, though not in direct contact with Valdés, was the protectress of Bernardino Ochino and many other Valdesiani. One document lists eleven bishops and archbishops among the friends and followers of Valdés, as for example Girolamo Seripando, a future cardinal and general of the Austin friars, who right to the very end remained a leading figure at the Council of Trent. In his youth Seripando was a friend of Valdés and adhered to the theory of 'Plato as an introduction to Paul' which Cardinal Pole propounded; later he became the protector of many accused of heresy and procured light punishments and their mitigation. However, later still (1549) this same man was to prohibit the discussion, by either side, of those doctrines which were the subject of controversy between Catholics and heretics, urging that only questions dealt with by the early doctors of the church should be disputed and not modern ones. In 1550 he even abandoned this return to Christian antiquity and ordered an absolute embargo on controversial questions; if discussion was inevitable, the questions were to be treated with such

lucidity as to remove every possible suspicion that heresy might be favoured.

Very different and much more typical of the more consistent Valdesiani were the fortunes of another of Valdés's visitors in Naples, Pietro Carnesecchi. Of noble birth and keen intelligence, possessed of a good humanist and legal training, Carnesecchi was one of the most brilliant men at the court of Clement VII who made him apostolic protonotary and his own secretary. He remained in Rome until Clement's death and was in contact with Giberti and the 'Oratory of Divine Love' at Rome. In 1540 he frequented Valdés's house in Naples and in 1543 the circle of the cardinal of England, Reginald Pole, at Viterbo. In the same year he went first to Venice and then to France to the court of Catherine des Médicis. In 1545 he faced his first trial, but – partly owing to the intervention of Catherine and Cosimo de' Medici – he was acquitted on all counts. After continuing his travels in France he went to Padua and Venice where he was in touch with high-ranking prelates and protectors of the new doctrines. Things changed with the pontificate of Paul IV. Carnesecchi was summoned before the tribunal of the Inquisition in 1559. Failing to appear, he was condemned as a heretic and his possessions were confiscated. So great was his danger that he fled to Geneva. In 1561, again through Cosimo de' Medici's intervention, he succeeded in having his condemnation rescinded and regained possession of his property. Henceforth he lived in retirement at Florence. However, Cosimo was ultimately forced by political necessity to give in to Pius V who had resumed Paul IV's activities against heretics. While Carnesecchi's letters to the inquisitors and his depositions in the long and exhausting process appear humble in character, tortuously and fearfully intent on avoiding precise statements, he died like a gentleman. He went to his death 'fashionably dressed in a white shirt, with a new pair of gloves and a white handkerchief in his hand as though to his wedding', as Cosimo's agent wrote from Rome in 1567.

The intransigents like Carafa (Pope Paul IV) had been right to look with suspicion upon the 'evangelism' of the Valdés, Pole and Giberti circles – whose members were often the same – and upon the friends of Vittoria Colonna and Giulia Gonzaga. For although it is true that these circles included high-ranking prelates, essentially faithful to the Roman church and the pope's authority, it is also true that they produced heretics and enemies of Rome. On the other hand, there are signs to suggest that it was often the very intransigence and zeal of the Theatines (to take an example among the zealots) which drove men like Bernardino Ochino and Vergerio far from Rome.

It would seem that Calvin's words inviting his fellow-countrymen to an open profession of faith and to war were written for Carnesecchi, before

his dignified death. In them Calvin poured scorn on the 'delicate protono-
taries' who were pleased to possess a pure faith and would not fight and
take risks. Calvin's writings on this subject (in part directed at Renée of
France) seemed to fit the Italian situation so well that they were several
times and by different people translated into Italian. An Italian edition
was begun, but this did not see the light of day, or was even circulated,
until 1553 when it was at last published in a small volume at Geneva. The
volume contains an important admonition to the reader which discusses
the question of flight in the face of persecution. The Italians are advised to
choose exile unless they have a call to be ministers of the Word or are
absolute rulers. The author of this preface was no optimist: 'It is well
known that there are churches in Italy and congregations . . . where
everything is slight, cold and of little value . . .'; it is no great misfortune to
abandon these 'since it is perfectly clear that there is scarcely any good in
them'. Thus those who have left or are about to leave cannot be accused of
leaving the Italian churches empty (since there are altogether or very
nearly none), nor of having helped the enemy, nor of having given up the
struggle, because they can fight better by preaching and writing from
abroad. At all events this writer applies the peculiarly Calvinist term of
'Nicodemists' to those he addresses, though he points out that in other
matters Calvin was referring to the French situation and not the Italian.[1]
In essence 'Nicodemists' meant those who were disposed to live as
Catholics, while treating dogmas and sacraments fundamental to Catholi-
cism as matters indifferent to salvation – for if there was uncertainty over
justification by faith, there was none over the mass and purgatory – and
even condemning some Catholic practices and doctrines as unchristian.
According to Calvin, they appealed for justification to the example of him
who came to Jesus by night, that is secretly (John 19: 39).

Certainly, 'Nicodemism' was very popular in Italy, largely through the
influence of Valdés's teaching, but it was not confined to the immediate or
distant followers of Valdés. Conscious and explicit formulations of this
position are attested for Genoa in 1544 and for the Waldensian valleys –
carried there by a Florentine – about 1555. There is, however, no detailed
or accurate study of the subject. The position was closely involved with
what people expected of the council: by a providential intervention it
might make reconciliation possible, while by keeping alive the play of
influence and intrigue in the courts and the curia it encouraged hopes
which depended upon the interaction of politics and diplomacy. This

1 D. Cantimori, 'Nicodemismo e speranze conciliari nel Cinquecento italiano', *Quaderni di
'Belfagor'*, I (contributions to the history of the Council of Trent and the Counter-
Reformation; 1948), 12–23. And cf. *Del fuggire le superstizioni che ripugnano a la vera e
sincera confession di fede . . . composta già da M. Gio. Cal. in lingua latina e tradotta . . . ne
la volgare italiana* [da Francesco Cattani (?)] (1553).

explains why many Italian exiles, though not strictly members of Anabaptist or Anti-Trinitarian groups, appeared to Calvin as sophistical and ambiguous unbelievers, and why they were shocked when they failed to find in exile that freedom of thought and religious discussion for which, more than for any dogmatically defined truth, they had left Italy. This comes out most clearly in the protests of Camillo Renato and many other Italians after the burning of Michael Servetus, protests which – though not exclusively in Italian hands – were to develop into legal and theological theorising about religious toleration ('Socinianism').

Anabaptists and Anti-Trinitarians were not identical because not all the former, even in Italy, were opposed to the doctrine of the Trinity. Nevertheless, the first Italian Anti-Trinitarians were to be found among the Anabaptists. Lelio Sozzini died in the house of an Anabaptist, and his nephew was on good terms with the sect. These examples indicate that, distinct as these two radical religious movements were in Italy, they yet had close relations. Both spread clandestinely through the different classes of the population, among artisans, peasants and the lower ranks of the clergy, among lawyers, teachers and humanists. The Anti-Trinitarian peril was denounced to the Venetian senate in 1539. Servetus himself thought of going to Venice in 1554, and it was there that Postel published his *Apologia* for Servetus. In 1555 Anti-Trinitarianism was mentioned in papal bulls, while the first detailed information, derived from the confessions, revelations and accusations made by an Anabaptist during his trial, dates from 1550. In that year a genuine council of Anabaptists was held at Venice to discuss the tendencies towards Anti-Trinitarianism which had appeared in a group of their members, in the main apparently from Vicenza. Delegates came from various parts of Italy and from the centres of emigration. Within the movement there were Italians from Pisa, Naples, Tuscany, the Papal States and Sicily, but the greatest contribution at this council or congregation of Venice came from the Anabaptist communities of the Grisons and those of Vicenza, Padua and Treviso, cities on the Venetian mainland. It was from this Venetian gathering that the legend arose that the Anti-Trinitarian movement had originated in Vicenza in meetings organised as early as 1546. But that there were Anabaptist propagandists in those parts during those years or even earlier is borne out by the lengthy depositions of the Anabaptist mentioned above: they show also that the Italian Anabaptists, too, had adopted the Mennonite system of itinerant preaching. After these revelations the Anabaptist groups were easily taken by surprise, arrested and dispersed. Some of them managed to flee to Moravia from where a little later (1559) they tried to send two emissaries, arrested by the Inquisition, to convert the Anti-Trinitarian brethren left behind in Italy to more moderate positions. It is to be noted that in Vicenza the Anabaptist movement

spread rapidly after the Lutheran movement had been suppressed, proba-
bly because the Anabaptists explicitly professed 'Nicodemism' in order to
meet the need for greater vigilance in the situation brought about by the
Catholic Counter-Reformation.

According to the testimony of a man tried for heresy in 1550, there were
heretics in Valdés circle at Naples who maintained that Jesus was only a
divinely inspired prophet and who denied the Virgin Birth; the informant
accused Valdés of sharing these views. Perhaps he merely tolerated them.
What is certain is that there were declared Anti-Trinitarians among his
friends and disciples. The historian of Unitarianism, E. M. Wilbur, calls
Valdés a 'liberal Catholic', but he also thinks that he was 'if not a pioneer,
at least an herald of our movement'.[1]

Faced with this religious situation in Italy, the signs and suspicions of
which were plentiful, the papacy found itself constrained to take more and
more systematic measures. It was not that the old laws, when applied,
were not severe enough, but that the novelty and size of the heretical
movement, the secrecy maintained by large groups of adherents, the
solidarity of the humanists and the protection that various groups enjoyed
at the courts, with bishops and cardinals, and in the curia, and lastly the
dogmatic and doctrinal uncertainty arising from the hesitations and
delays in the calling and activity of the general council, necessitated new
weapons and measures of repression. From 15 January 1524 – the day on
which the papal nuncio in Venice was ordered to put into effect the decrees
of the Fifth Lateran Council on preaching and the censorship of books –
to 1543, there are on record some eighty papal briefs sent to Italian
bishops and prelates for action to be taken against Lutheran heretics. In
the last decade the spread and intensification of the movement was such
that the traditional inquisitorial system entrusted to the bishops in their
separate dioceses and territories proved quite inadequate. Pushed on by
one of the 'Catholic reformers' of 1536 (Cardinal Carafa), Paul III
therefore created by the bull *Licet ab initio* of 21 July 1542 a new central
organisation, the famous 'Holy Office' of the general Roman Inquisition.
The bishops' tribunals and the local inquisitions were to be subject to this
supreme tribunal; they were to follow a uniform procedure determined by
the Holy Office, to send copies of the proceedings to Rome and await
guidance from Rome on the judgment to be pronounced in each case;
often they even sent prisoners to the Roman tribunal, while in other cases
the Holy Office sent down its commissioners instead. Thus before the
Reformation in Italy had achieved the united character towards which it
was tending, and before it had taken root among the people, the Holy
Office arose as a unitary organ of repression and control which under

1   *A History of Unitarianism, Socinianism and its Antecedents* (1947), p. 33.

Carafa's energetic guidance rapidly produced a change in the situation. The famous cases of Bernardino Ochino and Vergerio are typical. Ochino, who had achieved great fame as a preacher and been elected general of the new Capuchin order, had come into contact with Valdés whose inspiration was thereafter noticeable in his preaching. His fame may be said to have spread throughout Italy, and the enthusiasm of the crowds who came to listen had protected him from the episcopal and local inquisitions. However, when he was summoned before the new tribunal at Rome he preferred emigration (1542).[1]

Emigration had started several years before, but at first it was sporadic, involving sometimes wild extremists and often occurring on the borders of the northern states of Italy. Emigration properly so called developed gradually and tended to increase after Ochino's flight. However, while many of the best known suspects made their way to Switzerland, Strassburg and England, many remained in Italy and put their hopes in the council and in the protection of their friends, a protection which was often effective because it came from bishops, cardinals and princes.

At long last, after much discussion, the council opened its sessions in 1545. Believers in Catholic reform and the followers of Valdés hoped that it would first of all issue decrees concerning the reform of the church and would then proceed to a definition of justification by faith which would permit of the humanistic and evangelical interpretations of St Paul's message. Great hopes were placed in the presence at the council in 1546 of members of the 'reform group' – people like the cardinal of England, Girolamo Seripando, and many others. Despite subsequent disillusionment among prelates and aristocracy, these hopes continued to survive even after the famous trial of Vergerio, as the trial of Carnesecchi shows. Vergerio had been Clement VII's nuncio in Germany and a reforming bishop in his diocese of Capodistria. In 1549 he emigrated and became the leader of the few truly Lutheran Italian exiles and a councillor to Duke Christopher of Württemberg, seeking in vain to contest the primacy of the 'Sacramentarian' C. S. Curione who had fled in 1542. The hopes centred on the council were kept alive with patience and dissimulation until the propitious moment should come for appearing in the open. It was expected to arrive when the friends of reform had succeeded in passing resolutions on points of dogma which would allow some latitude of interpretation and action. Essentially it was the ambiguity of such a position which compromised Cardinal Morone who in May 1557 to June 1560 was imprisoned, tried but not condemned by the Inquisition: things are not entirely to be explained by the zeal and rigid orthodoxy of Paul IV.

Besides these complicated hopes there was another simpler and more

1 Cf. below, p. 322–3.

positive factor. Many people were reluctant to flee. The spirit which inspired them, and which was purely religious, made it a duty not to abandon the flock, large or small, which they had gathered, even at the price of martyrdom – even if in actual fact they did not in the end prove capable of making the supreme sacrifice. This question was explicitly considered after the flight of Vermigli, and as we have seen it continued to be discussed. Hence the importance ascribed in Italian circles to the case of Francesco Spiera. Spiera was a wealthy lawyer of Cittadella near Padua, with eleven children. Having been converted to the new faith apparently by moral scruples arising from his legal activities and by the reading of certain books, he set about converting his family and the people he met with evangelical literature. Finally he started preaching in public. It seems that he got his following principally among the poor – 'pauperes et tenues homines'. In view of the fact that all the sources emphasise how neglected the poorer sort were in town and country even in matters of religion, this is very likely. Spiera was denounced and stood his trial. Fearing that a conviction might disinherit his children, he recanted in 1546; but, immediately overcome by this betrayal of Christ whose reproachful voice he seemed to hear, he fell into despair and profound depression. The doctors diagnosed his case as one of deep melancholia and prescribed various cures. The news of this occurrence spread to Padua from where visitors – some of them illustrious, like Vergerio and Matteo Gribaldi – began to come in 1547 and 1548, to console and observe Spiera who declared that he now knew himself to be damned. He died in despair in 1548. The case caused a great stir and led to the publication of various accounts. Vergerio left his diocese and Italy in 1549, but others interpreted Spiera's example as an admonition to continue to preach and to confront the Roman Inquisition.

We have now come to the end of Paul III's pontificate and have reached, after the brief interlude of Marcellus II, the pontificates of Julius III and Paul IV. The tendency to place the moral, administrative, disciplinary and organisational reform of the church in the forefront now began to give way before an inclination to proceed to the repression of the heretical movement. This repression was based on the most rigorous dogmatic orthodoxy and the systematic suspicion of all who failed to show profound subservience to the clergy or cast doubts on the most extreme theories concerning the papal authority, theories which had still not been made the subject of dogmatic definition and were therefore still legitimately open to discussion. From the time of Paul IV onwards, the Spanish type of severe and grave ecclesiastic predominated at Rome; the humanist was replaced by the theologian, austere and upright, harsh and uncompromising towards laity and heretics alike. In fact there had existed a single movement in the church whose two aspects – Catholic reform and

Counter-Reformation – alternately came to the fore. The fact that ecclesiastical policy settled down in the shape of the Counter-Reformation did not mean that the other aspect disappeared: elements of each can be discerned in the principal texts of the other.

The pontificates of Julius III and Paul IV (1550–9), though politically very different, saw the slow retreat, full of contradictions, of the Catholic reformers. Some followed the pattern of Seripando, while others (for instance Morone) were held in high suspicion. It should be recorded that Carnesecchi, though he failed to present himself, was absolved from his sentence a few months after Morone. One more case may be cited, that of Giovanni Grimani, the patriarch of Aquileia, who in 1549 was accused of favouring the Lutheran heresy. Obliged to resign the patriarchate in 1550, he was tried and acquitted in 1552; he remained in obscurity until 1561 when he started an action for his rehabilitation which he subsequently obtained from the council. His name had been mentioned for elevation to the cardinalate, but despite the persistent diplomatic intercession of the Venetian senate he was never successful. The leading actors were still largely the same, but they were now thin on the ground among the representatives of more rigorous and uncompromising tendencies. The new generation was beginning to appear: Carlo Borromeo and Michele Ghislieri were entering upon their careers. Many of the figures who had been in the forefront during the first twenty years of this story found age overtaking them; others emigrated. From being the promoters of reform, Morone, Pole and Seripando grew suspect of heresy; content at first merely to act as protectors of men persecuted for heresy, they finally emerged as the upholders of the most rigorous orthodoxy, despite the contrast that this represented with their former tendencies and ideas. The political situation which emerged in Italy even well before the treaty of Cateau-Cambrésis could not be changed. Its elements were the predominance of Spain, the alliance of the Holy See with Spain, and the recognition that an agreement with the Protestants (Lutherans and others) was impossible. The predominance of Spain meant that the Counter-Reformation became increasingly repressive. On the death of Paul III Reginald Pole failed of the papacy although a strong party among the cardinals desired him in preference to another member of the college. Towards the end of Julius III's pontificate Pole became one of the leaders of the Catholic restoration of Queen Mary in England, much to the disappointment and scandal of his Protestant friends; however, this was not enough to dispel the distrust felt by the new pope, Paul IV, for the friend of Morone and Giberti. In 1558 Pole, too, disappeared from the scene. His will contained a declaration of his absolute belief in the papacy which was criticised by Giulia Gonzaga and Carnesecchi; the letter in which he expressed his disapproval served to condemn the latter to death.

By the time of Pius IV (1559–65) the Italian situation was stabilised. The work of economic reconstruction had begun, after wars during which all the Italian states (Venice less than the rest) had suffered heavily, especially in their revenues. The result was a social distress which differed in form and degree but was everywhere considerable. The situation required not construction but reconstruction. The political scene had changed, but in spite of the dramatic character of events the adjustments were unimportant. From 1545 the Farnese family held the duchy of Parma and Piacenza, and despite the conspiracy which led to the murder of Pier Luigi Farnese in 1547 they maintained their hold. The hostility of Siena and the surrounding countryside towards its Spanish government showed itself repeatedly in various risings which, culminating in that of 1552 in which French forces assisted, led to the war of Siena participated in also by the Florentine exiles. The war ended with the capitulation of the city of Siena in 1555. Subsequently, with the departure of the French in 1559, fell Montalcino, the last relic of republicanism – republican not only in its constitution but because here the people really played their part in the government. After a brief dispute with Philip II (to whom Charles V had granted it in 1555), Siena with its territory and possessions, except for the 'Stato dei Presidi', passed in 1557 into the hands of Cosimo de' Medici. In 1554 died Bartolommeo da Petroio, alias Brandano, who throughout the Sienese district was regarded as a prophet and had expressed the restless discontent of the people there in religious form.

In 1556 Lucca concluded a gradual process by hardening into an aristocratic oligarchy. This process had passed through a crisis in the 'beggars' revolt' of 1531–2, a revolt of the new citizens and middle classes who were for the most part wealthy, supported by the poor and the common people. In 1557 the Roman Jews were shut up in a ghetto. The history of absolutist reorganisation in the Italian states – as in the grand duchy of Tuscany or the duchy of Savoy – belongs, however, to another period, although the earliest laws in that direction date from this, accompanied as they were by the usual disputes with the ecclesiastical authorities. Essentially it was a consolidation of Spanish ascendancy, with passive resistance from Venice and the emergence under the shadow of that ascendancy of the power of the Holy See as the principal Italian state; the renewal of papal authority in the church gave it greater autonomy and mobility. The tragic scandal of the trial of the Carafa family and its destruction in 1560–1 in no way weakened the Holy See, even though the trial plainly turned into one of the greater part of the pontificate – or in truth of the whole ascendancy – of Paul IV; on the contrary, the energy displayed increased the prestige of the papacy. In 1562–3 Morone and Seripando helped the council, which had been summoned in 1560, to a positive conclusion but the questions dealt with were no longer solely or

predominantly Italian, though according to the historian Paolo Sarpi the ascendancy of Italian bishops was remarked upon, an ascendancy which was often obtained by pressure and negotiations on the part of the Holy See with the interested parties or the Italian princes. This comes out particularly well in the negotiations between Pius IV and Cosimo de' Medici. In exchange for putting pressure on the Tuscan bishops to participate in the council and vote in the papal sense, and in spite of his bitter jurisdictional and financial disputes with the Tuscan clergy, Cosimo obtained special political favours from the pope; and so did Alfonso d'Este.

Like all the Italian policy of the Holy See, that of this period has from that time to this been interpreted by Catholic historians as an 'Italian policy', one, that is, which favoured the 'liberty' of the Italian states, peace in the peninsula, the Italian 'nation' and 'people' – in fine, the 'national unity' of Italy. The latest writer to hold this view is the Italian historian, Professor Pontieri, in an important work which covers the same period and problems as are dealt with here.[1] He also asserts that its rigorous and energetic pursuit of Catholic reform and Counter-Reformation enables the papacy to claim 'the indisputable merit of having saved the religious unity of the Italian nation in an age which proved the precursor of so much disaster for the church and for Italy'. And he remarks: 'In this unity Italy, though subject to the foreigner, found herself and in the fullness of time was to achieve the foundations and the crowning glory of her political unity.' In reality, things happened rather differently and not without a struggle. Of this the men of the Risorgimento, from Mazzini to Cavour, were well aware, though one must make allowances for the distortions and simplifications of politicians writing history. The 'crowning glory', as Croce explicitly and sometimes rhetorically observes, harked back to those very movements which the activities of Catholic reform and Counter-Reformation, by dint of the papacy's alliance with Spanish power, succeeded in suppressing.

1 E. Pontieri, 'Gli ultimi aneliti della independenza italiana,' in *Nei tempi grigi della storia d'Italia* (1949).

CHAPTER XII

THE NEW ORDERS

THE religious life, in its many various forms, is deeply woven into the texture of Catholicism. The state of the orders is usually a reliable indication of the health of the Catholic church as a whole, and from early times the great formative periods of Catholicism have been marked not only by reforms in the existing orders but also by the creation of new ones, responsive in the first instance to the needs or the mood of a new epoch, though generally concealing surprising powers of survival and adaptability. The Counter-Reformation Catholic revival of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries was no exception to this rule. The period was one which witnessed far-reaching changes in European society, and these set crucial and perplexing problems before a Catholicism resurgent, indeed, but no longer in enjoyment of a religious monopoly, faced with curtailed and shrinking frontiers in Europe, and in many places fighting for very existence. The history of the religious orders in this age shows the working out of the customary formula of restoration and new creation, but in a setting far more complicated and unfavourable than monasticism had ever faced before.

A comprehensive judgment on the state of the religious orders at the outbreak of the Reformation is extremely difficult to arrive at. The currents of reform of the previous 150 years, which had divided all the orders of friars into Observant and Conventual groups and had produced the various Observant Benedictine congregations in Italy, Spain, Germany, Austria and France, had long been dying down, though they were by no means everywhere quite dead. Unsupported by any effective movement of reform on a more general scale, their successes had remained uncoordinated, localised and often no more than transient, and every aspect of contemporary society seemed hostile to further progress. The break-up of the common life and the decline of fervour, with all their moral consequences, were aided by a large variety of material factors and by movements of opinion critical of the whole monastic ideal. Riches and poverty seemed equally unhappy in their effects. The growing interference of the lay power, interested mainly in questions of monastic property but not limiting its interference to them, was on balance probably more harmful than otherwise and was able to exploit internal quarrels and the frequent jurisdictional strife between conventual and observant superiors. Except in England the disastrous system of commendams lay heavy like a

313

blight. Individual dispensations from monastic obligations could be
obtained from the Roman curia with shameless facility and often without
the knowledge of the applicant's own superior. There was widespread
deficiency in the training and education of novices and younger religious,
both men and women. The adverse criticism of humanists and the growth
of a spiritual attitude which decried the value of penance and formal
observances were at length followed by the radical denunciations – and
then the destructive practical triumphs – of the Protestant reformers. This
is not to deny that respectable, even fervent, religious communities of men
and women still existed, often in strange juxtaposition with the worst
abuses in others, but the general picture is one of a special way of life
struggling – like the church as a whole – in the toils of its complicated
entanglement with the social and material web of the secular world. Even
among the monks of the Charterhouse – *nunquam reformata quia nunquam
deformata* – there was much intercourse with lay people, and especially in
the houses with great influence for good, such as those in London and
Cologne. What was lacking was the force of an independent spiritual
energy backed at the highest level by a regenerate and single-minded
ecclesiastical leadership capable of diagnosing and facing the real
troubles. Until such conditions showed signs of developing, no lasting
change for the better could be expected.

    So far as the friars were concerned the position was all the more critical
in that they performed a very large part of the church's pastoral work, and
it is interesting that so many of the first Protestant leaders should – like
Luther himself – have come from the ranks of reformed and Observant
friars. But their extensive privileges and exemptions from episcopal
control, brought to a climax in the bulls issued in 1471 and 1479 by Sixtus
IV, generated a high degree of tension with the episcopate; and the central
object of church reform – the reconstruction of the church's apostolic
efficiency – was permanently obstructed by this problem of the regulars
and their exemptions, which the Lateran Council of 1512–17 considered
but could not solve. In the event, it was the revival in overwhelming
strength of the pastoral and charitable motives as an essential part of the
new spirituality characterising the groups of earnest men in Italy and
elsewhere from whose efforts the Catholic revival sprang, that created a
new form of religious association, that of the clerks regular, of which the
Jesuits, who did not however derive from the Italian milieu, are the most
important example. These bodies, by supplying the Counter-Reformation
church and papacy with well-organised, well-educated, obediently con-
ditioned, but non-monastic groups of pastoral workers, equally detached
from the allurements of a worldly life as from the local ties and the
liturgical and community observances of monks and friars, played a vital
part in enabling Catholicism to put its own house into some order, to

stabilise its boundaries with the reformers and to achieve some measure of adaptation to the new age. Similarly it was the pastoral motive within the Capuchin Franciscan revival that from the start gave it its popularity with its lay protectors and ultimately secured for it the support of Rome.

There was, however, for some time considerable doubt at Rome about the whole question of the religious orders. In the debates inaugurated by the reform commissions of Paul III in the 1530s the talk was more of suppressing orders than of encouraging new ones. Proposals such as the suppression of all Conventuals and the amalgamation of all other religious into three or four institutes, the total abolition of exemption from episcopal control, and the complete prohibition of new foundations, showed the degree of exasperation and defeatism reached in some quarters. But these radical programmes, whatever their attractions on paper, would hardly have been practical ecclesiastical politics, and only an extremist party favoured them. And it has been pointed out that in the well-known *Consilium de Emendenda Ecclesia* and other similar contemporary documents one does not find very much in the way of positive suggestions for reform, such as the better spiritual and intellectual training of young religious, or other practical measures akin to those by which, ultimately, the level of monastic life in the older orders was gradually raised. Throughout the period covered by this chapter the early apostolic successes of the Capuchins, Theatines, Jesuits and other new communities, the fruits of a degree of selfdenying zeal that seemed incredible to contemporaries stood out against a background certainly of expanding general effort but also of underlying uncertainty in regard to the reformability and even the continued future existence of some of the older bodies. Not until a general code for monastic reform had been established at the Council of Trent in its last sessions of 1563 was the firm basis laid for an accepted general policy which, as the Counter-Reformation advanced in greater selfconfidence and under central guidance towards the end of the century, gradually, if often only fitfully, raised the general level of the great bulk of the older monastic institutions.

The various bodies of clerks regular were the outstanding creation of sixteenth-century Catholicism in the sphere of the religious orders. But it will be convenient here to deal first with the more important monastic revivals along traditional lines that occurred in the period under review. The new foundations of Camaldolese monks in Italy, though appearing merely to continue the type of the localised monastic reforms of the fifteenth century, have a wider significance by virtue of the personalities of the founders and their close connection with the leaders of other important contemporary devout groups in Italy, well-springs of the Counter-Reformation. Paolo Giustiniani and Vincenzo Quirini were Venetians of noble family and sophisticated education. In 1510 and 1512 they and

others of their devout humanistic circle abandoned the world to enter religion among the hermit-monks at Camaldoli, from where they made the greatest efforts to persuade their friend Gasparo Contarini to join them. But though they effectively assisted the future cardinal to rack his conscience, they were not ultimately able to persuade him that his salvation lay solely in the cloister.[1] The Camaldolese order, deriving from the eleventh-century foundation of St Romuald, contained both hermits and coenobites. By the beginning of the sixteenth century it had also branched into Conventual and Observant houses. But new impulses towards the full, exact restoration of primitive observance were being blocked by the order's general, Delfino. Quirini died early, but Giustiniani soon became the leader of the reformers. In 1519 he was elected superior of the hermits and in 1520 left Camaldoli with a number of followers with whom he founded new reformed Camaldolese settlements elsewhere, at Massaccio, Pascelupo and Monte Corona. Here his views of the original ideals of St Romuald were put into effect, and a quasi-autonomous congregation of Camaldolese monasteries named after the foundation of Monte Corona eventually came into existence.

Giustiniani died in 1528. He was an influential figure in Italy among the many groups of zealous men seeking God through penance, charity and retirement from the world. He was a personal friend of Carafa and of St Cajetan and also of Farnese, the future Paul III. That men of his stamp should become hermits in one of the most severe monastic régimes that existed made a striking impression among both the devout and the scoffers of the age. But it is also significant of the trend of the times that even for this most contemplative order Giustiniani regarded a certain apostolic action as essential and with this in mind had seriously considered the possibility of making his reformed foundations in America. He was, however, ultimately convinced that his charity must begin at home. His movement had traits in common with that of the Capuchins, which it preceded, and it was at Massaccio that two of the earliest Capuchins, Ludovico and Raffaele da Fossombrone, found a temporary refuge from their pursuers in the Lent of 1526 and made the request – rejected by the Camaldolesi – for a permanent home among them.

The Capuchin movement, coming as part of the general spiritual revival that lay at the heart of the Counter-Reformation, was by far the most successful and the most lasting of the many attempts to return to the letter of the Franciscan rule that had marked the history of the Friars Minor from earliest times. It created in time a new independent order of Friars Minor, and it is hardly to be wondered at if it came to be regarded in some

1 H. Jedin, 'Ein "Turmerlebnis" des jungen Contarini', *Historisches Jahrbuch*, 70 (1950), 115–30.

quarters as the true fulfilment of the prophecies foretelling the eventual restoration of the original way of life taught by the founder. In 1517 Leo X had sought to simplify the complicated Franciscan situation by grouping all the existing Franciscan bodies into two, and two only, separate organisations. The Conventuals accepted all the official 'interpretations' and mitigations of the rule. The more numerous Observants sprang out of fourteenth- and fifteenth-century movements of return to original simplicity from which, however, many of them had now declined; and it was intended to set aside houses in each Observant province for those who desired a stricter life. But little or nothing was done about this, and the Capuchin movement, testifying to the endemic and irresistible appeal of the Franciscan ideal in Italy, arose among Italian Observants borne on a great wave of new enthusiasm for the strict letter of the rule, an enthusiasm which in any circumstances could probably not have been satisfactorily catered for within the existing observant framework.

The movement arose not in the 'enchanted land' of Umbria but in the marches of Ancona, across the mountains from Umbria and Assisi, in a countryside which had been the citadel of the fourteenth-century Spirituals and the cradle of the Observants. Matteo da Bascio, a simple-minded young priest of peasant origin, of the Observant house at Montefalcone, felt himself called to live according to the strict letter of the Rule of St Francis and to observe all the precepts of the saint's last testament, the obligatory nature of which had been denied by Rome. He made himself a habit of coarse material with a four-pointed hood sewn on to it (in place of the softer material and separate rounded hood then worn) which he believed represented St Francis's own actual dress, and this form of hood became for the Capuchins an outward symbol – for which they fought tenaciously – of their revival of primitive Franciscanism. The beard, which was the second vital Capuchin external, may have been an importation from the Camaldolese monks, whose customs had some influence in Capuchin legislation. But just as his meeting with the lepers was a turning point in the life of St Francis, so, for Matteo, a decisive part in his story was played by his devoted work for the sick and plague-stricken in Camerino in the plague of 1523 and later again in 1527 after he had been joined by three companions – the brothers Ludovico and Raffaele da Fossombrone and Paolo da Chioggia, all, like himself, Observants desiring a stricter observance. The Capuchin movement was not starry eyed but was solidly grounded in devoted charitable work. This linked the Capuchins with all the other Italian Catholic reformers of their time and was the cause of the enthusiastic support given them by the duchess of Camerino, a niece of Clement VII, without whose protection from the hostile attentions of the Observant superiors little more might have been heard of Matteo, Ludovico and the pointed hood.

Yet Matteo had no thoughts of becoming the founder of an order. All he desired, and all he obtained orally from Clement VII – probably with the concealed aid of the pope's niece – when he journeyed to Rome in the pilgrimage year of 1525, was private permission to live a wandering evangelical life, reporting once a year to his superiors, wearing his hood and beard, and seeking to observe the Rule of St Francis faithfully. That the spiritual impetus which his example generated found outlet in a new organisation was due to the character and energy of his early follower Ludovico da Fossombrone. Ludovico was an old soldier who still had the spirit of fight in him. After surviving several attempts on the part of his superiors to apprehend him, he succeeded in July 1528, the year after the sack of Rome, in obtaining the bull *Religionis Zelus* which marks the legal beginning of the new group of Friars Minor formed by those who had now gathered round the first four. The bull gave them permission to lead an eremitical life according to the Rule of St Francis, to receive others into their community and to enjoy all the privileges of the Camaldolese. In 1529 the first general chapter, held at Albacina, laid down statutes and elected Matteo as superior. After a very short while he resigned his charge into the hands of Ludovico. This irregular transmission of authority was apparently acquiesced in by the rest.

In the earliest constitutions of 1529 the new communities called themselves 'Fratres Minores vitae eremiticae'. But the 'eremitical' life envisaged was not, it should be said, the solitary hermit life such as was lived then by the hermits among the Camaldolesi and, outside formal religious orders, by numerous individuals in Italy who from time to time would descend from their solitary dwellings in the hills preaching penance and announcing coming tribulations. It was, however, apparently from their being acclaimed as such with cries of 'Scapuccini!' – the popular appellation for hermits – that the Capuchins got the name 'Fratres Minores Capuccini' which ultimately stuck, and which makes its appearance in a papal document for the first time in 1535. But community life and the apostolic work of preaching and care for the poor and the sick were of the essence of the Capuchin ideal, as of that of St Francis. The eremitical life meant for them, as it had meant for St Francis, the location of their community centres in quiet hill or country places, away from the immediate pressure of noisy town life, and generally off normal routes of travel, yet near enough to centres of population for the brothers to be able to exercise their vocation as popular evangelists and also be in touch with the sources of charity on which they lived. The large, fine town churches and houses of so many Franciscan communities all over Europe were to be forsworn. The brethren would live in small communities – for large numbers brought dangers – in the simplest mud-and-wattle hermitages, with tiny cells and the smallest oratory. In such conditions alone could

they practise the absolute poverty, the extreme physical asceticism and the complete abandonment to prayer which was to be their life at home. From 1528 onwards such hermitages began to be constructed, the four earliest, already existing in 1529, being at Colmenzone near Camerino, and at sites near Pollenza, Albacina and Fossombrone (the home of Ludovico and his brother).

In these hermitages and the others that followed them, the spirit of St Francis and his first companions lived again. The earliest Capuchin sources and stories recreate the atmosphere of the Fioretti. Like the first Theatines at about the same time they sought to exemplify in an extreme, almost superhuman form, the virtues opposite to the prevalent vices and abuses of the time – poverty, chastity, penance, prayer and a popular apostolate. All the mitigations and interpretations of the rule, especially in regard to poverty and property-owning, that the Conventuals and even in part the Observants had accepted at the hands of the papacy, they specifically renounced. In food, sleep, space, comfort, they sought the absolute minima. They took literally no thought for the morrow and abstained even from begging save in moments of the most dire need. In their tiny chapels they followed an extreme simplicity in ritual and in the manner of reciting the canonical Hours. Two hours a day were set apart for individual prayer. There was thus a strong element of the purely contemplative life, which at a later stage grew much stronger in certain parts of the order. But the primitive spirit of Franciscan apostolic activity was amply safeguarded, and prevailed both at the start and later over all tendencies towards contemplative deviationism. The very example of a life of penance and prayer was indeed an aspect of their apostolate, though it was not the whole of it. Renouncing all the privileges and exemptions that had been heaped on the mendicant orders, they sought at first to subject themselves in their preaching and administration of the sacraments to direct episcopal control. Later, however, there came a change of policy. As preachers they selfconsciously eschewed the elaborate, the rhetorical, the technically theological, and cultivated a direct evangelical and moral appeal. For this reason, and also in the name of Franciscan simplicity, they did not encourage theological study, their earliest members being either priests already, or else, like Raffaele da Fossombrone, lay brothers. There prevailed at first the primitive system of a complete equality between priests and laybrothers, even to the extent of placing lay brothers in positions of authority. Towards the middle of the century, however, this had to be abandoned. On the other hand, it seems that not all the priests were preachers, and that throughout the sixteenth century the non-preachers were in a majority. And while, as with all the other orthodox reformers of the hour, a more frequent recourse to the sacraments of penance and holy communion was a central theme in their exhortations,

they did not themselves hear confessions, save very exceptionally. It is not quite clear whether this was part of their policy of not encroaching on the ground of the parish clergy or whether it followed from their distrust of studies. It was maintained, however, in spite of all criticisms, certainly up to the establishment of the complete juridical independence of the Capuchins in 1619.

In 1529, the year of the first general chapter, there was effected, after some initial difficulties, a union between the foundation of Matteo and Ludovico and a number of Calabrian Observants led by Bernardino da Reggio who wished to break away from their superiors in the name of reform. This signified a geographical widening of the movement started in the Marches which henceforward began to spread to many other parts of Italy. It also brought to the new foundation men from a region where the memories of Joachim of Flora and of his influence upon the Spirituals were not perhaps quite dead. Yet the Capuchin movement, as a whole, was noticeably free from the extravagancies of outlook and the visionary apocalypticism which the writings of Joachim had helped to encourage among the Spirituals and the Fraticelli. Ludovico early took the important practical step of founding a settlement in Rome. His forward policy included also foundations at Naples (1530) and in other parts of Italy. By the time of the second general chapter in 1535 the new order counted some 700 members, mostly recruits from the Observants. These years of Ludovico's rule, however, while they had established the order and seen a notable expansion of it, had also been marked by great difficulties, both internally and as a result of external influences. They were, in fact, years of more than ordinarily severe growing pains.

Ludovico's own position was anomalous. He had never been elected superior but had simply taken over from Matteo when the latter had resigned his own authority to him. He ruled as a monarch without summoning the general chapter, contrary to all normal Franciscan law and custom. In spite of his outstanding services to the movement, his autocracy, which became severe and harsh, led to an opposition which forced him to summon the general chapter of 1535. At this, to his astonishment, he was replaced as superior by Bernardino d'Asti. Thrown completely off his balance, he spent a year in unworthy intrigues which led to another chapter in 1536 held in the presence of the order's cardinal-protector. Contrary, however, to his expectations, the chapter again rejected his claims and re-elected Bernardino, at the same time accepting a revised version of the constitutions which the latter had had prepared. Ludovico's proud spirit was unable to acquiesce with suitable humility in this final rebuff. He retired in dudgeon to a hermitage where he spent the rest of his days in solitude. At about the same time, Matteo adopted once more the life of a wandering preacher after which he had always hankered,

relying apparently on the oral permission given him by Clement VII in 1525. It is probable that he returned to a nominal dependence on the observant authorities and may even have abandoned the Capuchin hood. Not much is known of his later life. He witnessed as a chaplain the battle of Mühlberg in 1546 – where Bobadilla, one of the first Jesuits, was also present – and died at Venice in 1552. It was a curious fate that withdrew the two founders from the Capuchin order. Matteo's personal venture had kindled the spark and given the Capuchins the basic principle that the observance of the rule was more important than the interests of the order; but Ludovico's had been the energy and the administrative ability that had fanned the spark into an enduring flame. At the moment of their disappearance the flame was saved and nursed anew by the skill of Bernardino d'Asti, the third founder as it were, and then by his successors Francesco da Jesi, Bernardino Ochino and Eusebius d'Ancona. All these four men who stabilised and perpetuated the Capuchin reform had come over to it from the Observants. And this points to one of the reform's greatest difficulties – the hostility of the Observant superiors.

This hostility was perfectly understandable. Among the Observant superiors there were certainly some who sympathised with the Capuchin ideals. But the development of the separate Capuchin organisation, by draining away the most fervent elements from the Observants, gravely jeopardised the projected reform of the latter. Matteo's personal appeal to the pope in 1525 was in fact typical of the countless dispensations given irresponsibly by Rome to individual religious which were weakening the communal bonds of monastic life and undermining the authority of superiors. The separate organisation of the new reform out of observant deserters could well appear irresponsible and mischievous. The rapid growth of the Capuchins and especially the secession to them of the local Observant minister-provincial, Giovanni da Fano, who had tried in the first instance to suppress Matteo and Ludovico, only made things worse. In 1530 the Spanish Observant general, Quiñones, was succeeded by the Italian Pisotti. It was an unfortunate choice. Pisotti did nothing to help reform within the Observants and tried to suppress the Capuchin 'schism' by force. Moreover, he was a vain and showy man who conducted his visitations with unbecoming pomp. His conduct only encouraged what he intended to end – the flow of Observants to the Capuchins. But it is characteristic of the papal court at this time, and of the vacillation of Clement VII, that the enemies of the Capuchins now found it as simple to obtain official documents undermining their position as their first pro-moters had found it easy to obtain the necessary sanctions for their establishment. The ebb and flow of document and counter-document, sometimes obtained from quite different officials, is too complicated to be followed here. But Pisotti's deposition in 1533 was not decisive since his

successor was also hostile, and the death of Clement VII came as a blow
since his niece, the duchess of Camerino, the Capuchins' principal
supporter, was immediately deprived not only of her influence but of her
territories too by Clement's successor, Paul III, in 1534. But it had been
Clement himself who had yielded, early in 1534, to the Capuchins' enemies
and decreed their disbandment and their expulsion from their settlement
in Rome. All these attacks had been somehow met and warded off by
Ludovico. By the time of his disappearance in 1536 the air was calmer.
The Capuchins had obtained a new and even more powerful protectress in
Vittoria Colonna, and in 1536 and 1537 Paul III confirmed their legal
existence. To assuage the Observants, however, he forbade the reform to
accept any further Observant recruits or to make foundations outside
Italy. He also required the superior of the Capuchins to seek on election
formal confirmation from the minister-general of the Conventuals. This
last arrangement lasted until 1619, when its abrogation finally made the
Capuchins a fully independent branch of the Franciscan family. The
prohibition against the reception of further observants was probably all to
the Capuchin advantage, since it enabled them to train their own men
right from the start. Recruits were not lacking throughout the sixteenth
and early seventeenth centuries, and it is noticeable that, though the order
worked mainly among the poor and uneducated, it always attracted a
notable number of aristocratic and well-educated subjects.

But in 1536 the Capuchins still had in front of them what was to be in
some respects their most formidable trial of all – the apostasy and flight to
Geneva in August 1542 of their superior and most eminent preacher,
Bernardino Ochino. There can be little doubt but that this disastrous
event, which very nearly broke them, also served to give them a more
acute sense of the prevalence and power of Protestant ideas which
henceforward influenced their whole apostolate. Bernardino's success and
popularity as a preacher had been immense. In 1541 his term as superior
had been prolonged for a second three years, though somewhat against his
wishes, and he was regarded as a model religious and an outstanding
leader. But his concentration on the problems of justification, his reading
of Luther's works, perhaps also the friendship of Juan Valdés at Naples,
eventually led him to a position which, at some point not exactly
determinable, he must have realised could have only one outcome. There
were of course those who were wise after the event, but it has also been
said that Ochino's sermons and works up to 1539 might still be accepted
as part of the ascetical Catholic literature of the time but for his
subsequent apostasy. In 1542, however, the atmosphere in Italy was
growing more tense. Lutheran ideas were sensed to be at work. The
Roman Inquisition was being re-established. The consciousness of hidden
dangers was hardening ecclesiastical minds. Carafa was powerful. Ochino

had already been censured by the nuncio in Venice for publicly criticising the imprisonment of an Augustinian. In the last months of his Capuchin life he was suspect at Rome. It was an invitation from Paul III to visit him that determined his flight.

The pope's first instinct was to suppress the Capuchins altogether. For four years they had been governed by a hidden Protestant. Who could now trust any of them? Their greatest stay – immense popular support – broke beneath them. Only the intervention of Cardinal Sanseverino, coupled with the skill of Francesco da Jesi, who took over the reins dropped by Bernardino, and the influence of Vittoria Colonna, stayed the execution. An enquiry was held into the doctrinal views of all the preachers in the order, who were required to submit written statements. The result was satisfactory. The preachers were relicensed and the Capuchins survived. Soon they began to regain their popularity, and the years following Ochino's disappearance saw a steady growth of the Capuchins and their work under Francesco da Jesi, Bernardino d'Asti, and Eusebius d'Ancona. The influential laybrother, St Felice da Cantalice, joined the order just after Ochino's apostasy and in spite of the prohibition on Observant recruits numbers steadily grew. As early as 1535 separate provinces, to the number of eight, or perhaps twelve, had been erected. By 1550 the number had risen to about fifteen, and there were about 2,500 friars. The organisation followed normal Franciscan lines, but there was apparently some preference for Conventual as distinct from Observant terminology. The superior, or vicar-general, sometimes, but perhaps inaccurately before 1619, called minister-general, was elected for three years. The constitutions were re-edited in 1552. A certain moderation of the original extreme austerities was then seen to be necessary. As the order developed, larger and more permanent houses were recognised as desirable. Settlements within towns were acquiesced in. A place was given to studies. The primitive recognition of complete episcopal control was not restated. The later monastic legislation of the Council of Trent in 1563 entailed certain further modifications to Capuchin life – principally in respect of the organisation of studies. In 1572 the prohibition on foundations outside Italy was withdrawn. The order then spread rapidly throughout the world, more than doubling its numbers, both of houses and members, between that date and the end of the century, and becoming second only to the Society of Jesus in its contribution to the Counter-Reformation.

The Capuchins were not, and did not claim to be, innovators. It was the appeal of an already venerable ideal to which they responded – that mixture of the active and contemplative life which was the ideal of the friars – and the new institute was only a reformed branch of an already existing order. But the new bodies of clerks regular arose in specific

response to the challenge of the special problems of the age. Among the groups of devout priests and laymen found in increasing numbers in many Italian cities in the early decades of the sixteenth century – and among which the Roman Oratory of Divine Love, founded on the model of a similar institution at Genoa, is the best known[1] – preoccupation with personal sanctification, with the restoration of the dignity and efficiency of the priestly office, and with charity towards the suffering and the destitute came together to produce the foundation of the different institutes of clerks regular, pastoral priests living according to a rule and under vows. The foundation of the Theatines in 1524 was the joint work of four members of the Roman Oratory of Divine Love, of whom the two outstanding were Gaetano da Thiene (St Cajetan), a native of Vicenza, and the Neapolitan bishop Gian Pietro Carafa, later Pope Paul IV. The idea seems originally to have been Cajetan's, but the organising drive was more Carafa's. The gentle retiring saint and the restless, fiery, yet learned bishop were complementary to each other, much as were the first Capuchins Matteo and Ludovico. The congregation took its name of 'Theatine' from the Latin form of one of Carafa's bishoprics – Chieti – which he now resigned. The name was a sign of Carafa's predominance. Though he and Cajetan, and later others, alternated as superior in three-year periods, Carafa, partly because of his episcopal orders, seems always to have thought of himself as having a special place of eminence. The rule was elaborated between 1530 and 1533 at which later date the order was confirmed by Clement VII, an action repeated by Paul III in 1536.

The Theatines were neither monks, nor friars, nor canons. They were a body of pastoral priests living together who took the monastic vows of poverty, chastity and obedience in order to live the apostolic priestly life in as perfect a manner as possible. They recited the divine office together but did not sing it as was then general among all communities of clerics; and though Cajetan himself seems to have ascribed importance to the recitation in common, the order early sought and accepted for some of its members dispensations even from its private recital in order to save time for other occupations. All the first members gave away their property and resigned their benefices before entering, accepting an absolute poverty which, like that of the Capuchins, rejected both fixed revenues and regular mendicancy. They set themselves the highest ideals in clerical behaviour and dress, carrying to an heroic extent the correction by example of the failures and abuses of contemporary clerical life. New recruits sometimes took a new name on entering. While not accepting the official charge of either parishes or hospitals, they were busy in preaching, in hearing confessions and exhorting to the more frequent reception of the sacra-

1 Above, p. 295.

ments, in charitable works for the sick and distressed, in study, and especially in preparing for the reform of the liturgy. Their life was retired and unobtrusive, and they did not preach in the open air like the Capuchins and the early Jesuits. But Carafa retained his position with Clement VII, who continued to use his services in various ways. The Roman house of the Theatines quickly became a centre of intense spiritual life and influence.

Important as was the impact of the Theatines on the clerical world, and highly valuable as were the services they were destined to render to Catholicism by their example and as a seed-bed of future Italian bishops, their influence in the first decades of their existence was limited by two factors. First, their restricted numbers. It was not only that the number of those who presented themselves for a hard and hidden life bereft of all external attraction – even that of a monastic habit – was necessarily small, but also that from the first the founders were acutely conscious of the danger of professing persons incapable of persevering in so difficult an existence. Thus the Theatines remained comparatively few in numbers – and largely aristocratic in composition. This reduced the number of foundations, though it did not wholly save the order from defections. The second factor was the sack of Rome in 1527 which drove the Roman community to seek refuge in Venice after it had suffered – and St Cajetan himself principally – appallingly barbarous treatment at the hands of the Spanish soldiery. At Venice it remained, and the Theatines did not return to Rome until 1557 when Carafa was pope and Cajetan in his grave. It seems reasonable to believe that their interests as an order suffered in consequence. There was an unsuccessful venture at Verona in 1528–9, and even the Neapolitan foundation, made in 1533, encountered serious difficulties in the early years. Until 1557 Venice and Naples were their only two houses. But it is testimony to the impression they made that the word 'Chietino' became currently used to denote a Catholic 'puritan' – whether cleric or lay – and was applied for a time in some quarters to the first Jesuits. For St Ignatius, however, who knew the Theatines in Venice in 1536 and 1537, the whole Theatine concept was plainly far too limited, though what exactly passed between him and Carafa on the subject during that period must remain to some degree uncertain.[1]

Nor is it clear that there was any direct inspiration from the Theatines behind the foundation of two further orders of clerks regular which it is customary to consider alongside of them, those known as the Barnabites and the Somaschi. The motive of active charity – inflamed by the spectacle

---

1 Compare P. Paschini, *S. Gaetano Thiene, Gian Pietro Carafa e le origine dei chierici regolari Teatini* (1926), pp. 137–9, with P. Tacchi Venturi, S.J., *Storia della Compagnia di Gesù in Italia*, vol. II, Parte Prima (2nd edition 1950), pp. 79–80.

of the suffering caused in North Italy by war, poverty and disease and the vices brought in their train – lay strongly behind both. Of the three founders of the Clerks Regular of St Paul, later known as Barnabites from their possession of the Church of St Barnabas at Milan, the leader, St Antonio Maria Zaccaria, was a native of Cremona and had been a doctor before he became a priest, Bartolomeo Ferrari had been a lawyer, and Giacomo Antonio Morigia a professor of mathematics. The foundation took place at Milan in 1533 and the first members were allowed to take solemn vows. In spite of their devotion to pastoral work and especially to the care and education of youth, the society adopted a way of life so severely penitential that reports of its singularity compelled Paul III to undertake an enquiry in 1535. As a result of this, however, he confirmed the order, exempted it from episcopal control and bestowed certain privileges on it. In 1537 it made foundations in Venice, Vicenza, Padua, Verona and elsewhere. Zaccaria died in 1539. The rule was established in 1542 but did not take its final form until 1579. In the seventeenth century the Barnabites spread into France, Spain and Austria. They retained as part of their life the recitation of the divine office in choir and had a special choir dress which they wore over their normal priestly cassocks.

St Girolamo Aemiliani, who in 1532 founded at Somasca, near Bergamo, the congregation of priests who consequently became known as the Somaschi, had been a soldier. His foundation, made with a group of friends who had worked with him during the plagues of 1527, 1528 and 1529 at Verona, Brescia and Bergamo, reflected his revulsion from war and all its social consequences. His chief charitable work was the foundation of orphanages. The first members of his society did not take vows, and on Aemiliani's death in 1537 would have dispersed had it not been for the exertions of his chief follower Angelo Marco Gambara through whom the society was continued and confirmed by the pope in 1540. In 1547 it unsuccessfully sought incorporation into the Society of Jesus. From 1547 to 1555 it was united with the Theatines, but their spirit was different, and when Carafa became pope the union was dissolved. The restored Somaschi were nevertheless encouraged in their independence by Paul IV. Confirmed again by Pius IV in 1563, the society was elevated by St Pius V in 1568 to the status of a true religious order by the introduction of solemn vows and was given exemption from episcopal control. Like the Barnabites, the Somaschi enjoyed the high favour of St Charles Borromeo. They always remained a small order, but in the second half of the seventeenth century enjoyed a considerable expansion by undertaking educational work on a larger scale in colleges and seminaries.

The story of the Camaldolesi, Capuchins, Theatines, Barnabites and Somaschi illustrates the complex of interconnected spiritual influences and motives that were at work in northern Italy at the time. All the

founders who have been mentioned were in touch with most of the others and with reforming bishops like Lippomano and the influential Giberti of Verona who had resigned the office of datarius at the Roman curia; while the hand of Carafa – practically the only southerner among them – was everywhere. Carafa doubtless did much to keep alive the real interest felt by Clement VII and Paul III in all these movements; he was in close and sympathetic touch with the early Capuchins and was the spiritual director of Aemiliani. To get the complete picture of this expanding leaven of renewed Italian Catholic spirituality we must not forget two factors not always sufficiently stressed: first the spiritual influences deriving from members of the older orders, both of men and women, and secondly the spectacle of the physical sufferings of the Italian people in the first decades of the sixteenth century. A strong influence on St Cajetan, for example, was the Augustinian nun, Laura Mignani of Brescia, who was only one of several religious women of the time who had much hidden influence but are less well known than figures like Vittoria Colonna. Carafa was always in close contact with his Dominican sister at Naples who herself made a reformed foundation for women. The Dominican friar, Battista da Crema, was an influential spiritual director who was consulted by St Cajetan and who probably prompted the foundation of the Barnabites, though his detachment from his own order in his last years drew down Carafa's reproaches. All, however, united in deploring the appalling consequences of the wars, the plagues, the famines and the poverty which racked the Italy of the later Renaissance. Every 'Oratory', every devout group, every new body of friars or priests, was concerned with the relief of the sick, the hungry, the destitute, the orphaned, the care of reformed prostitutes, or the construction of special hospitals for the victims of syphilis – a new scourge brought, it was said, by the French invading armies. The purely spiritual motive was of course predominant and basic, but it overflowed naturally and organically into the charity of social relief which was an essential element in the Italian Catholic reform.

The foundation of the association of priests known as the Congregation of the Oratory belongs to a later period. But it should be noticed here that in 1533 St Philip Neri, the future apostle of Rome, came as a young man from Florence to the Eternal City where for the next eighteen years he lived the curious hermit-existence, with its strange spiritual experiences, that preceded his decision to become ordained. As a boy in Florence, Philip Neri had imbibed from the Dominicans of St Mark's and from St Catherine Ricci the cult of Savonarola, nor did he ever forget what he originally owed to the order of St Dominic. But in Rome he came into contact with many other powerful currents of religious thought and influence, especially the early Jesuits; and his mature and developed spirituality, though springing basically from his own originality of char-

acter and temperament, had been shaped over many years of close association with all the varied spiritual forces that were alive in the Rome of the middle decades of the sixteenth century and that had produced, among other things, the new orders that have been described.

In 1535 there took place in Brescia an event of considerable significance in the history of religious associations of women. A number of unmarried women, drawn from all social ranks and mostly young – though including a few widows – formed themselves into an organised company dedicated to St Ursula. The members were to remain in the lay state, to live with their families, to worship in their own parish churches except for a monthly general communion in common, and to wear no uniform. But they were to lead a retired and mortified life according to a rule and under obedience to superiors, and to perform works of charity, in particular the instruction of young girls in Christian piety in their own homes. In 1536 the bishop of Brescia approved the foundation, which was put under episcopal control and had priestly assistance and guidance. Its founder and inspirer was St Angela Merici, a woman already sixty-one years old at the time of the foundation, who for many years had been widely known as a person of great sanctity and mortifications and a pursuer of good works. The spiritual atmosphere she breathed was that of the Franciscan Tertiaries, and she had made the pilgrimage to Jerusalem. It was said that in 1525 Clement VII had sought to persuade her to work in Rome. Her foundation, which spread rapidly in the north of Italy, especially in Milan, and later into France, was significant not only as a female response to the social and moral needs of the time but also as a lay venture which deliberately rejected monasticism with its vows and its enclosure. Education in the secular sense, save perhaps the teaching of reading and writing, was not at first contemplated and was not undertaken until 1595 when it was started at Parma in a community which had been monasticised and had readmitted the old social distinctions. For this lay institute for social works and 'Sunday school' teaching, in which class distinctions vanished, was turned within a century into a religious order, with solemn vows and dowries and strict enclosure, conducting schools for girls – a valuable work, but not the original scheme.

St Angela, who died in 1540, seems to have expected her company to develop and adapt itself, and the papal bull of confirmation of 1544 provided for future changes. But the actual development negatived many of her basic ideas. Neither social nor ecclesiastical opinion in the Italy or France of the Counter-Reformation was prepared for the idea of a free religious association of laywomen privately pledged to virginity and social retirement but organised under a rule of life for the performance of good works. First a uniform, or habit (1546), then conventualisation in a common dwelling (Milan, 1566), at length simple and finally solemn

religious vows with enclosure transformed the company into an order. In this process St Charles Borromeo and the decrees of the Council of Trent with their strict principles of enclosure for all religious women played the leading parts. The era of lay associations on St Angela's lines or even of active nuns without strict enclosure was not yet. Analogous experiences befell the foundations of St Jane Francis Chantal and Mary Ward in the seventeenth century, and it is only with the Sisters of Charity of St Vincent de Paul that the tide begins to turn. None the less, from St Angela Merici and her maidens have sprung the many families of Ursuline convents which have been so prominent in the education of girls. For completeness' sake it should be noted here that Fra Battista da Crema and St Antonio Maria Zaccaria supported a small religious association of women founded in 1535 by the former's patroness, the Contesa Louisa Torelli, to help the Barnabite apostolate among women. In 1557 they, too, had enclosure imposed on them. The Capuchinesses, founded at Naples in 1538 by Maria Longa, the Spanish widow of an Italian official, were strictly enclosed from the start.

All the new foundations, however, were quickly surpassed in importance by the Society of Jesus, whose canonical beginning dates from 1540. In this body the basic idea of the clerks regular was carried to its farthest lengths and enriched by new elements. Founded by a Basque with nine companions who comprised another Basque, three Castilians, one Portuguese, two Frenchmen and two Savoyards, but no Italians, the society was international in composition and wideranging in purpose from the first, and though established at the centre of the church in Rome, since it was formed to be offered to the pope, owed little that can be detected to the Italian environment in which the ten 'foreign' or 'pilgrim' priests – as the first Jesuits were called in Italy – had lived and worked for four years before the actual foundation.

Don Iñigo Lopez de Loyola, who later adopted the name of Ignatius, was born in 1491 at Azpeitia of a Basque knightly family with property at Loyola and elsewhere. Until his thirtieth year he followed the callings of a soldier and a courtier, excelling in feats of bravery and rashness, and delighting – or so he recorded in later life – in duels, dice and affairs of the heart. A grave leg-wound incurred in the defence of Pamplona against the French in 1521 laid him on a long bed of pain and idleness during which his reading of Spanish translations of the legends of the saints and of the *Life of Christ* by Ludolph the Carthusian, in default of secular romances, was accompanied by a religious conversion in which his ideals of service and adventure were turned into completely new channels. Seeking to emulate the saints in the service of God and his Mother, Ignatius on recovery bade farewell to his family and journeyed to the famous shrine of Our Lady at the Catalan monastery of Montserrat. Here, having made a

general confession to a French monk and having probably received helpful spiritual advice, he dedicated himself in an all-night vigil before the holy image to a new life of penitence and service. Exchanging his knightly garments with those of an astonished beggar, he then retired for eight months to the neighbouring town of Manresa where he submitted himself to the harshest penances and austerities and underwent a series of extraordinary religious experiences and illuminations which formed the basis of his whole future career and were the foundations of his *Spiritual Exercises*. Here, too, he discovered the *Imitation of Christ*, that great masterpiece of the northern *devotio moderna*, which with the books read in his first illness constitutes the only direct and undisputed literary influence upon his spirituality. Leaving Manresa purged and illuminated, he made the pilgrimage to Jerusalem (1523), crossing Italy alone and barefooted. At Jerusalem he sought to join the Franciscans and to end his days in the Holy Land as a friar. Failing to make his point he returned to Barcelona and contemplated entering the Carthusian Order. But gradually his ideal of service to God widened. Instead of desiring no more than to hide himself in a life of obscure monastic penance he felt the impulse to bring to others the knowledge of the way to God as God had taught him at Manresa. He realised that for this he required to educate himself, a vital decision for his future, and there followed his early periods of study at Barcelona (1525), Alcalá (1526–7) and Salamanca (1527). But everywhere he went, men and women gathered round him whom he instructed in religion and whom he sought to direct according to the plan of the *Spiritual Exercises* already, it seems, written down in an early form.

   Such unauthorised activity on the part of a mere layman could hardly fail to be frowned upon by the ecclesiastical authorities, already highly sensitive to the existence in Spain of persons claiming direct divine illumination. At Alcalá and Salamanca Ignatius succeeded in justifying his orthodoxy though not in avoiding some period of imprisonment. But the restrictions which the inquisitors sought to place upon his activities as a spiritual teacher caused him to seek a freer field outside Spain for his studies and for his apostolic endeavours. Hence the years at the university of Paris (1528–35), which were another turning point in his life when his whole horizon, in many senses, was enlarged. Here too he gathered round himself and formed the disciples who were destined to make the foundation with him, with six of whom – Le Fèvre, Laínez, Salmerón, Bobadilla, Rodriguez and Francis Xavier – he took the famous vow at Montmartre on 15 August 1534 by which they dedicated their lives in poverty and chastity to the service of God, either in the Holy Land or – should they be unable to do this – by offering their services to the pope. After they had completed their studies the companions met again in 1537 at Venice, the port of embarkation for Palestine, their number now enlarged by the

addition of Le Jay, Broet and Codure. Ignatius was already there, completing his studies and familiarising himself with the Italian situation; it was at this time that he came into contact with Carafa and the Theatines. Those who were not yet priests, St Ignatius included, were there ordained, and the companions separated to work in different Italian towns until they could embark for the Holy Land.

But hostilities between Venetians and Turks made the journey impossible in 1537. After waiting a little longer, they decided to fulfil the alternative proposal of their Montmartre vow and offer themselves to the pope. In preparation, Ignatius, with Le Fèvre and Laínez, went to Rome to reconnoitre. In a chapel at La Storta outside Rome in November 1537 he was strengthened by an experience of a mystical kind in which he claimed that God had 'set him along with his Son', and in Rome his exertions soon commended himself and his companions to many in places of influence. He successfully defended himself against charges of heresy and irresponsibility raked up from his past in Spain and Paris, and at length, early in 1539, with backing from the highest ecclesiastical powers, he called his companions to him to decide on their future. The group now solemnly debated whether, in order to make themselves more effective as instruments in the hands of the pope, they should form themselves into a religious society or not. By 24 June they had unanimously reached the decision to remain united and to add a vow of obedience to a superior to their vows of poverty and chastity. They drew up a document in five chapters in which the essential principles of the Society of Jesus and its work appear on paper for the first time. It can hardly be doubted that Ignatius was the predominating force in all this and that the ideas now sketched were not new in his mind. The papal advisers to whom the document was submitted were, however, of divided opinions. Certain points in the proposals seemed new and strange; the atmosphere was against new foundations. It was almost certainly Cardinal Contarini who ensured a favourable outcome, and with some amendments the proposals were accepted. By a papal bull of 27 September 1540, *Regimini militantis ecclesiae*, the Society of Jesus – its name, which for long some found questionable, harking back to the experience at La Storta – came into existence. Ignatius was elected general in Lent 1541, and the six members then in Rome made their solemn vows in St Paul's Outside the Walls on 22 April 1541.

The long evolution of soldier into founder-saint was now complete and from this moment until his death on 31 July 1556 Ignatius of Loyola lived in Rome directing closely every side of his society's life and activities. The bull of foundation had cautiously placed a limit of sixty on the number of the professed members. In 1544 Paul III removed this, and Julius III shortly after his election in 1550 published the important confirmatory

bull *Exposcit debitum* which had been prepared under his predecessor and in which the aims and structure of the society were more fully set out. Both these pontiffs warmly supported the Jesuits and heaped privileges on them in recognition of their value. Under Paul IV, however, the atmosphere became somewhat cooler. Papal help was withheld from certain Jesuit institutions, and after Ignatius's death an attack was made on the life-tenure of the generalship and the fathers in Rome were forced to recite their office in common like the Theatines. Pius IV, however, again allowed the society to observe its own constitutions. These, with the accompanying declarations, constitute a long and elaborate document in ten parts. They are the full working out of the five short chapters of 1539 and were the work of Ignatius himself, accomplished between 1547 and 1551 with the aid of his secretary Polanco, a graduate of Padua, who did most of the drafting. They were accepted by an assembly of the professed fathers in 1551 which also vetoed Ignatius's attempt to resign the generalship. The next few years were a period of rapid expansion. Whereas we have about 920 letters of Ignatius written between 1540 and 1549, for the years 1549 to 1556 the number is no less than 6,740.

Useful activity marked all the declared aims of the society. Apart from the sanctification of its own members, these were the 'propagation' – the word 'defence' was added in the bull of 1550 – of the faith and the promotion of the good of souls by preaching, teaching, retreat-giving, ministration of the sacraments and all spiritual and charitable works of mercy, including specifically the instruction of boys in the truths of Christianity. Everything was ordered with this pastoral aim in view, especially the revolutionary abolition of the common recitation of the office and the abstention from the singing of high masses. Fasts and severe corporal mortifications were to be no normal part of the life, and even the prayer of the Jesuit was to be so conditioned as to keep his will and his mind fixed on active tasks and away from the temptation of the con-templative ideal. The rejection of the ways and spirit of monasticism went farther than any clerks regular had yet gone and was a great stumbling-block to conservative critics who chose to see in this special policy for a special society a condemnation in principle smacking of Erasmian human-ism or even of Protestantism. The practical successes of the society, however, were largely due to the revolutionary features which marked it at so many points, coupled with the long training of its members.

The intending novice was first submitted to a 'first probation' in the form of a thoroughgoing examination of character and motives carried out according to the set directions of the first chapter of the constitutions. The novitiate itself lasted two years instead of the hitherto customary one, and instead of being undergone in unbroken seclusion included wherever possible a period of service in a hospital and the making of a pilgrimage

barefoot and begging. Then came an even more radical innovation – the intrusion of a period of indefinite length, called the scholasticate, between novitiate and profession. This was, in effect, a period of education, in humanities, philosophy and theology, as might be suitable; and it might also include employment in preaching and in charitable works. The scholastic took simple vows of poverty, chastity and obedience and pledged himself to enter the society proper if, whenever, and in whatever grade of membership, his superiors should decide. If in due course he were accepted for membership he was then ordained and submitted to a kind of second spiritual novitiate of one year, called the 'third probation', or 'tertianship'. After this he was incorporated into the society in one of three possible ways. Those who had not reached the highest intellectual or cultural level but could be useful in purely spiritual functions became 'formed spiritual co-adjutors'. The others became fully professed members taking solemnly the usual three vows and could not thereafter normally be dismissed. Of these, again, some were allowed to take a fourth vow which reflected the original intention of the founding fathers. This was a vow of direct personal obedience to the pope should the latter send them to work in foreign missions. The 'professed of the fourth vow' constituted the innermost core of the society and were its governing body. In 1556 out of about 1,000 members only forty-three had been admitted to the fourth vow; eleven others were solemnly professed and there were five spiritual co-adjutors. The gradation of membership, which also included formed temporal co-adjutors (laybrothers), was one of Ignatius's most ingenious inventions. The grades appear to reflect the successive stages of his own career. It has also been suggested that he may have been influenced by the Venetian constitution or by discussions on the constitutions of 'ideal societies' which took place in intellectual circles in Venice during his time there.[1]

Ultimate power in the society and the interpretation of the constitutions lay with the general congregation of the fathers professed of the fourth vow or their elected representatives. This body did not, however, meet at fixed intervals but only to elect a new general or at the summons of the existing general. In very exceptional circumstances it could be brought together to deal with an insane or gravely incompetent general. But while all monastic reforms in the preceding 150 years had sought safety in temporary superiors – even with Benedictine abbots – and in regular capitular assemblies in the manner of the friars for the control of business and the election of officials, the Jesuit general was chosen for life and the society knew no capitular organisation. The general nominated to all the

1 J. Crehan, S.J., 'Saint Ignatius and Cardinal Pole', *Archivium Historicum Societatis Jesu*, 25 (1956), 11–12.

important posts throughout the whole society and during his life-tenure
was controllable only by his – elected – assistants. It was laid down that
there should be four of these. In practice the general appeared supreme
and may not unreasonably be regarded as reflecting in the sphere of
ecclesiastical polity – like the Counter-Reformation papacy itself – the
new spirit of centralised autocracy characterising the early sixteenth
century. Conversely, the virtue of obedience was held in special esteem
and was particularly inculcated by Ignatius who wished its perfection to
be the special mark of his followers. The society was conceived as an
instrument in the hands of the pope to serve Christ and his church.
Similarly, the individual Jesuit lay in the hands of his superiors. The
similes of the corpse – *quasi cadaver* – and of the stick-in-the-hand were
not, however, original; they were drawn from the Franciscan and other
medieval rules. But Jesuit obedience functioned without the limiting
factors of an exact monastic rule and limited external activities, and the
very variety and variability of Jesuit work widened, as it were, the
potential area of its application. There was, too, an obedience demanded
of mind and spirit in conformity with the special attitudes of the society in
many spiritual and theological issues, something which could press more
closely than the general duty to 'think with the church'. Yet the concep-
tion of Jesuit obedience as essentially military is not the whole truth. The
amount of care for individual temperaments which the constitutions
specifically require to be shown by superiors, and which is exemplified in
Ignatius's own skill in dealing with his subjects, is very remarkable, and
many early Jesuits showed a truly Renaissance variety and independence
of character within the society's prudent and elastic framework. Behind
the Jesuit spirituality lay the *Spiritual Exercises*, that remarkable tech-
nique of systematic, purposeful prayer and meditation, regulating and
focusing the will and the affections, a technique which, it is clear from the
records, produced in numberless individuals a changed life, or a perma-
nent rekindling of fervour in new resolutions, thus reproducing in varying
degrees of intensity Ignatius's own conversion, from the experiences of
which the *Exercises* took their origin. The *Exercises* were one of the
Jesuits' most powerful spiritual weapons in their general apostolate as well
as the basis of their own spiritual training. The text, written with extreme
care by Ignatius, is in effect his instructions for directors giving the
exercises. A Latin translation of the Spanish original was approved by
Paul III in 1548 and printed then for the first time.

The Jesuits pledged themselves to accept no bishopric or ecclesiastical
dignity save by express papal command. They also prudently refused the
spiritual direction of communities of women, and an ill-advised and
embarrassing attempt on the part of Isabel Roser, one of Ignatius's
earliest followers in Barcelona, to establish a female community in Rome

under Jesuit obedience failed. They refused, too, the direct administration
of parishes, but soon established a whole series of important religious and
charitable organisations in Rome and elsewhere. In these ways they
followed in the footsteps of the Theatines. But the special and wider
activities which had come to distinguish them by 1556 showed the
immense difference between the scope and the vision of the two institutes.
These activities were, first, education and learning, secondly, missions to
infidel and heathen lands, and thirdly, engagement in the fight against
Protestantism outside Italy.

The Jesuits no more than the first Ursulines were founded as a 'teaching
order' in the strict or exclusive sense of the words as later exemplified in
the foundation of St Joseph Calasanctius and St Jean-Baptiste de la Salle.
But St Ignatius well understood the scandal and havoc caused by an
ignorant clergy and though he never became a great scholar himself he
was determined that his own 'reformed priests' should be men of the
highest cultural and educational standards consistent with their priest-
hood, men capable of giving an up-to-date and intelligent presentation of
the faith they preached to Catholic and Infidel alike. Not for nothing did
he gird his own loins for study, draw his co-founders from fellow-students
at Paris, institute the scholasticate and restrict the fullest membership of
the society to the best scholars. Some of the first Jesuits were, indeed,
outstanding in ecclesiastical learning, and also in humanities, and com-
mended themselves to Paul III as much by their doctrinal and scriptural
expositions as by their pastoral efficiency. The future importance of the
Jesuits as dogmatic and moral theologians and controversialists was latent
in the society from the start and was foreshadowed in particular by the
attendance of Laínez and Salmerón at the Council of Trent in 1546 where
they met with such success that when they returned there in 1552, to play
an important part in the discussions and also make the society more
widely known, it was as accredited theologians of the Holy See. The
colleges provided for in the constitutions – which, unlike the houses of the
professed fathers, were allowed to enjoy fixed revenues – were intended for
the education of members of the society, in humanities, philosophy and
theology. The courses might be attended at established universities or be
given by fathers of the society. The first college was established at Padua
in 1542, and Ignatius drew up rules for it which became classical. A second
was established at Coimbra a few months later. Others followed, the most
important being the Roman college inaugurated in 1551. In 1556 Paul IV
gave the society authority to confer degrees on its own students at this
college.

So successful was the educational system elaborated by the society for
the training of its own members that it soon came to be eagerly sought
after by others. The task of running what we should now call secondary

schools for boys – overlapping the sphere of university education as it then did – was not implied in the original Jesuit aim of teaching boys their religion. Ignatius was not at first eager to see it develop. Outside pressure, however, forced the pace. The first admission of lay boys to a Jesuit college for the humanities course took place at Goa in 1545 and was held justified by the special conditions of the Indian mission. Then in 1546 at the request of the duke of Gandía – later, as St Francis Borgia, to be general of the society and already secretly professed in it – a Jesuit was permitted to hold a course in arts for laymen at Gandía University. At length, at the earnest insistence of the viceroy of Sicily, Ignatius conceded the principle and a boys' college was opened at Messina, in 1548, the success of which led to other irresistible demands. At Ignatius's death the society had over thirty colleges for lay youths and had embarked irreversibly upon its career as the educator of the upper classes of Catholic Europe. No one could be less truly called a 'child of the Renaissance' than Ignatius, who had early and decisively rejected the Erasmian outlook; but it was the Jesuits with their high academic standards in Latin and Greek who incorporated much of the scholarship and not a little of the humanistic spirit of the classical Renaissance into orthodox Catholic education. The purging of the classical texts in the interest of morality and Christian doctrine was no doubt objectionable to the whole-hearted humanist, but understandable from the Jesuit point of view on the object of Christian education. It was not until 1599 that, after numerous earlier experimental forms, the final version of the Jesuit educational plan, the *Ratio Studiorum*, was produced.

French influences were strong in early Jesuit studies. Ignatius insisted on adherence to the Paris system of teaching which was strange in Italy and often much disliked. The first rector of the Roman college – whose courses were soon thrown open to laymen – and a number of early Jesuit teachers in Rome and Gandía and Messina were Frenchmen. Paradoxically enough, in France itself the society made only small initial headway. In Paris both bishop and university, with their Gallican outlook, distrusted a body so heavily privileged by the papacy and tending to overlap the university's sphere. In 1556 there were only two Jesuit communities in France, at Paris and Billom, and the first was in a somewhat equivocal legal position. In Portugal, on the other hand, there were already six communities, in Spain over twenty, and in Italy even more. In Italy the society was more quickly successful than elsewhere in overcoming the opposition of established local teachers and faculties who were unwilling to yield immediate place to the foreign priests with their Paris methods – and who made a principle of taking no fees.

It is a mistake to suppose that the Society of Jesus was founded specifically to combat Protestantism. As a Spaniard, Ignatius turned his

eyes more readily to the Muslim world and the Orient than to the heretics in Germany. The extraordinary career of St Francis Xavier in India and the Far East, already ended four years before Ignatius died, represented the earliest Jesuit ideal which never waned. The quick and warm support of the Portuguese Crown promoted early missions in India, based on Goa, in Brazil and in Ethiopia, this last being on the way out, with two Jesuits consecrated as bishops, at Ignatius's death. There was also a mission to the Congo. At the end of his life Ignatius toyed with plans for colleges in Jerusalem, Constantinople and Cyprus. In the Spanish-controlled New World, however, the Jesuits were late-comers, following in the footsteps of the earlier Augustinian, Franciscan and Dominican missions. But during his time in Paris, in Venice, and indeed in Rome itself, Ignatius doubtless came to appreciate the import of the Protestant movement. Nevertheless it was on the express command of Paul III, not on Ignatius's own initiative, that the first Jesuits went to investigate the German situation. During the 1540s Le Fèvre, Le Jay and Bobadilla went to Germany separately as assistants to Cardinal Morone and other papal representatives. Called to many places by both lay and ecclesiastical potentates who sought their advice, they made contacts and collected impressions and information so far as their ignorance of German permitted, and made some attempt at cultivating relations with Protestant leaders. But all came separately to the same conclusion, that only a new generation of priests and laity trained in a new and more positive, confident, Catholic mentality could save German Catholicism. Jesuit colleges were soon being asked for. The first permanent Jesuit settlement was made at the key-point of Cologne in 1545. The outstanding figures were Canisius and Kessel, both natives of the Low Countries. The settlement suffered at first, like that at Paris, from the attitude of the city authorities who supported the opposition of the university and other elements hostile to the new teachers. But Cologne was a vital place for Catholicism in Germany and was of great importance because of its close links with the Low Countries whence came so many of the early Jesuits. Later settlements such as those at Ingolstadt and Vienna had easier beginnings. At Ignatius's death the society had struck certain roots in Germany and had gained the favour of the Bavarian Wittelsbacks and of the Habsburgs – despite Bobadilla's outspoken condemnation of the Interim. It was also in charge of the German college founded in Rome in 1552 at the instigation of Cardinal Morone for the education of German boys suitable to be prepared for the priesthood, which was the first boarding college undertaken by the society. Later the Jesuits were to direct a number of seminaries and play a large part in training secular priests of many nationalities. Cardinal Pole was in sympathetic touch with St Ignatius and his young society. He was concerned with the abortive mission of Broet and Salmerón to Ireland in 1541, and though the

suggestion of a Jesuit mission to England during the Marian restoration of Catholicism did not materialise – Ignatius had other commitments seemingly more important – Pole's plans for a more systematic education for priests which figure in the decrees of the Council of London of 1555-6 and on which were modelled the Tridentine decree of 1563 on seminaries, were clearly influenced by Jesuit practice and experience.[1]

In 1554 Ignatius's health was seen to be failing. He was given three assistants. Nadal was made vicar-general and made visitations of great importance in Germany and elsewhere. After Ignatius's death, however, it was Laínez, one of the original ten, who became vicar-general and was elected second general in 1558, the general congregation having been delayed owing to various difficulties raised by Paul IV. At Ignatius's death there were about a thousand Jesuits – the vast majority still novices or scholastics. They were distributed among about one hundred settlements of different kinds – professed houses, colleges, residences – and grouped into a dozen or so provinces covering Italy, Spain, Portugal, France, Germany and the Low Countries in Europe, and India, Japan, Brazil and the Congo. Perhaps a fifth to a quarter of the houses were outside Europe, but no fewer than 170 of the Society's members were living in Rome. Demands for colleges and foundations far beyond the society's resources in men and money were coming in. But the society was still in some ways in an experimental stage. The Italian element in it was not yet strong. Not perhaps until the rule of the first Italian general, Claudio Acquaviva (1581–1615), did the elaborate provisions of the constitutions become fully and smoothly operative and the society stand forth with all its mature characteristics. Its unique character and immense potentialities were, however, already sufficiently apparent in 1556. It was the spearhead of the pastoral, active spirit of Counter-Reformation Catholicism, international, confident, determined, uncompromising, yet at the same time flexible, adaptable, ingratiating, modern. Taught by its founder, it sought to be on good terms with the highest authorities in both church and state and to turn their power and patronage to good account. But, in the tradition of its founder, too, it was determined that nothing should be allowed to stand against its will to serve the church according to the aims and spirit of its institute. Both central and singular in the church, it was destined to have a far-reaching influence not only on the progress of the Counter-Reformation but upon every side of the life and spirit of modern Catholicism.

---

1 J. Crehan, S.J., 'Saint Ignatius and Cardinal Pole'; V. P. Brassell, S.J., *Praeformatio Reformationis Tridentinae de Seminariis Clericorum* (1938).

THE EMPIRE OF CHARLES V IN EUROPE

THE sixteenth century was an age of prophets. Luther, Zwingli and Calvin interpreted the Word of God, challenging the claim of the Roman church to its own uniquely valid interpretation. These prophets found their armed champions in Knox, Coligny and William of Orange. The Catholic church countered them with her own arms, with Loyola, with Philip II and the Inquisition. But for more than a generation, before the religious conflicts erupted into open war, the political and religious life of Europe was dominated by a very different fighter for God: The Habsburg Emperor Charles V, the last medieval emperor to whom the religious and political unity of Christendom was both the ideal purpose of his life and a practicable object of policy. 'Caesar is not a doctor of the gospels', wrote Erasmus in his dedication to Charles of his paraphrase of St Matthew, 'he is their champion.' 'God's standard bearer', the emperor called himself when, in June 1535, he weighed anchor at Barcelona to wrest Tunis from the Turks.

Charles had good reasons for his belief. 'God has set you on the path towards a world monarchy,' said the Grand Chancellor Gattinara, in 1519. Marriage alliances and inheritance had given Charles his unique opportunity. In the fifteenth century the houses of Austria and Burgundy had become united in northern Europe, those of Aragon and Castile in the south; but the marriage of Philip of Burgundy and Joanna of Castile, in 1496, produced a similar union between the northern and southern houses only through a series of unexpected deaths. As a result, Charles inherited the Habsburg possessions of Austria, Tyrol and parts of southern Germany, the Netherlands and Franche-Comté and, south of the Alps, Spain with her new American colonies and the Spanish dominions in Italy, Sicily, Sardinia and Naples. To Charles V, this inheritance was a sacred trust, the evidence of a divine intention as well as the material means to carry out this intention. Others had jealously claimed some of his provinces without just title; but, with God's help and his own unceasing efforts, he had always managed to preserve his inheritance undiminished for an heir. Thus wrote Charles to his son in his secret instructions and testaments. At one time or another during his reign, Charles himself or a member of his family sat as ruler or consort on nearly every royal throne of Europe. Dynastic alliances had appeared as the effective instrument of God's will, and dynastic alliances remained the

emperor's favourite policy throughout his life, the only type of policy
he chose freely for the enhancing of his power in Europe. 'For that which
God most commends [to princes] is peace', he admonished his son in 1548.
All wars which he had waged against Christian princes had been forced on
him.

Only against the Infidel was offensive warfare justified. Charles saw his
task as the divinely appointed one of leading a united Christendom
against the external enemy, the Muslim Turk and, later, against its
internal enemies, the Lutheran heretics. To this end the houses of
Burgundy, Austria and Spain had been raised and united in his person. To
this end Charles supported the legitimate rights of its members, even
against the dictates of reason of state: he refused to accommodate Henry
VIII in the divorce of Catherine of Aragon and pressed for decades the
impracticable claims of his niece Dorothea to the Danish throne. To this
end, too, he insisted that the members of his family sacrifice themselves to
his imperial policy just as he sacrificed himself; for thus he wrote to his
sister, Mary of Hungary, who had protested against the proposed
marriage of their barely twelve-year-old niece, Christina of Denmark, to
the duke of Milan in 1535.

Charles V's conception of his role, a providential opportunity to be
realised through systematic marriage alliances and directed towards the
unification of the world in a Christian empire, was not new. We now know
that his paternal grandfather, the Emperor Maximilian I, had attempted
to build up a system of dynastic political alliances, ranging from the
Yorkist party in England to the Jagiellon rulers of Hungary and Bohemia,
and from the Sforza dukes of Milan to either the kings of France or of
Spain, depending on political circumstances, in order to lead a united
Christian Europe to the reconquest of Constantinople.[1] The Byzantine
Imperial Crown, lost to Christendom only some fifty years before, would
be reunited with the Crown of Charlemagne, and the Roman empire
would be recreated, beyond the visions of any medieval emperor, as a
single entity. Such heady dreams had wide currency among European
intellectuals in the apocalyptic atmosphere of the early sixteenth century,
that atmosphere of religious and political ferment which formed the
background to the Reformation. Even that arch-realist politician,
Charles V's maternal grandfather, Ferdinand of Aragon, took care to
obtain for himself (and therefore for his heirs) the claims of the Palaeo-
logi, the last dynasty of Byzantine emperors. On his deathbed, Ferdi-
nand, the conqueror of the Moslem kingdom of Granada, still hoped that

---

1 H. Angermeier, 'Der Wormser Reichstag 1495 in der politischen Konzeption König
  Maximilians I', in H. Lutz (ed.), *Das römisch-deutsche Reich im politischen System Karls V*
  (1982), pp. 1–13.

The Family of Charles V

VALOIS   BURGUNDY   HABSBURG   ARAGON   CASTILE   TUDOR

MARY †1477   **MAXIMILIAN I** †1519   **FERDINAND** THE CATHOLIC †1516   **ISABELLA** THE CATHOLIC †1504

PHILIP THE HANDSOME †1506

MARGARET †1530 (REGENT OF NETHERLANDS 1507–15, 1518–30) = DON JUAN †1497

ISABELLA

JOANNA THE MAD †1555

CATHERINE †1536 = HENRY VIII

FRANCIS I = ELEANOR 1498–1558

CHARLES V 1500–58 (married Isabella of Portugal)

ISABELLA 1501–25 (married Christian II of Denmark)

FERDINAND 1503–64 (married Anne of Hungary)

MARY 1505–58 (married Louis II of Hungary) REGENT OF NETHERLANDS 1531–55)

CATHERINE 1507–78 (married John III of Portugal)

MARY I of England

PHILIP II 1527–98 (married Mary of England, 1554–8)

MARY 1528–1603

JOANNA †1578

JOHN †1532

DOROTHEA †1580 (married Frederick, Count Palatine)

CHRISTINA †1590 (married Francesco Sforza, duke of Milan)

ELIZABETH (married king of Poland)

MAXIMILIAN II 1527–76

God would spare him to fulfil a prophecy that he would reconquer Jerusalem.[1]

For most of Charles's contemporaries his imperial position had no such transcendental significance; least of all for the men responsible for the young prince's smooth entry into the inheritance of his many lands. Charles had lost his father in 1506 at the age of six and had inherited from him the possessions of the house of Burgundy: Franche-Comté with the claim to the duchy of Burgundy (since 1477 in French hands) and the provinces which were then called *les pays de pardeça* and which came to be known as the Netherlands (*les pays d'embas*) only from the 1530s. These were the duchies of Luxemburg and Brabant, and the counties of Flanders, Holland, Zeeland, Hainault and Artois, together with a number of smaller counties and lordships. Charles's mother, Joanna of Castile, who survived until 1555, was insane and incapable of government. In consequence, the regency for the child was undertaken by his grandfather, the emperor Maximilian I, acting through his daughter, Margaret of Austria, dowager duchess of Savoy. Margaret's regency was brought to an end in January 1515 when the estates bribed Maximilian to have the young prince declared of age.

Within a year of this event, Ferdinand of Aragon was dead (23 January 1516). The whole inheritance of the Catholic kings, Ferdinand and Isabella, now fell to Charles of Burgundy. To Guillaume de Croy, lord of Chièvres, the effective head of Charles's government, the problem was neither new nor unexpected. Little more than ten years before, the Burgundian nobility had accompanied Charles's father, Philip, to Spain and had helped him make good his claims to the crown of Castile. Since then, Spanish grandees had lived at the Burgundian court and had been admitted to the Order of the Golden Fleece. Spanish merchants were familiar figures in Bruges and Antwerp. For Chièvres and the great seigneurs in his council the question of whether or not to accept the Spanish succession never arose; it was only a question of how to achieve it. Chièvres was the leader of the old Walloon nobility. By culture, family ties and the possession of estates near or even across the French border they were traditionally francophile. Now, Chièvres had to reconcile the 'English' party with whose help Margaret had governed. He had to win over Maximilian and Henry VIII into full co-operation and induce Francis I to maintain a benevolent neutrality (Treaty of Noyon, 3 December 1516).

Having none of Gattinara's or Charles's sense of imperial mission, Chièvres could afford to leave France in control of northern Italy if this meant peace and amity with his powerful neighbour. When finally, in

---

1 J. M. Headley, 'Germany, The empire and *Monarchia* in the thought and policy of Gattinara', in H. Lutz (ed.), *Das römisch-deutsche Reich*, pp. 15–33.

September 1517, he concluded a truce with the old enemy of the Habsburgs, Charles of Guelders, Burgundian diplomacy had won its major objectives – peace in Europe and freedom from all interference with the Spanish succession.

The situation in Spain itself was much more problematical. The union of the Spanish Crowns had not meant the union of the Spanish kingdoms, and there were still powerful forces in each which would gladly have seen a return to separate rulers. In Castile, despite the efforts of Isabella, the power of the Crown was still far from firmly established. At every royal death, the old antagonism between grandees and towns broke out into open strife. Since Isabella's death the regency of Castile had been in the hands of her old minister, Cardinal Jiménes de Cisneros, archbishop of Toledo. After Ferdinand's death, Cisneros was well aware that only the early arrival of Charles in Spain could assure him a smooth succession. The nobles, trying to profit by the interregnum, were attempting to regain their old control over the towns. Toledo and Valladolid were in revolt against their corregidors, the royal representatives in the city administration. The cardinal's attempt to raise a militia of 30,000 was sabotaged by both towns and grandees who feared for their own power. Cisneros had to give way for fear of more serious trouble. Most difficult of all, and most embittering, was the problem of royal appointments. The Spaniards accused the Netherlanders of greed and place-hunting. In fact, the court at Brussels was careful to hold its hand in all but a few cases; but, in Spain itself, Cisneros' secretary wrote that government was impossible without giving benefices and rewards (*mercedes*).

The eighteen months which it had taken Chièvres to prepare for Charles's departure had been too long an interregnum for Spain. When Charles landed there, in September 1517, his supporters were already disillusioned, while nobles and towns were sullenly apprehensive of the expected rule of the foreigner. The cardinal-regent lay dying, for joy at the king's arrival, as Charles's court jester maliciously said. Charles himself, young, ugly and inexperienced, speaking no Spanish and surrounded by Burgundian councillors and courtiers, did not initially make a good impression. The Spaniards contrasted the magnificence of the Burgundian court, its tournaments and balls, with the sober and inexpensive habits of the Catholic kings. Only three bishoprics were given to foreigners, but these included the see of Toledo, for Chièvres's nephew, and it was easy to regard this as plunder for the Burgundians. Moreover, it appeared that those Spaniards who had been in the Netherlands were preferred to those who had served the king's cause in Spain. In February 1518 the Cortes of Valladolid presented Charles with far-reaching demands and much pointed counsel as a condition of the country's homage and of a grant of 600,000 ducats payable over three years. The court was accommodating

and, though relations were not cordial, Charles was now the acknow-
ledged king of Castile.

The Estates of the realms of the Crown of Aragon had preserved even
greater liberties than those of Castile. It took much longer than in Castile
to come to terms with the cortes of Zaragoza and Barcelona and to obtain
from them 200,000 and 100,000 ducats respectively. Chièvres preferred
not to repeat this delay in Valencia. With the Crown of Aragon Charles
had now inherited the old Aragonese empire, the Balearic islands,
Sardinia, Sicily and Naples. It was a union of kingdoms each with its own
history, its own traditions, obligations and enmities. The necessity of
defending southern Italy from the Turks inevitably brought Charles V's
empire into collision with the Ottoman empire, quite apart from Charles's
view of himself as the champion of Christendom. The rival Aragonese and
Angevin claims to Naples brought Charles into collision with France, a
collision which the purely Burgundian policy of Chièvres had at least
temporarily been able to avoid. Defence against the Turks inevitably
turned into a struggle for the control of the central Mediterranean.
Defence against the French inevitably turned into a struggle for the
control of Italy and hence, as the emperor's advisers Gattinara and
Granvelle were later to argue, into a struggle for the dominant position in
Europe. Even without Charles's election as emperor, Castile's traditional
friendship with France (maintained despite the francophobia of the
Castilians) was now irretrievably broken, and similarly broken was the
Walloon nobility's policy of Franco-Burgundian amity.

There remained the final step in Charles's succession, the succession to
the Austrian and South German dominions of the Habsburgs and his
election as king of Germany which carried with it the Crown of the Holy
Roman Empire.[1] With the pope supporting Francis I and the electors
still undecided, Margaret of Austria suggested that both pope and electors
might be more easily induced to accept Charles's younger brother,
Ferdinand, than the powerful ruler of the Netherlands, Spain and half of
Italy. Charles's sharp reaction from Barcelona reads like a programme for
his reign. Experience had shown, he wrote, that even such a virtuous and
victorious prince as the Emperor Maximilian had been in constant trouble
to safeguard his patrimony and imperial rights; but he, Charles, with the
power of all his great kingdoms and dominions, would be feared and
esteemed among other princes, would obtain true obedience from the
subjects of the empire and defeat the enemies of the faith. This would be
greater glory for both Ferdinand and himself than acquiring dominion
over Christians. Charles promised, however, to work for Ferdinand's
election as king of the Romans, that is as heir presumptive to the imperial

1 Cf. below, p. 378.

title. In the end, Charles was elected unanimously by the German electors (28 June 1519).

The election was peculiarly the triumph of the new grand chancellor, the Piedmontese Mercurino Arborio di Gattinara who had been appointed to his office in 1518. A brilliant lawyer and superb administrator, an enthusiastic humanist and admirer of Erasmus, he had risen in the service of Margaret of Austria. For the next twelve years he did more than any other person to shape the development of Charles's political ideas, then still in the youthful stage of the chivalrous quest for personal glory in the tradition of the Burgundian court. In his own memoirs, in speeches to the Spanish cortes and the Netherlands states general, in memoranda for the emperor and his council, Gattinara reiterated his belief that the imperial title gave Charles authority over the whole world, for it was 'ordained by God himself . . . and approved by the birth, life and death of our Redeemer Christ'. It was Dante's imperial idea revived. Like Dante, Gattinara, his learned and historically conscious compatriot, saw the centre of imperial power in Italy. Not the personal possession of Milan or of other territories, but the friendship and support of the Italian states and all Christian princes (guaranteed, no doubt, by Habsburg military power) were to assure the emperor his position as moral and political leader of the world. In time Charles made these views his own, with little of the Italian's humanist learning, but with an even greater emphasis on the religious and dynastic aspects of his position. Throughout his reign he maintained his claim to pre-eminence over all other princes. He would never accept Francis I's claim to equal status and when, later, they negotiated quite seriously about a joint campaign against the Turks, he was careful to promise the king of France only that he would be treated with all the honour that his eminent position demanded. As to Sulaimān, Charles would not even allow him the title of sultan and always referred to him as the Turk. When Gattinara died in 1530, Charles had grown up to intellectual and moral independence. From thenceforth he dispensed with a grand chancellor. Long years of power had heightened his sense of responsibility and had developed his slow and unoriginal mind to self-assurance and mastery of politics, making him tower over his contemporaries both in the constancy of his ideals and in the flexibility and shrewdness of his tactics. At thirty-four he wrote to his younger sister ːMary, dowager queen of Hungary and recently appointed regent of the Netherlands, to console her over the troubles of her task: when she had had as much experience as he, she would no longer despair over difficulties. Years later, Mary was to complain to her brother, Ferdinand, 'that the emperor is difficult and does not always think well of a matter if it does not come from him'. Thus, selfassured and masterful, in his later years a little sceptical, the emperor appears in Titian's famous portraits.

Not all contemporaries, not even those in his own dominions, could accept Charles's and Gattinara's view of the empire as standing for peace among Christians and the defence of Christianity against Muslims and heretics. Gattinara's Italian policy was ascribed to his possession of estates in the duchy of Milan. His policy of moral leadership for the emperor became suspect when, after the battle of Pavia, he urged the annexation of Dauphiné and Languedoc. With an imperial niece married to the duke of Milan and imperial troops in control of its fortresses, the emperor's claim that he was preserving the independence of the duchy had a hollow ring to the Venetians and the French. Europe saw Charles V's empire primarily in terms of power, and in his view originated the permanent hostility of the only other European state of comparable strength, France, and the intermittent hostility or at best cool friendship of the lesser independent powers, England, Denmark and the Italian states. Moreover, Charles's very insistence on his religious aims and their fusion with his political ends helped to make insoluble two problems which were difficult enough in any case: his relations with the German princes and his relations with the pope. To the Protestant German princes the emperor's policy represented the double threat of imperial and religious coercion; and since the Catholic princes were equally alarmed about the emperor's political power, they never gave him the political support which alone would have enabled him to solve the religious question.

The pope seemed to be the natural ally of 'God's standard bearer', and Charles never ceased to hope that such he would prove to be. But Clement VII and Paul III, in their capacity as Italian princes, were as alarmed as their twelfth- and thirteenth-century predecessors at seeing Naples and Milan united in one hand. They therefore never stopped intriguing with France against the imperial power in Italy. Of this fact Charles was fully aware. What he never fully understood was that the popes, as spiritual heads of the Christian church, could never entertain the emperor's claim to be the ultimate arbiter of the religious troubles which afflicted Christendom. It was unacceptable that at Augsburg and Regensburg the emperor's theologians should attempt to reach a compromise with the Protestants binding on all Christians; it was intolerable that a secular prince should take the initiative in reforming the church and should threaten to summon a general council. The threat of the Turks and Protestants held pope and emperor together in uneasy alliance and only once, in 1527, did the underlying hostility break out into open and disastrous warfare.

After the sack of Rome by imperial troops (7 May 1527) and the blockade of Clement VII in the Castle of Saint Angelo, anti-papal feeling ran extraordinarily high in the imperial camp, probably all the higher

because of the well-founded fear that the emperor would be blamed for his soldiers' unchristian behaviour. Ferdinand petitioned his brother for investiture with the duchy of Milan, which would have created a huge, unbroken block of Habsburg territory from the Po to the Sudeten Mountains and the Carpathians. Both Ferdinand and Gattinara urged Charles to force the pope to summon a general council for the reform of all spiritual and secular conditions of the church and of Christendom. Worse still, there seem to have been some in the emperor's entourage who now talked of the actual abolition of the papacy as an institution. Nothing came of the more extreme proposals; Milan was enfeoffed to a Habsburg only in 1540, and then it was to Charles's son and not his brother; and the popes managed to postpone the meeting of the general council until 1545. But it is not surprising that the emperor could never induce the papacy to co-operate wholeheartedly in his policies, and this inability remained one of the major weaknesses in his position.[1]

The very existence of Charles V's empire – the uniting of a number of countries under the rule of one person – thus raised problems which the individual countries either would not have had to face at all, or, as the histories of France and England demonstrated, would have had to face in a much more tractable form. Added to these difficulties was the unprecedented problem of governing this diverse collection of states. In the last analysis, the empire of Charles V existed only in the person of the emperor. It was not even called an empire. That name was reserved for the old Holy Roman Empire, here distinguished by a capital letter from the empire of Charles V, a term which should be clearly understood as a purely modern designation; when Charles V's contemporaries used a collective name for his dominions at all, it was *monarchia*. There was much confusion in the minds of contemporaries as to the significance of the term Holy Roman Empire, now that it had suddenly acquired such a powerful head. To Gattinara, at least, it was clear that the personal union of the states of the empire must be matched by a functional union. By training and experience, Gattinara belonged to the school of Roman lawyers, mostly natives of Franche-Comté, who had helped the dukes of Burgundy to weld the Netherlands into a functional union by the establishment of the councils and courts through which they governed the provinces.[2] His authority as Burgundian grand chancellor was now extended to cover all of Charles's dominions. The Council of State, the only one of the councils to which great nobles were admitted and which advised the emperor on all

1 I wish to thank Dr Thomas Fröschl and Dr Alfred Kohler for drawing my attention to these points and to the documentation of Ferdinand's and Gattinara's proposals in 1527.
2 Below, pp. 481, 485.

imperial matters, was extended to include Spanish and Italian members, as well as the Burgundians. Characteristically, Gattinara saw his emperor as legislator for the whole world, 'following the path of the good emperor Justinian', reforming the laws and simplifying legal procedures, so that all the world would want to use them and that 'it would be possible to say that there was one emperor and one universal law'.

Nothing came of this vision. Nor did anything come of Gattinara's plan for a treasurer-general to whom the treasuries of all the emperor's dominions should render account. After Gattinara's death and the abolition of his own office of grand chancellor, the other all-Imperial institutions regressed even from the very modest level they had attained. The central control of the empire became more and more a matter of personal control by Charles and those advisers whom he chose to consult on any particular issue. The enormous amount of paper work (of which only some parts have been published) was handled by two distinct institutions: by a Spanish secretariat of state, continuing traditions inaugurated by the Catholic kings and responsible for the affairs of Spain, Italy and the Mediterranean; and a French secretariat, based on Burgundian traditions and responsible for all affairs north of the Alps. The old German Imperial chancellery continued to function independently in purely technical matters, but politically it was dependent on the French-Burgundian secretariat. Inevitably, these developments led to a great increase in the power of the secretaries of state. Both the Spanish secretary, Francisco de los Cobos, and the French-Burgundian secretary, Nicolas Perrenot, seigneur de Granvelle, another Franche-Comtois, were men of great ability; but neither their functions nor their personalities made their position and influence comparable to those of Gattinara before 1530.

More than ever Charles, and Charles only, represented the empire. He governed it like the head of one of the great sixteenth-century merchant houses where the junior members of the family served as heads of the foreign branches of the firm. There were great advantages in having members of the Habsburg family as governors-general, regents or even kings in his dominions. They were locally more acceptable than even the greatest nobles of non-royal blood and much less likely to be involved in local feuds; their employment as his personal representatives accorded with Charles's own views of the central role of the dynasty in his whole position. The Netherlands, the Empire and Spain after 1529 were always, at least nominally, entrusted to a Habsburg or his consort. Only for the Italian dominions had non-royal viceroys to be appointed. In the event, the emperor's policy proved a success. His family served him loyally and, in the persons of his two governors-general of the Netherlands, his aunt Margaret of Austria (1518–30) and his sister Mary of Hungary (1531–55),

with more than common skill and devotion. Even so, there was frequent friction between the members of the family. Their correspondence shows that all were concerned with the empire as a whole; yet, inevitably, each saw its needs from the angle of his or her specific charge. Each thought, at times, that two of the others were ganging up against them or were leaving them in the dark about important decisions. Ferdinand especially, threatened as he was by the awesome power of the Turks and the wilful policies of the German princes, came to distrust Charles as early as the early 1530s[1] and in 1552 deliberately failed to support his brother against the attack of Maurice of Saxony.[2]

If Charles V trusted his governors and viceroys and if he, unlike his morbidly suspicious son, Philip II, was prepared to keep them in office for decades and uphold them against local opposition, he yet reserved the ultimate control over policy and over the administration entirely to himself. He and his secretaries were in weekly correspondence with his governors. Despite the delays caused by the enormous distances the couriers had to travel; despite the emperor's notorious tardiness in taking decisions; despite the frantic appeals of governors and generals for fuller powers to cope with an emergency – despite all these difficulties, the emperor insisted on taking all important decisions himself, relying only on those counsellors who were travelling with him on his constant journeys from dominion to dominion. The system achieved the control he desired, but at the cost of lost opportunities and great inefficiency. Once, at least, during the revolt of the Comuneros, it came near to ruining his power in Spain.[3]

Apart from the regular political correspondence, the viceroys and governors were bound by the instructions they received when they entered upon their office. They had to follow the advice of the privy councils which Charles appointed for them. He reserved all important appointments to himself, and the administration of any one of his dominions was therefore never the governor's administration but always the emperor's. In his political testament of 1548 he counselled his son not to let his viceroys usurp more authority than he had given them; while Philip should not believe all complaints which were levelled against them, he should never fail to listen to such complaints so that governors should not become absolute and his vassals despair of obtaining justice. It was sound advice, followed fairly and reasonably by Charles himself, but was later pushed to extremes of suspicion and duplicity by Philip II.

---

1 *Die Korrespondenz Ferdinands I*, vol. III: *Familienkorrespondenz 1531 und 1522*, ed. H. Wolfram and C. Thomas (1973–84).
2 Cf. below, pp. 373–4.
3 Below, p. 359.

The emperor was determined to keep control not only over public appointments, but also over all other forms of patronage. He had the reputation of being slow to reward service; but a minister or a servant could always hope that, in the end, he would be given a *grazie* or *merced*: an ecclesiastical benefice, a title, a pension, a castellanship or one of the host of minor offices and sinecures with which the emperor could make a man rich without loss to himself. Great lords and ministers were willing to serve the emperor in the hope of such rewards, and lesser men, in turn, attached themselves to the lords and ministers. Viceroys and governors, sometimes even provinces and cities, had their agents at the emperor's court to represent their interests by a judicious distribution of gifts among councillors and secretaries. Some of these grew rich. Cobos, so Charles himself thought, did not take presents but had received many *mercedes* and desired more. The younger Granvelle, who succeeded his father as one of the emperor's principal advisers, was not above taking presents, though he liked to appear to refuse. The Granvelles, father and son, were reputed to have accumulated property to the value of a million ducats.

The position of Charles as the dispenser of all patronage explains much of the passionate longing of his subjects to have him reside within their particular country. As patronage had been Cisneros' most important problem before Charles's first visit to Spain, so it remained a key problem of all his viceroys and governors. Margaret and Mary, in the Netherlands, were given lists of persons to whom, and to whom only, benefices and offices were to be allotted in strict order as they fell vacant. In vain Margaret protested. She could not obtain the support she needed for the emperor's service if she could never reward those who supported and worked for her. Her reputation, she said, had suffered badly when such appointments and grants as she had made had been revoked by the emperor. In the end, she pleaded at least to be allowed to dispose of a third of the benefices. But the emperor refused even this request.

Undoubtedly, the emperor's policy was effective in concentrating political control over his dominions in his own hands, but it remained a constant source of grievance to his subjects and made the work of his governors extraordinarily difficult. The subjects will more readily obey the prince himself than his governor, wrote his sister Mary at the end of twenty-four years of this experience, for, however much good sense the latter has, he is not as useful to them and hence there will always be a greater number opposing than assisting him.

The emperor's failure to develop a non-personal institutional organisation for his empire was not, however, the result only of the very personal view he took of his office, but also of the attitude of his different dominions. He was no Alexander or Napoleon who had conquered his empire, but the hereditary and legitimate ruler of each of his states whose

laws and customs he had sworn to maintain. The Sicilians prided themselves on their voluntary allegiance to the house of Aragon and alarmed the Spaniards by dark hints of another Sicilian Vespers, should their privileges not be observed. The Spaniards maintained that the title of king of Spain was better than that of emperor of Germany and desired Charles not to use this latter title when he was in Spain. The Germans were particularly suspicious of foreign troops, and their fear that the emperor was arranging the 'Spanish succession' of his son was one of the main reasons for his loss of authority in Germany at the end of his reign. The Netherlanders, the original architects of his empire, resisted even attempts to bring their own provinces into closer union. In 1534 the governor-general proposed to the States General a defensive union with regular financial contributions from each of the provinces for a standing army. The proposal was rejected; 'for if we accept the project', the States General said, 'we shall undoubtedly be more united, but we shall be dealt with in the manner of France', that is, lose our liberties. The particularism of the emperor's dominions was a fight not only against centralisation but also against autocracy. While Charles seized all opportunities which presented themselves to strengthen the Crown's authority in each of his dominions, he never attempted a full-scale attack on the liberties of his subjects in any of them. Any attempt to create an imperial administration would have been regarded as just such an attack.

In these circumstances, it is not surprising that Charles failed to develop an economic policy for his empire or even to conceive of an economic unity of his dominions in the way in which contemporary rulers of single states were beginning to think of the economic unity of their kingdoms. In this field, as in others, only Gattinara understood the full implications of empire. He had proposed a common imperial currency. But nothing ever came of this proposal.

The emperor's policy in economic matters consistently followed the line of least resistance, a line determined by vested interests, local traditions and the overriding financial necessities of the imperial government. The monopoly of the oceanic trade was, indeed, firmly upheld; but, characteristically, it was reserved to the Castilians. Yet Castile was quite unable to provide the manufactures which the Spanish colonists overseas demanded. So far from taking advantage of the excellent colonial market which paid for its imports in solid gold and silver, the Castilians were alarmed at their own exports to which they ascribed the high prices in their kingdom. The Cortes of 1548 even petitioned for a prohibition of exports to the Indies, now that the colonists should have had sufficient time to build up their own industries. It was the very reverse of a mercantilist or imperialist attitude. The emperor did not accept this petition; nor did he accept an earlier one (1542) for the prohibition of the export of all raw

materials from Spain, a prohibition which would have broken the most
important economic link joining his two greatest dominions, the Spanish
wool trade to the Netherlands. Admission of all the emperor's subjects to
the Spanish colonial trade would have benefited all parts of his empire.
The effect of the Castilian monopoly was that French, English, Venetian
and Genoese merchants and manufacturers competed on equal terms with
the Catalans and Netherlanders in supplying Castile with goods for re-
export to the Indies. Nor was there any attempt to maintain what was left
of the economic links of the old Aragonese–Catalan empire, once, in its
heyday, the rival of the Venetian and Genoese commercial empires.
Barcelona had declined from its former greatness. Her merchants still
bought grain in Otranto and Palermo, salt in Trapani and silk in Naples
and Messina. But the Genoese, Venetians and Ragusans, with more ships
and greater capital resources, had broken Catalan pre-eminence, and the
Neapolitans and Sicilians preferred to sell their raw materials to Venice
and Florence, whose industries could supply them with finished goods.[1]

The expulsion of the Jews by the Catholic kings in 1492 had deprived
Spain of the only important group of her citizens who might have played
the role in the economic life of the empire which Spanish soldiers and
administrators were increasingly playing in its political life. Into the void
left by the disappearance of the Jews stepped, first, the South German
bankers. In 1524 the Fuggers, already the owners of most of the mineral
wealth of Tyrol and Hungary, leased Spanish Crown revenues from the
three orders of knighthood, Santiago, Calatrava and Alcántara. By the
end of the reign the Fuggers also controlled the silver mines of Guadalca-
nal and the mercury mines of Almadén. The Welsers, the second greatest
German banking firm, also had occasional interests in these leases and
tried to build up their own colonial empire in Venezuela, in the classic style
of the Spanish *conquistadores*. More important still than the Germans
were the Genoese. Andrea Doria's change from French to imperial
service, in 1528, gave them their opportunity. In the next decades, the
Centurione, the Pallavicini, the Spinola, the Grimaldi and many others
established themselves not only as the emperor's bankers, but as the
greatest traders in the Spanish Mediterranean area. Colonies of Genoese
merchants settled in every important Spanish and south Italian port. Their
economic services were as indispensable to the emperor as the naval
services of Doria's galleys. It was the final and decisive victory over their
old rivals, the Catalans.

---

1 F. Braudel, *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*, trans.
   S. Reynolds (1972–3), vol. I, pp. 120–3. These two volumes are still the most comprehen-
   sive modern work on the political, social and economic history of the Mediterranean
   countries in the sixteenth century.

In the north, the Netherlands undoubtedly profited economically from the Spanish connection. Imperial finance dominated the Antwerp money market. But Imperial policy did not prove as effective a help to the Netherlanders' economic interests as they had hoped. Nowhere was the divergence of interests within the empire more apparent than in the complex and tortuous relations between Holland and the Baltic powers after the expulsion from Denmark of Charles's brother-in-law, Christian II, in 1523.[1] To Holland the free passage of her ships through the Sound meant prosperity; its closing spelt heavy losses, unemployment and hunger, for the Netherlands were dependent on Baltic grain. For the merchants of Amsterdam it was vital that Denmark should not fall into hostile hands, especially those of their deadly rivals, the Lübeckers. For the merchants of Brabant and Flanders, Holland's difficulties meant their own opportunities, since the Lübeckers were subtle enough to offer them far-reaching concessions when they themselves were at war with Holland. For the emperor, the Danish problem was above all a question of the rights of his family. He supported first Christian II's attempts to regain his throne and, later, those of Christian's daughter, Dorothea, and her husband, Frederick of the Palatinate. Through them he hoped to extend imperial influence in northern Europe, even if this involved Holland in costly and unwanted wars. Only Mary of Hungary's government in Brussels did its best to reconcile the parties, at times bluffing effectively with the threat of the engagement of all the emperor's forces. Such an engagement, however, Charles was unwilling to make. For him Denmark was a side issue, compared with the problems of France and the Turks; rather would he allow the Netherlands to treat on their own with Denmark and Lübeck, reserving for himself the right to support the claims of his niece. Hence it was more than twenty years before the relations between the Netherlands and Denmark were finally settled in the Peace of Speyer (1544), and it was the Danes who insisted that the emperor sign for all his dominions. It was a victory of the political and economic over the dynastic concept of empire; but the emperor accepted it only with great reluctance.

Within the different parts of the empire there were powerful forces willing to support Charles and his imperial policy. The Burgundian high nobility, who had done so much to secure for their prince the effective succession to his kingdoms, remained loyal to the end even if, for most of them, Gattinara's and Charles's Christian ideals meant little more than the fashionable common-places of their knightly upbringing at the Burgundian court. It was enough to serve the most powerful prince in Christendom and to have the opportunity of appointments to provincial

1 Cf. above, p. 145.

governorships or even viceroyalties, or to win fame by leading his armies against Frenchmen, Turk or heretic. Thus, too, thought the Spanish nobility. Their early hostility to Charles soon changed to enthusiastic support. More than the Netherlands, they were in sympathy with Charles's crusading and imperial ideals. Had not the Castilians fought the Moors on their own soil? Had not the Aragonese achieved power and renown by their Italian conquests and wealth by the easy acquisition of Sicilian and Neapolitan estates or ecclesiastical benefices? The double lure of knight-errantry and plunder made the Spaniards imperialists in Europe as it made them *conquistadores* in America. Nor did the changes of promotion and high office hold less attraction for the Italian nobility. As king of Sicily and Naples, the emperor was their own prince as much as he was ruler of Spain and Germany. The Gonzaga, the Pescara, the del Vasto preferred the role of an Imperial viceroy or captain-general to that of a provincial condottiere.

Next to the high nobility, the lawyers were the emperor's most enthusiastic supporters. Trained in Roman law with its imperial and absolutist traditions, many of them humanists and Erasmians, they found it easy to combine their sympathy for Charles V's imperial claims with the prospect of dazzling careers in the imperial councils. For the rest of the populations of the emperor's dominions the advantages of belonging to a world-empire appeared more doubtful. There were those, especially among the merchant class, who were able to take advantage of the political connections between Italy, Spain and the Netherlands. But, as we have seen, the economic links between the parts of the empire depended little on its political structure or on the emperor's policies. The Spanish hidalgos, the lower nobility, who flocked in their hundreds to serve under the emperor's standards in the Spanish *tercios*, represented a Spanish, rather than a universal, imperialism. For the mass of the population, the empire seemed to be the last chance of peace within Christendom – that passionate longing which had attached itself for centuries to the name of the Roman empire. Now, in Charles V, it seemed to find its fulfilment. Or so it appeared to the crowds who cheered the emperor's, or his son's, entry into their city on his journeys from country to country; and so it was presented on the triumphal arches which greeted him – arches on which local Latinists displayed their learning and enthusiasm for the 'restorer of the Roman empire' and the 'future ruler of the whole globe'. But it was just this longed-for peace which the emperor failed to give his subjects. When the court had passed on its way, the taxes remained to pay for wars which often seemed no concern of the single provinces. If loyalty to the emperor seldom wavered, his governors, foreign or native, were often hated, and the ruler's absence on his imperial duties was deeply resented. Ultimately, local interests and loyalties remained predominant in every

case; the feeling of imperial solidarity never developed sufficiently to become an effective political force.

Wars and ever-increasing taxes seemed to be the lot of the emperor's subjects. They pressed on millions when the benefits of empire seemed to be reaped by a few hundreds. Every letter that passed between the emperor and his viceroys, every memorandum presented to him by his ministers, was directly or indirectly concerned with problems of finance: for only ready money would keep the emperor's armies in the field and keep his galleys afloat, those instruments on which, in the last resort, all his policies and the very existence of his empire depended. The emperor's financial needs became more and more the fulcrum around which his relations with his separate dominions revolved.

Nowhere was this clearer than in the Netherlands. Their great towns, as they were never tired of insisting, lived by trade and industry; they wanted peace. Their nobility, though personally as avid for glory in the field and as bored by peacetime pursuits as the rest of the European nobility, were sufficiently involved in their country's economic life to support this desire. In 1536 the governor-general herself, Mary of Hungary, pleaded with her brother to keep the Netherlands neutral in an approaching war with France. Charles declined. Such apparent weakness would only encourage the French and the Gueldrians to attack the provinces, he wrote.

If the wars with France were the more expensive and potentially the more dangerous, the wars with Guelders were the more destructive and the seemingly more senseless. Charles of Egmont, duke of Guelders, was perhaps the most determined enemy Charles V ever faced. Against the centralising policy of the Brussels government he stood for the independence of the small princes. With French money and support he equipped his marauding bands. His marshal, Maarten van Rossem, 'Black Martin', the bogey-man of Dutch children, spread fire and destruction through Holland and northern Brabant. In 1528 he sacked The Hague and barely failed to capture Antwerp and Louvain in 1542. Time after time, Holland and Brabant petitioned a willing governor-general to negotiate peace with Guelders. But Egmont, urged on by France, broke every truce and treaty. In the end his policy defeated itself. Friesland, Groningen, Drenthe, Overijssel and Utrecht came to hate the would-be defenders of their liberties more than the emperor. One after another they allowed themselves to be conquered by the governors of Holland and Brabant. In 1538 Egmont died, still undefeated in his own duchy. His successor, William of Cleves, tried to continue his policy when the political basis for it had disappeared. In 1543 the emperor was for the first time free to turn his full powers against Guelders and bring the long anomalous warfare to an end by the annexation of the duchy. The north-eastern frontiers of the

Netherlands were now secure; but the war had lasted too long and had shown the Netherlands how little advantage they derived from the great power of their prince.[1]

Charles V pursued the traditional policy of the dukes of Burgundy of bringing the provinces into closer unity and providing them with more efficient and powerful government. Against these centralising policies the provincial estates and the states general set their traditional privileges and autonomy. Ultimately, the relationship between Crown and Estates was one of power which in the reign of Philip II had to be resolved by open warfare. Under Charles V neither side was as yet willing to push its claims to extremes, nor even to pursue a consistent policy of attacking the powers of the other. The Estates did not seriously question the right of the 'natural prince' to govern, nor his right to demand money for the defence of the country. The government regarded it as a matter of pride, or, at least, an effective propaganda point, that the Netherlanders lived in greater freedom than the French and that their prince did not arbitrarily impose taxes on them. Nevertheless, every new financial demand was stubbornly resisted and whittled down by the Estates. Every government proposal had to be reported back to the provinces and towns. In Brabant, and before 1540 in Flanders, the petty bourgeoisie of craftsmen and guilds were represented in the town councils and had to approve all proposals. Since in general unanimity was required, the artisans of Louvain, for instance, were perfectly capable of holding up the decisions of the whole states general. Failing to induce the town councils to give their delegates full powers, the emperor pursued a consistently anti-democratic policy towards the towns. Wherever the opportunity arose, he excluded the guilds from municipal government. He did this in Tournai in 1522, in defiance of his own promises; he did it again in Brussels in 1528, and in Ghent in 1540, following rebellions by these towns against his governor-general. The patriciates who were left in control of the towns were, on the whole, more accommodating to his financial demands. But he and his governors failed completely in their attempts to make the estates give up their insistence on the redress of grievances before the discussion of new taxes. He did not even try to prevent the provincial Estates from building up their own administrative machinery to control the collection and expenditure of the taxes they voted.

The Estates prevented the establishment of absolute royal power as it existed in France. But the interests of the urban patriciates, and therefore the States General, were local and sectional; the privileges they defended

---

1 A. Jacopsz, 'Prothocolle van alle de reysen', MS. in Amsterdam Stadsarchief, transcript by E. van Bienna. I owe the opportunity of studying this transcript to the courtesy of Dr P. A. Meilink, of The Hague.

were equally local and often opposed to the interests of other provinces. Thus Holland insisted on her privilege of freely exporting grain even when there was famine in the rest of the Netherlands. In consequence, Charles V's regents were never faced with a general revolt. The States General remained a conservative force, capable of blocking important government policies, such as the union proposed in 1534/5, but unable and unwilling to challenge the Crown's control of government. Nevertheless, the position of the imperial government in the Netherlands was unstable and tended to deteriorate, especially after about 1530. For this deterioration the increasing financial demands of imperial policy were largely responsible. No one has yet attempted to work out in detail the history of Netherlands finance during the emperor's reign, nor is this surprising: sixteenth-century methods of accounting were haphazard in the extreme, accuracy in arithmetic was rare and the imperial finance officers frankly admitted the general confusion. But there is plenty of evidence of heavy and increasing taxation and of the intermittent, but steadily increasing, groundswell of the discontent it caused. Twice, in 1522 and 1525, the regent Margaret of Austria feared the imminent outbreak of rebellion. In 1525 there were riots in Bois-le-Duc; in 1532 in Brussels. Relations between the estates of Holland and the governor, the count of Hooghstraeten, grew steadily more strained. The abbots of the great monasteries of Brabant, normally the steadiest supporters of the government, formed a secret federation in 1534 to resist the imposition of further taxes. Most serious of all was Ghent's refusal to contribute her share of the taxes voted by the States General in 1537. By 1539 the town was in open rebellion against the government, though protesting its loyalty to the emperor. As so often before in the city's stormy history, the guilds set up a democratic dictatorship and inaugurated a reign of terror against patricians and government supporters. The emperor himself had to arrive with a large army to reduce the town to obedience (February 1540).

In the last years of the emperor's reign the wars with France demanded larger sums than ever. A sizeable part of these sums was raised by the sale of 'rentes', that is, annuities sold to individual citizens by cities and provincial estates and funded on specific revenues of these corporations. We know about this practice in detail only for the province of Holland,[1] although it was common also in Flanders and Brabant. Charles left his son debts amounting to four and a half million *livres*. Even so, the Netherlanders claimed that in five years they had given him eight million ducats in extraordinary grants. They complained that they were being made to conquer Italy for the emperor; they believed, rightly or wrongly,

---

1 James D. Tracy, *A Financial Revolution in the Habsburg Netherlands: Renten and Renteniers in the County of Holland, 1515–1565* (1985).

that he kept Spanish troops in the Netherlands to hold down the people. Rising prices, the decay of older centres of the cloth industry, such as Ghent and Leiden, the growth of a new rural and small-town textile industry in Walloon Flanders – all these changes were upsetting the equilibrium of Netherlands society and creating a revolutionary situation, immensely aggravated by wars and high taxation. From about 1530 onwards, Lutheran and Anabaptist preachers found a ready following among the artisans and labourers of the old industrial towns. Shortly after the emperor's abdication, Calvinist preachers were even more successful in Antwerp and Walloon Flanders. The country nobility, at least in some parts of the Netherlands, saw their rental income dwindle with rising prices. Few of them could supplement it, like the high nobility, from government offices. Their traditional local influence suffered from the encroachments of the central government and its courts. As yet, they were still completely loyal; but the ground was already prepared for their opposition in the following reign. Charles V's Burgundian origins and personal popularity to some extent masked the seriousness of the situation. But when the emperor pronounced his abdication in the great hall of the palace of Brussels, before the deeply moved States General and the weeping knights of the Golden Fleece (25 October 1555), the Habsburg political system in the Netherlands was already near to dissolution. A few months later (1557) the government had to declare its financial bankruptcy and the States General became all but unmanageable. A few years later, the religious and social troubles came to a head, and the Netherlands embarked on the eighty years of civil, religious and national war which broke up not only the empire they had so light-heartedly helped to create, but also their own country.

The history of Spain in the empire of Charles V stands in sharp contrast to that of the Netherlands; at the same time, it was equally dominated by imperial finance.

Earlier than any other dominion, Castile was faced with these demands, and her immediate reaction could scarcely have been more hostile. To finance Charles's return journey to the Netherlands and his imperial election, Chièvres summoned the Castilian Cortes to the remote Galician town of Santiago (March 1520) to demand a new *servicio* even while the grant of 1518 had not yet expired. From the beginning there were difficulties. The court insisted that the delegates should have full powers. The towns, rightly fearing that their deputies would be bribed with money from the taxes they were asked to vote, tried to bind the deputies with definite instructions. The Toledans did not appear at the Cortes at all. The other towns demanded the discussion of grievances before supply. Gattinara then adjourned the Cortes to the port of Coruña where the court was

already embarking (April 1520). By a mixture of bribery and concessions, eight of the eighteen towns represented in the Cortes were now induced to vote the *servicio*; five maintained their opposition; the others were divided and did not vote. As the ships weighed anchor, on 20 May 1520, the revolution had already begun.

No one in Spain, not even Charles's own council, thought that the new taxes were legal or that they could be collected. Mobs attacked the houses of deputies who had voted for the *servicio* and, in Segovia, murdered them. Royal authority broke down in most Castilian towns. The council's ineffective efforts at repression, especially the burning of Medina de Rio Seco by royal groups, only added to the bitterness of the opposition. Throughout the summer and early autumn of 1520 the nobility raised no finger to help their king. They had not yet forgiven him his Burgundian councillors and their alleged plunder, and they were particularly angered by the appointment of a foreigner, Adrian of Utrecht, as regent. The rebellious towns, led by Toledo, formed a league and set up a *junta* that was in effect a revolutionary government. Adrian was driven out of Valladolid and had to seek refuge on the estates of the admiral of Castile, Fadrique Enríquez. The rebel leader, Padilla, captured Tordesillas and the insane queen-mother. It looked as if Charles's authority in Spain would collapse completely. Only full powers to pardon and to negotiate with the Comuneros could save the situation, Adrian wrote in ever more despairing letters. His demands were echoed by the admiral, Enríquez, and the constable of Castile, Iñigo de Velasco, both of them appointed co-regents with Adrian in the autumn of 1520.

At no time were the problems of effective imperial control over distant dominions more evident. In the end, however, Charles's and Chièvres's policy of making only such concessions as did not touch the basis of royal authority proved successful: suspension of the collection of the *servicio*, the appointment of Enríquez and Velasco, with the promise of no further foreign appointments, and Charles's speedy return to Spain. But for many months the issue hung in the balance, and it was no direct effort of his own which saved the situation for Charles.

In the towns, radical and popular elements were more and more gaining the upper hand. When the revolt spread to the estates of the grandees, these latter began to take alarm. The old antagonism between towns and nobles flared up again. In Andalusia, the nobles with their vast estates and large numbers of Morisco tenants were aware of their danger earlier than the Castilian nobility. From the beginning they prevented the spread of the Comunero movement to the south. Within the Comunero camp, rival factions manoeuvred for control of the movement. During the winter of 1520–1, one after another of their moderate leaders from among the urban nobility deserted to the royalists. On 23 April 1521, at Villalar, the

Castilian nobles and their retainers routed the Comunero army. Vallado-
lid and the other towns of northern Castile at once made their peace with
the king; only Toledo, the prime mover in the revolt, held out until
October 1521.

The power of the monarchy was thus restored in Castile, never to be
seriously shaken again during the reigns of the Habsburg kings. The towns
kept much of their autonomy; but royal control was safeguarded by the
re-establishment of the powers of the corregidors. The deputies to the
Cortes had now to arrive with full powers and their salaries were paid
from the taxes they voted. All attempts to revive the principle of redress of
grievances before supply met with a firm refusal: after their defeat of 1521,
the towns had lost their power to insist. Charles did not need to attack the
Cortes any further. They were willing to vote taxes, and their petitions,
often repeated session after session, could be granted or refused as the
emperor chose.

Although the nobles had won the civil war, they could not, for that very
reason, break their alliance with the monarchy. The monarchy, now that it
could manage the Cortes and afford a standing army, was the stronger
partner. Charles systematically excluded the grandees from the govern-
ment of Spain, much to the duke of Alba's chagrin. But he still had many
prizes and titles to give to the nobles as a compensation for their loss of
political power. More immediately important still was the nobles' exemp-
tion from taxation. It was not a privilege which the emperor admitted
willingly. At the Cortes of Toledo, in October 1538, to which nobles and
clergy were summoned together with the eighteen towns, the government
proposed an excise tax on foodstuffs from which there should be no
exemptions. The nobles voted against it almost unanimously, Velasco
dropping dark hints of commotions which always happened in Castile
when any 'novelty' was introduced. To avoid an open rupture, Charles
gave way; but he never summoned the nobility again to meetings of the
Cortes. The monarchy had won its political victory in Castile only at the
cost of letting the nobility contract out of the financial obligations of the
state and the empire.

The consequences for Castile were tremendous. Together with the
Netherlands, it was Castile which supplied most of the financial needs of
Charles V's wars. Government revenue from taxation rose by about fifty
per cent during the emperor's reign.[1] During the same period prices
roughly doubled. Since the population was rising, it is clear that the total

---

[1] The pioneer work of Ramon Carande, *Carlos V y sus banqueros*, 3 vols. (1943–67) has
given us a better picture of Charles V's finances in Castile than we have of any other of his
dominions. Leaving aside the revenues which the government obtained from the import of
precious metals from Mexico and Peru, the taxes from the clergy and the *cruzada* (sale of

burden of taxation diminished, rather than increased; but its distribution between the different classes of society changed radically. By far the greater part of ordinary revenue had originally been derived from the *alcabalá*, a sales tax paid by all classes, nobles included. At the request of the towns, the *alcabalá* had been converted into the *encabezamiento*, a quota payment by each town or village. This quota remained constant and its real value tended to diminish as prices rose. On the other hand, the yield of the *servicio* rose much more rapidly than prices. The hidalgos, who dominated the town councils and represented the towns in the Cortes, willingly voted taxes from which they themselves, as nobles, were exempt. The weight of parliamentary taxation fell entirely on the *pecheros*, the non-privileged classes. As shown by the index, the money yield of these taxes nearly quadrupled against a mere doubling of prices, and the proportion which they formed of the total burden of taxes in this table rose from 8 to 19 per cent. The Crown's alliance with the nobility was shifting the burden of empire on to the shoulders of those least able to bear it.

The emperor's governments in Spain were perfectly aware of this situation. 'The common people who have to pay the *servicios*', wrote Prince Philip to the emperor in 1545, 'are reduced to such distress and misery that many of them walk naked.' The poverty was so universal, he continued, as to extend not only to the emperor's direct vassals but also to those of the nobles to whom they could no longer pay their rents. Yet, the nobles as a class do not seem to have suffered. They were, in most cases, able to raise their rents at least as fast as their prices.[1] Together with the

ecclesiastical absolutions), and some internal tolls whose yields were either very uncertain or did not increase substantially during the reign, we can construct the following table of Charles's revenues:

Revenues of the Crown of Castile
(in million ducats of 375 maravedis)

	Circa 1516		Circa 1553	
	Amount	Index	Amount	Index
Ordinary revenues (mainly *encabezamiento*)	1·01	100	1·33	131·7
Maestrazgos (leases of revenues of the estates of the orders of knighthood)	0·14	100	0·24	171·0
Servicio (grants by the Cortes)	0·10	100	0·36	360·0
Totals	1·25	100	1·93	154·4

1 F. Braudel, *The Mediterranean and the Mediterranean World in the Age of Philip II*, transl. S. Reynolds (1972–3), vol. II, pp. 709ff. This view is also supported by Carande in a letter to the writer, 30 January 1956. Cf. H. Nader, 'Noble income in sixteenth-century Castile: the case of the Marquises of Mondéjar, 1480–1580', *Economic History Review*, n.s. 30 (1977), 411–28.

foreign merchants and bankers, they were the chief buyers of *juros*, the life
annuities funded on government revenues. When, in 1558–9, the govern-
ment sold land and villages belonging to towns on the royal demesne, it
was the nobles who bought them.

With the influx of precious metals from America, prices rose more
steeply in Spain in the sixteenth century than elsewhere in Europe. The
stimulus afforded by this influx of money and by an expanding colonial
market might have been expected to promote a rapid economic develop-
ment. But Spanish agriculture was backward. The armed shepherds of the
powerful sheep-owners guild, the Mesta, drove their flocks over hundreds
of miles, from upland to lowland, and from lowland to upland pasture,
through the whole length of Castile, trampling down cornfields, breaking
down fences and spoiling much cultivated land in a country whose arid
soil was, in any case, wretchedly poor compared with the soil of England
or France. Despite the violent hostility of the landowners, the government
upheld the Mesta's privileges, since the Mesta paid generously for
them. Much more than in England, it was true in Spain that sheep were
eating men, and the dark side of the flourishing Spanish wool exports to
Flanders was an impoverished Spanish peasant unable to buy the manu-
factures of his urban industries. The towns were unable to flourish because
of the shortage of agricultural products and the unwillingness of those
gaining by the influx of precious metals to invest in trade. Thus
the Castilian towns had remained small compared with those of Italy and
the Netherlands. Their industries were underdeveloped and unable to
compete with foreign industries for the dazzling opportunities of expand-
ing trade. Imperial taxation, falling more and more heavily on the
pecheros, thus had reached the point, wrote Philip to his father in 1546,
where the natives of this kingdom were abstaining from all manner of
commerce.

If heavy taxation tended to discourage investment and economic
enterprise by the Spanish middle and lower classes, the nobles did not
suffer from this handicap. But the inclinations and traditions of grandees
and hidalgos, formed in the centuries of struggle against the Moors, made
them even more averse to economic activities than the rest of the
European nobility. Church and army and, for the hidalgos, the study of
law at Salamanca and Alcalá de Henares, followed by a career in the
king's service, these offered more attractive opportunities than the ignoble
occupations of commerce. The Cortes constantly complained of the
activities of foreign merchants; but when, in 1552, Philip raised the
question of the gradual redemption of the *juros*, then amounting to a
capital sum of some 13,100,000 ducats, the holders of the *juros* objected
violently; they would not know where else, except in land, to invest their

money, and they feared that the price of real property would rise too much.[1]

Thus, to the amazement of foreigners, all the silver from Peru could not make Spain a rich country. American treasure helped to pay for the emperor's wars and made the fortunes of Genoese bankers, but far too little of it was invested in production so as to overcome the country's economic backwardness. As Charles V's empire became more and more a Spanish empire, the economic weakness of Spain became an ever more serious handicap in her struggle with her west-European rivals.

It was the smaller and poorer of the emperor's Spanish dominions which resisted most successfully the inroads of centralised government and the pressure of imperial finance. If the Aragonese and Catalans had made greater difficulties than the Castilians in acknowledging Charles as their king, at least they did not rise in revolt against him. Only in Valencia, the one kingdom Charles did not visit during his first Spanish journey, did a revolution break out. At first it was directed, not against royal authority, but against the nobility. While the Valencian nobles were reluctant to do homage to an absent king, the artisans and labourers of the city of Valencia hastened to protest their loyalty. The Valencian populace, already armed and trained to resist the danger of Moorish invasions, now organised in a *Germania*, a popular Christian brotherhood, directed against the nobles and Moors (1519). Charles could not remain the ally of such a movement; but, as in Castile, he did little more than appoint a Castilian grandee, Diego Hurtado de Mendoza, as governor. For more than eighteen months the *Germania* controlled most of the kingdom; but they failed to co-operate with the Comuneros, nor were they able to arouse the sympathy of the lower classes in neighbouring Catalonia. Their slaughter and forcible conversions of Moorish tenants on noble estates cut across the class appeal of their revolt without gaining them sympathy from the country nobility or from the clergy. The forces of the *Germania* leader, Vicente Peris, were defeated by the nobles' troops in October 1521, and Valencia immediately voted in its municipal elections for a return to the lawful authorities; but it was not until 1523 that all resistance outside the capital was finally overcome.

The defeat of the *Germania* did not, however, affect the older rights and privileges of the kingdoms of the Crown of Aragon. The Aragonese nobles ruled over their vassals like kings, having power of high and low justice. In Catalonia they had the right to wage private war. In the Cortes they successfully maintained the principle of redress of grievances before

1 Cf. M. Steele, 'La Real Hacienda', in *Historia General de España y América*, vol. VI, ed. V. Vazquez de Prada (1986).

supply, 'so that it was in the power of a cobbler, smith or suchlike person to hold up everything until he was satisfied'. Thus wrote the shocked Venetian ambassador, Contarini.

If in Aragon a person was arrested by royal order, he could put himself under the jurisdiction of the *justicia*, the highest judge of the kingdom who held his appointment for life and therefore was independent of royal pleasure and displeasure. Contarini claimed that Charles had asked the pope to release him from his oath to maintain this particular privilege. But there is no evidence that this step proved effective or that Charles at any time attempted a full-scale attack on the Aragonese and Catalan privileges or freedoms. If the grants of the Aragonese, Catalan and Valencian Cortes were comparatively small and often hedged about with onerous conditions, it was doubtful whether these small kingdoms could be made to pay so much more as to make it worth while running the risk of a head-on clash. Moreover, his Aragonese and Catalan subjects had long been accustomed to shoulder imperial responsibilities and, at least for his Mediterranean policies, he found their traditions more helpful than those of the Castilians.

These traditions were the rivalry with Genoa for the trade of the western Mediterranean and with France for the control of southern Italy. In the first half of the sixteenth century two new problems appeared: the problem of North Africa and the Barbary pirates, and the rise of the Ottoman empire as a naval power. These problems, originally quite separate, became so interwoven during Charles V's reign that they finally resolved themselves into a struggle between the Spanish and the Ottoman empires for the control of the Mediterranean.

The North African problem was largely the result of the Spanish conquest of Granada (1492) and the forcible conversion of the Moors of Castile (1502). Almost for the first time in history the two shores of the western straits of the Mediterranean were now under separate and hostile political control, their commercial and cultural links broken. But, although the Christian reconquest of the Iberian peninsula was now complete, Spain remained a multi-racial society, the only one in western and central Europe. Within her borders, the forcibly converted Moriscos were a constant threat; for the African Moors – many of them refugees from Andalusia thirsting for revenge – raided the Spanish coasts and often received help from the Spanish Moriscos. Christian Spain reacted in two ways: by internal assimilation and by external conquest. In 1525 the emperor extended the Castilian edict of forcible conversion to Valencia, and the Inquisition helped him to use it against the 'new Christians' of both Muslim and Jewish origin. Externally Spain reacted by the attempt to conquer North Africa. This was the policy of Queen Isabella and Cardinal Cisneros. It was broken off after initial successes because

Spanish energies were side-tracked by Aragonese policy in southern Italy.

Until the early 1530s Spain's problems in the western Mediterranean were still largely separate. The oldest, the Genoese–Catalan rivalry, had been solved by the Spanish–Genoese naval alliance which made Andrea Doria captain-general of the emperor's galleys in the Mediterranean and which sealed Genoese commercial supremacy over Catalonia. In the meantime, however, Spain's failure to complete her North African conquests had brought a bitter revenge. In 1516 the Moorish rulers of Algiers called on the pirate brothers Barbarossa to capture from the Spaniards the Peñon, the fortified rock at the harbour entrance. It took Khair ad-Dīn Barbarossa thirteen years to achieve this aim; but, long before, he made himself master of Algiers and acknowledged himself the vassal of the sultan at Constantinople. For the first time in centuries, the Christians were faced by a really powerful hostile naval force in the western Mediterranean, a force whose raids were a constant terror to the small coastal villages and towns of Spain and Italy. Worse was to follow. As a counterstroke to Doria's capture of Coron in the Morea (1532), the sultan appointed Khair ad-Dīn Barbarossa pasha and grand admiral of the whole Turkish fleet. With more than a hundred ships he ravaged the coasts of southern Italy in 1534 and then threw his forces against Tunis and expelled its Moorish king, an ally of Spain.[1]

The emperor's Italian provinces were now seriously threatened, not only by pirates but by the full naval strength of the immensely powerful rival empire of the Turks. Effectively, it became a struggle for the control of the central Mediterranean; under Spanish domination, it would protect Sicily and cut off Barbarossa from Constantinople; under Turkish domination, it would keep the Muslim forces united and open the road to attacks on Italy and the western Mediterranean. Concentrating all his forces for the first time and leading his troops in person, Charles conquered La Goletta and Tunis in 1535. It was perhaps his greatest personal triumph, his vindication as a Christian knight and crusader. But Barbarossa was not crushed. Within weeks he retaliated by raiding Port Mahon in Minorca. More serious still was Doria's defeat at Prevesa, in September 1538, caused largely by distrust between the allied imperial and Venetian fleets. The Prevesa campaign had been the one serious attempt by the imperialists to carry the war into the eastern Mediterranean. There can be no doubt that this was the emperor's ultimate aim, with the conquest of Constantinople as the final prize. In August 1538 Mary wrote in great alarm from the Netherlands to dissuade her brother from his grandiose plans. The difficulties of operating over such distances were

1 Cf. below, p. 578.

enormous, she argued; France, only recently reconciled, was quite unreliable; the pope and the Venetians would give little help; they risked little, while the emperor alone risked irremediable loss; his dominions needed peace above all, not further adventures. After Prevesa, Mary's views prevailed and the emperor's offensive actions had strictly limited objectives. Even these were often unattainable, as the disastrous failure of the emperor's own expedition against Algiers demonstrated in 1541.

The Turks, for their part, also made only one serious attempt, during the emperor's reign, to penetrate in force into the western Mediterranean. This was in 1543.[1] The Franco-Turkish alliance, discussed as early as 1525 and openly acknowledged in the 1530s, was potentially the most deadly danger the emperor had to face in the Mediterranean. Yet the Turks did not follow up their 1543–4 expedition. Even with French bases available to them, the distances were too enormous; the hazards of operating more than a thousand miles from the home base were as great for the sultan as they were for the emperor. The Spaniards completely failed to conquer a North African empire. Compared with the Indies, or even with Italy, North Africa offered few attractions to Spanish soldiers in search of plunder. Economically, the Spanish strongpoints were a liability. The Venetians and other traders to the Barbary Coast preferred the Moorish ports. The Spaniards kept up their North African garrisons purely for strategic reasons. Yet they substantially maintained their naval supremacy in the western Mediterranean basin. The Turkish bases were too far from the heart of the Christian Mediterranean to challenge this.

In sharp contrast to the deterioration of Spain's position in North Africa was her successful defence of the Aragonese empire in Italy against France. Sicily, the oldest Italian dominion of the crown of Aragon, was indeed never seriously threatened. As in Aragon itself, the emperor here succeeded to a small and relatively poor country whose estates enjoyed the most far-reaching privileges. In the Sicilian Parliament clergy, nobles and towns had defended these privileges successfully against the encroachments of Spanish viceroys. At the very beginning of the reign, in 1516, they rose against a hated viceroy, Hugo de Moncada, and forced him to flee from Palermo. The nobles who led the rising protested their loyalty to Charles, and their envoys at Brussels obtained at least the replacement of Moncada by another viceroy, a Neapolitan, the duke of Monteleone. But, when neither Charles nor Monteleone showed any sign of revoking Moncada's unpopular edicts, a new rising broke out in 1517. This time it was led by members of the Palermo bourgeoisie, and it spread through most of the island. Amid murder and pillage, it soon became a social

revolt against the nobility. The nobles reacted by assassinating the leader of the movement in Palermo and when, six months later, Spanish troops arrived, the situation was already under control.

Unlike the revolt of the Comuneros, the Sicilian revolts of 1516 and 1517 (and an abortive conspiracy of nobles in 1523) had little effect on the balance of political power. The Sicilian nobles and towns were fundamentally loyal to the Crown of Aragon. They cherished the memory of the Sicilian Vespers of 1282, their one supreme assertion of national will; but, as the spirit of national unity disappeared in bitter party feuds and in the rivalry of Palermo and Messina, the Sicilians lost almost completely their capacity for united action. Whereas in the Netherlands the defence of sectional liberties and privileges led eventually to a revolution against the centralising policy of the hispanicised monarchy, in Sicily the similar interests of nobles and towns only led to more internal wrangles and feuds. For, as in Aragon and Catalonia, the monarchy made no serious attempt to interfere with the country's privileges. Hampered in every action by these privileges and inadequately supported from Spain, successive viceroys fought a losing battle against the proverbial corruption of Sicilian officials, the venality of the Sicilian courts, the blood feuds of the barons and the ubiquitous bandits who were often, like the modern Mafia, protected by the local nobility. No longer, as in the fourteenth century, could the noble factions plunge the whole country into civil war; but they and their armed retainers still attacked each others' castles and cities, and their feuds had to be settled by regular peace treaties, guaranteed by the viceroy.

Finance was the key to the government's policy, as it was throughout the emperor's dominions. After centuries of external peace Sicily was now threatened with invasion by the Turks. Charles V's last two viceroys, Ferrante Gonzaga (1535–46) and Juan de Vega (1547–57), had to construct completely new coastal defences, maintain the Sicilian squadron of ten galleys and the *tercio* of Spanish infantry in the country, and train a native militia to beat off Moorish raids. These raids made the Sicilians appreciate the naval protection which Spanish rule provided against worse calamities. But Parliament increased its 'donative' from an annual average of 100,000 *scudi* to only about 175,000 during the emperor's reign, a period when general prices rose in at least the same proportion. Apart from Aragon and Catalonia, Sicily remained the most lightly taxed of the emperor's kingdoms. When he abdicated, a new proverb became current in Italy: 'In Sicily the Spaniards nibble, in Naples they eat and in Milan they devour.'

The financial problems of Charles V's government in Naples were, indeed, relatively easier than in most of his other dominions. The kingdom's Parliament was incomparably weaker than that of Sicily. The

city of Naples itself had no vote in the granting of the donative; though it sent its deputies to the assemblies, it had its own representative institutions for this purpose. The clergy were not represented at all, and the nobles were too sharply divided into an Aragonese and an Angevin faction ever to have seriously thought of making Parliament into an instrument of their political aspirations. There was no question of demanding redress of grievances before supply; the emperor and his viceroys dealt with petitions entirely as they thought fit. Thus Charles could draw large sums from the kingdom and send them abroad: 1,750,000 ducats between 1525 and 1529 for the imperial armies in northern Italy; 300,000 for his coronation, in 1530; 150,000 in 1543 and 175,000 in the following year, with another half million ducats in 1552 – all sent to Milan and Germany. But there were limits to what even the strongest of the emperor's viceroys could screw out of the country. Repeatedly, the viceroy, Pedro de Toledo, refused imperial requests for money or declined to accept bills of exchange drawn on his government. With the increasing urgency of the Turkish menace, the cost of defence was rising steeply. From about 1530 the emperor had to help with Spanish money. But, if the coasts of Apulia and Calabria suffered at times from Khair ad-Dīn's raids, the Neapolitans were as conscious as the Sicilians of the protection afforded them by Doria's galleys.

There were, however, good political reasons for not exasperating the Neapolitans too far. The old feud between Aragonese and Angevins did indeed make co-operation of all nobles against the government impossible. The Aragonese faction had received much land confiscated from those who had supported Lautrec's invasion of 1528. Many more estates had been given to Spanish and Genoese supporters of the emperor who settled in the kingdom and intermarried with the Neapolitan nobility. All these were loyal; yet they and the Neapolitan towns were as proud as the Sicilians of their voluntary allegiance; they prized their privileges just as highly; their wealth and the authority they wielded over their estates were perhaps even greater. The barons imposed arbitrary taxes on their vassals and prevented them from appealing to the royal courts. The very judges of these courts were subject to their pressure if they came from baronial territory. A revolt by even one of these lords could be dangerous, as the prince of Salerno demonstrated in 1552 when he tried to bring the French and the Turks into the kingdom at the most critical moment of the emperor's reign.

It was therefore both politic and just that the Crown should take a stand against these excessive powers of the nobility. The protection of the poor and the weak against the rich and the powerful became the key-note of the instructions which Charles V gave to Pedro de Toledo in 1536. He had appointed this Castilian grandee in 1532 to rebuild a country ravaged by French and imperial troops, and to clear up the legacy of oppression and

injustice left by a long period of weak government. A rapid succession of shortlived viceroys, some of whom, like the Netherlander Lannoy, did not even pretend to understand Neapolitan conditions, had been quite incapable of dealing with corrupt royal officials, tyrannous barons, and bandits protected by great lords. For twenty-one years Toledo battled against these evils by edicts and executions. His success was very limited. Eighteen thousand persons had been condemned to death during his viceroyalty, he told the Florentine ambassador in 1550, and he did not know what more he could do. The instructions to his successor, in 1559, paint a picture of conditions in the kingdom almost as dark as those of 1536.

But Toledo's policy succeeded in keeping nobles and people divided. Only once did they combine, and immediately imperial rule in Naples was in the gravest danger. In 1547 Charles V wanted to introduce the Spanish Inquisition into Naples. In Sicily it had already been introduced by Ferdinand the Catholic and had, at first, been very unpopular. In 1516 the Palermitans chased the inquisitors from their city together with the viceroy. Only towards the end of the emperor's reign did it become more popular through the immunities from royal jurisdiction which it offered to its thousands of lay familiars. The Neapolitans reacted even more violently than the Sicilians. Nobles and burghers of the city of Naples formed a union; the *seggi*, their representative assemblies, took over the city government; there were clashes with Spanish troops and the viceroy's warships fired on the city. Soon it was rumoured that the 'union' was negotiating with the French. Finally, Toledo offered the withdrawal of the Inquisition as a special favour granted to the burghers rather than to the city as a whole: enmity between burghers and nobles was a safer foundation for Spanish rule, he judged, than the Inquisition. In Naples, the very privileges of the nobility and their strength in local government redounded to the advantage of the viceroy; for much of the popular hatred of foreign rule was diverted on to the native nobility. As a result, and despite the Neapolitan mob's taste for rioting, Naples remained, on the whole, a contented part of Charles V's empire.

In Sicily and Naples, Charles V was hereditary king; in Milan he had no such rights. When the last Sforza duke, Francesco II, died in 1535, imperial troops under the Marquis del Vasto were already in control of the duchy; but for years the emperor was uncertain how to settle the succession. During negotiations with France, the cession of either Milan or the Netherlands to a younger son of Francis I was discussed in the imperialist camp. Immediately after the conclusion of the Peace of Crépy, in 1544, the matter came to a head when the emperor started negotiating a marriage alliance which was meant to lead to a permanent reconciliation with France: Francis I's second son, the duke of Orleans, was either to marry the emperor's daughter and receive the Netherlands as dowry, or he

was to marry Ferdinand's daughter and receive Milan. Charles's willing-
ness to make such an extraordinary sacrifice is comprehensible only in
terms of his lifelong vision of his leadership of a Christian Europe united
in the fight against the infidels and the heretics. The Spanish Council of
State discussed the 'alternativa' in more practical terms. The duke of Alba
argued, prophetically, that the Netherlands should be given up because
they were strategically very difficult to defend, especially in the absence of
their prince, while Milan should be kept as the key to Spanish power in
Italy. The civilians in the council and, eventually, Charles himself with
his Burgundian councillors opted for keeping his paternal inheritance,
the Netherlands. But, to the relief of both Brussels and Madrid, the duke
of Orleans died and the 'alternativa' was abandoned.[1] Prince Philip
was invested with Milan (1546); its affairs in the emperor's councils
were entrusted to Cobos; the command of its fortresses was given to
Spaniards or Neapolitans. The duchy became a military outpost of
Spain.

The Spaniards did not materially change the administration of the
country by its traditional authorities, any more than they did in Sicily and
Naples. The Milanese nobility were relatively poor, and politically weak
through their division into the Guelph and Ghibelline factions. Hence,
where in Sicily and Naples the viceroys' powers were limited and
counterbalanced by the surviving powers of old feudal institutions, in
Milan the powers of the governor-general were similarly limited and
counterbalanced by a more modern, semi-autonomous civil service,
consisting of the Senate and the professional city administrations it
supervised. Only at his peril could the governor-general quarrel with the
Senate, as Ferrante Gonzaga found in 1554 when the senate induced the
emperor to send an investigating commission to Milan and to recall his
governor-general.

Senate and city magistrates might limit the governor-general's adminis-
trative authority; unlike the Sicilian Parliament, they could not limit his
powers to raise taxes. The large imperial army in Lombardy had to be
paid, and it had the power to see that its pay was forthcoming. The
protests of the towns, and even of the civilian governor-general, Cardinal
Caraccioli, were ineffective against the halberds of del Vasto's *Lands-
knechte*. After Caraccioli's death in 1538, del Vasto combined the two
offices of governor and captain-general (1538–46), as did Ferrante Gon-

---

[1] Philip's report of the discussions in the Council of State (13 December 1544) are published
in M. Fernández Alvarez (ed.), *Corpus Documental de Carlos V*, vol. II (1978), pp. 299–311.
(This recent, very scholarly publication, in 5 volumes, 1973–81, is confined mainly to
Charles V's Spanish correspondence.) For the 'alternativa' see also F. Chabod, 'Contrasti
interni e dibatti sulla politica generale di Carlo V', in P. Rassow and F. Schalk (eds.), *Karl
V: Der Kaiser und seine Zeit* (1960), pp. 51–66.

zaga after him (1546–54). The Spaniards could now impose taxes at will, subject only to the fear of a rebellion in the duchy, with the immediate danger of renewed French intervention.

Yet, if the Spaniards 'devoured' in Milan, Milan also devoured Spain. In 1535 Granvelle had hoped that the duchy would pay not only for its own defence, but would contribute to imperial expenses. The disillusionment was rapid. Seven Perus would not suffice to meet all the emperor's needs in Lombardy, wrote the Spanish ambassador in Genoa in 1537. Four decades of war had left a terrible legacy of poverty and ruin. In the war years of 1536–8 Spain had to send more than a million ducats for the army in Lombardy, while Milan paid some 600,000. In the last five years of the emperor's reign, Spain equalled the Milanese defence contribution of about two million ducats. The cost of the Spanish garrison left the government of Milan with an almost permanent deficit. The duchy itself, however, recovered under the peace which Spanish rule finally provided. In the second half of the sixteenth century, its population increased and vigorous reconstruction of its cities and industries gave Lombardy another fifty years of prosperity before the disasters of the seventeenth century.

It was his election as king of Germany which had given Charles V his right to the Imperial title and with it the moral justification to pursue his imperial policy. It was in Germany that, in the end, his imperial policy met with its greatest setback, Charles kept his promise to his younger brother, Ferdinand. He made over to him all his rights to his hereditary dominions in Germany (1521–2) and also appointed him head of the *Reichsregiment*, the imperial government of Germany. In 1531, after his own coronation by the pope (1530), Charles induced the electors to elect Ferdinand king of the Romans. Charles must have known that this step gravely prejudiced the prospects of his own son, Philip, to succeed him as emperor and that it even prejudiced the future existence of the combined power of the house of Habsburg. But Philip was only four years old. If Charles himself died prematurely – and his many wills and testaments show that he always bore this contingency in mind – it was essential to have a successor who would defend both the Habsburg claims in the Empire and the child Philip's rights in the Netherlands, Spain and Italy. Most important of all, Charles needed the strongest possible representative in Germany. In his instructions to Ferdinand in 1531 Charles allowed him much wider powers than any of his viceroys or governors. But he demanded to be consulted over the bestowal of high noble titles, and he insisted that his own appointments should be maintained and all his commands observed. In practice, therefore, Charles continued to control imperial policy in Germany.

The crux of the German problem was the alliance of Luther's reform movement with a number of the German princes. For more than twenty years Charles tried to minimise the importance of this alliance and to solve the religious question within the framework of a general reform of the church. He changed his policy only when these attempts had definitely failed and when the Schmalkaldic League of Protestant Estates began to intrigue with France. Still striving to keep the religious and the political problems apart, he struck at the Protestant princes, ostensibly as rebels against imperial authority, in order to deprive the reform movement of its political backing. He explained his policy succinctly in a letter to his son, Philip: 'though my goal and intention has been and still is, as you know, to make war for the sake of religion, it is considered politic to allege that the war is for the purpose of punishing rebellious subjects'.[1]

The emperor's victory at Mühlberg was to have provided the basis for a solution of both the political and the religious problems of Germany. In fact, it solved neither. The Council of Trent and Bologna was the pope's council and remained unacceptable to the Protestants. The German princes, Protestant and Catholic alike, were more unwilling than ever to increase the constitutional powers of the emperor by a thorough reform of the imperial constitution. Despite his victory and immense prestige, Charles was not strong enough to coerce all the princes. He tried to bypass the problem by proposing a league of princes with the emperor at its head, in which each member was to pay a fixed contribution for a league army. The idea was not new. In 1519 the Swabian League, of which Charles was captain by virtue of his Austrian and south German possessions, had expelled the francophile duke of Württemberg from his duchy. The army of the league had been a most useful asset to Charles during the imperial election campaign and, in 1520, it had enabled him to acquire Württemberg. He did his utmost to keep the Swabian League in being: but since, in the eyes of the German Estates, his power was dangerously great already, they were unwilling to continue it. On several occasions before the Schmalkaldic War, the emperor returned to the idea of forming a league, but never with more than partial success. His more comprehensive scheme in the autumn of 1547 fared no better. The Empire 'would be reduced to servitude', said the elector of Brandenburg, and the princes rejected the scheme.

This was the common fate of leagues in the sixteenth century. They were usually founded when subjects felt that their ruler was not defending them effectively, either against a powerful and aggressive neighbour or against

---

1 Quoted in M. Fernández Alvarez, *Charles V: Elected emperor and hereditary ruler*, trans. J. A. Lalaguna (1975), p. 131. For the complete letter, in Spanish, see Alvarez (ed.), *Corpus Documental de Carlos V*, vol. II, pp. 489–92.

attempts to overthrow the existing political, social and religious regime.[1] In the Swabian League, originally a defensive union against the dukes of Bavaria, the Habsburgs were members because they were lords of several smaller territories in south-west Germany. The members of the leagues would usually agree to accept political and military obligations which were much stronger and more far-reaching than those they normally owed to their king or to the emperor. When therefore this ruler attempted to use such a league for his own purposes, he was effectively trying to strengthen his own power at the expense of his subjects'. Not unnaturally, the subjects, usually the privileged élites, then refused to play this game, and the leagues dissolved in the rulers' hands.

The failure of Charles V's plan for a German league precipitated the crisis over the Imperial succession. Philip was now a man. The war against the Protestants had shown that only with the help of money and troops from Spain and the Netherlands could the emperor uphold his authority in the Empire. More than ever, Charles was convinced of the correctness of his analysis of 1519. There is no direct proof that in the winter of 1546–7 he contemplated asking his brother to resign his title of king of the Romans in favour of Philip; but Ferdinand's extremely sharp reaction to rumours of such an intention leaves little doubt that this was the ideal solution that Charles was contemplating. Ferdinand's attitude and that of his son, Maximilian, and the extreme hostility of the Germans to the idea of a 'Spanish succession', induced Charles to give up the idea. In acrimonious debates between the senior members of the Habsburg family a compromise was finally arrived at, in 1551. Ferdinand was to remain king of the Romans and succeed Charles to the imperial title, but was himself to be succeeded by Philip, with Maximilian succeeding Philip in his turn. While Ferdinand valued the imperial dignity and regarded it as essential for reigning over Germany, he was neither temperamentally inclined, nor politically in a position to pursue his elder brother's world-imperial aims. Both His Majesty (Charles V) and he himself reigned over many kingdoms, he wrote to his sister Mary, and all of them 'have many privileges, laws, ordinances and customs which are neither useful nor profitable ... nor conform to a rational law; and, all the same, since we have taken our oath on them and have confirmed them, we preserve and guard them; for these kingdoms and countries are heritable. Even more must this be done with the [Holy Roman] Empire'.[2] There could hardly be a clearer definition of the nature of limited monarchies in composite

---

1 See, for instance, the history of the Holy League in France, in the 1580s, *New Cambridge Modern History*, vol. III, pp. 292–3, and the Union of Arras, in the southern Netherlands, in 1579, ibid., p. 278.
2 Quoted in Heinrich Lutz (ed.), *Das römische-deutsche Reich im politischen System Karls V* (1982), p. 279 (my translation).

states such as they existed all over Europe in this period. The observing of the specific laws and privileges of each of the units of these composite states depended, of course, not only on the ruler's coronation oath but also on his need to co-operate with the ruling élites of his dominions. By observing this necessity, the monarchy of the Vienna Habsburgs was to survive until 1918.

In 1551, neither branch of the Habsburg family was satisfied with the compromise and, in the end, the German electors would have nothing to do with it and refused to elect Philip. For the first time, the unity of the Habsburg family was seriously impaired. In 1552 Maurice of Saxony and other German princes, in alliance with Henry II to whom they promised Metz, Toul and Verdun, attacked Charles and forced him to flee from Innsbruck for his life. Their success was at least partly due to the equivocal attitude of Ferdinand. The flight from Innsbruck and the Treaty of Passau with the rebellious princes undid the results of Mühlberg. Nevertheless, the Habsburgs managed to maintain the strong clientele of prince-bishops, lesser secular princes and imperial cities which Charles V had managed to build up in south-west Germany.

There is no evidence that Charles thought his imperial position had suffered anything more than a temporary setback, even after he failed to retake Metz from the French (winter of 1552–3). The earlier, passionate discussions of the nature and purpose of Charles V's empire had died down. But Charles himself clung to his universalist aims and continued to pursue them with the singlemindedness of a man whose health is broken, who knows that he has only a limited time left, and who no longer cares about the short-term consequences of his actions. In Germany he continued to interfere until the moment of his abdication, while at the same time trying to shift all responsibility on to Ferdinand. With Henry II he claimed that no peace was possible until that perfidious king had undergone a change of heart and publicly repented. (Henry's own view of the emperor was very similar.) In any case, he would negotiate only from a position of strength, 'after we have won a good victory', as people put it at the time. Since the French argued in the same way, this was a certain formula for almost endless war. People spoke with despair of a *Christianitas afflicta*, a shattered Christendom.[1]

In 1554 the emperor scored the tremendous triumph of Philip's marriage to Mary of England. No matter that Philip had to be virtually coerced into a personally distasteful union or that the English Privy Council drove a hard bargain, leaving Philip powerless in England itself. England was now in the Habsburg orbit in a way that Maximilian I had

---

1 H. Lutz, *Christianitas Afflicta: Europa, das Reich und die päpstliche Politik im Niedergang der Hegemonie Kaiser Karls V (1552–1556)* (1964).

only dreamed of. In western Europe the balance seemed to be finally tilted against France.

Charles V abdicated his various Crowns in 1555-6 for reasons of health and concern for his personal salvation. In the final round of the war with France he had strained the resources of both Spain and the Netherlands to breaking point and stored up endless trouble for his successor. But Philip's victory at St Quentin (1557) and the duke of Alba's successful march on Rome seemed the justification of the emperor's ruthless pursuit of his goals. By that time Charles had retired to a country villa built against the monastery of San Jeronimo de Juste, in Estremadura in Spain. There, amid his favourite Titians, his music and his clocks he performed his devotions, held court and continued to interfere in the affairs of the world. He threw his still-enormous prestige into raising funds for the war and he even persuaded his reluctant sister, the formidable Mary of Hungary, to come out of her retirement and once more take on the regency of the Netherlands.

Mary died on her way to the Netherlands, in October 1558, three weeks after Charles V himself. A month later Mary of England, too, was dead. It was the end of an era and, effectively, the end of Charles V's final vision of a Habsburg domination of western Europe – until Philip II revived it, thirty years later. Charles V's empire itself had not broken up. Its nature, however, was already beginning to change. From a universal, Christian empire, with a Burgundian core and inspiration, it was becoming a Spanish, Catholic empire with a Castilian core and inspiration. The inadequacy of the all-Imperial administration was one of the weaknesses of Charles V's empire. But the old Aragonese empire possessed at least the rudiments of an Imperial administration in the Council of Aragon, the supreme court for the realms of the Crown of Aragon in Spain and Italy. The Council of the Indies, for the Castilian overseas empire, functioned in a similar way, but with much wider competence in administrative and political matters. It was on these models that, in 1558, Philip II founded the Council of Italy. This provided Spain and her Italian dominions with a much closer administrative integration than any other group of states had possessed since Roman times.[1]

The Netherlands were economically the most advanced and wealthiest of the emperor's possessions. 'These are the treasures of the king of Spain, these his mines, these his Indies which have sustained all the emperor's enterprises', wrote the Venetian Soriano in 1559. But even as he wrote, it was no longer true. Against the greater wealth of the Netherlands, Spain provided its rulers more willingly with money. From about the middle of the century, the flow of American silver to Spain increased rapidly beyond

---

1 For the councils of the empire see also below, pp. 485-6.

all previous expectations. The wars in Italy and Germany showed more and more clearly the superiority of Spanish infantry over all other troops. Until Gattinara's death in 1530 the emperor's council was a genuinely international body, with the Burgundians predominant. Adrian of Utrecht was his regent in Spain; two Burgundians, Charles de Lannoy and Philibert de Chalon, were his viceroys in Naples. The Burgundian-trained Piedmontese, Gattinara, was his most influential adviser. But, in the last half of his reign, Spaniards and Hispano-Italians monopolised all high positions south of the Alps and, in their turn, they began to appear in Germany and the Netherlands. Some, as Ferrante Gonzaga, drew the logical conclusion from this trend and advocated the deliberate transformation of Charles V's empire into a Mediterranean monarchy. He suggested that Spain should withdraw from Germany and the Netherlands, neither of which could be held permanently. In Spain itself, Illuminism and Erasmianism, the great intellectual and spiritual forces behind the emperor's earlier vision of Church reform and reconciliation with the Protestants, were dying; their last exponents were imprisoned or in flight before the growing power of the Inquisition. With St Teresa and St Ignatius, with the Jesuits and the Inquisition, and above all, with its new king, Philip II, Spain now became the intellectual as well as the financial and military spearhead of the Counter-Reformation in the age of the wars of religion.

THE HABSBURG–VALOIS WARS

God Almighty raised up these two great princes sworn enemies to one another, and emulous of one another's greatness; an emulation that has cost the lives of two hundred thousand persons, and brought a million of families into utter ruin; when after all neither the one nor the other obtained any other advantage by the dispute than the bare repentance of having been the causers of so many miseries, and of the effusion of so much Christian blood.[1]

MANY historians of the Habsburg–Valois wars have followed the broad outline of Blaise de Monluc's retrospective assessment, fascinated by what appears at first glance to be a destructive and almost incomprehensible duel between two highly cultured Renaissance princes: the Habsburg Charles V, and the Valois Francis I. Yet the wars, which took place in an age that produced both Erasmus and Machiavelli, involved many Christian and Muslim powers. They continued after Charles and Francis were dead, and their repercussions were felt throughout the known world either directly – as participants or victims of the fighting – or indirectly, since the struggle consumed Christian resources and enabled the Ottoman state to expand. And while the conflict was extremely destructive, states and individuals – such as Monluc – participated in the wars because they also brought considerable benefits.

As the second decade of the sixteenth century dawned, however, it seemed that war had been banished from Christendom. In March 1518 Pope Leo X had proclaimed a crusade, and imposed a general peace upon all Christian states for five years. Humanists everywhere rejoiced. Thomas More's *Utopia*, with its dislike of war, had been published in 1517. Erasmus, the leading Christian intellectual, had already made his opposition to war clear in a number of works, two of which were commissioned for Charles of Habsburg, soon to be known as Charles V. Erasmus argued in favour of worldwide peace. He believed that even Islamic powers should be conquered by reason rather than force. Most of his contemporaries rejected this; when they wrote in praise of peace it was a prelude to a

---

1 Blaise de Monluc, *The Habsburg–Valois Wars and the French Wars of Religion*, ed. I. Roy (1971); extracts in English from Monluc's *Commentaires* which can be consulted in a full French edition by P. Courteault (1964).

restatement of the traditional formula: 'peace in Christendom and war against the Infidel'.

In theory this was the goal of all Christian monarchs, yet reality fell far short of the ideal. Although the aggressive Ottoman empire was expanding fast, and had recently invaded Egypt and most of the Balkans, the Christian powers had done little but talk of the threat. Nevertheless, these events had heightened awareness of the problem, and crusading was in fashion. Henry VIII of England and his principal adviser, Cardinal Wolsey, took advantage of the enthusiasm generated by the papal brief to propose a treaty of perpetual peace. It was to be the beginning of a new era of international relations. The great powers would settle disputes by negotiation; they would fight together against the Infidel, and against any Christian who broke the peace. The plan was widely regarded as a diplomatic ploy to give England prestige, but all wanted to be seen as adherents of such a worthy cause. Crusading enthusiasm was certainly much in evidence during the Imperial election of 1519. The two main contenders for the highest secular honour in Christendom, Francis I and Charles of Habsburg, took their stand on this issue. The French king claimed to have a firm commitment to the war against Islam, and promised that within three years he would be in Constantinople. The young and inexperienced Charles could only emphasise that his ancestors in Spain had an unmatched crusading record which he intended to emulate.

The German electors allowed tradition, antagonism towards France, and larger bribes to sway them in favour of Charles in June 1519. As soon as Francis heard the results of the Imperial election, he forecast war – not against the Infidel, but between himself and Charles. He rejected imputations of jealousy: instead, with his customary wit, Francis I likened the struggle for the Imperial title to chasing the same woman – the loser should never allow it to break a good friendship. What concerned him was the clear conflict of interests between himself and Charles in Burgundy and Italy. The French had dismembered the Burgundian state in 1477, taking the ducal lands and titles, leaving only the Netherlands and Franche-Comté for the successors of Charles the Bold – after whom Charles V had been named. At his accession, Francis summoned Charles to pay homage for Artois and Flanders which had once been fiefs of the French crown. It was soon apparent that Charles was determined to eliminate this claim to suzerainty and, above all, to recover the state of Burgundy. Milan meant almost as much to Francis as Burgundy to Charles. The Valois had dynastic claims to the duchy which Francis had made good by conquest in 1515. The duchy was an Imperial fief, consequently after 1519 Charles had limited legal powers over it. These did not suffice to justify ejecting Francis from Milan, yet Charles (as

Francis predicted) immediately attempted to do this. The reason was that Charles wished to contain French expansion in general, and to prevent Francis from challenging his possession of Naples in particular. Charles's Spanish advisers were unanimous that French control of Milan was merely a prelude to their advance upon Naples, which had been under Angevin rule from 1264 to 1435. On the basis of this, Charles VIII had briefly invaded the realm in 1494. His successor, Louis XII, succeeded in retaining it for nearly two years (1500–2). Since 1504 Naples had returned to Aragonese control, and Charles inherited it from his grandfather, Ferdinand of Aragon, in 1516. That year, Francis I ordered a search of Angevin documents to secure proof of his own title to Naples.

The divisions within Italy made it easy prey for its powerful neighbours. It had split into many independent principalities, each seeking allies to pursue its own ambitions. Italy was also attractive because of its wealth and advanced culture, and more importantly because it offered the 'barbarians', the non-Italian invaders, the opportunity to coerce or ally with the papacy. Although much weaker than his medieval counterparts, the pope still ruled a major Italian state and wielded enormous supra-national powers which could be invaluable to secular princes. The pope could deprive a sovereign of titles and lands for heresy and transfer them to others: this is how Ferdinand of Aragon legitimised his conquest of Navarre in 1512. In Italy the pope held several states as fiefs which he often granted at will. Equally important for the princes was papal assent to tap the vast wealth of the church in their own lands. All this the popes were willing to do in exchange for aid to advance their dynasties: this was the great age of nepotism. Rather than avert wars, successive popes participated in and even provoked them.

There were other cogent reasons why Spanish, French and Imperial troops fought ceaselessly on Italian soil during the first half of the sixteenth century. It was natural for an age that looked back with reverence and awe to the Roman empire to associate Italy with world supremacy. There was some substance behind this popular association. If either the French or the Spanish had succeeded in subjugating Italy, they would have acquired *monarchia*; that is, they would have become the most powerful state in Christendom, able to dominate the rest. European monarchs had been promoting imperialist theories that removed them from the tutelage of any secular power. *Monarchia* was to them synony-mous with the tyranny of one king dominating over all others. But this did not deter the great powers from attempting to establish hegemony. Charles, Francis and their successors were locked in mortal combat for supremacy over Christendom.

While all sixteenth-century princes agreed that peace was the most desirable state in theory, their search for glory and prestige made them

accept and even welcome war. However reluctantly, they agreed with
Machiavelli that war could not be avoided; and that 'nothing brings a
prince more prestige than great campaigns and striking demonstrations of
his personal abilities'. War provided honour and employment for the
aristocracy, as well as lands and money. It was also – as the French official
Claude Seyssel noted in *La monarchie de France* (1519) – the best means of
defence. Weakness always inspired aggression. To deter attack and be sure
of peace, it was best to fight. Charles, with his lands scattered over three
continents, was extremely vulnerable and urgently needed to establish his
ability to defend them all. He also had to fight to establish his reputation;
unlike Francis and Henry he had not yet won a prestigious battle.
Consequently, despite their vows of perpetual peace and passionate
pledges to go on crusade, Francis I, Charles V and Henry VIII were eager
to fight each other and test each other's strength. Their youth – Francis
was twenty, Henry almost eighteen, and Charles nineteen when they took
power – and considerable cultural attainments gave them confidence and
vigour. The vicious competition which ensued between them gave politics
in the first quarter of the sixteenth century its distinctive character. The
situation was also propitious to war. The geographical boundaries of
Christendom had been radically redrawn over the previous decades, and
the international situation was tense and unstable. Henry, only the second
Tudor on the English throne, was acutely conscious that participating in
continental war would establish the dynasty firmly at home and abroad,
apart from bringing him renown. Francis I had brought the Valois
dynasty to power by inheritance rather than war. But France too had
changed dramatically: the Crown had annexed a number of independent
fiefs and had neutralised or destroyed three powers which had traditio-
nally checked its aggrandisement: Burgundy (1477); Brittany (annexed by
marriage in 1491); and the Swiss, considered the best troops in Europe,
who became perpetual allies of France in 1516. The king of Navarre was
dependent on the French Crown for the recovery of his Spanish lands
after 1512. Francis had acquired extensive powers over the French church
in the Concordat of Bologna (1516), including the right to regular
ecclesiastical subsidies. In the *taille* he had a controllable source of
revenue envied by his contemporaries. Few would have dissented from
Pope Leo X's remark in 1519 that Francis I 'surpassed in wealth and
power all other Christian kings'.

Charles V was running a close second. His state was an amalgam of
several separate empires: the Netherlands and the Franche-Comté; Castile
and Aragon with their dependent states of Navarre, Sicily, Naples,
Sardinia and outposts in North Africa and the New World; and the
Habsburg lands in the Holy Roman Empire. While contemporaries were

unanimous that his had become the greatest land power in the world, only a few believed that he could unite these disparate lands and successfully challenge Francis. Nevertheless, Francis was alarmed by the vicinity of such a powerful state; later, with England on the Habsburg side, he would complain of encirclement by his enemies.

Francis was the first to strike – tempted by the young emperor's weakness as Castile and Aragon rebelled in 1520. But he could not attack Charles without just cause. If he did he would earn universal condemnation as a restless and aggressive power. Francis prompted allies to invade Navarre and Luxemburg in 1521, hoping to provoke Charles, but the latter accused him of unprovoked aggression and demanded help from the papacy and England. Leo X proved deaf to his appeals until offered the duchies of Parma and Piacenza, and aid in his campaign to subdue Ferrara. Henry VIII was allied to both monarchs and at first posed as peace-maker. He refused to assign blame, and projected England as the key to the conflict, claiming that with the rivals so evenly matched only England could tip the balance.

Events in the battlefield, rather than English support, weighted the scales in Charles's favour. The Imperial army was a formidable force. Charles was fortunate in having access to some of the best troops in Europe: the Spanish infantry, and the German infantry and cavalry regiments who formed the core of the army, while numerically the Italians were often superior. The Spanish revolts were suppressed, and the invasions of Navarre and Luxemburg repelled. The Imperial armies then invaded France and North Italy, and were victorious at Tournai and Milan in 1521. Even before Henry VIII came into the war on the Imperial side in May 1522, Charles had achieved his great dream of defeating the French in a major battle – at Bicocca in April 1522. The following year he secured an even greater diplomatic triumph: the defection of the constable of France, the duke of Bourbon, who had one of the few large appanages left in France. Bourbon promised to organise a rebellion to coincide with a dual invasion of France by Henry VIII and Charles. As early as January 1523 the emperor was confident of total victory. He wrote to his brother, Ferdinand, that he was going to place Francis under an imperial ban and force him to return 'the lands he is usurping' from the Holy Roman Empire, that is Arles, Dauphiné, Lyonnais, Valence, Provence, Orange and Montélimar. Nor was this the extent of his ambitions. Charles had already put forward claims for the Aragonese territories held by France, namely Toulouse, Narbonne, Montpellier, Bearn, Foix, Bigorre, Champagne and Briue. But above all, he wanted the return of Burgundy and looked forward to being buried alongside his ancestors in Dijon. Across the Channel, Henry VIII too was dreaming of success. He thought

Burgundy would be given to Charles V, and south-west France to Bourbon. The rest, along with the Crown was his share, since he alone had 'just title' to the French kingdom.

The gargantuan appetites of the Christian monarchs were clearly exposed, as was the fatal power of dynastic claims. Since these claims were eternal and inalienable, they could justify conflict anywhere in Europe for centuries. But as the contrasting dreams of Henry and Charles revealed, they could also bring the closest of allies into dispute. Antagonism to France repeatedly brought Charles and Henry together, but whenever Charles was too successful, Henry VIII opposed him; and Charles in turn blocked Henry's attempts to seize large parts of France. They did not wish to supplant Francis with a more powerful enemy. English intervention was to be fitful. In part this was due to the Auld Alliance between France and Scotland which was invariably activated when England intervened on the continent. Vulnerable along the northern frontier, England was also to prove less capable of marshalling its financial and military resources. In 1523 Henry's intervention was delayed because of the threat from Scotland, and it was to be cut short by his inability to raise sufficient funds. All three monarchs had to sell royal assets, raise forced loans, and call upon their Parliaments to furnish them with the necessary funds for the war, which lasted from 1521 to 1529. The French and Netherlands governments were restructured and centralised to improve finances. But no major campaign could be mounted without anticipating revenues. Whereas Francis and Charles borrowed from international financiers and pledged future revenues for repayment, Henry foolishly demanded a two-year tax in advance, provoking resistance which restricted his participation in 1524 to the provision of small subsidies. His brief excursion into France in 1523, a spectacular march on Paris, had caused panic in the capital and shown England's potential; 1524 demonstrated his limitations.

Despite this Charles thwarted the French attempt to recover Milan in 1524, and then mounted an invasion of Provence. Imperial troops under Bourbon took Toulon (2 September) and many smaller towns, but they failed to conquer Marseilles and were forced to retreat by early October. The French were humbled, but drew heart from the alliance with the new pope, Clement VII. Like other popes, Clement changed sides to avoid being dominated by either of the two great powers and to gain further concessions. Francis secured his support by offering Parma, Piacenza and the return of his dynasty, the Medici, to Florence. In order to recover his reputation, tarnished by the invasion of France, Francis swept down into Italy and announced his intention to take Milan and Naples. He got as far as Pavia where the Imperial army caught up with him and on 24 February 1525 won a resounding victory over the French. While there was no major innovation in tactics, the battle of Pavia showed the extraordinary power

of the arquebus; it accelerated the adoption of this new weapon which made war more deadly – and much more expensive. The power of the infantry was demonstrated once more as the great French cavalry failed to overcome the deadly combination of massed pike and shot. Many French nobles lost their lives, and even more were captured. To the astonishment of Europe, Francis was also taken prisoner. In an emotive letter to his mother, Louise of Savoy, Francis noted: 'all that is left to me is my honour and my life'.

A Spanish arquebusier who had specially moulded a gold bullet to kill Francis, presented him with the unspent bullet as a contribution towards his ransom. It was a chivalrous gesture which contemporaries relished. Unexpectedly, however, Charles did not set a ransom. He demanded Burgundy and full sovereignty over Artois and Flanders, as well as an independent state for Bourbon in south-west France. The extent of his victory allowed Charles to deal roughly with his allies too. Using Imperial powers he invested Francesco Sforza with the duchy of Milan, having already promised it to his brother, Ferdinand, who had sent him vital reinforcements. Ferdinand, ruler of the Habsburg Austrian duchies since 1521, was looking to expand in neighbouring North Italy, but he could not force Charles's hand. As for Henry VIII, Charles merely asked Francis to 'satisfy' his claims. Henry – who was ecstatic when he heard of the French defeat – wanted a campaign against Paris to dismember France. He wanted the Crown and most of the kingdom, but knew Charles well enough to instruct his envoys that he would settle for Picardy or Normandy along with Boulogne and some other towns. His appetite for conquest outran his resources again. Since the 'Amicable Grant' brought him little more than domestic hostility, Henry could not continue to fight, and in the peace of the More (30 August 1525) Louise of Savoy, regent of France during her son's absence, neutralised him with offers of a sizeable pension and promises of non-intervention in Scotland.

After more than a year as Charles's prisoner in Italy and Spain, Francis capitulated. By the treaty of Madrid (15 January 1526) he ceded Burgundy and promised to pay Charles two million *écus*. His two eldest sons were sent to Spain as hostages until he fulfilled all conditions. Charles was triumphant. Ill and humiliated, Francis arrived in Paris in March 1526, determined to repudiate the treaty. He found it easy to organise a coalition against the emperor. Fearful of the great power which Charles now wielded, Henry VIII, Clement VII, the Florentines and the Venetians joined the French. Francesco Sforza offered his support if Francis recognised his title to Milan. Francis agreed in exchange for Aste and recognition of Milan and Genoa as French fiefs. With the pope on his side, it was easy to justify the conflict; indeed the coalition (signed at Cognac on 22 May 1526) was called a Holy League because of its ostensible aim to

strike against the Infidel. Henry VIII promised support, but would not commit his forces; indeed all the allies held back until France gave them a clear lead. Francis was slow to move, hoping that the coalition would in itself force Charles to negotiate. Moreover, Francis had requested co-operation from the Ottoman leader and was waiting for a reply. Sulaimān was eager to keep the Christians divided, and especially to weaken the Habsburgs, so he promised to mount a campaign in Eastern Europe. Far from being cowed into submission, Charles was deeply offended by the dramatic turn of events, and determined to humble his rival.

With threats and insults rapidly crossing the frontiers of western Europe, no one responded to the desperate appeals of Lewis II of Hungary in May 1526, just as no one had spared any resources to contain the Ottomans when Rhodes fell in 1522. Sulaimān invaded Hungary, and after a bloody battle at Mohács (29 August 1526) Lewis and many of his leading nobles lay dead on the battlefield. Charles sent some money and troops to help his brother Ferdinand establish himself as Lewis's successor – belated compensation for Ferdinand's loss of Milan – but the fate of Hungary was in the balance. However, Charles refused to be diverted from his war against Francis. Sforza was the first to feel the emperor's anger. In the summer of 1526 Imperial troops took Milan, seized Genoa, and threatened the Papal States. Frightened, Ferrara defected. By the time Francis drew Henry VIII into the war (treaty of Westminster, 30 April 1527), the Italian front was collapsing. A month later, the world was stunned by news of the violent sack of Rome by Imperial troops and the capture of the pope. Charles had sent his men against the Papal States, and the unpaid troops had forced their commanders to allow them to sack the city. While his skilful propagandists emphasised that such spectacular success could have been achieved only with God's help, the emperor was bitterly criticised for the ignominious treatment of God's deputy. Francis (hardly a saintly figure after his contacts with the Ottomans) now had the ideal just cause and for the first time since fighting had started declared war officially against Charles. Along with Henry he posed as a Christian paladin, dashing off to free the pope and the church from the dastardly and irreligious emperor. Henry VIII, who was hoping for a favourable papal response to his divorce proposals, now had a chance to earn the pope's gratitude. On 22 January 1528 Francis and Henry issued a formal declaration of war. They bound themselves to fight until the pope was free, until Charles was forced to make peace, and until he returned the two French princes to their father in exchange for a ransom of two million *écus*.

There were important disadvantages to an open state of war, as Henry found to his cost. Trade between the warring parties was officially suspended, so that in 1528 England's most important commercial network

– the wool and cloth trade with the Netherlands – ceased to function, causing unemployment and riots in southern England. By March Henry asked for a trading agreement with the Netherlands, quickly followed by a local truce. Since this considerably reduced Henry's capacity to strike against the emperor's lands, he withdrew military participation and sent subsidies to his allies. Charles was glad to neutralise one front and concentrate on Francis whom he accused of breaking his word of honour, intimating that their quarrel could now only be settled by a duel. Francis, forced to respond to these accusations or be dishonoured, issued a challenge to a duel which Charles accepted in June 1528. Imperial councillors were appalled. Although his son, Philip, had been born a year earlier, the empire would disintegrate if Charles died now. Francis saved the day by letting the matter drop: he was too sensible to risk his life and kingdom in such a senseless fashion.

Fortune now smiled on Francis. The French retook Genoa and Milan in the course of 1528. With Lombardy at his feet and Ferrara once again at his side, Francis ordered his armies south to Naples. After defeating the Imperial army on 16 March 1528, the French commander Lautrec seemed set for victory. He had Naples closely besieged on sea and land. As often happened in Italy, however, the situation suddenly turned. The Genoese rebelled against French domination, and their leading citizen, Andrea Doria, owner and commander of many of the ships besieging Naples, defected. Henceforth, the alliance with Doria and Genoa was to remain a keystone of Habsburg policy. Naples was relieved, and the French army succumbed to deadly epidemics. By September 1528 the French invasion of Naples was over. With the help of Genoa, Imperial troops also expelled the French from Lombardy and Liguria.

The war was as inconclusive as it was costly. French attempts to regain Genoa in 1529 were repulsed, and they were decisively beaten by Imperial troops at Ladriano on 21 June. These reverses persuaded the pope to change sides. By the treaty of 29 June Charles promised him Ravenna, Cervia, Modena and Reggio, and the restoration of the Medici in Florence – which was soon achieved. In return Charles obtained absolution for the sack of Rome and the promise to be crowned emperor. In July Clement called the divorce case between Henry VIII and Charles's aunt, Catherine, to Rome. These successes were clouded by the serious problems evident in the Habsburg empire. After destroying Hungary, Sulaimān had got to the gates of Vienna in 1529. In the absence of sustained Imperial opposition, the Protestants were also consolidating their position within the empire. It became imperative to eliminate the conflict with France and deal with these problems. More importantly, financial exhaustion effectively pre-empted another campaign in 1530. Charles had seen expenditure rise beyond all expectation. Borrowing in

Spain alone went up from 56,000 ducats in 1521 to an average of 370,000 ducats a year during the war. By 1529 his debts there amounted to 3 million ducats, and in Antwerp they rose from half a million to over a million Flemish *livres* (the *livre* was worth roughly half a ducat). Francis had resorted to numerous expedients, including sale of offices and Crown lands, and he had particularly pressed the clergy. Already in 1523 his expenses were 8·7 million French *livres*, against an income of only 7·8 million. Four years later, to finance the next campaign, he summoned an assembly of notables to grant an extraordinary subsidy of 2 million *livres*, of which nearly three-quarters was paid by the clergy.

But after their petulant and defiant public speeches and propaganda, after the personal insults they had exchanged, it was impossible to initiate negotiations without a dramatic loss of prestige. Luckily there were well-qualified women on both sides capable of making peace without engaging the prestige of either monarch. Francis's mother, Louise, and Charles's aunt, Margaret, both experienced politicians, handled the negotiations. Later, Margaret's successor as regent of the Netherlands, Mary of Hungary, and her sister, Leonore, played an essential role in the diplomacy of the two rivals. The Ladies' Peace was duly signed at Cambrai on 3 August 1529. Francis recovered his sons for a ransom of two million *écus*, most of which had to be paid quickly in specie. The Imperial coffers were replenished, and Charles also obtained a further renunciation of French sovereignty over Flanders and Artois. He held on to Tournai, Arras, Hesdin, and Lille, and extracted a promise from Francis that the rights of the duke of Bourbon's heirs would be upheld. To seal the peace, Francis married Charles's eldest sister, Leonore. Both monarchs agreed to the restoration of an independent duchy of Milan, but they avoided more contentious issues such as Burgundy.

The emperor's main reason for making peace with Francis was to fight the Infidel. The question was, where? The Spaniards wanted immediate action against the Muslim corsairs in the Mediterranean. Ferdinand was calling out for help against the Ottomans in Hungary; and the Catholics in the Holy Roman Empire wanted a campaign against Protestantism. After 1531 many of the Protestant princes and cities were bound together in the League of Schmalkalden, a political and military alliance which Francis I – always on the lookout for potential support against Charles – promised to subsidise. Until the Ottoman threat could be dispelled, however, Charles preferred to compromise with the Protestants, much to the pope's disgust. With their support he marched east in 1532 to fight with Sulaimān, who had invaded Styria and provoked a new wave of panic, especially in Vienna. Charles made his formal entry into Vienna on 23 September 1532, shortly after Sulaimān's troops had begun their retreat. Despite this, the imperialists insisted on organising a triumphant celebra-

tion – as if the emperor had won a major battle. Thereafter Charles gave Ferdinand only irregular support along the Hungarian front. Instead, he turned to the Mediterranean where Ottoman-backed corsairs were establishing themselves in bases along the North African coast. He attacked one such base in Tunis in 1535, conquered the city and handed it over to a friendly Muslim prince. This did not please the Spanish for two reasons: they would have preferred direct rule in Tunis, and they wanted above all the elimination of one of their worst enemies, the Ottoman-corsair state of Algiers, which by 1550 had more ships than the entire Imperial and allied navy.

Charles promised the disgruntled Spaniards that he would attack Algiers in 1536, but even as he did so he was conscious that the promise would not be fulfilled. A new war over Milan was imminent owing to the illness and death of the childless Francesco Sforza on 1 November 1535. Francis considered himself the only legitimate claimant and secured papal support. Because Henry VIII had alienated the papacy with his divorce and repudiation of papal authority, he could not be asked to join the coalition. First, however, Francis tried to gain his goal by diplomacy. He sent Leonore to negotiate with Mary of Hungary in the Netherlands, and proposed that Milan should be transferred to Francis's youngest son, the duke of Orleans, who would marry Charles's niece, Christina. Aware that Charles might need a little persuasion, Francis in January 1536 invaded the neighbouring state of Piedmont-Savoy (allied to Charles) to use as a bargaining counter. Since he was anxious to avert war with Charles, he did not attempt to seize Milan by force as he might easily have done. No doubt Francis – who was clearly the aggressor – thought he had acted with great moderation, but Charles was extremely angry and demanded an immediate withdrawal of French troops. Instead of preparing a local war to recover Savoy, however, the emperor decided to launch a major campaign 'to abase him so that he will no longer disturb Italy and Christendom'. He told his Spanish regent to make a 'supreme effort' because this was to be the decisive confrontation with Francis. For Charles this war (1536–9) was to end all wars.

To achieve this Charles would need considerable support from allied powers. First he tried to wean Pope Paul III away from France, by visiting him in Rome. The pope, who had called a General Council to meet in May 1537, wanted peace. Thus thwarted, Charles felt no compunction in approaching Henry VIII. Catherine of Aragon had died in January 1536 and Charles was willing to overlook the dishonour done to his family and the church as long as he secured aid against France. Henry was too preoccupied with internal unrest (the Pilgrimage of Grace, 1536) to join the war. In case he was tempted, the French urged James V of Scotland to threaten England's northern border. Undeterred by the poor response,

Charles went ahead with an ambitious campaign which entailed a three-pronged invasion of France. The main army of some 60,000 men was led by the emperor across Savoy to Provence. The French opted for scorched earth tactics so that when Imperial troops entered Provence on 25 June 1536 they encountered horrendous deprivations. 'We entered eating pheasants, and left gnawing roots', one councillor recalled in 1557. Charles fared no better elsewhere: his northern army was repulsed in Peronne, while the Catalans and Aragonese refused to participate in a campaign along the Roussillon border. But he made light of his defeats and refused to give up. He argued that his prestige had been greatly enhanced by proof of his capacity to launch a major invasion of France. He returned to Italy, 'in the hope that with God's help we can bring him [Francis] to reason there, since we have been unable to do so here [in Provence]'.

But Spain and the Netherlands demanded retrenchment and an end to this ruinous war over Milan – which was not even part of his patrimony. Aware of the deep current of discontent in the Netherlands, Francis reasserted French sovereignty over Flanders and Artois, and sent an army into Picardy in 1537. At first there was little opposition; gradually the Imperialists recovered Saint Pol and Montreuil and besieged Theoruanne. But the regent, Mary of Hungary, conscious of her weakness and the tenuous loyalty of many provinces, agreed to talks with Leonore and Francis which led to the truce of Bomy (30 July 1537). The emperor was furious with his sister. The truce in the Netherlands allowed Francis to concentrate on the Italian front where he had been reduced to two positions, Turin and Pinerolo. In a swift campaign Francis recovered Savoy, except for Nice.

While the two Christian powers fought, Francis's Muslim allies raided Naples. Sulaimān defeated Ferdinand's troops in Hungary (Essek, October 1537), and continued his advance along the Dalmatian coast. His Mediterranean fleet under the corsair leader Barbarossa attacked Corfu and took several Venetian islands. Venice, the pope and Ferdinand called for a Christian coalition against the Ottomans. Charles would not respond until he was sure of peace with France, despite his worsening financial situation. His debts in the Netherlands rose from less than half a million *livres* to over a million between 1531–9, and in Spain, which had borne the brunt of the expenses against the Ottomans during the 1530s, he ran up new debts of nearly 3 million ducats during 1536–8 alone. Roughly speaking, these campaigns were costing the Spanish treasury 37 per cent more per annum than his initial war. Lack of money rather than willpower eventually led Francis to the negotiating table. Although he had wisely prepared for war, saving up 1·5 million *livres*, the campaign of 1536 alone had cost 4·5 million and one million more was spent the following year. Short of money, and despairing of making any significant advance, he

agreed to a truce in November 1537. Pope Paul III travelled to Nice to mediate in person, but instead of peace he secured a ten-year truce on 18 June 1538. The sticking point was Milan, and it continued to be so despite a meeting between Charles and Francis at Aigues Mortes (14–16 July). Further negotiations were undertaken in October when Francis and Leonore met Mary of Hungary.

A bewildering number of options for Milan were discussed. Charles eventually devised a complex marital strategy: first, Francis's son, the duke of Orleans, would marry one of Ferdinand's daughters and get Milan. Philip would marry Francis's youngest daughter, Marguerite, who would bring him confirmation of his rights to Spanish Navarre. The emperor's eldest daughter, María, would marry Ferdinand's eldest son, Maximilian, and they would rule over the Netherlands. In exchange Ferdinand would renounce his rights and possessions in Naples and other parts of Charles's empire. Nothing had been finalised when the revolt in Ghent faced the emperor with a major internal crisis. The pressures of war had prompted Charles to reform and increase taxation in the Netherlands. While these changes were introduced in 1540–1 discontent was general. Ghent was merely the first to rebel. To deter others, Charles had to move quickly. Since the Channel route was unsafe, he asked Francis to give him free passage through France.

Francis was magnanimous, but hard-headed enough to make excellent propaganda capital out of his gesture. Across the Channel Henry VIII took their professions of amity at face value and was convinced that they were plotting his downfall. He had been excommunicated in December 1538 and the pope had called for a crusade against England. Henry need not have worried. Francis and Charles were further from settling their disputes now than before. After he had put down the Ghent revolt, Charles abandoned his earlier proposals and now demanded that the duke of Orleans should marry his eldest daughter, María, whose dowry consisted of the Netherlands and Franche-Comté; but Francis must also give them Burgundy. The state of Charles the Bold would be reconstructed. Apart from demonstrating his obsession with Burgundy, the new plans revealed the emperor's conviction that he could not sustain both the Netherlands and Spain; and his determination to hold on to Milan. After years of occupation, the duchy had become indispensable to Charles. Since he had the firm support of Genoa after 1528, and of several imperial fiefs near the duchy, such as Monferrat and Mantua, the area had become invaluable as a link between the emperor's southern and northern possessions. Moreover, it was the only place with easy access to both parts of his patrimony, and thus ideal as a headquarters for troops who could be moved fairly rapidly to whatever front was most in danger. Using his Imperial powers, Charles invested his son, Philip, with the duchy in

October 1540, but did not give up control of it until 1554–5. The French
were horrified. Francis was determined to regain Milan and adamant that
Burgundy must never be reconstructed. Burgundy had been a major
threat to France, and much time and resources were devoted to destroying
it. Francis considered the proposal nothing short of an insult.

Charles failed to appreciate the depth of Francis's aversion to the
Burgundian plan. He was also confident that the French would not attack
while he was engaged in war against Islam. Charles had been part of the
Holy League since February 1538, and his troops were again fighting the
Muslims in the Mediterranean. The League had some success to begin
with, principally the capture of Castelnuovo (near Ragusa). But it was
wracked by suspicion and in-fighting. The Imperialists refused to hand
Castelnuovo to Venice as the treaty stipulated, and the Venetians reta-
liated by refusing to help them when the Ottomans attacked the following
year and annihilated the Spanish garrison. This, and their considerable
commercial losses prompted Venice to make peace with the Ottomans and
led to the dissolution of the League. Ferdinand hoped that Charles would
now help him in Hungary, which had split into three parts: one was under
his control; another had followed the local magnate John Zápolyai and
survived with Ottoman support; while a third was under direct Ottoman
control. Zápolyai's death led to a bitter struggle between Sulaimān and
Ferdinand, but, after the latter's defeat at Buda on 28 August 1540,
Sulaimān looked set to extend Ottoman control over most of Hungary.
Charles sent only some money and reinforcements. It was not Hungary
but Algiers that he had decided to attack. Pressure from Spain had been
relentless. Publicly he had declared that the campaign was not prestigious
enough to require his presence; privately he admitted that it was extremely
risky and he might lose reputation in the attempt. After Ghent, however,
he realised the importance of conciliating the states which contributed
most to his funds. The Castilians had been restless and unhappy since he
introduced new taxes in 1538, and they were unlikely to support the next
war unless persuaded that the emperor would occasionally use his power
on their behalf. It might also persuade the Aragonese, who had so far
refused to make a notable contribution, to co-operate in the future.
Rumours of another war with France prompted him to take precipitate
action: against all advice he set off for Algiers in November 1541.
Militarily, the attack was a total disaster, but Charles knew that what
mattered most was having made the gesture. While his prestige was
severely damaged, Spain would support his next campaign.

The next war (1542–4) was, like the others, over Milan, although the
casus belli was provided by the assassination of two French envoys by
Imperialist agents in 1541. Francis deferred a declaration until July 1542
when most of his allies were ready to fight. He searched far and wide for

support against Charles. The Schmalkaldic League, whom he had approached two years earlier, would not help because of his persecution of French Protestants, but the duke of Cleves and Gueldres was happy to get support for his long-standing conflict with Charles over Guelderland and other territories in the northern Netherlands. Protestant Denmark and Sweden agreed to participate in the hope of reducing the Netherlands, their commercial rival in the Baltic. But negotiations were not complete until November 1541 and July 1542 respectively. Pope Paul III decided upon neutrality; but Sulaimān offered Francis 110 galleys. The Ottoman-corsair ships joined the French navy in the siege and sack of Nice (6–22 August 1542). It was an unprecedented demonstration of co-operation between two states which supposedly represented irreconcilable ideological positions. Loath to see such valuable reinforcements leave, Francis invited the Muslims to winter in Toulon from which he thoughtfully evacuated his Christian subjects before handing the city over to his allies. From here, the Muslims raided nearby Christian areas until May 1543 when the joint fleets went to raid the Neapolitan coast. Then the Muslims, accompanied by part of the French fleet, sailed to Constantinople.

Christians were deeply shocked by this. Although there was no formal alliance between Francis and Sulaimān, relations were evidently close. For the French it was a desperate move to tip the balance in their favour, especially in the Mediterranean. Moreover, Francis hoped that this campaign would be decisive. Consequently, it followed a pattern set by the previous war: large-scale, very expensive and very short. Apart from the Mediterranean front, French troops were sent to the Netherlands, where the duke of Cleves took control of Guelderland and financed Maarten van Rossem's raids against Antwerp and Louvain in 1542. The duke of Orleans overran Luxemburg. The main thrust of the French attack was against Roussillon-Cerdagne, however, two provinces which had caused several wars between the French and Aragonese before being ceded by Charles VIII to Ferdinand of Aragon in 1493. The Dauphin Henry led the attack against their first target, Perpignan. Despite his best efforts, the town resisted and the campaign failed.

Charles was desperate for allies and Pope Paul III tried to take advantage of this. He offered to buy Milan for two million ducats. Many of the emperor's advisers approved the plan, largely because they had run out of money, but also because it would lead to a conflict between Paul and Francis. But Charles would not hear of abandoning Milan. He concentrated his forces in the Netherlands. The city of Cleves was brutally sacked. Encouraged by the offer of a pardon, the duke surrendered, but had to cede Guelders and Zutphen which Charles incorporated into the Netherlands. His position there was further strengthened by the reappearance of Henry VIII in the war. It had not been easy to lure him back. Since

October 1541 Henry had been at war with Scotland. By December of 1542 the Scots had been defeated, their king was dead, and a week-old child, Mary Stuart, was queen. The subjugation of Scotland appeared imminent, but it could not be achieved if French aid reached the Scots. By participating in the war against France, Henry was effectively preparing the final assault on Scotland. Moreover, after being marginalised for a decade, Henry was keen to recover reputation and to be accepted as a major international power. The alliance with Charles (11 February 1543) also gave him hopes of glory and aggrandisement. It stipulated that neither should make peace until the French ceded Normandy and Guienne to Henry, and Burgundy to Charles.

The two armies should have engaged in a co-ordinated attack on northern France in 1543, but Charles had concentrated on Cleves. In 1544 therefore, Henry VIII felt at liberty to follow his own interests. Having laid waste much of southern Scotland to prevent any action while he was abroad, Henry journeyed to France and attacked Boulogne and Montreuil. Charles, who was bogged down in the siege of Saint Dizier, wanted the English to march on Paris, but they remained in Boulogne until its fall on 14 September 1544. The emperor meanwhile took Epernay and Chateau-Thierri before devastating Champagne. Another Imperial force expelled the French from Luxemburg. These successes were balanced by reversals on the Italian front, where French troops won a resounding victory at Cerisoles (April 1544). Nevertheless, having failed to recover Milan, or to expel the English and Imperialists from French soil, Francis sued for peace. Charles betrayed his English ally and signed the Peace of Crépy (18 September 1544). Lack of funds, as much as lack of success, determined this rather curious treaty which effectively deferred any resolution for four months. The cost of the 1542 campaign for France had been 4 million *livres*, but the following years' costs had risen to 6 million a year. To pay for this the usual expedients were put into practice, and one of the major taxes, the gabelle or salt-tax, was reformed. This provoked an uprising in 1542. A new tax was introduced the following year. In the Netherlands and Spain, Charles was reaping the benefits of his earlier tax reforms. Nevertheless, he had to borrow on a larger scale than for the previous war; the average raised on Spanish revenues was 1·5 million ducats a year during the war. Very broadly, the conflict cost 50 per cent more than its predecessor. The finances of the two states could not cope with such large-scale warfare.

The key to peace was now in Charles's hands. He could choose whether to give the duke of Orleans his daughter María with the Netherlands and Franche-Comté, or one of Ferdinand's daughters and the duchy of Milan. Once this was done, Francis would withdraw from Savoy. There were the usual renunciations of dynastic rights: Francis swore to renounce sover-

eignty over Flanders, Artois and Naples; Charles over Burgundy. Both agreed to support a General Council, and Francis promised Charles help against the Ottomans. Councillors in both courts clashed heatedly over the treaty. The French court was bitterly divided between the dauphin, Henry, and his supporters – who considered the treaty humiliating and wanted further war – and Orleans and his allies who urged peace and the acquisition of land for him. The Imperial court was torn apart between those who wished to give up Milan, and those who felt the Netherlands were an encumbrance. Charles was utterly undecided. The death of Orleans only days before the deadline was like a miracle for him. Without the marriage there was no bargain. Charles held on to Milan, and Francis to Savoy. Peace endured only because Francis was still at war with England and wanted no further commitments until he had recovered Boulogne. Unfortunately for him, neither his raids on the English coast nor the small force he sent into Scotland weakened Henry VIII's resolve. And the assault on Boulogne failed. Impressed by Henry's ability to retain his conquest, Charles eagerly suggested a new alliance. The prospect so alarmed Francis that he agreed to peace on 7 June 1546. Henry was to keep Boulogne for eight years, after which the French might buy it back. Henry also received a sizeable sum of money, and a new annual pension. Without a pension or subsidies Henry could not hope to maintain his international position. He had stripped the church of many of its lands and goods to finance the war, spent the parliamentary grants of 1542 and 1545, and used up extraordinary loans. From 1544 he had resorted to the highly damaging expedient of debasing the coinage.

Peace allowed them all time to restore their finances and temporarily reduce the burden on their lands. For the emperor, however, peace with France merely meant war elsewhere. This time the Protestants in the Holy Roman Empire were his target. They had become so powerful that Charles felt his position as Holy Roman Emperor threatened. He even allied with the erstwhile Lutheran leader, Maurice of Saxony, to destroy the Schmalkaldic League. This dubious act, and fear of Charles's power if he succeeded in increasing Imperial authority over the ramshackle German empire, made the pope and most German Catholics reluctant to help him. Despite the lack of support Charles defeated the Schmalkaldic League decisively at Mühlberg on 24 April 1547. He used his victory to strengthen Imperial authority rather than to eliminate the Protestants who were offered continued toleration until the Council of the Church met. For a while the battle of Mühlberg, brilliantly promoted by the Imperialists, vastly enhanced Charles's prestige and honour. The death of his two main rivals, Henry VIII and Francis I, in January and March 1547 had left him in even greater prominence.

Since Henry VIII was succeeded by a minor, England was expected to

keep out of major conflicts for some years. Henry II of France, however, could not be ignored. Unlike his father, Henry was a cautious and calculating man who would not rush into a campaign. While keen to fight Charles, his primary aim was to recover Boulogne. Soon after his accession the Scots offered him an excellent opportunity to strengthen his dynasty and strike against England. After the English had inflicted another bloody defeat at Pinkie Cleugh (September 1547), many Scots, sickened by years of violence, were persuaded that the only way to save Mary Stuart was by sending her to France. In January 1548 the Scottish nobility formally requested Henry II's protection, and the marriage of Mary to the dauphin. The young queen was safely in France by October. It was a considerable diplomatic coup for Henry. His military accomplishments were less spectacular. The campaign against Boulogne was a failure. Nevertheless, it prompted the English to negotiate and on 24 March they agreed to hand back the city for 400,000 *écus*. Henry was now free to turn his attention to Italy where another war had erupted over the duchies of Parma and Piacenza. After the assassination of the duke, Imperial troops had seized Piacenza and attempted to take Parma. Pope and emperor had long disputed sovereignty over the area, and Charles was determined to use his Imperial powers in order to annex the duchies and reunite them with Milan. In fact he was so eager to conquer Parma that he withdrew most of his troops from Germany.

Dissatisfied German princes of all persuasions, led by Maurice of Saxony who was equally fearful of the new powers of the emperor, prepared an alliance with France. For a time Henry hesitated, then chose the northern front. He agreed to become the protector of the Schmalkaldic League in October 1551 and to subsidise their rebellion. The princes in turn offered him Toul, Metz, Verdun and Cambrai. French ambitions to the Holy Roman Empire were reawakened, especially as there was now a clear breach between the Habsburgs over the next election. Ferdinand, who had exercised Imperial powers during Charles's frequent absences and had been elected king of the Romans in 1531, expected to take the title after him. But in 1551 Charles tried to persuade Ferdinand and his Habsburg allies to elect Philip emperor. Ferdinand was deeply alienated, and all the German princes knew it. While he did not betray his brother, Ferdinand made no effort to save him when the rebellion broke out.

Henry also secured Sulaimān's support for the conflict. They agreed to a joint campaign in Naples, where the prince of Salerno had secretly defected to France and was organising a rebellion. Charles, who ignored warnings of Henry's extensive plot against him, was utterly stunned when in quick succession during 1551–2 Naples and the Holy Roman Empire rebelled, while French-backed rebels threw out his garrison in Siena. Henry marched into neutral Lorraine at the head of 40,000 men in the

spring of 1552, seized the duke, then rapidly took Toul, Metz and Verdun. The speed and success of Henry's campaign frightened his allies almost as much as his enemies. The German princes warned him that if he crossed the Rhine they would unite against him. The rebels had made rapid progress too, and almost succeeded in taking Charles prisoner at Innsbruck. By the close of 1552 the blow to the emperor's prestige and honour was complete.

Charles thought of only one thing: revenge against Henry. He quickly negotiated a truce with the German rebels and, ignoring all advice, he directed his forces towards Metz in the winter of 1552–3. The siege failed, and Charles could not prevent the fall of Hesdin to the French either. Although his troops recovered Theoruanne and Hesdin in 1553, the Imperial position everywhere was bleak. Naples remained loyal despite the raids, but Siena was still in enemy hands. Worse still, after further assaults on his Italian states, the Franco-Muslim navy took Corsica in the summer of 1553. Genoa and key Mediterranean routes were threatened over the next six years, as they had been in 1542–3. For a time it even looked as if England also might support the French. On the death of Edward VI the duke of Northumberland attempted to block Mary Tudor's succession, and Henry offered help. He assumed Mary Tudor would be hostile since she was a cousin of Charles V; moreover his protegée Mary Stuart had strong claims to the English throne which his soldiers would be able to impose once they were in the country. But Henry's incredible run of success faltered. Mary Tudor quickly established herself in England and soon after agreed to marry Philip. The wedding took place in July 1554. The emperor's prestige was greatly enhanced by the acquisition of a new ally and a kingdom for his son. It also eased communications between the Netherlands and Spain. But his position was still desperate. Encouraged by reports of the emperor's severe illness and of seething discontent in the Netherlands, Henry sent three armies to the border provinces of Artois, Hainault and Luxemburg. At first they swept all before them, burning and destroying as they advanced; but before they could reach Brussels they were forced back by a diversionary Imperial attack against Boulogne.

The emperor's ability to respond to the situation was limited by recurring illness and by the serious rift among his councillors. The majority believed that Charles was too old at fifty-four – and muddled – to cope, and they wanted Philip to take over. Charles stubbornly refused to share command. As their partisans battled for power across the empire, the governments of Milan and Naples were in chaos. Quick to grasp every opportunity, Henry attacked from Savoy. In March 1555 his troops captured Ivrea and Casale, and their advance was crowned by the conquest of Volpiano that September. Henry could now dominate Mont-

ferrat, and threaten the main landward routes to Milan and Genoa. Although he failed to save Siena, which succumbed to an Imperialist–Florentine attack in April 1555, Henry's position in Italy was strengthened when Paul IV, a Neapolitan with an inveterate hatred of Charles V and Spain, became pope in May. He was convinced that the empire of Charles V was so weak and divided that it could be dismembered by a coalition of Italian powers and France. Paul offered Henry an offensive alliance and promised France, Naples, Milan and also half of Sicily. The pope would get the other half of the island, along with Siena and some Milanese lands. The Medici would be expelled from Florence, which would revert to being a republic. The dukes of Ferrara and Urbino joined the alliance, although Venice held aloof. Nevertheless severe financial difficulties prompted Henry to agree to a truce with Charles and Philip in February 1556 (Truce of Vaucelles). Paul IV, who should have welcomed peace in Christendom, ensured that the truce was broken a few months later.

Threatened with the destruction of his empire, Charles relinquished power. To the end he maintained that he had never been the aggressor in any of his wars. The French retorted that he had deprived them of their legitimate claim to Milan, and that his power had threatened to encircle them; consequently their actions had always been prompted by the desire to recover their rights or prevent the subjection of their realm. Charles had already given Philip Naples and Milan in 1554, and control of finances early in 1555. In October of that year he ceded the Netherlands, and in January 1556 Spain and Sicily. Then he withdrew to a monastery at Juste in Spain. The imperial title went to Ferdinand, although the transfer was not officially confirmed until 1558. The partition of the great empire merely encouraged Philip II's enemies. If Charles V with his unparalleled inheritance had failed to vanquish France or the Ottomans, how could Philip, with a much-reduced state, encumbered with debts, hope to do so? And how could Ferdinand, now deprived of the wealth of the Netherlands and Spain, provide an effective challenge to Henry II or Sulaimān? In fact, Ferdinand soon accepted defeat. He made peace with the Protestants and rebels in Germany at Augsburg in 1555, granting toleration to Lutheran princes. Four years later, after another unsuccessful war, he was forced to make peace with Sulaimān in Hungary.

Philip – who had never been allowed by Charles to fight in a major campaign – was widely regarded as a cowardly man who found war repugnant and was incapable of waging a successful campaign. His enemies believed it was better to strike against him immediately before he acquired experience and consolidated his position. What had once been a struggle for supremacy between two super-powers had turned in 1556–7 into a struggle for survival for the Habsburgs. As Philip noted, 'my states,

as well as my honour and reputation, which I value above all else' were now at stake. The desperate nature of the conflict brought out the residual loyalty of Philip's patrimonial lands. They made heroic efforts to fund his campaigns in 1557–8. Survival also justified what was widely condemned even by Spanish theologians as an immoral action: the pre-emptive strike against Pope Paul IV in 1556. To hinder the joining of French and papal troops, and perhaps to stop the process of excommunication being drawn up by Paul IV, Philip launched a highly successful campaign against Rome. The pope offered peace, only to withdraw from the negotiations as soon as he knew the French army had crossed the Alps in January 1557. The French could have easily taken Milan now, for Philip had chosen to cut his losses and withdrew the city's troops to defend Naples. Yet Henry ignored the duchy, drawn by the infinitely more prestigious conquest of Naples. French troops marched through defenceless north Italian lands, and by March were engaged against Philip's army along the Neapolitan border. Confident of Philip's weakness, Henry also invaded Navarre and the Netherlands that year.

Given these multiple assaults, no one expected Philip to take the offensive. But he knew better than most that unless he proved his capacity for aggressive warfare, the general assault on his empire would continue – and perhaps spread. He opted for a risky, high-prestige campaign in 1557: an invasion of northern France. Rather than aim for a spectacular march on Paris, he chose a city near the border, which he might hold. Better to win less and avoid a repetition of his father's ignominious retreats. Philip succeeded beyond his dreams. He not only captured St Quentin and the surrounding area, but annihilated a large French army. The constable of France was the most illustrious of the many thousands of prisoners taken.

Major battles, however devastating, seldom had a decisive impact on politics during this period. The battle of St Quentin, however, was highly significant because it forced the French to withdraw their troops from Naples and thus saved Philip's Italian lands. It also established Philip's reputation as a successful warrior king. But Henry knew how short-lived military triumph could be. Instead of making the obvious move and attempting to recover St Quentin, he decided on a risky yet brilliant strategem that could raise his reputation and obscure his rival's glory: he attacked Calais in January 1558. Calais being the last English stronghold in France, its loss would be of enormous psychological as well as considerable strategic importance. England would be deprived of a foothold in France, and Henry would extend his possessions near to some of Philip's most vulnerable territories. Philip had only recently managed to bring England into the war; despite being the queen's consort, he had never wielded much power over the kingdom. It was only after French-backed raids in Northern England (by the Scots) and Scarborough (by

English exiles) that Mary Tudor and her council had declared war on
Henry in June 1557. Calais was therefore legitimate prey. Although the
English had been negligent over its defence, they held Philip responsible
for its loss and expected him to recover it, with or without English
support. But before Philip could retaliate, Henry had another army in the
field attacking the Netherlands (May 1558). One French force took
Thionville (25 June) and pushed forward into Luxemburg, while another
sacked Dunkirk and Berghen in early July. Henry's court poet, Ronsard,
reminded the troops that these lands had once been under the French
monarchy. 'Courage then, my friends', he urged, 'it is a holy war.' But
Philip's forces caught up with the northern invaders outside Gravelines on
13 July and most of the French troops were either captured or killed. That
evened the score.

   Henry and Philip were more adept at financial management than their
fathers, which explains their ability to mount such large campaigns despite
high inflation and massive debts. Both monarchs relied heavily on loans
from international bankers, mainly German and Italian. Their expedients
to manage the accumulated debt led to considerable innovations in
international finance between 1554 and 1559. Philip not only borrowed
more, but paid higher rates of interest – 60 to 100 per cent, to Henry's 16
per cent. Nevertheless it was Henry who first innovated and rescheduled
his debts in 1555, a scheme called the Grand Parti of Lyons. Certain
French revenues were now earmarked for the payment of the accumulated
state debt. By the close of 1557 both kings were effectively bankrupt.
Philip also consolidated his debts, creating a long-term low-interest debt
out of the multiple outstanding loans. This released revenues to fund the
1558 campaign, but was insufficient for another. In France, Henry had
been unable to keep to the repayment terms, and consequently most of the
international financiers withdrew their loan and exchange facilities until
the two monarchs settled part of their debts. Philip and Henry had no
access to large loans for 1559. In desperation they summoned the
representative assemblies of their lands to demand support, but whether in
Paris, Brussels or Valladolid, resistance to further taxation and ringing
indictments of the war were the order of the day. By 1559 Henry owed
some 18 million *livres*, perhaps two and a half times his annual income.
Philip estimated that between 1556 and 1558 he had spent 11 million
ducats on the war. He had assigned debts of 25 million ducats on Spain,
about nine times its annual revenues. The Netherlands were only margi-
nally less encumbered. Their debts had increased from 1·3 million Flemish
livres in 1551 to over 8 million in 1559. The two kings realised that if they
attempted to mount another campaign in 1559, they might stretch their
finances and the loyalty of their subjects to breaking point. With Protes-

tantism now evidently spreading within France and Spain, peace was of the utmost importance to both monarchs.

Although Henry and Philip were engaged in a deadly contest, there was no hint of the childish competition that had characterised the first wars of their fathers, perhaps because both had experience of government before coming to power and were much older: Henry was 28 and Philip 29 at the time of accession. Both portrayed their campaigns as defensive. At first, Henry argued that he could not let Charles take Parma and Piacenza because he would then be able to dominate northern Italy, thereby becoming, as Paul IV said, 'master of Italy and the world'. Later the incorporation of England into the Habsburg empire aroused new fears of Habsburg encirclement and justified further aggression as pre-emptive strikes. Philip had a more convincing case when he alleged defensive motives, since he was assailed on all sides when he took power. Yet he chose an aggressive rather than a defensive strategy. Ultimately Henry and Philip were fighting for recognition of their position as major powers, and Henry for a time made a serious bid to establish himself as the greatest power in Christendom. Honour and prestige, the keywords of that age, were their reward. And as the monarch's status was reflected on his subjects, the monarchs considered that their lands were similarly beneficiaries of the wars. For the states of Habsburg and Valois, however, the losses heavily outweighed the gains. The devastation caused by the fighting and the huge increase in taxation were the most notable and immediate causes of suffering. In the long term, the diminution of royal authority, which was caused by the excessive pressures put upon their lands to finance the wars and by the constant absences of the monarchs, proved an even graver weakness. In their single-minded pursuit of glory abroad these monarchs paid scant attention to internal problems and allowed divisive religious movements to develop. The large-scale rebellions of the second half of the sixteenth century should be seen in this context. Moreover, these internecine struggles in Christendom enabled the Islamic powers to expand in Europe and North Africa.

Aware of the dangerous situation they had created, and conscious of their lack of resources, Henry and Philip became the most persistent advocates of peace in the autumn of 1558. While the talks began in traditional style, with demands for the return of Navarre and Burgundy, a realistic tone pervaded these negotiations. Rather than chase old chimeras, attention quickly centred on Calais and Savoy. Henry made little attempt to get Milan, and Philip made no fuss over Toul, Metz and Verdun. Without support from his nephew or German princes, Ferdinand had to endure their loss. Philip's chief objective was the creation of an independent Savoy, partly to reward the loyal duke, but also to serve as a

lesson of how he would always stand by his allies. Even more important
was his desire to create a buffer state against France. Henry eventually
agreed to evacuate all but five fortifications in Savoy and reluctantly
returned Corsica; but he proved obdurate over Calais. In the end, he kept
it. Since France lost most in Italy, where the conflict had focussed for so
long, many mistakenly thought that Henry had lost the most overall. In
fact he obtained the return of St Quentin and kept the Imperial and
English possessions he most coveted; while Philip secured only the return
of a few border lands, and the restoration of his Italian allies. These, of
course, were important concessions, but no one thought that Henry II was
totally withdrawing from Italian affairs. He had clearly perceived that for
the time being the advantage lay in the north and had capitalised on this.
Philip's own gains were fewer in terms of territory, but substantial
nevertheless. The Peace of Cateau-Cambrésis (3–4 April 1559) established
Philip as a super-power; more importantly, it showed that despite his
initial weakness and the loss of England – which had passed to Elizabeth
Tudor, uncommitted to the parties of the strife, in November 1558 – he
had successfully established rough parity with France.

Naturally parity would be acceptable only so long as neither had the
strength to make a bid for superiority. Financial difficulties would not
permit this for some years, but Henry did have the means to extend his
power at little cost. In March 1558 his heir had become king of Scotland
on his marriage to Mary Stuart. Free of the war with Philip, Henry could
now concentrate on promoting the rights of his daughter-in-law to the
English throne and look forward to a powerful new Anglo-French state.
By the summer of 1559 there was much talk of war, and Philip warned
that he would resist French aggrandisement by force if necessary. Only
Henry's death on 10 July 1559 prevented a new conflict breaking out over
England. The Treaty of Cateau-Cambrésis, long considered instrumental
in maintaining peace in Christendom, was merely accidental to it. The
endless cycle of war between the two dynasties was disrupted by a
combination of four disparate factors: Henry's death; the civil wars in
France; Philip's problems in the Mediterranean and the Netherlands; and
finally, his lack of territorial ambitions in Europe until the Portuguese
succession in 1580. For three decades – albeit by default – Philip savoured
undisputed supremacy in Christendom.

INTELLECTUAL TENDENCIES

I. LITERATURE

THE literature of the period 1520–59 was disseminated almost entirely by the printed page, and the general influences of the new process discussed in the previous volume must be borne in mind. It is, however, far less easy to generalise about sixteenth-century printed books than about incunables, for the simple reason that, while books printed prior to 1500 have been more or less exhaustively listed by scientific bibliographers, our knowledge of subsequent publications is by no means as comprehensive. There is a systematic list of publications in England covering the sixteenth century in the *Short Title Catalogue of Books printed in England, Scotland and Ireland, 1475–1640*;[1] this takes in also books printed in English abroad, but (apart from Latin service books) not books printed abroad in other languages designed for the English market or by English authors, of which there were a considerable number. With this invaluable work as a basis, knowledge of both the quantity and the quality of English literary works in the sixteenth century is more securely established than is the case with the output of continental writers. With the exception of the recently (1981) completed author-catalogue of the *Bibliothèque Nationale* in Paris, none of the great continental libraries has a printed catalogue of books and the student who seeks an overall view of sixteenth-century literature must perforce consult the printed catalogues of the British Library. The dangers of this are evident if one recalls that it has been reckoned that the Library's holding of French books before 1600 'represents not much more than a fifth of the editions known to have been printed at Paris, and less than a sixth of the output of the French provinces'.[2] It is thus impossible to analyse by bulk or subject the publications of the sixteenth century in the manner possible with printed books in the second half of the fifteenth century. On the other hand a large number of authors have been made the subject of bibliogra-

---

1 Original edition by A. W. Pollard and G. R. Redgrave (1926); new edition by W. A. Jackson, F. S. Ferguson and Katherin F. Pantzer (2 vols., 1976, 1986).
2 *Short Title Catalogue of Books Printed in France . . . from 1470 to 1600 now in the British Museum* (1924), p. iii. Similar catalogues cover Spanish (1921), Portuguese and Latin American books (1940), Italian books (1958) with a supplement in 1986, German (1962), Dutch (1965).

phical study, and a number of important printers and publishers have been investigated.

That the total volume of publication had greatly increased by 1520 compared with 1500 there can be no doubt. This growth in the number of books manufactured each year continues in our period and in the case of England it has been estimated that for every book printed in 1500 four were printed in 1550. There is no reason to suppose that the rise in continental output was smaller; it was probably much higher, particularly in France where no inconsiderable portion of the book trade was devoted to the Spanish and Italian markets, and where before the disintegration of Christendom large numbers of service books were printed for sale in England and Germany. Even after the Lutheran Reformation in Germany and the Henrician Reformation in England, Paris, Basel and other great centres of publishing continued to produce learned works which had an international currency. If only three books by Cicero were published in England in Latin between 1520 and 1559 (*Philippics* 1521, *De senectute* 1535, *De officiis* 1558), this does not mean that English scholars lacked new editions of Cicero in the original, but only that the source for such texts was Venice, Paris, or Basel. The older British libraries are strewn with memorials of the classical educational texts of the continental publishers of the sixteenth century.

If there had ever been any real possibility that revived Latin, the Latin of humanism, would develop into a language capable of containing the imagination and reflection of western Europe, the four decades we are considering saw this finally disappear. Italy still possessed the largest number of Latin speakers and writers; but a multitude of vernacular writers showed that almost any subject could be adequately treated in Italian, even if there was still debate (as we shall see) as to what constituted Italian. In France and in Spain the aptitude and ambition of vernacular writers is less evident than in Italy, but is none the less marked. A similar trend is evident in Britain and Germany, though in the latter area to some extent, and in northern and eastern Europe generally, Latin was still virtually a necessity, for the vernaculars were not yet capable of embodying even much ephemeral literature, let alone works of serious import. Yet dependence on Latin outside the Romance area was in the nature of things unlikely to persist. If Latin could not grow further in the lands where it had deep roots, it could scarcely flourish in the areas of Teutonic or Slavonic speech. The trend to vernacular writing is, then, a characteristic of European literature in this period. For all that, an enormous volume of literature was still composed in Latin.

The prestige as well as the utility of Latin was very great. Both ensured a living for the man of Latin letters. Princes and noblemen liked to see their names at the head of epistles dedicatory; so did professors and burgo-

masters, bishops, councillors, soldiers. Such men had patronage at their disposal in church and in state. Italian republics and dukes, cities and kings in transalpine Europe, needed Latin clerks to deal with their international correspondence. Busy men of affairs were less important as a public than the scattered intelligentsia of Europe, who also figure largely in the dedications of the Latin writings of the sixteenth century. This contributes an air of coterie to much of this literature: scholars writing for scholars. But though there is truth in this it is only a partial truth. Every country had its scholars – in schools, universities and administration. These men were a small enough proportion of their own communities, but taken together constituted an enormous public, international in character, incapable of hearing a Frenchman in French or a German in German, but eager and able to share in a literature which knew no national boundaries. Such a public accounts for the vast bulk of mid-sixteenth-century Latin writing, while the very quantity of it discourages investigation. Our libraries still contain the great folios of this forgotten Latin; the great *terra incognita* of the history of European civilisation lies today not in manuscripts but in printed books; the Latin literature of the Renaissance has had no historian.[1] Yet at the time the patrons and public of Latin included practically all the intellectually eminent and many of the politically influential. This should warn us not to minimise its significance.

The old division between Latin and the vernacular had (with certain notable exceptions) allocated to Latin all serious literature, to the vernaculars all that was popular and ephemeral. This dichotomy, though apparently influential among fourteenth- and fifteenth-century humanists, was progressively challenged by the Latin men of letters. By the sixteenth century a great deal of writing in genres previously monopolised by vernacular was undertaken under the stimulus of the example of the literature of antiquity. Poetry (lyrical, narrative, philosophical and epic) was attempted; drama had its Latin-writing disciples; satires, *jeux d'esprit*, popular morality and works of fiction were all regularly composed in Latin; Greek and oriental texts were translated into Latin as often as into the vernacular; and there was much admiration for collections of letters aiming at the excellences of Cicero and Pliny. This, the lighter side of Renaissance Latin literature, has left few enduring monuments beyond the example it offered to the vernaculars of one and the same vehicle being used for delight as well as for sublimity and scholarship. Poetry of all kinds was prolifically composed, most of it of an amatory or mundane

---

1 As is pointed out by Paul von Tieghem in his valuable long essay, 'La littérature Latine de la Renaissance', *Bibliothèque d'Humanisme et Renaissance*, 4 (1944), 177–418. This is the only useful general discussion of the subject. In default of a full-scale work it is still profitable to consult H. Hallam, *Introduction to the Literature of Europe in the XV, XVI and XVII Centuries*, 1837–9 and later reprints.

complexion, though everywhere, and especially in Reformation Germany, religious themes are found. Much of this poetry is extremely accomplished and some of it is moving. What makes it important, however, is that it greatly influenced later vernacular writers, and judged by this standard the *Basia* of the Dutch poet Johannes Secundus (d. 1535) demands notice here, and so does the Christian epic of the Italian Vida (d. 1566), his *Christiad* (1535), as well as his *Poetica* (1527). Elegies, eclogues, satires and epigrams distinguish a galaxy of other writers too numerous to mention. Theatrical pieces, composed often for pedagogical purposes, were soon adapted to the needs of propaganda and polemic. Between 1530 and 1560 religious drama in Latin enjoyed a remarkable popularity in Germany and the Low Countries, Naogeorgus (Thomas Kirchmeyer, d. 1563) being one of the most important authors of this kind of play. Elsewhere in northern Europe religious plays were only less in evidence, the much read and much translated *Jephthes* (1542) of George Buchanan (d. 1582) illustrating this.[1] This tradition was to be exploited in favour of Catholicism by Jesuit dramatists later in the century.

In the field of satirical writing and popular morality the greatest figure is Erasmus (d. 1536), whose activity as a scholar will occupy us later. The *Adagia*, frequently reprinted and extended, were more than a collection of proverbs, frequently being developed into essays on currently debated topics. The *Colloquia* (1518), soon departing from their starting point as a manual of Latin conversation, became racy dialogues of biting satire and comic censure. In these types of literature Erasmus had imitators but no equals. In another field Erasmus represents the tastes of the period – his letters. First published in 1516, these were later expanded in collected editions. They represent only a fraction of his correspondence and were selected and revised before publication. The *labor limae* even more obtrusively colours the letters of other celebrated Latinists of the period; even in the case of a Sadoleto (d. 1547) or a Bembo (d. 1547) it could justly be said that their epistles were composed as exercises, *scriptae magis quam missae*, as a contemporary put it.

An air of unreality tends to hang over the types of neo-Latin literature we have just considered, but it does not equally blur the appreciation of the Latin scholarship of the period. To the writer of a serious work Latin still offered in most areas of Europe the only language of precision besides being the only means of crossing linguistic frontiers. It was, moreover, traditionally associated with erudition, and in practically every subject terminology and method indicated it as the vehicle of composition. Theologians, scientists, educationalists, philologists and historians there-

---

1 See *George Buchanan Tragedies*, ed. P. Sharrat and P. G. Walsh (1983); and for Buchanan, I. D. McFarlane, *G. Buchanan* (1981).

fore normally wrote in Latin. The content of a good deal of theological literature is discussed in detail elsewhere in this book.[1] Here we may merely observe some of the consequences of the Reformation in this department of scholarship. The first effect was the influence of theological values in all speculation.

It is no more easy to distinguish theology and philosophy during the Renaissance than it is during the middle ages, but in the anxious decades that followed Luther's challenge to Rome the speculative thinker found his works scrutinised for their theological implications with a rigour characteristic of the thirteenth century. The theologians on each side devoted their best energies to demolishing their opponents. In this polemic the very grace and culture of the Italian apologists of Rome seemed insufferable in Lutheran circles. Luther himself was content 'to bellow in bad Latin', and it was long before the influence of Melanchthon made good style a characteristic of Lutheran debate. On the other hand Beza and, to an even greater extent, Calvin, were Latinists of no mean order. Midway between the papalists in Italy, at Louvain and in the Sorbonne, and their opponents stood for a time Erasmus, lonely in a world where violent dogma was destroying good letters and 'Christian philosophy', as he called it. Neoplatonic or pantheistic doctrines which had seemed innocuous at the start of the century were now anathema in all religious camps. Lucretianism (like that of the Italian Palingenius, d. 1543?) and Anabaptism such as tinged the works of the Dutch playwright Gnapheus (d. 1568) were equally proscribed. The mixture of Averroism and Stoicism propounded by Pomponazzi at Padua (d. 1525) was regarded with hardly less disapproval. The contemporary rise in the prestige of Aristotle in all areas and of St Thomas Aquinas among Catholics, important as these developments were to be for the future, is swamped by the urgent and acrid theology of controversy and condemnation.

Historians in Latin abound. Later critics have distinguished in this field a division between the followers of Flavius Blondus (Biondo, d. 1463), an exponent of antiquarian exactitude, and those of Aretinus (Leonardo Bruni of Arezzo, d. 1444), first of the great rhetorical writers. But by the sixteenth century these two schools were in practice much assimilated, and the new historiography – closely associated with the new diplomacy – shared the characteristics of both. Humanist writers tended to a fine display of language; orations abound, both in direct speech and in *oratio obliqua*; names of persons, places and institutions are latinised sometimes out of recognition. Yet, ornate and polished as many of these histories were, they are yet full of a new critical sense, avoid the mythical and doubt

---

1 Cf. chapters III–XII. Other scholarly works in Latin are discussed in section 2 of this chapter and in ch. XVII.

the legendary, base themselves on authentic source material, and usually accept (albeit unwillingly) the unstylish and compromising terminology of the Christian calendar and chronology. Italian principalities and republics took the lead in the new history and at first it was practised elsewhere mainly by emigré Italians: Paulus Aemilius (d. 1539) in France, Polydore Vergil (d. 1555) in England, Marinus Siculus (d. 1533) and Peter Martyr (of Anghiera, d. 1526) in Spain. Soon native writers acquired the new manner, as is exemplified by the Spaniards Antonio de Lebrija (Nebrisensis, d. 1522) and Sepulveda (d. 1573?) and the French continuator of Paulus Aemilius, Arnoul le Ferron (d. 1563). Germany (in historiography as in other fields) resisted the Italian manner, continued an interest in the universal chronicle which was elsewhere unfashionable, and was rent by disputes which sought arguments in a confessional treatment of the past. Some of these works had enormous success in Protestant lands, as did the *Chronicle* of Johannes Carion (d. 1537), later expanded by Melanchthon (1558–60). On the imperialist side the *Commentarii* of Sleidan (Johann Philipson, d. 1556) were equally noteworthy. One general work only was in the humanist tradition, the *Rerum Germanicarum libri iii* of Beatus Rhenanus (d. 1547); there are a number of regional historians of merit. The religious controversy in Germany had, however, one important result: it provoked the collaborators known as the 'Centuriators of Magdeburg' under the leadership of Matthias Flacius Illyricus, Flach in German, (d. 1575) to produce an ecclesiastical history of a quite new kind, the first volume of which appeared in 1559; the *Annales ecclesiastici*, the Catholic reply of Baronius (d. 1607), as revised and continued by others, is still a work on which historians rely today. Italy had at this time a considerable number of highly reputed Latin historians, but the real originality of the Italians in this field (apart from some polished but superficial biographies and contemporary history composed by Paulus Giovius, d. 1552) lay in vernacular writings. And it is for their ubiquitous influence on vernacular historiography that the Latin historical writers are important. With the historians we may perhaps link two men predominantly legal in their training and interests – Guillaume Budé (d. 1540) and Andrea Alciato (d. 1550). Budé's fame has survived less as a writer on legal antiquities and more as a Greek scholar; Alciato is best known not for his historical approach to civil law but for his *Emblemata* (1531), a collection of moral symbols which was frequently issued in illustrated editions and profoundly influenced the iconography of the later Renaissance.

The approach of Budé and Alciato in their technical writings was essentially philological, and philology, in a broad sense, accounts for much of the learned Latin of the sixteenth century, and much that was both valuable and influential. To go no further than the work of Erasmus

after 1520: in secular literature we find editions by him of Cicero, Seneca, Suetonius, Curtius, Aristotle, Ptolemy and translations of Galen and Xenophon: in patristic texts Jerome, Cyprian, Arnobius, Hilary, Irenaeus, Ambrose, Augustine, Lactantius, Origen, and translations of Chrysostom and Basil. This formidable list must be augmented by the productions of many other scholars, individually less productive, together adding up to the publication of practically all important (and many unimportant) texts of Greek, Latin and Christian antiquity. The *editiones principes* of these works have been listed on several occasions, even if we cannot make confident statements about the number of occasions on which the more popular texts were reissued. It is clear, however, that the example of Aldus in publishing modestly priced, authoritative and compact editions of the classics was now widely followed in France and Germany; and that the Venetian leadership in Greek printing had now passed to Paris, where Robert Estienne (d. 1559) was a scholar-printer in the grand manner.

Though reactionary clergy were suspicious of humanism and sometimes openly hostile to the study of Greek and Hebrew, religious bitterness on the whole did not seriously impede classical scholarship; a respect for a republic of classical letters was a sentiment fragile perhaps, but none the less pervasive. In one field, however, sectarian animosity played havoc: Bible scholarship. The Lutheran movement coincided with the issue of Erasmus's New Testament (1516 Greek and Latin, 1519 the new Latin version), and the final publication of the edition of the Polyglot Bible inspired by Cardinal Cisneros (Alcalá, 1520). Erasmus's critical approach had already been indicated by his edition of Valla's *Adnotationes* (1505),[1] the team of scholars assembled by Cisneros were more cautious in their approach. But the fury of the attack on the new application of learning to the Scriptures, led by theologians whose suspicions had been aroused by the evangelistic proclivities of many of the scholars concerned and notably Erasmus himself, knew no bounds. The consequences were immense. Erasmus was compelled to revise his text in a direction he knew to be false (notably in the case of the famous interpolation in 1 John 5:7); Robert Estienne, whose great edition of the Vulgate (1538–40) remained for centuries the main scholarly edition, incurred the censure of the Sorbonne and he had ultimately to leave Paris for Geneva (1550); and one of the effective resolutions of the Council of Trent made the Vulgate text sacrosanct for Catholics, while Protestants were extremely chary of a scientific approach to it. Much of the philological equipment of the scholars who laboured on the Greek, Hebrew and Latin Scriptures was, on the other hand, defective. The science of paleography was unborn and

---

1 Anthony Grafton has persuasively argued that Valla (1407–57) was not otherwise influential on sixteenth-century classical scholarship: *Joseph Scaliger* (1983).

Erasmus considered an eleventh-century MS as ancient. Catalogues did not exist of many of the relevant libraries of manuscripts, and it was hazard and chance proximity that led to the collation of the texts used even by so indefatigable a worker as Estienne.

If the sixteenth century lacked the aid of paleography, it acquired systematic lexicography. The interest of the fifteenth-century humanists in this direction had been intense but erratic: individual authors had been studied, but as a general dictionary the student's best aid was the dictionary of Calepinus (Ambrogio Calepio, d. 1511) which did not match the quality of most of the texts to which it was perforce a guide. In 1531 Robert Estienne published the first edition of his *Thesaurus*. Reprinted in 1536 and 1543, this work grew larger and more reliable, offering an example to the compilers of lexicons not only of the classical language but also of modern languages. It was Henri Estienne (d. 1598) who performed the same work for Greek (1572).

Robert Estienne's *Thesaurus* improved on earlier works by excluding 'non-classical' authors. This brings us to the most vexed and interesting problem of neo-Latin literature in the early sixteenth century: Ciceronianism, its advocates and opponents. For a variety of non-stylistic reasons the study of Cicero had loomed large amongst humanist preoccupations in the late fourteenth and fifteenth centuries. Yet, while admiration for his style was widespread, the livelier Latinists were for long in practice free of consistent obedience to his vocabulary and syntax; *grammatica* was tempered by *genialità*, which we may render here as 'brilliance'; and Valla, the ablest linguist of the mid fifteenth century, delivered a broadside at the Ciceronians of his day. Valla's very exactitude, however, signalised the dawn of a new epoch in criticism. Intermittent debates followed – between Politian and Paolo Cortesi, Gianfrancesco Pico della Mirandola and Bembo, in which both in numbers and influence the Ciceronians slowly gained. The final campaign was more bitter than these earlier skirmishes.[1] Erasmus, who had thought much about the problem at any rate from 1516, published his *Ciceronianus* in 1528: the issue at once became entangled in questions of national prestige and religious orthodoxy. Italy, overrun by French and German troops, had taken refuge in her cultural ascendancy as a compensation for her political weakness. The 'imperialism' of Leo X and succeeding popes encouraged this sentiment. Rome had become the centre of a rigid Ciceronianism which was the symbol both of a defeated people and a church still clinging to its ecumenical mission.[2] Erasmus's attack was wounding not merely to a

1 See the 'brilliant' essay of Remigio Sabbadini, *Storia del Ciceronianismo* (1886).
2 Many aspects of these developments are discussed in two recent works: John W. O'Malley, *Praise and Blame in Renaissance Rome* (1979); John F. Damico, *Renaissance Humanism in Papal Rome* (1983).

handful of scholars but to emotions of patriotism and pride in the religious primacy of Rome. Erasmus failed entirely to understand the nature of this identification of classical and Christian Rome: his opponents – lacking his originality, stung by his irony, confident of their linguistic purity – were totally oblivious of the suspicion of paganism and irreligion which their vocabulary aroused in northern Europe. Erasmus catalogued the verbal ingenuity of the Roman school (*Jupiter* for *Deus*, *Apollo* for *filius*, *factio* for *haeresis, christiana persuasio* for *fides, legati* for *apostoli, patres conscripti* for *cardinales* and so forth) and concluded, 'we profess Jesus in our mouths, but it is Jove and Romulus we carry in our hearts'. The Italian coteries assaulted Erasmus not only as a barbarian but as a Lutheran heretic, one who was patently undermining universal Christendom by advocating an eclecticism at once ugly and impious. The storm thus reflects more than merely literary questions and it is highly significant that the most active opponents of Erasmus lived in France – Julius Caesar Scaliger (d. 1558) and Etienne Dolet (d. 1546). Even in Latin literature the age of Italian leadership was passing away. So, too, was the period when Latin could claim attention as a vital vehicle of original literature. The pedantry and purism of the exponents of Latin (and Ciceronianism and *Virgilianità* were dominant for a further century even in Protestant lands where they had originally met resistance) went far to destroy its hold on the imagination of creative writers. Latin became merely part of the curriculum; the vernaculars laid claim to life.

In considering vernacular literature it is important to remember that at this time Latin and the vernacular were often used by the same writers, and that even writers who normally wrote in a vulgar tongue were steeped in Latin at school. The exceptions to this, though not negligible and though significant of later trends, are small in number. In style, in vocabulary, and in their literary ambitions writers of Italian and French were by the mid sixteenth century profoundly affected by classical antiquity and by Renaissance Latin works. Since Italy was the main centre of humanist activity it is hardly surprising that Italian literature at this time displays a maturity much greater than is to be found north of the Alps. Renaissance Latin had aimed to be the medium of all experience; it offered an example of fixed orthography and grammar, and transmitted a rich but disciplined set of forms. Such an object lesson was presented to all Europe in the course of the sixteenth century: and Italian itself could display to less advanced literatures the further stage of a vernacular moulded by its intimate association with revived Latin. For, besides their Latin models in antiquity and modern times, the sixteenth-century Italian also had before him the example of the vulgar writing of the fourteenth-century writers, Dante, Petrarch and Boccaccio. These men were regarded

with almost as much veneration as Vergil and Cicero. The Italian, in short, had not only ancient but also in practice modern 'classics', though of course the canon of Italian literature was by no means firmly established by the sixteenth century.

The principal monuments of Italian literary excellence, which will be referred to in the ensuing pages, provide the main evidence for the superiority of Italian writing at this time. But three other peninsular developments are also suggestive of a sophistication to which northern Europe could not as yet pretend. The first of these is the debate as to the very value and nature of the Italian vernacular itself. The *questione della lingua* comprised two very different problems: was the use of a vernacular compatible with serious composition? And, if so, which of the various Italian vernaculars should be employed or should an Italian be developed which could transcend provincial dialects? Though the first question was still debated in the sixteenth century, it had already been answered in practice and Bembo's *Prose della volgar lingua* (1525) provided a theoretical defence of the vernacular all the more telling in that it was the work of one of the most accomplished Latinists of the day. The controversy went on; conservatives deplored the decline in Latin scholarship and pointed out that *trecento* masters themselves had used Latin for serious works; but the abundant harvest in the vernacular was a sufficient answer and Giambattista Gelli (d. 1563) even argued that it was a waste of time to learn ancient tongues. The other and ensuing dilemma was less obviously resolved. Bembo (although a Venetian) gave his support to Tuscan, but here provincial rivalries of a political kind came into play, for Italy had no capital city and Rome, Naples, Lombardy and Venice could challenge the cultural primacy of Florence. Indeed, it was from the background of the small court of Urbino that the Lombard Baldassare Castiglione urged the case for a courtly Italian, the language of gentlemen, eclectic and refined, the solution which had been offered two centuries earlier by Dante in his *De Vulgari Eloquentia*, where he had advanced the claims of a language 'illustrious, cardinal, and courtly'. This issue consequently remained a lively one. But in practice the existence of the fourteenth-century masterpieces of Dante, Petrarch and Boccaccio (the *Tre Fontane* of N. Liburnio's grammatical study, 1526) provided a standard or norm which the sixteenth-century writers for the most part accepted, while the 'imitation' of them was sedulously advocated by many theorists. Thus *Fiorentinità* and *volgare illustre* were far from being mutually exclusive in practice and what remains significant in the prolonged debate is the maturity of the vernacular which was being analysed.[1]

---

1 Associated with this is an 'anti-Courtier' movement, on which see S. Anglo's chapter in
  The Courts of Europe, ed. A. G. Dickens (1977), pp. 33–53, 328–9.

A second facet of Italian precociousness is seen in the remarkable verse of Teofilo Folengo (d. 1544). Macaronic writing was no new thing when Folengo published his *Baldus* in 1517. It sprang naturally from a world in which Latin mingled with the vernaculars of common life and is found in medieval poetry; and it nearly always carried satirical overtones. But Folengo's hexameters raise the *genre* to a new level. Couched in the framework of the prevailing Italian epic, his poem has a compulsion and a racy realism which display an astonishing flexibility in both the Latin and Italian languages he was blending, and which were entirely consonant with his cynical purpose. Equally his verse is a tribute to the Italian public which called for four editions by 1552, as well as other works in the same manner, and which could relish the antirhetorical twist of Folengo's mind. Such ingenuity of manner and spirit are not uniquely Italian: Rabelais read Folengo and reveals a certain indebtedness to him both in vocabulary and in his approach to the mock heroic. But *Baldus* could only have emerged in a society where literacy in both Latin and vernacular was widely diffused, where bourgeois values were explicitly accepted, and where high seriousness was not called for in a writer.

The third phenomenon peculiar to Italy was the prestige accorded to Pietro Aretino (d. 1556). Aretino's fame, which enabled him to curry favour with the great, to hobnob with pope and emperor and to live at Venice in considerable style, was entirely due to his ruthless pen. The profits of authorship were in his case vast, for he procured patronage by the threat of vitriolic attack and rejoiced in his power to make and break reputations. His work was journalism, whether he was writing astrological prognostications, obscene satires such as the *Ragionamenti* (1534) or works of lush religiosity such as his *Umanità di Christo* (1534). All was grist to his mill, and his trenchant, lithe style raised the vernacular to a point where the colloquial, the intimate and the informal were capable of perfect expression. This is more particularly seen in his letters, of which six volumes appeared between 1537 and 1557 and which provoked the emergence of a fashion for publishing vernacular correspondence. Aretino depended on a society where actuality was regarded as a merit, where literature was permeated by urban values, and where the public demanded to be amused and intrigued rather than elevated.

Elsewhere in Europe the audience to which vernacular writers could aspire was both smaller and more conservative. The Italian towns dominated the culture of the Peninsular. Elsewhere the bourgeoisie though important was not determinant: artistic modes and manners were coloured by older aristocratic and ecclesiastical values, or by popular elements as yet unassimilated in the current of polite literature. Paris and London were rising centres, but France and England were still lands where cohesion depended on the gravitation of magnates to a king; the

same is true of the Iberian kingdoms; and in Germany the large and flourishing cities expressed their cultural aspirations in old-fashioned and largely religious terms, sharing in this way an attitude displayed by the aristocratic elements in the country. The patronage of letters by the Italian princes of the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries went far to transposing Italian melodies to a key in which they could be appreciated in northern Europe: but it was long before the resulting harmonies lost the courtly artificiality they thus acquired. What struck northern European writers about the Italian scene was the erudition, the scholarship of the Italians, not their ability to achieve popular realism. Bembo rather than Folengo or Aretino, the rhetorical rather than the anti-pedantic writers, were what non-Italians admired in Italian literature. It is significant that Joachim du Bellay (d. 1560) in his *Deffence et Illustration de la Langue françoyse* (1549) lifted nearly all his arguments for the vernacular from Italian sources, and especially from the *Dialogo delle lingue* of Sperone Speroni (d. 1588) while being both inspired by, and desiring positively to rival, the triumphs of Italian literature, viewed as a medium almost as refined and perfect as Latin and Greek. Some aspects of these processes may be revealed by a brief review of the main types of literature in the principal countries of the continent.

In poetry, during the decades we are considering, there are few outstanding writers. In Italy the period between Ariosto and Tasso is – despite the large number of poets – relatively arid. Petrarchism was dominant: even the opponents of the convention were constrained only to parody the Petrarchists. Exquisite and polished though they were, the verses of the Petrarchisti and Bembisti, which were composed by small coteries in all the Italian towns, rank as minor art; the verse of Francesco Maria Molza (d. 1544), Galeazzo di Tarsia (d. 1553) and Luigi Tansillo (d. 1568) live on only in anthologies; of the three women poets, Veronica Gambara (d. 1550), Vittoria Colonna (d. 1547) and Gaspara Stampa (d. 1554), only the last rises above the frigidity and perfectionism to which emulation of Petrarch normally led. The burlesque verses of Francesco Berni (d. 1535), though they too are Petrarchist in manner, fall into another category, for their parody mirrored a more popular and richer strain in the Italian scene, the satirical spirit already noted: his revision of Boiardo also responded to popular taste. Only one poet carries profound conviction, Michelangelo (d. 1564). Among the mellifluous versifiers of the day his harsh lines struck a discordant, anguished note; he alone broke out of the prevailing convention to speak with his own voice.

Yet if Petrarchism was inherently a limitation in Italy, its effect elsewhere in Europe was highly stimulating. Italian influences in French verse are already evident in the work of Clément Marot, though his

attraction lies less in his espousal of a new manner than in his witty and honest application of traditional forms and themes; his translations of the psalms were a more significant innovation and linked him with the reforming element in France, with the Calvinists in Switzerland, and with Italy again, where he died in 1544. The majority of contemporary versifiers were content to employ the old devices of the *rhétoriqueurs*, but Margaret of Navarre (d. 1549), an even greater patron of letters than her brother King Francis I, reveals, like Marot whom she protected, both Italian influence and the current of reforming sentiment; in her case these combined to give her verse an individual note, reflecting her own spiritual difficulties. The decade following the death of Margaret saw, however, the establishment of a consistently novel poetical tradition: in 1558 was published Joachim du Bellay's *Antiquitez de Rome* and *Regrets*; and in 1560 appeared the first collected edition of the poems of Pierre de Ronsard (d. 1585). The intellectual and sentimental origins of the Pléiade, of whom du Bellay and Ronsard were the greatest luminaries,[1] go back behind the formation of the 'brigade' round Ronsard in Paris and its first manifesto, du Bellay's *Deffence* of 1549: they owed more than they were at first prepared to admit to the *école marotique*, to Mellin de Saint-Gelais (d. 1558) and to Maurice Scève (d. 1564?), the most illustrious of a group of poets at Lyons who mediated between Italy, and the Italian discovery of antiquity, and France. Du Bellay's *Deffence*, with its sweeping condemnation of medieval poetical manners and its trenchant demand for a French literature akin to and equalling the literature of the classical world, was too incoherent to have itself created a new mode. This was established not by theory but by practice; by du Bellay's own exercises in the Petrarchan manner and his nostalgic response to Rome as well as to 'la douceur Angevine'; above all by Ronsard, not content only to triumph in a minor key but attempting the ode, the hymn and the lofty epic.

In Spain, as in England, Italian influences were also at work. Juan Boscan (d. 1542) deliberately attempted the use of Italian forms and his friend Garcilaso de la Vega (d. 1536) was even more successful in conveying the subtleties of platonic love in the new manner. Already in the fifteenth century Spanish writers had been influenced by Italy. In England the literary contact with Italy was still tenuous in the mid sixteenth century, and the Petrarchan attempts of Sir Thomas Wyatt (d. 1542) were laboured; the earl of Surrey (Henry Howard, d. 1547) was much happier with the sonnet, and probably drew out of Italy the notion of using blank verse for his partial translation of the *Aeneid*. But in Britain the 'late

---

1 The other names traditionally included in the galaxy are: J. A. de Baïf, E. Jodelle, Pontus de Tyard, R. Belleau and J. Dorat.

medieval' frequently displays more spirit and accomplishment than the 'Drab Age' which succeeded;[1] no better proof of this is needed than the flourishing of verse in Scotland in the first half of the sixteenth century. Scotland, even remoter from foreign influence than her southern neighbour, produced a series of important poets, Douglas, Dunbar and (in our period) Sir David Lindsay of the Mount (d. 1552/5). These men were handling traditional metres and forms with skill and sensitivity; so with all his eccentricity was the English poet John Skelton (d. 1529). Behind Spanish, Scottish and English verse, and even more prominently in the Balkans and Scandinavia, lay a ballad tradition, popular poetry in the fullest sense, but as yet largely uncommitted to print. Nowhere, however, is the influence of Italy more absent than in Germany, hostile, as already noted, to much that Italian humanism stood for. Nowhere did medieval traditions flourish longer. Hans Sachs (d. 1576) was the most prolific of the German verse-writers. The hymns of the Reformed Church, and notably of Luther himself, original as they are, belong in many respects to an older lyrical tradition.

This short review of European poetry shows that the mainly urban, refined, Petrarchan styles dominant in Italy had by 1560 been to a great extent received in France, to a lesser extent in Spain and only slightly elsewhere. A not dissimilar picture emerges from a survey of developments in the field of drama. In most parts of northern Europe the medieval stage still flourished in the sixteenth century: at any rate before religious purists discouraged them, mystery plays, rooted in the popular apprehension of religion, continued to attract large audiences. Indeed, the early sixteenth century witnessed some of the most elaborate productions of which record remains, like that at Valenciennes in 1547. But the mid-years of the century saw the mystery play falling into official disrepute among both Catholics and Protestants. Another traditional genre, the morality or dramatised allegory, was only submerged by rival types of entertainment in the second half of the century, though its potentialities for political satire made it often the target of criticism by princes and magistrates. The morality developed farthest in France. There the capital city had recognised companies, such as the *Enfants sans Souci* of which Pierre Gringore (d. 1538) was a member, and specialised entertainments, off-shoots of the morality proper, the *soties* and *farces*; the *farce* especially was tenacious of life and survived the supercilious contempt of the new poets. Here again Scotland provides an instructive comment, for in Lindsay's *Ane Satyre of the Thre Estaitis* we have a morality which in its construction and in the wit of its language can fairly claim to be a classic of its kind, although composed as late as 1540, when it was produced in Linlithgow. In France

1   The terms are used as in C. S. Lewis, *English Literature in the Sixteenth Century* (1954).

and in England chronicle plays make their appearance in the mid sixteenth century; the English chronicle play was to be extremely influential in later dramatic development. So in Spain was the *auto sacramental*, a popular drama, religious in origin, and destined to reach its farthest evolution in the seventeenth century.

Only in Italy had a new type of drama reached a vernacular language by the middle of the sixteenth century. *Sacre rappresentazioni* are still found, but they were relegated now to remoter areas and to the uncultivated. In Italy as elsewhere the mystery play bequeathed a more permanent legacy in the comic interlude (*intermezzo*). This, however, was neglected by the humanists for a more learned type of play, based on the revival of ancient drama. Translations of Plautus and Terence, as well as contemporary Latin plays similar in character, were among the aristocratic entertainments staged at Ferrara and Urbino, and soon popular at Rome and elsewhere. These esoteric exercises were by themselves of only short-term interest: but they unquestionably provoked the more significant comedies of Ariosto and Machiavelli (the latter's play *Mandragola* is especially notable). The vernacular comedy in Italy, however, in fact did not progress much from the point which it had reached by 1520; nor did tragedy.[1] On the other hand the combination of the form of classical comedy with the older intermezzo tradition produced the *commedia dell' arte*. This remarkable development, where the company played *extempore* from a repertoire of stereotyped plots and characters, has naturally left few memorials of its early beginnings (the earliest documentary evidence is a Paduan contract of 1545); it naturally did not appeal to writers; and they, cut off from the actuality of the theatre, no longer produced plays of theatrical as opposed to literary merit. Thus the popular theatre in Italy was practically divorced from literature. In other parts of Europe, as we have seen,[2] many plays were written in Latin and a number of Erasmus's dialogues are racy and dramatic. These compositions, many of them pedagogic in intention, exercised on the whole a beneficent influence on the development of the theatre. The marriage between scholarship and popular drama accomplished in the end so brilliantly in England, France and Spain, presumably owed much to the existence in these countries of centralised governments and capital cities.

The strength and variety of imaginative prose writing in Italy, on the other hand, is striking testimony of the wide diffusion of bourgeois values in the Peninsula. As in poetry, so here the fourteenth century provided an exemplar of genius. Boccaccio's spirit continued to inspire novelists in the

---

1 The prestige accorded to Vitruvius and the influence of theatrical architects are asserted to have had discouraging effects.
2 Above, p. 404.

mid sixteenth century, though the stream of invention was giving signs of
drying up: artistry was succumbing to the desire merely to distract; or was
(through the practices of the endless writers of dialogues and treatises on
Platonic love) tending towards euphuism. The Arcadian or pastoral novel
was to come of all this, but realism was submerged only with difficulty. If
it is lost sight of in many of the essays and dialogues, like the work of
Giovanni della Casa (d. 1556), the *Galateo* (on manners), or the *Ragiona-
menti d'amore* of Agnolo Firenzuola (d. 1543), it would still be hard to
deny it to Castiglione's *Courtier*, which rings true as a picture of the charm
and stateliness of the Urbino court. But the novelist proper was closer to
the people and even in attempting to astonish and horrify drew on deeper
and more popular traditions than the humanists as such could appropri-
ate. The better novelists thus had a universality which gave their works a
European appeal, and there were soon translations and adaptations north
of the Alps of the stories of G.-F. Straparola (d. *c.* 1557), A. F. Grazzini
(Il Lasca, d. 1584) and M. Bandello (d. 1561).

In the north, however, the taste for fiction had its own roots in both
fabliaux and *nouvelles* and in the declining but still popular prose epic of
chivalry. This last, indeed, enjoyed a revival in the first half of the six-
teenth century. Vast and rambling chivalrous stories are characteristic of
Spain in particular: *Amadis of Gaul* is more representative of Spanish taste
than the realism of the picaresque *Lazarillo de Tormes* (1554). *Amadis* was
immensely successful in France, where Lancelot, Tristram and the rest
had maintained their hold, and in England a similar preoccupation is
reflected in the translations of Lord Berners (Sir John Bourchier, d. 1533)
-- Froissart, *Arthur of Little Britain, Huon of Bordeaux*. Chivalrous love is
one of the ingredients also in the *Heptameron* of Margaret of Navarre;
though the framework of this collection of stories derives from Boccaccio,
the moral impulse is essentially northern.

The greatest and most original imaginative writer of northern Europe at
this time is François Rabelais in whose work practically every aspect of
the literary trends we have discussed is reflected – heroic, humanist, realist.
By background a provincial bourgeois, in religion successively a friar, a
monk and a secular priest, Rabelais was essentially a university man,
graduating ultimately as doctor of medicine. In this capacity he entered
the entourage of Jean du Bellay and with him made the first of several
visits to Italy. These Italian contacts doubtless confirmed his humanist
inclinations, but it was at Lyons that they were first encouraged, at Lyons
that he published both medical and archeological works, and at Lyons
that he issued *Pantagruel* in 1533. *Gargantua* followed in 1534 but the
Tiers Livre did not appear till 1546; the *Quart Livre* came out in 1548.
After Rabelais's death in Paris in 1553 there was a partial publication of

the *Cinquiesme Livre* in 1562, and a complete edition in 1564.[1] The genius of Rabelais as it is revealed in *Gargantua, Pantagruel* and their sequels is multifarious; he has been claimed as an atheist, a Protestant, a Catholic; as an Erasmian humanist, as the first of the *honnêtes gens*; as last of the medievals, first of the moderns. His place today is assured by his satirical observation of the world he loved, by his display of an extraordinary humanist omniscience and an optimistic view of nature, especially of human nature. At the time it was the fantasy that appealed, the allegory both medieval and Renaissance, the mock heroics and burlesque, the didactic intervals (which grew longer in the later books) and above all the relish for words. This verbal intoxication may pall on the twentieth-century ear. Then it was the apt vehicle for the heady mixture of a Gothic and a Latin world, the Gothic world of giants and the Latin world of the abbey of Thélème, a popular northern and an exotic southern tradition, meeting and mingling in a joyous, exuberant and well-stocked mind.

The use of the vernaculars for imaginative writing was nothing new: it had been accepted as their role in the middle ages. It is therefore by observing the stages by which the vernaculars penetrated into the field of serious writing that we have the best measure of their growing autonomy. This was virtually complete in Italy, but in other countries progress was slower and far beyond the sixteenth century Latin remained an important medium for scholarship. Nevertheless the mid-decades of the century saw a remarkable advance, partly through translations and partly through the composition of original works.

The volume of translations was formidable. Although a good many works were translated from one 'modern' language into another (as, for example, French chivalrous romances were at this time put into German), the bulk of translation was from Latin and neo-Latin and from Greek; and certainly it was from the second type of translation that the vernaculars stood to benefit most in vocabulary, syntax and style. Italy undoubtedly took the lead in translations, and in particular was noteworthy for vernacular versions of Greek authors, but France was not far behind. Much of this activity has not survived the test of time. Texts, both Greek and Latin, were faulty; translations of Greek originals were often made from imperfect Latin versions; verse was translated into verse at the expense of literalness; and at all times and in all ways the translator forced his author into the mould of sixteenth-century convention. It is, therefore, only when the manner of the translator and his text coincide that art as such (aside from the diffusion of ideas, however inaccurate) resulted. This

---

1 It is now generally agreed that as it stands the *Cinquiesme Livre* is not entirely Rabelais's work.

was rare enough in our period, but the tendency to a secular morality in
the public for whom he was writing, as well as his own scholarship, made
J. Amyot's *Plutarch's Lives* (1559) a notable work. Translations of
humanist Latin did not suffer from the difficulty of accommodating
ancient ideas in modern language. Thus the translations of Erasmus's
Encomium Moriae made almost at the time it was written (1511) have a
vigorous sympathy which later versions necessarily lack (French and
German 1520, Italian 1539, English 1549); much the same is true of
More's *Utopia* (1516) in the earliest vernacular renderings (German 1524,
Italian 1548, French 1550, English 1551).

   Translations of the Bible fall into a separate category. The nature of the
text precluded the brash treatment accorded to secular writings; a long
tradition of whole or partial translations, which had already acclimatised
many passages in the vernacular, circumscribed translators; and the whole
question was soon a major issue between reformers and counter-
reformers. So far as this last point is concerned it must be left to the
general history of the Reformation. As far as the significance of the Bible
in literature is concerned, two points must be made. First, the attraction of
certain parts of the Bible was very great, irrespective of piety, to sixteenth-
century writers: Marot in France, Wyatt in England found the psalms a
challenge. It is hard to see how earlier writers had avoided such a stimulus
of a purely literary kind, and it may be that the atmosphere of Bible
scholarship was needed to release what was to be a permanent preoccu-
pation in later literature, to 'paraphrase' Holy Writ. The second point is
the consequence for literature at a national level of vernacular versions of
the one book which was generally read. Luther's German translation
(1522 onwards) which reached 377 editions by his death in 1546, is
deservedly the most spectacular and most often-quoted example. In
linguistically as well as politically divided Germany the unifying effects of
a compelling version of Scripture have been naturally regarded as a
noteworthy event; Catholic versions (Eck's of 1537) failed to capture
support; and the most that the orthodox could do was to modify Luther's
text which became the greatest single contribution to the formation of a
single German language. Elsewhere vernacular versions of the Bible had
less dramatic consequences, though everywhere in the decades from 1520
to 1560 translators were at work: Lefèvre d'Etaples and Olivetan for
France and French Switzerland, Tyndale and Coverdale for England,
Pedersen for Denmark and many others.

   However novel translations of the Bible seemed in the sixteenth century,
the practice was old enough. Theology, on the other hand, was the senior
university discipline of the middle ages, and Latin had been its natural
means of expression. This state of affairs was hardly changed in the

sixteenth century, but the religious controversy of the period was con-
ducted increasingly in the vulgar tongues. Many of Luther's and Calvin's
polemical writings were in German and French respectively. Even more
impressive was Calvin's translation into French of his own *Institutes*
(1541), the first occasion on which a theologian developed a learned thesis
in a modern language. On the other hand, though Catholics were
compelled to answer Protestants in their own terms and thus in the
vernaculars, the association of vernacular theology (and Bible transla-
tions) with reform in religion hardened the attitude to these subjects of
orthodox authority, from the Sorbonne's querulous hostility in the 1520s
to the measured distrust of the Fathers at Trent. The other sciences, in the
hands of corporations with no call to publicise or proselytise, gave way
more slowly – law (canon and civil), natural science, philosophy and
medicine, though in the case of medicine a growing number of practi-
tioners of a kind humbler than the lofty doctors led to vulgarisation of
texts and treatises.

Only in one field did serious vernacular prose make considerable
advances – history. For this, too, there were precedents in plenty.
Vernacular historiography is found everywhere from the thirteenth cen-
tury onwards, and the case of Commynes had shown that, even without
humanist influence, a critical or analytical view of the past was emerging
in northern Europe. It would be entirely wrong to underestimate the value
of the older historiographical tradition in the sixteenth century. It was
through versions of the *Grandes Chroniques* and not Paulus Aemilius that
the average sixteenth-century Frenchman derived his knowledge of the
past; it may indeed be doubted whether there was much explicit humanist
inspiration behind the historical and antiquarian erudition of John Leland
(d. 1552) or of Estienne Pasquier (d. 1615), who published the first book of
his *Recherches de la France* in 1560; and it was something of a chronologi-
cal accident that made the chronicler Edward Hall, to a great extent the
representative of an indigenous town-chronicle tradition, transmit to
other representatives of that tradition the views of the Italian Polydore
Vergil. In Spain, in Germany and elsewhere the chronicle was still viable
in the sixteenth century. Yet when this has been admitted, the importance
for historiography and for political speculation of humanism is consider-
able. The elevation of the prince made politics, the princely science, a
matter of absorbing interest; it was from history that the structure of
politics might be discerned; and from the models of Greek and Latin a
history could be written in which politics was given pride of place. Thus
the preoccupations which produced humanist writings on contemporary
or near-contemporary history were to have profounder results than those
which influenced (in ways already described) the rewriting of national

stories in a modern manner: in this sense Bruni was more appropriate as well as more fashionable than Biondo,[1] and the writings of what has been called the 'second Florentine school of historians' have an interest beyond the narrow subjects with which they dealt.

The 'second Florentine school' was Italian: Italian in language, Italian in interests and Italian in sophistication of style and sentiment. But what makes Niccolò Machiavelli (d. 1527) and Francesco Guicciardini (d. 1540) significant is the extraordinary relevance of their speculation to Europe as a whole. The *Prince* of Machiavelli, influential even in manuscript before its first complete publication in 1532, the *Discourses* and the *History of Florence* (published in 1531 and 1532) are thus prime documents in the history of political thought;[2] and so are Guicciardini's two histories, of Italy (first published 1561–7) and of Florence (not published till 1859). Viewed solely as histories, these works are fundamentally important. Machiavelli's Florentine history is far more modern than any humanist Latin history in its bold disregard for the chronicle tradition, its confident summary and analysis, its insistence on forces and movements rather than personalities. Guicciardini's originality as a historian is seen in the *Storia d'Italia*, meant for publication, rather than in the *Storia fiorentina*: it was a view of political history in terms larger than the provincialism which had in practice dominated both Italian and European historiography. The history of Florence is thus seen to be intelligible only in the context of Italian affairs as a whole, and diplomacy and war emerge as the links which inexorably bind state to state. Ironically, these works by men who had tried their hands at practical affairs were the product of their failure as politicians and were written in periods of exile or isolation. Yet that in itself was an event of some significance. The *otium* so much admired by humanists was not unwelcome, even to the Machiavelli who was consumed by his message, to the Guicciardini whose ambitions for himself and his family were equally oppressive. For both men the pen was a release. They turned to it only in part to convert others, and much more to clarify their own points of view: it is worthy of remark that so much of the writing of both men was only published posthumously. In the case of Guicciardini in particular one has the sense of an introspection deliberately guided and controlled, and emerging in a profound pessimism. The *Ricordi civili e politici*,[3] written for his own family and not for publica-

---

1 Cf. above, p. 405.
2 Cf. below, pp. 501 2.
3 Partial and unauthorised edition, 1576. The complicated history of the *Ricordi* is outlined by Mario Domandi in his translation in the Harper Torchbook edition (New York, 1965) with an admirable introduction by Nicolai Rubinstein. The numbers quoted are those in this edition, although the translation of the last quotation is based on the Italian edition of Canestrini (1857).

tion, is in some ways the most extraordinary work produced in the period we are here reviewing. History for Machiavelli could yield lessons: for Guicciardini all was relative, save only the human situation itself. 'Quanto è diversa la practica dalla teorica!' Looking back on his career as a papal official, Guicciardini confessed to a loathing of ecclesiastical ambition, greed and luxury which he admitted would have made a Lutheran of him had he not thought first of his career (no. C. 28); and his three ambitions were republican government in Florence, an Italy free of all barbarians, and a world free of 'the tyranny of these criminal priests' (no. B. 14). But he despaired of seeing this. Man who sees what is good does what is bad; plans are as like as not made only to be frustrated; the future is always uncertain. 'But yet one must not put oneself at the mercy of fortune like an animal, but as a man use one's reason. The wise man must be content to *have acted for the best even if it turns out for the worst, rather than by a* base design to have compassed a good end' (no. B. 160). De Sanctis (thinking of Aretino) wrote that sixteenth-century Italy died of laughing: Guicciardini suggests an opposite conclusion.

By the mid-years of the sixteenth century the victory of the vernaculars over Latin was assured, though outside Italy it was not yet an accomplished fact. What other general conclusions may be drawn from the above survey? The ubiquitous influence of Latin and the hardly less pervasive influence of Italian stand out as notable. The writers of Europe were schooled in Latin, they translated and emulated Latin and Italian authors. The good effects of this are sufficiently evident. It may be noted that with the good effects went certain others that were harmful. The dominant Latin and Italian models in verse injured as often as they helped native traditions; 'ink-horn' terms, at once learned and obscure, were more than all but the best writers could withstand – even Rabelais was compelled to list 'aucunes dictions plus obscures' contained in the *Quart Livre*. This led on to preciosity and euphuism, and encouraged a coterie spirit in vernacular writers analogous to that which disfigured humanists in Latin letters. Yet this was a small price to pay for an enrichment of vocabulary which in the sixteenth century in Spain, France, and England proceeded at an unprecedented speed, and for the diffusion of sentiments and forms which proved congenial and long lived. How else could Sanazzaro's arcadianism have become Spanish with Montemayor, English with Sidney? How else could the sonnet have revealed in all the main European literatures resources which could only be released by a disciplined and aristocratic form?

It is, however, in its prose that we may come to have a more certain judgment of the intellectual climate, and it seems fair to say that the prosaic was gaining at the expense of the poetical in the literary furniture of the period. This is seen not merely in the rarity of the great poet, nor in

the gradual dominance of values which relegated poetry to the theatre or
the study. The values to which sixteenth-century writers increasingly
attached importance were pragmatic: personal and public morality deter-
mined by rules which, however much lip-service was paid to the moral
philosophy of antiquity, were in fact the product of observation and
experience. It is this which makes it necessary to be reserved in regarding
the achievements in philosophy of the Pomponazzis or the Cajetans;
academic philosophy, materialist or Thomist, was more irrelevant than it
had ever been; it had (one might say) epic associations which made it out
of tune with a society which was growing ever more bourgeois in tone.
Machiavelli and Guicciardini in Italy, Rabelais in France, lead straight on
to Montaigne. The Bordeaux burgess turned laird was to digest in his
Essais the books discussed in this chapter and we can by reading him get a
measure of what the sixteenth century itself found valuable in its own
literature.

2. SCIENCE

In the history of science the sixteenth century is a period of changes in
ideas and methods slowly coming into being, not until the following
century accomplished and accepted. The science of this time is far richer in
medieval elements than in modern ones. Despite Renaissance and Refor-
mation, despite the wonders reported from the two Indies, despite indeed
the technical innovations of Copernicus and Vesalius, learned and
unlearned alike had a picture of the natural environment in which they
lived little modified from that of the fourteenth century. The imagery
drawn from this picture was no less appropriate to Shakespeare than to
Chaucer.

For science consists of the description and analysis of natural pheno-
mena on the one hand, and their explanation on the other. Explanation is
attained by referring that which seems complex and puzzling to that which
is taken as simple, evident and natural; and the pivotal points of medieval
scientific explanation remained unchallenged in the sixteenth century. In
physiology and medicine the Galenic doctrine of the four humours; in
ideas of matter and its mutable forms the Aristotelian conception of the
four elements; in astronomy the inevitability of perfectly circular motions;
in physics the dichotomy of violent and natural movements; these and
many other scientific principles seemed as beyond question as at earlier
times, as indispensable as the laws of inertia and the conservation of
energy to modern scientists in accounting for a great variety of natural
phenomena. Copernican and Vesalian modifications of description did
not transcend these primary canons of explanation, nor did fresh develop-
ment of the physical or intellectual operations of science seriously place

them in jeopardy. It was not until the following century that protests against Aristotelian logical methods and the mere citation of the authority of the ancients were accompanied by assertions of the supremacy of observation, experiment and mathematical demonstration as criteria of the validity of scientific theories.

At the opening of the sixteenth century – and largely throughout its course – the sources of scientific knowledge were in the first place the writings of classical antiquity, and in the second the products of the great creative period of medieval science in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. Introductory and general surveys of the sciences, such as the popular *Sphere* of Sacrobosco or the *Chirurgia* of Guy de Chauliac, were nearly all medieval compositions. For more advanced work in physics and cosmology, for example, the whole architecture and much of the substance was provided by Aristotle; in anatomy and physiology by Galen; in *materia medica* by Dioscorides; in astronomy by Ptolemy. Though the age of translation from Arabic into Latin had long passed, there was still a demand for the classics of Islamic science, especially the medical writings, before the Hellenists won their victory over the Arabists in the mid-century. Comparatively few of the scientific books printed before 1500 were of recent authorship, and of these few many were frankly designed as distillations of traditional learning. The first and probably the most successful textbook of the new century, the *Margarita Philosophica* of Gregor Reisch (1503), is of the same kind. It contains nothing that was not taught a century earlier; it reflects no new spirit of the age, no fresh attitude to the natural world. Avoiding most of the logical subtleties of medieval philosophers, ignoring the criticisms of Aristotelian mechanics voiced in the fourteenth century, it presented a somewhat dull résumé of the vivid intellectual experience of the middle ages.

It would be difficult to overestimate the debt owed by Renaissance science to the natural philosophers and medical writers of the middle ages. Contempt for the inelegance of medieval Latin and distrust of the Arabisms imported into the pure Hellenic tradition of science could not justify the repudiation of this debt. For the later middle ages had naturalised Greek science in western Europe, largely through the mediation of Islam. Where the Roman empire had signally failed, medieval Christendom had succeeded. And it had created in the university an institution for the perpetuation of classical learning, so that Paris, Padua and Oxford became the natural heirs of Athens and Alexandria. Four centuries of effort in translation, teaching and commentary, in analysing, criticising and comparing the ancient authors, had restored the fabric of civilisation broken by social disaster and the barbarian invasions.

Moreover, the middle ages had modified or added to the classical example of scientific enquiry in ways which, when further developed, were

to become highly significant for the progress of science in the sixteenth century and to contribute to the 'scientific revolution' of the seventeenth. In method, the medieval philosopher had laid greater stress upon the necessity for supporting general propositions by direct observation of and experiment upon particular phenomena. Application of this sound conception were limited but notable. Human dissection, virtually impossible in antiquity, was an ordinary practice of the great medical schools even if formalised into an ocular commentary upon Galen's texts. The elementary facts of magnetism had been elicited experimentally and the compass applied to navigation. In optics the phenomena of refraction had been carefully studied, and an explanation of the formation of the rainbow greatly superior to Aristotle's and partly resting on direct experiment, was put forward. The middle ages too had seen important advances in the technical arts which yielded such innovations as the mechanical clock and the glass lens, and these played a vital part in permitting the construction of the tools of observational and experimental science in early modern times.

Equally remarkable is the fact that the conventional beginning of modern history does not coincide with the genesis of some of the strategic conceptions of the scientific revolution, but rather cuts arbitrarily across their pre-history. The astronomical innovations of Copernicus followed medieval explorations of the Ptolemaic celestial geometry and medieval discussions of the possibility of the earth's movement; that they were mathematically influenced by the Islamic astronomy of the fourteenth century is clear. The chemical theory of matter and its changes lingering on through a series of vicissitudes to the time of Lavoisier in the late eighteenth century was of medieval origin, stemming from Islamic alchemists. Most interesting of all was the evolution of the idea of impetus,[1] in direct opposition to the dynamical theories of Aristotle, from ancient roots to the status of a comprehensive mechanical theory in the fourteenth century. With little further revision the same theory was taught by the commentators on Aristotle's *Physics* down to the beginning of the seventeenth century; it was from the intellectual springboard of impetus mechanics, not directly from the ideas of Aristotle, that Galileo proceeded to lay the foundations of the modern science. Traces of the medieval view are firmly imprinted on his exposition of his discoveries.

In the fifteenth century, as the Renaissance became more vigorous in Italy, philosophy and science diverged from the course which during the previous three centuries had carried them from translation to original achievement. A chief agent of this change was the revival of Greek learning and, as a particular aspect of this, a strong interest in the

1 Below, p. 438.

philosophies of Plato and the Neoplatonists. Scholasticism was long to remain firmly entrenched in the universities – though even here fresh winds blew – but elsewhere readers turned eagerly to the new delights of literature and the charms of metaphysical speculation. The intense medieval analyses of the logic behind the explanation of natural phenomena, especially the abstruse arguments of the Calculator (Richard Swineshead), were laid aside. To the extent that the spirit of the Renaissance was one of immersion in, and close imitation of, the culture of antiquity it must appear inimical to intellectual originality. But that there were more facets to the Renaissance mentality than this the boundless curiosity, experimental outlook and varied creativity of Leonardo da Vinci assure us. While the Renaissance philosopher and physician, mathematician and magus, trod eagerly in the footsteps of Greek masters (none more so than Copernicus and Vesalius) they were making innovations at every step.

Opinions on Renaissance science differ widely, yet significant cross-connections between science and the general movements of the Renaissance are quite clear. Of these the influence of the invention of printing is the most obvious.[1] The labour involved in copying manuscripts had bestowed an artificial eminence on a few chosen texts, and limited the diffusion of new work. By the mid sixteenth century even obscure scholars could possess a relatively large collection of books on a single topic. A Cambridge physician who died in 1551 had a library of more than 200 volumes, including over forty on medicine – a Greek Galen and many other of the most famous works by classical, medieval and contemporary authors. Such an assembly of authorities could only rarely have been found outside monastic libraries before the introduction of printing, which thus permitted comparisons of observations and opinions scarcely possible in the middle ages. Similarly it is inconceivable that without the agency of the printed book the new navigational science of the Portuguese would have spread so rapidly, or that the works of Vesalius and Paracelsus (*c.* 1493–1541) would have aroused such wide controversy. Somewhat earlier the effect of the press on the diffusion of polemical scientific writing is well illustrated in the vast literature provoked by the appearance of an apparently new disease, syphilis, at the end of the fifteenth century.

The production of the first scientific and medical books was relatively large. According to Kleb's bibliography (1938) there were more than 3,000 editions of 1,044 titles by about 650 authors printed before 1500. A high proportion, inevitably, came from the Italian presses. Although for two centuries to come most scientific and medical works were to be written in Latin, a few of the most popular medieval texts (the *De proprietatibus*

1 For this, cf. vol. 1.

rerum of Bartholomew the Englishman, for example, Mandeville's *Travels*, and such books as Caxton's *Gouvernayle of helthe*) were already available in the vernacular languages. Many more works of wide interest were so published in the sixteenth century, including treatises on medicine and surgery, on navigation, and on other branches of applied mathematics.

In science the communication of visual images was hardly less important than communication by the printed word, and just as letterpress printing stimulated the desire to recover the best and purest form of the knowledge of antiquity, correcting generations of scribes' and translators' errors (in that it offered a means of reduplicating copies free from them) so printing from woodcut blocks, and later the copper-plate, offered a way of multiplying illustrations free from mistakes and encouraged the idea of illustrating texts by means of appropriate figures. A confrontation of pictures in medieval bestiaries and herbals, and the rarer medieval anatomical drawings, with analogous woodcuts of the sixteenth century makes the difference striking. A drawing is harder to copy accurately than a piece of Latin prose, and there had been far fewer skilled draughtsmen than scribes. Taking advantage of the new technique, the first printed and illustrated anatomies and herbals appeared in the last decade of the fifteenth century. The next fifty years saw an enormous improvement in their standard.

The woodcut contributed greatly to the advance of surgical teaching, of botanical knowledge, and of anatomy. But to make its use fully effective the man of science had to collaborate with the artist, and here the flowering of the arts of drawing and painting in the Renaissance was of profound service to science. Setting aside obvious qualifications, medieval art was symbolic and idealist; Renaissance art was representational and realist. It had mastered perspective – the technique of rendering three-dimensional structures on a plane surface. The artist could represent to the reader, almost as to the eye of the actual beholder, the spatial relations of the parts of a machine or the organs of the human body, whereas the middle ages had conspicuously failed to conquer the graphic approach to scientific and technical matter. Artists delighted in the accurate delineation of flower and leaf, the strain of muscles, the reflection and refraction of light. In search of a deeper understanding of the animal and human organism, and to enhance the realism of their work, painters like Michelangelo and Leonardo turned to dissection, developing techniques that were to be exploited in the superb figures of Vesalius's *De humani corporis fabrica* (1543), attributed to a member of Titian's school. In this small area of biological illustration, probably, communication between science and the art of the Italian Renaissance was closest.

Yet the sheer scholarship of the Renaissance also had its powerful

effect. This was to direct attention to three chief tasks: the recovery of lost or neglected texts and knowledge; the search for Greek manuscripts to replace Arabic–Latin medieval versions; and the careful study and collation of the best available manuscripts to restore the original work. Such scholarship was generously devoted to the scientific works of antiquity. Much that was unknown to the middle ages became familiar in the sixteenth century. Lucretius's *De natura rerum*, discovered in 1417 by Poggio Bracciolini, was printed many times. By far the most elaborate, if also the latest, statement of Greek atomistic speculation – which had been known to the middle ages almost entirely from Aristotle's hostile references – the influence of Lucretius's poem is reflected in the mechanistic corpuscularian ideas of matter of the seventeenth century. Celsus's *De re medica*, a Roman compilation of Greek medical science almost unknown till 1426, aroused deep interest and was printed even before the works of Hippocrates and Galen. On mathematics and mechanical science the revelation of the Greek Archimedes (1544) had a revolutionary impact;[1] in fact the modern history of mathematics might be dated from this event. New texts, however, did not altogether replace more familiar authorities, nor were medieval treatises based on the Islamic tradition immediately rejected by the generality, though dubiously regarded by Greek scholars. Algebra flourished as healthily as geometry in the sixteenth century without fresh inspiration from Greek sources, for this branch of mathematics was an Islamic creation. And if anatomy was purged of its Arabic terms in favour of Greek equivalents, chemistry has retained its *alcohol* and *alkali* and much other philological evidence of its Islamic descent. Since medieval European science was almost uniquely Hellenistic in its ultimate origins, and since the sixteenth century never made a total rejection of the Arabic intermediary, the latitude for displacement under the influence of Renaissance classicism was not so very great. Controversies over modifications to Ptolemaic numerical constants introduced by 'Arabic' astronomers, or the 'Arabic' technique of venesection as opposed to the Greek, concerned matters of detail rather than fundamental ideas and methods. Nor were Renaissance experts on such matters necessarily more ingenious or invariably better informed than their medieval precursors.

The scholar-scientists of the early sixteenth century were most markedly active in medicine and natural history. No other author was so carefully or frequently edited as Galen. English scholars participated in the preparation of the Aldine edition (1525), and Vesalius (who had pre-

---

1 Certain works of Archimedes had been translated from Greek into Latin by Willem van Moerbeke in the second half of the thirteenth century. A new Latin translation of the Greek text was published in 1558.

viously republished Johann Günther's *Institutiones anatomices secundum Galeni sententiam*) had a hand in the Giunta edition of 1541–2. The herbal, as developed by such naturalists as Valerius Cordus (1515–44) and Pietro Mattiolo (1500–77), was based firmly on the Greek text of the *Materia medica* of Dioscorides, supplemented as was required to fit the rather different flora of western Europe. The medieval herbalist tradition, still strong in the first printed versions (as late as the English *Grete Herball* of 1526), was completely set aside. The encyclopaedic naturalists Conrad Gesner (1516–65) and Ulissi Aldrovandi (1522–1605) took the practice of quoting from classical authors to its limit, though they had other and greater merits.

    The learned Hellenism of the Renaissance was by itself incapable of inspiring originality of mind, if by that is meant a willingness to criticise the accepted canons of scientific explanation, to pursue untried methods of enquiry, and really to examine the facts. To doubt the essential correctness of Aristotle, Galen and Ptolemy was still in the sixteenth and early seventeenth centuries to risk denunciation as a blockhead, or worse treatment. The men of the Renaissance did not criticise medieval philosophers for adopting and teaching the Greek view of nature, but for departing from it, for elaborating minutely upon a message that was hopelessly corrupt. Scholasticism, not the Aristotelian philosophy upon which scholasticism had been founded, was the target of such thinkers as Erasmus and Pomponazzi. If the writers of the middle ages, by their regard for 'Arabs' as well as Greeks, by their critical study and development of the science and medicine inherited from the past and by their interest in technical progress, show some signs of recognising that knowledge and civilisation may advance through time, the Renaissance turned back afresh towards classical antiquity, where the summit of every kind of human achievement was to be found. True iconoclasts, like Paracelsus, were as anti-Greek as they were anti-medieval.

    A new view of the historic past sprang from the work in the 1470s of Marsilio Ficino as translator of Plato and exponent of Neoplatonism.[1] The middle ages had adopted Aristotle's view of himself as the reformer of Greek philosophy. Everything in Greek philosophy after Aristotle lying outside the Christian tradition had been ignored. Platonism proposed a different historiography: the true line of philosophy had begun with the ancient sages of Egypt and Phoenicia (of all of whom a single name, that of Mochus – perhaps Moses – survived). They had instructed Pythagoras and Plato, from whose schools true wisdom had been passed to Iamblichos and Porphyry in Imperial times. This isoteric wisdom of the *prisci theologi* had no relation to the academic formalism of Aristotle on the one

---

1 Cf., vol. I.

hand, or to the researches of mathematicians in the Archimedean or Ptolemaic traditions on the other. To some scholars Platonism brought an inner understanding of the meaning, harmony and divine purpose of the universe, readily reconciled with Christian teaching. To others, unmindful of Augustine's condemnation, the active, magical version of Neoplatonism made a stronger appeal. For this group Hermes Trismegistus became of all the *prisci* the great master of the control of matter by the instructed mind, of which one example was the alchemist's supposed transmutation of metals. Ficino himself tried to compel Nature to obedience by the power of occult phrases. The ramifications of hermetic wisdom into astrology and alchemy, spiritualism and necromancy, cabalistics and chiromancy form no small elements in both the learned and the popular printing of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. On the other hand the former group, inspired by the esoteric writings of the Neoplatonists and represented by Agostino Steuco (1497–1548) who declared that 'the aim of philosophy is the knowledge of God, and as it were the actual beholding of Him' (*De perenni philosophia,* 1540),[1] contributed to the development of both mystical movements in religion and the natural religion professed by scientists.

While Florence was the focus of Platonism, Padua was the seat of a revivified Aristotelian philosophy strongly allied to medicine. The chief philosopher in this school was Jacopo Zabarella (1533–89), a native of Padua and a teacher there from 1564. Departing from the mathematical and physical preoccupations dominating Aristotelian natural philosophy during the middle ages, Zabarella took more interest in the organic world; for this reason among others his direct influence upon Galileo is doubtful. His most effective scientific legacy rested in the biological writings of Fabricius ab Aquapendente and William Harvey. Zabarella is nevertheless regarded as one of the great logical exponents of the experimental method, a generation before Francis Bacon.

In what sense is it justifiable to speak of a 'scientific Renaissance'? From what has been said, it is apparent that there was no sharp break in the continuity of scientific thought, no outright rejection of the past such as was to occur later. There was, however, a more judicious attempt to understand, rather than merely recite, its legacy. With anatomists and botanists this might involve the comparison of a text with the results of patient visual examination; or (as Copernicus said) it might take the form of assuming the same liberty to devise and test fresh hypotheses that the ancients had allowed themselves. Here the greater range of Renaissance classical knowledge exerted its effect. Antiquity had not spoken with a single voice, and it is noticeable that, besides Plato, the Pythagoreans and

1 C. B. Schmitt in *Journal of the History of Ideas*, 27 (1966), 520.

Archimedes are mentioned more frequently and favourably in the six-
teenth century than formerly. With the attempt to understand literally
what ancient science had really meant, strengthened by the humanist
impulse and a greater interest in nature as actually seen rather than
imagined, there disappeared much of the medieval accretion of verbal
gymnastics, religious symbolism and plain fable.

Practical activity and the movement from the philosopher's study to
field and workshop are discernible in every aspect of sixteenth-century
science. Natural historians, proclaiming the beauties of nature as well as
its moral lessons, travelled widely and sought eagerly for exotic species.
Paracelsus enlarged on the practical medical skills of barbers, bath-
keepers and wise women. Agricola (1490–1555) and Biringuccio (c. 1540)
described their experience of the mines, metalworks, and infant chemical
industry, assembling storehouses of new facts and observations. Geo-
metry was applied to cartography and navigation, gunnery and survey,
dialling and perspective drawing; such applications aroused new mathe-
matical difficulties which were in turn surmounted. Much attention was
paid, with good results, to methods of measurement and observation.
Even the greatest scientific feats of the time were essentially practical;
Vesalius transformed anatomy by dissection and illustration; Copernicus
put a strange hypothesis into an exact mathematical form. And if the
fundamental terms of scientific explanation remained little modified, there
was a decisive improvement in the statement of ascertainable facts. By
1600 the world was better mapped, the stars in the heavens were more
precisely charted, the structure of the human body was more exactly
delineated, the operations of chemistry were more plainly described, than
they had ever been before. It was in this respect an achievement solid
rather than brilliant; its full intellectual fruition was delayed; yet it
prepared the way for conceptions totally different from any entertained in
antiquity, the middle ages, or the Renaissance age itself.

There were three notable trends in mathematics: towards an extension
of the more complex Greek methods in geometry, as studied in the works
of Archimedes and Apollonius; towards a greater mastery of algebraic
equations; and towards the development of popular teaching, with a
strong practical bias. As the advances in the more abstruse branches of
mathematics had but a negligible effect on natural science they need not be
considered in detail. The *Summa de Arithmetica, Geometria, Proportioni*
... (1494) of Luca Pacioli represented the height of achievement of the
previous age, and the basic knowledge of the next. Pacioli grounded
himself upon Al-Khwarizmi (d. 850), Fibonacci (1202) and other old
authors; even the works of such great algebraists as Girolamo Cardano
(1501–76) and Niccolo Tartaglia (1500–57) precede the crucial event, the
rediscovery of Diophantos, which had a profound effect upon the *Algebra*

of Raffaello Bombelli (1526–72). Tartaglia was in intent, at least, a true mathematical humanist; he rendered Euclid into Italian and (in the same year, 1543) printed the first Latin works of Archimedes – but these were the medieval translations made by Willem van Moerbeke. Such efforts were quite outclassed by the scholarship of the Sicilian Francesco Mauro-lico (1494–1575), so much of whose work (for example, editions of Apollonios and Archimedes) unfortunately remained long unpublished. The way was left clear for the editions and commentaries of Federigo Commandino (1509–75), who became under the patronage of the Farnese family the grand restorer of Greek mathematics.

The fact that Commandino, Maurolico and Regiomontanus all concentrated upon reviving the same authors indicates that the programme necessary for the restoration of mathematics was a fairly obvious and agreed one ... for all of them Archimedes was the most important, followed by Euclid, Apollonius and Diophantus.[1]

The recovery of Greek mathematical skills had profound effects upon all branches of applied mathematics, including optics, mechanics and astronomy, but the coalescence of Renaissance mathematics and natural philosophy was to begin only in the second half of the century. Meanwhile there was much activity at the popular level where mathematicians still suffered, or exploited, lingering traces of association with the forbidden arts. Increasing complexity in the management of banking, finance and exchanges on the one hand, and in the navigation of ships, the direction of engineering projects and the conduct of wars on the other, offered many opportunities for the exploitation of the humbler kinds of proficiency in calculation. Particularly was this the case in a relatively backward country such as England, where the first arithmetic – Cuthbert Tunstall's *De arte supputandi* – was not printed until 1522. It was followed by four vernacular books by Robert Recorde, including the significantly named *Ground of Artes* (1540–2),[2] *The Castle of Knowledge* (1551) – the first English work on astronomy to mention Copernicus – and *The Whetstone of Witte* (1557), which introduced algebra. For practical geometry, taught in the Digges' English treatises on mensuration and survey such as *Pantometria* (1571), the basis was provided by Euclid's theorems which were conveniently summarised in most of the handbooks. An English translation of Euclid's *Elements* (with a preface by John Dee) was published in 1570; it had appeared earlier in other languages. The use of instruments for measuring heights and distances was widely taught.

1 P. L. Rose, *The Italian Renaissance of Mathematics* (1975), p. 214.
2 No copy of the first edition is known.

Works of the same kind as those written in England were also printed in most of the continental languages.

Two specialised applications of geometry, both closely linked with astronomy, received much attention and were greatly developed. The art of constructing sundials was subjected to many curious refinements after the use of portable instruments had been simplified in the fifteenth century by adding a small magnetic compass so that the dial could be easily aligned on a north–south line. In principle, the hour of the day can be determined either by measuring the sun's displacement in azimuth from the meridian, or by measuring its height above the horizon, or by a combination of these measurements. In the two latter cases the instrument must provide some means of allowing for the seasonal variations in the sun's declination. It might also be desired to make the dial adjustable for use in more than one latitude. The geometrical problems involved in putting these principles into practice, as also in constructing fixed dials for a great variety of different situations and purposes, were examined in a large number of treatises, of which perhaps the most complete was Christopher Clavius's *Gnomonices* (1581). The dependence of applied conics and projective geometry upon the revived Greek tradition is obvious.

Navigation was a more serious business. Throughout antiquity and down to the fifteenth century ships had been guided from port to port by the sailor's familiarity with prevailing winds, the sea-bottom, and suitable landmarks. In addition the positions of the sun and stars indicated roughly the direction of the ship's course. With the adoption of the magnetic compass in the thirteenth century a better estimation of direction became possible, but it did not assist the navigator to fix his position. Similar methods were employed in the coastal navigation of the sixteenth century and many textbooks on pilotage were printed, teaching for example the way to determine the state of the tide at a given port, and the 'Regiment of the North Star'. But the skill and memory of master-mariners was inadequate for the task of sailing southwards and westwards in the Atlantic or crossing the Indian Ocean. In oceanic navigation the ship might be out of sight of land for months; the navigator had to have new means of fixing his position, and charts on which positions could be plotted. The problem was partially solved in the fifteenth century by recourse to astronomy and geometry. Latitude was found by taking the height of the noon sun (with due allowance for the changing declination) or of the Pole. Longitude had to be more crudely reckoned from the ship's course, with an estimate of the distance sailed on each bearing. The chart then revealed the approach of the vessel to its objective. Africa, for instance, could be circumnavigated by sailing first west, then due south

until the latitude of the Cape of Good Hope was reached, then 'running down the latitude' to the Cape.

Oceanic navigation based on the combination of the log and the chart, the magnetic compass and celestial observations, the one major technique of the age wholly derived from natural science and mathematics, was a Portuguese innovation. It required, besides some understanding of elementary scientific principles, skill in the manipulation of instruments and in the use of tables. It spread gradually to Spain and then to the rest of Europe, for mastery of it was indispensable to those who would enter the East Indian or American trades. The most influential exposition of this new science of navigation was Martin Cortés's *Arte de Navegar* (1556), which was translated into English by Richard Eden in 1561. Though its essence remained unchanged, improvements to the instruments and tables required were steadily introduced. Theoretically sound methods of measuring changes in longitude were also brought forward, but none was practicable for more than two centuries. Precursors of William Gilbert's great treatise *De Magnete* (1600) investigated the behaviour of the earth as a magnetic body, which proved more complicated than was at first realised. The displacement of the magnetic from the geographic pole was recognised and allowed for, but the expectation that the variation of the compass-needle from true north would prove to follow a simple regular law over the whole surface of the globe was falsified. By the end of the century the possibility of improving navigation by further scientific research was widely acknowledged, while a host of advisers offered to teach the unlettered seaman how to mend his ways.

Geography and cartography, closely linked with navigation, advanced rapidly through the age of exploration initiated during the last decade of the fifteenth century. Another, not wholly harmonious, influence in this period was that of Ptolemy, whose *Cosmographia* was first printed in 1475. Renaissance attempts to redraw the map of the world according to his directions did not pay sufficient heed to medieval additions to knowledge. When it was realised that the islands of Columbus's discovery were not part of Asia, when the extent of the Pacific Ocean was revealed, and when explorers' reports were analysed, Ptolemaic geography was finally outmoded. Reasonably accurate maps of the explored regions of the globe appeared in the second half of the sixteenth century through the labours of Ortelius and Mercator. Careful mapping of restricted localities in Europe began in the late fifteenth century, and by 1600 the application of survey by triangulation to map-making was well understood. No attempt was yet made, however, to measure accurately the length of a geographical degree (and hence ascertain the size of the earth). Methods of projection, of special importance for marine charts, were investigated; here the great

step forward was the introduction of Mercator's projection (1569) since this yields a map particularly suitable for navigational purposes. Its mathematical basis was first fully explained by Edward Wright (1599).

The most striking and extensive use of geometry lay in calculating and predicting the motions of the heavenly bodies. This was not merely a question of abstract scientific interest, nor of practical concern only to navigators, for most Europeans still believed that the stars had a major share in their destinies. Copernicus himself wrote nothing about astrology; but some of his followers were careful to point out that the movement of the earth rather than the sun did not remove the basis from the traditional calculation of horoscopes. Astronomical knowledge was regarded as a principal prop of medical practice until well after the end of the sixteenth century. It was normal to view signs and portents – freaks of weather, unnatural births, comets – as indications of misfortune and divine displeasure. Hundreds of tracts, of which few were astronomical in content, were brought forth by the new star of 1572. The future conjunctions and oppositions of the planets and the occurrence of eclipses were thus not of interest to a few astronomers alone but to the multitudes who read the popular almanacs.

The problem faced by Ptolemy in the second century A.D. had been to construct a pattern of regular geometrical motions representing the observed movements of the heavenly bodies about the apparently fixed platform of the earth. If, as Ptolemy concluded, the earth formed the stable centre of the universe, then the sun, moon, planets and fixed stars revolved around it once in a day, making a westerly progress. But in addition, sun, moon and planets were seen to make a contrary easterly movement, at varying speeds, against the background of the stars. Further, although Ptolemy believed, as everyone believed before Kepler, that all these movements were perfectly circular, it was apparent from observations that only the sun and stars moved in circles with the earth, the pivot of the universe, at their centre. Ptolemy was able to account for the observed positions of the planets and the moon only by supposing that they moved in circles (epicycles) about a centre which itself moved in another perfect circle (deferent) about the earth. After ascribing suitable values to the periods of these various motions and to the radii of the numerous circles, computed from observations, he was enabled with the aid of various subsidiary hypotheses to construct a geometrical figure of the universe from which astronomical tables could be calculated and predictions of future events made. His geometry, however, did not follow a completely uniform pattern and he did not aim to create a rigid system capable of being reduced to a few simple principles.

Nor did Ptolemy explain celestial phenomena in physical terms – indeed an exact physical interpretation of his geometrical figures was impossible.

This was found rather in the works of Aristotle, describing a group of homocentric spheres bearing the heavenly bodies in their revolutions, the different natures of earthly and heavenly matter, the cause and purpose of the phenomena, and so forth. Aristotle therefore was studied by natural philosophers and Ptolemy by mathematicians who were often, but not invariably, also assiduous in continuing the tradition of practical observing.

Nicholas Copernicus was the last great exponent of the traditional techniques of mathematical astronomy, though he used them to demonstrate a totally different assumption – that the earth itself was in motion, a planet circling the sun. The idea that the seemingly westerly revolution of the whole heaven is an illusion resulting from a real rotation of the earth on its axis had been familiar enough in the middle ages without winning conviction. The idea that the five planets might have the sun rather than the earth as the centres of their orbits had been another natural alternative to the Ptolemaic scheme. But none since Aristarchos had taught that both sun and stars were fixed, and the earth a body rotating on its axis while at the same time revolving in an orbit round the central sun. The great virtue of this heliostatic system was that besides relieving the universe of the need to rotate once in each day it made possible the omission from the geometrical representation of each planet's motion that element which could now be attributed to the actual annual revolution of the earth. Thus Copernicus could claim with some justice that his system was mathematically more consistent and harmonious than Ptolemy's.

It was on considerations of this kind, strictly transcending scientific evaluation, that he was forced to rely in asserting that the heliostatic hypothesis was not merely mathematically feasible, but true in fact. For Copernicus's celestial geometry is no more than Ptolemy's inverted and put to different uses. He retained the spheres, deferential and epicyclic, of his illustrious predecessor. In computing the periods of revolution and the radii of his various circles he relied upon the observations Ptolemy had quoted, supplemented by some taken from Islamic astronomers and a lesser number of his own. He also borrowed from Islam – though the transmission is obscure – some technical devices unknown to Ptolemy. In consequence, despite the fundamental difference in hypothesis, the Copernican and Ptolemaic geometries are interchangeable, that is, the relative positions of the heavenly bodies as seen from the earth are the same at any moment, no matter which system is used to calculate them. There could be no observational test of an astronomical kind to distinguish between them, nor could the heliostatic system yield more accurate predictions than the geostatic. Copernicus's first aim was to show that the heliostatic hypothesis was not just mathematically absurd, that it need not be less accurate than its rival. To do more was beyond his scientific competence.

Yet inevitably he sought to do more, to justify his conviction that the established view was wrong. In so doing he turned to questions of probability rather than fact. Was it more likely that the whole heaven would rotate, or the earth only? Was it more likely that the little earth or the great fiery sun would occupy the central position in the spheres, illuminating and governing the whole? Was it more natural to believe that the fixed stars were comparatively near – not much more distant than Saturn – or that they were so vastly remote that they gave no hint of the earth's annual revolution? Was the earth a unique body, or of the same kind as the planets and therefore capable of a similar motion?

In dealing with these questions Copernicus entered a realm of thought different from that of the mathematical astronomer. In proportion as he sought to show that the heliostatic system was a true representation of the phenomena and not a mere calculating device, he moved from the territory of Ptolemy into that of Aristotle. For if the earth circled about the sun the Aristotelian explanations of physical phenomena no longer made sense. It could no longer be true that heavy bodies fell down towards their natural place at the centre of the universe, if that did not coincide with the centre of the earth, or that light bodies rose from the centre towards the regions of air and fire. If the globe rotated and revolved, it could no longer be true that the heavy elements, earth and water, moved naturally only in a straight line downwards. Moreover (it had been urged long before), if the earth moved how could the stability of objects and buildings on its surface be maintained? Every explanation in physics and mechanics assumed that the earth was fixed in a central position, and each suggested that it was Copernicus, not Ptolemy, who was in error. But Copernicus was a mathematician, not a physicist nor a philosopher; he had neither the wish nor the talent to effect the profound change of view required to give a physical meaning to the heliostatic hypothesis. Certainly he proposed a few modifications to Aristotelian conceptions, suggesting for example that circular motion was natural and proper to all spherical bodies like the earth and moon, but he left the main difficulties unresolved. Thus he condemned himself in the eyes of most contemporaries as one who would sacrifice all sound scientific thinking for the sake of mathematical elegancies.

Their attitude was not merely obscurantist or prejudiced. For, if there were serious discrepancies in the middle ages between the mathematical–astronomical view of the cosmos and the natural-philosophical view, Copernicus had enlarged rather than reduced them. Aristotelian physics and the heliostatic hypothesis were mutually contradictory, though Copernicus gave allegiance to both; it is not surprising that few followed his lead, the majority preferring safer, traditional opinions. They saw, justly, that if Copernicus was right Aristotle was wrong; and that if the

Physics was rejected, a vacuity of thought took its place. Not until Galileo in 1632 sketched the outlines of a new natural philosophy, consistent with the idea of a moving earth, was the dichotomy overcome and from this time the heliostatic system began to gain adherents rapidly.

There was indeed almost as much discussion of the 'Copernican reform' of astronomy before the publication of *De revolutionibus orbium coelestium* in 1543 as in the forty years after that event. Copernicus was a respected astronomer, having worked for some years in Italy, and rumours of his great work were abroad twenty years before its printing. His *Commentariolus*, a first sketch of the new astronomy, seems to have had some circulation in manuscript and there is a record of Copernicus's ideas being explained to Clement VII in 1533. Nothing indicates that the heliostatic theory was at this time stifled by clerical hostility or that the learned world (with a few exceptions) was other than indifferent to it. The position became less favourable to the Copernicans towards the end of the century. So long as the stars were imagined to be borne round by a sphere the universe could be thought indefinitely large in comparison with the earth, yet of a finite size. If the earth moved and the sun and stars were fixed, however, it was possible to conceive that there was no definite boundary to the universe, that starry space receded infinitely far from the sun on all sides, even the nearest star being necessarily almost unthinkably remote. This idea was embraced by the English mathematician Thomas Digges (d. 1595). But there was nothing very new in supposing that space was limitless: Nicole Oresme in the fourteenth century had discussed (and dismissed) the idea that there might be other universes beyond our own, of which we know nothing. Speculation of this kind, on the possible plurality of worlds and the existence of souls in them, had been considered philosophically absurd and theologically dangerous long before it was taken up by Giordano Bruno at the end of the sixteenth century. The condemnation of Bruno and his burning in 1600 created a notorious scandal in Protestant eyes; it also had the effect of directing Catholic opinion firmly against Copernicanism so that the course of events then begun led on to the still more famous trial of Galileo. Astronomical discussion was embittered by its confusion with theological issues; that this happened was not, however, a necessary consequence of Copernicus's innovations.

First steps towards greater accuracy in astronomy, based on improvements in observation, had been taken by Peurbach and Regiomontanus in the second half of the fifteenth century. Then the task of improving astronomical instruments and compiling a more accurate catalogue of star-places was taken up by Wilhelm IV (1532–92), future landgrave of Hesse, patron of the instrument-maker Joost Bürgi. Kassel, which soon after mid-century became the main centre of scientific technical skill in

Europe, was in turn displaced when Tycho Brahe (1546–1601) created his observatory on the island of Hven, in the Danish Sound, during the last twenty years of the sixteenth century. Tycho was to be the first great observer of modern times, and, though always opposed to the system of Copernicus, he was an innovator in ideas about the heavens also.[1]

In the sixteenth-century treatment of physics there was little change from the medieval pattern except that, under the influence of Archimedes, mechanics stood out more clearly as a distinct, mathematical branch of science. Aristotelian explanations – which essentially linked the physical properties of bodies with those of the four elements (earth, water, air and fire) of which they were thought to be composed, and with the four qualities (dryness, wetness, coldness, heat) associated with the elements – were still accepted. Discussion of the 'latitude of forms' (that is, the estimation of the degree of a quality possessed by a body) in the medieval manner continued. Medieval modifications to the Aristotelian theory of motion arising from the concept of impetus[2] were also taught without important alteration. Although to humanists like Erasmus and Vives the language of the medieval theory of motion seemed quaint and ridiculous, the discussion of 'uniform' and 'uniformly difform' motion had an important contribution to make. Domingo da Soto of Salamanca (1494–1560) was the first philosopher to affirm, in 1545, that the descent of heavy bodies is uniformly accelerated, or 'uniformly difform'; in this class of motion, as Nicole Oresme and others before him had demonstrated in the fourteenth century, the distance traversed by the mover in a given time is equal to that traversed, in the same time, by another body moving uniformly with the same speed as that reached by the falling body at the mid-point, in time, of its accelerating descent. The same theorem was important to Galileo later.

Foreshadowing Galileo's later study of ballistics were two books by Niccolo Tartaglia, *La Nova Scientia* (1537) and *Quesiti et inventioni diverse* (1546). Tartaglia attempted to define the trajectory of a projectile in an asymmetric curve, and asserted that its greatest range was attained at an angle of projection of 45°. Writers on statics also, notably Guido Ubaldo del Monte (1545–1607), a patron of Galileo, prepared the way for his investigations in this field.

Even more remarkable in anticipating some of Galileo's earliest ideas in

1 Cf. *New Cambridge Modern History*, vol. III, pp. 462–5.
2 Essentially, that the action of being moved by some agency (such as muscular force, or the natural tendency of heavy bodies to descend) conferred upon a heavy body an 'impressed virtue' or 'impetus' to continue in motion. This impetus was the cause of the residual motion of such bodies after the action of the moving agent ceased, and of the acceleration of freely falling bodies. Aristotle's explanation of these movements is very obscure and unsatisfactory.

mechanics was Giovanni Battista Benedetti (1530–90), who in 1553 published a refutation of Aristotle's doctrine that the speed of fall of bodies is proportional to their weights. Adapting the principles of Archimedean hydrostatics, Benedetti argued that a heavy body is buoyed up by the medium through which it falls; accordingly, different weights of the same material will fall at the same speed, while the same weights of different materials will fall at different speeds. To demonstrate this he employed a 'thought-experiment' later improved by Galileo. Benedetti also showed some understanding of hydrostatic pressure, and knew that a weight released from rapid circular motion flies off along the tangent in a straight line. Curiously, his empirical approach to musical theory was also that preferred by Galileo's father, Vincenzio.

Leaving aside the special case of fortification and the literary descriptions of machines (some real, many fanciful) in Georg Agricola's *De re metallica* (1556), Jacques Besson's *Theatre des instrumens mathematiques et machines* (*c.* 1570) and Agostino Ramelli's *Le diverse et artificiose machine* (1588), there was little progress in the attempt to unite scientific or mathematical principles with engineering, in the century between Leonardo da Vinci and the time of Galileo and Stevin. Leonardo's manuscripts were certainly plagiarised during the sixteenth century, but to no great effect; rather, as always, mechanical ingenuity turned up in unexpected places: the universal joint is ascribed to the philosopher Cardano, the stocking-frame was invented by a country parson, William Lee. Nothing equal to Leonardo's study, both practical and theoretical, of hydraulics and hydraulic engineering is to be found in the sixteenth century either. However, Leonardo's mitre-gate pound-lock did spread from the Milanese canal-system to other Italian canals (Bologna, 1548), to France (River Cher, 1550), to Brandenburg (1548), and to England (1564–7).

Meanwhile, Leonardo's investigations of the eye, optics and perspective remained equally uninfluential, as did the very considerable achievements of such medieval scholars as Robert Grosseteste, Roger Bacon and Theoderic of Freyburg. One of the greatest of all these texts, the *Optics* of ibn al-Haitham, was printed at Basel in 1572 for the first time, together with the *Perspectiva* of Witelo (which had been printed before at Nuremberg in 1535 and 1551). The most popular of all medieval works on these topics, the *Perspectiva communis* of Roger Pecham, had been printed long before (1482) at Milan, and frequently thereafter. The correct elements in the medieval account of the rainbow were, it seems, virtually forgotten so that, down to the time of Descartes, ideas of light and colour were derived from Aristotle and Islamic sources. Late in the sixteenth century, however, a major step forward was taken when Felix Plater, professor of medicine at Basel, affirmed (1583) that the seat of visual perception is the

retina at the bottom of the eye, connected to the brain by the optic nerve. But understanding of the eye as an optical instrument matured only with the clarification effected by Kepler (1604).

A few years later Kepler was to invent the second or astronomical telescope, a type of instrument often prefigured in the sixteenth century, perhaps as far back as the 1560s. The convex and concave lenses of spectacles had for some time been as familiar as the convex and concave mirrors of the ancients; the trick was to combine such elements to form a clear, enlarged image of distant objects. Many claimed success, most speciously Giovanbaptista Porta of Naples in his optical writings, also the Englishmen Thomas Digges (on behalf of his father, Leonard) and William Bourne. But it is virtually certain that no telescope even of the feeblest powers was constructed before 1608, in Holland.

The art of drawing in perspective was another branch of applied mathematics, allied to optics, that was much cultivated in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. Much attention has been devoted to its treatment by Leonbattista Alberti (1404–72) in *De pictura*, because this was the first work of the kind to be printed; yet Alberti was far from being the first exponent of the art of perspective, or the most detailed, or the clearest; he 'certainly does not give an adequate mathematical account either of the problem or of the methods used in its solution'.[1] In the next century many more mathematicians, of whom G. B. Benedetti (1585) was one, attempted to produce clear and simple constructions for perspective drawing. And so did artists too, the most famous among them being Albrecht Dürer (1471–1528) who believed that true art must be founded upon geometry. After studies of the ancients and of modern Italian authors, he went to Italy (probably to meet Luca Pacioli, the foremost living exponent of mathematical proportion) and there studied Euclid. Dürer's *Underweysung der Messung mit Zirckel und Richtsheyt* ... (1525) was the first mathematical book to be printed in German. Dürer also published a book on fortification in German in 1527.

Chemical knowledge and skill were transmitted to the sixteenth century by two distinct channels, the industrial and the alchemical. In antiquity and the middle ages there had been a close connection between them, and it may well be that some industrial techniques – for example those of distillation and of dissolving and recovering metals with the aid of mineral acids – were borrowed from the alchemists' laboratories. Alchemy was distinguished by its mystical philosophy and by the unintelligible jargon in which the preparation of the Great Work was described. Industrial procedures – the extraction and purification of metals, the manufacture of

1 J. V. Field in *Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institutes*, 48 (1985), 73.

soap, glass and alum, the extraction of dyes and drugs – were usually described in as plain a language as the writer could command, with little attempt to explain the processes in terms of any theory. Taken together these two aspects of the chemical tradition amounted to a large body of experience in the preparation by chemical art not merely of a growing number of saleable commodities but of a larger number of substances which were as yet no more than curiosities.

New ideas and new practices render the redevelopments of the sixteenth century more complex still. Alchemy of course persisted; there was an intensified interest in industrial experience; and there occurred the double development of the iatrochemical school stemming from Paracelsus, part esoteric and mystical with strong alchemical leanings, part rational and empirical with potentialities for future organisation into a true science.

By the beginning of the century alchemy had already ceased to contribute to the growth of chemical arts and ideas, though the legacy of its theories continued to inhibit the formation of less imaginative modes of explanation until the seventeenth century. The pursuit of alchemical chimaeras continued vigorously, however, stimulated by the Paracelsian influence; even Robert Boyle (1627–91) and Isaac Newton (1642–1727) were incapable of simply dismissing it. Many treatises falsely ascribed to the giants of the middle ages – Albertus Magnus, Arnald of Villanova, Raymund Lull – enjoyed an extensive circulation, and one of the great collections of writings in the art, the *Artis auriferae quam chemiam vocant*, was published in Basel in 1572. Many new alchemical tracts were composed also. While the 'puffers' prolonged their futile and often sordid operations at the furnace (as depicted, for example, by Brueghel in 1558), the 'adepts' rose to high flights of linguistic and pictorial symbolism. To this period belongs the fullest flowering of alchemical imagery seen, for example, in the *Rosarium philosophorum* and Thurneysser's *Quinta essentia* (1570). But the first half of the following century is even more packed with alchemical activity.

Alchemical writings turned to the past, their authors claiming to expound an ancient wisdom. Another class of books presaged the industrial expansion of chemistry in the future, though also representing old traditions. A work on assaying, doubtless continuing a manuscript tradition, had been printed in German as early as 1510. Particularly in Vanoccio Biringuccio's *Pirotechnia* (1540) and Agricola's *De re metallica* (1556) there was given a very complete account of everything involved in metalworking, from the assay of ores and mining through roasting, smelting, the separation of metals and refining to the manufacture of alloys and the technique of casting. For the economic production of the precious metals in Europe (here the account is enriched by Lazarus Ercker's treatise of 1576) reliable knowledge of the content of the ore,

careful control of the processes by which the gold and silver were isolated, and precise assays of the purity of the metals during their refining were essential. Hence the assayer, who was also charged with preserving the exactitude of currency alloys, effected the first introduction into any branch of chemical science of the accurate measurement of mass, which has ever since been of critical importance.

The range of chemical topics discussed by Biringuccio and Agricola was by no means restricted to metallurgy. Between them they describe the manufacture of glass and gunpowder, the preparation of alum, vitriol, sulphur and other minerals, and the composition of several reagents. Agricola's more traditional writings on geology and mineralogy are also important, and his account of mining technology is unique. Other authors followed more narrowly the same line. Ercker's treatise on assaying has already been mentioned; it was translated into English as late as 1683. A long series of treatises on the most important operation in the chemistry of the time, distillation, stretches from Brunschwig's *Liber de arte distillandi* (1500) through the centuries. With the growing taste for spirits (which physicians rather encouraged than reproved) the distiller was becoming a manufacturer; distillation also figured in the preparation of many non-alcoholic spirits used medicinally and industrially. There was no full account to succeed the manuscript treatise of Cipriano Piccolpasso (1524–79) on the great Italian ceramic industry, with its superb empirical control of the chemistry of glazes and pigments, but its lack is somewhat recompensed by the books of the great French potter, Bernard Palissy (1524–89). Many other authors, including Cornelius Agrippa at the beginning of the sixteenth century and Baptista Porta at its end, reveal interest in and knowledge of various aspects of chemical technology, such as the treatment of metals, dyeing and colouring, or the jeweller's art.

Thus as alchemy sank more deeply into mysticism, its assertions of practical success increasingly doubted by experienced metallurgists, the industrial chemical arts offered ever greater incentives to fruitful enquiry. Their processes and methods (in outline at least) no longer confined within the secrecy of the workshop or guild, they drew attention to the contrast between the detailed phenomena of chemical change exploited by crafts-men and the vacuous generality of philosophical or alchemical explana-tions. But the technological writers were masters of fact; their knowledge was fragmentary and unorganised, their observations haphazard and sometimes misleading. Chemistry as a systematic, explanatory science could not spring from this source alone.

Upon this double tradition of chemistry impinged the violent and irrational personality of Paracelsus (*c.* 1493–1541). Like Luther he was a totally unmodern man who nevertheless assisted the genesis of the modern world. He neither possessed nor desired the classical scholarship of the

learned philosophers and physicians of his day, directing his appeal by passionate denunciation of the ancients, by extravagant claims for his own wonderful insight, and by proclaiming his own miraculous cures, to the lower levels of literacy and the humbler exponents of the medical art. His position was a simple one. Orthodox medical men were totally ignorant of the mysteries of life, disease and death which only he, Paracelsus, understood. Most of his ideas on these topics were of the cruder medieval kind, and even his contemporaries thought Paracelsus superstitious. He regarded everything – animal, vegetable and mineral – as having its virtue for human use, to be known by its signature.[1] The art of the physician was to recognise the disease and to know how to procure the 'virtue' required for its cure. The art of the pharmacist was to extract the virtue in medicines and multiply its efficacy. Here Paracelsus entered on new ground which for reasons that he could not have anticipated has given him a place in the history of chemistry. For he believed that virtues were to be extracted by pyrotechnical operations, by the boilings, solutions, precipitations and distillations practised by the alchemists. By his rule every factitious product of chemical art should find its proper place in the pharmacopoeia, alongside the few natural minerals long established in it. Even the numerous poisons yielded by chemistry had their hidden virtues.

This doctrine was not entirely unheralded. Alcohol, antimonial and mercuric compounds, and the mineral acids had already been recognised as meritorious drugs by some physicians, though rejected by others. Paracelsus, however, advocated the complete substitution of chemical remedies for the involved herbal preparations later called 'Galenicals'. He himself added practically nothing to chemical knowledge, but his followers of the iatrochemical school experimented boldly in the laboratory and in their (often unlawful) practice. By the early seventeenth century the term 'chemistry' was customarily applied to a distinct occupation, the preparation of medicaments by chemical processes. Chemists were further distinguished by their explanation of what happened in terms of the 'tria prima' (salt, sulphur, mercury). The practical successors of Paracelsus, who did not hesitate to rebuke him for his wilder assertions which were taken up by charlatans, and who were also often alchemists too, discovered and described for the first time many new reactions and substances, and took the first small steps towards a genuine chemical theory. In Andreas Libavius's *Alchimia* (1597), despite its title the first chemical textbook, the sixteenth century provided the model for the empirical

---

1 The doctrine of signatures exploited a more or less arbitrary resemblance between the symptoms of a disease or a part of the human body and a substance or species. Thus the walnut in its shell, reminiscent of the brain in its skull, was indicated as a cure for ailments of the head.

treatment of chemistry which was to be so fruitfully developed during the next century and a half.

At the opening of the sixteenth century there were no botanists, zoologists or physiologists, and very few anatomists. On the other hand there were many medical men (and a few others) who were interested in these subjects, for they can all be said to have had some existence as appendages to medicine. As with medicine itself, the study of living nature was strongly influenced by Greek writings and ideas, especially in the first half of the century; continuity with the classical world, under the dominant authority of Aristotle and Galen, is even more obvious than in the physical–mathematical sciences. And in contrast to the latter, observation and description were the chief occupations; theoretical developments are of little significance. Whereas the tradition of science had been confined to the Mediterranean basin, the men of the sixteenth century were confronted by a world extending from the northern tundra to the South African cape, from the East to the West Indies. They responded to its challenge with a not unworthy attempt to catalogue and comprehend its richness of living species, though reluctant to confess that this had been unsurmised in antiquity.

Although Aristotle had written three major zoological treatises (*Historia animalium*; *De generatione animalium*; *De partibus animalium*) – works which reveal an astonishing range of enquiry and knowledge, and which were unexcelled before the later seventeenth century – the direct medieval inheritance was in this respect particularly feeble. The bestiary, with its legends and its heavy symbolic overlay, was the chief organ of medieval zoology, despite such exceptional evidence of first-hand observation as occurs in the *De arte venandi cum avibus* (*c.* 1248) of the Emperor Frederick II. The Renaissance tended to shift the stress from the universal to the particular, from the symbol to the reality, while at the same time enhancing the importance of the hitherto neglected material on animals and their behaviour available in Aristotle, Pliny and many other classical authors, but its effect was not markedly apparent before the middle of the century. Even painters seem to have found plants more inspiring subjects than animals: Leonardo's study of the flight of birds is characteristically unusual, but his inspiration seems to have been mechanical rather than biological.

The revival of biology belongs to a period when the Renaissance, an exclusively Italian phenomenon no longer, was transforming the art and scholarship of France, Germany and other still more remote parts of Europe. In zoology Conrad Gesner (1516–65) of Zurich was its greatest figure with Ulissi Aldrovandi (1522–1605) of Bologna as his close rival; it was assisted by such Frenchmen as Guillaume Rondelet (1507–66) and

Pierre Belon (1517–64) and the Englishmen John Caius (1510–73) and William Penny (c. 1530–88). The explanation of their activity must be sought partly in religious devotion, partly in aesthetic appraisal, partly in sheer curiosity; it was generally accompanied by massive learning. For these men were scholars even more than they were observers and collectors – and the undisciplined urge to collect marvels produced strange results at this time, as in Aldrovandi's own museum. Compiling from almost every respectable author, their grasp was not satisfied by biological considerations of morphology and habitat but extended to philology, legend, proverb and dietetics. They rejected some, though not all, of the medieval fabrications of the crocodiles'-tears and barnacle-goose kind; they assembled the beginnings of a corpus of sound information on animal species. This was the greatest achievement of these so-called 'encyclopaedic' naturalists – combined with their efforts towards procuring realistic representations of the creatures they described. Graphically, however, the zoological writers were less successful than the botanical. The tally of the immense variety of living and moving things was begun, but to the sterner scientific disciplines of classification and embryology, comparative anatomy and physiology, the sixteenth-century naturalists contributed little new. They were certainly far from replacing Aristotle.

The situation in botany was more promising and ripened more swiftly. Herbal lore was an essential element in medical art, and in knowledge of authorities and field experience a few medieval herbalists had maintained a scientific tradition. The early printed herbals initiate no new trend; again a new phase begins late, and in the north rather than in Italy. Its commencement is generally assigned to the publication of Otto Brunfels's book (1530) because Brunfels, though unremarkable as a writer, had the good sense to employ an artist to make illustrations from actual specimens. Leonhart Fuchs's herbal (1542) is even more imposing – it is outstanding as a work of art – in that Fuchs was a man of deep learning and wide experience. Yet his work, like that of many of his successors, shows a utilitarian rather than a scientific mentality in its author. Of intrinsic biological problems he – and they – seem largely unaware; his horizon was limited to recognition and medicinal usefulness. Many other herbals, Latin and vernacular, illustrated and unillustrated, were published in the following half century, the pioneer English contribution in this new vein being John Gerard's (1597). All were modelled, directly or indirectly, on Dioscorides; plagiarism was common, and printers bought or stole each others' woodcut blocks.

In the latter part of the century collectors were extending their range widely and intensively over western Europe, and even to the New World and the East. Fuchs described maize, Gerard the common and the sweet potato, Matthias de l'Obel tobacco, and naturalists were eager to establish

in their gardens the non-indigenous species described by such botanically minded travellers as Garcia del Huerto and Nicholas Monardes. Under this pressure the old habit of identifying at least every group of plants with species described by the ancients broke down. It was realised that the flora of the north-west, and still more that of the lands beyond the sea, was distinct from that of the Mediterranean region. The ancients who had been ignorant of such drugs as guaiacum, such delicacies as chocolate, were clearly not omniscient; as clearly, the riches of the natural creation varied from continent to continent. Such discoveries suggested the need for a 'method' which would bring out the relationships between the thousands of plant species, and also permit their classification on princi- ples less arbitrary than those of alphabetic or other groupings. A method could only be based on the selection of certain morphological characteris- tics to be used as criteria of relationship and classification; from the nature and use of this selection arose the problems of systematic taxonomy figuring so largely in the history of botany during the next two hundred years. In this direction, especially through the ideas of Andreas Cesalpino (1519–1603) and de l'Obel (1538–1619), the sixteenth century made important advances; generally, there were great developments in collec- tion, arrangement and description. Moreover, the progress of botany as a study in its own right was assisted by the separation of the pharmaceutical interest, marked by the publication of the first official pharmacopoeias (Florence 1498, Nuremberg 1551, Augsburg 1564). But the sixteenth- century naturalist was more concerned with the plant as a specimen than with its functioning as an organism. Just as study of the animal as such remained much where Aristotle had left it, so knowledge of the plant level of existence had advanced little if at all beyond that of his pupil Theophrastus. Biology had begun one of its great tasks – that of enumeration – but a fresh onslaught on the other, the investigation of the conditions and processes of the living state, was to come very much later.

In this respect only the study of man himself is unusual. Knowledge of the gross structure of his body was revised and clarified; old ideas of its working in health and subjection to disease were criticised; even man's psychology was less dogmatically considered than before. Without displacement of the main pillars of Greek and medieval thought on these topics, there were shifts of emphasis and modifications of detail pro- ductive of fruitful controversy. These in turn reflected on medical practice, giving new indications for treatment, softening a little the unyielding tradition of book-learned medicine inherited from the middle ages. It became more creditable in the physician to be willing to observe and experiment.

Anatomy was the primary medical study, recognised as indispensable to medical qualification. The achievement of the sixteenth-century anatomists

was shaped by their duties as university teachers, to lecture by Galen's book and also demonstrate its truths upon the body. This was the established procedure of which the Renaissance brought out the full potentialities, refining the technique of dissection, correcting but not abandoning Galen, welding together verbal description and visual experience. For Galen's anatomical treatises were not suddenly replaced, even by Vesalius's *Fabrica*, and none of the great practical anatomists of the preceding century had set out to prove flatly that Galen was wrong. Rather they were surprised afresh as each of his errors was revealed. As elsewhere in science, criticism was not so much directed against the genuine classical learning which newer standards of scholarship brought to light as against its medieval interpretation. The very motives leading men to dissect and occasionally to experiment seem to have been the desire for a full understanding of Galen's words (in this way dissection was complementary to the efforts of the textual scholars), and the search for material which would enable them to comment faithfully upon these words and illustrate them. Since Galen's anatomical treatises were the most useful extant, they must be mastered before they could be superseded.

When men like Berengario da Carpi (1470–1550), Vesalius and Bartolomeo Eustachio (1520–74) turned to dissection as a means at once of research and instruction they were therefore still within the Galenic framework. But anatomists had no wish to confine their knowledge to the audience of the lecture-room, and in using the printing-press some adopted graphic representation to supplement their texts. Indeed, after a time text became in some instances subservient to illustration, as in Vesalius's *Epitome*. The principle was not wholly new; besides a rare medieval anatomical drawing, some coarse woodcuts had been published before the beginning of the century, but the serious history of anatomical illustration begins in the time of Berengario and Charles Estienne (1520–30). From their fairly crude figures there is a rapid ascent to the magnificent woodcuts of Vesalius (1543) and the perhaps technically superior copper-plates of Eustachio (*c.* 1552), both of which were frequently copied[1] The preparations of illustrated anatomies still further promoted application to dissection, for the excellence and usefulness of the artist's work was in direct proportion to the skill and experience of the operator. Here, moreover, the learned, scientific study of anatomy was quickened by artistic insight. Leonardo's anatomical sketches, unexcelled in their own or any time, are well known, and he was not unique in this

---

1 Vesalius's cuts were tremendously popular; they were revived (with slight modifications) in Diderot's *Encyclopédie*. Eustachio's plates were also much reused in the eighteenth century when they were discovered and first printed.

passion. Graphic realism provided an unprecedented vehicle for instruc-
tion in anatomy; and it is to its draughtsman – whoever he was – that
Vesalius's *Fabrica* owes much of its fame and significance.

The *De humani corporis fabrica* (1543) was the highest achievement of
Renaissance anatomy and the greatest feat in the attainment of scientific
accuracy before Tycho's work in astronomy. Vesalius was no theorist – he
exposed the chief factual impediment to Galen's explanation of the heart's
action without endeavouring to frame an alternative – and he castigated
his authority far more often on grounds of fact and procedure (for
example, referring to the human body structures found only in animals)
than for his interpretations. Despite such criticisms Vesalius's treatment
of human anatomy was closely modelled on Galen's; but Galen thus
elucidated, revised and illustrated was far more useful and accessible to
contemporaries than were Galen's own writings. The way was cleared –
though not fully traversed – for a return in anatomy to actual observation
of the body, and Vesalius founded at Padua a school which was capable of
proceeding farther in this way than he himself. In comparative anatomy,
in the dissection of particular organs, in the study of embryology, the
Italian successors of Vesalius initiated modern branches of science.
Laboratory dissection was placed in a firm position as the chief tool of
zoological investigation, with man as its principal subject, and the
techniques of the anatomist were made to serve enquiries remote from
their original demonstrative purpose.

The consequences of the advanced anatomical knowledge of the
sixteenth century were, however, only to be worked out in the next. So
also with human physiology: the first great step, related directly to the
work of the Paduan anatomists, was Harvey's theory of the circulation of
the blood (1628). Changes in ideas of how the body works were more
closely linked with broad changes in outlook and medical experience than
with specific anatomical discoveries. The French physician Jean Fernel
(1497–1558) was in his mature years equally hostile to belief in the
influence of the heavens on the body and to faith in magical remedies. His
scepticism sprang from experience of the futility of these superstitions,
from reason, and from confidence in the Galenic doctrine. It was not
grounded on any new scientific facts or ideas. For Fernel the body and the
diseases afflicting it were within the sphere of rational causality and not at
the mercy of mysterious forces, but his causes are Galen's causes and his
physiology is Galen's physiology, logically and coherently presented.
Fernel had no conception that physiology could be investigated by
experiment, being certain that it could not be enlightened by cutting up
dead bodies from which the governing spirit and its 'faculties' had passed
away; the functioning of the body could be 'known only by meditation'
upon the physician's experience. The sole challenge to such orthodoxy

came from the Paracelsians, who rejected the theory that digestion was effected by heat. Instead they supposed that an 'archeus' or internal chemist inhabiting the stomach separated the harmful 'tartar' in food from the beneficent parts which were converted into 'mercury' and absorbed. This fantastic conception, though winning little favour at the time, had some indirect effect in encouraging the development of more plausible 'chemical' theories in the seventeenth century.

It follows that changes in medical practice also owed little to the more conspicuous advances in the medical sciences. Vesalius took part in a controversy on blood-letting: but it can scarcely be found that his anatomical experience influenced his arguments. Servetus, the earliest exponent of the 'lesser circulation' of the blood from the heart through the lungs and back, is tediously traditional when he orates on syrups. Medical practice was inevitably more responsive to variations in the incidence of disease, to changes in the pharmacopoeia attributable to the influence of Paracelsus and the admission of outlandish drugs, and among the best physicians to accumulated observation, than it was to work at the dissecting table. The progress of surgery was, however, directly related to the satisfactory teaching of anatomy. This was generally recognised, and there was a corresponding tendency for the social standing of the surgeon to improve as he strove for higher learning and skill. The operative parts and practical parts of medicine seem indeed to have been more genuinely progressive than the theoretical.

Without doubt the world of science was wider at the beginning of the seventeenth century than it had been in the early years of Copernicus and Leonardo da Vinci, and men were traversing it more freely. Scientific curiosity was flourishing outside the universities and was proving more creative among the laity than among the clergy, for so long almost the sole guardians of learning. In Italy and elsewhere scientific clubs were springing up, lectureships were being founded, vernacular works of importance were being written. Practical science – mathematical, physical and chemical – was developing apace; soon Bacon would emphasise the utility of natural knowledge and set the artisan's experience almost at the same level as the philosopher's insight. Though major challenges to the hitherto unquestioned authority (and veracity) of classical authors were few, and though these challenges were resisted by the vast majority, they had been made and they were to prove fruitful. Even within the limitations of ancient sources there was a wider and deeper familiarity; the legacy of Greek science was less narrowly cramping, less dogmatic, less tightly homogenous, than it had seemed in the middle ages.

All this represents a growth, an intensification of the trend of medieval science rather than a deflection from it. Almost everything that happens in

the history of science in the sixteenth century has a medieval precedent and would have been comprehensible, if repugnant, to earlier generations in a way that the science of the age of Newton was not. Significantly, attempts to re-state fundamentally the aims and methods of science were made (by Francis Bacon, Galileo, Descartes and indeed by almost every major figure) in the seventeenth century, not in the sixteenth. In the latter period reason and logic were esteemed in their due spheres; mathematics was rising in prominence as an analytical technique; the importance of experiment and observation was admitted; but though men used all these elements in building their picture of the natural world, they by no means supposed them to constitute its totality. Propositions that the seventeenth century was to qualify as religious, metaphysical, or superstitious passed without question in the currency of sixteenth-century science. The old impediments to the full development of a scientific attitude – credulous faith in authorities, superstition, appeals to Providence and Divine Will, failure to observe and verify – were not yet overcome, indeed they were in some respects more troublesome than ever. Nature was capable of working in very odd ways and producing strange creatures, and no one dared yet to impose limitations on her oddity. The concept of the 'law of nature', the foundation of a mechanistic science, was itself unformulated. A salve applied to a weapon *might* heal a wounded man; there *might* be mermaids, animals with human heads, cockatrices, salamanders living in the fire; metals *might* grow like moss in the veins from which they were dug. It was hard to distinguish the unverified from the impossible, and only rarely were men inclined to doubt a supposed effect on account of the lack of a sufficient cause. The very decline of the influence of the classics allowed a more marvellous and disorderly view of nature to be taken, until the classics were replaced by a new, more rigorous, scientific method.

The sixteenth century witnessed technological progress and gave to Europeans first-hand knowledge of three-quarters of the globe. It gave them many new facts, and new fables. But it had furnished no new principles for distinguishing fact from fiction, or for facilitating the cumulative acquisition of organised facts that Bacon was to see as the chief immediate task of science, save its few examples of systematic observation. Nor did it offer new theories to correlate and account for facts that were already familiar, in relation to the falling of heavy bodies, the attraction of magnets, the mutations of light and colour and the 'transmutations' of chemistry, for example, even though some workers on all these subjects were aware of the frailty of the only theories they could give. It was a century of contrast, between mysticism and incipient mechanism, between idolatry and criticism of the classics, between tedious conservatism and bold originality of hypothesis. The resolution of these antitheses, the framing of a new philosophy of nature and new theories

appropriate to it, the forging of new tools of scientific enquiry, were to be the great achievements of the seventeenth century to which the sixteenth transmitted much that was valuable in the way of suggestion and exploration.

SCHOOLS AND UNIVERSITIES

T HE rapid developments in educational theory and practice wit-
nessed in this period have deservedly attracted much notice. There
was a significant increase in the amount of speculation on the aims
and methods of teaching and a number of institutions were established
which actively practised new principles. Consideration of the question is,
however, far from simple. On the one hand it is necessary to define the
nature of the programme of educational reform in order to estimate, if
possible, the degree to which schools and universities genuinely displayed
a fresh approach. On the other hand one must disentangle the movement
for reform in teaching from the movement for reform in religion, for the
latter had marked repercussions in this field, not only confusing the issue
for contemporaries but bedevilling later interpretations of the subject with
confessional prejudice. Was there an advance in education or a regression?
Did, or did not, the Reformation compromise and frustrate the Renais-
sance? Even the value of a classical education, which was adopted so
firmly at this time as an ideal of pedagogy that it lasted invincible for over
three centuries, has lately been called in question. On one point fortuna-
tely there can be little doubt. The novel attitudes which obtruded in the
sixteenth century were not victorious suddenly. They modified existing
machinery only gradually, and for much of the time over most of Europe
the educational facilities of the mid sixteenth century were what they had
been for some centuries before. It is therefore necessary to begin by
surveying the traditional structure of schools and universities.

Even more important, one must bear in mind that for a large majority
the formal instruction of the school, which had developed from purely
clerical needs, had little relevance. That this was the case with the
peasantry, who formed the vast bulk of the population of Europe, needs
little demonstration: the seasons, the sky and the agricultural wisdom of
their forefathers were schoolmasters for most men. True, priesthood
offered a sure way for the humblest boy to improve his social status and
that of his family; the desperate efforts of Thomas Platter to find teachers
indicate the prestige of letters in an unlettered Alpine valley; but few boys
had his persistence and there was in any case room in the church for only a
handful of educated recruits. In towns, though there it was easier to find
teachers, systematic instruction in Latin was less important than the
practical study involved in apprenticeship to an altar or its priest, as

lengthy and as carefully controlled as the arts course at a university. Even
for the gentry and nobility, especially outside Italy, the subjects which
really mattered were provided in the age-old way: riding and the use of
weapons, hunting; an eye for a rich heiress, a good estate, and a sound
animal. It is true that the gentlemen of the late middle ages found reading
and writing more than mere graces. To comprehend complicated estate
accounts one had for long needed not only literacy, but if possible a
smattering of the law and a head for figures. But such practical attain-
ments were not offered by school or college training. A tutor of sorts was
therefore a not uncommon member of the great man's household, and the
children of the gentry usually had a domestic chaplain from whom they
might learn their letters, or the services of the local priest; accounting
procedure was acquired by the hard way of profit and loss, and the law by
both exuberant litigation and an increasing habit of turning at least one
member of the family into a lawyer.

The modern distinction between primary, secondary and university
education was not made in the middle ages, but in fact teaching then fell
into the same categories. Primary education, the instruction of young
children in reading and writing, was widely available, though it was
seldom endowed adequately and therefore tended to be intermittent. As
with all other teachers, the elementary schoolmaster or mistress required
the licence of the bishop, though one may doubt whether this was always
obtained by the man or woman who earned a little extra by sharing an
ability to read, write and reckon with a handful of children on a purely *ad
hoc* basis. There were, however, more regular schools. The need for
choristers made the song school a regular feature of the late-medieval
chantry and church; here reading and elementary instruction were part
and parcel of the musical training. The writing school is another type of
school which is found in all western countries, though it, and its humbler
relation, the ABC school or reading school, were often in the hands of
men whose qualifications were slight: at Launceston in the 1540s the ABC
school was kept by 'an aged man chosen by the mayor', and at Glasney,
also in Cornwall, it was kept by the bellringer. Most frequently the local
priest was the local schoolmaster: the 'pedant who keeps a school i' the
church' of Shakespeare; an episcopal synod at Chartres in 1526 prescribed
a school in each parish where 'a priest or clerk may be found able to teach
the alphabet and the creed'; and the convocation of Canterbury in 1529
required 'all having cures . . . to teach boys the alphabet and reading'. The
curriculum of these elementary schools was based on a conjunction of the
alphabet with Latin and vernacular versions of the Lord's Prayer, the
Creed, and other prayers and graces. These, which were to develop in
England into the 'ABC and Primer', were an introduction to the basic
tenets of the faith as well as to the elements of reading, and were relevant

to the further education of the clerk which lay behind elementary instruction itself. But many who had no desire to become clergy attended elementary schools; and it is significant that in the larger towns there is much evidence for the existence of schools where practical arithmetic was taught, the 'reckoning' needed by merchant or steward. There are good grounds for supposing that elementary education of the kind described was increasingly available in the later fifteenth and early sixteenth centuries: in England the movement is associated in particular with the multiplication of chantries; on the continent the Rhineland, for example, seems to have had many schools – at Xanten we find the master of such a school complaining in 1491 that he and his assistant are overworked, and a few years later five elementary teachers are employed at Wesel, while schools are found in even small Rhenish villages. Moreover, whatever entrance requirements they tried to preserve, many grammar schools in practice had elementary classes, the 'petties' or *petits*, taught either by a junior master or a senior boy.

The secondary or grammar school was even more closely associated with the church and, like the elementary school, frequently developed alongside chantry and college. The grammar-school master was more rigorously supervised by the ordinary (or, in certain university towns, by the authorities of the university) than his counterparts in the elementary school; and he was more jealous of the monopolistic privilege conferred on him by his licence. His function was the preparation of boys for higher clerical education at the university, and though his school might be saddled with very young pupils, in general his charges began their grammar at the age of seven. The grammar was Latin grammar, though instruction in the lower classes involved the vernacular, and the basic texts were the Latin service books and portions of the Vulgate, together with such textbooks as Donatus and Alexander de Ville-Dieu (Dolensis). The pupil then progressed to the *Dicta Catonis* and selections from Cicero, Ovid and Virgil. In university centres the grammar school was properly so termed; elsewhere, especially in large towns, the curriculum of the school occasionally covered most of the subjects of the university arts faculty. 'Latine loqui, pie vivere': if religious instruction was absent from the curriculum, it informed all the subjects that were taught and the aim was a preparation for that ecclesiastical institution, the university, where the boy was sent at adolescence. As with elementary schools, so with Latin or grammar schools, the evidence suggests a steady multiplication in the century prior to the Reformation, and there is no doubt that many boys attended school who had no intention of proceeding later to a university. The larger German towns had well-found establishments, often attached to the main church; in England it is clear that relatively modest towns had such schools attached to churches, chantries and guilds, as well as one or

two 'private' grammar schools of which Winchester and Eton are the most famous. On the other hand the miseries of John Butzbach and Thomas Platter warn us not to paint too rosy a picture of the educational facilities available in the early years of the sixteenth century. The number of schools was perhaps increasing, but the quality of teaching was often very low.

The most impressive evidence of expanding facilities for education, however, is provided by the universities. A total of forty-five *studia generalia* had been created by the end of the fourteenth century, enough (one might have supposed) to cater for the needs of Christendom. But in the fifteenth century thirty-three more were erected[1] and up to 1550 there were added half as many more. The most noticeable feature of fifteenth- and early sixteenth-century foundations is that for the most part they are found in the countries where there were no great *studia* in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries: Spain and Portugal, Scotland, above all the Empire, where in 1520 there were eighteen universities to compare with the five which existed by 1400. Theoretically the university still offered a training in arts leading on to professional training in the higher faculties of law, medicine, and theology, but in the early sixteenth century, as for long past, the faculty of arts in all universities contained a large proportion of youths who had no intention of graduating even as bachelors of arts, but who regarded a year or two as an undergraduate a desirable experience. For them attendance at the formal lectures on the prescribed texts in grammar, rhetoric and logic had little relevance. It may be inferred that this element in the university was increasing from the grim introduction of corporal punishment in the colleges of Oxford and Paris: the rod of the schoolmaster was put into the hands of the don because the don was doing increasingly what was regarded as schoolmaster's work.

The structure of education sketched above was continuously if slowly changing. Already in the field of secondary education the schools asso-ciated with the Brethren of the Common Life, like the great school at Deventer, were breaking new ground: here in the eight large classes a boy was led up to the study of texts which at the time seemed unusual – a good deal of Virgil, Cicero, Horace and Baptista Mantuanus – by teachers like Hegius (d. 1498) who were scholars as well as grammarians. Many pupils of the Brethren started a similar tradition in new areas; Dringenberg took it to Schlettstadt where Wimpheling was educated, and where John Sturm was later to be a pupil. Already in 1509 Colet had founded St Paul's school, no different in spirit maybe to earlier schools controlled by city

1 For these figures see H. Rashdall, *The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages*, ed. F. M. Powicke and A. B. Emden (3 vols., 1936). Dôle and Besançon counted as one; see ibid., vol. II, p. 192.

companies, but much larger, better endowed, and devoted expressly to 'good litterature, with latin and greke, and good auctors suych as haue the veray Romayne eliquence joyned with wisdome, specially Cristyn auc-tours'; and prescribing not only the old familiar texts but also Erasmus's *Institutum Christiani hominis* and *De copia*. As for universities, many changes were in progress. At Paris and Oxford the colleges were rising fast at the expense of the university; commoners were everywhere more accepted than they had been; and specialisation was turning the *magister* or *doctor* into the *professor*. As for the teaching in the university, the very nature of the arts course and the tradition of licensing visiting teachers allowed for innovations, like the chairs of poetry in several continental universities, or the lectures given by visiting experts, like those of Alexander at Paris. In both school and university the printing-press gradually affected teaching. Disputation, and dictation of text and com-mentary, remained basic, but the existence of cheaper books enabled commentaries to be more elaborate and dictation slowly declined. By 1520, for example, well over 250 editions of the *Doctrinale* of Alexander of Ville-Dieu had been published.

These changes were nevertheless not to be compared with the rapid advance in educational theory and practice witnessed in Italy during the fifteenth century, on which a great deal of sixteenth-century pedagogy elsewhere in Europe was to be based. The numerous towns of Italy, its flourishing universities, the existence of a prosperous and leisured bour-geoisie, are themselves among the reasons for the revival of letters. This in turn was above all an educational programme. The humanist *par excel-lence* was the humanist educator. It would, of course, be false to suggest that the professional institutions which provided for the educational needs of transalpine Europe were there absent or essentially different: Bologna laid its impress more or less deeply on all northern universities and the example of Paris was equally influential in the *studia* of the Peninsula. But when interest in Latin antiquity and in ancient moral attitudes began to be cultivated the Italian universities, virtually independent of church control and lacking important theological faculties, were well placed to respond. The older universities like Bologna and Padua were by no means hostile and gave considerable, if intermittent, encouragement to the new scholar-ship, while Florence (and later Pisa), Pavia and Ferrara were even more the homes of humanist teaching. Equally significant was the way in which Italians speculated on the principles of education, and the conclusions to which they came. This is revealed briefly by the stress laid on the Ciceronian dictum, 'virtutis laus omnis in actione consistat', in a letter from Vittorino da Feltre to Ambrogio Traversari. That this was the sentiment of the leading schoolmaster of the fifteenth century is hardly

more remarkable than that he addressed such an observation to the pious monk and future saint, for piety and sanctity in earlier days had been at odds with the life of action, just as the clerical education in the middle ages had neglected the citizen or layman as such. For Vittorino, as for other Italian educationalists of the time, the aim of instruction was not scholarship alone, nor technique alone, nor the inculcation of dogma. Existing 'schools' – whether the officially encouraged professional education of cloister and university, or the less systematic but equally professional teaching undergone by merchants' sons in towns or the children of the gentry in the courtyard and bower – were thus of small use. Italian theorists in this field were consequently at one with the general spirit of humanism and shared a conviction that ancient moral teaching, 'honestas gravitasque morum', was complementary to Christian values, and that knowledge in the arts and sciences could only be securely founded upon a study of the literature of antiquity. Letters were therefore a preparation for social life in its fullest sense: they inculcated ethical principles, they polished manners and they deepened understanding. While such a preparation endowed a man with all the qualities necessary for public affairs, it was no small justification that they also refined and enriched the social intercourse of leisure.

The plans of education elaborated by Vergerio, Bruni, Aeneas Sylvius, Vegio and others are strikingly consistent. The early years of the child in the care of the mother, the tutor or preceptor who then undertook more formal instruction, and the larger school to which a pupil should go in his tenth year, are commonplaces of this literature. So are the subjects to be studied. While an encyclopaedic knowledge was regarded as an ideal, the concentration on the acquisition of a mastery of Latin, in which grammar was subordinated to an understanding of the best texts, was a more limited aim, and one which was reinforced by those feelings of proud patriotism which inspired much humanist activity. In the curriculum Terence was approved for his value in illustrating conversational Latin, Cicero as a master of prose both familiar and forensic, and Ovid and Virgil as poets. The historians were almost as highly regarded as these writers, for they provided a plentiful stock of moral instances, and the ethical content of the selected author was as important as his literary worth. To Latin, taught as far as possible as a living language, Greek was added, though it was studied generally for a shorter time and few, even of the teachers, aimed at speaking it. A chief justification of Greek was that it alone enabled a full elucidation of Latin and a similar end lay behind the study of ancient geography and natural history. While the humanist who was specially interested in physics or mathematics was clearly bound to deepen his knowledge of these subjects by studying the appropriate Greek

and Latin writers, this formed no part of the ideal curriculum: geometry had a certain value as a school subject, but arithmetic was too akin to the reckoning of the shopkeeper to be of much service.

That these principles could be transmitted as readily as they were to the north of Europe in the sixteenth century is in part due to their having been elaborated mainly in the atmosphere not of the republics of Italy but of the princely courts. Though schools of a new or humanist type were established at Florence and Venice, the two great exponents of the new *ratio docendi* were Vittorino at the Gonzaga court at Mantua and Guarino Veronese at the Este court of Ferrara. Even in their day the habit of keeping a scholar of repute as tutor in a noble household was not a new one in Italy; thereafter it became a regular feature and is reflected in the general assumption of the educationalists that a *praeceptor* or *paedagogus* was the prime instrument for furthering the programme of studies. The group of children in the great man's entourage, composed of his own offspring and those of his retainers, clients and friends, is sufficiently medieval and sufficiently general in Europe; the Italian courts had adapted the existing practice by providing a trained schoolmaster, and as their court was situated in a town the schoolmaster could form the centre of the intellectual aristocracy of the community, as Guarino did at Ferrara. Accustomed as they were to the notion of a domestic tutor or chaplain, the princes and nobility of the north could follow suit by replacing him with a man chosen for his scholarship. There was, however, a certain difficulty of adjustment. The humanist schools of Italy were on the whole large; the northern practice among the leisured class was for a tutor and only a few children. Vittorino and others in Italy found no reason to discourage athletic and martial activity. This side of Italian experience found a ready acceptance among some educationalists in the north and clearly linked up closely with the traditional discipline of the gentry; but it found less acceptance with Erasmus or Vives, who regarded physical exercise solely as a means of keeping fit and not as a desirable end in itself. But these differences are small and what impresses one is the dependence of publicists and practitioners in northern Europe on the methods and aims of an earlier generation of Italians.

Among the northern theorists two are pre-eminent for their influence and originality, Erasmus and Luis Vives. Erasmus,[1] although not in any real sense a teacher, performed many services to education of a practical kind, some of which will call for notice later. His principles as such are mainly contained in the *De pueris instituendis* of 1529; other directly relevant works are the *De ratione studii* (1511), and the *De civilitate morum puerilium* (1530); but many other writings bear on questions of

---

1   Cf. above, pp. 404, 408–9, for his literary activities.

education.[1] For Erasmus education on the humanist plan justified itself
by providing a direct approach to the Scriptures and the roots of living
Christianity, by its civilising powers and because it made available the
sound scholarship of antiquity. The *seminaria pietatis*, the liberal disci-
plines, the duties of society and purity of manners were inculcated at the
same time and in the same way, and were necessary to all men, unlike the
technical or professional attainments provided in conventional teaching.
The child, after learning from his mother both piety and the ability to
write, and, when possible, the elements of Latin, should pass at the age of
seven into the hands of his father, a schoolmaster or a tutor: few fathers
were able to undertake the work, few schoolmasters could be trusted; a
tutor was therefore the best solution, teaching a small group of boys. The
tutor's task was to teach Latin by direct methods – conversation, the use
of dialogue, and easy texts, with much oral and written composition – the
constant aim being to extract the moral teaching of the works studied and
to acquire fluency in selfexpression. Rhetorical facility as taught by
Quintilian was to be studied in Cicero. Greek was to be taught in a
different way and in a somewhat different spirit; there was no attempt to
acquire a colloquial mastery of the language, and it was to be regarded as
valuable for the light it threw on the Bible, for its illustration of Roman
literature and for its value in scientific subjects.

Juan Luis Vives (1492–1540) was as cosmopolitan a figure as Erasmus.
A Spaniard by birth, his adult life was passed in France, England and the
Low Countries. Like Erasmus, he too was the author of school books as
well as of treatises on education itself. Of these last the most important
was the *De tradendis disciplinis* of 1531. For Vives the home and the
mother have more importance than they have for Erasmus, but he is in
agreement that, though a school is best, a good tutor is more readily found
than a good school. Ability to read and write a vernacular well was
regarded as desirable by Vives, as it was by Italian educationalists by the
end of the fifteenth century; and he is prepared to add vernacular
historians to ancient historians as sources of moral instances. But by the
study of language he meant the study of Latin, and its grammar should be
a means to an end, not an aspect of dialectic. Here again we meet the
direct method and a programme of reading culminating in Cicero, and in
the study of Greek as an adjunct to Latin. Hostile as he is to logic and
dialectic of the old-fashioned kind, he is prepared to admit mathematics
and physics, though good textbooks are lacking. For Vives as for
Erasmus, a profound religious impulse colours all education. Scholarship

---

1 Cf. Erasmus's own lists of works 'qui spectant ad institutionem literarum', in P. S. and
H. M. Allen (eds.), *Opus Epistolarum Des. Erasmi Roterodami* (12 vols., 1906–58), vol. I,
pp. 38–9; vol. VIII, pp. 373–4.

as such, though admirable, must be subordinated to the practice of a Christian life. The schoolmaster may thus be encyclopaedic, but for his pupils he must be more modest and contrive to instil an *eruditio* which will be compatible with *pietas*.

The third great exponent of educational doctrine in this period is Cardinal Giacomo Sadoleto (1477–1547) in his *De liberis recte instituendis* (1533). Again we find the absence of good schools deplored and recourse to a tutor advised. But in Sadoleto we find a greater stress on Greek, because of the current Platonic preoccupation of Italians, and an interest in *philosophia* which stems from the same root. Moreover, Sadoleto envisages an education which aims at covering in general fashion the whole field of knowledge, though he argues that each pupil should also cultivate a special interest and competence.

The programmes advanced by Erasmus, Vives and Sadoleto were essentially scholarly; although they extolled the civilising value of litera-ture, they gave this a subordinate position. It would, however, be wrong to exclude those writers whose aims were educational in only a limited sense, and who made manners their chief interest. For Castiglione's *Courtier* (1528) and the *Galateo* (1558) of Giovanni della Casa very significantly affected the general view of the gentleman's qualities in northern Europe.[1] Both books were widely translated and naturally appealed to French, English and Germans for whom the gentry constituted the most influential single element in society, and for whom the new ideals of deportment, conversation and moral behaviour could be grafted on an ancient doctrine of chivalry: 'manners makyth man' was a medieval notion, and it was the manners which were changing, not the respect they were given. The fusing of the literary aims of Erasmus and Vives with the courtesy of Castiglione is clearly seen in *The Boke named the Gouernour* (1531) of Sir Thomas Elyot (d. 1546). Both Erasmus and Vives were products of the educational system they criticised and tried to correct. Elyot was not a graduate, yet the long tale of his works shows what intellectual accomplishments an active and intelligent youth could acquire in London and away from the university. His detachment from pro-fessional education enabled him to reflect more than most northerners the genial aim of the Italian educationalists. His purpose in the *Gouernour* was to liberalise the central figures of secular society; his 'governors' were all men with administrative responsibilities from the king's immediate of-ficials down to the modest gentlemen who served as J.P.s. For the children of such men he prescribes the Erasmian programme of Latin as a living language, and accepts the need of a tutor; but he is prepared (as Erasmus is not) to diversify the hard business of learning a language with music and

1 Cf. above, p. 414.

drawing and physical exercise. The whole end is the acquisition of a wisdom, based on the teaching of antiquity, which will flower in social virtue and social usefulness.

What effect did the speculations of the theorists have on practical education? They unquestionably diffused the basic doctrines of the Italian theorists of the *quattrocento*; and they also lent new authority to the habit of sending the children of great men to school or of giving them a tutor, while the kind of tutor they prescribed, and who was more frequently appointed, was now a grammarian, not, as of old, a clerk. As a result, the landed classes accepted in the end the necessity of formal education. Their effect on the institutional side of teaching is harder to assess, for the theorists were above all thinking in terms of the family. In any case schools and universities were developing and changing, thus offering an opportunity for new methods, while not necessarily depending on them. In the field of textbooks the humanist contribution was great, as will be pointed out.

Three celebrated types of secondary education may be instanced as examples of humanist principles in action outside Italy: the Collège de Guyenne at Bordeaux, Sturm's school at Strassburg, and the curriculum of the first Jesuit seminaries. It will be evident that these establishments – the first French and tainted with reform, the second German and avowedly Protestant, and the third a celebrated 'instrument' of the Counter-Reformation – were broadly similar in their approach; and that they were employing methods which were by no means entirely novel. The Collège de Guyenne was provided with a group of 'notables lecteurs' whom André Gouvéa took with him when he left Paris in response to the invitation of the magistrates of Bordeaux in 1534. Under Gouvéa the school flourished and its curriculum in the mid-century became celebrated. The tenth, or bottom form contained the *alphabetarii* or *abecedarii*, learning through the vernacular the elements of Latin on the basis of liturgical material and the *Libellus puerulorum*, a summary of inflections. The boy who could master this material, who could conjugate and decline his Latin, as well as write legibly, was promoted to the ninth form, the biggest in the school. Here a fluent command of French and above all of Latin was the aim; Cato's moral *Disticha* was read along with a more advanced grammar. In the eighth class a selection from Cicero's letters and scenes from Terence were the means of acquiring *locutiones*, and a weekly prose supplemented daily construing. The boy of fair ability attained the seventh class at the age of eleven or twelve, and embarked on a more elaborate treatment of the same texts; in the sixth and fifth classes larger texts were tackled, including a play of Terence entire, and a beginning was made of the study of prosody. In the fourth class there were more significant changes: an oration of Cicero was studied with a manual

of rhetoric, compositions became longer and included verse, and a start
was made on Greek. This set the pattern for the top three forms, though a
little mathematics was taught in the third and later years: Cicero; Virgil,
Ovid, Lucan among the poets; Quintilian; the historians, were the main
texts studied, and composition now included the preparation of decla-
mations. Disputations were a frequent device of the form-master, and,
though French was freely used in the translation and commentary on
authors, the aim was fluency in Latin speech as well as in writing. John
Sturm (d. 1589) was appointed rector of the *Gymnasium* at Strassburg in
1538 and his curriculum – though he introduced Greek earlier and used
Bible texts more – is virtually the same as that of Gouvéa and Vinet at
Bordeaux. Jesuit schools, which began to multiply from 1546 onwards,
were also very similar; the final *ratio studiorum* was not drawn up until
later in the century but the main lines of the Jesuit programme are already
evident in the constitutions of 1551. Grammar (Latin at first and then
Greek) was taught in seven forms by the same methods as in Protestant
schools, though there was much less brutality, a greater insistence on
prizes and competition as a stimulus to zeal, and more ruthlessness in
expurgating from classical texts those portions considered inflammatory
for the young. In their attention to the psychology of teaching the Jesuits
were in advance of most practical teachers outside their order; but their
aims were the same as those of other humanist educators: the inculcation
of morality and manners by a rhetorical and linguistic training. When
both Protestants and Catholics proclaimed the virtues of grammar it is
hardly surprising that the classical curriculum dominated secondary
schools so completely and so permanently.

   The spread of the classical school is less remarkable if it is remembered
that its organisation was itself not essentially new. The curriculum of
medieval grammar schools is somewhat obscure, but larger schools were
probably always organised in upwards of six forms. Hegius at Deventer
had eight forms; the Breslau school in the early sixteenth century had nine.
Wolsey's abortive foundation at Ipswich was to have eight classes; Eton in
1528 had seven but by the mid-century had dropped to the six which were
to become engrained in English tradition. As promotions from one class
to the next could be made quarterly or half-yearly, the variations between
one school and another in the number of forms is made smaller. Even if
the shape of the larger school had already existed, the speed is remarkable
with which the new grammar ousted the old. One can trace the leaven at
work in a man like Mathurin Cordier who taught at Nevers, then at
Bordeaux, at Geneva and at Lausanne, leaving wherever he went the
imprint of a new approach to teaching; or in John Sturm, pupil of the
famous school at Schlettstadt, whose reputation he was to dim by the
academy he directed at Strassburg. The high repute of Sturm's school led

to it being copied by many other teachers; it was visited by Calvin when he was considering plans for school development at Geneva; when Thomas Platter was appointed to the municipal school at Basel in 1541 he also consulted Sturm. In Protestant Germany the espousal by Melanchthon of the new curriculum lent at a crucial period the force of Lutheran orthodoxy to educational reform: his advice was sought on educational matters by fifty-six towns; his influence was more directly seen in the Latin school at Eisleben (1525) and the *Oberschule* at Nuremberg (1526); and for ten years he himself kept a private school at Wittenberg. Melanchthon's influence is also seen in John Bugenhagen, whose ordinance for the school at Brunswick (1528) was also the basis of the regulations in seven other North German towns. The *praeceptor Germaniae* taught much to the Jesuits, his opponents, and not least that conscious system was essential to an efficient school. Backed by a powerful order, served by exceptionally well-trained teachers, it is no surprise that Jesuit schools multiplied: when the founder of the order died in 1556 there were over thirty schools run by the Jesuits for others besides their own novices, and the numbers continued to rise. Their success in Catholic Germany was very considerable.

The signs and symbols of the new curriculum were its textbooks even more than its texts. Donatus, the *Doctrinale* of Alexander of Ville-Dieu, the *Graecismus* of Eberhard of Bethune and other medieval grammatical works were still much used in the humanist grammar school: Melanchthon and the Jesuits both prescribed Donatus; and the grammatical works of Jean Despautère (van Pauteren, d. 1520), which improved only a little on the *Doctrinale*, was equally patronised. But they were used only for the lower forms, they were treated as grammars pure and simple, not as the subject of dialectic, and they gradually gave way before more up-to-date manuals. The dissatisfaction of the teacher with the old textbooks is shown by the number of schoolmasters who composed new ones. The presses of all large towns were constantly issuing works by local grammarians and pedagogues. England was far from being in the van of the movement, yet we find John Anwykyll, master of Magdalen College School, issuing his *Compendium totius grammatice* in 1483. His successor John Stanbridge moved to Banbury in 1501: his *Accidentia* was printed seventeen times between 1505 and 1550; and, aside from other frequently issued books, his *Vulgaria*, an English and Latin vocabulary, came out seven times between 1508 and 1529. Robert Whittinton's *Declinationes nominum* was printed sixteen times by 1533, and 128 editions of other grammatical works by him have been listed for about the same period. More important still, because better in quality and graced with the approval of Erasmus, were the efforts of Colet and the high-master of his school at St Paul's, William Lily. Lily's *Absolutissimus de octo orationis*

partium constructione libellus and the *Brevissima institutio* of Lily and
Colet were the basis of the grammar officially commanded by Henry VIII
in 1540. On the continent the same process is at work: Melanchthon's
Grammatica Latina had the same repute amongst Protestant school
teachers as had later the *De institutione grammatica* of the Portuguese
Jesuit Emmanuel Alvarez among Catholics. Many others could be men-
tioned, some of whose works had more than local significance – as, for
example, those of Rivius at Meissen and of Camerarius, who was a
schoolmaster at Nuremberg before he taught in universities.

Even more characteristic of the new pedagogy were the books of
conversational Latin which humanist teachers composed for their pupils.
As with so much in humanist technique, the dialogue was a medieval
inheritance and was closely related to a catechetical method associated
above all with religious instruction. But the old form was filled with new
meaning and the colloquy emerged. Though perhaps not the first in the
field, Erasmus was undoubtedly the greatest of the colloquial writers, and
the prolonged success of his *Familiarium colloquiorum opus* was perhaps
due to the origin of some of the earlier pieces it contained in what little
practical instruction Erasmus had himself given. Scribbled down in 1497,
they were published by Beatus Rhenanus without Erasmus's knowledge in
1518. The first edition by Erasmus came in 1522; thereafter they were
revised, extended and reprinted steadily; by the death of Erasmus in 1536
the work had appeared a hundred times. The earliest of the *Colloquies*
were mere lists of phrases – 'formulae salutandi'. Then came the 'percon-
tandi forma in primo congressu' with two interlocutors, and then a
'domestica confabulatio'. These, however, are soon followed by the
famous conversations in which Erasmus scourges contemporary follies,
which belong not only to the history of education but to the history of
religion and literature. Though bitterly attacked by the Sorbonne and
condemned for their frivolity and worse by both Luther and Loyola, the
Colloquies are found in school use all over both Catholic and Protestant
Europe. They were, however, far from being alone in the field and a
number of other books of similar type were composed which had no
pretensions to the satirical approach of Erasmus. The *Paedologia* of P.
Mosellanus, *Dialogi pueriles* of C. Hegendorff, and the *Dialogi* of A.
Barland are all contemporaneous with Erasmus. Of many similar works,
two had more than ordinary success, the *Linguae Latinae exercitatio*
(1538) of Vives, and the *Colloquiorum scholasticorum libri quattuor* (1564)
of Cordier. The importance of these books lies in the vivid reminder of the
aim of the new grammar-school curriculum – the acquisition of a
command of Latin speech at once fluent, graceful and correct. This aim
was also responsible for the importance attached (as already noted) to
Terence and to Latin versions of the dialogues of Lucian which were

prescribed at many schools. Equally it lies behind the Latin drama being actually produced – a feature above all of Sturm's method at Strassburg – which led in turn to the composition of neo-Latin dramatic pieces, more particularly in Germany and among the Jesuits.[1]

The new concentration on the humanities affected school teaching profoundly, as indicated. The impact on the universities was distinctly less marked. The sixteenth-century educationalist was less concerned about the quality of advanced work than about school teaching. The university as it existed in the sixteenth century was still primarily a professional institution, and while the arts faculties were naturally affected by a new attitude to literature and grammar, the senior disciplines of medicine, law and theology were markedly less responsive. In general it seems true to say that the new education was not regarded with general hostility by the older universities, though the Sorbonne was suspicious and at Oxford 'Greeks' and 'Trojans' for a time made an issue of the reception of the new learning. Many scholars of the new stamp are found in European universities; the school movement had had the effect of closing the gap between secondary and university education; editions of classical authors were addressed to both the senior forms of schools and students at universities. Yet the great monuments of advanced erudition are often curiously detached from academic roots. Erasmus was in no sense a university man. Robert Estienne's *Thesaurus linguae Latinae* (full edition 1543) was not a product of a university; nor was the Greek *Thesaurus* of his son Henri (1572). It is noteworthy that at Venice and Lyons, where so much learned literature was printed, there were no universities; and no one would associate the scholarly presses of Basel with its small and insignificant university. A new insistence on literature at the expense of logic may justly be attributed to the universities of Germany. Everywhere Galen and Hippocrates were studied in better editions and with greater attention to text rather than gloss, yet the medical faculty at Basel received Paracelsus at first with much the same respect that it paid to Vesalius, and it cannot be said that the mainly literary approach to medicine in universities was conducive to much progress: the accepted text reigned supreme, even if it was much improved.[2] Civil law was also taught from better texts, but canon law went into a decline which was, naturally, complete in Protestant universities and particularly in Germany. There, on the other hand, theological faculties assumed an importance which was as noticeable as that of the Sorbonne in Paris, though theological teaching at Wittenberg and elsewhere was fairly narrowly restricted to Bible exegesis and dogmatics.

1 Cf. above, p. 403.
2 Cf. above, pp. 427, 447.

If Greek and Hebrew are taken as tests of the new learning at the academic level (as contemporaries often assumed they should be) the relative failure of universities to accord a full place to liberal studies will be noted. Professors of Greek are found in most universities by the mid-century, and many of them were exceedingly learned and productive men. But their field of action was the edition of texts and above all of translations, and the slender apparatus of Greek which was all that even advanced educationalists allowed for in schools was quite incapable of giving the average student at the university enough groundwork for serious study. Even in the schools Greek was not invariably found till towards the end of the sixteenth century. In 1561 the statutes of Merchant Taylors' School (London) repeat the phrase used in Colet's statute for St Paul's half a century earlier: the headmaster should have Latin and Greek, 'if such may be gotten'. If Greek became an arts subject at universities it was not a compulsory one, except for the handful who entered a higher faculty. Hebrew was in an even less favoured position and was, of course, entirely restricted to theological teaching, as at Wittenberg, under the statute of 1546, where the professor of Hebrew was in practice teaching Old Testament exegesis.

The conviction that the languages, Latin, Greek and Hebrew, were of fundamental importance and yet not adequately treated in universities accounts for the development of trilingual colleges. Here the foundation of chairs in ancient languages at universities prior to the second decade of the sixteenth century hardly constitutes a precedent. Leo X's educational innovations at Rome and Cardinal Cisneros' at Alcalá are more sugges-tive of a new departure, but there is no disputing the original character of the foundation of the Collegium Trilingue at Louvain. Its founder, Jerome Busleyden, who died in 1517, left money for the establishment of a college in the university of Louvain where, in addition to student bursaries, provision was made for three lecturers who were to provide gratuitous instruction. They were 'to read and expound publicly to all comers both Christian and other moral and approved authors, in the three languages, that is, in Latin, Greek and Hebrew'. Despite difficulties from theologians chary of the new studies because they were associated with heresy, and from other teachers who saw their audiences dwindle, the new college flourished. Reflecting Erasmian ideals, it directly enjoyed Erasmus's protection and counsel. Since it was detached from the normal university curriculum it proved attractive not only to students at Louvain university, but also to many gentlemen and visiting scholars, who could benefit from a modern approach to language and literature without being com-promised by study for a degree. That the Trilingue at Louvain responded to a widely felt need may be inferred from parallel developments else-where. Richard Fox's foundation of Corpus Christi College at Oxford

(1517), and Wolsey's college (1525) both reflect the same climate of thought, though less successfully than Louvain. In France a similar development culminated in 1530 in the appointment of 'lecteurs royaux'. In 1531 there were five: two for Greek, two for Hebrew, and one for mathematics; a regius professor of Latin was added in 1534; and thus a new Trilingue was established, which was in time to grow into the Collège de France. More was involved in this than programmes of purely literary reform: a new attitude to advanced study is shown at Louvain and at the embryo Collège de France. This is vividly illustrated by the career of Ramus (Pierre de la Ramée, d. 1572), a university man if ever there was one, but one whose unavailing attempts to rejuvenate traditional teaching encountered fierce resistance in Paris. For him the new royal foundation, where he taught from 1551 to 1562, was not an opportunity for radical *innovation, but an environment for teaching the curriculum in a spirit of freedom which had died in the university itself.

All the educational changes noted above were carried out in a period when doctrinal disputes were growing harsher. Religious differences, between reformer and orthodox, and between one kind of reformed church and another, influenced schools and universities in several important respects. Since the old school was essentially clerical and the newer school aimed at combining learning and devotion in a *pietas litterata*, a dispute about the nature of religion was to some extent a dispute about the character of education itself. Moreover, reformers attached importance to a direct approach to the Scriptures which also had pedagogical implications. The destruction of old educational endowments was involved in the establishment of new ones, while the disorders attendant on reform physically disrupted some schools and universities and bequeathed traditions of *odium theologicum* which poisoned the atmosphere of lecture and classroom. Above all, the progress of the Reformation and Counter-Reformation increased the already considerable control over education exercised by the civil magistrate: the prince or town council emerged as arbiter of the destinies of schools and universities.

The removal of the incentive of a career in the church was a particular difficulty in Protestant countries. As already noted, the hope of securing preferment had been a powerful attraction among all classes in the pre-Reformation period. When that disappeared, so also (it seemed to many at the time) disappeared the serious scholar. The children of the gentry still went to school and university, but they had small ambition for the few posts available even in a relatively well-endowed church like that in England, still less to be preachers in the continental reformed churches. In one of his sermons Latimer complains that 'there are none but great men's sons in colleges and their fathers look not to have them preachers'. Similar complaints are heard from Germany. Luther himself in 1524 and again in

1530 connected the absence of the old priesthood with the paucity of candidates for learning and even advocated compulsory education under state sanctions. Even aside from the absence of numerous livings, the polemics of the reformers on the value of labour and the iniquities of the priesthood had a discouraging effect. The Margrave George of Ansbach in 1531 blamed the situation on 'those preachers who inveigh so strongly against study and teach that children should be trained up as manual workers'. Yet if the vernacular Bible was the sole sure road to salvation, why should the child bother with Latin and Greek?

Merely on the level of provision of funds for education the process of reformation had a disturbing effect. Certainly it was the intention of those who confiscated church lands that these should be in part reallocated to educational purposes. In 1543, for example, Duke Maurice of Saxony in agreement with the estates, allocated the endowments of three convents at Pforta, Meissen and Grimma to the provision of a school in each of these three places; yet the properties were the subject of much uncertainty and proved inadequate to the demands put upon them. Much the same is true of the schools established by town councils, such as the academy created from Carmelite property at Augsburg in 1531 where the town authorities had to add to the endowment. Prior to the Reformation there were large numbers of teaching posts attached to church livings: these disappeared, and in general the teacher was dependent not only on fees but also on the fluctuating charity and irregular resources of a prince or a municipality. As a result, the most auspicious schools found it hard to retain the services of a good master, and time which should have been spent in teaching was consumed in the composition of memorials to the authorities, or in the exercise of a petty trade or in efforts to obtain another post. To send his class round the town begging was a frequent device of the German teacher. At Münster there were six different masters between 1537 and 1541. Moreover, the impetus to the provision of educational facilities had been directed mainly to the creation of Latin schools and the old 'writing' or 'German' schools were left to men who were failures in any more lucrative walk of life. At Frankfurt-am-Main in 1531 a shoemaker petitioned the council for permission to set up a German school on the grounds that times were bad; at Augsburg in 1551 a bookbinder made a similar request. There seems no doubt that in England the Reformation as a whole seriously disturbed the course of secondary and elementary education, but the severity of this may well have been exaggerated, and in particular the effects of the chantry commission established in 1547 probably had far less evil consequences than has been supposed.[1] At any rate the developments in England, like those on the continent, did not long

1 Cf. above, p. 281.

interrupt the increase in educational facilities and they further encouraged the already noticeable trend towards the secular control of schools.

Though the agitated and complaisant dons of Oxford and Cambridge feared that Henry and his son might proceed to a more general dissolution, only the monastic colleges at Oxford and Cambridge disappeared as a result of the Reformation and the income of the majority of the colleges was not affected. In Germany the Reformation had more serious consequences for the finances of higher education. Endowments of colleges and of chairs were confiscated by prince or town magistrates, and prebends in collegiate churches attached to teaching posts were swept away. Three new universities, Marburg (1527), Königsberg (1544) and Jena (1558) in particular competed for funds with all the other political commitments of their princely founders. The local Maecenas often proved an unsteady support and university emoluments were as low as they were paid irregularly. As with schools, so with universities we find repeated protestations of poverty and endless claims for help: the distinguished professor of Greek at Heidelberg, Micyllus (Molshem), memorialised the university in 1537 on the impossibility of keeping up appearances on sixty florins a year even if he had been a single man, as he was not; the response of the university was to add a further twenty florins to his stipend; the elector palatine, who was then approached, suggested that Micyllus should be dismissed. Just as schoolmasters begged and peddled to make ends meet, so professors in universities were compelled to augment their pay by other means than teaching, and at Heidelberg the 1558 statutes allowed professors to retail a stipulated quantity of wine each year. In Catholic Germany, pay and conditions of employment were only less chaotic and there too an unwilling prince or town council had often to make good the devastation of mismanagement and inflation.

To the disorders produced in finance and administration the changes in religion added the disruption of polemical theology and the vicissitudes occasioned by shifts in political control. In this respect also the experience of England was mild compared with the experience of Germany. The variations in Henry VIII's policies were reflected in the universities only to a slight degree: doctrine as such was for some time scarcely an issue, and the extirpation of heresy at Cambridge and Oxford hardly affected the universities. But under Edward VI and Mary, representing as these reigns did the two poles of contemporary religious opposition, the universities underwent something of the upheavals of continental institutions. At Oxford, for instance, under Edward Protestant theology was foisted on the university in the person of Peter Martyr and the university was rent by disputes over the nature of the sacrament; a good many dons left, only to return under Mary, when their enemies fled and two Spanish friars were introduced to undo the Protestant damage. In Germany theology was a

more potent solvent, princely action more drastic. At Tübingen in 1535, for example, those teachers who adhered to the old faith were forcibly expelled; at Leipzig, by the advice of the theologians at Wittenberg, the duke of Saxony deprived all professors who did not accept Lutheranism in 1539. Equally demoralising were the perpetual disputes between theologians and the expressly tendentious nature of teaching in all subjects. Protestants disputed with Protestants: the differences between Luther and Zwingli provoked violent academic quarrels; especially after Luther's death the Lutheran camp was distracted by the disciples of Melanchthon and those of Flacius Illyricus. Wittenberg adhered to Melanchthon, Jena was the headquarters of the Flacian party, and every Protestant university was disturbed by these disputes. Later Calvinism added to Protestant dissension. In those parts where Catholicism was maintained there were naturally fewer troubles of this kind, though the arrival of the Jesuits frequently provoked resentment which sometimes led to open hostility on the part of the old university, as at Ingolstadt in 1556 and at Vienna in 1559. In France there was doubt and division until a hardening orthodoxy compelled the moderate reformers, who had been numerous in university circles, to choose for one side or the other. The Sorbonne was the dogged champion of the old way and it was as truculent with the Jesuits as it had been with the 'lecteurs royaux'. Only in Italy, where university teaching was in general declining at this period, and in Spain where most universities pursued a medieval curriculum untouched by change, were there few doctrinal difficulties: in both countries an effective Inquisition exercised surveillance over university heterodoxy; in both countries the Jesuits were to dominate the educational scene.

The effects of the factors touched on above account for a general decline in university attendance, noted at the time and probably more severe in Germany than elsewhere (see table). The figures of attendance at the universities listed in the table are rising at the start of the century, continuing a trend which is almost unbroken during the fifteenth century. This expansion comes to a stop in the 1520s: for comparable figures it is necessary to go back to the early fifteenth century; and the high point reached in the quinquennium ending in 1515 is not attained again until 1556–60. There is no escaping the conclusion that in Germany the Reformation had very serious though temporary repercussions on university attendances. It has been claimed that a decline, similar if less severe, occurred at Oxford. The figures available do not lend themselves to any exact calculations, as matriculation records are not available at this period. There are, however, certain indications that there was a recession. The Register,[1] which is a defective document, records degrees being

---

1 Oxford Historical Society, ed. C. W. Boase, 1885.

Estimated yearly attendance at German universities 1501–1560 (average of 5-year periods)[a]

Years	Heidelberg	Cologne	Erfurt	Leipzig	Rostock	Greifswald	Freiburg	Ingolstadt	Tübingen	Wittenberg	Frankfurt an der Oder	Marburg	Königsberg	Dillingen	Jena	Total
1501–5	201	586	461	740	322	81	207	172	155	527	—	—	—	—	—	3346
1506–10	266	556	473	789	333	63	208	291	219	308	—	—	—	—	—	3687
1511–15	299	581	502	819	359	77	203	371	212	364	257	—	—	—	—	4041
1516–20	247	469	541	705	284	72	170	422	161	600	273	—	—	—	—	3850
1521–5	156	322	95	331	140	44	147	184	123	379	93	—	—	—	—	1994
1526–30	84	152	44	175	37	—	77	149	95	250	49	47	—	—	—	1135
1531–5	140	121	108	256	44	—	131	154	105	371	75	140	—	—	—	1645
1536–40	170	173	124	301	100	—	177	229	156	586	112	182	—	—	—	2307
1541–5	178	129	136	468	122	?	203	406	194	879	201	205	—	—	—	3121
1546–50	181	228	302	489	182	?	282	360	224	640	288	154	125	—	—	3455
1551–5	153	243	158	378	224	?	257	392	312	866	286	206	63	132	—	3670
1556–60	187	261	156	490	177	?	341	402	341	960	349	203	80	118	269	4334

[a]Franz Eulenburg, 'Die Frequenz der deutschen Universitäten von ihrer Gründung bis zur Gegenwart', *Abhandlungen der philologisch–historischen–Klasse der königlichen sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften*, 24 (Leipzig, 1904), 55, 102–3. The table omits Trier and Mainz and the dubious figures for Greifswald after the university there resumed in 1539. For Eulenburg's method of calculating the above figures see ibid. pp. 7–45. The Vienna figures show that the lowest point occurred in the 1530s; F. Eulenburg, 'Ueber die Frequenz der deutschen Universitäten in früherer Zeit', *Jahrbücher für Nationalökonomie und Statistik*, III. Folge, 13 (Jena, 1897), 543.

conferred for the first time on an average of over 150 persons *per annum* between 1505 and 1509; thereafter quinquennial averages seem to drop: 1520–4, 116; 1540–4, 70; 1555–9, 67. Yet in 1552 about 1,000 members of the university were listed, and for a university now entirely collegiate in structure the total seems respectable enough. Numbers rose again in Elizabeth's reign, and here too the religious and political disturbances of the mid-century seem to have had repercussions on attendance which, however marked, were not long lasting.

   All in all, the most significant single aspect of education in this period is the way in which it fell increasingly under the control of the secular authority, town council or prince. Admittedly this is not exactly a new phenomenon. At any rate from the fourteenth century, when the 'laicisation' of society in its broadest aspect began to be apparent, the university and to a lesser extent the secondary school were obvious targets for the ambitious civil ruler. As directly dependent on papal bulls, supra-national therefore and peopled by students and doctors who looked to the curia for privilege and preferment, the university presented an aspect of the church most calculated to interest sovereigns bent on controlling the church in their domains. Moreover, the feeling was in the air that a country of any standing should have its own *studium generale*, just as in urban communities the town council frequently evinced similar sentiments. Hence in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries we find much evidence of concern among princes and magistrates for the control of old universities and the establishment of new ones. In Italy, where the church had played a small part in the university from the start, this was naturally most evident. But in the north universities were established by dukes and kings as symbols of their regalian rights; and such establishments were frequently bolstered up by a prohibition of study in any other *studium* which the ruler laid on his people. The great centres of the north, Paris and Oxford, were greatly humbled. Paris, though still cosmopolitan, was damaged by the lavish creation of universities in Germany, Scotland, and elsewhere in France; and by espousing Gallicanism found itself in a constricting alliance with the monarchy. Oxford was made obedient to the royal will by the events of the schism and by the episode of Wycliffe. At Oxford and Cambridge the chancellor was virtually a royal nominee, while royal munificence was a sorry substitute for genuine independence.

   Developments such as these point the way to the supremacy of the prince finally brought about in the sixteenth century. In England the first major occasion for a display of the king's latent authority was the divorce of Catherine of Aragon; subsequent changes were accepted with a minimum of trouble, hasty messengers being despatched to ingratiate the university with whoever was regarded as powerful at court. The universities, like the monasteries, suffered visitation, and under Edward and Mary

two royal commissions undertook a complete review of the universities. The sweeping powers of the commissioners were a forcible reminder that the king had become pope in England. Though in day-to-day administration the Crown had little incentive to intervene, its powers were enormous: at Oxford the royal inclination could settle the Greeks' and Trojans' hostilities; it could determine precisely who should vote in the election of proctors. Behind the bland concern of Henry or his successors for the well-being of universities, the flustered dons discerned the terrible omnicompetence of king and Parliament. The monasteries had been dissolved; so had the chantries; might it not be soon the turn of Oxford and Cambridge? Yet the influence of the Crown in England had important compensations. It protected Greek against conservatives; it founded lectureships in the liberal disciplines; the mild improvements in curriculum introduced by the Oxford commissioners of 1549 would have taken years to introduce without royal sanction and were on the whole in line with the university's needs.

In France the position of the king was very similar. It is a measure of the greater standing of the Paris theologians that they were able to persist in a resistance to Francis I's tolerant attitude to the new learning and Erasmian reform; but their resistance was in the end fruitless, and what helped them was a change in Francis I's attitude after the *placards* of 1534; even then the incipient Collège de France survived as a result of royal protection. In Germany, the prince was even more obtrusively master of his seats of learning. As already mentioned three Protestant universities were created by princely action: Marburg, Königsberg and Jena. These institutions were at once faced with the problem of their status, for the true university required the granting by the pope of the right to confer degrees of universal validity, the *ius ubique docendi*. Marburg may have secured such a privilege from Charles V, as Jena did from his successor, but neither pope nor emperor would recognise the university of Königsberg. New institutions such as these were naturally intended to serve the interests of their creators. Marburg professors could be dismissed by the prince, who also was the judge of their orthodoxy. At Königsberg staff and students took an oath of loyalty not so much to the university as to the faith and the duke of Prussia: 'adversus ... Principem ... nulla me ratione ac via nec publice nec privatim, improbe, impie, seditiose, hostiliter consulturum, facturum moliturumve'. In older universities which accepted the new faith the process was not dissimilar, and at Wittenberg, home of Lutheranism, the university, endowed like the rest by an act of state out of the lands of the church, had become by 1550 a function of the state church. When Greifswald was reopened in 1539 it was equally dependent on the liberality of the duke of Pomerania. Where the university lacked a prince, or, as at Erfurt, the prince was not at hand, the town

council tended to assume control. Erfurt council imposed Protestantism despite the technical independence of the university; at Basel, the council and the university reflected rapid changes in the pendulum of religious obedience. But the municipal university which most clearly displays the control of the magistrates was Geneva. There in 1559 Calvin re-erected an *Academia Genevensis* which was completely under the authority of the local theocracy. The king's acquisition of control over the university in his lands was by no means confined to Protestant Europe. At Vienna Archduke Ferdinand from 1533 onwards brought the university under his direction, and a series of decrees, aimed at reform, put the institution in a state of utter subservience: overseers were appointed to enforce regular lecturing and the details of instruction were given close government supervision. At Ingolstadt the duke of Bavaria also issued 'reform ordinances' which had the same result. The only new university in Catholic Germany in the period was Dillingen, established by the bishop of Augsburg and recognised by the pope in 1551. The secondary school was obviously of less direct interest to the prince, although in Germany the local ruler occasionally interfered to secure religious uniformity among teachers, and in England the elementary Primer and the Latin grammar book were both regulated by government by the end of Henry VIII's reign.

The process of 'territorialisation' of the world of learning was, as already indicated, at work before the Reformation, but in the decades covered by this volume it entered upon a decisive stage. No more in a sense than one phase of an attack by princes on the existence in their dominions of institutions which were aspects of a universal church – monastic orders, canon law, universities – the subjection of the scholar was perhaps severer in its effects. It contradicted that hope of a republic of letters which had seemed attainable to humanists like Erasmus. It made inevitable in the long run the association of science and national prestige and gave governments the right to regard academic institutions as existing primarily for public purposes defined by the statesman. And for a time it produced a notable stagnation in higher studies as pursued in universities. This was most marked in Germany, and it has been plausibly argued that the decline in the vitality of German letters and German erudition began, before the Thirty Years War, in the 'stunted, lifeless, academic institutions' which resulted from the movements described above. Germany, however, is only a special case of a general phenomenon. The post-Reformation university in Europe as a whole entered on a period when, though its social importance was steadily mounting with the convention that youths of gentle family should attend for a while, its academic importance in the narrow sense tended to diminish. The enormous intellectual advances of the seventeenth century are only to a slight degree

associated with the doctors and the dons of the moribund faculties. Ironically enough, when universities did revive in a much later period, it was in Germany that the renaissance took place.

It is proper to ask what practical consequences were involved in the educational changes we have considered. What was the response to the new grammar school and the university as changed by reformers, both academic and princely? This question is more readily put than answered, though some information is available.

As far as the bulk of the population is concerned, the peasantry had small interest in the professions of the humanist educator. Some indications there are of a positive craving for the literary facilities offered by schools among persons whom their station in society destined for the humbler tasks. Thus Robert Williams, 'keppynge shepe uppon Seynbury hill', in 1546 scribbled in a book he had just bought a devout condemnation of a prohibition (34 & 35 Henry VIII, c. 1) of Bible reading by all laity save the gentry and prosperous merchants. Yet Robert Williams was inspired by religion rather than by education, and the universal complaint of the schoolmaster was that in agricultural communities children attended classes only when it suited them: in Germany it was stated that the peasants sent their children to school only in the winter, and in the summer used them in farm work.

The grammar school was, however, directed at gentry and burgesses. Although clearly the tradition was growing that a period at school was a necessary part of the upbringing of a boy, there is a good deal of evidence that such attendance was perfunctory and not regarded highly by either boy or parent. What direct relevance had Latin grammar to the squire's son? For Elyot it was necessary to learn Latin to become a 'governor' in the full sense. Yet, in a period when secular administration was livelier than it had ever been, how many of the main 'governors' were scholar-gentlemen in Elyot's sense? Cromwell, who was emphatically not a university man, replaced Wolsey, who was: parents could scarcely be blamed for taking the hint, and Elyot was demanding too much when he urged that boys should not be taken from school when they were fourteen. The attendance of the gentry at school and university in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries is well attested and was clearly growing.[1] While this must have fertilised the mind of the occasional poet and statesman, for the majority it was a mere convention: what could the average squire find helpful in Latin grammar? As for the merchants, practical training in accounts and the acquisition of modern languages were not to be had at the grammar school. 'The wealthy citizen, therefore, after the first year or

---

1 J. H. Hexter, 'The education of the aristocracy in the Renaissance', *Reappraisals in History*, (1961), 45–70.

two, continued to send his boy to Switzerland, or England, to Venice or
Bruges, to learn the great commercial languages.' Cordier in one of his
colloquies explains that parents 'were restless under long-continued and
apparently unprofitable instruction in Latin'. His plea that Latin was the
proper language for international relations cannot have carried much
conviction in mercantile communities. In fact, with few exceptions, the
success of the sixteenth-century school seems to have been in inverse
proportion to its humanist content. English grammar schools, which
maintained an old tradition, gradually adopted a new curriculum, but
they did so gently and without marked educational optimism. On the
continent, and especially in Germany, the tally of bankrupt academies is a
long one. The success of Sturm at Strassburg, of Neander at Ilfeld, of
Platter at Basel, was largely personal; such men, in Montaigne's phrase,
had 'plutost la teste bien faicte que bien plaine'; and their achievements
must be balanced against the failures of scores of humanist scholars of
much greater intellectual attainments. The Collège de Guyenne at Bor-
deaux, where Montaigne went to school, was exceptional, just as his
earlier home upbringing had been exceptional. For Montaigne enjoyed
the kind of education prescribed by the theorists. He learnt Latin from the
cradle in a household which had been geared by his father to the
production of a model child. His mother and the servants picked up
enough Latin to talk to him and he thus mastered the language 'sans art,
sans livre, sans grammaire ou precepte, sans fouet et sans larmes'. Later at
the school under Gouvéa, 'sans comparaison le plus grand principal en
France', the boy had as teacher an eminent Grecian like Nicolas Grouchy
and an outstanding Latinist like George Buchanan. Yet he felt his school
days to have been without much fruitfulness; his facility in Latin declined;
and the product of a humanist education of the most perfect kind used his
Latin only to point a moral or adorn an opinion.

A further commentary on the school and university of the Renaissance
is provided by the emergence of learned academies of various kinds. This
is admittedly hardly a subject which falls within the history of education.
Yet it is surely of some significance that in the middle ages such groups of
adults, coteries drawn together not only by personal intimacy but by
common intellectual pursuits, are hardly to be found. In Italy in the
fifteenth century such associations develop, the pattern being set by the
Platonic Academy at Florence. In Italy they are exceedingly numerous in
the sixteenth century, some beginning to display a formal constitutiona-
lism which was later to be one of the characteristics of the academic
tradition, and some the specialisation which marks bodies such as the
Accademia della Crusca at Florence (1552), devoted to the Italian
language. In the north informal groups are found in humanist circles: the
sodalitas which has been called the 'Adwert Academy' is an early instance;

in a looser sense still 'Doctors' Commons' in London was, it seems, largely a club for scholars and above all for civil lawyers, while the Inns of Court performed a similar service for the common lawyers. In France in particular, much influenced by Italian example, the academic movement was noticeably strong. In the event, corporations of savants and amateurs of learning, stemming from these slender beginnings, did much in the centuries ahead to provide the inspiration for, and to control the evolution of, the scholarship and science which had formerly been the monopoly of the universities and schools.

CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND POLITICAL THOUGHT IN WESTERN EUROPE

ALONG the western seaboard of Europe, the first half of the sixteenth century witnessed the consolidation of national states. The smaller countries were not affected. Scotland had to await the arrival of the Reformation in the 1560s and may be ignored in this survey; Burgundy was undergoing a process of centralisation which did not prevent her break-up and redistribution in the next hundred years; Portugal had already achieved all the organisation she was to have until the Spanish occupation in 1580. Thus the story must concentrate on three main units – England, France and the Spanish kingdoms. In all these countries, medieval kingship began to fail early in the fifteenth century. The Hundred Years War with attendant and subsequent civil wars wrecked both the French and English monarchies, while the kings of Castile and Aragon developed sudden weaknesses in the face of local and class independence. The second half of the century therefore saw simultaneous attempts to restore strong monarchy as the only safeguard of law and order. The Catholic kings in Spain, Charles VII and Louis XI in France, the Yorkists and Henry VII in England – all pursued much the same ends by much the same methods. But if these restorers of peace and good government naturally used the means to hand and were therefore 'medieval', it is not surprising that the next generation, proceeding from there, should have more consistently invented and innovated. In England the break with Rome involved a constitutional revolution in which the independent national state was deliberately set up, administration reformed, the principle of legislative sovereignty worked out in practice. In Spain, the reign of Charles V gave much greater political unity to realms hitherto held together by marriage only; this and the introduction of Burgundian methods of government led to marked progress in centralisation. In France, the reign of Francis I witnessed rapid moves towards royal absolutism and consolidation disguised behind a façade of traditionalism. Everywhere, much the same problems elicited answers that, despite significant differences, had much in common.

Any discussion of constitutional problems must start with the monarchy. Kingship symbolised national unity and received a degree of homage which at times approached idolatry. The previous decline of medieval kingship laid the foundation for an exaggerated devotion to monarchy in the next age. For it was through monarchy that a species of

478

secular salvation came, and one need not wonder at the submission to the new messiah. His position was strong: traditionally God's representative on earth, ruler and administrator, foundation of justice and head of the feudal hierarchy, he now stood out also as the saviour of his country and embodiment of its self-conscious nationhood. More practically, he was also the fountain of all honour and advancement. Men looked for favour and promotion at the hands of superiors whose service they would do in their turn: and kings commanded far and away the greatest amount of patronage. A growing ceremonial, most gorgeous in France but most formal in England, set monarchs apart from lesser men; the decline of the old nobility and the growth of a new one created by royal favour tended to make the highest in the land their creatures; the age looked ripe for a full blossoming of royal absolutism.

However, the many expressions of devoted sentiment and the evident signs of frequent despotic action must not disguise the absence of genuine absolutism and perfect monarchical rule. Charles V, handicapped by being not one king but several, succeeded in weakening the liberties of Castile but remained half chained by those of Aragon and Burgundy. In England (as we shall see) it is possible to discern behind the bluster and wilfulness of Henry VIII a remarkable degree of constitutionalism and limitation upon the royal will. Even France, where under Francis I and Henry II long strides were taken away from the uncertainties of medieval kingship, was to demonstrate during the Wars of Religion how insecurely based these achievements were. All the same, the French monarchy came nearest to the ideal. The history of that endeavour went back to the closing years of the Hundred Years War when Charles VII began to create a monarchy capable of standing above the rival jealousies and free to tax and legislate at will. The work of Louis XI, Louis XII and Francis I resulted in a monarchy superficially still medieval, but in truth much more like the open absolutism of the seventeenth century. By 1546 a Venetian envoy thought that the French had handed over all their liberties to their king. Even though, in the customary manner, its power might be defined by the lawyers in laboriously contrived prerogatives – the rights to make law, appoint officers, decide on peace and war, exercise ultimate jurisdiction and coin money – the French monarchy acted, where physical power permitted, without regard to limitations or defined rights. Its power to legislate was limited by the notion of unchangeable fundamental laws, but these proved meaningless in fact; the *parlements* of the provinces, and especially of Paris, could refuse to register an edict and thereby render it void, but they never did. In its theory, its powers, and its unconfined freedom of action, the French monarchy was a model to monarchists everywhere and, as early as the 1530s, a byword for tyranny to others.

Charles V occupied a very different position, if only because he never

ruled a unitary state. Even France remained in a way a conglomerate of fiefs and territories. Though policy and lucky accidents made possible the absorption of many of the great fiefs (Brittanny between 1492 and 1532, Bourbon in 1523, Alençon in 1525, and ultimately – with Henry IV – the Bourbon lands of Navarre), and though one financial organisation covered the whole realm (the *généralités*), the kingdom remained a gathering of diverse provincial and social organisations, customs and rights to which the monarchy gave unity by something like a series of individual contracts.[1] But this diversity and confusion was simplicity itself by the side of Charles V's empire. Stretching from the Netherlands to Sicily, from Castile to (for a time) Bohemia, it never had any unity except in the person of the ruler who retained his separate character in every part of his dominions. As has been seen, there was no such thing as an imperial monarchical organisation: only a series of rulers – from the Holy Roman Emperor through the kings of Castile, Aragon and the two Sicilies, down to the dukes of Milan and Burgundy, the counts of Artois, Flanders and Holland, and so forth, all of whom happened to be the same man.[2] In every one of his realms Charles's position was different. Even in the centre of his power, in Spain, he was reasonably absolute in Castile but subjected to remnants of oligarchic control in Aragon. Ferdinand and Isabella had of necessity been content to revive the monarchical powers of the middle ages, to suppress excessive noble influence, and to adapt such popular institutions as the *Hermandad* (a police organisation mainly supported by the towns) for their own monarchical purposes. Such unity as there was beyond the marriage of the rulers depended in part on the submission of the lesser country, Aragon, to the greater Castile and in part on the political uses of the Inquisition, established in 1481 and from the first so organised as to control both realms.

In these circumstances it is not surprising to find that Charles V made no major attempt to assert novel monarchical doctrines, but that on the other hand the very necessity of his person to the coherence of his dominions gave him an unusually strong hand in asserting personal monarchy. He was least able, perhaps, to do so in the Low Countries. Though he completed the Seventeen Provinces by acquiring Tournai (1521), Friesland (1523), Overijssel and Utrecht (1528), Groningen (1536) and Guelders (1543), and withdrew Artois and Flanders from French suzerainty (1529), and though he used the advanced organisation of that agglomerate duchy as a model for his heterogeneous lands in general, he

1 Cf. R. Doucet, *Les Institutions de la France au XVI siècle* (1948), vol. I, p. 36: 'Le caractère contractuel de cette royauté au xvi siècle, qui constitue une transition entre la royauté féodale de passé et la royauté absolue qui acheva de s'organiser au temps de Louis XIV.'
2 Cf. above, Ch. XIII.

rarely visited the Netherlands after his early years and left them to the efficient administration of female relatives. In the fifteenth century the provinces had been given a precarious unity through a central bureaucracy (largely staffed by legists from Franche-Comté) and a general assembly of Estates; but to the end of Charles V's reign the provincial Estates mattered more than the States General, provincial customs and privileges remained untouched, and the individual provinces obeyed him neither as emperor nor as king of Spain, nor even as archduke of Burgundy, but only as their own territorial duke or count. The failure to establish a true monarchy in this small but diverse territory explains much about Philip II's difficulties in the next generation; it also throws light on Charles V's attempts to govern other vaster and equally diverse territories with some degree of uniformity.

Yet over and above the individual organisations stood the ruler, assisted by men whose interests transcended borders and were attached to him alone. If there is no particular doctrine of monarchy to be discerned in Charles V's practice – if it is true that he had to play the chameleon as he passed from one realm to another – it is also true that the impressive and wise ruler that Charles became offered a practical example of monarchical rule to which most of his dominions submitted. With all the growing bureaucracy demanded by the complications of financing and governing so vast a realm, unity and survival – and thanks to Charles's foibles all actions, too[1] – continued to depend on the monarch. In this inchoate, untheoretical way, Charles V moved away from the medieval constitutionalism of his Netherlandish and Aragonian heritage towards a bureaucratic absolutism in which Burgundian technique and Castilian power were to play the biggest part.

By comparison with these giants, the task of the English monarchy looked relatively easy. Admittedly, it was the last to recover from the medieval decline: the French revival was well under way by the reign of Louis XI (1461–83), Ferdinand and Isabella could abandon their own version of the *Hermandad* by 1498, but dynastic war in England went on till 1485 and its repercussions can be seen in attacks on potential claimants down to the end of Henry VIII's reign. However, unlike his continental counterparts, the English king needed only to revive the powers and methods of medieval monarchy by reapplying the personal action of the king in his household. Medieval England had enjoyed the unusual benefits of a compact territory and, by medieval standards, an exceptionally powerful and effective monarchy. It is true that the early Tudors still had some consolidating to do: in 1536 Wales was incorporated with England, while a general act against franchises finally subjected all partially exempt

1   Cf. above, pp. 348f.

regions to the national state and the king's writ. The problem of Ireland remained unsolved. Henry VII abandoned a promising but expensive attempt at Anglicisation in favour of the old uneasy reliance on local nobles; and Henry VIII (in 1540) abandoned Cromwell's policy of conquest and infiltration – though a year later, reluctantly yielding to pressure from Ireland, he embodied an empty claim in the new title of king there. Despite all this, the Tudors ruled a country which, as medieval conditions went, had long been uncommonly united. Above all, it obeyed one law – the common law of England, developed since the twelfth century and, although so ancient by this time that it stood in danger of ossification, yet capable of selfgenerated renewal in the half century after 1490. As against this, France harboured a variety of provincial customs and laws. During Francis I's reign many attempts were made to produce a general code based on the Roman law, less because this offered support for despotism than because the only competent experts were civilians; but in the end only a partial codification of individual customs was achieved. Charles V's empire had as many codes as countries and the notion of one common set of laws was too absurd even to be considered.[1] The English common law might be thought inadequate and in need of reform (which it was), and by some even barbarous and worthy of abolition (which it was not); but it provided unity in the realm on a foundation of sectional and personal rights, while elsewhere unification with the help of the monarchical Roman law led to absolutism.

If subjects had their rights, so had the kings of England with their prerogative, a set of known privileges and a residue of undefined powers intended to enable a ruler to govern. In both England and France royal lands, customs, duties and rights attached to feudal lordship provided the basis of royal finance; and nearly all of this belonged to the Crown by prerogative right. But government was becoming ever more expensive, as internal and external administration demanded larger staffs, as war got much more complicated, and as the general rise in prices squeezed the fixed incomes of crowned heads. Here both Francis and the emperor were better off than Henry VIII: strictly speaking, extraordinary taxation always required parliamentary consent in England. There were ways of getting round this, such as allegedly free gifts (benevolences – declared illegal in 1483) or forced loans which were never paid back, but none of these expedients could be used too often or too blatantly, as Wolsey discovered in 1524 when a series of attempts to supplement inadequate parliamentary grants resulted in near-rebellion over a wide area and had to be given up. Nor could English kings make law, one of the prerogatives attached to the French monarchy. An act of 1539 declared that royal

---

1 Except by Gattinara; above, p. 345.

proclamations had the same claims to obedience as acts of Parliament; but proclamations could not be used for major issues because they could not create treasons or felonies. They promulgated minor and temporary government orders, and the act was mainly intended to provide machinery for the enforcement of these. The English monarchy, unable to tax and legislate by its mere will, lacked the pillars upon which a true despotism could be erected – which is not to imply that it was ever intended to build one.

Against this must be set the fact of extensive king-worship in the England of Henry VIII – a profusion of adulatory and obsequious language which has often been allowed to obscure the reality of the situation – and the accident of politics which led to much thinking about monarchy in England. This was Henry's quarrel with the pope. It was always likely that the peculiar problems of national sovereignty would crystallise in such a conflict, for the papacy claimed not only the spiritual allegiance of Latin Christendom but a species of direct rule over all clergy everywhere. The Spanish realms solved the problem by combining a solid adherence to the spiritual supremacy of Rome with a firm insistence on control over the national church: the Crown made all appointments of bishops and the like and enforced obedience upon the clergy, but it put no obstacles in the way of the Spanish church's jurisdictional and fiscal relations with the papacy. After Charles V's victory in Italy, when the pope became the emperor's chaplain, the problem really ceased to exist. France had for a long time seemed most likely to sever her connections with Rome: in 1511 Louis XII, at war with Julius II, had even called a church council on his own responsibility. But the compromise arrived at in the Concordat of 1516 established a situation very similar to that prevailing in Spain and gave the French Crown all it wanted.[1] It also left England as the pope's most valuable source of money and patronage, a fact which played its part in Clement VII's stubborn opposition to all concessions to Henry VIII.

Even so, however, that quarrel might in the end have been solved on similar lines (as Henry first hoped to solve it) but for the international situation which kept Clement unrelenting and the decision, taken under Thomas Cromwell's influence, to use the opportunity for a complete break. The most papalist of monarchies thus went right over to the other extreme. The step rested on a clearly conceived political doctrine. England was an empire – a state sovereign within its borders and free from all outside control – and it was governed by a king who also exercised the powers of supreme head in the national church. The monarchy thus received the biggest single accession to its powers since its inception, and it

1 Cf. above, pp. 226f.

matters little that precedents for such claims may be traced in the centuries before the rise of the papal monarchy in the church (that is, before c. 1000). In theory, at least, Henry VIII's double role, even in the feeble hands of his son and the reluctant hands of his elder daughter, represented an elevation of kingship unparalleled elsewhere in western Europe. Whether in fact his monarchical position was equal to that of Francis I remains to be seen: his power over the church was complete enough, and his personality sufficed to leave a quite illusory air of easy despotism.

In all the countries of the West monarchy thus became the necessary embodiment of statehood and acquired in the process both a more wonderful aura and extensive practical powers. That this development – however well foreshadowed, however incomplete – amounted to something new can be traced in the way in which these monarchies proceeded to build up a more sophisticated and more competent machinery of government. The similarities are marked, but attempts to trace ancestry and influence seem unlikely to lead anywhere. There occurred a general rejection of the medieval idea of administration – by the king, his friends and his entourage, or, to use the English term, his Household – and the gradual creation of what, making allowances for the age, one may call a professional and bureaucratic organisation. Under the influence of civil lawyers, fifteenth-century Burgundy had shown the way, and much of the system used by Charles V in Spain bore the imprint of his Netherlandish advisers. During the years of reconstruction both France and England had been content with traditional methods, but the sixteenth century saw notable innovations. The revolution was plainest in England where Thomas Cromwell produced a sudden and coherent set of reforms in the 1530s. Wolsey, content to govern as the single all-powerful head, still used the system of Henry VII, though he gave it a little more organisation than that king, personally in charge and only concerned with results, had thought necessary. The subject of administrative reform is much too wide to permit here more than a most cursory examination. Three main characteristic lines all contributed to the replacement of 'Household' by 'national' bureaucratic methods: the use of royal councils, the rise of new or newly important officials, and widespread reforms in financial organisation.

The characteristic instrument of sixteenth-century monarchy was the royal council. Councils had a long and complicated medieval history in which elements of royal ascendancy (choice of councillors, control of actions) mingled with ambitions to use councils as controls on monarchical despotism. The decline of the old nobility and the consolidation of royal power which marked the later fifteenth century generally produced councils chosen and controlled by the Crown and absolutely faithful to it. There then followed a growing bureaucratisation, marked both by the

introduction of organisation (clerks, records, procedure) and by a tend-
ency to specialise the various functions of the council in separate institu-
tions. In 1497 and 1498 specific orders transferred the judicial work of the
French council to an offshoot known as the *grand conseil*, political and
administrative duties remaining in the hands of a body variously described
as *conseil du roi, conseil privé*, or *conseil d'état*. Between 1534 and 1540,
following upon earlier experiments sponsored by Wolsey, the English
Privy Council was created out of an inner ring of leading councillors
vaguely discernible before within the large whole council; its final estab-
lishment in 1540 marked an organic division between it and the council as
a court of law, the Court of Star Chamber. At the same time, the same
men could and did sit on either part of the council in both countries, a fact
which, while it reminds one that sixteenth-century bureaucracy was never
utterly clear cut, must not be used to deny the perfectly evident institu-
tional distinctions. Francis I further relied on an inner ring within his
Council of State (even as only a few of the English privy councillors did
most of the work), and Henry VIII later started subdivisions in that body
(as did Mary Tudor in hers); but these further changes assumed institu-
tional form only in the next century, when again they can be paralleled in
England. In our period both France and England used restricted Privy
Councils composed of a few reliable nobles and sometimes bishops, the
great officers of state, and some professional politicians or administrators
(England leaning to the former and France to the latter); the control was
the king's, though in neither country was it common for the king to attend
council meetings.

However, the monarchy which really exploited the council was that of
Charles V. Things had moved in the familiar way in such constituent parts
of the empire as Castile or Aragon or the Netherlands. In the former two,
the Catholic kings reorganised the old royal councils by restricting their
membership, imposing bureaucracy and paperwork, and using them as
purely royal instruments. There had been little specialisation before the
Habsburgs. In Burgundy, on the other hand, Philip the Good (1419–67)
had established control through a Privy Council for affairs and a Great
Council for justice. Charles V greatly developed these beginnings. He
assisted specialisation at Brussels where the regent now had three
councils – that of State for political affairs (and to accommodate the
nobility), a Privy Council of professionals to administer, and a Council of
Finance. In the Spanish Peninsula three sets of councils existed. There
were the honourable and somewhat formal assemblies concerned with
general and elevated matters: a Council of State, established in 1526,
which, though ostensibly it advised on matters of state, was but a
meaningless sop to the grandees, a Council of War, convened when
necessary, and the Council of the Inquisition, sometimes one and some-

times two for the two kingdoms but always under one president. Second, each unit of the realm had its proper governing council: that of Aragon was given the complete organisation of that of Castile in 1522, and another was established for Italy in 1555 to assist Prince Philip on taking over there from his father. The needs of the New World led to the erection of the Council of the Indies (1524). All these councils combined administrative and judicial functions, the latter predominating. This multiplicity was given coherence in part, of course, by the person of the sovereign, but in part also by the ascendancy tacitly vested in the Council of Castile whose president acted as regent for the whole peninsula during Charles's absences. Lastly it must suffice to mention that within each kingdom there were further subordinate councils of the military orders, of the *Hermandad*, of finance, and so on, not forgetting the semi-official council of that strange and powerful sheep-herders' association, the Mesta, all of them obeying the Crown and helping to diffuse royal authority throughout the realm.

The staffing of these councils and of the administration in general posed problems which in their intensity were really new. France and Charles's empire could rely on the services of large numbers of men trained in the Roman law and desirous of an official career either in diplomacy or internal administration, but England had to look elsewhere for its civil service (though some legists were employed there, too), especially after the Reformation had ended the old reliance on the church.[1] The system which evolved grew straight out of a social organisation which placed each man in relation to a master or lord whom he served. The new civil service tended to be recruited from the servants of royal servants and ministers whose private households and offices provided the training. However, far too little is yet known about the lower ranks of the bureaucracy; there is more to be said about their betters. The old great officers did not relinquish their technical ascendancy. The lord chancellor of England and the chancellor of France remained the men of formal dignity, presiding for instance in Privy Council, but they lost their hold over administration and, except inasmuch as they were also leading councillors, also their contact with affairs. Wolsey was a medieval chancellor and as such chief – almost sole – minister; after him, chancellors were in the first place the highest judicial officers of the realm. The same happened in France, though there the ancient offices of the constable and marshals of France entered upon a new career as the nucleus of a general system of police. The

---

1 The practice of taking orders as a start to a civil-service career disappeared only gradually but was dead by the reign of Elizabeth. In all countries, but more particularly in England, it remained common to employ men of no special professional training – soldiers, often enough, in Spain and France, and gentlemen of breeding and ambition in England.

fact that Gattinara as chancellor was really Charles V's chief minister from 1518 to 1530 makes that administration as 'medieval' as Wolsey's. While retaining all the old forms and offices, the century tended to look to new ones for the real work to be done.

The reason was simple enough: the sixteenth century faced novel tasks, or at least tasks of a quite novel degree of magnitude. Internally, centralisation and consolidation meant that the central authority now took on much that had hitherto been left to subordinate units; there was also a new sense of social responsibility, most marked in English paternalism, which put burdens on government. Externally, the new diplomacy (a whole new hierarchy of ambassadors and envoys, permanent and occasional, with their staffs) and the new needs of war demanded a developed organisation. In all countries the answer was mainly found in the king's secretary. Officers peculiarly close to the person of the monarch, used to writing his correspondence, in England also entrusted with the custody of the king's most private seal, commonly trained in a knowledge of languages, and not overburdened with traditional tasks, they were eminently suited to the purposes of centralising monarchies. Even under the Catholic kings the real mainspring of government had been in two secretaries, Miguel Perez d'Almaza and his nephew Pedro Quintana. Charles V was familiar with a similar practice in Burgundy – Jean de Marnix, Margaret of Savoy's right-hand man, though he needed a titular office to sit in council, owed his importance to the inferior office of secretary – and naturally maintained it in all his dominions. After Gattinara's death in 1530 he left the office of chancellor vacant and ruled through Cobos and Granvelle, secretaries whom one must describe as secretaries of state.[1] Under each there were further ranks of secretaries in charge of departments and linking the various councils whose work it was their duty to prepare. It is not too much to say that the empire of Charles V was run by professional administrators of various eminence who generally bore the title of secretary.

England followed this trend at a relatively early date, largely because Cromwell used the secretaryship to make himself the all-powerful minister (1534). Before his day the office had been quite important because of its intrinsically close association with the Crown, but its holders had rarely sat in council and never been men of the first rank. Although Cromwell later took more distinguished offices, he started the English principal secretary on a career which never really lapsed and hardly even regressed – not even when for administrative reasons the office was divided between two men (1540). France was a little slower in turning king's secretaries into leading ministers of state: it was not until 1547 that their real power

1 Cf. above, p. 348.

was acknowledged by the formal establishment of the office, while the title *secrétaire d'état* dates only from 1559. In a monarchy more given to defining and organising by decree than that of England, these dates do represent a belated arrival at the position which Cromwell, without the full title, had occupied in the 1530s. In part this happened because the French monarchy had found in the masters of requests another office to take the strain of centralised and bureaucratic monarchy. Originally appointed to exercise a general equitable jurisdiction on the king's behalf and numbering eight when the office was first defined in 1493, these officers proved so useful that by the middle of the century there were more than sixty of them, employed now as general watchdogs for the Crown. Equipped with vague but immense powers, they supervised all central and local administration, finance, the army, problems of heresy – 'une délégation illimitée de l'auctorité royale' (Doucet). There was nothing remotely like them in either England or Spain, though the former borrowed the title for four harmless jurists charged with the settlement of poor men's lawsuits.

All these reforms and developments took money; altogether, government, as already explained, was becoming unprecedently expensive. This is not the place to investigate the actual finances of the three realms: they were never very secure – Henry VII stood out for centuries as a wonder for wise men because he actually accumulated a reserve – and the strain of war was always bringing bankruptcy near. France and Spain helped themselves by increasing the burden of taxation which tended to fall on those less well able to pay; the former also used sale of offices and a tenth from the clergy, while the latter had the notorious wealth of the Indies. Charles V in fact greatly increased the revenue from his Spanish dominions; but prices rose faster.[1] The English Crown, unable to do much about taxation both direct and indirect, staved off disaster by appropriating church revenues: in 1534 it acquired the right to clerical first-fruits and an annual tenth, and in 1536–40 the dissolution of the monasteries temporarily made the government very wealthy. But the problem of greater interest, because it was in a way the real financial problem of the century, was one of collection, that is of financial organisation. Governments could never be really sure of getting their due. None of the three ever quite solved this, simply because they lacked sufficient physical means of control. England for a time looked likely to produce a genuinely reformed system. Henry VII, using his usual household methods, had developed the royal Chamber into a great collecting agency overshadowing the ancient and cumbersome Exchequer. After Wolsey had given the system a little more definition but less efficiency, Cromwell undertook fundamental reforms

1 Cf. above, p. 360–1.

by divorcing financial machinery from household control. His plan involved the creation of parallel collecting agencies (revenue courts), each of which was to deal with a particular section of the revenue and to pay its surplus into a central treasury. The minister fell before the scheme was complete, and his successors, beset by the difficulties of the 1540s (war, depression, inflation), had to abandon its more ambitious aspects. By 1554 the financial machinery of England was settled for a century or more: control reverted to a partially reformed Exchequer which handled nearly all the royal revenues but unlike Cromwell's planned courts had neither the staff nor the time to exploit government rights to the full. The centralisation which Cromwell had desired was up to a point achieved, while many of the modern methods of Henry VII's and Cromwell's introducing were retained. But the ponderous and tradition-ridden Exchequer with its wooden tallies, with its entrenched officers and their petty jealousies, could not secure the ease of administration to which Cromwell had aspired. This was not restored until further reforms were undertaken late in the seventeenth century.

In many ways the machinery in France and Spain – countries where the Crown disposed of wide taxing powers – was much simpler. Until 1523 French revenue had been administered by two sets of officials: the royal lands by the four treasurers of France under the *chargeur de trésor*, and the much larger 'extraordinary' revenue (*gabelles, aides, tailles, traites et impositions foraines*) by the four receivers-general of finance. In that year the branches were combined and a central treasury was established under a *trésorier de l'epargne*, with a *trésorier des parties casuelles* to administer the more recent and casual revenue. Further reforms attempted a progressive centralisation of all revenue in one organisation, though this was never quite accomplished. The problem of audit was solved by the appointment in 1547 of two controllers, replaced by one controller-general in 1554, a reform for which England waited till the nineteenth century. In Spain, Charles V had inherited from the prudent Ferdinand a careful organisation centring upon the two *contadores mayores*, or chief treasurers, and the daily meetings of a financial board (*contraduria*) assisted by three secretaries (*porteros*). The detailed organisation of receivers, treasurers and controllers, which in England and France was tackled at different times with varying success, proved sufficient in Spain; all the emperor felt compelled to add was a supervising council. This was set up in 1523 under a Burgundian expert, the count of Nassau; under Philip II it was to develop into that highly bureaucratic clog on efficiency, the *consejo de la hacienda*. The troubles of Spanish finance were less exclusively administrative than those of England whose resources could never be properly mobilised; they arose rather from the magnitude of the emperor's political tasks and a mistaken reliance on American bullion.

One aspect of the central government remains to be dealt with – the administration of justice and enforcement of law which all sixteenth-century governments would have admitted to be their first concern. In fact this is to make an anachronistically strict distinction between ordinary and judicial administration. Following the custom of centuries, the sixteenth century conceived of government as primarily engaged in enforcing the law and deciding disputes between parties; all, or nearly all, the institutions already mentioned had a mixed character, council and court combined. Thus the Court of Augmentations, set up (1536) to handle the confiscated monastic lands, was run by a council of chief officers who dealt with such questions as the disposal of evicted monks, the sale and lease of lands, and the collection and expenditure of revenue, but who also acted as judges in straightforward lawsuits arising out of the lands in their charge. The *parlement* of Paris, far and away the most distinguished of the superior courts of France, never altogether forgot that it had really originated in the king's general entourage and never ceased to try to exercise 'conciliar' – political and administrative – functions despite royal attempts to restrict it to its primary, judicial work. Yet the story is by no means all confusion. There were ancient courts everywhere which were true courts and no more, and, as the history of the French and English Privy Councils has shown, a genuine division of functions was certainly not outside the century's comprehension. Though space forbids a discussion of any but the more important central courts, it must be remembered that there were also – quite apart from the general system of church courts – ancient popular courts, feudal (seigniorial) courts nearly as ancient, and local offshoots of the central royal jurisdiction. One of the chief character-istics of the century was the gradual supersession of all inferior jurisdiction by the Crown's authority.

In this particular task England was once again placed unusually well. She had not only a common law but also a system of common-law courts, centralised at Westminster but equipped with means to do justice through-out the country. King's Bench, the most honourable of them, dealt with criminal cases and those touching the Crown; Common Pleas (the busiest) with civil cases between party and party; the Exchequer with revenue cases. Unfortunately these courts had proved themselves both too forma-lised in their procedure and too inflexible in their law to cope with changing conditions: too often in the fifteenth century they failed to do justice or enforce law and order. The former failure had already led to the growth of the Court of Chancery, administering a yet developing body of rules designed to vary the law so as to fit the needs of justice and therefore called equity; under such active chancellors as Wolsey, Thomas More, and their successors this court acquired permanence, institutional character, and a great deal of business. To make up for the other deficiency of the

common-law courts, and to supply sufficient justice in an increasingly litigious age, the early Tudors (here again Wolsey was a moving spirit) developed the residuary jurisdiction of the royal council, first by attracting business to formal sessions of the council and later by establishing conciliar courts. The Court of Requests, dealing with the civil pleas of poor men and anyone else who could get a hearing, existed by 1530 and received its never very extensive organisation in the next twenty years; the Court of Star Chamber, primarily designed to deal with riots and other crimes short of felonies, always remained in one sense the judicial session of the council out of which it had grown but was nevertheless from 1540 at the latest a true separate court dealing only with legal matters. Star Chamber's original task – the suppression of disorder and the punishment of men too powerful and influential to be dealt with by the ordinary courts – was soon accompanied and even outstripped by the settlement of private disputes, thinly disguised as Star Chamber matters by the introduction of imaginary riots into the bill of complaint. Other conciliar courts enforced the law in the unsettled borders (Councils of the North and the Welsh Marches) or dealt with special problems, like the revenue courts of which Augmentations was the prototype and Wards and Liveries (1540–1643) the longest lived. Though these courts owed something in their procedure to the Roman law, the law they enforced was the law of England – common law, statutes and in the case of Star Chamber proclamations.

It is probably true to say that, size for size, neither France nor Spain could boast so extensive and intensive a system of law courts. But a simpler structure of royal central jurisdiction did not imply either less law or less litigation; it reflected the fact that these countries had come later to unification under one judicial ægis and did not need to duplicate earlier courts. France had a number of superior courts at the centre, most of them fiscal, but only two need to be noticed here. One was the *grand conseil*, already mentioned, which, though organised in 1497, did not come to full flower until the reign of Francis I. This king used this offshoot of his council to co-ordinate justice and override the varieties of law and jurisdiction which distinguished France. Its competence was virtually unlimited in both civil and criminal matters, but the only really consistent factor in its work was the interest of the Crown. Much more than Star Chamber, it was a weapon of royal centralisation, entirely subject to the king's control, and its heterogeneous yet singleminded purpose was recognised in the consolidating ordinance of Henry II (1552). It was well for this court that no Estates met between 1484 and 1560: on both those occasions protesting voices were raised against it. But it was too useful to the Crown – and too necessary, one may add, to France in the prevailing state of law and legal administration – to be cut down in power. The same cannot be said of the other great court, the *parlement* of Paris. Although

technically only one of several provincial *parlements* or high courts, it exercised a superior influence by virtue of its antiquity, the reputation of its lawyers, and its detailed organisation to which the first half of the century added a good deal. It had grown out of the king's general council, of which fact the so-called *lit de justice*, a meeting in the king's presence, was a reminder; yet it had largely escaped from royal control until the sixteenth-century monarchy began to apply some pressure. Henry II's *chambre ardente* was a temporarily successful move to deprive the *parlement* of criminal jurisdiction;[1] the court's theoretical power to hold up legislation by refusing to register it remained theory. But as an ordinary court of first instance and appeal – provided it submitted to royal authority – its competence, too, was unlimited, and it also exercised a general surveillance over the realm at large. To kings like Francis I and Henry II who could make it toe the line it offered yet another weapon in the armoury of a centralising and absolutist monarchy.

Needless to say, Charles V disposed of no judicial organisation for all his realm, except inasmuch as he himself could be petitioned for redress in hopes of evading or improving upon the ordinary courts. In the Netherlands the Privy Council tried to get some consistency into the multiplicity of provincial codes and courts, but the slow work was not far advanced when Charles laid down his crowns. In the peninsula, on the other hand, much had been done to give good and fair justice to the separate kingdoms. These inherited from the middle ages central courts called indifferently *chancellarias* or *audiencias* which administered as a rule set codes of law resting upon Germanic custom but owing much to the Roman law. The Catholic kings extended this sytem to Granada, Valencia, and other outlying parts; they also secured better and swifter justice by adding more judges and sessions to the individual *chancellarias*. The reign of Charles V saw no important reforms: on the whole the efficiency of the courts seems to have declined without a resident monarch to supervise them, and Spain began to suffer from that besetting trouble of early modern Europe – vast arrears of unsettled litigation. In Aragon Charles did a little break down the ancient safeguards against despotism. The office of *justicia* (regent, justiciar and protector of liberties rolled into one) had been curbed by Ferdinand who imposed on it a controlling council of five royalist legists; this was first (1518) enlarged to seven and then abolished (1528) because the emperor, wishing to respect the forms of Aragonese liberties, preferred to make sure that supporters of the monarchy were elected *justicia*.

This sketch of monarchical government in the western kingdoms, very incomplete as it must necessarily be, has illustrated the degree to which,

---

1 A court which for a few years (1547–50) monopolised cases of heresy; see above, p. 259.

the methods by which, these rulers established, extended and deepened their centralised power. The work was rarely pursued consistently for any length of time, being constantly interrupted by such prior interests as wars, religion and diplomacy. Charles V could never devote to his territories the sort of organising attention that Spain had had from Ferdinand of Aragon or Burgundy from Philip the Good. In England the administrations of Henry VII and Cromwell, both intent upon improving the machinery of government, were islands in a sea of general and often ill-considered political ambitions. France perhaps went at the task with the greatest persistence, but she owed this less to her kings than to the large body of trained and devoted legists and civil servants. Not only was the work done patchily, not only was there neither hope nor often the slightest intention of destroying all the liberties and diversities of the past in the general process of cleaning up: one must never forget the common failure to translate the firm resolves of government into effective action and ready obedience in the localities.

Until fairly recent times, centralised governments have always found it very much more difficult to carry out their policies and orders than to devise them. The effectiveness of sixteenth-century governments varied a good deal. They were usually capable of suppressing actual revolt, and they commonly had means at their disposal to coerce occasional resistance to their authority. But to a degree which it is now hard to understand they depended less on physical force than on mystique, and if opposition was widespread but not violent it could usually be successful. Anyone who thinks, for instance, that the break-away from Rome was forced upon a reluctant England by Henry VIII's tyrannical government had better study what happened when the people who mattered – the gentry especially, but also merchants and craftsmen, yeomen and even husband-men – really disliked a government measure. They disliked paying taxes, and Henry VIII's only retreats before his own nation always came in face of this dislike; they would not obey regulations forbidding certain exports and imports, and the government's economic policy remained at best a barely breathing letter. In neither case was failure due to want of trying. Though the kings of France and Spain possessed better means of control, they could not have claimed markedly greater success in the day-to-day running of their countries: indeed, in the sixteenth century England was still the best and the most governed country of western Europe. While messages and orders and reports took days or weeks to travel to and fro, while countries remained half empty with great stretches of wilderness to hide the evildoer, while local preoccupations and prejudices continued to sway juries and justices, centralised government could never become total or totalitarian government.

These points must be kept in mind if the picture presented by local

administration is to be properly judged. In all the countries in question little was added in this period that could be called new. Everywhere there existed quite well-designed machinery, inherited from the past, for the execution of the central government's orders. Some of it was by this time only a survival from the past, like the English sheriffs and the French *gouverneurs* (suppressed in 1542 but revived three years later to please the great nobles) – officers who had once been the king's loyal servants, had then succumbed to disruptive feudalism, and were now little more than personal honours. The financial organisation of the *généralités*, reformed in 1542 so as to provide a uniform system of eighteen tax districts, gave French government a control over the most difficult problem of all to which neither England nor Spain could offer a parallel. But the main form taken by local government organs was judicial. In Castile and Aragon the problem had been one of towns: control the towns and you controlled the country. The Catholic kings therefore established their hold by means of the *corregidores*, royal officials attached to the municipal administrations and soon in control of them. England had her justices of the peace, local gentlemen appointed to administer the law; throughout the century their duties and sphere were constantly being enlarged until they were not only magistrates of summary jurisdiction but also social administrators. The French system relied on an ancient office, that of the *bailli* or *senechal* who was not unlike the English justice in the sense that he tended to be a great man of his locality but very different in another way because his territorial sway, personal standing and powers of rule were much greater. The *bailli* represented the king in all matters (financial, judicial, military), and so he still did in the sixteenth century though it has been remarked that he often acted more like the representative of his *bailliage* at the king's court. Partly in order to lessen the local ascendancy of these great men, the office was rendered less personal by the addition of many inferior officials: from 1523 each *bailliage* had its *lieutenant criminel* and *lieutenant civile*, while further *lieutenants, procureurs du roi, avocats du roi*, and so on, swelled the establishment till there appeared bureaucratically organised courts, a development never experienced by the English local justices. An edict of 1554 consolidated the system and erected a general police organisation for the realm. This was the basis on which the full bureaucratic absolutism of the *ancien régime* could arise in the next century, though it is important to remember that before that happened the semi-feudal *bailli* had to make way for the *intendant*.

For the time being, in any case, even the French Crown could not boast of real control in all parts of its dominions. It was not weakness of machinery but difficulties of communications and coercive power that stood in the way, as well as the apathy of the remote country which always does so much to explain the ascendancy of capital cities in national

politics. As things stood, local men had to run local affairs. Nothing exceptional was implied by the English reliance on unpaid local worthies: the French administration, appointed and to some extent paid by the Crown, also of course utilised local material, and so did the Spanish. The French practice of selling offices worked in favour of local men and local independence; it made for the creation of an hereditary bourgeois bureaucracy to replace the old hereditary nobility in the running of the provinces. The English system may have been potentially less under Crown control, but in practice the Tudor Council kept a careful and reasonably effective eye on the justices to whom the loss of the commission would have been quite as serious a matter in the social structure of the shire as dismissal would have been to any salaried official. Over their own agents, at least, governments exercised sufficient control; only a major rebellion producing an unusual situation could endanger this, as when the gentry of northern England joined in the Pilgrimage of Grace. The warnings already given against overestimating government power in this period must be balanced by the realisation that all these monarchies had a tighter hold and operated more formidable weapons of power than had been seen in that part of Europe since the fall of Rome.

So far we have been concerned with the details of royal government. We have looked at the machinery through which the rulers of the western kingdoms expanded their power, consolidated their territories and their hold on them, and to all appearances developed absolutist tendencies always inherent in monarchy. But all these countries had institutions of the other part: representative assemblies existed, not only in the English Parliament, the French and Burgundian Estates General, the Castilian and Aragonese Cortes, but even in such lesser units as the French and Netherlandish provinces, in Catalonia and Valencia. In fact, from the thirteenth century onwards all Latin Christendom had seen a rapid spreading of such assemblies; they were as typical of Germany, Scandinavia, Hungary and the rest of western Europe, and they were as typical of late-medieval politics as was monarchy itself. Of course – and this is undoubtedly important – they were much more intermittent. But they existed, and a German scholar has seen in all these states a structural dualism – a *Doppelpoligkeit* – between ruler and representative assembly which seemed to him, and has seemed to others, the critical constitutional question from the fourteenth century onwards.[1]

Yet it is by no means certain that this dualism was the outstanding feature of late-medieval assemblies. They were, after all, royal creations, dependent on the royal summons for their very existence. Naturally

---

1 O. Hintze, 'Typologie der ständischen Verfassungen des Abendlandes', *Historische Zeitschrift*, 141 (1929), 229–48.

enough, they were usually called because they could serve some royal purpose. The most obvious royal purpose was money, and all these assemblies claimed and exercised powers of granting taxes. In France they lost control in 1440 when the Crown equipped itself with direct powers to tax; in Castile they in effect abandoned their power after 1538. In both countries their consequent lack of usefulness just about killed them. Moreover, except in England where everyone, nobles and clergy as well as the commons, paid taxes, this role had always been of least interest to the politically most powerful Estates, with a necessary weakening of their enthusiasm for those expensive and protracted meetings. As regards legislation, the French Estates never had much chance of extorting statutory remedies for grievances in the manner of the England Parliament. In the Spanish Cortes these powers varied from the tight hold of the Aragonese assembly to the rudimentary attempts made in Castile; but in the sixteenth century, the monarchy everywhere in the Peninsula established an exclusive right to make and promulgate laws. Nevertheless, for their useful functions assemblies were convened frequently, except in France where none met between the obstreperous body of 1484 and the crisis Estates of 1560: until repeated failures to extract financial cooperation discouraged him, Charles V called the Cortes of Castile some fifteen times, though he contented himself with but six meetings of the still more difficult Cortes of Aragon.

The other reason for which kings used assemblies was political: these meetings helped on territorial unification and symbolised it. The English Parliament had achieved much in that direction in the fourteenth century, though as late as 1536–40 Henry VIII employed his Parliament for the same purpose when he called elected representatives from Wales, Cheshire and Calais. It was Burgundy that demonstrated this aspect most fully: here the calling of the States General was designed to override provincial particularism and give a firm foundation to the monarchy. It worked only within limits; until the reign of Philip II the States General tended to remain an ornamental body, while the real work, even of taxing, went on in the individual provincial assemblies. Louis XI of France copied principle and practice, so that for a short time (1468–84) there were important plenary meetings of the French Estates. But, equipped as it was with independent sources of revenue and a growing bureaucratic organisation of the realm, the French monarchy thereafter preferred to do without estates rather than face criticism. In the Spanish kingdoms, too, the Cortes had received early encouragement as royal weapons against local or noble independence, and they were still playing this part under the renovated monarchy. But because of the very different levels of constitutional development reached in Castile and Aragon, and the ancient separation of the two kingdoms, no meeting for all Spain was called until

1709. The Cortes of Portugal, incidentally, underwent a rapid decline in this century and ceased to participate in the making of law.

While then these assemblies really had no life apart from the will of the Crown, the latter's needs and the claims which estates had established over them gave some a chance to oppose the monarchy and limit its liberty of action. This was so in Aragon and above all in England. The English Parliament had a history of privileges won and powers developed at the expense of royal absolutism, and even though in the fifteenth century it had fallen into the hands of factions, constitutionally it had only gained in the process. However, events under the Yorkists and Tudors at first suggested that it, too, was only an adjunct to the power of the Crown. Henry VII called it to endorse his policy and grant him money; he ceased to call it when he needed neither. The first few years of Henry VIII saw four Parliaments, called to help finance a war; then Wolsey took over and only one more Parliament met before his fall fourteen years later, and that one a failure from the king's point of view. The Parliament of 1523, stubbornly contesting the government's demands for supply, displayed the kind of behaviour which in 1538 convinced Charles V that he could no longer use the Castilian Cortes. Thus there was something like a crisis also in the history of the English Parliament: during Wolsey's rule it was by no means certain that it alone of all that welter of assemblies would survive the sixteenth century not only alive but vastly more important. On the other hand, it did enjoy certain advantages over similar institutions elsewhere. It controlled extraordinary taxes which the Crown had no other legal means of levying. Though legislation might be devised by the government (the common modern practice anywhere), it also could not become effective until agreed to by the two houses of Parliament; the Crown had no independent powers of law-making except by proclamations whose limitations have already been described. Parliamentary statute was recognised as the supreme and very nearly the only way of adding to or amending the common law of the realm; it certainly was the only way if new treasons or felonies were to be created. As to composition, it has been shown that the traditional view of the superiority of the House of Commons with its mixture of knights and burgesses over the merely bourgeois French 'Third Estate' arose from a misunderstanding of the latter, but the House of Commons was a much more selfconscious institution than any lower Estate in Europe. Its numbers (growing from 300 upwards, as against the 38 procurators of the towns in the Castilian Cortes or the 150 or so members of the *tiers état*) and its social homogeneity (the towns never played so great a part as on the continent and since 1400 at least had increasingly looked to the gentry for representatives) were enough to distinguish it from similar bodies else-where. The English Parliament, as it emerged from the middle ages, was

better fitted for survival than any Estates or Cortes; but its sudden rise to importance was a matter of political circumstance and statesmanlike perception.

The crisis came in 1529 when Henry VIII realised that he would not get his divorce without a fight. As western monarchs usually did in such a situation, he called his Parliament; too much has been made of an action which in itself proclaims customary procedure rather than political genius. And for some three years Parliament proved of little enough use; the problems to be solved were too great and too unprecedented for the minds then in charge. Until 1532 Henry could think of nothing better to do with Parliament than to have it threaten the clergy and remedy abuses; it was helpful to have a vague sort of support given to his intentions, but he was told that Parliament could not free him for remarriage, as he had hoped. But for the twist given to things by the arrival in power of Thomas Cromwell, Parliament would have remained barren and might well have been discarded like its fellows on the continent. But Cromwell's plan for the cutting of the knot involved two main lines of thought. For one, he encouraged the king to make a reality of his claim to undisputed supremacy in his dominions; theology, the king's own ingrained conviction, and past history back to Constantine, were pressed into service to declare the papal supremacy a usurpation. But these were words: the stroke of genius lay in the second prong of the attack. In order that the royal supremacy should be enforced it was necessary to create new treasons – new offences which the courts would punish – and Parliament was the proper maker of such laws. Yet Parliament, it could be said, and was so said before 1533, could not touch the sphere governed by God's law of which the canon law was a proper reflection. To this conception Cromwell, supported by the common lawyers, opposed, in practice and in theory, the view that within a body politic only the positive enacted law made by the sovereign legislator has binding force, and that in effect that legislator is not limited in any way. Here, of course, lay the essence of monarchical despotism, if one cared to make it so; in the England of the 1530s, however, it was made quite plain that sovereign legislative power rested with the king-in-Parliament and not with a single royal despot. The history of law-making in England had tended in that direction; Cromwell was a parliamentarian by training and predilection; yet the clarity with which the question of sovereignty was put and answered remains remarkable, as does the assurance with which in that king-worshipping age the ultimate power in the state became vested in a constitutional and limited monarchy. The vigour and assertive arrogance of Henry VIII and Elizabeth have up to a point disguised the truth: though autocrats by temperament they were never despots because they could not in their persons make law. The manner in which Cromwell carried through the

break from Rome established the king-in-Parliament as a permanent and indispensable part of the constitution.

All the countries with which we have dealt unmistakably grew in one direction: greater cohesion and consolidation, stronger and more intrusive government, centralised monarchy. This was as true of England as of the rest, though thanks to her history England had less far to go in this agreed direction and therefore the less need to break with her past. In none of the kingdoms was monarchical despotism achieved in this period; practical difficulties, historical obstacles, and remnants of feudal thought stood in the way. However, in the realms of the Valois and Habsburg Crowns the trend towards absolutism was clear and maintained; setbacks notwithstanding, absolutism came in the end. Those weapons of royal government that alone were capable of turning against the Crown – the assemblies of Estates – were discontinued or reduced to cyphers. Only in England, Parliament, so far from weakening, entered upon a new life in this period when it (and it included the king) became the sovereign organ of a sovereign national state. The old dualism was resolved by the creation – in fact, though few saw it – of a mixed sovereign body. The consequences for Parliament were striking: within two generations, structure, procedure, attitude, and methods of governmental management had become recognisably 'modern'. It is not for nothing that the Parliaments of the 1530s first provide evidence of large-scale plans of government legislation, of committees in Lords and Commons, of free speech in a real sense, of government management in the house and government influence on elections. The parliamentary system which had to be reformed in the nineteenth century took its shape in the sixteenth, when all other representative institutions declined.[1] On the face of it, the power of the Crown was more evident in England, too; but the discerning eye can surely see beyond to the essential 'constitutionalism' of the Tudor monarchy.

How far were these trends and events reflected in contemporary thinking upon the state? Generally speaking, significant political thinking occurs only when there are significant political upheavals. Spain, as is not surprising in view of its pretty placid internal state, could show no writings of note. Early in the century both France and England produced backward-looking traditionalist interpretations of the State. Claude de Seyssel, who published his *La Grant Monarchie de France* in 1519, accorded the king supremacy and absolute rights within his proper sphere but held that he was limited by the divine, the natural and the customary laws. Like so many others he used the metaphor of the body politic to

---

1 The States General of the Netherlands had a great future, but their history is one of republican rebellion and quite different from the development of the 'royal' type of estates in England.

express his conviction that the state was an organic and corporate unit in which the head might indeed rule but in which the other parts had their indefeasible rights.[1] He admitted that bad or dead customs were for the king to amend and had to agree that in France the king could invade property rights by means of his taxing power; but, full of admiration for the balance he saw in the French constitution, he insisted on such traditional restraints as extra-human law, counsel and consent. Christopher St German, a common lawyer who produced several treatises culminating in *Doctor and Student* (1528), similarly stressed the existence of a law independent of man; though he admitted both the extent of the royal prerogative in England and the law-making power of Parliament, he retained the medieval safeguard of the law of nature, or, as (in the manner of English lawyers) he called it, law of reason. These men were traditional lawyers and of an older generation; St German was to be overtaken in his eighties by the Reformation of which he approved without fully grasping its significance to his view of the state.

One freak of pre-Reformation writing in England must not go unnoticed. In 1516 the young Thomas More produced his *Utopia*, a description of an imaginary island kingdom ideal in every respect except that it was not Christian. *Utopia* was partly a dream and partly a passionate and often shrewd criticism of contemporary conditions in England. Its constitutional theme is, however, thin; it was neither derived from observation of the England he knew nor influential upon it. Moreover, like all the constructions of moralists, Utopia is on reflection a frightening community. Highminded, honest, not without humour (none of More's thinking could be that), the book is also oppressive, narrow, puritanical and intolerant. More disapproved of private property as the cause of all evil – a Christian tenet rather than the proto-communism that has been read into it – but he also, following the father of all these imaginings, Plato, applied commonplace and deadening standards of utility to all men's doings. Many social customs of the Utopians are reasonable, generous and wise; yet the total effect of their polity should make a thoughtful man turn and run. The work owes its reputation in part to its radical social ideas which (though they were based on an insufficient understanding of England's economic problems) have pleased later radicals; in part to its noble attack on amoral statesmanship; but in the main to its attractive style and the author's charming personality. The More of *Utopia* was a humanist, a moralist, rather than a commentator on events; but he did not ignore the world around him. The outstanding mind among

---

1 Edmund Dudley, in his *Tree of Commonwealth* (1509), was alone at this time in varying the metaphor: his purpose – to bring home a conception of organic unity in the state – was much the same.

early sixteenth-century thinkers went much farther in studying fact. This was Niccolò Machiavelli.[1] He was dead by 1527; his experience was confined to Italy, already a political backwater in the period here dealt with; and it cannot be shown that he influenced anyone – writer or statesman – before 1560.[2] On the other hand, his attitude to politics – universal and narrow at the same time – is particularly typical of the generation after his death, so that he must be considered here.

Born in Florence in 1469 Machiavelli made an official career as a diplomatist, was secretary to the Council of Ten from 1498 to 1512, and after the restoration of the Medici lived in reluctant retirement. He owned a sharp eye, though it must be remembered that his experience was really confined to diplomacy, and the peculiar diplomacy of Borgia and Medici Italy at that; he read widely among the ancients and looked upon republican Rome as everything he passionately wanted modern Italy to be; and he undoubtedly had a malicious liking for appearing more cynical and shocking than he really felt. His relevant works are *The Prince* and *The Discourses upon Livy*. The latter are generally recognised to have more of the essential Machiavelli in them, but the former – more cynical, less thoughtful – is the better book and it is therefore small wonder that he has tended to be judged by it. What matters in Machiavelli's thinking are his aims and methods, rather than his conclusions. He wished to teach statecraft as it really was and ought to be, as his experience and study had shown it to him and free from the moral precepts which he could not find outside the books. He failed to see that the devices he described are not improved by publicity. Machiavelli's real originality lay in his analytical method. It was not as new as is sometimes suggested for a writer to look at reality in his interpretation of politics, but Machiavelli carried the notion through with severe and dedicated logic. He tried conscientiously to base all his theories only on ascertainable fact: these things, he said, have happened, such is the manner of their happening, and these are the lessons they teach. It was a revolutionary approach to politics because for one thing it eliminated the claptrap about invisible laws and similar conventions of no reality in life, and because for another it subordinated everything to the test of expediency. Machiavelli's question always was 'is it conducive to the end in view?' and never 'is it right?' This, of course, has earned him his bad name, but he was after all correct in thinking that his question, and not the question of the moralists, moves most men, and politicians especially, in the conduct of their affairs, and that therefore the true political philosopher must give it full weight.

1 Cf. also vol. 1.
2 The old view of Thomas Cromwell as a deliberate Machiavellian will not stand up to investigation (G. R. Elton, 'Thomas Cromwell's Political Creed', *Transactions of the Royal Historical Society* (1956), 69–92).

Machiavelli knew very well how revolutionary his method was and he regarded it with much pride. All the same, it was much less truly inductive than he and his admirers have held; there were weaknesses in it which cannot be ascribed to the difficulties of the pioneer. In the *Discourses* in particular he was more concerned with the facts of history than those of experience, and he used them selectively, without much critical sense, to support a preconceived theory. He tended to be dogmatic about the efficacy of causation and the use of parallels in history; his whole method demanded some such dogmas, but Guicciardini, for instance, was more sanely sceptical about historical precedents and the force of selected examples. Nor was Machiavelli's own experience diversified enough to save him from a narrow application of his revolutionary doctrine; he never seems to have got beyond the questions of military and diplomatic action to the problems of economics or the structure of the state. He had, in fact, no considered view of the state but confined himself to studying its preservation by the use of power. It must be understood that Machiavelli's concentration on the problem of power marked a great step forward in the understanding of politics and was, philosophically speaking, an act of liberation. Further, Machiavelli, who liked to present the picture of a relentlessly cold analyst and observer, was in reality a man of overpowering passions, especially political passions, as his whole deluded attitude to ancient Rome shows. Lastly he committed the common error of 'realists': he over-rationalised human nature, with the result that he held it in an excessively low esteem and ascribed to men a power of divining their interest and acting upon it which in such pure form they do not possess.

These reservations make it unnecessary to dilate at length upon his conclusions which consist, by and large, of quite reasonable if often short-sighted maxims for the conduct of irresponsible government.[1] He preferred republics to princes, even for the purposes which he hoped to see realised in Italy – another example of his failure to understand his own world and of his attachment to Livy. If his immediate influence was small, his ultimate place must be high. For however imperfectly he may at times have practised his own teaching, he was great because he grasped the importance of looking at things as they are. His astonishing insight into some men's actions, his clear realisation of the problem of power and how to preserve it, his very refusal to erect a system or impose a moral, raise him above those comfortable writers who repeat with unction the conventional nonsense of the past and profess to know and teach that which is right.

We return to lesser but immediately more significant writings. The French monarchy's march towards absolutism did not go unnoticed by

1 Cf. also vol. i.

the publicists, and defenders of royal power arose particularly among the students of the Roman law. Legists like Grassaille and humanists like Budé linked hands to free monarchy from the theoretical limitations inherited from the feudal and religious theories of the past. They did this by greatly expanding the position of the prerogative until they saw *merum imperium* – unrestricted authority – in monarchical rule. Though such old stage properties as fundamental laws and the need for counsel were retained, they were rendered nugatory by the denial of practical limitations on the royal freedom of action. Above all, these theorists began to distinguish a double power in the king: an ordinary power by which he governed under and according to the law, and an absolute power which enabled him to ignore even the positive law if the interests of the state demanded it. It is interesting to see how the traditional paraphernalia are preserved, while the deductions drawn from them arrive at a very different monarchy from Seyssel's. Perhaps it ought to be pointed out that these theories reflected the progress of the French monarchy; they did not inspire it. Less absolutist notions also survived: as late as 1555 Guillaume de la Perrière published a *Miroir Politique* whose insistence on the supremacy of the law Seyssel would have heartily applauded. The real political crisis in France came after 1560, with the outbreak of the religious wars; and so, naturally, did major political writing.

England, on the other hand, had her crisis in the 1530s, and the Reformation produced some interesting writing though no great thinkers. The important thinkers of the political Reformation in England were Aristotle and Marsiglio of Padua; the actual writers owed much to these. This is less noticeable in the theological defence of the royal supremacy – dull statements of caesaro-papism like Edward Foxe's *De vera differentia regiae potestatis et ecclesiae* (1534) or Stephen Gardiner's *De vera obedientia* (1535). The work of Cromwell's group of propagandists, writing in the vernacular, excites more interest. Humanistically trained and employed by the government, they wrote from conviction and with an enthusiasm for the new state of affairs which reminds one that to many the Henrician Reformation came as a great breath of liberty. The leading names are Thomas Starkey who published his *Exhortation to Christian Unity* in 1535 but left the larger and more original *Dialogue between Lupset and Pole* in manuscript; and Richard Morison, a diplomatist as well as a publicist, who wrote among other things *A Remedy for Sedition* (1536) and *An Exhortation to Stir All Englishmen to the Defence of their Country* (1539). Their works, and those of others, not only defended the royal supremacy but, significantly, also adhered to constitutionalism and the supremacy of the law; rejecting extremes they admired the middle way and saw the importance of social and economic reforms if the political changes were to endure. Despite Henry VIII's personality, no English writer can be found

who preached absolutism on the French model; but in the country which had in practice arrived at the concept of legislative sovereignty there were not even tentative steps towards a theory of it. On the other hand, the practising theory (if the term be permitted) of the Reformation statutes – whose preambles contain many significant political ideas ultimately coming from Cromwell himself – shows quite a coherent notion of what was happening: the statutes not only define precisely the whole concept of national sovereignty (Act of Appeals, 1533), but also adumbrate a statement of the legislative supremacy of the king-in-Parliament (Act of Dispensations, 1534). It is, however, probably true that the very lack of an incisive and powerful mind among the writers saved England from losing the comfortable and useful instinct for often impalpable 'limitations' which alone make the rigour of legislative sovereignty supportable.

CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND POLITICAL THOUGHT IN THE HOLY ROMAN EMPIRE

T HE reign of Maximilian I (1459–1519) had given the empire much new strength. The emperor, a powerful and dynamic personality, proved capable of taking some decisive decisions. When he maintained his hold over the Tyrol and the Habsburg possessions in Swabia (1488–90) he made sure that the king of the Romans should not be pushed aside to the periphery of the empire. In doing so, he also managed to reactivate the traditional supporters of the crown, especially the Swabians. The Swabian League, founded in 1488, became an important instrument of Habsburg policy in the empire at the same time as it was becoming attractive to the German princes. However, not even Maximilian was able to alter the inmost reality of German constitutional history: king and territories continued to stand side by side. There was no process of centralisation initiated by the king, though the danger that the great men might destroy the Imperial federation was removed by Maximilian's consolidation of his kingship, a process generally given the name of imperial reform. At the Diet of Worms in 1495, important new directions were taken in hand, all of them testifying to the co-existence of king and territories on terms which before this had emerged from a laboriously negotiated compromise.

In return for a tax granted by the Diet, the king proclaimed an 'eternal territorial peace' directed against the right, claimed by the nobility, to wage private war. This constituted an important step in the consolidation of the empire. The king's Chamber Court was so reformed that it might be able to control conflicts hitherto settled by licensed fighting. Though it continued to sit in the king's name, it was separated from his court and removed from its influence. It thus profited from the fact that the monarchy continued to be peripatetic. At any rate, the organisation of the law court was completed; not only did the Imperial Estates thereby acquire a significant influence, but parity was achieved between the traditional, noble, agencies of power and the newly risen jurists of bourgeois descent. This parity was also to make itself felt within the territorial administrations. A general Imperial tax was agreed in the form of the 'common penny', a mixture of poll tax and property tax, designed to cover not only the costs of warfare but also the maintenance of the now-Imperial Chamber Court. This extension of a general imperial tax to

individuals implied a forceful demonstration of general participation in Imperial concerns, though the tiny yield of the actual levy formed a strange contrast to such feelings.

1495 also formed an important stage in the development of the Imperial Diet. It had grown out of the tradition of royal court sessions joined to meetings of electors held without the king and the assemblies of cities. This produced the threefold organisation in chambers of electors, princes (with two voices reserved to Imperial counts and one to Imperial prelates), and cities. Organisationally, the Diet thus stood halfway between the French Estates General with their three Estate-based chambers (also found in many German territories), and the English Parliament with its two Houses. A 'Memorial on Freedom and Justice' actually called for annual meetings of the Diet. The king was to be accommodated in it, especially for matters touching wars and alliances. Since the princes found it impossible to put in a permanent appearance, a standing government called an Imperial Regiment was set up in 1500; dominated by the Estates, it collapsed as early as 1502. Thus in the end it was the king who gained from reforms originally slanted towards the Estates. What survived were the institutionalised Imperial Diet and Imperial Chamber, both now separated from the king's court; the absence of a permanent royal residence was to have profound consequences for the history of Germany.

Problems of communications noticeably limited the effectiveness of the German monarchy. Royal rule simply was not equally intensive throughout the empire. There were the hereditary Habsburg lands, the regions physically near the king and containing a sizeable royal clientage, the territories of the seven electors whose office linked them more closely to the empire, and the regions (especially in the north) removed from royal influence. If the king wished to exercise power, he had to move about the empire, and the impact of his rule depended on the location in which he happened to be. Royal rule continued to be a highly personal thing, directed more markedly towards certain regions and social groupings.

During the last phase of his rule, Maximilian concentrated especially on consolidating his royal position, with the securing of the Habsburg succession to the Imperial Crown gaining ever-increasing importance. However, the emperor was not able to regulate the election procedure before he died. Even so, his grandson Charles was in the end duly elected at Frankfurt in 1519. Neither of the alternatives – a French monarchy in the empire, or a national one under the elector Frederick the Wise of Saxony (1463–1525), on the model of George of Podiebrad in Bohemia or Matthias Corvinus in Hungary – won much support. The dynastic continuation in the House of Habsburg thus caused the empire to be absorbed in Charles V's (1500–58) extended monarchy which occupied an

arc from the Netherlands through Burgundy and Spain to Naples and Sicily, menacingly surrounding the border of France.

Following the example of ecclesiastical princes, the German electors therefore presented to their new emperor a species of agreement called an election capitulation. This intended to guard the empire against the exercise of an oppressive Imperial authority but also to prevent the emperor from ruling from outside the empire. No foreigners were to be granted Imperial office without the consent of the electoral princes; no Imperial or judicial sessions were to be held outside the empire; only German or Latin was to be used as the official language. In addition, the emperor was made to confirm the fundamental laws of the empire, such as the Golden Bull of 1356 and the 1495 Recess of Worms; and all important actions of internal or outward policy were to depend on the electors' consent. To make sure that these conditions were observed, an Imperial Regiment modelled on Maximilian's of 1500 was to be erected.

Charles V was primarily interested in legitimising his dreams of a universal monarchy by means of the Imperial Crown which in practice had its roots in German soil. After his coronation at Aachen in 1520, he therefore planned to maintain peace in the empire by leaving it to itself, that is to say its princes. Here he underestimated the impact of the early Reformation.

Charles failed to proceed against Luther according to valid ecclesiastical law, under which the emperor was obliged to take steps against a man excommunicated by the church; instead he conceded to the German princes a confrontation with Luther which turned the Diet into a forum for a decision on the faith. When Luther, contrary to Charles's probable expectation, failed to recant, the traditions of his dynasty compelled the emperor to take up a decided position against him. However, the majority of the Imperial Estates did not follow suit and continued to seek a peaceful settlement, even after Charles, in the Edict of Worms of 1521, had imposed the Imperial ban on Luther and his followers. When the distinctly old-orthodox emperor departed in 1522, he remitted the business to the German princes who continued to act in a spirit of solidarity and increasingly came to embrace the Reformation. The emperor's absence thus became one of the fundamental facts of the Imperial constitution.

Charles had taken comfort in the thought that the Swabian League would be able to take his place as controller of good order in the core regions of the empire. The League did back Imperial rule in the newly won Tyrol and in the western Habsburg lands. Formed originally around the older society of the Knights of St George, it came to count also princes and towns amongst its members. Its three-orders constitution of 1500 (a first rank of princes, a second of prelates, counts, lords and knights, and a

third of cities) guaranteed considerable influence to the smaller partici-
pants, tied into a system of collective security which safeguarded the
general peace and helped to subdue the nobility's passion for feuding. In
the crisis time provoked by the vacancy of the throne in 1519, the League
proved capable of responding to the assault on the Imperial city of
Reutlingen by Duke Ulrich of Württemberg (1487–1550) with the expul-
sion of that breaker of the general peace from his duchy. It formed an
important organisation for the Austrian clientage of south-west Germany
and at the Imperial election of 1519 exerted pressure in support of the
House of Austria.

The Diet of 1521 set up an Imperial Regiment at Nuremberg in which
the emperor's influence was better recognised than in its 1500 predecessor;
it was to come into action only when the emperor was absent. In addition,
the Swabian League proved to be a counterweight which further streng-
thened the imperial influence. When Charles's journey to Rome was
agreed in 1521, the Diet formulated an Imperial tax register, a reorganisa-
tion based upon the possession of horse and foot soldiers which was to
form the basis of the Imperial system of taxation till the end of the empire.
Therewith, the collection of taxes by the territorial lords finally entered
upon its victorious march against the 'common penny'. However, the
empire proved unwilling to provide resources for the wider European
activities of its head.

As a result of Charles V's absences, not the Imperial Regiment but the
Imperial Diet became the crucial forum of Imperial policy. True, the
second Regiment at Nuremberg, especially in the aftermath of the Diet of
Worms, had tried its hand at quite a number of reforms: an order for the
preservation of the general peace which relied on the Imperial Circles, a
reform of the coinage, an imperial toll, an imperial taxing system meant to
revive the 'common penny', as well as a military constitution – all efforts
which could not be carried through against the interests of the princes but
remained alive as ideas.

The Diet, on the other hand, managed to fortify its institutional
character. Its structure offered a measure of protection for the Reforma-
tion. Paradoxically, this central topic also caused the Diet, and with it the
empire, to coalesce more effectively and to create some popularity for the
former. To start with, princely solidarity maintained itself in the face of
the nascent confessional divisions, but in 1529, when the emperor threa-
tened positive action against the spread of 'heresy' and had his deputy, the
Archduke Ferdinand (1503–64), re-issue the Edict of Worms, five princes
and fourteen Imperial cities remembered the autonomy of religion and
protested against the Imperial Recess. The Imperial Regiment had long
been overshadowed both by the archduke as the emperor's deputy and by
the Diet.

In a series of agreements, Charles V had in 1522 remitted the Austrian hereditary lands to his younger brother, so that Ferdinand in effect moved into the earlier position of Maximilian, and the effect of this was suitably completed in 1522 when the Swabian League handed over Württemberg. In the same year, Charles appointed Ferdinand as his deputy in the empire, though at first the young and inexperienced archduke carried little authority. In addition, he was right at the start of his rule confronted with a major crisis in the Austrian hereditary lands.

Under Ferdinand's guidance, the Imperial Regiment, faced with a rebellion by the imperial knights in 1523, could maintain only a minimal authority. Franz von Sickingen (1481–1523), a knight from the Rhineland, had made a name for himself as an agent of feuding warfare (*condottiere*) and had risen to the command of a sizeable territorial collection of castles. He was an early convert to the Reformation which he introduced into his possessions. The humanist knight Ulrich von Hutten (1483–1523), champion of polemicists with his pen, joined Sickingen in 1520 and put him forward to the nation as a leader in writings which combined anti-Roman polemics, aristocratic selfinterest, and pro-Imperial day dreams. Memories revived of the wooing which Maximilian late in life had extended to the lesser nobility. Luther's denunciation of the hierarchic church encouraged Sickingen to undertake an assault upon the electorate of Trier where he hoped to provide 'an opening for the gospel'. However, he gained the support of only some of the nobility in the Rhineland and Franconia, and his enterprise ended in failure. The counterattack from Trier, the Elector Palatine and Hesse demonstrated the superior strength of the threatened territorial princes. Sickingen perished when his castle at Landstuhl was captured; Hutten died a fugitive in 1523 in the neighbourhood of Zurich. The Swabian League exploited the situation to strike a decisive blow at the embattled robber knights of Franconia and levelled a number of castles.

The knights' crisis of 1523 had some effect in domesticating the nobility. The notion of challenging the territorial state in the name of Reformation and empire contained too many contradictions to have any hope of success. The major part of the German nobility remained quiescent because it feared the risks involved in a conflict with its feudal lords. As it turned out, the knights had no alternative except to come to terms with the territorial state.

This fact soon received further emphasis in the great German Peasants' War of 1525. Historians nowadays discern a whole bundle of causes for this event, the debate over which has recently revived. One thing is certain – the incendiary effect of the dreams of the Reformation. As a rule, the rebellious peasants relied on the village community and thought in the terms of its structural categories. Action mostly remained restricted to this

or that area; the aims stated expressed social and local desires but no universalising ideas. Only occasionally, as for instance at the so-called 'peasants's Parliament' of Heilbronn in May 1525, were proposals discussed for Imperial reform, possibly with an eye to attracting support from the lesser nobility. Up to a point, the Peasants' War also constituted a crisis for Habsburg rule in the hereditary lands and the empire. The war started in the western Austrian territories and affected not only large parts of Austria but more especially those parts of the empire that were both splintered territorially and characterised by exceptional Imperial influence and inclusion in its clientage system: Swabia, Franconia, the Upper Rhine and Alsace, though also Thuringia. The emperor's absence, the preoccupation of his armed forces with his Italian wars, and the weakness of the lesser territorial authorities assisted the rising.

What brought the peasants low was the independent initiative exercised by the princes and more especially the military power of the Swabian League where the decisive voice had moved from the Archduke Ferdinand to Bavaria which, like the larger territories of north and central Germany, had been spared the Peasants' War. It would, however, be wrong to speak of a total abrogation of peasants' rights after 1525. Even the decisions enforced by the authorities during the war, often by means of bloodshed, indicated a leaning towards preserving the rule of law and a peaceful solution to the conflict, admittedly within the framework of the existing social order. At the same time, the intention was to prevent further risings by means of preventative measures. Both points appeared in the edicts of the Diets of 1526 and 1529.

Like the defeat of the knights, that of the peasantry stabilised the territorial order in the empire. The crises in their existence as landlords demonstrated to the lesser nobility that they had no choice but to cooperate with the princes. At the same time, the continued solidarity of the princes helped to bridge the growing confessional divide. This became clear once more in the destruction, in 1534, of the radical social Utopia of the Anabaptist kingdom of Münster where the Landgrave Philip of Hesse, who had become the protagonist of German Protestantism, assisted in the restoration of the old church.

As a result of the emperor's absence, the German territorial states achieved a growing consolidation, supported by the resolutions of the Imperial Diet. True, the German territories conformed to a great variety of models. In the north and east, but also in Bavaria, relatively well-defined entities had developed which managed to transform the various legal titles – landed dominion, control of the law, regalia – into territorial rulership. In the old zones lying close to royal power, more especially in Swabia and Franconia and along the Rhine, the Staufen emperors had left behind a widespread inheritance of territorial splinter groups. Here

Imperial interest operated against the greater lords' desire to round off their lands: though greater men tried to make satellites out of lesser, the settling of territorial boundaries under the emperor's eye preserved the immediate relationship to the empire. In the territories there grew at the same time an awareness that subdivisions only weakened their own power.

The administrative system prevalent in the territories had descended from the middle ages, though from about 1500 a tendency to create a better order became manifest. The sixteenth century became the great age of the princes' reorganisation of chanceries, local government and police. The five areas of operation supervised by court, council, treasury, chancery and regional administration were brought into mutual accord. After 1500, the control of the localities also improved. The court, which served the image of the lord as well as the integration of the nobility in territory and locality, continued to form the seat of early-modern rulership. This institution, often very expensive to run, called for a strengthening of discipline. The central offices attached themselves to the court, though an increasing degree of rationalisation also increased their independent influence.

In the larger territories, the princely councils had mostly achieved firmer outlines towards the end of the fifteenth century. Membership, competence, chairmanship and meeting times were becoming regularised. In 1497, Maximilian I modernised his Aulic Council which came to set a standard followed in 1499 by electoral Saxony, in 1501 by Bavaria–Munich, and thereafter elsewhere in a whole series of orders for councils and chanceries. Such councils acted in the ruler's place and concerned themselves with all the affairs that concerned the territory, but they also continued to take cognisance of suits at law brought before them by the subjects' right to supplicate for redress. This produced frequent uncertainties in the newly created chains of law courts as well as heavy burdens for the councils. However, we should not yet treat those councils as bureaucratised institutions independent of the ruler; rather there prevailed a principle of 'personal rule by the German princes' (G. Oestreich), though on occasion, if a ruler was exceptionally incompetent or given to drink, this principle could be set aside. The separating out of a council for more weighty affairs commonly took place only after the middle of the century in the larger territories, beginning at the courts of Vienna (1527) and the Palatinate (1554); there then grew up 'Privy' or 'top' councils. Later these often developed out of the prince's 'chamber secretariat', originally his private writing office; the chamber secretary was regarded as 'the prince's pen'. It would appear that administrative developments among lesser lords were influenced by the practice of the greater, although territorial size naturally imposed limitations, especially financially. Apart from the imperial court, Bavaria, the electorates of Mainz and Saxony, and after

1550 the exceptionally well-organised duchy of Württemberg acted as models.

The separation of an Aulic Treasury or Exchequer from the council had taken place in the middle ages, with a treasurer for revenues or of the Chamber acting as the crystallising agent. The office became responsible not only for the (often difficult) collection of money from the localities but also for supervising local officials, the distant ambition being the establishment of a general control over all the income and expenditure of the territory. At a time when the princes suffered from chronic financial weakness the task seemed especially desirable, though admittedly it was only very rarely carried out successfully.

Round about 1500 there also occurred a more positive development of princely courts of law (superior courts) which observed quarterly sessions. These courts, which also received their ordering towards the end of the fifteenth and during the first half of the sixteenth century, replaced the system of appeals from the local courts to the old superior courts which were mostly town councils and often sat outside the territory. These new courts were not only instruments in the modernisation of the administration of the law but also symbols of a developed territorial rulership. The chanceries acted as general writing offices for all administration, with differentiation appearing only in the second half of the century. Local government was served by head bailiffs, local justices and wardens, assisted by secretarial and financial officers.

In the Austrian lands, Ferdinand I represented continuity with Maximilian I in matters both personal and institutional. As early as 1527 we find here evidence of a Privy Council, evidently loosely chosen from the circle of aulic councillors. The Aulic Council itself continued to attend to Imperial concerns, and in 1559 the Imperial Council received a reorganising order of its own which provided for a president. In 1526 Ferdinand issued an order for his Aulic Chancery; 1557 witnessed the appearance of a new order for the Imperial Chancery. Generally speaking, Imperial and Austrian affairs operated side by side and unseparated. Also in 1527, Ferdinand created a central chamber of finance, having under pressure from the Estates dismissed the unsuccessful treasurer, his Spanish favourite Gabriel Salamanca (d. 1544). In this area too, the title of president became customary for the treasurer, and in 1537 the king issued a new order for the financial Chamber. Faced with the growing threat from the Turks and the need to finance resistance to it, the Chamber increasingly dealt with important matters of defence, until in 1556 a Council of War was set up which also appointed commissioners with the armies. In addition, the Regiments created by Maximilian at Innsbruck and Vienna, charged with running the upper and lower parts of Austria, developed further. They were always accompanied by Chambers, and the territorial

offices, in contrast to local ones, were relatively well developed. The lands of Bohemia and Hungary acquired in 1526 were placed under separate administrations controlled by special agencies located at Vienna.

Though Ferdinand deliberately aimed to reduce the influence of the Estates in Austria, he allowed the nobility of his hereditary possessions to exercise a dominant role in the administration. Increasingly, however, their ranks were augmented by jurists from the empire and the dynastic lands. Compared with Maximilian's day, the practices of Chancery, the keeping of records, and rational behaviour in government improved noticeably under Ferdinand. As king he built up an administrative organisation which in 1556–8 enabled him to take over the running of the empire from Charles V without difficulty.

The intensification of princely rule also produced an increase in professional standards. Since the later middle ages, learned jurists had increasingly moved in by the side of the nobility. At first unmarried clerics, they formed from the turn of the century family networks which in the first half of the sixteenth century became important instruments in the tighter structure of the territories and the interaction between centre and towns. Their training in the law they had received at the universities which in the meantime had become an important adjunct to territorial domi-nion. After the founding of Wittenberg (1502) and Frankfurt on the Oder (1507), every elector possessed his university, and their importance showed clearly in the further foundations, confessionally determined, at Marburg (1527), Königsberg (1544) and Jena (1558) in Protestant regions and at Dillingen (1551) in a Catholic territory.

The jurists, assisted by the practice of the Imperial Chamber Court and the chain of appeals to it, imported Roman law into the territorial governments. In contrast to older views, however, it is important not to overestimate the importance of the so-called Reception of the law of Rome. The rise of bourgeois jurists benefited from the princes' frequent disputes with their nobility and from an increasing reliance on the law in the wake of the general peace, even if this process took some time to complete. Major war lords like Franz von Sickingen, Götz von Berlich-ingen (1480–1562) or the Rosenbergs vanished after the thirties; solely Wilhelm von Grumbach (1503–67), who tried to combine the politics of the feud with Utopian dreams of an imperial aristocracy, in the sixties once more upset security in the empire.

The first half of the sixteenth century also formed a splendid time for the German Estates. As early as the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, the great territories of the west and south had witnessed the appearance of territorial Diets composed of the three Estates of prelates, knights and towns. In the east, in a belt stretching from Pommerania through electoral Brandenburg, electoral Saxony, the lands of Bohemia, Lower and Upper

Austria as far as Carinthia, Styria and Carniola, the lords had remained attached to the territory, with the result that the noble Estate doubled into lords and knights. In many places, the Reformation eliminated the prelates, though after mid-century they often returned dressed as Protestant clergy and acting as agents of the governments. Wherever the nobility had departed from the territories and joined the Imperial knights, the noble Estate disappeared from the Diets; this happened in Württemberg, the Franconian episcopates of Würzburg and Bamberg, and the Franconian margravates. Such Diets formed a kind of bridge towards the assemblies composed solely of burghers and peasants in territories devoid of any nobility. As a rule, these settled down only later. During the Peasants' War, such assemblies often carried the peasants' political activity, as in the abbey lands of Kempten and Fulda. After the war, peasant representatives were eliminated from the Diet of Salzburg, though they remained part of the Diet of Tyrol.

In the earlier part of the sixteenth century, the Estates not infrequently engaged in serious disputes with their territorial princes, as in Württemberg, Bavaria and Hesse. Other princes, possessed of a better political sense, deliberately used their Estates to underwrite their own actions, as did Philip of Hesse, George duke of Saxony (1471–1539), and Maurice duke and elector of Saxony (1521–53). The latent financial crisis in most territories gave much strength to the Estates who supported their princes' uncertain credit and took over their debts; in return, they demanded rights of participation, stood up for the unity of the territory, and opposed all surrender of land. As a rule, they took a leading part in cases of guardianship. In Pfalz-Neuburg, the heavily indebted Duke Ottheinrich (1502–59) was forced in 1546 to hand over all government to his Estates. Sometimes these bodies supported the reform, more especially in the eastern Habsburg lands where the nobility on its own initiative confiscated the property of the church; here, developments reached the level of a Reformation by the Estates. The nobility in the territories also began to insist that its prebendal rights in ecclesiastical institutions should not simply be taken away but should be left operative in a Protestant guise. In general it was the nobility that formed the backbone of the Estates whose rise and institutionalisation at the start of the sixteenth century was closely linked to the crisis in the courts, itself derived from changes in the demands which princes made on their nobility. However, contrary to earlier views, it must be said that no 'dualism' resulted between prince and Estates: there was too much close interrelationship within Estates and administration for that to happen. In fact, the Estates never became a genuine alternative to the princes and their bureaucracies.

Bourgeois jurists took a leading part in decisions affecting the choice of religious allegiance. When introducing Lutheranism, the local ruler could

often exploit existing rights vested in a territorial control of the church –
rights which in fact had grown up since the fourteenth century. These
covered such things as supervision over the discipline and possessions of
monasteries, the safeguarding of worship and the cure of souls, the general
aspects of a Christian life. He could use the weapons of visitation and
reformation. Even the attack on the hierarchic government of the church
had made its appearance in the territorial churches before the Reforma-
tion. Not that Luther had simply further developed the territorial church
government of the later middle ages. What he taught in what later
historians have summed up as the doctrine of the two kingdoms (that of
Christ and that of the world) recognised a supposedly Christian authority
only when it was exercised by a true Christian; the ruler could claim God's
protection only if he stood for the truth and rejected error. Thus the prince
was expected to protect the clergy and the true service of God, using
ordinances and visitations to do so. But he was not to interfere with
definitions of the faith.

In actual fact, things developed rather differently. The Edict of Worms,
never really accepted, was in effect suspended in 1526, and in 1529 the
second recess of the Diet of Speier felt obliged to call for toleration for the
old religion. A large part of the German territories had started on the road
to Protestant territorial churches. In 1526, the Margrave Casimir of
Brandenburg-Kulmbach (1481–1527) decreed a church order entirely
derived from the medieval claims of the territorial state; it contained no
theological definitions but only matters relating to divine service and the
future condition of the clergy. The Landgrave Philip of Hesse, on the
other hand, that master of territorial politics, undertook a bolder experi-
ment. In 1526 he summoned a Diet to meet at Homburg which was to act
as a territorial Synod; with its aid he proposed to introduce a church order
for the parishes which was modelled on the ideas of an ex-Franciscan,
Francis Lambert of Avignon. The successful example, however, proved to
be that of Saxony as worked out by its first truly Lutheran elector, John
the Steadfast (1468–1532). The Saxon visitation of church and schools in
1527 led (to quote Heinrich Lutz) to

a new church discipline and a new doctrine based on the territory . . . The elector,
whom Luther at first wished to cast merely in the role of an 'emergency bishop',
found himself facing constantly increasing problems: secularisation of church
property, problems of the law, payment and appointment of the clergy . . . , and at
last by way of control over the university and a central organisation for the church
also control of the true faith, that is all the matters of compulsion and conviction.

The territorial ruler thus became the real agent of reform, taking over the
functions vacated by the suspension of the old church. The Saxon
commissions of jurists and theologians, set up with Luther's approval,

became the model for the new central bodies of the church. The place of the otherwise customary parity of bourgeois jurists and noblemen was here taken by an equivalence of spiritual and secular officers, all of bourgeois origin. This Saxon model set the standard for Germany, with Luther assenting even though this was not the development that he had originally called for.

The new powers considerably enlarged the range of the territorial state. Suspending the jurisdiction of the church transformed the earlier loose oversight of the territorial prince into the fully fledged Protestant church of the state which created its own administration and matrimonial tribunals. Gaining control of church property brought about an urgently needed improvement in the ruler's financial credit, though some efforts – urged on by critical writings – were made to employ the new sources of income in spiritual concerns such as ministers' stipends, school building, universities and hospitals. The new body of Protestant pastors turned out a brand of office-holders who soon had their own family networks and formed, by the side of the secular administrators, a second mainstay for the territories. The Protestant princes thus gained an advantage over their Catholic colleagues who could not bypass the old hierarchy, though later they were to make similar efforts, in more restricted circumstances, to erect their own form of church government.

In recent years the discussion concerning the Reformation in the cities has seemed to relegate that of the princes to the background, it being held that the former displayed fewer signs of guidance by the magistrate. The debate has concentrated on the Imperial cities – those, that is, that had arisen on the old royal demesne and had preserved their immediate dependence on the empire. Added to them were those cities that had gained emancipation from episcopal lords – the so-called free cities as, for instance, Strassburg, Metz, Worms, Speier, Augsburg, Regensburg or Constance. For a time, the communes, equipped with superior financial and administrative machinery, managed to gain a measure of influence by forming urban alliances. Though this phase had passed away by 1500, the Imperial cities were able to hold on to their own chamber in the Diet and to organise agreed action in 'town bodies' and 'town assemblies'. Such things, however, should not hide the economic and political superiority of the territorial state, itself able to dispose of the services of numbers of its own towns. Some north German towns, many of them ex-members of the Hanseatic League, managed for quite a while to maintain a balance between allegiance to the territory and immediacy to the empire; such towns, called 'semi-Imperial', were, for instance, Brunswick, Lüneburg, Göttingen and Magdeburg.

Thanks to the founding of preacherships, but thanks also to their geographic positions, the towns were exceptionally well fitted to transmit

and receive the ideas of the reform. This proved true not only for the free Imperial cities but also for the larger towns of the territories. The towns opened their gates to the Reformation at a relatively early date, pressure from their lower orders having often favoured reformed preaching. Such things, however, posed problems to the towns' own constitutions which had themselves emerged from complicated medieval conflicts. Nevertheless, whether ruled by patricians or guilds, the demands of 'suitability' (Max Weber) for urban business everywhere favoured a tendency towards oligarchic rule by the leading families. With an eye on their Imperial protector these tended to prevaricate, but even so the larger part of the towns opted for the Reformation and against the emperor's religion. Pressure from below commonly played its part but it was often assisted by the town's councillors; the famous votes on religion in, say, Esslingen, Ulm or Reutlingen were not taken without manipulation by the council.

Constitutional peculiarities in the Imperial cities made it easier for the communes to exploit the Reformation's preference for the identity of ecclesiastical and secular organisations (B. Moeller), a preference agreeable to town habits. This also assisted the prospect of a return into the empire by the Swiss Confederacy. With its strongly communal features, the Reformation in southern Germany offered a hand to Switzerland which in its day, though its peasant character was wildly misunderstood, had also been able to serve the dreams of the 'common man'. Thus the forward-looking policy of Huldrych Zwingli at Zurich seemed likely to remove the barrier erected in 1499 by the victory of the Confederacy over the empire, in the war variously called Swabian or Swiss. At the time, the Swiss had not formally left the empire, but they had not shared in the reforms initiated by Maximilian nor had they been included in the Diet; their federal system could not find accommodation there. The catastrophe of the reformed cantons and Zwingli's death at Kappel in 1531 put an end to co-operation with the south German cities, diverted these by stages into the arms of the Lutheran Reformation, and once more isolated Switzerland from the empire.

Though the towns did try to maintain their loyalty to the emperor and their solidarity with one another, the majority thus accepted the Reformation; among the larger ones, only Cologne and Aachen in the end stood out, influenced as they were by the proximity of the Netherlands, of Charles V's power, and of the university of Cologne.

From the middle 1520s, the confessional split led to the first attempts at alliances. Yet on the Protestant side people adhered to a fundamental loyalty to the Imperial head and treated ideas of a right to resistance with much reserve; any other attitude would have led to the total collapse of the empire. However, defining the empire as consisting of an aristocracy left to the princes an inferior sort of authority. From the concept of a dual

authority, Protestant jurists and theologians were able to deduce a right to decide religious options and from this there followed the right to form confessional alliances. However, in 1529, at the colloquy of Marburg, Philip of Hesse failed to build a bridge between the Saxon and Swiss Reformations which would have greatly increased the sweep of such an alliance. In the event, the Lutheran Reformation distanced itself from the Swiss and emphasised its own greater affinity to Catholicism. Henceforth the Empire was to contain 'heretics' of a better sort and a worse, and this fact too aided the move of the south German cities towards Luther.

Charles V's visit to Germany in 1530 to 1532 could not alter the situation, though at the Augsburg Diet of 1530 he tried to make peace among the denominations. The Spanish model of his dreams, a mixture of 'humanist reformism and state rule in the church' (H. Lutz), unfortunately in no way reflected the German reality. True, the Protestant articles formulated by Melanchthon in the *Confessio Augustana* aimed at peace and stressed the 'Catholic' elements in the Reformation. However, they not only displeased Luther but also failed to persuade the Catholics. For the future it was important that the Lutherans had been able to register their faith before emperor and empire. In the end, Charles renewed the Edict of Worms, but still without success. He had thus exchanged his role of mediator for that of leader of a confessional party without being able to persuade the Catholic princes to give up their solidarity with their Protestant opposite numbers or to take up arms against the heretics.

However, Charles V was at least able in 1531 to secure proper authority for his brother Ferdinand by having him elected king of the Romans. This brought about the end of the Imperial Regiment which in 1524 had drifted to Esslingen and in 1526 to Speyer. The Protestants, now feeling threatened, on 27 January 1531 concluded a defensive alliance, the League of Schmalkalden, and at once sought support from Charles's enemies in Europe. Led by electoral Saxony and Hesse, four further princes and a number of cities formed this League, with more joining later. The League acquired a financial administration and before long also a military organisation. Though differences of interest between princes and towns were to cause trouble, there now existed an alliance based on a shared faith and directed against the emperor. Even Luther had in the end been persuaded that in a struggle of religions resistance to the emperor was permitted.

In 1532, Charles V, moved by the Turkish threat, felt compelled to grant to the Protestants another time-limited religious peace (the truce of Nuremberg). Actions started by the Imperial Chamber (which, inclined to the old religion, had in 1526 also taken up residence at Speyer) against the Protestant Estates were suspended. At the same time, the Lutherans received a species of privilege within the Reformation by being dis-

tinguished from 'Sacramentarians' (Zwinglians and Anabaptists). The Nuremberg compromise was continued in 1538 by the truce of Frankfurt, and the Protestant princes thus won a long respite in which to build up their territorial churches.

European problems in 1532 once more removed Charles from Germany, and the hectic series of Imperial Diets of the 1520s was succeeded between 1532 and 1541 by an age without Diets. King Ferdinand, standing in for Charles, proved unable to fill the vacuum. In addition, the Swabian League failed to gain renewal in 1534. Even at the last previous renewal in 1522, the lesser members had left the League in shoals because in face of the increasing ascendancy of the princes they no longer felt sufficiently represented. The death blow was struck by opposition from Bavaria and the departure of several members, especially towns, to the Reformation. All this meant that the House of Austria lost an important political instrument for the control of the satellites surrounding its hereditary lands, and the consequences soon became apparent. In a surprise attack in 1534, Philip of Hesse overthrew Austrian rule in Württemberg and restored the exiled Duke Ulrich who at once introduced the Reformation. By the treaty of Kaaden (1534), Ferdinand accepted the *fait accompli* in exchange for a recognition of his kingship by the Protestants who in the emperor's absence continued to be the more expansive force.

Thus 1534 brought to the Habsburgs a loss of prestige in the empire, but with it also a decline of burdensome obligations. Many German princes had regarded the occupation of Württemberg as a manifest injustice, especially against Duke Ulrich's innocent family. Besides, in 1526 Ferdinand had grasped the inheritance of the Jagiellons in Bohemia and Hungary. Claims on the first were soon established, but in Hungary the Habsburg king provoked opposition from a powerful noble faction as well as the hostility of the Turks. Nevertheless, he preferred the crowns of St Stephen and St Wenceslas to the Swabian duchy and therewith started Austria's move from the German south-west to the European south-east where the prospects looked much vaster.

This decision eased Ferdinand's position within the politics of the empire, but it drew upon him the Turkish siege of Vienna in 1529. For something like a century and a half, the Turkish menace became a kind of imperial ideology and an important means for holding the empire together, though it also offered to the Protestants of both empire and hereditary lands additional opportunities for achieving their ends. Additional advantages to Ferdinand lay in his now peripheral position *vis-à-vis* the empire and his removal from its internal disputes. Ultimately these developments were to make this German Habsburg ruler a serious alternative to the universal monarch, Charles V.

For the time being, however, the Habsburg brothers complemented each other pretty well. There grew up a sort of bifocal system in the empire. Charles V used his hereditary lands in the Netherlands to obtain a more intense influence in north-west Germany, hitherto well removed from Imperial authority. Ferdinand restored the old position of the emperor Maximilian in south-west Germany where after the loss of Württemberg in 1534 the systematic creation of Austrian satellites took the place of territorial conquest. Bohemia, whose provinces (Moravia, Silesia and Lusatia) extended to the gates of Dresden and Berlin, provided Ferdinand with the means to pursue an active policy in central Germany.

The victorious advance of the Reformation continued. However, in 1538, after the truce of Nice with France, Charles V felt able to undertake a new and more active policy in the empire. He now pursued a double strategy. On the one hand, he secured the formation of an alliance against the League of Schmalkalden when in 1538 King Ferdinand, Bavaria, Henry of Brunswick-Wolfenbüttel (1489–1568), George Duke of Saxony, the archbishop of Mainz and the bishop of Salzburg joined in what was called the Catholic–Imperial League – itself effectively paralysed by the rivalry between Austria and Bavaria. On the other hand, Charles in 1540 opened a phase of religious colloquies designed to produce what in the last resort might be a policy of mediation leaning towards the old religion. Here he encountered resistance from the representatives of an uncompromising Catholicism (especially Bavaria) as well as rejection by both old Martin Luther and young John Calvin.

Even though the problem of religion remained unsolved, the colloquies moved the empire to offer the emperor more positive support. In 1542, the Diet of Speyer, alerted by the Turkish conquest of Buda, agreed to a 'rapid aid', once again in the old form of the 'common penny', which proved much more successful than that had been in 1495, 1500 or 1512. The collection of the 'common penny' of 1542, granted again at Nuremberg in 1544, clearly brought out the change that had taken place since 1495. Since everybody owing allegiance to the empire was to be taxed, each man's territorial ties had to be defined. The knights of Swabia, Franconia, the Rhineland and Alsace had to confront the choice of either submitting to a territorial lord or standing up as Imperial and themselves quasi-territorial. Assisted by Ferdinand I and later by Charles V as well, a body of Imperial knights gradually developed, organised in three circles and fifteen cantons, who by stages removed themselves from territorial influence. In addition, though more slowly, corporations emerged – Imperial counts in Swabia, Franconia, the Wetterau – though not yet in Westphalia, and prelates in Swabia. These groups found their reward in the curial votes available to them in the Imperial Diet.

In 1543 Charles V returned for ten years to the empire where before he

had spent such brief times only (1520–1, 1530–2, 1541). It had become evident that religious colloquies had no hope of success: the confessional split had gone too far. Would the emperor now be able to arrest this development? The League of Schmalkalden had suffered badly from Landgrave Philip's bigamy which had left him exposed to Imperial blackmail. In 1542, the League had driven the emperor's Catholic partisan, Duke Henry of Brunswick-Wolfenbüttel, from his duchy, a slap in the face for Charles V. But when Archbishop Hermann von Wied (1477–1552) at Cologne and Bishop Francis von Waldeck (1491–1553) at Münster showed signs of moving towards the reform the League failed to back them. Charles V secured his west German glacis when in 1543 he forced the Protestants to accept his intervention which prevented Duke William of Cleves (1516–92) from capturing Guelders. The duke had in vain sought membership of the League of Schmalkalden.

In 1544, the Peace of Crépy freed Charles's hands for action against the Protestants. His military success in the war of June 1546 to spring 1547 enabled him to destroy the League of Schmalkalden, though he contravened the 'capitulation' of 1521 by using troops brought in from Italy and the Netherlands. The collapse of the south German cities was followed by victory over Saxony and the submission of Philip of Hesse. By transferring the electoral dignity hitherto vested in the senior (Ernestine) branch in Saxony to the Protestant representative of the junior (Albertine) line, Charles had secured the support of Maurice of Saxony. Even before the war, he had hoped to mobilise the lesser powers of the empire, traditionally on his side against the princes. Against such vassals as had followed their princes into the war Charles proceeded without mercy, a new thing in German history. This helped in practice to fix the hitherto uncertain element of loyalty to the head of the empire. At the same time, Charles began to destroy the constitutions of the Imperial cities: wherever the guilds still enjoyed a decisive share in government they were abolished and replaced by the rule of great families whom after the experiences of the Reformation era the emperor regarded as more readily understandable and more trustworthy.

Above all, Charles V was planning to create an 'emperor's league' (still miscalled today an 'Imperial League'). It was to be constructed around the hereditary lands in Austria and the Netherlands and act as a substitute for the vanished Swabian League. Larger representation for the smaller members was to counterbalance the weight of the princes; a constitution and a court of justice linked to the league were to operate in competition with the Imperial Diet, in effect dislodging it. However, even at the 'armoured Diet' of Augsburg in 1547–8, in the immediate wake of victory, this proposal came to nothing. So did the attempt to secure the return of the Protestants to Rome by means of the 'Interim', a religious compromise

decreed by the emperor and supposedly designed to take their grievances
into account. The Catholics turned it down, while the emperor had been
forced to make concessions to such Protestants as were on his side.

Even so, Charles could record some successes. For once he could staff
the Imperial Chamber as he pleased and to suit his way of thinking, and he
obtained a grant of money for an Imperial war. The 'Burgundian treaty'
of 26 June 1548 confirmed the special position of the Netherlands in
relation to the empire: it granted them many rights and demanded few
duties. The separation of that region, which since 1464 had possessed a
common umbrella in the States General of the provinces and had thus
resisted incorporation in the Imperial Diet, had thus advanced another
pace.

Above all, Charles meant to introduce an alternating election to the
royal dignity in order to strengthen the ties between the two Habsburg
branches in Spain and Germany who were showing signs of drifting apart.
Ferdinand I was to be succeeded not by his own son Maximilian but by
the emperor's son, Prince Philip of Spain (1527–98), after which it would
be the turn of Maximilian II of Austria (1527–76). Imperial claims in Italy
were to be vested in Spain. However, Ferdinand, with his basis in the
German hereditary lands, had long since won an independence further
assisted by Charles's long absence. Increasingly he had become engaged in
negotiations with the German princes and had come to understand the
problems of the empire better than the distant emperor. Among the
Imperial Estates who distrusted Charles he commanded confidence. Thus
any argument about the imperial position was likely to raise up a German
line, though Ferdinand for a long time loyally played the role of junior
partner. The notion of an alternating succession also went by the board.
How much the scene had changed became manifest in 1552 when under
the leadership of Maurice of Saxony (who even formed an alliance with
the king of France) the princes rebelled against Charles V. Even though
only a small group of princes became involved, the rebellion proved
dangerous on two grounds. For one thing, it became clear that the
emperor was not permanently able to hold on to the potential of power
with which he had subdued the League of Schmalkalden, the more so as a
majority of the princes, determined upon 'the liberty of the Estates',
objected to any display of imperial power and in 1552 remained inactive
even as Charles's position collapsed under the blows struck by the
embattled princes. For another, the military strength of the rebellion also
proved to have its limits: a stand-off situation.

Thus the king of the Romans, Ferdinand, was able to abandon his
inactivity and play the umpire between the princes and his imperial
brother. In that position, he could take the sting out of the confessional

problem, and by the Treaty of Passau (1552) the Augsburg Confession was provisionally accepted until the next meeting of the Diet. The emperor, of course, could no more accept this toleration for heresy than he could bear the arbitration of Ferdinand and his associates at Passau which showed him so plainly that he had become nothing more than a party leader in the conflict. On the other hand, Ferdinand could take his stand upon the ground of a new consensus among the Imperial Estates. Passau in effect marked the end of Charles V's role in the empire.

Yet the emperor did not give up at once and toyed with ideas of a military solution. He compromised his position by espousing the company of the Margrave Albert Alcibiades of Brandenburg-Kulmbach (1522–57), ever a breaker of the peace. Ostensibly in defence of a treaty of general peace which Ferdinand had also joined, the new elector Maurice of Saxony confronted the margrave at Sievershausen in 1553, dying victoriously in the service of a new Imperial structure which was beginning to emerge without the emperor's participation. Charles's increasing preoccupation with affairs outside Germany further served to tie Ferdinand to the renovated solidarity of the Imperial Estates.

The Treaty of Passau of 1552 had been the work of the princes; lesser powers played no part in it. After prolonged negotiations, carried on with every kind of legal refinement, a Religious Peace was agreed at the Diet of Augsburg in 1555, recognising the Augsburg Confession side by side with the old church. The principles of the secular law had won the day, and the religious problem was effectively neutralised by being remitted to the distant future. The Protestant party accepted security in the law in place of the uninterrupted dynamic of its expansion. The principle that the German princes could freely determine the religion of their possessions had been written into the law of the empire, though it was moderated by the grant to the subjects of the right to emigrate. The spiritual Estate was to be protected by a safeguard: a spiritual prince who went over to the Reformation was to forfeit his possessions. Church property secularised before the Treaty of Passau was left in the hands of the princes. A formula was arrived at for the protection of Catholic minorities in Protestant cities which helped to bring about a religious equilibrium in the Imperial cities but did not prevent the tattered remnants of the Interim from being removed by stages. The benefits of the Religious Peace did not extend to the Anabaptists nor to the 'reformed' or Swiss Protestants. A 'Declaratio Ferdinandea' was meant to guarantee freedom of worship to Protestant knights and towns in ecclesiastical principalities but it never received the force of law. The more far-reaching demands of the Protestants for 'liberty of the faith' had been rejected, but they continued to be heard for the rest of the century. All told, what had been gained was a measure of

equal rights for Protestants, though the Catholics continued to enjoy notable advantages thanks to their hold over the Imperial Crown and the maintenance of an Imperial church.

The Religious Peace of Augsburg, produced at the Augsburg Diet of 1555, made co-existence possible across the confessional divide and with it the continued functioning of the Imperial federation. It was backed decisively by the leading princes of the empire – King Ferdinand, the elector of Saxony, the dukes of Bavaria and Württemberg, and so forth. Lesser powers gladly followed suit, for they could exercise their new-found right to decide the religion of their territories only in conditions set by peace and the rule of law. In making their decisions, admittedly, they often enough looked only to the rules of the game as played in whatever satellite system they might be moving. Resolutions frequently cast in ambiguous terms created a mass of conflicts which towards the end of the century were to collect together into irresoluble disputes. Yet the Augsburg Peace, though agreed to as provisional, did give to the federated empire a long spell of peace. The ending of the religious disputes contributed above all to an increasing awareness of imperial identity. Emperor and Estates came to terms, and the Diet had preserved its institutional existence. The year 1555 once again saw a programme for a universal imperial peace reformulated, and with the addition of a more positive order for its active enforcement this had finally won the day.

In all this, the Imperial Circles were to have a central role to play. They had originally been created in 1500 as electoral districts for assessors in the Imperial Chamber and Imperial Regiment – six such Circles, in the first instance leaving out the electoral lands. These together with the Habsburg possession were added by an order of 1512, so that now there were ten Circles: by the side of Bavaria, Swabia, Upper Rhine, Franconia, Westphalia and Lower Saxony there now stood also the electoral Rhineland, Upper Saxony, Austria and Burgundy. A further order in 1521 was to produce new life for the Circles in the 1530s, and the taxes levied in 1530, 1542 and 1544 in support of war against the Turks further increased their importance. Special assemblies of all the Circles proved the growing significance of the institution: such meetings as that at Worms in 1535, to deal with the Anabaptists at Münster, or that of 1554 to secure a better execution of the general peace. The Circles proved their value as bricks in the building of an Imperial constitution as they became dominant elements for good order in the regions. The more subdivided Imperial Circles in particular gained significance, above all that of Swabia which could exploit the traditions of the defunct League. From 1550 it possessed an energetic champion in Duke Christopher of Württemberg (1515–68). Austria admittedly withdrew its own territories, but it paid for whatever advantage it gained with the loss of all chances to exercise influence in the

other Circles, especially those of Swabia and the Upper Rhine. One or two princes acted as conveners in Circles, and in each of them a lay prince took over command in military affairs.

The system set up by the Peace of Augsburg left no room for Charles V. In 1554 he yielded to Ferdinand full power to negotiate and made every effort to transfer all responsibility to him. It soon became apparent that no alternative existed to the creation of a religious peace which was totally opposed to Charles's ideas touching both the Imperial dignity and the truth of religion, but which helped to confirm Ferdinand's position. By resigning in 1556, Charles accepted these consequences. Not until 1558 was Ferdinand able formally to take on the succession by dint of issuing a new 'electoral capitulation'. Though it retained the Burgundian possessions and the Italian claims, the Spanish branch of the House of Habsburg had thus departed from the Holy Roman Empire. Vienna again became the centre of the empire, though Ferdinand's monarchy kept many perambulatory features. The greatest importance, however, attached to the fact that now there existed again an Imperial Court inside the empire, a court which could form a genuine counterweight to the strengthened and institutionalised Imperial Diet and Imperial Chamber. Thanks to the administrative reorganisation carried out by Ferdinand, the Aulic Council and Aulic Chancery were able to take on new political and judicial activities. The emperor's restored presence in the empire soon yielded political profit. Ferdinand I, and his son Maximilian II even more so, became the emperors of the Religious Peace which they loyally strove to maintain. They always kept in mind the possibility of a genuine reconciliation, a hope which the increasing divisions among the confessions were to prove vain. The enormous efforts which Charles V had made in his battles with the Imperial Estates of Germany thus became the foundation of the imperial policy of Ferdinand I and his successors. However, increasingly that policy had to maintain itself among the ever-more-manifest tensions between the emperor and the Estates, as well as between Catholics and Protestants.

CONSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND POLITICAL THOUGHT IN EASTERN EUROPE

THE three kingdoms of Poland, Bohemia and Hungary were among the largest in sixteenth-century Europe. Together they filled the area bounded by Germany, the Baltic, Russia and the Balkans, or, in the terms of physical geography, the basins of the Oder, Vistula and middle Danube. They occupied a central position also in respect of political development, for while they lagged behind the western European states they were in advance of Russia and Turkey. It is this central position which constitutes their historical interest: the balance of power between the landowners and the monarchy was so even throughout the century as to give to their relations, whether of conflict or co-operation, a significance that illuminates the more decisive conflicts which were at the same time being waged in the extremer parts of Europe.

The accession of Sigismund I 'the Old', of the Jagiellon dynasty, to the Polish throne in 1506, and of Ferdinand I of Habsburg, brother of the Emperor Charles V and already ruler of the complex of the hereditary Austrian lands, to the thrones of Bohemia and Hungary in 1526, may be said to mark the beginning of the conflict, for they both succeeded to *fainéant* kings against whom the landowners had virtually had things all their own way. The kingdoms to which they acceded were still medieval in the looseness of their political structure. Sigismund's inheritance was not even in name a kingdom but a *rzecz pospolita* or *respublica*; the half-dozen duchies into which the kingdom of Poland had fallen apart in the twelfth century had not yet all been brought under the direct rule of the king, for the duchy of Mazovia was not incorporated until the failure of heirs to its last duke, who died in 1526. East Prussia was not fully subject to the king of Poland until 1525, and even then its Hohenzollern duke, Albrecht, enjoyed almost as much sovereignty as a vassal of Poland as he had done as grand master of the Teutonic Order. Moreover, more than half the territory which Sigismund ruled, the grand duchy of Lithuania, had no organic union with the kingdom of Poland other than that of a common sovereign until the Union of Lublin in 1569.

The territories to which Ferdinand succeeded when he was elected king of Bohemia in 1526 constituted an even looser dominion. They were technically 'the Lands of the Crown of St Wenceslas', which comprised the Czech lands of the kingdom of Bohemia and the margravate of Moravia, the dozen or so duchies of Polish–German Silesia, the two separate

526

Wendish–German duchies of Upper and Lower Lusatia, and various islands of unassimilated duchies and lordships such as Cheb (Eger), Kladsko (Glatz), Loket (Elbogen) and Opava (Troppau). Ferdinand's Hungarian realm was the least unitary of the three, for 'the Lands of the Crown of St Stephen' comprised two distinct kingdoms: the kingdom of Hungary and the kingdom of Croatia. Within Hungary was the inassimilable principality of Transylvania, itself compounded of the three partly autonomous Magyar, German and Szekler 'nations'. Croatia comprised three disjunct parts: Dalmatia, central Croatia and Slavonia.

What gives to this part of sixteenth-century Europe its homogeneity is the great economic supremacy that was enjoyed and exploited there by the landowners, who, however large or small their estates, were nobles, *una et eadem nobilitas*, as the phrase ran in Hungary. This class, the *szlachta* of Poland, the *šlechta* of Bohemia, the *köznemesség* of Hungary, unrestricted by any rule or custom of primogeniture, conscious of its power and jealous of its profitable privileges, by means of its virtual monopoly of economic power had a dominant position in central Europe. The landlords together with the Crown, the church and the towns owned every acre of land, and as the century progressed the share of the lay landlords was steadily increased by acquisition of Crown lands in pawn, of church lands by confiscation, and of town lands by coercion and forfeiture. Feudal jurisprudents like Verböczi could assume that the 'nation' was co-terminous with the Crown and the landlords without feeling argument or justification to be necessary.[1] The political power of the nobility was based on the local or country assemblies. In Poland they were called 'little diets' (*sejmiki*), and there was usually one in each palatinate, altogether thirty-seven in Poland and a dozen in Lithuania. They were composed exclusively of the landlords. The *sejmiki* were not perpetual organs of local administration and justice, which in Poland was still exercised by local officers of the Crown. Their function was primarily parliamentary. To them were directed royal writs for elections to provincial or national Parliaments; the 'pre-parliamentary' (*przed-sejmowe*) *sejmiki* then proceeded to elect their paid representatives to the lower house and mandated them on the general lines of the agenda which had been sent with the writs of summons. The representatives of the *sejmiki* then assembled in provincial assemblies, of which there were six, where they concerted the policy to be pursued by the province in Parliament. After the Parliament was dissolved the representatives reported to the local 'reportorial' (*relayine*) *sejmiki*, which took steps to execute the laws which had been enacted, gave

---

[1] For the economic policy of the lords, cf. above, Ch. II.I. It rested upon the freehold almost sovereign – rights of the owners of 'estates' which were consistently extended at the expense of both Crown and peasantry.

their assent to any taxes granted at a higher rate than had been agreed to beforehand by the *przedsejmowy sejmik*, and appointed the officers to collect the tax in the palatinate.

Local assemblies (*sjezdy krajské*) in the Bohemian lands were similar to but less powerful than those in Poland. The powerful local councils (*landfridy*) which had assumed wide legislative, administrative, judicial and financial powers during the anarchical interregnum of 1439–58 had since then been emasculated by the centralising policy of King George of Podiebrady and the oligarchs of the Jagiellonian period, and at the date of Ferdinand's accession they met only to elect members of Parliament and some local officials and to provide for the execution of statutes. Ferdinand still further weakened them by forbidding the *sjezdy* to assemble without royal summons under penalty of death. Very different was the position and power of the counties (*megyek*) in Hungary, for Ferdinand so urgently needed to win the support of the nobles in his civil war with his rival John Zápolyai and his successors, and their Turkish allies and suzerains, that he dared not assault their privileges in local self-government. Indeed, the survival of the Hungarian county was perhaps the best guarantee of the continuance of the relatively autonomous position of Habsburg Hungary down to the *Ausgleich* of 1867. The Hungarian county court was not an occasional assembly, but a permanent committee elected by the assembly (*megyegyülés*) of the nobles of each county, exercising judicial, administrative, economic and financial functions; the county assembly not only had the elective functions of the Polish *sejmik* but was also an effective local legislature.

The highest organ of the nations of central Europe in the sixteenth century was the Parliament or Diet, where from time to time the Estates (*Stany, Stavy, Rendek*) of each kingdom, principality, province or *land* assembled to join, normally with the ruler, in the exercise of sovereign functions. The large number of these Parliaments in the three central European kingdoms is at once a sign of their importance and a symptom of their vulnerability. In Poland there were the general Parliament (*sejm walny*) of the kingdom, the provincial Parliaments of Great Poland, Little Poland, Kujawia, Royal (Western) Prussia, Ducal (Eastern) Prussia after its incorporation in 1525, and Mazowia, which was an autonomous appanage until the extinction of its cadet line in 1526. Lithuania had its own Parliament until it was amalgamated with the Polish *sejm* by the Union of Lublin of 1569. In 'the Lands of the Crown of St Wenceslas' the Parliament (*sněm*) of the kingdom of Bohemia had certain sovereign rights over the whole, but much power was left to the Parliaments or Diets of Moravia, Upper and Lower Silesia, and Upper and Lower Lusatia. There were also the autonomous estates of Cheb, Loket, Opava and Kladsko. Occasionally, for the purposes of a coronation, to deal with a crisis in

public order (1511, 1518) or, most often, to provide subsidies for the Turkish war (eleven times between 1530 and 1595), there would be convened a general Parliament of delegates from all the Parliaments of the Bohemian Crown. But such general assemblies were regarded with suspicion by the Estates as instruments of royal exaction, and no attempt was made to develop them into a permanent instrument of sovereignty for the whole Bohemian complex of states. In 'the Lands of the Crown of St Stephen' there was also a multiplicity of Parliaments. The Estates of the kingdom of Hungary were duplicated during the civil war, Ferdinand's supporters meeting usually in Pozsony (Pressburg, Bratislava) and Zápolyai's in Budapest; the principality of Transylvania had its own Parliament, for most of the century a sovereign body independent of the Hungarian king and Parliament; the kingdom of Croatia, in so far as it was not occupied by the Turks, enjoyed three Parliaments, in Zagreb, Dalmatia and Slavonia. It is an interesting commentary on the conventional conception of Ferdinand as the enemy of parliamentary government that it was he who endeavoured to create a supreme Parliament for all his dominions. He summoned all the Estates to such common or federal Parliament at Brno in 1528 to try to make Austrian currency universal throughout his dominions; similar congresses of Estates were summoned to Linz in 1530 and 1541 to provide money for the Turkish war. As the Bohemians refused to attend any assembly outside their own borders Ferdinand tried to assemble the Parliaments in a general congress at Kutná Hora (Kuttenberg) or Prague in 1534 and 1541, but there the Hungarians either did not appear or refused any subsidy. The opportunity to establish an Estates General for the Habsburg lands was made abortive by the jealous particularism of the national estates themselves.

The composition of the Parliaments of central Europe in the sixteenth century illustrates the dominance of the landlords. They were essentially meetings of the Estates, but the only Estate whose presence was necessary everywhere and always to constitute a Parliament was that of the nobility. The king if he were present in person or by his lieutenant was an Estate of Parliament; but after a demise of the Crown, if there was either no immediate male heir or only an infant, the Parliaments convened without royal summons to proceed to the sovereign act of election. In each Parliament the nobles were the largest and most powerful element, but they were usually not a united force, for the divergent interests of the wealthy magnates and the gentry were reflected in the existence of two chambers (*curiae*). The Polish Parliament (*sejm*) comprised an upper house, the Senate, and a chamber of representatives (*izba poselska*). The Senate was composed of the Catholic archbishops and bishops, the provincial governors (*wojowodowie*), the castellans, the crown marshal and the court marshal, the chancellor, vice-chancellor and treasurer. Until

1529 it had 87 members; from 1529 to 1569, as a result of the extinction of
the Mazovian appanage, it had 94, and after the union with Lithuania
140. The Polish Senate was formally a body of central and local officers of
the Crown and royally nominated prelates, but because these officers and
prelates were all, except for a few *novi homines* and royal favourites, drawn
from the great noble families, it was a chamber which represented and
exercised the oligarchic policy of the great landholders. Voting in the
Senate was *viritim* and probably by majority. The lower house of the
Polish Parliament was, with the exception of the representatives of the city
of Cracow and, after 1569, of Wilno, a homogeneous assembly of the
szlachta. Every adult male of noble birth had the right to sit and vote in
the chamber, but the cost in time and money kept most of them away. In
the early part of the century the Senate nominated half the members of the
chamber, but from 1520 the middle nobility fought this practice and after
1540 it apparently ceased. A statute of 1520 introduced the practice of the
election of members of the chamber by the *sejmiki*, and the king
undertook to pay the expenses of not more than six representatives from
each constituency. Despite the efforts of Sigismund II to keep the number
of members small, the size of the chamber increased from 45 in 1504 to 93
in 1553, to 110 in 1569 and 158 in 1570. Elected members were bound to
attend. There is evidence that important constitutional laws, such as those
of 1548, 1554, 1563 and 1565, were decided by a majority vote. But in less
important matters there was a fatal tendency to seek to secure a unani-
mous vote or at least a vote *nemine contradicente*. There was as yet no
liberum veto, though an individual *sejmik* could and sometimes did refuse
to accept a statute as applicable to its own area.

The Bohemian Parliament (*sněm*) was tricameral. The upper house was
undisguisedly a House of Lords (*curia dominorum* or *magnatum*); every
pán (lord) who was accepted as such by the house itself and whose nobility
was at least four generations old was a member; it was therefore not a
house of royal ministers and local governors like the Polish Senate, but a
co-optative assembly of the wealthiest landlords. It had no clerical
members, for the episcopate of Bohemia had disappeared in the storms of
the Hussite wars and was not restored to a place in the legislature until
after 1620. The second *curia* in the *sněm* was that of the gentry (*vladykové*),
or, as they were coming to be called, the knights (*rytíři*). Every gentleman
who had a coat of arms and who was inscribed in the 'land books' as
having an estate had the right to a seat and vote. There were some 1,500
such noble families. But the member had to maintain himself; therefore, as
in Poland, only the richer and more important attended. The poorer
nobles elected from two to six representatives in their district assemblies
who were maintained during the Parliament at the king's expense, but
every noble had the right to attend. After 1526 Ferdinand tried with

considerable success to prevent the election of nobles to Parliament, so that the second chamber came to be the virtual monopoly of the richer nobles of the middle aristocracy. It numbered usually between 100 and 200 members, never more than 300. The third Estate in the Bohemian Parliament was that of the burgesses. This exceptional phenomenon is witness to the greater power and wealth of the towns in the lands of the Bohemian Crown. They had secured and consolidated their participation in the *sněm* during the Hussite period and, though the lords had been successful in excluding them between 1485 and 1508, they had in the latter year secured their readmission. They were strong enough even to survive the punitive measures of Ferdinand I who sought to punish their part in the rebellion of 1547 by reducing their representatives to the status of a merely consultative council of the royal *camera*; however, by the time of his death in 1564 the urban Estate had regained its former position as an integral part of the Parliament. Thirty royal towns and six 'dower' towns sent representatives to the Bohemian Parliament and six royal towns to that of Moravia.[1] The urban members of Parliament were nominated and paid by the town councils; smaller towns would sometimes consent to be represented by their larger neighbours. The three houses of the Bohemian Parliament had since 1440 deliberated separately and each decided by a majority of votes. In the *plenum* of the three houses which gave final assent to its acts, each house had one vote and to be effective this vote had to be unanimous.

The Hungarian Parliament (*Országgyülés*) was the most purely aristo-cratic in sixteenth-century central Europe. It was composed of two houses (*tabulae*) of which the Upper House was a small assembly of the heads of those great families whom it was customary to summon individually to Parliament and of the two archbishops, the bishops and a few of the heads of the greater religious houses. As most of the great offices of state were held by prelates or magnates, the Hungarian house had much the same oligarchical character and predilections as the Polish Senate. The Lower House (*tabula inferior*) was an assembly of undefined composition. Early in the sixteenth century the nobles were summoned to it *viritim*, but gradually the practice of electing representatives from each county pre-vailed. In 1552 the king declared that he did not wish to burden the gentry with the trouble and expense of attendance in Parliament and invited them to send delegates. But some were invited individually as late as 1572, though for the last time. The Hungarian towns had but an insignificant place in the Parliament: eight 'free' towns and two of the 'mining-towns'

---

1 The towns were also represented in the Parliaments of Silesia and Lusatia. It is also worthy
   of remark that there were houses of Catholic prelates in Moravia, in both the Silesias and
   in Upper, but not Lower, Lusatia.

(*bányavárosok*) of Upper Hungary were represented, but their delegates, if they came at all, did not compose a separate house but were swamped amid the gentry of the *tabula inferior*.

Though the estates of the kingdoms of Poland, Bohemia and Hungary were the organs of the landowning nobility, there was in many respects a coincidence of interest between king and Parliament. In Hungary the perpetual Turkish danger affected Ferdinand I as much as it did the Hungarian people; he needed the taxes he could extract from the lords' serfs and the towns as much as the lords needed the Habsburg armies for the defence of their estates from the assaults of Sulaimān and his pashas. Ferdinand also dared not offend the liberties of the Hungarian nobility for fear of driving them into the camp of his rivals in Transylvania. For that reason the constitutional history of sixteenth-century Hungary has much in common with that of Tudor England; in both countries it was a period of mutually useful but increasingly uneasy collaboration between Crown and Parliament, but with two important differences. In Hungary local government was in the hands of the aristocratic county assemblies and not in those of nominees of the Crown responsible to the Privy Council, and the Crown was still elective. Ferdinand realised that these were the two weak points in his position. Much as he would doubtless have liked to weaken the parliamentary and comitial power of the lords, he needed their support too much to do more than subject the national central administration to the authority of his monarchical instruments in Vienna. In this limited field he was very successful. The Hungarian *concilium regis* was given nothing to do and the title of king's councillor became merely honorific. The *camera regis* he refashioned in 1528 on the Austrian and Bohemian models; it was suspended during the Turkish crisis of 1528 to 1531, then revived as the *camerae administratio*, merely to administer the budget assigned to it by the *Hofkammer* in Vienna, to which it was made completely subject in all except certain matters of customs and trade administration by edicts of 1548 and 1561. An even more effective measure in bringing the government of Hungary under the direction of Vienna was the suspension of the office of palatine (*nádor*) of Hungary from 1532 to 1554. In 1554 Ferdinand did permit the Parliament to elect the able and loyal Tamás Nádasdy as palatine, but after his death in 1562 Ferdinand would have no successor. The palatine as '*locum tenens regis et generalis capitaneus*', chief justice, president of the council and 'official intermediary between the nobles of the realm and the emperor' was indeed too independent of outside control for Ferdinand's purposes. For most of his reign he therefore appointed, not a palatine, but a lieutenant (*helytartó*) who as such had no authority over Ferdinand's military forces in Hungary. His two lieutenants, Elek Thurzó and Archbishop Pál Várdai, had a lieutenancy council which was the chief instrument in maintaining

Hungarian statehood and the independence of its judicature during the reign.

As soon as he became king of Hungary and Bohemia Ferdinand reformed the central Viennese offices of state to become policy-making and probouleutic bodies for all his dominions. These central departments were exclusively manned by Ferdinand's German ministers and officials, though some of them had secretaries or committees for Hungarian and Bohemian affairs. They were the Court Chancery (*Hofkanzlei*), the Court Chamber (*Hofkammer*) which gave instructions in financial matters to the local chambers, the Court Council (*Hofrat*) and the all-important Privy Council (*Geheimrat*), whose four or five German members advised the king on foreign policy and his personal and family affairs and produced the agenda for the Bohemian, Hungarian and other Parliaments.

Ferdinand's other great concern was the elective character of his monarchy. In 1526 the Estates of Moravia had recognised his wife, Anna, sister of King Lewis, as lawful heir, and she had transferred her rights to Ferdinand; and the Silesian Estates had accepted him 'as hereditary and elected king'. But the Bohemian Parliament merely elected him from a number of candidates and had insisted that he publish a *revers*, in which he declared that the estates had freely elected him, that his successor would not be king until he had been crowned, and that any foreign successor must take the oath at the frontier before he entered the realm. In his coronation oath Ferdinand had to swear that he would preserve the Bohemian estates in their 'orders, rights and privileges' and alienate nothing from the lands of the Crown. In Hungary in 1526 Ferdinand's initial position had been even more delicate. Zápolyai had already been elected by a majority of the lords, and therefore to establish himself at all Ferdinand had had to agree in the election diet at Pressburg to maintain the laws and customs of the realm, not to introduce foreigners into his Hungarian council, nor to give estates to foreigners. After his election Ferdinand made a declaration, as he had already done for Bohemia, that he owed his throne to a true and voluntary election. It was Ferdinand's contribution to the establishing of the Habsburgs on the Hungarian and Bohemian thrones that he was able to go far towards blotting out this uncongenial page from the acts of his reign. In 1539 he took the first tentative step by requesting the Hungarian Parliament to recognise that he had succeeded by hereditary right; the request was not granted, but in a statute of 1547 the Hungarian Estates went so far as to declare that they thereby 'transferred themselves to the government and power not only of His Majesty, but also of his successors for ever.' Near the end of his life Ferdinand asked that Maximilian should be crowned without election; the Estates demurred but did not persist, and in 1563 the Parliament allowed Maximilian to be so crowned in his father's lifetime. Even the one

condition the Parliament had made, that a palatine should be elected, was
not complied with by the king.

Ferdinand's efforts to make his Bohemian crown hereditary illustrate
even more clearly his patient opportunism. In the year after his election
the corrupt and stupid Bohemian magnates induced the *sněm* to declare
that the king's adult heir might be crowned in his father's lifetime
provided that he swore to preserve the 'freedom of the land'. In 1541, by
an accident which Ferdinand was quick to exploit, the Bohemian land
books, in which were recorded all the solemn acts of state, were destroyed
by fire; Ferdinand saw to it that, when new ones were compiled to replace
them, the *revers* of 1526, in which he had confessed himself but an elected
king, was omitted. In 1545 Ferdinand attempted a positive step by
drawing up a *revers* which averred that 'the Estates of Bohemia had
recognised and accepted Queen Anna as heir to her brother Lewis, and
had then elected and accepted Ferdinand of their free and good will'. The
Estates were acute enough not to allow so dangerous a declaration to be
entered in the land books. A better opportunity came as a consequence of
the abortive rebellion of 1547, the most fateful crisis in Bohemian
constitutional history before 1618. In 1546 the long-maturing conflict in
Germany had erupted in the Schmalkaldic war. Ferdinand tried to get the
Bohemian Parliament to provide him with men and money to fight the
Protestant German princes; but the Bohemian lords with unusual and
inopportune rashness decided to back John Frederick of Saxony. Hardly
had they begun to assemble in arms for this treasonable end when his
defeat and capture at Mühlberg put the whole body of Bohemian liberties
at Ferdinand's mercy. Never did he show his political astuteness better
than in the way he used this opportunity. Since the king knew that he
would have the lords' support in the oppression of groups whom they
regarded with sectarian and economic jealousy, he made the Bohemian
Brethren and the towns the scapegoats for the lords' offence. Against the
Brethren a decree of exile was pronounced; the towns were deprived of
self-government, their elected magistrates were replaced by royally
appointed *hejtmans* and commissioners (*rychtáři*), and their real property
was made forfeit. To the guilty lords Ferdinand not only gave a pardon,
but he won their support by a declaration that 'his majesty has no desire to
act in respect of what affects the liberty and privileges of the Estates'.
Characteristically, he used his triumph of 1547 to persuade the cowed
Bohemian lords to insert the *revers* of 1545 in the 'Land Ordinance' of
1549 and to declare that 'the privilege of the Bohemian lands embodies
this principle that the eldest son of each king shall become king of
Bohemia after the death of his father'. In the same year the Bohemian
Parliament tamely accepted Maximilian II as hereditary and unelected

King in his father's lifetime, just as it later accepted and proclaimed Maximilian's son Rudolf II two years before his father's death.

Constitutional development in Poland in the sixteenth century did not result in any strengthening of monarchical power such as the Habsburg rulers achieved in Bohemia and, to a lesser degree, in Hungary. Indeed, the extinction of the Jagiellon line in 1572 and the subsequent failure of Henry of Anjou and Stephen Bathory to establish either a Valois or Transylvanian dynasty on the Polish throne, set Poland on that course of aristocratic anarchy which was to make it a byword for political ineptitude. It is not that either Sigismund I (1506–48) or Sigismund II (1548–72) was incompetent or unaware of the task that the sixteenth century set to European rulers. Sigismund I had indeed the makings of an autocrat and under the instigation of his second wife, Bona Sforza, who brought to Cracow the statecraft of the Milanese despots, he struggled to assert his authority. So too did his son, Sigismund Augustus, at least until 1562, when he seems to have resigned himself to sharing his authority with the *szlachta*.

The constitutional position of the Polish monarchy was already weak when the century began. Casimir IV (1446–92) had deliberately preferred the possibility of territorial acquisition to the assertion of his domestic authority and had made many concessions to the *szlachta* to purchase their support for his designs on Silesia and Prussia. His two sons, John Albert (1492–1501) and Alexander (1501–6), succeeded not by right of primogeniture (they had an older brother, Vladislav, king of Bohemia and Hungary) but by elections for which they had to pay by concessions, and their reigns were too full of military disaster and too short for them to be able to check the growing power of the oligarchical senate. Alexander's famous constitution of 1505, known as *Nil novi*, conceded the principle that 'from henceforward nothing new may be established by us or our successors, without the full consent of the council and delegates of the lords, which might be harmful to the Republic or to the harm or injury of any private person or directed towards a change of the general law and public liberty'.

Sigismund the Old, the youngest of Casimir's five sons and the third of them to occupy the Polish throne, was blessed with a stronger character, greater political perception and a longer reign than his two predecessors; he also had a son and heir, a most valuable asset which had been denied them. In 1530, when the young Sigismund was only ten years old, Queen Bona and her husband jockeyed the *sejm* into electing him king of Poland, so that he could at any moment step into his father's shoes without further ado. But the nobles soon realised the folly of this act. They continually harassed Sigismund I, clamouring for what they called 'Execution of the

Laws'. This famous programme, first promulgated at the Diet of Bydgość
(Bromberg) in 1520, demanded the summoning of a national *conventus
justiciae* which should collect all laws, reform, unify and codify them, and
put them into effect; it was a programme to perpetuate and effectuate the
whole complex of aristocratic privilege that had been extracted from the
monarchy during the last two centuries. Annexed to this proposal was a
demand for the *egzekucja dóbr*, that is, the re-purchase by the Crown of its
alienated lands. The Parliaments also pressed continually, and eventually
with success, for the exemption of the *szlachta* from the jurisdiction of the
ecclesiastical courts. The first considerable success was achieved in the
Parliaments of 1538 and 1539 at Piotrków and Cracow, where Sigismund
I was compelled to promise that he would never infringe the laws or issue
constitutions *sua sponte*; he also was made to declare that the election of
his son in 1530 was not lawful and that after the death of the younger
Sigismund the new king would be elected with the participation of the
whole nobility. All that Sigismund had therefore secured was the suc-
cession of his son in 1548 without further election.

    The reign of Sigismund II Augustus was preoccupied with the growth
and pretensions of the now largely Protestant nobility and with the long
and costly struggle for Livonia and White Russia with Ivan the Terrible,[1]
so much so that he had neither the leisure nor the opportunity to pursue
the constitutional conflict with success. In 1562 he conceded the 'ex-
ecution' of Crown lands illegally alienated since 1504. In 1569, when the
Crowns and Parliaments of the kingdom of Poland and the Grand
Principality of Lithuania were united by the Union of Lublin, he was
unable to prevent the extension of the legal and economic privileges of the
Polish *szlachta* to the whole of the vast Lithuanian principality. Sigismund
Augustus died in 1572 with no son to succeed him, leaving the Crown to
be put up to auction by the now supreme and sovereign nobles. They used
the opportunity with disastrous success, binding their chosen candidate,
Henry of Anjou, to the most rigid promises to respect all their liberties,
political, social, economic and religious, as set out with brutal clarity and
devastating detail in three documents; the *Pacta Conventa*, the religious
charter known as the *Warsaw Confederation*, and *Henrician Articles*. This
last summed up the victory of the *szlachta* in the clause *de non praestanda
obedientia*: 'if the king act against these laws, liberties, articles and
conditions, or do not fulfil them, he thereby makes the nobles free of the
obedience and fealty they owe him'. The dynastic disasters which followed
confirmed the victory of the Polish lords. Henry of Anjou had been in
Poland but a few months when he seized the opportunity of succeeding his
brother Charles IX as king of France to desert his uncomfortable Polish

1 Cf. below, pp. 620ff.

throne in 1574. His elected successor, Stephen Bathory, prince of Transylvania, had no leisure from his wars with Russia to do more than begin an attack on the Protestant Polish communities; dying in 1586, he too left no son. The *szlachta* elected to succeed him Sigismund III, the first of three kings of the Vasa dynasty. But it was already too late. Poland lay firmly in the dead hand of the landowning minority, robbed of the opportunity of political greatness which its size, wealth and national genius might have made possible had this sixteenth-century conflict between class and nation been differently decided.

Of the three nations with which this chapter is concerned it was only the Poles who made any scholarly attempt to rationalise the practice of aristocracy. The Polish magnates and officers of state were more closely in contact with French, Italian and German scholars than were the Czechs, so long cut off by their heresy, or the Magyars, culturally less advanced and preoccupied with the Turkish peril. Magyar and Czech political theory has to be gleaned almost solely from the 'Law Books' written by such sixteenth-century Bractons as Viktorin Kornel of Všehrd and István Verböczy. Kornel's book, *Concerning the Laws of the Bohemian Land*, was put into its final form by 1508. It largely consists of a description of the manner in which the land court (*zemský soud*) exercised its jurisdiction and of legal procedure connected with the land registers (*zemské desky*); in both these central organs of the landlords he finds faults and suggests reforms, for Kornel, deputy secretary of the land registers, approached problems with a lawyer's and a bureaucrat's desire for efficiency and wished to abolish the more grievous and arbitrary privileges of the lords in the interest not only of the state but also of the peasants. By far the most famous and important legal treatise of this type was István Verböczy's *Tripartitum opus iuris consuetudinarii inclyti regni Hungariae*, compiled at the request of King Ulászló (Vladislav) of Hungary and approved by him in 1513. It was never given statutory validity by the Hungarian Parliament, but it came to have decisive authority for the courts of law and remained the foundation of Hungarian constitutional and private law for more than three centuries. The *Tripartitum* is primarily concerned with the law of real property, and the whole of its long first part – devoted to the law of inheritance, forfeiture, contract, dower and wardship – is frankly customary law. Verböczy accepts without argument that the origin and justification of the ownership of real property and the noble status that goes with it is the reward of *praeclara facinora* by the prince, whereby a mutual relationship is established: 'For the prince is elected solely by the nobles, and the noble receives his nobiliary dignity from the prince.' The second part of the *Tripartitum* is concerned with judicial process in criminal cases and is introduced by a discussion on legislative authority in

which Verböczy says that fundamental laws (*constitutiones*) can only be made by the co-operation of prince and people and that such laws 'bind in the first place the prince himself who gave them to the people at its request, in accordance with the principle: "Obey the law which thou thyself has made."' The third part of the *Tripartitum* deals with subordinate legislative bodies: the Croatian and Transylvanian Diets, the counties, the royal and chamber towns, and the guilds. The whole work concludes with a statement of the legal and judicial position of the serfs (*jobbagiones*) which says that though the peasants had formerly the right to change their place of residence, this liberty had been forfeited by their recent rebellion, an act of treason which has caused them to be made subject to their landlords *mera et perpetua rusticitate*.

It was a constant grievance of the Polish lords that they had no such authoritative statement of their liberties and privileges as Verböczy had provided for the Hungarians. In their parliamentary agitation for such an 'execution of the laws' the Polish publicists and civil servants produced a spate of treatises and speeches which taken together provide a fairly homogeneous theory of Estates sovereignty. Perhaps the ablest single work of this kind is the 'Instruction for the making of a good ruler' which Stanislas Orzechowski addressed to the newly crowned Sigismund Augustus in 1549, under the title of the *Subditus Fidelis*. Having stated his thesis that 'the equestrian order is the foundation of the realm', he goes on to say that

the king is chosen for the sake of the kingdom; the kingdom does not exist for the sake of the king. For the Law, since it is the soul and mind of the kingdom, is without doubt more powerful than the kingdom, and consequently than the king ... If therefore any flattering Tribonian or Ulpian in the Roman service tells you that you are supreme in your realm, deny it and tell him that the law reigns in your country.

Orzechowski is quite sure that Poland is the only home of liberty. In his *Oratio ad equites Polonos* of 1553 he asked:

Can you show me any country which you have seen or of which you have heard which is free, except Poland? ... The Bohemians, who are of your blood and race, how much have they preserved of their laws? ... I say nothing of England which has seen its two great lights, its own senators, John bishop of Rochester and Thomas More, slain by the axe of the public executioner.

The greatest achievement of the political thinking that was stimulated by the Polish constitutional experiment of the sixteenth century was the *De Republica Emendanda* of Andrzej Frycz Modrzewski, written in 1551 and printed in 1558. It begins with a Ciceronian definition of the state and

of the ideal of a mixed constitution. The king should be elected, chosen not for his birth, but for his knowledge of the art of governing;

since therefore kings of Poland are not born, but elected by the will of all the orders, it is not right that they should use their power to make laws or impose tribute of their own will. They do all things with the agreement of the orders and according to the prescription of the laws.

No law can be made unless it have the approval of the *ordo equestris* and of the senate. As the Estates are in duty bound to save the state from the danger of royal tyranny, so it is the duty of the king to prevent oligarchic privilege from acting unjustly. Modrzewski does not limit himself to abstract theory; much of his book is devoted to the exposition of the positive functions of a well-ordered state: provision for education, the control of trade, care for the poor. There is one chapter (XVIII) on the duty of the state to build workhouses which might have been written by Edmund Chadwick himself. His conscience was troubled by the fact that, in contrast to Germany, Poland permitted the existence of serfdom. Again and again he insists that the law is not merely aristocratic privilege but must be equal for all: 'if we remove from the serfs the right of calling their lords to account we have robbed them of all liberty. If we give the lords the power of judging their serfs in their own cause, we destroy the principle of just judgement.' The *De republica emendanda* ends with a passionate attack on a fiscal system whereby the whole cost of national defence is imposed by lords, themselves free of tax, on the shoulders of the wretched peasants. Modrzewski's faith that if the harmonious constitution of the Polish republic can be purged of its injustices it can become the most perfect of states may be the funeral oration of medieval Europe, but it also contains within itself the idea of a state where justice is sovereign and the public good the supreme end of government and law.

ARMIES, NAVIES AND THE ART OF WAR

THE forty years between the accession of Charles V in 1519 and the Treaty of Cateau-Cambrésis in 1559 were more decisive for the evolution of the art of war than any subsequent period before the late eighteenth century. The previous generation had been a period of real transition; different arms, different methods of fighting, old and new, had been used side by side, their respective merits still uncertain. The successful defence of Padua had seemed to show that inner defences could effectively supplement old-fashioned walls; at Novara, the traditional tactics of the Swiss were resoundingly vindicated; the handgun still found less general favour than the crossbow. But in this later period certain definite breaks with the past were made, and the modes of warfare for two centuries were anticipated. Fortification was systematised on the basis of the bastioned trace, and the temporary emphasis on internal instead of external defences was reversed; the crossbow was rejected; the massed selfsufficient column of pike disappeared; no army henceforward dared to take the field without some balance between the three arms, cavalry, infantry, artillery; every army sought and found a unit of organisation some way between the hundred-odd strong band and the huge and unwieldy 'battle'; the arquebus and the pike came to be used habitually together, and the former began to give way to the musket; the pistol appeared on the battlefield and was responsible for the emergence of a new medium cavalryman, the pistoleer. New weapons demand fresh tactics. The fact that armament was more or less stabilised by 1559 meant that tactics by that date had reached a stage of comparable definition. Strategy is largely determined by recruitment, finance, transport, the relationship between fortification and siegecraft, and the composition of armies. Each of these particulars took on a lasting form in this period. Armies relied on foreign mercenaries who went home if their pay was not regular; even the wealthiest state found it difficult to produce enough money at regular intervals in a long war; transport, including all but the heaviest siege guns, became as fast as the roads could allow; sieges took so long that armies were immobilised for periods that placed a great strain on finance and supply, and, on the other hand, garrisons had to be so large that an army on the march had to strip itself of a great proportion of its effectives in order to police newly conquered land and protect its bases. Armies of similar composition avoided conflict and fenced warily until a

540

very definite opening of attack appeared. The tempo of warfare slowed. After Pavia (1525) pitched battles became rare. The paymaster and quartermaster challenged the importance of the general. Propaganda and the handling of morale became ever more crucial as what had always been a battle of wits became increasingly a war of nerves.

All this is not to say that in a period of definition there were none of the characteristics of a period of transition. Generals could still act with the recklessness that brought disaster to de Thermes at Gravelines; the exploits of a civic militia could still shine among those of the professional soldier, as at Siena in 1552–3. The Turks who had stormed the scientific defences of Rhodes in 1522 were seven years later repulsed from the old-fashioned walls of Vienna. But, on the whole, these years saw such a rapid withering of the old branches of the traditional Tree of Battles, and such a luxuriant extension of the new, that it showed a very different appearance.

The spread of new military ideas and their consolidation was helped, of course, by the fact that there were hostilities somewhere in Europe throughout most of the period. Lessons were quickly learnt, conclusions could speedily be put to the test. Progress was aided, too, by the cosmopolitan nature of armies; generals learnt not only from the enemy but from their own mercenaries. And men were not only waging war, they were writing about it, and thus knowledge came to be pooled even more quickly.

Two motives, it is true, caused some delays in publication. There was the traditional fear that dangerous knowledge might be put at the disposal of the Infidel. The publication of works on fortification was safe enough, for Christians were not the aggressors, but it was considered hazardous to print advice on how towns and men might be blown up or defeated in the field. Such, at least, was the argument. But if no one went so far as Valturius had gone in the presentation of a manuscript of his *De re militari* to the sultan in 1463, large numbers of technical works did appear, and any reticences can be better explained in terms of monopoly rather than high thinking: as long as Italian secrets about gunnery and fortifications were kept, for instance, other nations would be forced to employ Italian founders and engineers. Of the three countries which produced most of the military literature, France was most notable for analysts and annalists – our knowledge of contemporary warfare would be poor without the work of Fourquevaux, Montluc and la Noue; Italy for theoretical and technical works – the works of Biringuccio and Tartaglia underlay nearly everything written on artillery for two hundred years; and Germany for encyclopaedic descriptions of armies and their organisation – the *Kriegsbücher* of Fronsperger and Solms constitute complete illustrated guides to the art of war, from the composition of an army, its tactics and its arms, to the smallest detail of administration.

It is not to be expected that writers on military subjects were exempt from the passion to cite classical precedents; the very greatness of Rome was due in the first place to her armies and only second to the arts which flourished under their protection. As in the previous generation, the works particularly of Vegetius and Frontinus continued to be ransacked, and Aelian, Polybius and Caesar, Modestus and Vitruvius still spoke to willing ears. Their ideas were not swallowed whole, but the most practical writer on a technical subject was glad to add to his opinions an echo of ancient authority. Even Machiavelli – and no one allowed his eye to be deflected more easily from modern war to ancient gossip about war – said of classical precedent (in his *Arte della Guerra*, 1521) that 'I would not follow it exactly in every particular, but in such ways only as may best suit the circumstances of the present times.' After comparing the respective merits of ancient and modern infantry for instance, he decided that the ideal unit should be made up half of men armed in the Roman manner, with short sword and shield, half in the modern Swiss fashion with pikes and arquebus. Giovanni Battista Zanchi, writing on fortification in 1554, said that in spite of gunpowder the best way of treating his highly specialised subject was to deduce rules from ancient as well as modern practice.

Ancient practice, indeed, was not always irrelevant. When Vegetius says: 'It is much better to overcome the enemy by famine, surprise or terror, than by general action, for in the latter instance fortune has often a greater share than valour', he is speaking for any commander of the mid sixteenth century. Again, the Romans, being without stirrups, used cavalry for missile rather than shock tactics; their emphasis was on heavy, steady infantry and a nimble, worrying body of horse. As first pike and then arquebus did much to render the medieval charge of heavy cavalry ineffective, this Roman combination came into favour once more. Nor was the new fortification without precedent. Across the Adriatic the late-classical defences of Diocletian's palace at Spalato, with their hexagonal gate towers and square towers set diagonally at the corners, showed how missiles could be deflected and a curtain covered by projecting works which did not suffer from the disadvantage of the older round towers, namely that a space at their heads could not be reached by fire from other parts of the defences.

If the ancients had anticipated much of the strategic and some of the tactical and technical needs of the sixteenth century, there was one new element which they had not foreseen: gunpowder. Frontinus spoke for the old world alone when he referred to weapons 'the invention of which has long since reached its limit, and for the improvement of which I see no further hope in the applied arts'. The modern world saw the conduct of battles turned upside down by the new arm and could not afford to pay much attention to advice given in ignorance of it. Yet the fascination of

the ancient writers remained. In contrast with the present, their wars seemed so masterfully planned, their armies so rationally trained, their battles so orderly. This impression was largely due to historians like Livy who described combats as they should have been rather than as they were, and to Vegetius who was describing the art of war again as it should have been, making ardent propaganda for an idealised past and an organisation more complete and efficient than any could be in practice. This completeness enslaved even men as practical as Albrecht Dürer. In his work on fortification he devoted a whole section to the detailed town-planning of a fortified place. It was based on Vegetius's analysis of a fortified camp – a practice already given up by the Romans themselves. No general tried to arrange a camp on these lines in the sixteenth century. There were a few occasions on which practical points of organisation were taken over from Roman usage, the 'legion' of Francis I, for instance, with its 6,000 men divided into units of 100 each under a 'centennier' (centurion). But while most of what had been written about Roman armament and tactics was rejected as inapplicable to an age of gun-powder, everything that was said about the morale and discipline of Roman armies was listened to raptly: arms had changed but men remained the same.

Every author who dealt seriously with military problems as a whole was concerned with the material of armies, with men and their morale. Time after time battles that should have been won were lost by indiscipline or failure of nerve. Idle and unskilled officers infected their men. Waste and peculation added to the cost of war. Campaigns were hampered by desertion, by the alienation of a countryside through brutal plundering, by the difficulty of following up a victory because of the disintegration of troops indifferent to everything but loot. The best equipment, the shrewd-est tactics, the most inspired leadership – without steady and dependable troops they were all useless. The problem most concerned native troops, hastily and unselectively recruited, dismissed as soon as possible, but it was raised too by the behaviour of mercenaries, all too often feckless and truculent, unwilling to fight a day beyond the payment of their wages, however desperate the position of their employers. Every army had its disciplinary machine, the provosts with their officers and their gibbet. But a busy marshal's court and a row of crooked necks did not necessarily lead to men behaving more steadily under fire; even the death penalty exacted by the Turks and the Swiss for cowardice could not make a good soldier out of a slack and frightened one.

Both morale and training go to the making of a good soldier. And morale itself is affected by training and discipline. 'Good order makes men bold, and confusion cowards.' 'In war discipline is superior to strength.' 'Length of service or age alone will never form a military man, for after

serving many years, an undisciplined soldier is still a novice in his profession.' The first sentence is Machiavelli's, the others come from Vegetius. There is perfect agreement. On questions of discipline and morale the advice of the ancients could be taken without qualification. Even writers on technical subjects reflected the general preoccupation with the human element in war. To defend a fortress, wrote Dürer, there was needed 'above all a religious and virile population, really capable of defending themselves'. In the matter of military discipline, wrote Fourquevaux bitterly in 1548,

all things were better done by the ancients than they are by us. Their soldiers were more orderly, more painstaking, more virtuous and better men of war than we are.

The Roman soldier was laboriously drilled according to set rules, he was subject to a stern discipline, took great pride in his profession and came of a stock by nature hardy and abstemious.

French, Italian and English writers did not hesitate to compare their own troops unfavourably with those of nations which seemed to display some of the ancient virtues. The Spaniards were widely admired. Unexcitable and steady by temperament, they were used to a hard life and suffered one gladly. For the Spanish gentleman the military was the highest of all professions. The men were well trained in garrisons at home before being drafted to the field. The Swiss, too, were hardy and used to privations. They were painstakingly drilled – the life of a pikeman depended on the steadiness of his comrades. Till their confidence was shaken at Bicocca (1522), the Swiss were convinced that they were the best troops in the world. Their preference for killing rather than taking prisoners, their refusal to sacrifice order for plunder, their ruthless punishment of waverers – these harsh characteristics singled out a race who had established their freedom by arms, and by arms were still extending their boundaries. The German professional soldiers, the *Landsknechte*, shared some of the steadiness and *esprit de corps* of the Swiss but none of their patriotism. For them morale, entirely divorced from the cause they were fighting for, was solely the product of professional self-reliance. But most quoted, most praised, and most envied, were the Turks. And the reproach to the western soldier was all the graver when he was disparaged by comparison with an Infidel. 'Their military discipline has such justice and severity as easily to surpass the ancient Greeks and Romans', wrote Giovio:

The Turks surpass our own soldiers for three reasons: they obey their commanders promptly; they never show the least concern for their lives in battle; they can live for a long time without bread and wine, being content with barley and water.[1]

1 *Turcicarum Rerum Commentarius* (1539), p. 83.

Visitors were impressed by the perfect order preserved on parades and in camp. The Turks saved their aggressiveness for war and did not, as did western soldiers, swagger and royster and brawl in peace time. Moralists, in fact, idealised the Turkish character in order to reprimand Christian backsliders as a whole, but one characteristic of the Turks they and the military reformer found equally significant: they esteemed 'those happy and blessed, that died not at home, amidst the sorrow and lamentations of their wives and children, but abroad amongst the outcries of their enemies, clangour of armour and shattering of spears'.[1]

Much of this praise was due. The permanent troops had been rigidly trained from boyhood. They owed the sultan an unquestioning loyalty. Their religion urged them uncompromisingly to war against non-believers. There was no snobbish disinclination to serve on foot. Promotion was regular and not by birth but merit, in marked contrast to France and England where – Thomas Audley grumbled in Edward VI's reign – many a man 'was made a Capitaine before he was a soldier'.[2] The old soldier was guaranteed a livelihood on retirement. The planning of campaigns was not hampered by any conflict between the military and their political employers, because the Turks did not know the western distinction between military and civil administration. Some of these virtues could not be reproduced in the West for religious and sociological reasons, nor was any western country organised basically for war. But reformers in the West were not only, for this reason, crying for the moon: they were celebrating the perfection of a luminary already on the wane. Their glamourised version of the Turkish armies neglected its faults. The janissaries were dangerous in peace as well as in war. Educated for battle, they were good for nothing else, and as the century progressed they increasingly came to show the disadvantages of a Praetorian guard, more the master than the servant of the state. Their fighting quality declined, too, when they were allowed to marry, and when, towards the end of Sulaimān's reign, the sons of janissaries were admitted to the corps: their exclusive loyalty to the sultan was in this way twice mitigated. Moreover, Turkish victories were due no less to sheer numbers, as in Cyprus in 1522, or to the political disunity of their enemies, as time and again in Hungary, than to their military efficiency. And while their tactics and armament tended to stand still during the sixteenth century, and their discipline slightly to fall off, European armies showed themselves more open to innovation and increasingly capable of the trained steadiness essential for the proper handling of modern weapons. Yet it was clear even to those

1 Johannes Boemus, *De Omnium Gentium Ritibus* (1528), lib. 3, c. 2.
2 'A Treatise on the Art of War', *Journal of the Society for Army Historical Research* (1927), 133.

who knew the Turks best and therefore feared them least, that, in contrast to the European powers, their possession of a large standing army gave them a great advantage.

The Italian wars had shown the disadvantages of mercenaries clearly enough. When unpaid they either marched home again, or, as at Bicocca, insisted on action before action was ripe. Even if paid, their reliability was doubtful. On the eve of Pavia 6,000 Swiss, fully paid, marched off to protect their own borders when they heard that Chiavenna had fallen. Even after behaving magnificently they were liable to spring unwelcome surprises on their employers, as when the *Landsknechte*, after helping to save Vienna, demanded triple pay and threatened to sack the town if they did not get it. Loyalty to particular captains, like Frundsberg or Giovanni de' Medici, could sometimes override personal ends, but commonly money was the only motive that could keep mercenaries in the field, and of all the essentials of war, ready money was hardest to come by.

Mercenaries, wrote Fourquevaux in his widely read *Instructions sur le Faict de la Guerre* (1548), have no stake in the country and are not fighting to defend their homes or possessions. They get preferential pay and retire loaded with gifts, yet – as Pavia showed – they are by no means always victorious, and they do not even bear the brunt of the battle but leave the position of real danger to the native troops who thus take most of the risks of battle but get none of the credit for victory. These arguments, which incorporate the main points of Machiavelli's criticism of mercenary troops, are, of course, one-sided. The employment of mercenaries did bring definite advantages. They were always available, Swiss, German or Italian. They were highly trained and bore better and more up-to-date arms than national troops, grudgingly equipped by the State. They could remain in the field for as long as they were paid without worrying about crops spoiling or businesses going to the bad from neglect. Apart from the Swiss, who had enough national feeling to refuse to fight each other or to imperil the fortunes of their own country, mercenaries would attack whoever they were told, irrespective of race or creed. German *Landsknechte* fought in thousands against the Empire. Italian troops helped the French in their peninsular wars. Catholic Italians helped crush the rebel Catholics of Devon and Protestant Germans the rebel Protestants of Norfolk in 1549; the Swiss helped Catholics attack their co-religionists in the French civil wars. Mercenaries, moreover, would as willingly help their employer defend his territory as attack someone else's, while national troops were prepared to defend their immediate neighbourhood in case of dire need (when they might fight very gallantly, as did the Florentines in 1529) but were not eager for foreign service, though soldiers were always forthcoming from poor countries like Spain and poor classes like the lesser nobility of France.

There were, on the other hand, positive objections to a standing army. First and foremost, of course, was the cost of keeping it up in peace. The upkeep of garrisons, parks of artillery and household troops was already enough for the estates who had to foot the bills for their betters' military schemes. The unruly behaviour of troops was another good reason for seeing as little of them as possible. When the knight in the *Discourse of the Common Weal (c.* 1549) describes the French legions, the English husbandman replies:

> God forbid that we have anie such tirantes come amongst us; for as they saie, such will in the countrie of fraunce take pore mens hens, chickens, pigges, and other provision, and paie nothinge for it; except it be an evell turne, as to ravishe his wife or daughter for it.

And the same objections were being raised across the Channel, as numerous royal ordinances show. At a time when firearms gave the professional soldier an advantage over the peasant with his bill and bow, a standing army could be a political threat, as well as promise of insolence and aggression. And if the soldier was a menace to peaceable folk when he was in service, they had still more to fear when he was on leave or discharged. To employ mercenaries was to shift the burden of this social dislocation on the country of supply. Yet again, not all governments thought it safe to arm their own subjects. Machiavelli had had to plead hard for his militia. 'Rome continued free four hundred years, and Sparta eight hundred, though their citizens were armed all that while; and many other states have lost their liberties in less than forty years.' Even in the perilous years 1512 and 1524, however, the Florentines would not allow the subject towns of the *contado* to raise troops to defend themselves and thereby help Florence herself.

Though many of the objections to a standing native army concerned their existence in peace-time, when at worst they could cause disturbance, all the objections to mercenaries concerned actual campaigns which they could turn into defeats. In spite of the disadvantages of native troops, therefore, efforts were made to raise and train them, and to use them to supplant at least a proportion of mercenaries. One drawback was that modern armies needed a combination of various specialised arms: artillery, heavy and light horse, pikemen and arquebusiers, and excellence in some of these categories depended, in the last resort, on racial characteristics as well as training. In spite of reverses, the Swiss and German pikemen remained the best in Europe: France made numerous attempts to produce her own, but never with success. Italian arquebusiers remained in demand long after other countries had trained their own. No one country in fact could provide high quality in all arms: some supplementation through mercenaries was necessary. A second drawback lay in the character of

certain arms: the pike, the arquebus and, after the middle of the century, the musket, required long and consistent training. But all that states could afford, and civilian prejudice would tolerate, was a system of native reserves, called up for muster and drill at somewhat long intervals, with a nucleus permanently engaged on garrison duties.

The problem did not confront England in an acute form. Her continental campaigns were infrequent and short, the Channel – reinforced by Henry VIII's coastal fortifications – was an effective bar to invasion. Northern levies twice proved enough to defeat the Scots, at Flodden (1513) and Solway Moss (1542). Londoners were sufficiently reassured by their trained bands. The only permanent troops were the king's yeomen and the garrisons of Calais and Berwick. Unspurred by pressing danger at home England remained, except in the realm of naval armament, a stronghold of military conservatism. Henry VIII carried on a flirtation full of second thoughts with the arquebus, but the bow remained by far the more important missile weapon. Pikes were introduced but so gradually that foreign pike had still to be hired for his last campaign in 1543–5. Similarly, Burgundian cavalry – England, like Spain, bred very few horses heavy enough to sustain full armour and barding – and Spanish and Italian arquebusiers were used up to the end of the period.

The problem facing the empire was graver, for although Spain, Germany and the Low Countries could provide the full variety of arms, the demands of frontiers on the east, south and west were very great, and while Germany was a reservoir of heavy infantry and medium cavalry (*Reiter*) it was not an easy one to tap. A fairly high general level of prosperity made the profession of arms unattractive to the majority, and Maximilian's attempt to infuse the *Landsknechte* with a feeling of loyalty and reverence to the House of Habsburg had failed. Even when they fought for their own country their loyalties were first and foremost to their captains; as Imperial servants they were intransigent and difficult to combine. Peace transformed them from soldiers into brigands. There were attempts in the middle of the century to awaken the long-dormant feudal service; the imperial commissary, Lazarus von Schwendi, for instance, hoped that the Turkish menace would overcome the long tradition of service by (indifferent) substitute or cash. He wanted a standing army on full pay, unvitiated by the trade unionism of the *Landsknechte*. The venture failed, but at least the Diet, by its ordinances of 1548, 1551 and 1555, bound the *Landsknecht* close to the state and deprived him of some of the privileges he so consistently abused.

It was France, however, the most aggressive of European states, who felt the need to establish a standing army most urgently. The *ban* and *arrière-ban* – the horsed levy of tenants owing military service for their fiefs – continued to be used, though its usefulness was constantly declining

as infantry, and especially highly trained arquebusiers, became more and more important. Many of the keenest recruits preferred service in the regular heavy cavalry – the *gendarmerie* – or, after 1534, in the regular infantry, the legions. There were attempts to reform these levies. From time to time the categories exempt from liability to serve were reduced; a move was made to revise the faulty records of military obligation; in an effort to make the service less burdensome, the obligation to serve abroad was temporarily cut down from forty days to the time necessary to pursue an enemy away from French frontiers. Plans were made for the *ban* and *arrière-ban* to produce infantry and medium cavalry instead of the old heavy man-at-arms and his horsed assistants. In spite of these attempts the levies never made a good showing, and in spite of nationalist prejudice in their favour they were despised by military experts who advocated the creation of an entirely new body to take their place.

The *franc-archers* still survived, but raised as they were for short periods, armed with a medley of weapons and lacking in discipline, they were of little use and disbanded in 1535. Another fifteenth-century corps still survived, the *compagnons d'ordonnance* or *gendarmerie* of gentlemen volunteers, and they still provided the solid cavalry basis of French armies. Their service was regular, in that they had to muster three times a year to receive their pay and be inspected, and about one-half of their number was away on leave in peacetime while the other half remained on garrison duty. Their usefulness declined as the Italian wars went on and the heavy cavalryman played a decreasing part in deciding the fortunes of a battle, and though the corps remained in being, much of its prestige had disappeared by the middle of the century. They tended to be reactionary, haughtily intolerant of discipline, and to look upon military service as a perquisite of rank that could be waived if it was inconvenient. More professional in feeling, of course, were the French household troops, the Scots and Swiss Guards and the archers, but their numbers were small, and, again, the Scots and the archers fought as cavalry.

Native infantry was recruited for the occasion in bands by captains who held the king's commission. These men were volunteers and behaved well on the battlefield, but as they were dismissed wherever peace was made, their aim was to make as much out of periods of hostility as they could by plunder; having, in many cases, no peace-time niche to return to, they remained in arms, living off the countryside until war should break out once more. These *aventuriers* were a lively argument for the establishment of a regularly paid infantry corps. Such a corps was organised in 1531, when legions, each of 6,000 men, were recruited in Champagne, Picardy, Normandy and Languedoc. Pains were to be taken to select good men; their uniform and arms – pike and arquebus in proportions that varied from legion to legion – were to be provided by the king. Nobles were

attracted by exemption from service in the *ban* and *arrière-ban*, com-
moners by tax exemptions and the chance of promotion into the nobility.
In peacetime there were to be two musters a year for the majority, while
the *cadre* of each legion remained permanently in arms. The creation of
the legions was attended by much enthusiam and publicity. Fourquevaux
wrote his book largely for their guidance. But the hope that they would
replace *aventuriers* and mercenaries turned out to be illusory within a
decade. The cumbrous administrative machinery was faulty; the men were
often poor soldiers and they behaved badly in action in 1543. And when
an attempt to reorganise them had failed in 1558, attention was switched
to the progress of a second, more lasting experiment, the creation of
regiments of a less unwieldy nature. In the middle of the century France
still depended on *bandes* of infantry, especially on some, like the *bandes de
Picardie* and the *bandes de Piemont*, which were so regularly re-employed
that they can be looked upon as equivalent to permanent troops; and in
1543 and 1549 – sad concession to the failure of the legions – the old
dependence on Swiss mercenaries was confirmed by new treaties. Six-
teenth-century wars were not to be won by clapping civilians into uniform
and giving them a Roman name.

The character of these wars was largely determined by technical
developments. New weapons demanded new tactics, new tactics dictated
changes in the composition of an army. Again, new weapons, by forcing a
changed attitude to battle, affected strategy and the length of campaigns;
and in this way they had repercussions on government as a whole,
internally from the point of view of finance and supply, externally from
the point of view of foreign policy and diplomatic activity. It is essential,
therefore, to say something about weapons and their evolution. Particu-
larly is it essential to look at the development of fortification, for the
change in the tempo of warfare brought about by this science was the most
important single influence on sixteenth-century strategy. When armies
could render themselves almost invulnerable by carefully designed tem-
porary fortifications in the field, and when city walls became stronger than
the guns of a besieger, then a war of battles eagerly sought and readily
accepted and of cities quickly falling to the victor – the sort of war that
Charles VIII's invasion had brought to Italy – was no longer possible.

The problem was to protect walls from guns and, to a secondary extent,
from mining. The outlines of the answer had been anticipated in the
previous period. It had been seen that walls must be lowered, to provide a
smaller target, and thickened to increase their resistance to shot and
sustain retaliatory armament. As walls sank, so did the defenders' range of
vision, and wide ditches, and outworks beyond them, became increasingly
necessary to keep the attack a safe distance from the main defences. As
walls thickened, it became more difficult to see what was happening

immediately underneath them; flanking observation, as well as flanking fire, was needed, and the use of the bastion was consolidated, the type which presented an acute salient angle to the field supplanting the rounded variety. The systematically planned bastioned trace – a curtain with bastions at regular intervals – still lay in the future; even at Antwerp (1540) and Hesdin (1554) the fortifications had an *ad hoc* air, with the bastions irregularly spaced. Gun ports and embrasures continued to enlarge their external, at the expense of their internal, splay, and the use of large low ports *à la française* was discontinued as they were too vulnerable to storming parties. Various attempts were made to compensate for the slow rate of fire of the defenders' guns during an assault, either by increasing the tiers of fire – as Francesco di Giorgio had suggested, in the lobes of his bastions – or, as this led to structural weakness, by the building of outworks, casemates, or cavaliers, which supplemented the fire from curtain and bastion. Neither method was systematically exploited in this period, reliance being placed on intensive fire from light arms and on subsidiary defences inside the walls, ditches covered by ramparts. Generally speaking, cities were attacked before they had undertaken large-scale refortification on modern lines. The defenders were forced, therefore, to supplement their existing fortifications from within, and reconcile themselves to the frequent defence of breaches, as happened at Vienna (1529), Boulogne (1544) and Metz (1552), where, as the surgeon Ambroise Paré recorded in his *Voyages*,

everyone was employed in carrying earth to make up ramparts by night and by day. Princes, lords and captain, lieutenants and ensigns – all carried the basket, to encourage the soldiers and citizens to do the like – as they did. Yes, even ladies and gentlewomen, and those who had no baskets, helped with kettles, panniers, sacks, sheets and with whatever else they could carry earth in, and all in such a way that no sooner had the enemy broken down the wall, than he found an even stronger rampart behind it.

By the end of the period the theory of fortification had got a long way ahead of the practice. The ideal fortified city of the textbooks, for instance, was round, and actual towns were not. Differences in terrain meant that the ideas of the experts were not universally applicable. But the most important checks on progress were existing fortifications. Every town had its defences, and reconversion was very expensive; Dürer, the only theorist to appreciate this fact, suggested defence work as a form of poor relief. Citizens and rulers felt proud of the lofty walls and were loath to cut them down; only the extreme urgency of their position in 1526 led the Florentines to reduce some of their towers. The usual aim was to modify the walls a little to exploit the defensive utility of cannon, and a little more to protect points of special danger, and to leave it at that. There

were few new large-scale works of fortification, like Antwerp's (1540), and there were not even many new fortresses: Michele Sanmicheli's S. Andrea on the Venetian Lido and Henry VIII's works on the English south coast were exceptions to the general rule of adaptation. Theoretical writers of the 1520s, like Dürer (1527) and Valle (1528), devoted much of their space to new ways of defending existing walls. The fortifications of Verona were gradually re-modelled from 1520, but Verona was in a crucial strategic position on the main road from the Brenner, and the inadequacy of its defences had been shown by the fighting of 1509 and 1516. As late as 1552 Metz was still adapting its old works, filling towers with earth to turn them into makeshift bastions.

The changes in the art of fortification that gained wide theoretical assent in this period can be seen by comparing Machiavelli's *Arte della Guerra*, published at the beginning of it, with Niccolò Tartaglia's *Quesiti, e Inventione diverse*, published in 1546. Machiavelli, drawing on his own experience of the siege of Pisa and on what he had heard about the siege of Padua, concentrates on adapting existing walls and preparing internal defences. Tartaglia, while admitting that there must be some way of dealing with an enemy who has breached the walls, concentrates on keeping him at a distance with fire from walls planned afresh with mathematical precision. In storming Machiavelli's defences, an enemy, after climbing or breaching the town wall, would find himself on the brink of a deep wide ditch, commanded from the top by guns firing from a rampart made from the spoil thrown up on the town side, and flanked in the bottom by casemates firing along it. Tartaglia's ideas are developed in the course of a dialogue with the prior of Barletta in which the prior asks him if he does not think that the new fortifications of Turin – an angle bastion at each of the city walls, and a gun platform half-way along each wall – are the finest possible. Tartaglia says no. They are good as regards *materia* (brute strength) but poor as regards *forma* (design). Walls should not be straight, but curved. The enemy should never be able to get nearer to the curtain than he is to a bastion. At any moment he should be open to the fire of at least four banks of artillery. The prior's reaction to these opinions, which were rapidly becoming commonplace, was: 'If this were true, artillery would have lost much of its reputation in taking cities.'

Tartaglia's theories had already been put into practice in England. The reconciliation of Francis I and Charles V in 1538 meant that Henry VIII was faced by the possibility of a joint invasion on their part levelled against any point on the entire east and south coasts. Accordingly he pushed forward an elaborate system of coastal defences, building forts and blockhouses at intervals from Hull to Milford Haven, concentrating on the Thames, the Downs, Southampton, the Isle of Wight and Falmouth. A number of them survive in fair condition: Deal and Walmer in

the Downs, Hurst Castle in the Solent, Pendennis and St Mawes on Falmouth Haven. They have nothing in common with earlier English fortifications. They were fortresses, and nothing else: the efficacy of the design was in no way compromised by the needs of a dwelling-house. They were built directly by the state and not, as had been the custom, by an individual or corporation under licence from the Crown. There were no examples of recently constructed fortresses in England to act as a brake on independence of design. There was no native school of engineers. The fortresses, therefore, were built by imported experts, like Stephen von Haschenperg, in the most modern manner. While not uniform in plan, all lie low, are sunk in moats, have curved walls and rounded parapets and are provided with several banks of gun embrasures, some of them (as at Sandown and Walmer) showing a nearly full external flare. The political danger faded, and these fortresses were never put to the test. If they had been, it is very unlikely that they would have been taken by storm. The defence of Rhodes had shown how effective even old walls could be when assisted by modern devices: its bastions had helped assault after assault to be beaten back, even when the *fausse-braie*, or outer wall, had been pierced.[1] Within the last thirty years, wrote Fourquevaux, there has been a revolution in the fortification of cities. As everyone is busied with remaking their defences, 'the conquest of a country from now on will be hard indeed'.

The development of artillery continued under the active care of monarchs who valued guns for the prestige involved in their ownership as well as for their effectiveness. The fabrication of guns and gunpowder became more widespread as each nation endeavoured to produce its own. There was still a wasteful multiplication of types, involving formidable problems of supply and, in some particulars, downright inefficiency, for stone balls continued to be used, though far inferior to iron, because they could be made to size on the spot, to supplement gaps in supplies of ammunition. At the siege of Boulogne (1544) the English were still using artillery of eleven different calibres, each requiring its own carriage and shot. It is perhaps worth giving particulars of four of the more lasting types, medium guns whose characteristics remained more or less constant for the next hundred years (see table). Though the monster guns of an earlier age had been supplanted by others more nimble and accurate, Henry VIII indulged his nostalgia for these impressive but unwieldy tubes by confronting the garrison at Boulogne with vast dummy guns of wood which had small real ones strapped on their backs.

As there was no uniformity of bore, so there was none of material. Iron and brass guns were produced side by side. Brass flowed better in the

	Weight (lb.)	Calibre (in.)	Range (yd.)		Rate of fire in rounds *per diem*
			Point blank	At 10° elevation	
Culverin	4,000	5½	460	2,650	60
Demi-culverin	3,000	4½	400	2,400	70
Saker	1,500	3½	360	2,170	80
Falcon	800	2½	320	1,920	120

mould and was more suitable, therefore, for large guns. On the other hand, the heat of firing made it soft and liable to explode. Iron built-up guns had the advantage that they could be made by local smiths, but they were heavier and less accurate than cast guns and fell out of favour in this period. Gun-making became the specialised, centralised business it was to remain. There was a considerable increase in accuracy. Guns were better bored, carriages better adapted, the gunners' quadrant did something to obviate the need for wasteful and elaborate sighting shots, some attention was paid to the study of ballistics. As cast iron replaced forged iron in the making of mortars they became increasingly useful in siege work and by the middle of the century were throwing an effective explosive shell. If the very large gun was used decreasingly in siege work, the very light one began to disappear from the field. German gunsmiths had developed a light gun that could be drawn on a four-wheel carriage at a gallop, and it was used at Renty in 1554, but it was already an anachronism. The musket was coming into use, and with a similar calibre it was almost as effective and far easier to transport.

Apart from the stubborn retention of the longbow in England, the period saw the final triumph of firearms as missile weapons. The crossbow disappeared from battle in the 1520s, not without some conservative regret. The arquebus was open to the criticisms that it was unreliable in wet weather and that its rate of fire was slower than the bow's. But the maximum killing range of an arquebus of the best Italian make was about 400 yards, which compared favourably with the range of a longbow and equalled that of the crossbow; the arquebus was also decisively superior in shock and impact and therefore in killing power. Interestingly enough, it was in the years that saw the speediest development of firearms from the handgun to the musket that, in the east, the range of the bow was enlarged to a degree that has proved impossible to recapture. The weapon used was the short composite bow, and even to qualify for admission to the archers' guild founded by Mehemmed II and fostered by Sulaimān the Magnificent, it was necessary to have shot an arrow at least 630 yards, while the

highest class was reserved for those who had exceeded 770 yards. These ranges were achieved, however, with light flight arrows, exploiting the wind, and there is no indication of how useful from the points of view of accuracy and impact they would have been in battle. The shortbow was known in Europe, but several factors counted against its adoption: the heavier armour used in the west; extreme difficulty of manufacture and of obtaining trade secrets from an infidel country; most of all, the rapid extension of firearms – which had been used, of course, almost from the first, by the Turks themselves.

The arquebus had been shown to be so effective by the troops – Spanish and Italian – who had first used it on a large scale, that German and Swiss infantry (the latter particularly after Bicocca) employed a proportion of shot with their pike. In Spain the respective value of the two arms, man for man, was reflected in the higher pay offered to the first-class arquebusier than to the best pikeman. Fourquevaux, who was one of those who regretted the sudden dropping of the crossbow, said of the arquebus that 'it is very good, as long as it is used by skilful men, but at the present everyone wants to be an arquebusier: I know not whether it is to take higher wages, or to be lighter laden, or to fight further off'. And he adds a useful reminder of the waste entailed by giving the arquebus to unskilled men: 'For this negligence is cause that in a skirmish wherein 10,000 shots are fired, not so much as one man dies, for the arquebusiers content themselves with making a noise and shoot at all adventure.' The musket, soon to overtake the arquebus, was still in this period in its embryonic form: a heavy match-lock of one-inch bore, used in siege work. Its long barrel was supported by a mounting, so that it resembled a small piece of artillery. A version of it, with a portable rest, had been seen in the field in the 1520s but it was a difficult weapon to handle, its improvement was slow, and its widespread use lay in the future.

The arquebus was used by mounted troops, but it was not a satisfactory cavalry weapon. It required two hands to fire, and before the invention of the wheel-lock (in which a piece of pyrites is held against a rapidly revolving steel wheel, set off by a spring when the trigger is pressed) the conserving of a lighted fuse was an additional snag. It was probably necessary to drop the reins, or even to dismount, before getting in a telling shot. But as the wheel-lock spread during the 1520s, the cavalry carbine and the horse pistol appeared, both prepared for instant use and carried in saddle holsters. These weapons, especially the heavy pistol, which came into use in the 1540s, had, as we shall see, an important effect on cavalry tactics. With firearms as a whole, as with guns, no uniformity must be looked for. Much experimentation was going on; specimens of superb craftsmanship, hardly less effective than the best arms of the following

century, were produced in small numbers for the wealthy, but the arms used by the rank and file – particularly non-mercenaries – were conservative, simple and cheap.

In spite of the great development of firearms, armourers had never been busier. Gunpowder had led to armour being strengthened: from now on it was heavier, solider, and, except for the gratification of individual whims, more rounded in contour. Daunted by the threat of gunshot wounds and the blood poisoning which so consistently followed them, the soldier who could afford it insisted on armour proofed against shot – resistant, that is, to small-arms fire at ranges greater than point-blank. These suits were specially strengthened on the front of the head piece and the breastplate: the tasses and lames of the pauldrons were also thickened, though here great protection was given by the normal overlapping of the plates. This heavier armour was inconvenient, but firearms made it essential even in hot countries like Spain and Italy where the wearing of full armour had previously lagged behind the north of Europe. The additional weight was particularly galling to infantry, who frequently preferred to remain nimble and under-protected to being prisoners of their own defences. There were complaints that men treated their armour as army baggage rather than personal equipment and in case of surprise were therefore slow to put it on. And they were criticised for wearing it so seldom that in action they were scarcely able to sustain its weight.

One of the justifications of the tourney was the practice it gave in wearing armour. And the tourney itself dictated important changes in the nature of armour, changes that came to a head in this period. The gap between battle practice and tourney practice was at its widest; the same armour would hardly do for both. Nor was a suit of armour designed specially for the tourney of use by itself; each version of the combat was characterised by the administering of a different sort of blow, with lance, sword or mace, on horseback or on foot, and for each the armour had to be adapted to give the best protection where it was most needed. This was done partly by the substitution of one piece for another, partly by the addition of reinforcing pieces. The suits of field-harness and foot-fighting armour made in 1547 for the Archduke Ferdinand of Austria had thirty-four alternative and reinforcing pieces. This was not unusual; up to a hundred were known. And the level of craftsmanship was maintained by the intelligent patronage of monarchs like Charles V and Henry VIII whose fashions were followed by their courts. The weight of armour had some influence on tactics. The heavier it was, the less able was a horse to travel fast with its wearer. The charge in line (*en haye*), developed in the previous century to replace the dense ambling advance in column, lost its power of impact when delivered at a walk, or even at a trot, and the sixteenth century saw a return to the column, with weight of impact a

substitute for dash. But the most important single factor that affected tactics was, of course, gunpowder.

In spite of the increased mobility of gun-carriages, artillery played a less important part in battle than firearms. Writers like Machiavelli and Fourquevaux, when describing imaginary battles, allow the artillery to fire only a shot or two before being masked by an advance or silenced by enemy cavalry. This was an exaggeration, but there were, in fact, few examples as yet of a prolonged initial cannonade before an open battle. The main utility of artillery was to strengthen an entrenched position, as at Bicocca, to bombard the enemy out of one, as at Ravenna, or to break up a formation as naval artillery fire broke up the Scots left wing at Pinkie and the French right wing at Gravelines. The Turkish device of keeping an artillery reserve at the rear between the lines of cavalry to open fire on an enemy who broke through was as successful at Mohács in 1526 as it had been at Tchaldiran in 1514, but it was not copied in the west, partly, no doubt, because Christian troops were less happy about artillery firing from the rear.

Bicocca (1522) and Pavia (1525) demonstrated once and for all that tactics would have to be revised in face of the arquebus. The first demonstrated its power in a fortified defensive position, the second in the open field. The main victim at Bicocca was the Swiss infantry, at Pavia the French cavalry, each the best representative of its type. The Swiss, who had chosen to attack in spite of the advice of Lautrec, the commander-in-chief, steadily advanced against arquebusiers firing from a rampart behind a sunken road. Their losses were enormous, and though they reached and began to storm the imperialist position, they were so weakened that pikemen coming up through the arquebusiers were easily able to push them back. At Pavia, the marquis of Pescara met a charge of heavy cavalry by dispatching his arquebusiers forward to harass the advance, using every cover they could – and there were plenty of hedges and small brakes of trees in the parkland over which the battle was fought – and retreating where necessary into the protective ranks of pikes. Brantôme quotes a Spanish source which emphasises the novelty of these tactics (*modo de pelear por si nuevo y no usitado, y sobre todo maravilloso, cruel y miserable*) and himself calls them 'a confused and novel form of fighting which is easier to imagine than to describe';[1] a useful reminder that, as tactics became more open with the use of skirmishing arquebusiers and smaller blocks of troops, descriptions of battles tended to become increasingly artificial. The French complained bitterly of the novelty of these tactics but took the lesson to heart: from 1529 horsed arquebusiers were attached to the *gendarmerie*, and horse pistoleers were employed as

---

1 Ed. Lalanne, vol. I, p. 337.

soon as the German *Reiter* had shown how effective they could be. After Pavia, moreover, cavalry was no longer used against arquebusiers. It was used against other infantry, or to attack pike supported by shot if they were already frontally engaged with other troops. As both foot and horse began to avoid direct movement against arquebusiers, shot ceased to be a decisive arm. The great victories of gunpowder were Ravenna, Bicocca and Pavia, before any reasonable counter had been worked out. From the mid 1520s shot, though it remained essential, became a secondary arm.

Though the proportion of horse to foot fell to something like one to seven or eight during this period, cavalry still retained a decisive influence in war. Light horse was still needed for scouting and raiding and to harass troops already engaged. Heavy cavalry still performed the invaluable function of halting a body of infantry by repeated charges, so providing artillery and missile troops with a stationary target, as at Pinkie. As pike infantry became more regularly stiffened with shot, the charge home declined in favour and – though the virtues of the manœuvre were hotly contested – tended to be replaced by the caracole, in which a column of medium-heavy horse armed with pistols advanced in steady order to close range, each rank filing away after firing, the next coming up to take its place. The advantage of this tactic was that a continuous stream of fire poured into the enemy. The disadvantage was that it required a very steady nerve to come close to infantry that contained arquebusiers and take careful aim, and as most riders were right-shouldered it meant that they could only file off to the left, a characteristic that halved their usefulness. But some sort of medium-heavy or heavy cavalry remained essential; armies very deficient in horse were inevitably the victims of those better equipped with this arm.

Much of the social stigma attached to infantry service had disappeared by the middle of the period. This was due to a number of reasons. In some countries, like Spain, where the mule was the main riding animal, and England, where horses were of slight build, there were fewer horsemen because there were less mounts. Monarchs had publicised the growing tactical importance of infantry by an occasional dramatic gesture: Charles V marched a short distance with his pike-men, just as Maximilian had done before him. The increasing popularity of the foot-tourney among noblemen accustomed them to the sight of a gentleman in armour on his own legs. And firearms helped to make foot service more popular, though it made the recruitment of pike so difficult that the Swiss and Germans had no need to be anxious for their market. Both arms were needed. Pike alone was vulnerable to shot, arquebusiers alone were vulnerable to any body of cavalry that charged in without presenting too leisurely, or too broad, a target. If there were pikes to break the impact and give the arquebusiers time to reload, or arquebusiers to thin a charge before it hit

the pikes, then the odds were heavily against the cavalry. In this period of experiment the problem was to find the best way of combining the two. At Ceresole (1544) two experiments cancelled each other out. Both French and Imperialists had placed shot behind the first rank of pike with orders not to fire until the armies had actually met: the French pistols and the Imperialist arquebuses blazed out at the same moment, levelling the foremost pikes, but not effecting a changed balance of power.

The same idea had occurred to Thomas Audley whose treatise on the art of war was written in Edward VI's reign. His ideal battle order was based on a huge square of infantry, either exactly square (a reminder of the very deep Swiss formations) or twice as broad as it was deep. This was to be composed of five units. The first five or six ranks were to be pike, with an optional rank of shot after the first rank of pikes; the second unit consisted of halberds or bills, the ends guarded by small squads of pike, in case the inferior weapon were attacked in flank by horse; in the middle was another unit of pike; behind that a combination of halberd and bill guarded by pike like the former one, finally, pike alone again. This mass was to be guarded by a 'sleeve' of shot (archers as well as arquebusiers, this being an English order) on either flank; beyond that, in each case, the guns, and beyond them, the horse. In front of the whole array was a long, thin line of missile troops, archers and arquebusiers mingled. In combat, this skirmishing line made as much trouble as it could before retiring, then the main bodies closed line to line, the aim being to have enough cavalry to hold the enemy as well as enough to send round to gall his flank.

There is nothing very progressive here. And, on the whole, battle orders remained reactionary until the third quarter of the century. This was partly due to the fact that once the lessons of gunpowder were learned there were very few large-scale pitched battles, and partly to the difficulty of combining new levies and professional mercenaries in cosmopolitan armies whose loyalties were often divided between commander-in-chief and unit leaders. The tradition of large mass opposed to large mass (the medieval battle) lingered and was reinforced by the memories of the deep Roman battle order, with its units of mutual support, *principes, hastati* and *triarii*. Difficulties of brigading certainly fostered the mass at the expense of smaller, freer units presenting a more elastic front. The legion of 6,000 men and the *tercio* of 3,000 were attempts to secure units of manageable size. Several small 'bands' had been grouped under a common command. But there was still no corps that combined a considerable overall size with disciplined selfcontained units, like the regiment of the future with its companies. Armies remained less effective than the sum of their parts would suggest.

Shortage of money affected strategy in that it affected the size of an army and its transport, and sometimes tactics as a lack of ready cash –

point d'argent, point de Suisse – might lead to the defection of a unit; but it did not seriously affect the decision whether to go to war or not. The problem was rather easier for the country attacked: owing to exemptions, out-of-date assessment and ineffective collection, sixteenth-century taxes seldom dipped as deeply into men's pockets as it was intended they should, and under the threat of war the apparently over-taxed could usually spare a little more. France, a constant aggressor, who could plead but not prove compulsive need, succeeded time after time in finding money for fresh adventures, using now general levies on the kingdom as a whole, now loans from individuals and corporations, now special levies on a particular section of the community, like the clergy. And there was always the prospect, for armies serving abroad, of compensating poor and irregular pay by loot and ransom.

With every technical advance, the amount of capital sunk in an army increased. Guns, gun-carriages, and their ammunition trains represented a growing expenditure, and though much of this was borne in peace as well, getting the contents of an artillery park on the move involved the hiring of some thousands of animals. A medium-weight gun required ten horses, a large one up to twenty yoke of oxen. As the state's investment grew, so did its reluctance to allow the spoils of war to be dissipated among individuals. Ideally, war should pay for itself, as it had (it was held) among the ancients where a great proportion of plunder was handed over to the state and the remainder distributed equally among the troops, less an allotment to the legion benefit fund. The legal right of soldiers to plunder – at least in a technically 'just' war – was not challenged: *jus belli infinitum*. But attempts were made to prevent the state being entirely uncompensated, as well as to regulate looting in the interests of discipline. The 1527 Articles of War of Ferdinand I were among the most lasting and representative codes of the time. They forbade plundering without permission; precise order was to be observed until this permission was given by signal. Any artillery, ammunition, powder and store of provisions were to be reserved to the emperor. Cities taken by surrender were not to be looted. The fact that these Articles were issued in the year of the sack of Rome indicates how necessary such rulings were, and how difficult to enforce. Men were intent on making a fortune out of the wars, and many – like Sebastian Schertlin von Burtenbach, who took part in the sack – returned with enough booty to buy an estate and a noble name. So much was stripped from the towns and villages through which an army passed – clothes, utensils, animals, besides more valuable goods – that attempts had to be made to restrict the allowances of baggage that encumbered an army's progress. But where all parties were interested, such restrictions were bound to be ineffective. It is doubtful, moreover, if the state would have

gained by effectual checks on plunder, or by appropriating more to itself, for loot remained a lively attraction in recruiting.

Wars, besides, were not embarked on after a sober inspection of expenditure and prospective return. Glory, prestige, adventure – these were all-powerful incentives still and affected those who decided upon war just as booty and ransom did those who fought in them. Four times between 1525 and 1558 France set off on the impossible task of seizing Naples with neither naval supremacy nor effectual control of Lombardy and central Italy. The chivalric romances that had helped to inflame the adventurous nobles (as opposed to the careful politicians) in the circle of Charles VIII were still read, and, indeed, the period saw a resurgence of admiration for the life of arms, for the military virtues. The grandiloquent romances that inflamed Don Quixote were not alone responsible for this; so was the sober tribute of the Romans. 'How much superior is the art of war to all others', Vegetius had written in his third book, 'by which our liberties are preserved, our dignities perpetuated, and the provinces and the whole empire itself exist.' And the sentiment is exactly paraphrased in Guillaume Duchoul's 'Epistre au Roi' in his *Discours sur la castramentation et discipline militaire des Romains* (1556). The same theme recurs in the speeches made in 1528 to the Florentine militia in order to stir their enthusiasm for their new and unfamiliar trade. Pier Filippo Pandolfini praised the discipline of arms 'la quale supera tutte le altre scienzie et virtù'. Luigi Alamanni exhorted them to look upon their military service with as much 'riverenza et candidezza' as they brought to divine service. Bartolommeo Cavalcanti described the Good Soldier in terms that a moralist might have taken over verbatim for a sketch of the Good Man. In these cases the Christian virtue of fighting was emphasised quite naturally because there was still a strong Savonarolist conviction that Florence was Christ's chosen city, and that her rivals were his rivals. But praise of the military virtues was quite conventionally pitched so high that there was ample justification for Rabelais' own ironical version in the Prologue to Book III of *Gargantua and Pantagruel*:

I believe indeed that war is called *Bellum* (a fine thing) in Latin, not out of antithesis, as certain botchers of old Latin tags have believed, because they saw but little beauty in war, but positively and literally, because in war every kind of beauty and virtue shines out, every kind of evil and ugliness is abolished. That wise and pacific king, Solomon, knew no better way of expressing the ineffable perfection of divine wisdom than by comparing it to an army with banners.

Christian pacifist scruples, though still voiced by a few in the Erasmian tradition, found little support with regard to European wars, though they proved a useful stick with which to beat the cruelty of Spanish aggression

in the New World. Fourquevaux's impatient dismissal of them represents the majority view. As long as wars are not fought simply from ambition or revenge, they are lawful:

> In my opinion it is to no purpose to allege the contrary out of Holy Scripture, saying that a good Christian ought patiently to suffer injuries and wrongs, without resisting those who would strike him or take away his goods. For I believe that that was only spoken to the Apostles and their like, who had to have humility and patience if the doctrine they preached was to bring forth good fruit.

The military writer was conscious of two audiences: the Europe of rival states, and Christendom. 'I do not aim only to help members of the great family of Christians one against the other', Dürer wrote in his work on fortification, 'but above all to assist those who are neighbours of the Turk against the power and arms of these infidels.' The idea of a crusade still lived, but a crusade involved not a denunciation of war as such, only a canalisation of it. Between the extreme opinions – on the one hand that Christian principles must be more firmly instilled to counteract man's natural pugnacity, on the other that Christianity is to be deplored for having sapped man's martial vigour (Machiavelli's view) – lay the acceptance by the great majority of war as an inevitable feature of social life, good or bad only as it affected the lives of individuals or the reputations of states. It was reflected in the peacetime recreation of the noble, and his tourney was echoed in the often savage *Fechten* of the commoner. It filled the chivalric romance and was the burden of much of the ever more widely read literature of Rome. Nor did such reading present war only in its noblest aspect – selfless sacrifice, refusal to accept political servitude; it stressed as well the importance of finding quarrels in a straw, and (from such books as the *De strategematis* of Frontinus) the importance of winning battles however cruel or oblique the means employed.

Machiavelli had complained that war had become so humane, and there was so little to be feared from defeat, that men were no longer prepared to undergo the rigorous training necessary for success in arms. This impatient generalisation was hardly supported by the facts. The Turks seldom took prisoners, unless terms had been granted in good time to a garrison. Even then the terms were not always observed: after the surrender by agreement of Buda in 1529, the garrison were massacred as they marched out. Nor did the Turks make the distinction between nobles, usually preserved for ransom, and common soldiers. And they were not alone in their summary attitude to the defeated. The Swiss were almost as consistent and were greatly feared for their boast that they took no prisoners but killed all who fell into their hands. And other nations were on occasion equally merciless, as were the French when, on the fall of the

Château le Compte near Hesdin in 1552, they ordered all prisoners to be killed out of hand and not held for ransom. More common practice, however, was for a commander to order his men to grant quarter when it was clear that the enemy was beaten beyond all hope of recovery. Those who were capable of paying a ransom would then be held, while those who could not were, if they were lucky, stripped and allowed to go free, the problem of the unremunerative prisoner being too complicated for sixteenth-century military administration to face. But mercy was accorded by grace rather than from any sense of obligation, moral or legal. When Metz was relieved, the French went out to dress the wounds of the Spaniards who had been left behind by their retreating comrades, 'which we willingly did,' said the surgeon Paré, dourly adding 'and think they would not have done the like towards others'.

When it is remembered how scanty was the concern shown for an army's own wounded, it appears less remarkable that concern for the enemy's should be uncertain. Medical care was most perfunctory. Great lords took their own surgeons with them, and sometimes these men were able to care for the common soldier, but their first concern was naturally for their employer and his friends. The *tercio* allowed one medical man for every thousand troops; the English force of some 32,500 men who took part in the war of 1544 had no surgeons directly employed by the army, nor was regular provision made by French armies. Mary Tudor left an endowment for a hospital for poor, aged or disabled soldiers, and Coligny's ordinances of 1551 suggested a levy of the troops themselves to provide a fund for the provision of hospitals. In France the maimed soldier was not, it is true, entirely uncared for. Some were placed in monasteries where the king possessed the right of collation (these were usually bought off by the aggrieved monks for a pension); others were placed in fortress towns where they were given a pittance in exchange for nominal duties. But this accounted for a very small number. The regular provision of a medical corps, the setting up of proper military hospitals, and a system for compensating the disabled soldier, had to wait for the establishment of large regular armies. But if there was little medical service available, its quality began to improve in this period, particularly with regard to the treatment of gunshot wounds. Until the publication of Ambroise Paré's *La Methode de Traicter les Playes faictes par Harcque-butes*, in 1545, these wounds had been treated largely by cautery. His introduction of saner and less drastic treatment led to an immense saving of lives; and within a decade four more authors published books on the treatment of wounds, three of them concentrating on gunshot injuries.

Although there were few pitched battles at sea between 1519 and 1559, and no decisive one, it was a period of great activity in shipbuilding and

sharply mounting expenditure on navies and every item of their equip-
ment. As the size of armies grew, so did the number of transports and
escorts needed in combined operations: Charles V attacked Tunis in 1535
with some 25,000 men; the French sailed against the south coast of
England ten years later with nearly 60,000. Political rivalries led to an
armaments race between the powers whose frontiers were most vulnerable
to attack from the sea. Venice set herself the ideal of a reserve of one
hundred war galleys to reinforce her patrol vessels in time of emergency.
This meant an establishment of warships greater than that of any Atlantic
power, but, even so, it was only in alliance with other navies that Venice
could hope to match in numbers the war galleys of the Turks and their
north African supporters. In the north the main challenge came from
France, and Henry VIII's enthusiasm for the navy meant that England,
apart from matching numbers, tried to outstrip her rival in matters of
design and administration. And if political rivalry dictated numbers,
prestige insisted on size; every ruler wished to have at least one vessel of
awe-inspiring appearance, and to the Scottish *Great Michael* of 1511 and
the English *Henry Grâce à Dieu* of 1514 the French added the *Grand
François* in 1527, the Swedes their *Elefant* in 1532 and Portugal the
cumbrous *São João* in 1534. Even the Knights of Malta, attracted by these
vast hulls with their brilliant ornament and impressive armament, bid for
the limelight by launching a prodigy of their own, the *Santa Anna*, in 1525.
Merchant vessels of one thousand tons' burden and more were not
uncommon, and their cargo capacity justified their size, but these huge
warships were like the unwieldy 'prestige' bombards of the early days of
gunpowder; glory apart, the money would have been better spent on
several products of a smaller size.

   Shipbuilding activity was also stimulated by experiments in design, the
modification of existing types and the introduction of new ones. The main
concern of Mediterranean naval architects was to improve the speed and
manœuvrability of the heavy galley. This type had been used up to the
1530s as strongly defended cargo vessels, especially by the Venetians. With
a heavy armament and large crew they were able to defy raiders, and as
long as they carried precious cargoes the freight charges covered the
otherwise excessive proportion of crew to cargo space. The recession in the
spice trade made them uneconomical, and, as naval armament was
improving at the same time and a type of vessel which gave more
protection to the oarsmen than the light galley afforded was needed, the
heavy merchant galley became a warship. They were constructed mainly
for cargo-carrying under sail and their rowing and fighting qualities had
been sacrificed: the problem was to make them as fast and, if possible, as
handy as the light galley. Three solutions were offered. The first, and least
practical, was to have more than one deck of oars. Picheroni della

Mirandola submitted plans to the senate for galleys with two and four decks respectively, but as the upper-deck oars on the bireme would have been some sixty feet long, and on the quadrireme over 180, it is not surprising that the plans were rejected. Venice in fact built no multiple-decked galleys. A second suggestion was that more oars than the usual three should be rowed from one bench, one man to each oar. Galleys with four oars to the bench, one man to each oar, were known, but when Vettore Fausto, public lecturer in Greek eloquence at Venice, offered the senate his version of the all-conquering quinquireme of the ancients – five oars to the bench – there was much debate and hesitation before the Arsenal was directed to build a prototype. In a public speed-trial in 1530 the quinquireme, despite its complexity, beat a standard three-oar-to-the-bench galley amid great excitement, but no successor to Fausto's vessel was built; the future was to lie with a third principle of design, that of having one oar to the bench worked by several, commonly five, men.

While in the south the emphasis lay on the improvement of the galley and the round-ship as independent types, in the north there was an effort to combine them in a ship that would join the handiness of the galley to the seaworthiness and solidity of the round-ship. After much experiment with sail plan, gun positions and oar arrangement, a compromise emerged towards the middle of the century in the galleon, more nearly flush in silhouette than the carrack, higher and bulkier than the great galley, almost exclusively dependent on sail, but capable of being worked by oars in an emergency, and adding the galley's heavy armament fore and aft to the traditional round ship's weight of broadside fire. All these experiments with design (in the south there appear to have been even experiments with armoured hulls) meant that the cost of each ship was enhanced by the degree to which it differed from a constructional norm. In the development of the fighting vessel this period was a crucial one, but the evidence is to be found more clearly in account books than in combat.

As far as merchant shipping was concerned, the previous generation had settled the fundamental distinction between oar and sail, long-ship or round-ship, in favour of the round sailing ship. There were features that suggested that the same decision might now be made for ships of war. Modifications of the sails and tackle of round-ships had put them firmly ahead of galleys for general seaworthiness, and, encircled by guns, they were floating fortresses that could beat off the attacks even of a large number of galleys, as was shown from time to time in the Mediterranean itself, as at Prevesa (1538) when a becalmed Venetian sailing galleon beat off a series of galley assaults. On the other hand galleys suffered from several serious weaknesses. Unlike the round-ship they were frail to any broadside shock, and their motive power could be crippled even by a glancing blow which damaged the oars or the overhanging rowing deck.

Because of their length they were difficult to turn smartly, and as it was only safe to fire powerful guns so that the recoil was absorbed by the length of the ship these could only be traversed (and in most cases elevated) by movement of the vessel itself. Moreover, the winds that shattered Charles V's fleet on the Algerian beaches in 1541 (and prevented the Turkish galleys from intercepting him) showed that galleys were only dubiously reliable in winter. Yet, for all this, the galley remained the main warship of the Mediterranean; not only did the great galley influence the design of northern sailing ships, but true galleys were built for use in the Channel and the North Sea.

Warship design could not be decided only by shipwrights' arguments. Tradition counted for much, though one should beware of seeing the northern races' hatred of forced labour as a reason for the failure of the galley to establish itself in their waters. The oarsmen in Christian galleys were almost all free men, voluntarily recruited, permitted some cargo space of their own, and idle for the greater part of any voyage when use could be made of sail. It was the difficulty of getting free men to behave well in port and return to their vessels on time that was one of the main reasons for suggesting, as a Venetian *provveditore* did in 1556, that more convict crews should be employed. A far more important factor that prevented the shipwright's ideal from being put uniformly into practice was the composition of the dominant fleet in any particular waters. As long as the Turkish war fleet was composed of galleys, it would have to be met by galleys. A fleet of round-ships was helpless in a calm when sufficiently outnumbered, or when matched by the heavy long-range guns which great galleys were bearing by mid-century. Nor could round-ships alone force galleys into an engagement they were not prepared to accept. Nor would one type of galley suffice – the comparatively cheap light galley, for instance, even if used together with heavy round-ships. A fleet of galleys could only be tackled effectively by a comparable force, light galleys sustained by, and supporting, heavy galleys. Joint operations between sail and oar were always unreliable because of the vagaries of the wind. At Prevesa Andrea Doria was on the point of coming to grips with the Turk when the wind failed. Not wanting to be separated too much from his round-ships he called off the attack. The Turks also stopped, hoping to draw the galley force, which was inferior to theirs, forward on its own. Doria refused to be drawn, and as a result there was no general engagement. Antonio Doria, in his unpublished 'Discorso delle cose turchesche', emphasised that, as sail and oar behaved so differently as wind and sea varied, the round-ship should never be admitted to the line of battle, but should be used only for transport, supply and reserve. And in the same way, because the French used galleys, the English were forced to meet them with rowing vessels of their own, as when the English row-

barges protected their round-ships from D'Annibault's Italian galleys in 1545.

There was an additional factor that prevented the consideration of ideal fighting qualities alone. There was still a close connection between merchant shipping and ships of war. No navy was large enough to be independent of merchant auxiliaries; no country was rich enough to use its fighting ships exclusively for war. In England, for instance, merchant shipping of a certain size was subsidised by the Crown with an eye to supplementing the navy, and naval vessels were hired to merchants during times of peace. The character of warships was inevitably influenced by the type of vessel most useful for trade. The oceanic interests of the Atlantic powers forced them to think largely in terms of the round-ship, while the shrinking oceanic carrying trade of the Venetians enabled them to counter the Turkish galleys with galleys of their own without sacrificing commercial convenience too much to military necessity – though by the middle of the century the contrast between merchants and naval shipping was sharper in the Mediterranean than in the north; the constant Turkish threat to Venice, and the decreasing usefulness of the galley as a profitable cargo-carrier, meant that she was forced to lock up capital in a specialised war-fleet a century before the Atlantic powers were forced to do the same. Similarly, the exceptional use of men-of-war as patrol vessels in the north had long been a commonplace to the Venetians, reconciled since the growth of Turkish sea power to thinking of a navy in terms not only of occasional impressive fleet concentrations or profitable merchant ventures but also of unremunerative vigil.

When fleets came in contact with one another their behaviour was still tactically analogous to the behaviour of two armies. Neither in theory nor in practice was there yet any clear suggestion that naval tactics were *sui generis*. The voice of antiquity was conservative and inexplicit. The Romans had relied on the superior weight of their ships to bear down any rival and concentrated on coming to grips as soon as possible, the real work of destruction being accomplished by boarding parties of legionaries. Naval matters did not therefore occupy much space in the writers *de re militari*. When Vegetius was writing Rome was little concerned with naval affairs, and he was more concerned with sea lore than with sea war, spending most of his space telling the commander when it was safe to embark and how to find his way to an enemy; accepting the sea–land analogy, there was no need to go into details of what happened when he found him. As a result, very little was written about war at sea by theorists, and the commanders of fleets, many of them military men relying on subordinates in matters of navigation, determined tactics in the light of their own experience on land. In the case of galley warfare this was perfectly natural; intricate and closely controlled manoeuvres could be

planned independent of the wind. But it is remarkable that the same
principles dominated plans for the fighting formations of sailing ships.
Thus Alfonso de Chaves, writing of Spanish round-ships about the year
1530, emphasised that

a regular order is no less necessary in a fleet of ships for giving battle to another
fleet than it is in an army of soldiers for giving battle to another army. Thus, as in
an army, the heavy cavalry form by themselves to make and meet charges, and the
light horse in another quarter to support, pursue and harass; so in a fleet, the
captain-general ought to order the strongest and largest ships to form in one
quarter to attack, weaker ships in another quarter apart, with their artillery to
harass, pursue and give chase to the enemy if he flies, and to come to the rescue
wherever there is most need.[1]

The aim was an attack, on a widely extended front (using, as a result, only
guns that could fire forward) so that the larger ships could grapple and
board the enemy as quickly as possible, aided when necessary by the
lighter craft standing by for any emergency. The only differences from
purely galley tactics is that whereas a flank attack was effective against
galleys, it was perilous against the broadside of the round-ship, which was
not easily sunk, moreover, by ramming. Another version of these Spanish
tactics is given in the two sets of sailing orders made out for the English
fleet in 1545. It was to attack the French in a main body divided into three
ranks supported by oared wings and by a reserve. When the first rank met
the first line of the enemy it was to sail between his ships and then turn to
attack them in the rear at the same time as the English second rank,
commanded by the admiral, came up to engage them frontally. This was
not, of course, a manœuvre that could be transferred to the land, but the
battle order is basically a military one, as was every order that depended
on frontal attack in extended ranks like lines of soldiers anxious to get to
grips. Naval tactics proper had to wait until the pitched battle had become
influenced by the running fight – the full use of broadside fire and the
dependence on artillery rather than boarding; when, in fact, off-fighting
was realised to be the most effective form of engagement between sailing
ships. This development (irrelevant for galley navies) was only to come in
the last third of the century. It was not the fruit of experience gained in
pitched battles, but came about when the opinion of mariner veterans of
small running fights made itself felt in councils of war previously domi-
nated by soldiers. But these new tactics had to wait also for the
development of improved gunpowder that would allow the short guns
most easily handled in broadside fire to improve in range and striking
power. By the 1550s, while galley warfare continued with little change in

1 *Fighting Instructions 1513–1816* (ed. J. S. Corbett, Navy Record Society, 1905), p. 7.

the Mediterranean, the nature of war at sea had undergone a revolution in the north, as technical improvements in the design and arming of ships, coupled with the decline of the military analogy, led to the supremacy of off-fighting. Henceforward skill rather than numbers would decide the issue. Once a frontal engagement of the old type was joined, orders could no longer be passed and a disorderly mêlée followed in which weight was the main advantage. In off-fighting a fleet could be controlled to some extent (for signals were still rudimentary) throughout an action, and, though boarding still took place on occasion and the large ship with a large crew retained some advantages, the odds were in favour of the handier vessel. After the middle of the century the arts of war by land and sea began to diverge in manner as well as in matter.

THE OTTOMAN EMPIRE 1520–1566[1]

TOWARDS the end of his reign Selīm I had been preparing for a new offensive, but no one could be sure where the blow might fall. Now, in September 1520, the great sultan was dead. As the news became known in Christendom, men felt that a dark shadow had been banished, an imminent peril suddenly dispelled. Sulaimān, the only son of Selīm, was said to be ill-versed in affairs and of a quiet nature, a prince, therefore, who would be little inclined to war. Seldom has prediction been more rash or doomed to swifter disillusionment. In 1521 Sulaimān marched against Hungary.

The campaign had been organised with meticulous care: the *beglerbeg* of Rumeli moved towards Sabacz, the sultan following with most of his household regiments; the grand vizier Pīrī Pasha, with a strong contingent of janissaries and ample provision of siege guns, made for the main objective, Belgrade, which Mehemmed II had tried but failed to capture in 1456. At the same time the Akinjis[2] rode out in two columns, the one to effect a diversion against Transylvania, the other to devastate the lands between the Sava and the Drava. The fall of Sabacz and Semlin severed the routes leading to the north and west of Belgrade, so that Sulaimān was now free to assail the great fortress. Guns bombarded the walls from an island in the Danube, a fierce assault drove the garrison into the citadel, an Ottoman flotilla, sailing upstream, cut off all relief by water. The end came when dissension broke out between the Hungarians and their Serbian mercenaries, the former wishing to prolong, the latter to abandon the defence. Belgrade surrendered on 29 August 1521.

Sulaimān turned now to the conquest of Rhodes. The Knights of St John had long harassed Muslim commerce, plundered vessels bearing pilgrims towards Mecca, slain and enslaved the subjects of the Ottoman sultan, their depredations being so severe that in 1480 Mehemmed II had tried to seize the island, though without success. The fate of Rhodes had in fact been decided in 1517 when Selīm I conquered the Mamluk sultanate: thereafter the Ottomans could not suffer the continued existence of this 'pirate-stronghold' athwart the sea-routes from Istanbul to their new

---

1 For an analysis of the structure of the Ottoman state, cf. vol. III, ch. XI.
2 I.e., raiders, volunteer light-armed horsemen serving for the reward of plunder and captives.

provinces of Syria and Egypt. Yet the fortress was almost impregnable, and Sulaimān was well aware that the knights were making elaborate preparations to defend it. The bitter fighting of 1522 was to underline how much the sultan owed in this campaign to his father, Selīm, who in the last years of his reign had strengthened and improved the naval resources at his command, with the intention, as it would seem, of subjugating the island.

The invasion fleet arrived at Rhodes on 24 June 1522. More than a month passed in the landing of troops and munitions, in work on trenches and on sites for the siege artillery. Sulaimān, marching through Asia Minor with strong reinforcements, crossed over to Rhodes late in July. Attempts to storm the fortress made it clear that mining and bombardment of the walls alone offered a prospect of success. There now ensued a stubborn and protracted conflict, the Ottomans, in their intermittent assaults, losing heavily in men and material. With the onset of winter, rain and cold so hindered the conduct of the siege that the sultan was induced to hold out generous terms of capitulation, but it was not until 21 December that the knights, worn down to the limit of their endurance, yielded on promise of freedom to withdraw unmolested to Europe.

There were grave events, too, in Syria and Egypt during the first years of the new reign. Memories of their former splendour still survived amongst the Mamluks whom Selīm I had incorporated into the Ottoman régime, and now, with the accession of Sulaimān, the more dissatisfied elements believed that the time had come to regain their independence. The pasha of Damascus, Jānberdi al-Ghazālī, once a Mamluk amir, had risen in revolt in 1520–1, had besieged Aleppo in vain and then suffered defeat and death while resisting a punitive force sent against him from Istanbul. Unrest and intrigue were rife in Egypt, leading to disturbances on the death of the pasha, Khāʾir Beg, in 1522 and thereafter to a more serious rebellion in the winter of 1523–4 when the new Ottoman pasha Ahmed, in alliance with some of the Mamluk begs and Arab chieftains, tried to crush the janissaries stationed at Cairo and so make himself the real master of the land. His ambition was doomed to failure, for in view of the rivalries amongst the Mamluks and also between the various tribal confederations there could be no question of a united resistance to Ottoman rule. The revolt, although suppressed without undue trouble, convinced Sulaimān of the need to modify the settlement improvised at the time of the conquest. He entrusted the task to his grand vizier Ibrāhīm who in 1524–5 carried out in Egypt an extensive reform of justice, finance and administration, reshaping the government on lines that it was to retain, in essentials, until the rise of Muhammad ʿAlī almost three centuries later. Ibrāhīm created a balance of power and privilege between the pasha, the janissaries, the Mamluk begs and the Arab tribes. Henceforth, the

alignments and tensions among them were to exert a dominant influence on the course of events inside Egypt. In time, the delicate equilibrium now established would break down in favour of the Mamluks and to the disadvantage of the pasha; but this change was as yet far in the future, and in the meanwhile the reforms ensured to Egypt a long interval of firm and beneficial rule.

It was three years since Sulaimān had gone to war. Amongst the janissaries inaction bred resentment which, in March 1525, flared out in a sudden tumult, warning the sultan not to defer too long the preparation of a new campaign. The grand vizier, recalled from Cairo, arrived at Istanbul in September and the decision was made to launch a great offensive on the Danube. Sulaimān marched against the Hungarians in April 1526. Progress was slow and difficult because of bad weather, and it was late August before he crossed the Drava near Eszék. The advance continued through a region of marshes and swollen streams, under persistent rain and occasional mist, until the Ottomans reached the plain of Mohács.

The Hungarians faced a desperate crisis. Bitter rivalries ruined all prospect of a prudent and united resistance.[1] No effort was made to hold the line of the Drava, nor would the Hungarian nobles agree to withstand a siege in Buda in the hope of prolonging the defence until the approach of winter should compel the sultan to retreat. The critical weeks of mid-August were wasted in acrimonious debate, and the final choice fraught with extreme danger: to risk a field battle against a foe much superior in numbers and armament, and this before the men of Zápolyai, before all the Croatian levies and the troops summoned from Bohemia had arrived.

To the east of Mohács flowed the Danube, to the south and west of the plain were low wooded hills, which masked the advance of the Ottoman columns: in the van, the frontier warriors of Semendria; next the *sipāhis* of Rumeli and then of Anatolia; behind them, Sulaimān with the janissaries and the regiments of household cavalry; and in the rear, the warriors of Bosnia. It was 29 August 1526. The Hungarians had no intention of fighting on the defensive behind their waggons and carts. Their heavy cavalry, in a first violent charge, hurled back the troops of Rumeli against those of Anatolia, but was itself halted when the begs of Bosnia and Semendria, who had moved to the left through the hills, came down from the west into the right flank of the Christian advance. King Lewis now led the rest of his horsemen in a second assault, cut through the *sipāhis* of Anatolia and rode headlong into the janissaries and the guns ranged around the sultan. A terrible artillery fire shattered the Hungarians, massive flank attacks drove them in rout towards the Danube. Soon the

---

[1] Cf. above, p. 384.

king and most of his nobles were either dead on the field or else drowned in the river marshes, only a few remnants of the broken army escaping under cover of rain and darkness. Sulaimān reached Buda on 10 September. One week later the Ottomans began to cross the Danube to Pest. The Akinjis, who had ravaged far and wide in the direction of Raab (Györ) and Komorn, were recalled, the rich booty and all the guns found at Buda shipped downstream. Swiftly the sultan retreated, first to Szegedin and thence to Peterwardein and Belgrade, after a campaign resplendent with the most famous of all his victories.

During the return march news had arrived of revolt amongst the Turcomans in Cilicia who were angered at the conduct of Ottoman officials sent out to make a register of their lands and wealth for purposes of finance and administration. There was trouble, too, in Karaman, where a certain Kalender-oghlu and his dervish adherents roused the Turcoman tribes against the Ottoman régime. For almost two years the troops of Anadolu, Karaman, Amasia and Diyarbekir, with the aid of reinforcements from Damascus and Aleppo, were engaged in a fluctuating war, so serious as to demand at last the personal attention of the grand vizier, Ibrāhīm Pasha. By tactful diplomacy and the bestowal of fiefs he induced the Turcoman begs to abandon their alliance with Kalender-oghlu. Thereafter, the defeat and death of the rebels were soon achieved, but, even so a further outbreak occurred in the Taurus region, and it was not until the summer of 1528 that the last embers of revolt were extinguished.

Meanwhile, a fateful conflict had arisen beyond the northern frontier. Lewis, king of Hungary and Bohemia, had married a Habsburg princess, Maria, sister of the Archduke Ferdinand and the Emperor Charles V, while Ferdinand himself had taken as wife Anna, the sister of Lewis, and had then received from the emperor the government of Austria and its dependencies. When Lewis died at Mohács, leaving no child to succeed him, Ferdinand laid claim to the rich inheritance. If he could realise his ambition, Hungary and Bohemia might be welded, with Austria, into a formidable barrier against Ottoman aggression. The sultan would then be confronted, not with a mere Hungarian king, independent yet weak, as Lewis had been, but with a prince who belonged to the greatest dynasty in Europe, to a house tenacious in the extreme of its rights and privileges and, despite vast commitments elsewhere, able to muster on the Danube, in time of dire need, resources far above those which Sulaimān had overcome at Mohács. Although Ferdinand soon acquired the Bohemian Crown, no facile success awaited him at Buda. He had first to defeat a rival candidate, the *voivode* of Transylvania, John Zápolyai, whom the native faction amongst the nobles had raised to the throne in November 1526. One year later Ferdinand was acclaimed king at Stuhlweissenburg,

his troops having driven the Transylvanian to take refuge on the border with Poland. Zápolyai now turned to Istanbul for aid.[1]

The sultan, though regarding the Hungarian realm as his own by right of conquest, knew that indirect control, comparable with that which he wielded inWallachia and Moldavia, would be far less arduous to win and maintain than a permanent and direct occupation. If he were to establish a dependent prince at Buda, a cordon of vassal states would then cover the northern frontier of his empire from the Black Sea almost to the Adriatic. He therefore welcomed the appeal of Zápolyai, bestowed on him the kingdom of the dead Lewis, and swore to guard him against the enmity of Austria. Soon ambassadors arrived from Vienna demanding that the Ottomans relinquish all the fortresses which had fallen to them along the Sava and on the Croatian border during and since the campaigns of Belgrade and Mohács. In bitter scorn Ibrāhīm, the grand vizier, wondered that Ferdinand did not ask for Istanbul, while the sultan, in a final audience, gave to the envoys the ominous message that he himself would come to Vienna and restore what the archduke demanded: 'Bid him therefore have all in readiness to receive me well.'

A major offensive on the Danube was a stern test of Ottoman military skill and resource. The campaign season extended, in the Hungarian wars of Sulaimān, from mid April to the end of October, but the distance to Belgrade alone was so great that the sultan could seldom cross the Sava in force before the first days of July. The march was often slow and laborious, for the weather seems to have been bad even in summer, the official war diaries of Sulaimān referring constantly to storms, cold winds and relentless rain.[2] Problems of supply and transport were especially hard to solve. Rivers had to be spanned by means of pontoon bridges, a feat that required high technical ability; roads had to be made over difficult ground – and Hungary was a land of many streams and marshes. The Danube flotilla could only share to a limited degree in the movement of guns and munitions, most of which were needed for immediate use in the field and had therefore to be loaded on waggons and carts, on camels and other beasts of burden; yet, owing to the harshness of weather and terrain, the loss of animals was not infrequently severe. Ample reserves of food were essential, since the retreat might lie through territories swept bare of sustenance by the Akinjis during the forward march or else waste and barren from the devastation wrought, by Christian and Muslim alike, in the raids of former years; and always, in the last phase of a long

---

1 For the way in which the issue appeared to Ferdinand, cf. above, pp. 532–3.
2 Cf. the diaries in J. von Hammer, *Geschichte des Osmanischen Reiches*, vol. III (1828), pp. 621–5, 639–44, 647–52, 665–71.

campaign, new danger might arise – the premature and sudden onset of winter.

Never were these difficulties more evident and more formidable than in 1529. Sulaimān left Istanbul on 10 May, did not reach Belgrade until mid July and only on 27 September stood at last before Vienna. Because of incessant and flooded rivers, he had lost a vital month in which Ferdinand was able to garrison the city with a powerful force of veteran soldiers. Time was short, food already becoming scarce, and the Ottomans were far from their nearest base. If they were to take Vienna, it would have to be quickly or not at all, but the Christian defence held out against every assault. On 14 October the sultan gave the order to retreat. 'Snow from evening until noon next day', 'much loss of horses and men in swamps', 'many die of hunger' – so ran the story of the grim march to Belgrade. And yet the campaign was not a complete failure, for it achieved one important result: Zápolyai ruled again at Buda.

The Archduke Ferdinand had not the means to launch a vigorous counter-offensive. His troops were ill-paid and discontented, his need of money acute. The German princes, though prepared to aid him in the hour of danger, would never fight a long and costly war on the Danube for the benefit of the Habsburgs. Nor could he depend on receiving prompt assistance from the Emperor Charles V, now deeply preoccupied with the conflict between Catholic and Protestant. Ferdinand tried, therefore, to make peace with the sultan, offering tribute in return for the possession of all Hungary, but the attempt met with no success. He himself would not abate in the least his claim to the whole kingdom, while Sulaimān was adamant in his refusal to abandon Zápolyai.

The sultan left Istanbul in April 1532, his declared aim being to seek out and crush the combined forces of Ferdinand and Charles V. He crossed the Sava in the last days of June, followed the Danube route as far as Eszék, and then turned to the north-west through Babocsa and over the river Raab, until he came to the little town of Güns. Here, in a desperate and brilliant defence sustained for almost three weeks, a small garrison resisted the full weight of the Ottoman assault, yielding at last on 28 August. Most of the summer was now gone, the rains were frequent and prolonged, and meanwhile, as the sultan must have known, German, Italian and Spanish veterans had been able to join the troops of Ferdinand at Vienna. Sulaimān, having no mind to renew the bitter experience which he had suffered three years before, abandoned his original purpose and, from this moment, the campaign assumed the character of an immense razzia. The Akinjis rode far into Austria, while the main army moved through the mountain valleys of Styria towards Graz where the Tatars of the Krim Khan were let loose along the river Mur. It was a march 'wearisome as the Last Judgment'. The sultan now retreated across the

Drava and then swept with fire and sword down the whole length of Slavonia to the Bossut, an affluent of the Sava. Here the raids came to an end, for beyond this stream lay Sirmium, a region under Ottoman control. On 12 October Sulaimān arrived once more at Belgrade.

After two exhausting but indecisive campaigns against Austria the sultan realised that time and distance were enemies at least as formidable as the power of the Habsburgs and that, unless he committed himself to the conquest of a permanent base far to the north of the Sava, he would have little chance of inflicting on Ferdinand a sudden and catastrophic defeat. He therefore granted peace to the archduke in June 1533. The 'king of Vienna' was to retain what he then held of the Hungarian realm. He could also make a separate agreement with Zápolyai subject to the approval of the Porte. Sulaimān had in fact conceded little more than a truce without time limit. A prince dependent on his favour would continue to be master of Buda; his own word would still shape the future course of events on the Danube. Meanwhile, he had obtained an immediate advantage: freedom to deal with urgent affairs in the east.

The Ottoman frontier with Persia was ill defined. The direct rule of the sultan extended, in the north of Asia Minor, only to Erzinjan and Baiburd, the lands beyond these fortresses remaining under the control of Turcoman begs who gave allegiance, as their need dictated, now to Istanbul and now to Tabriz; in the south, it embraced western and most of central Kurdistan, but not the region around Lake Van, where the forces of the shah were still active. The war of 1514–16 had died down into a smouldering tension along the frontier. No formal peace had been made between the sultan and the shah. Feuds and incursions continued to disturb the border zones, and the odium which divided the orthodox or Sunni Ottomans and the Shī'ī Persians was no less fierce than before.[1]

While Sulaimān was marching towards Güns, the troops of Karaman, Amasia and Diyarbekir, with detachments from Syria, were fighting in Kurdistan against the khan of Bitlis, who had gone over to the shah. The defection of this border chieftain brought home to the sultan the need to consolidate and strengthen the unstable frontier in Asia Minor. There was a further ground for war, in that the Persian governor of Baghdad had offered submission to the Porte, only to be murdered before Ottoman aid could be sent to him. Sulaimān did not intend to forego so opportune a pretext for the conquest of Iraq.

As soon as peace had been concluded with Austria, the Grand Vizier Ibrāhīm hastened towards Kurdistan, but on receiving news that Bitlis was once more in Ottoman hands, he retired into winter quarters at

---

1 On the rise of the Shī'ī Safawids and the danger of this movement to Ottoman rule in Asia Minor, cf. vol. I.

Aleppo. In the spring of the next year he moved against Persia and by mid July had taken Tabriz. Shah Tamasp, mindful of the crushing defeat which his father, Ismāʿīl, had endured at Tchaldiran in battle with Sultan Selīm (August 1514), preferred to abandon the city rather than face the janissaries and the Ottoman field artillery. Sulaimān left Istanbul only in June 1534. During his advance he traversed almost the whole of the frontier zone, passing through Erzinjan to Erzerum, then south to Lake Van and eastward to Tabriz, where he joined Ibrāhīm Pasha on 28 September. There now ensued a most formidable march across the mountains of western Persia. 'Snow as in deepest winter' beset the land, food was scarce, the loss of transport animals severe, but at last, on 30 November, the sultan entered Baghdad. He remained there until April 1535 and then, having provided for the defence and administration of Iraq, withdrew northward through Kurdistan to Tabriz. The shah was still determined to avoid all risk of a great battle. To these tactics of evasion the sultan could find no effective answer. Tabriz was in the heart of Azerbaijan, a mountainous area far removed from the nearest Ottoman base. An attempt to hold this region would be a most doubtful venture, as long as the army of the shah remained intact – yet the prospect of destroying that army, rapidly and at one blow, was almost negligible. In late August Sulaimān gave the order to retreat. The campaign had achieved two notable results: the formation of a new province at Erzerum on the eastern frontier, and the conquest of Iraq.

In 1536, soon after his return from the Persian war, the sultan bestowed on France commercial privileges similar to those which Venice had long held in the Ottoman empire. This agreement was the visible symbol of the growing friendship that united the king of France and the sultan. In the years following his defeat and capture at the battle of Pavia (1525) Francis I had striven to bring about a sustained Ottoman assault against Austria, hoping thus to relieve the Habsburg pressure on his own realm.[1] Sulaimān, aware of the benefit to be won from an understanding with a Christian state hostile to the Emperor Charles V and the Archduke Ferdinand, welcomed an appeal so close to his desire for effective control of the Hungarian kingdom. And yet, as the campaigns of Vienna and Güns had shown, the war on the Danube ensured to Francis I no decisive gain and even worked to his disadvantage, in so far as it rendered the German Protestants less willing to join him in overt resistance to the emperor and forced them, for their own interest, to make common cause with Austria against the sultan.

There was, however, a second front which offered a prospect of more favourable co-operation. The maritime resources of Charles V had been

---

1 Cf. above, pp. 251, 388.

much increased in the Mediterranean. Genoa, dissatisfied with the con-
duct of her French allies, deserted to the emperor in 1528 – an event of the
first order, for the republic possessed the sole fleet which might have
secured to France an effective command of the sea. Moreover, in the same
year and with the approval of Charles V, the Knights of St John
established a garrison at Tripoli on the African shore and in 1530 accepted
from the emperor the task of defending Malta. Spain, which had long
aspired to the conquest of the Muslim principalities in North Africa,
seemed now to be on the verge of achieving her desire. The vital issue was
one which Sulaimān, as the greatest of all Muslim rulers and also as the
overlord of Algiers, could in no wise disregard: was North Africa to be
preserved or lost to Muslim rule? Only a bold offensive at sea could avert
the danger of Christian domination. At the same time, if the Ottoman fleet
were sent against the emperor, it would serve, in respect to France, as an
admirable substitute for the galleys of Genoa. To Sulaimān, no less than
to Francis I, war in the Mediterranean appeared to be of more immediate
advantage in their conflict with Charles V than further campaigns on the
Danube.[1]

   The sultan had great arsenals at Istanbul and Gallipoli, good harbours
along the Aegean and Levantine coasts, abundant timber in Asia Minor
and ample supplies of labour for his shipyards. The main defect of his
naval organisation was a lack of competent sea-captains and of an
efficient high command able to match the skill and experience of the
Venetian and Genoese admirals. One event, above all, warned Sulaimān
of the urgent need to eliminate this weakness. The ministers of Charles V
had advised their master to strengthen the defences on the Italian coast,
especially in Apulia, and at the same time, as the best means of deflecting
the sultan from the Danube, to begin a vigorous sea offensive in the
eastern Mediterranean. In September 1532 the Genoese commander,
Andrea Doria, led his fleet, reinforced by papal, Maltese and Sicilian
squadrons, to the conquest of Coron in the Morea. Ottoman troops
recovered the fortress in April 1534, but only after a wearisome siege
prolonged by the aid that Doria was able to bring to the Spanish garrison
which he had left there. Sulaimān was preparing to march against Persia,
yet he could not leave the sea unguarded in his absence. The danger of a
new raid by Doria to the east of Malta, no less than the growing threat to
North Africa and the problem of co-operation with France, demanded
immediate measures to ensure that the naval forces of the sultan would be
reorganised and then employed with the greatest energy and effect. A
splendid instrument was available for this purpose in the community, or
tā'ife, of corsairs at Algiers, veteran sailors trained and hardened in

1 Cf. also above, p. 386f.

ceaseless forays against the Christians. Their famous leader, Khair ad-Dīn, came to Istanbul at the sultan's bidding[1] and brought with him his own captains and naval technicians. He built new ships, sailed forth at the head of the Ottoman fleet and in August 1534, eight months after his arrival at the Porte, captured Tunis, thus neutralising the hold which Charles V had won over the narrow waters of the central Mediterranean. It was only a transient victory, for in July of the next year the emperor conquered the town and restored its Muslim ruler as a vassal prince supported and controlled by Spanish troops stationed in the fortress of La Goletta. Khair ad-Dīn however, escaped to Algiers and in the autumn raided the Balearics and the coast of Valencia.

Francis I, in the hope of regaining Milan and Genoa, made war once more on the emperor in 1535. The sultan was willing to co-operate against the common foe, but did not move until his naval preparations were complete. In the summer of 1537 he marched to Valona on the Adriatic, while Khair ad-Dīn sailed with a much enlarged Ottoman fleet to Otranto and laid waste the adjacent lands. The king of France had found the war expensive and unprofitable and, far from invading Milan, was even now negotiating with the emperor for a truce on the Italian front. Sulaimān declined, therefore, to run the risk of crossing the Adriatic in force. Doria was cruising in the Ionian sea, and, having no reason to fear a French attack on Genoa, might yet concentrate his warships and attempt to wrest from Khair ad-Dīn command over the strait of Otranto. In August the sultan abandoned the raid on Apulia and struck at the Venetian island of Corfu.

Sulaimān had no need to look far for grounds of accusation against Venice. The Christian corsairs who preyed on Muslim shipping in the eastern Mediterranean had long been accustomed to sell their plunder and obtain supplies in the Venetian harbours of the Adriatic and the Aegean. In Dalmatia and the Morea the Cretan, Greek and Albanian mercenaries of the Signoria were often involved in local conflict with the Ottoman begs. The tension had grown in the years since Khair ad-Dīn began to reorganise and improve the naval forces of the sultan. Now more than ever before, Venice felt the need to strengthen her squadrons in the waters near Corfu, each time that the Ottoman fleet sailed out from Istanbul. The republic acted thus from mere precaution, but there was a real danger that her captains, although warned to behave with the utmost forbearance, might fail in selfcontrol under the strain of constant watchfulness and restraint. A serious 'incident' could well bring disaster to Venice, for she had lost much of her former influence at the Porte. Ibrāhīm Pasha,

---

1 Khair ad-Dīn had made submission to Selīm I (1512–20) in return for aid against the Christians.

throughout his career a staunch friend of the Signoria, had been executed in 1536, and now, amongst the officials and ministers who were high in the favour of Sulaimān, no one enjoyed more prestige than Khair ad-Dīn – and he was the advocate of a ruthless offensive at sea. If trouble came, Venice would find it difficult to appease the anger of the sultan. Venetian patrols did in fact seize a number of Ottoman ships at the time of the raid on Apulia and then committed the fatal mistake of attacking a small squadron which had on board an ambassador bearing letters of complaint from Sulaimān to the Signoria.

In reprisal Ottoman troops laid waste Corfu, but withdrew in September 1537 on discovering that the main fortress could not be taken save at the cost of a prolonged siege. Venice, realising that all hope of peace was now dead, welcomed the prospect of an alliance with the pope and the emperor. Articles of agreement were signed in the spring of 1538, yet it was not until the autumn that the naval forces of the league at last assembled for a joint campaign against the Ottomans. The decisive moment of the war came on 28 September when Khair ad-Dīn defeated the Christians off Prevesa in the Gulf of Arta, a success due in no small measure to the conduct of Doria, who was resolved to maintain his fleet intact and therefore left the brunt of the fighting to the Venetian and papal commanders.[1] The battle was in itself only a minor affair, the allies losing but few of their ships. None the less, it marked a more ominous phase of the conflict for naval supremacy; the Ottomans had met and repulsed the combined strength of the two fleets alone capable of thwarting their ambition to win control of the Mediterranean. From this time forward until Lepanto in 1571 the initiative at sea was to rest largely with the sultan.

Venice obtained no real advantage from her league with the emperor. Indeed, the sole achievement of the allied fleet was to take Castelnuovo on the Dalmatian coast in October 1538, but even this modest gain was soon erased, for Khair ad-Dīn recovered the fortress in August of the following year. The republic viewed the alliance as a means of protecting her dominions in the Adriatic and the Levant, whereas Charles V, concerned above all with the defence of the western Mediterranean against the raids of the Algerian corsairs, regarded it as no more than a limited commitment and would not risk the destruction of his naval forces for the benefit of the Signoria. Venice, despairing of effective aid from the emperor, now sought to end the ruinous conflict. Her need of peace was the more urgent in that she drew from the Ottoman lands indispensable supplies of grain, a traffic which the war had so restricted that in 1539 she was suffering from a grave dearth of corn and found it difficult to feed her citizens. A truce

1 For a different interpretation of Doria's action, cf. above, p. 566.

arranged in this same year led, after long discussion, to the settlement of October 1540. Venice paid a high price for the renewed favour of the sultan, ceding her last strongholds in the Morea (Napoli di Romania and Monemvasia) together with the island which she had hitherto controlled in the Aegean Sea.

Meanwhile, Sulaimān had begun a naval offensive against yet another foe, the Portuguese, who, in the distant waters of the Indian Ocean, were attempting to sever the trade routes along which the spices of the East flowed to Syria and Egypt, there to pass into the hands of merchants from the great commercial centres on the northern shore of the Mediterranean. The Portuguese conquered Goa in 1509, thus securing in western India an admirable base from which their fleet could dominate the sea-lanes leading towards Arabia. Sokotra, guarding the approach to the Bab al-Mandab, had been taken in 1507. Thereafter, although never successful in their efforts to capture Aden, the Portuguese were able to penetrate deep into the Red Sea – indeed, in 1541, Estevão da Gama carried out a daring raid even as far as Suez. An alliance was also sought with Christian Abyssinia which had long been in conflict with the Muslim amirs of the Sudan. In the Persian Gulf, too, the Portuguese were no less active, Ormuz (occupied in 1515), Maskat and Bahrain being the chief harbours under their control.

The Mamluk sultan, Kānsūh al-Ghaurī, anxious to retain the large revenue that he derived from the transit trade, sent to western India a small fleet which overcame a Portuguese squadron off Chaul in 1508, but was itself defeated at Diu in the next year. Despite this reverse al-Ghaurī, with the aid of timber, guns and naval stores obtained from the Porte, built new ships at Suez and in 1515–16 tried to gain effective command of the coastal towns in the Yemen, a campaign brought to a premature end when Selīm I conquered Syria and Egypt (1516–17), although local warfare continued on land between the Mamluk troops disembarked from the fleet and the Arab chieftains of the region.

The Ottomans now had a direct interest in the defence of the Red Sea, yet were for a long time so preoccupied with Balkan affairs as to give little heed to the danger from the Portuguese. The grand vizier, Ibrāhīm Pasha, during his visit to Cairo, reorganised the naval administration at Suez, with the result that the old Mamluk fleet sailed out in 1525 to exact from the Yemen a more than nominal obedience to the Ottoman sultan. The venture led to no great success. Not until after the conquest of Iraq, an event which indicated that to the conflict in the Red Sea there would soon be added war between the Ottomans and the Portuguese in the Persian Gulf, did the sultan at last decide to begin a vigorous counter-offensive.

The governor of Egypt, Sulaimān Pasha, was ordered to build a new fleet at Suez, a task which he began in 1537 and, impressing into his service

Venetian sailors whom he found at Alexandria, completed in the spring of
the next year. In August 1538 he captured Aden and in September, having
crossed the sea to India, joined the forces of Gujarat in their attempt to
seize the fortress that Nuño da Cunha had erected at Diu in 1535–6. The
pasha, now far from his base, had not the means to undertake a prolonged
siege, and the Christians at Diu held out in a stubborn defence. On 6
November Sulaimān Pasha abandoned the enterprise and withdrew to the
Yemen, organised there a new Ottoman régime, of which the main centres
were Aden and Zabid, and then returned to Egypt.

At the end of 1538 the Portuguese were still in control of the trade
routes to Arabia and the neighbouring lands. The initial effect of their
blockade had been severe, for Venetian merchants often found that almost
no spices were for sale in the markets of the Levant. Indeed, the Signoria
was compelled at times to obtain cargoes of pepper and other eastern
commodities from Lisbon. And yet the old traffic, although disrupted and
much reduced in volume, had continued despite all adversities. The
Portuguese were able to restrict but not obliterate the Muslim commercial
interests so long established on the coasts of Malabar and Gujarat. Their
squadrons could enter yet had failed to win command of the Red Sea and
might soon be confronted with a strong challenge to their domination in
the Persian gulf. If the sultan chose to persevere in a more active resistance
to the Portuguese, the trade to Basra and Suez would no doubt regain
much of its past splendour.[1]

The peace with Austria did not end local hostilities on the Danube
frontier. The border warriors of Bosnia, Semendria and the adjacent
regions were *ghāzīs*, soldiers devoted to the *jihād*. To them the *ghazā* or
razzia into the non-Muslim lands – the Dār al-Harb, that is the Abode of
War – was an obligation of their faith as well as a means of material
benefit in the form of plunder and of captives who could be sold as slaves.
The Hungarian and Croat marcher lords in the service of Austria had,
too, a code of behaviour not unlike that of the *ghāzis* and fought no less in
conscious defence of Christendom than in the desire to safeguard the
territories under their immediate control. No decree from Istanbul, no
edict from Vienna, could have halted the unceasing strife in the border
zones where the razzia constituted, as it were, an entire mode of life with
its own peculiar patterns of conduct and belief.

Along the Drava Ottoman raids became so troublesome that in 1537 a
force of about 24,000 men – German and Bohemian troops, levies from
Carniola, Styria and Carinthia – advanced southward against the fortress
of Eszék. The frontier begs hemmed the imperialists into their laager near
Valpó, cut them off from all supplies of food and fodder, and slew or stole

---

1 For these Portuguese activities, cf. also below, pp. 662ff.

most of the animals which had drawn their carts and guns. It was now late November. The Christians began to retreat, moving between lines of waggons and light field-pieces chained together. Snowstorms hindered the march and at last the long columns broke under the pressure of a fierce pursuit, the men of Carinthia, with the German and Bohemian regiments, being almost annihilated in a desperate battle fought on 2 December.

There was conflict, too, on the lower Danube. Moldavia retained, even at this time, a certain degree of independence in relation to the Porte, for the sultan, in 1529, had confirmed to the nobles the right of naming their own prince, subject to Ottoman approval of the candidate thus elected. The *voivode* of the moment, Peter Rareş, was suspected of intrigue with Vienna. His eviction, therefore, was considered at Istanbul to be desirable and indeed urgent. In September 1538 Sulaimān occupied Suceava, then the capital of Moldavia, raised a new *voivode* to the throne and annexed southern Bessarabia, henceforth to be a *sanjak* the revenues of which would maintain the Ottoman fortresses of Akkerman and Kilia. The sultan had reason to be well satisfied with this achievement. Moldavia would in future come under more effective restraint, and the land-route from the Crimea to the Danube, which the Tatar horsemen of the Krim Khan followed when summoned to the Hungarian wars, would be much safer than before.

It was now five years since peace had been made between the sultan and the Archduke Ferdinand. In the meantime, despite frequent missions from Vienna to Istanbul, no method had been found of reconciling the rival claims of Zápolyai and the archduke to the Hungarian Crown. Sulaimān defined his own attitude in the clearest terms when he told the Austrian ambassador, Schepper, in 1534:

this realm belongs to me and I have set therein my servant . . . I have given him this kingdom, I can take it back from him, if I wish, for mine is the right to dispose of it and of all its inhabitants, who are my subjects. Let Ferdinand, therefore, attempt nothing against it . . . What Janos Kral[1] does there, he does in my name . . .

In 1538 Zápolyai made a compact with the archduke: each was to have the title of king and each to retain what he then held of the Hungarian realm, but on the death of Zápolyai (at this time unmarried and childless) his lands would pass to Ferdinand, with the proviso that due recompense be assigned to his queen and her issue if he should ever take a wife. To be effective, the compromise required the approval of Sulaimān – and his consent had not been asked. Moreover, a strong faction amongst the Hungarian nobles, with Martinuzzi, the bishop of Grosswardein, at their head, viewed with disfavour the prospect of Austrian rule. In 1539

---

1 'King John', i.e. John Zápolyai.

Zápolyai married Isabella of Poland. His death in July next year, just after his queen had given birth to a son, led at once to a crisis of the first magnitude.

Martinuzzi, knowing that Ferdinand would seek to enforce the compact of 1538 and himself confronted with dangerous rivals at home, appealed to the sultan for immediate aid. Sulaimān realised that, in regard to the Hungarian problem, no return was possible to the solution of indirect control. The kingdom, torn by bitter feuds, could not be left to the nominal rule of Isabella and her infant child, John Sigismund, nor could a substitute be found for the young prince, the sole claimant around whom the 'native' faction might be expected to gather in defiance of Ferdinand. A new approach was needed, strong enough to curb the designs of the archduke. The sultan must have weighed in his mind the harsh lesson, learned before Vienna and Güns, of the difficulties involved in protracted warfare on the remote Danube. None the less, his final choice was one of permanent conquest. War, indeed, had become unavoidable, for in the meantime imperial troops were marching towards Buda. Sulaimān ordered the beglerbeg of Rumeli to reinforce its garrison and, in his furious anger, stormed at the ambassador who had arrived from Vienna: 'Have you ... told your lord ... that the kingdom of Hungary is mine? Why does he send an army into my kingdom? What is your purpose here and where is your honour? Your king wants only to deceive me ... it is winter now, but summer will come again.'

In August 1541 the sultan encamped at Buda, the begs of Bosnia and the Danube, together with the partisans of Isabella, having earlier cut to pieces the Christian troops opposed to them. Of the ambassadors now sent to him from Ferdinand, Sulaimān demanded that their master return all the fortresses taken since the death of Zápolyai. The archduke was also to give tribute to the Porte for the Hungarian lands under his control before that event. John Sigismund and his mother were escorted to Lippa, there to rule over Transylvania as vassals of the sultan. Buda itself would be the centre of a new Ottoman beglerbeglik on the Danube.

The next campaign was organised with minute care. In the summer of 1543 Sulaimān marched northward from Belgrade with an army of unexampled power and splendour. Long camel trains carried food and munitions, the river flotilla bore the siege guns and also large supplies of grain and other stores, the janissaries and the mounted regiments of the household, the corps of engineers and the artillery had been mobilised in full strength. The fall of Valpó, Sziklos and Pécs to the beglerbeg of Rumeli cleared the road to Buda. Gran, the sultan's main objective, yielded on 10 August; Stuhlweissenburg was stormed on 4 September. Now that he had won a firm basis for Ottoman rule on the Danube, Sulaimān returned to Istanbul. The campaign of 1544 was entrusted to the

frontier begs. Mehemmed Pasha, the commander at Buda, took Nógrád, Hatvan and also Visegrád, a strong fortress which hindered the movement of the river fleet to and from Gran. Meanwhile, the Bosnians captured Velika in Slavonia, raided into the region of Varaždin and, at Lonska, routed the levies of Styria, Carinthia and Croatia. The Archduke Ferdinand, seeing no hope of effective aid either from the German princes or from his brother, sought and obtained a truce in 1545. Sulaimān was not unwilling to end the war, his attention being now drawn towards the Persian frontier. After long debate, articles of peace, valid for five years, were signed in June 1547. Ferdinand, for the lands still under his direct control – the far northern and western areas of the kingdom – agreed to send annually to the Porte the sum of 30,000 Hungarian ducats.

There had been no serious conflict with Persia since 1536. None the less, local hostilities flared out from time to time in the border regions; the sultan and the shah still vied with each other for the uncertain allegiance of the chieftains, Muslim as well as Christian, of Armenia and the Caucasus. The flight to Istanbul of Elkāss Mīrzā, a brother of Shah Tahmasp, gave Sulaimān a favourable prospect of strengthening the eastern frontier. In the summer of 1548 he marched to Tabriz but found that the shah had chosen once more to abandon it, rather than fight a decisive battle. The sultan now withdrew westward to besiege the great fortress of Van which he had taken in 1534 and then lost to the Persians in the following year. After a brief resistance Van surrendered on 25 August and, with the adjacent lands, became the nucleus of an Ottoman frontier *vilayet*. Having wintered at Aleppo, Sulaimān moved to Erzerum and in September 1549 sent the Vizier Ahmed Pasha against the Georgians of Akhaltzikhé who, with the Safawid begs, had been raiding in the border zones between Kars, Oltu and Artvin. The vizier, in the course of a razzia which lasted for six weeks, brought the district around Tortum under more effective Ottoman control. In the meantime, Elkāss Mīrzā, engaged in a vain attempt to foment revolt inside Persia, had fallen into the hands of the shah. Being thus denied all hope that Tahmasp might be overthrown, the sultan returned to Istanbul, arriving there on 21 December.

The shah was now free to recover, if he could, the territories which had just been taken from him. In 1551 Safawid horsemen laid waste the region of Akhlat and 'Adiljevaz on the northern shore of Lake Van and also defeated the troops of Iskender Pasha, the beglerbeg of Erzerum. Sulaimān ordered the grand vizier, Rustem Pasha, and Mehemmed Sokollu, the beglerbeg of Rumili, to recover the ground lost in Armenia. The campaign, planned to begin in 1552, was deferred until 1554, the sultan being confronted meanwhile with a grave crisis in the relations between himself and his son Mustafā. When at last the Ottomans did move against Persia, Sulaimān, and not the grand vizier, was in command. He set out

from Aleppo in April 1554 and marched through Diyarbekir and Erzerum
to Kars. The Persian border defences, especially at Erivan and Nakhjivan,
were now subjected to a ruthless destruction and the rich lands of the
Karabagh behind them devastated with fire and sword. If he could not
destroy the army of the shah – withdrawn, as in former years, far ahead
and to the flank of the Ottoman advance – Sulaimān meant at least to
wreck the forward zones which had long been the main point of departure
for Persian raids into Asia Minor. With his aim largely achieved, the
sultan retired to Erzerum and there, in September, agreed to a truce with
the shah. A formal peace, the first to be made between the Ottomans and
the Safawids, was signed at Amasia in May 1555. Sulaimān abandoned all
claim to Tabriz, Erivan and Nakhjivan, but retained Iraq, together with
most of Kurdistan and western Armenia.

The conflict with Persia had been fought in a region so remote from
Istanbul that, as a rule, it was June before the sultan could enter the
territories of the shah. Problems of transport were hard to overcome, for,
with Safawid horsemen harassing the Ottoman columns in the mountain-
ous terrain of Armenia and Azerbaijan, the loss of camels and other beasts
of burden tended to be severe. Each campaign, in terms of actual warfare,
had to be carried out and finished within three to four months, a sudden
onset of the long, harsh winter and the rigour of a snow-bound retreat
being of all dangers the most to be feared. The shah, remembering the
lesson of Tchaldiran, avoided all risk of a great battle, swept the mountain
valleys bare of food and fodder, then withdrew, leaving his frontier begs to
watch and hinder the Ottoman advance. To these tactics of evasion and
the irremediable difficulties of remoteness, terrain and climate there was
indeed no simple and effective answer. The victories of Sulaimān had
brought the Ottomans to the extreme limit of valid and enduring conquest
in the east. A war to annex Georgia, Persian Armenia and Azerbaijan
would be certain to involve the state in a vast and onerous expenditure of
men and material. Success might be even more harmful than defeat – for
numerous forts and garrisons would be needed to hold back the Safawids
and, at the same time, control the Turcoman tribes and the Christian
peoples of the Caucasus. The campaigns of Sulaimān had made the issue
clear: to rest content or to go forward? The hour could not be far off when
a fateful decision would be taken at Istanbul.

Two years after his return from Persia in 1549 the sultan found himself
once more at war with Austria. Martinuzzi, the bishop of Grosswardein,
had long been the real master of Transylvania, despite the continued
efforts of Queen Isabella and her partisans to end his domination. Aware
that he himself was held in no great esteem at the Ottoman court – in 1548
Sulaimān had warned him not to disregard the interests of Isabella and
her son – he began to intrigue with Ferdinand of Vienna. In 1551 he forced

the queen to surrender Transylvania to the archduke and accept in exchange certain territories in Silesia. Ferdinand now sent Spanish and Italian soldiers, under the command of Giam-Battista Castaldo, to assume control of the main fortresses. The raid which Mehemmed Sokollu carried out against Lippa and Temesvár in the autumn of this same year convinced Martinuzzi that Sulaimān would unleash a massive campaign against the Imperialists, as soon as the winter had gone. He sought therefore to act as mediator between the sultan and the archduke, hoping thus to maintain his own power in Transylvania, whatever the ultimate course of events might be. His conduct led the Imperialists to believe that he was a traitor to their cause. Castaldo, armed with permission from Vienna to follow his own judgement, made a fatal error when, on 18 December 1551, he brought about the murder of Martinuzzi. By this deed Ferdinand lost all prospect of winning the Transylvanians to his side.

The war went badly for the archduke in 1552. At Szegedin 'Alī Pasha, the beglerbeg of Buda, routed a force composed of Spanish and Hungarian troops, took Veszprém in April and at Fülek, in August, won a second battle against the Imperialists. Mehemmed Sokollu and the vizier Ahmed Pasha conquered Temesvár in south-west Transylvania (henceforth to remain under direct Ottoman rule) and then swept northward along the river Theiss to attack the fortress of Erlau. The Christian garrison fought, however, with such desperate courage that in October the Ottomans abandoned the siege. Although the war lasted until 1562, it led to no further change of real importance in the Hungarian scene, for neither the archduke nor the sultan could afford to launch a sustained offensive; the one because he lacked the means to do so, and the other because he was soon involved in a new campaign against Persia and in a prolonged and dangerous conflict over the succession to the Ottoman throne. The archduke, knowing that he would not be able to evict John Sigismund, the son of Zápolyai, through force of arms, made use of diplomatic manœuvre at the Porte in order to achieve his aim. Ambassadors sent from Vienna to Istanbul strove to draw the maximum advantage from the difficulties of the sultan and insisted that Transylvania should be ceded to their master. Sulaimān had no great desire to continue the war; yet, despite his deep concern in regard to the internal crisis, he was adamant in his refusal of this claim. When, in 1561, the sultan at last recovered his freedom of action, Ferdinand was left with no valid resource. The peace of 1562 renewed, in substance, the terms of 1547. Austria paid tribute to the Porte, and to the same amount as before – 30,000 ducats. Transylvania was still a vassal state under Ottoman control.

The campaigns of 1541–62 had brought about the emergence of three distinct Hungaries: Austrian, in the extreme north and west, Transylvanian, east of the Theiss, and, between them, the territories which the sultan

had conquered along the middle Danube. The Ottomans did not attempt to 'colonise' their new province *en masse* but created 'islands' of effective occupation in the neighbourhood of great fortified towns like Belgrade and Temesvár, Buda, Gran and Stuhlweissenburg, the begs and their *sipāhīs* moving in armed columns from fortress to fortress and living in fact as a garrison in an alien land. The Imperialists, too, evolved a military régime centred around their own strongholds, for instance, Kanizsa, Raab, Komorn and Erlau. Moreover, on the one side as on the other, minor forts, of the type known as 'palanka' (constructed from timber and earth and enclosed in wooden palisades), were raised to guard the main routes and river crossings. In the course of time, therefore, the fluid frontier zone where Christian marcher lord and Muslim beg waged unceasing guerrilla warfare tended to harden on more or less stable lines. The Archduke Ferdinand, although he lacked the means to fight a major campaign of reconquest, could and did find the resources to erect a formidable barrier against the Ottomans. Throughout his reign he devoted much care to the rebuilding and improvement of the Hungarian fortresses in his possession and often entrusted them to Italian, Walloon, Spanish and German troops, that is, to professional soldiers expert in the most advanced military techniques of the age. This effort to organise an elaborate defence in depth was far from complete when Ferdinand died in 1564, yet its effect was becoming apparent long before this date. The Ottomans, committed to the assault against a strong defensive armature and a foe resolved not to run the risk of a great field battle, had to conduct a war of sieges, laborious and wasteful in men and material – a war, in short, which could not fail to heighten the basic difficulties confronting them, of time, remoteness and terrain, of transport and logistics. The years of rapid conquest would soon be gone; victories now cost more and brought less reward than in the past. As in Armenia, so too on the Danube, the Ottomans had almost attained the farthest limit of valid and justifiable expansion.

It was the Ottoman custom that a sultan, on ascending the throne, should kill his brothers and their male children in order to dispel the danger of civil war. Princes of the blood lived, therefore, under a dire constraint, the more compulsive and intense as their father grew old, to prepare for the critical hour which would mark the commencement of a new reign. Of the sons still left to Sulaimān in 1552[1] the eldest was Mustafā, born of Gulbahār, a prince well aware that in Khurrem, the consort whom the sultan cherished with an abiding love, he had an implacable foe determined to achieve his ruin and thus win the throne for

---

1 The sultan was now past the prime of life, for he had been born in November 1494 or, according to other sources, in April 1495.

one of her own children. Khurrem had drawn to her side the astute Rustem Pasha who received the hand of her daughter, the princess Mihr-u-māh, and in 1544 became grand vizier, an office which he was to hold, save for one brief interval, until his death in 1561. The pasha strove to form and maintain a faction hostile to Mustafā, raising to power men who were dependent on himself.[1]

In their youth the sons of a sultan went out from Istanbul to administer provinces in Asia Minor, each of them having a small court, with officials and tutors to instruct him in a practical knowledge of how the empire was ruled. At this time Mustafā held the *sanjak* of Amasia. To counter the intrigues of Khurrem and the grand vizier, he had long sought to gain the trust of his personal entourage and to acquire favour with the Turcoman tribes, with the *sipāhīs* or 'feudal' horsemen under his control and also with the janissaries and the great dignitaries of the Porte. His endeavours were crowned with notable success, for in 1552, when Rustem Pasha came to Anatolia as *serdār* (general-in-chief) of the new offensive against Persia, there arose among the soldiers an ominous murmur that Sulaimān had grown too old for service in the field and that it would be better to set a young and vigorous sultan on the throne. Sulaimān had no choice but to assume command of the troops destined for the Persian campaign. He left Istanbul at the end of August 1553, having summoned his eldest son, with the *sipāhīs* of Amasia, to join him during the outward march. In October, near Eregli in Karaman, Mustafā appeared before his father and was at once executed.

It would seem that the sultan had good reason to act in this drastic manner. There existed a definite and increasing tension between the *sipāhīs* or 'feudal' class within the empire, and the *kullar*, the 'men of the sultan', that is, the janissaries, the mounted regiments of the imperial household and the numerous personnel educated in the palace schools. The *sipāhīs*, Muslim born and in general of Turkish descent, formed the main weight of the armed forces, yet had no access to power and privilege through the higher ranks of the provincial administration. The *kullar*, recruited from captives of war and from the *devshirme* or child-tribute levied in the Balkans, were converts to Islām, a *corps d'élite* trained to wield an almost exclusive control over affairs of state and to fill the great commands and appointments in the provincial as well as in the central régime. Now, in the reign of Sulaimān, social and economic stresses began to affect the status and attitude of the feudal class, rendering more burdensome the strain of frequent and remote campaigns and making the

---

[1] Sinān Pasha, the brother of Rustem held the office of *kapudan*, i.e., high admiral, in the years 1550–4. The grand vizier knew that, if the fleet were in safe hands, it would be difficult for Mustafā to cross the straits to Istanbul.

sipāhīs more aware and envious of the superior role accorded to the *kullar*. Distress in the rural areas also gave rise to the so-called *levends*, men uprooted from the soil, who had recourse at times to brigandage, often with the connivance of the feudal warriors, and welcomed a prospect of service in a cause as desperate as their own. Mustafā became, as it were, the focus and symbol of this unrest. To spare him meant in effect to run the risk, not of a mere revolt in Anatolia, but of a formidable rebellion founded on grave discontent and, still worse, fought with the aid of the *sipāhīs*, that is of soldiers expert in the art of war. How real the danger had been was made clear in the camp at Eregli, for among the troops assembled there the death of Mustafā evoked a reaction so tense that Sulaimān deemed it wise to dismiss the Grand Vizier Rustem Pasha, reputed to be the prime author of the tragic deed.

A bitter conflict was now to be waged between Selīm and Bāyazīd, the sons of Khurrem. The portents of a further crisis became visible in 1555, when Ahmed, the grand vizier, lost his life as a result of court intrigue designed to discredit him and so bring about the recall of Rustem Pasha. A brief revolt, also in this year, in the name of a 'false' Mustafā, was symptomatic of continuing disaffection within the empire. No irreparable breach occurred between Selīm and Bāyazīd as long as their mother remained alive. Khurrem, with the aid of Rustem, controlled among the dignitaries of the Porte a faction able to exert a strong and perhaps decisive influence on the course of affairs. Her ultimate purpose is still a subject for conjecture rather than categorical statement. Western observers at Istanbul inclined, however, to the belief that she favoured Bāyazīd.

The death of Khurrem in April 1558 hastened the onset of civil war. Selīm and Bāyazīd, profiting from the unrest in Anatolia, recruited armies of their own among the Turcomans, the *levends* and the *sipāhīs*. Aid was indeed forthcoming, yet only at a price fraught with grave consequence to the Ottoman régime and, in itself, indicative of the resentment which the 'feudal' class and its allies felt for the 'men of the sultan': the princes had to confer on large numbers of their troops the status of janissaries, thus promising them entry into the privileged ranks of the *kullar*. The storm broke in the autumn of 1558. Bāyazīd, no less than Selīm, had long striven to obtain from the sultan a *sanjak* close to Istanbul. A geographical advantage might well decide the conflict, for, if Sulaimān should die, the throne would no doubt go to the son who first arrived at the Porte and there seized the *khazine* or state treasury. The sultan now transferred Bāyazīd from Kutahya to the more remote Amasia, Selīm being moved at the same time from Manissa to the more distant Konya in Karaman. Bāyazīd, fearing that compliance would mean the ruin of his cause, rose in overt rebellion and thus left Sulaimān no choice but to intervene in favour

of Selīm. Defeated in battle near Konya in the summer of 1559, Bāyazīd withdrew to Amasia and then, despairing of success, fled into Persia.

The sultan assembled troops along the eastern frontier and sought to induce the Uzbeg khan of Transoxania and the chieftains of the Caucasus to prepare for war against the Safawids. He was, however, loath to begin yet another Persian campaign. The shah, too, although determined to profit from his good fortune, had little desire to become involved in a new and dangerous conflict with the Ottomans. He agreed, therefore, after two years of diplomatic manœuvre, to surrender the ill-fated prince in return for a large financial reward. Bāyazīd was executed in September 1561. The long crisis had come to an end. There is no means of knowing how much of private anguish it had inflicted on the old sultan, but a glimpse of the truth can perhaps be discerned in the tragic words which the Venetian Donini ascribed to him: that he was glad to see the Muslims freed from the miseries of civil war between his children and to feel that he himself could live out the rest of his life in peace and not die in despair.[1]

Meanwhile, since the campaign of Diu in 1538, there had been spasmodic warfare against the Portuguese along the shores of Arabia and in the Persian Gulf. The Ottomans, having brought Basra under their direct control for the first time in 1546, established there a small fleet and an arsenal. Pīrī Re'īs, sailing from Suez with a large squadron in 1551, raided Maskat and Ormuz, made for Basra and then returned to Egypt, leaving most of his command to be blockaded in the Shatt al-'Arab. A new admiral, Murād Beg, tried in vain to break out of the Gulf in 1552. Sīdī 'Alī Re'īs, a seaman who had fought at Prevesa under the great Khair ad-Dīn, left Basra in 1554, lost some of his vessels in action with the Portuguese and, after suffering severe damage in a storm off the coast of Makran, found refuge at Surat in western India where the remnant of his fleet was disbanded. On the African shore of the Red Sea the Ottomans had long held Sawakin and now, as a further safeguard against the danger of an effective alliance between the Christians of Abyssinia and the Portuguese, occupied Masawwa' in 1557. The war at sea continued, although on a minor scale, far into the reign of Murād III (1574–95) when a certain 'Alī Beg, with a squadron based on the Yemen, carried out raids to Maskat in the 'Uman and to Malindi and Mombasa on the coast of Africa.

---

1 Cf. the Relazione of Marcantonio Donini (1562) in Alberi, *Relazioni degli Ambasciatori Veneti*, 3rd series (1840), vol. III, pp. 178–9: 'dicesi comunemente che ... al cielo disse questo o altre simili parole, cioè: Sia laudato Iddio, che si come ho sommamente desiderato di vivere tanto tempo che io avessi potuto vedere li musulmani liberi dalla tirannide che loro soprastava senza che venissero all'armi tra di loro, cosi mi sia felicemente ora succeduto, che da qui innanzi mi parrà di vivere vita veramente beata; che s'altrimenti mi fosse occorso, sarei vissuto e morto disperatissimo.

The effort to maintain, in the Red Sea and in the Persian Gulf, a fleet able to resist the Portuguese demanded of the Ottomans a vast expenditure in men and material. Stores and equipment, guns and timber had to be brought overland to Suez or else down the rivers of Iraq to Basra. Construction methods valid in the Mediterranean would not serve in Arabian waters. Technicians and crews must therefore be found with the skill needed to build and man ships of an appropriate type. And yet, despite these and such other difficulties as the lack of good harbours in Arabia, the Ottomans achieved no small measure of success. It was clear, even before Sulaimān's death, that the Portuguese had not the strength to win absolute command of the Indian Ocean. As the Muslim counteroffensive gathered weight and momentum, the ancient traffic through the Red Sea and the Persian Gulf began to revive. A rich commerce flowed once more to Egypt, Alexandria receiving in the years around 1564 cargoes of pepper equal and perhaps superior in volume to those which were then arriving at Lisbon. Aleppo, the terminus for caravans from Iraq and Persia, was now to flourish as one of the great spice and silk markets of the Levant. A precarious equilibrium had been established between the old traffic and the new. The balance would incline at last irremediably in favour of the sea route around Africa, but only when maritime nations far stronger than the Portuguese – the Dutch and the English – broke into the waters of the Indian Ocean and won for themselves a dominant share of the eastern trade.

In the Mediterranean, too, there had been prolonged warfare since the battle of Prevesa in 1538. Charles V, knowing that he would soon be in conflict once more with France, struck hard at Algiers in October 1541, hoping thus to forestall the danger of renewed co-operation between the corsairs and the French naval forces. A splendid armada sailed from the Balearics to the African coast and there, in a sudden storm, suffered damage so severe that the campaign was abandoned. Khair ad-Dīn took his revenge in 1543 when he burnt Reggio in Calabria and, uniting with a squadron under the Duc d'Enghien, captured the town, though not the citadel, of Nice. The Ottoman fleet, to the great disgust of Christendom, wintered at Toulon, the port, with most of its people removed to make room for the Muslims, becoming, as it were, a second Istanbul. There now ensued a period of relative calm, for the emperor signed a peace with France in 1544 and was moreover included in the armistice that Sulaimān granted to Austria in 1547. Meanwhile, Khair ad-Dīn had died in the summer of 1546, leaving behind him a number of captains well qualified to continue his work, among them the famous Dragut (Torghūd Re'īs) who conquered Tripoli in North Africa from the Knights of St John in 1551 and thereafter so harried the western Mediterranean that Philip II of Spain resolved at last to crush him. A powerful force sent against Tripoli,

where Torghūd now ruled in the name of the sultan, met, however, with disaster, the Ottoman fleet, commanded by Piyāle Pasha, surprising and routing the Christians at the island of Djerba in May 1560. This brilliant success encouraged Sulaimān to attempt the conquest of Malta. The *kapudan* Piyāle left Istanbul with a splendid fleet on 1 April 1565, the corsair squadrons of Algiers and Tripoli being also summoned to the campaign. Most bitter fighting marked the course of the siege, but the Knights of St John held out with desperate valour until at last, in September, strong reinforcements came to their aid and so compelled the Ottomans to withdraw.

The Christian cause triumphed at Malta and again at the battle of Lepanto in 1571, five years after the death of Sulaimān, yet these celebrated victories led to no enduring advantage. A far more decisive campaign was waged in 1574, when the Ottomans conquered Tunis and so resolved in their own favour a vital issue of the sea war – whether North Africa would be saved or lost to Muslim rule. Algiers, Tripoli and Tunis now owed allegiance to the Porte and stood, moreover, on the threshold of a golden era as the three great corsair states of the Mediterranean. The threat of Christian domination had in fact been averted in North Africa for some two and a half centuries.

The agreement of 1562 with Austria became null and void on the death of the Emperor Ferdinand in 1564. Sulaimān, although willing to renew the peace, was angered at the outbreak of hostilities between the Emperor Maximilian II and John Sigismund of Transylvania. The refusal of his demand that the imperialists restore certain towns belonging to the *voivode* made war inevitable. The sultan marched once more to Belgrade in the summer of 1566. It was to be his thirteenth and last campaign. A powerful column under the Vizier Pertev Pasha had been sent off in advance to capture Gyula on the river Körös in western Transylvania. A much stronger force, with Sulaimān himself in command, moved towards Szigetvár. Of these fortresses the first yielded, and the second was stormed, at the beginning of September – but just before the fall of Szigetvár death had come to the old sultan.

The reign of Sulaimān owed its splendour to far more than the great campaigns of conquest. Administrators and statesmen of exceptional skill, like the grand viziers Ibrāhīm, Rustem and Mehemmed Sokollu, flourished at this time. Among the *'ulemā* – the theologians and juris-consults trained in the *Sarī'a* or Sacred Law of Islām – none were more illustrious than Kemālpasha-zāde and Abu Su'ūd. Bāki, the prince of poets, and Sinān, a famous architect, gave lustre to an age resplendent with the rich unfolding of all that is most typical in Ottoman culture and civilisation. The sultan devoted large revenues to frontier defence, as in the repair of fortresses at Rhodes, Belgrade, Buda and Temesvár, and to the building of

mosques, bridges, aqueducts and other public utilities, for instance at Mecca, Baghdad, Damascus, Konya and Kaffa. Above all, he strove to embellish his capital on the Golden Horn and, in pursuit of this aim, did much to complete the enormous task, begun by Mehemmed II, of transforming Constantinople, impoverished and depopulated during the last years of Byzantine rule, into Ottoman Istanbul, the proud centre of a vast empire.

To his people Sulaimān became known as Kānūnī, the law-maker. He could not alter or violate the *Sharī'a*, a code embracing wide areas of human thought and conduct which in the Christian world belong to the realm of secular and not of religious affairs. The edicts bearing his name, although to the western mind somewhat narrow in range and in character more interpretative than original, represent none the less a long effort to improve and adapt to the needs of a new age the complex structure of the Ottoman state. Men of his own time emphasised his zeal for justice and the Venetian Navagero paid high tribute indeed when he wrote that Sulaimān, provided he were well informed, did wrong to no one.

Among those who saw the sultan in all his power and splendour not a few have left on record their abiding impression of his personal qualities and character. Navagero discerned in his face a 'marvellous grandeur'. To Andrea Dandolo he was a monarch wise and just, yet ruthless beyond measure when danger threatened his empire or himself. Busbecq, describing how the sultan went to the mosque soon after the return of the Ottoman fleet from its brilliant success at Djerba, read in his countenance no more than a stern and impenetrable reserve, 'so self-contained was the heart of that grand old man, so schooled to meet each change of fortune however great'. The historian confirms, refurbishes and sometimes corrodes the fame of the dead. A final verdict on the true role of Sulaimān in the triumphs and achievements of his reign must rest with future research, but there is little reason to think that he will not continue to be for us, as he was for the Christian world of his time, the Magnificent Sultan.

RUSSIA, 1462–1584

W HEN Ivan III succeeded his father, Vasily II, in 1462 a new era
in the history of the grand principality of Moscow began. By the
end of Vasily's troubled reign the hegemony of Moscow over
the other Great Russian principalities and republics had been confirmed.
But Tver, Ryazan, Rostov and Yaroslavl were still independent; the
republics of Novgorod and Pskov and the town of Vyatka owed no
allegiance to the grand prince of Moscow; and the Russian lands in the
south west along the Dnieper and the upper reaches of the Oka were under
Lithuanian control. Furthermore, the majority of the Great Russian
people were still, in name at least, tributaries of the khan of the Golden
Horde.

The early years of Ivan's reign were years of preparation for the major
tasks that lay ahead. Before Ivan could set about the conquest of the
Ukrainian lands from Lithuania, the eastern and southern frontiers had to
be secured; before the remaining independent Great Russian states could
be securely annexed to Moscow and the lands of Muscovy extended to the
Baltic and the White Sea, Novgorod and her northern empire had to be
subdued; and before Russia could emerge as an international power with
her pride and dignity restored, the degrading so-called 'Tatar yoke' had to
be thrown off.

There is little information of hostile activity on the western or southern
boundaries during the sixties of the fifteenth century, and Ivan was able to
concentrate his attention on the powerful and aggressive Tatars of Kazan.
As a result of a series of campaigns against Kazan (1467–9), which apart
from the great summer expedition of 1469 were little more than full-scale
reconnaissances, not only was valuable experience in invading Kazan
territory gained, but also a period of calm ensued and Moscow's eastern
frontiers were not violated during the nine years following the armistice
concluded in the autumn of 1469. With his eastern frontier thus temporar-
ily secured, Ivan was able during the following decade to devote his
energies to the problem of Novgorod. The great autonomous republic had
long been split into mutually hostile factions – the pro-Lithuanian
oligarchy supported by the 'greater folk' (*bol'shie lyudi*) and the pro-
Muscovite mass of the 'lesser folk' (*men'shie lyudi*). After the Peace of
Yazhelbitsy (1456) it became clear that Novgorod could not maintain her
traditional independence for long. Ivan had only to wait for the pro-

Lithuanian faction to compromise itself sufficiently with Casimir, king of Poland and grand prince of Lithuania, for him to step in and save his 'patrimony' (*otchina*) from the hereditary enemies of orthodoxy, thus rallying to his side the majority of the population and justifying his actions on religious grounds. The opportunity arose at the end of the 1460s when Novgorod appealed to Casimir, asking him to annex the city, to submit the archbishop to the jurisdiction of the metropolitan of Kiev and to send them a prince. Whether or not the Lithuanian prince who appeared in Novgorod at the end of 1470 came in fact as a result of Novgorod's invitation, his presence in the city probably decided Ivan to take action, and his departure (March 1471), hastened no doubt by the growing threat from Moscow, caused the pro-Lithuanian party to make a last effort to interest Casimir in their plight by proposing a treaty. But before it could be ratified, and before Casimir could offer any aid to his ally, Ivan had decisively defeated the Novgorodians (1471). Novgorod was forced to renounce all further dealings with Lithuania and to cede considerable areas of her northern empire to Moscow.

Yet the town still remained, in name at least, a 'free city' and retained her right to choose her archbishop. Only at the beginning of 1478 did she formally lose her independence. After an outburst of anti-Muscovite feeling within the city and an indignant refusal of the *veche* (popular assembly) to recognise the grand prince's sovereignty over Novgorod, Ivan surrounded the city (November 1477) and forced the republic to accept his terms. He demanded the removal of the assembly's great bell – in other words the dissolution of the *veche* – the abolition of the post of *posadnik* (locally elected mayor), and the complete sovereignty of the grand prince over the city. As for territorial demands, Ivan expropriated ten cantons (*volosti*) of the archbishop's possessions, half the land belonging to six of the wealthiest monasteries and all the cantons of Torzhok. But it needed still more drastic measures to subdue the enemies of Moscow in Novgorod. Reports of treasonable communications with Casimir and the Teutonic Order were the cause of Ivan's third campaign (October 1479), which was followed by mass executions and deportations. Towards the end of the 1480s further plots were discovered, as a result of which over 8,000 of the wealthiest and most influential citizens were removed to the neighbourhood of Moscow and replaced by more reliable elements from the interior. In this same year (1489) the last of Novgorod's former colonies, Vyatka, was subdued by force. All the northern lands from Karelia to the Urals were now Muscovite territory. With her empire lost, her best citizens deported and her trade depleted (in 1494 Ivan closed the Hanseatic office in the city), Novgorod could no longer offer resistance to Moscow. Her subjection was complete. It was as though the

last vestiges of political freedom had disappeared from the Russian land.

As for the remaining Great Russian territories still independent of Moscow at the beginning of Ivan's reign, none were in a position to offer serious resistance to the grand prince. In 1463 and 1474 the principalities of Yaroslavl and Rostov respectively were annexed by treaty. The fate of Tver was decided by the fall of Novgorod, for from 1478 the lands of Tver were surrounded by Muscovite territory; in the autumn of 1485, after the flight of her last grand prince, Tver willingly accepted the sovereignty of Moscow. The independent republic of Pskov only nominally retained her autonomy throughout Ivan's reign. Her annexation was merely a question of time. The same was the case with Ryazan, whose foreign policy was managed entirely by Moscow and whose princes were little more than vassals of the grand prince.

By the end of the 1470s the process of 'gathering together' the grand prince's patrimonies was more or less complete; in an emergency Ivan could rely on military support from all the Great Russian territories. Before applying himself, however, to his major task, the wresting of the Ukraine from Lithuania, Ivan had still to reckon with Casimir's ally in the south, the Tatars of the Golden Horde. In 1472 their khan, Ahmed, as a result of an agreement with the king, had invaded Muscovite territory, and Ivan, realising the danger of this partnership, sought an ally in the Crimean Tatars. At first Mengli-Girey, khan of the Crimea, was unwilling to commit himself. But after being temporarily driven out of the Crimea (since 1475 under Turkish suzerainty) by Casimir's ally, Ahmed, he agreed to a pact with Moscow (early 1480). Moscow and the Crimea were to act in unison in offensive or defensive war against Casimir and each agreed to help the other in case of attack by Ahmed. Yet in spite of this alliance Ivan can scarcely have felt himself secure at the beginning of 1480. For not only was the Livonian Order (as a result, no doubt, of an agreement with Ahmed) showing unusually intense activity on the borders of Pskovite territory, but Ivan's brothers, Andrey and Boris, chose this very moment to desert. Fortunately for Ivan, Casimir refused aid to the brothers, and in the autumn they were successfully persuaded to rejoin their elder brother in face of a Tatar invasion; for on 8 October 1480 Ahmed's armies had appeared on the river Ugra, the south-west frontier of Muscovite territory. After a preliminary skirmish both sides exercised extreme caution, Ivan through fear of, and Ahmed in anticipation of, Lithuanian intervention. But Casimir showed no signs of joining his ally. For not only did a timely attack by Mengli-Girey occupy him on his southern border, but also, according to the chronicles, 'he had his own internal disorders [*usobitsy*]'. Realising perhaps that a major campaign against Moscow was

impossible without the co-operation of Casimir,[1] Ahmed withdrew his entire army. His capital was sacked by Tatars from the district east of the Volga, and he himself was murdered early in 1481.

The retreat from the Ugra marked the end, after two and a half centuries, of the 'Tatar yoke', raised Moscow's prestige in the eyes of the Crimean and Nogai Tatars and enabled the grand prince to enter the field of European diplomacy, no longer as a vassal of the khan, but as a sovereign in his own right. Only Ahmed's children remained a nuisance and a potential danger to Moscow, a danger which Ivan sought to remove by diplomacy rather than by force of arms. Again he was obliged to seek the friendship of the Crimean Tatars, who after Ahmed's demise had entered into diplomatic relations with Casimir. In 1482 Mengli was persuaded to break with the king and invade his lands. The resulting sack of Kiev (September 1482) was a major diplomatic victory for Moscow. From now on Mengli was the firm ally of the grand prince. It was less easy to bring the Tatars of Kazan into the Muscovite coalition, but by taking advantage of dynastic strife within the khanate and by backing now the one now the other pretender to the throne, Ivan was able to secure his ends. In 1487 his armies placed Mengli's step-son, the pro-Muscovite Muhammed Emin, upon the throne. His accession won for Moscow the friendship too of the Nogai Tatars with whom Muhammed was linked by marriage ties. The coalition was too strong for the remnants of the Golden Horde. After several abortive attempts to invade the Crimea, the children of Ahmed were soundly beaten in November 1491, and although their final defeat at the hands of Mengli was inflicted only in 1502, from the beginning of the 1490s they no longer constituted a serious threat to the southern boundaries of Moscow.

Ivan's attempts to form a coalition with the western powers against Casimir met with less success. In 1483, by marrying his eldest son Ivan to Elena, daughter of Stephen IV of Moldavia, Ivan secured a valuable ally on the south-western borders of Lithuania. Diplomatic relations with Hungary, which began in 1482, were conditioned by King Matthias Corvinus's attempts to inveigle Ivan into a war with Casimir which would divert Poland from Hungary. But when in 1490 Matthias died and was succeeded by Casimir's son, Ladislas (Vladislav), king of Bohemia, and the kingdoms of Bohemia and Hungary were united under the Jagiello dynasty, all diplomatic relations with Moscow ceased. Relations with the empire were equally fruitless. The king of the Romans was intent on acquiring Ivan's aid in his struggle with Ladislas of Hungary. And when in 1493 Maximilian tactlessly suggested the formation of an anti-Turkish

---

1 An equally convincing reason for Ahmed's retreat was given by the chronicler of Kazan who mentions a raiding party sent by Ivan to the lower reaches of the Volga.

league which would include both Poland and Moscow, Ivan realised that
no help could be expected from the Habsburgs. Diplomatic relations with
the empire died a natural death.

In spite of Ivan's diplomatic failures in the West, he was now in a
stronger position than ever before to begin the war with Lithuania.
Thanks to his neutralisation of Kazan and his friendship with the Nogai
and Crimean Tatars his eastern and southern flanks were secure. Thanks
to a timely and successful invasion of Livonia in 1481, resulting in a ten
years' truce, he had nothing to fear from the Teutonic Knights. And by
the end of the 1480s Novgorod had ceased to cause Moscow anxiety. The
first Lithuanian war was a half-hearted affair, a series of frontier
skirmishes and parleys, and by the end of 1491 it had virtually fizzled out.
But in the following year Casimir died unexpectedly. The Lithuanians
hastened to appoint his son Alexander grand prince of Lithuania, the
throne of Poland falling to his elder son, John Albert. War along the
whole frontier flared up. The weak Alexander was unable to cope with the
situation. In vain he sought help from Poland. Willing to secure peace on
any terms, the Lithuanian nobles at length proposed a marriage alliance
between Alexander and Ivan. Peace was concluded in 1494. By the terms
of the treaty Ivan, who insisted on the title of 'Sovereign [*Gosudar*'] of all
Russia', won considerable territorial gains, the whole of the Vyazma area
and the minor principalities on either side of the upper Oka being ceded to
Moscow. In the following year Ivan's daughter Elena, with the strictest
injunctions to maintain her Orthodox faith, was despatched to Wilno,
where she was married to the Catholic Alexander.

By the end of the century the time was even more favourable for Ivan to
launch his major campaign against Lithuania. His scrupulously tactful
relations with the Porte throughout the eighties and the nineties assured
him of the continued support of the sultan's vassal, Mengli-Girey. His
friendship with John of Denmark and his war with Sweden (1495–6),
which had facilitated John's conquest of Sweden (1496–7), assured him of
Scandinavian neutrality. And on the very eve of the war the intensification
of anti-Orthodox propaganda and the attempt to enforce the principles of
the Union of Florence upon the unwilling Orthodox population of
Lithuania caused several Russian princes from the border districts to offer
their services to Moscow.

The war began in the summer of 1500. One Muscovite army moved
south and occupied virtually all the territory between the Desna and the
Dnieper, reaching Putivl and Chernigov in the south and Gomel in the
west. The remainder of Ivan's forces threatened the area of Smolensk.
After the great defeat of the Lithuanians on the river Vedrosha near
Dorogobuzh (July 1500), the position of Lithuania was desperate. Alex-
ander tried in vain to turn Mengli-Girey and Stephen of Moldavia against

their ally. The kings of Hungary and Poland offered Ivan their mediation and threatened him, should he not accept it, with their intervention. But the only active help Alexander received came from the Livonian Order. The Germans invaded the territory of Pskov, but their successes were cut short by an attack of dysentery. In retaliation Ivan despatched an army to Livonia. In the autumn of 1501 the Germans were overwhelmingly beaten at Helmed near Dorpat.

In 1502 Ivan resumed the attack against Lithuania. His aim was Smolensk. While his troops besieged the city, a vast army of Crimean Tatars ravaged Galicia and Volynia, reaching as far west as Cracow. But this gigantic raid was too southerly to assist the Muscovites, and in the autumn the siege of Smolensk was raised. Again the king of Hungary offered his mediation; this time his ambassadors brought with them to Moscow a plea from Pope Alexander VI to cease hostilities and join in a crusade against the Turks. Ladislas's offer was rejected, but in the following year a six-year armistice was concluded. The terms were wholly favourable to Moscow. Alexander (king of Poland since his brother's death in 1501) yielded the occupied territories of eastern Lithuania (roughly bounded by the rivers Desna and Seym in the south and Dnieper in the west) and in the north the territory bordering the upper reaches of the western Dvina and Dnieper. Muscovy's new frontier thus constituted a direct threat to Smolensk and Kiev. Although Ivan had not succeeded in wresting from Lithuania all those lands that had formerly been Russian, at least the foundation for future conquests in the west had been laid.

Much of the success of Ivan's foreign policy and of his 'gathering of the Russian lands' was due to the fact that his reign was comparatively free from internal disorders. The grand prince showed himself capable of handling with skill not only foreign ambassadors, but also his own family and his boyars.[1] And by the end of his reign he had established himself as undisputed master in the land, feared and grudgingly respected by even the most conservative elements at his court. In all his dealings with his family he showed the same inflexibility of will and ruthless singlemindedness. For Ivan was not satisfied to be *primus inter pares* within his family: the 'Sovereign of All Russia', the 'Tsar and Autocrat' (the style used by the metropolitan at the coronation of his grandson) could tolerate no limitation of his power, no claim on the part of his brothers to what they considered to be their ancient rights. While Ivan, encouraged at every step by the official voice of the church, progressed towards absolute autocracy, his brothers lagged behind, unable and unwilling to rid themselves of the

1 The term boyar is here and elsewhere used broadly to designate the hereditary aristocracy of Muscovy. In the sixteenth century it also had a narrower meaning – namely, a member of the ruler's council, the Boyar Duma.

traditional sense of equality within the princely family, which in a sense was a legacy of the early Ryurikovichi. The rule of primogeniture had indeed once and for all been vindicated by Vasily II, and we hear of no attempt by Ivan's brothers to claim the throne. It was rather their desire to defend their ancient rights as appanage princes, and their anger at Ivan's unwillingness to share his patrimony with them, that led them into disaffection and revolt. The trouble began in 1472 when Ivan's eldest brother, Yury, died childless. In his will he made no mention of his appanage which Ivan, much to the disgust of his remaining three brothers, proceeded to appropriate. In the following year treaties were drawn up between Ivan and his two eldest brothers, Andrey and Boris, according to which the latter promised to hold Ivan and his son as 'elder brothers', not to seek the throne of Ivan or his successor, and not to interfere in the escheat of Yury.

The brothers' grievances were still further increased when one Dmitry Obolensky-Lyko, who had fallen foul of the grand prince, exercised the ancient right of all 'free servants' (*vol'nye slugi*) and transferred his allegiance from the grand prince to Ivan's brother, Boris, only to be arrested on the latter's territory by Ivan and removed to Moscow. Although this was not the first instance of the limitation of the right to 'depart', it was the first time that this right had been denied in the territory of a member of the grand prince's family. Boris vented his grievances to his elder brother, Andrey:

Our brother Yury died – all his patrimony fell to the lot of the grand prince and he gave us no share in it; together with us he took Great Novgorod – but to us he gave no share of the spoil. And now he seizes without judgment whosoever departs from him to us. He considers his own brothers lower than the boyars.

In 1480 the two brothers openly revolted against the grand prince. With their families and their courts they proceeded west to Novgorod territory in the hope of gaining the support of Casimir. Faced with the danger of internecine war, Ivan sent the archbishop of Rostov to plead with his rebellious brothers. But Andrey and Boris received no aid from any quarter. In the early winter they returned with their troops to defend the Ugra line against the Tatars. The rebellion was over. But in the critical years of preparation for the Lithuanian war Ivan could ill afford to risk another armed revolt within the country. By revising his treaties with Andrey and Boris (1481 and 1486) he forced his brothers formally to acknowledge his own territorial acquisitions (the patrimonies of Yury and Andrey the Younger, who died in 1481, and the lands of Novgorod and Tver) and to repeat their vows to abstain from all foreign relations. In spite of these declarations of loyalty, however, Ivan continued to suspect Andrey of treachery and waited only for a pretext to rid himself of his

brother. In 1491 Andrey provided the pretext by failing to send his troops to the aid of the Crimean Tatars. He was perfidiously arrested and imprisoned with his sons. Three years later he died in prison. When the metropolitan interceded for him, Ivan is reported to have said: 'When I die he will seek the throne; if he himself does not get it, then he will stir up my children and they will war one with the other.'

Ivan's family troubles did not end with the removal of Andrey. In the late 1490s a dynastic crisis occurred in which were involved not only the leading representatives of the Muscovite aristocracy and the church, but also the closest members of the grand prince's family. In 1490 the heir presumptive, Ivan Ivanovich, Ivan's son by his first wife, died. Ivan was faced with the problem of nominating as his successor either his grandson, Dmitry, the son of Ivan Ivanovich and Elena Stepanovna, or Vasily, his eldest son by his second wife, Sofia Palaeologa. Dmitry, as son of the late heir-apparent who himself had borne the title of grand prince, undoubtedly had the stronger claim. Furthermore, he and his mother appear to have been supported by the leading boyars at the court, who had little love for Sofia Palaeologa and who presumably saw in Dmitry the ideal prince – malleable, young and weak. Vasily, on the other hand, could claim imperial descent through his mother, niece of the last emperor of the east. To judge from the scanty references in the chronicles, his supporters were the *d'yaki* and the petty nobility at court, the 'boyar children',[1] the new class of *dvoryanstvo* or professionals who owed their rank and station not to their birth but to their service – in other words, men whose existence depended on the sovereign they served, the natural enemies of the privileged aristocracy and the fervent supporters of complete autocracy. Behind Vasily and Sofia there also stood the most influential churchman of the day, Joseph, abbot of Volokolamsk, who opposed Elena, if for no other reason, on the grounds that she was tainted with the heresy of the Judaisers.[2]

In 1497 the grand prince's hand was forced. A plot to seize the treasury and remove Dmitry from the scene was revealed. The ringleaders, mainly boyar children and *d'yaki*, were summarily executed. Vasily was placed under palace arrest, and Sofia, accused of harbouring 'women with philtres' (with the aim, presumably, of poisoning Dmitry), fell into disgrace. On 4 February 1498 Dmitry was crowned grand prince of Vladimir, Moscow and All Russia. Of the causes of this temporary setback for Vasily and Sofia the chroniclers only mention the court

1 Boyar children – members of the service gentry descended from impoverished boyar families; *d'yaki* – originally clerks or minor secretaries who in the sixteenth century were employed in more leading positions, some of them even reaching the grand prince's Privy Council.
2 See below, p. 607.

intrigue. But it is interesting to note that in 1497 hostilities broke out again between Elena's father, Stephen of Moldavia, and Alexander of Lithuania, and that many of the executed boyar children had links with the courts of former appanage princes and with Muscovite emigrés in Lithuania. The triumph of the Elena–Dmitry faction, however, was shortlived. In January 1499 two leading boyars of the Muscovite court, Ivan Yurevich Patrikeev and his son Vasily, were forcibly tonsured, and Patrikeev's son-in-law, Semen Ryapolovsky-Starodubsky, was executed. Their removal was followed by Vasily's appointment as 'grand prince of Novgorod and Pskov'. This was hardly sufficient, however, to satisfy Vasily's aspirations: he demonstratively 'departed' with his advisers to Vyazma on the Russo-Lithuanian border – an obvious threat to his father. Ivan recalled him. Three years later Elena and Dmitry were placed under arrest. Dmitry was bereft of his title of grand prince and Vasily was crowned prince of Vladimir and Moscow, autocrat of all Russia (14 April 1502). The chroniclers throw no light on the causes of Ivan's volte-face. The persuasive powers of Joseph of Volokolamsk may have influenced Ivan in his decision to reinstate his wife and son. But the removal of the boyars may well have been more connected with Russo-Lithuanian affairs than with the dynastic problem; for the Patrikeevs and Ryapolovsky had been intimately concerned with the peace negotiations of 1494 and the betrothal of Elena and Alexander, and it is possible that they opposed Ivan's aggressive foreign policy at the time when Ivan was actively preparing for war with Lithuania.

Whatever the causes of the dynastic crisis of 1497–9, one fact clearly emerges: by the end of Ivan's reign the Muscovite aristocracy was shorn of much of its power and was no longer able effectively to oppose the grand prince. Indeed, in the second half of the fifteenth century a striking change took place in the relationship of grand prince and boyar, of sovereign and subject. The old appanage principalities had virtually ceased to exist as such. Only a few descendants of previous appanage princes retained their patrimonies on anything like the scale their forefathers had known. Many, ruined financially, their lands parcelled out among the members of their families or mortgaged to the monasteries, had no alternative but to enter the service of the grand prince of Moscow as 'service princes' (*sluzhebnye knyaz'ya*). And with the emergence of 'service princes' at the court of Moscow, the old idea of 'free service' and 'free servants' naturally disappeared. For the essence of 'free service' lay in the right of departure (*ot'ezd*), the right of all freemen to choose which prince to serve. Formerly these rights had been freely exercised between one independent principality and another and had been guaranteed by every inter-princely treaty. But with the gathering of the Russian lands and the annexation by Moscow of virtually all the Great Russian principalities, freedom of

service became an anachronism. A prince or boyar might transfer his
allegiance to the grand prince. But to 'depart' from the grand prince to an
appanage prince, or, worse still, to the grand prince of Lithuania, was little
short of treason.

But merely to remove the traditional formula ('our boyars and free
servants shall have freedom [to depart]') from inter-princely agreements
was not sufficient to prevent defection. In the case of the distinguished
boyar, Prince Daniel Dmitrievich Kholmsky, suspected no doubt of
planning treachery or desertion, Ivan took more stringent measures. In
1474 Kholmsky was arrested. He was released only after signing a pledge
of allegiance (*klyatvennaya zapis'*) in which he stated: 'I will serve my
sovereign and his children unto death and will depart . . . to no one else.'
Eight guarantors (including the metropolitan) stood security for him. In
the event of his defection they stood to forfeit 8,000 roubles. Although this
method of binding a service prince to his suzerain by pledge and security
had been practised in Tver and Lithuania as early as the second half of the
fourteenth century, it was the first time it had been applied by a grand
prince of Moscow.

It must not be imagined, however, that a prince or a boyar, on entering
the service of the grand prince, was deprived of his territorial rights. In
most cases he retained and continued to administer his freehold estates.
Furthermore, he was free to dispose of his patrimony at will, to mortgage,
sell, exchange or bequeath. But the Muscovite court and the Muscovite
army was not staffed exclusively by the landed aristocracy. In many cases
the princes and boyars entering the grand prince's service were accompa-
nied by their retinues, their servants and their men-at-arms, who in turn
became the 'service people' of the grand prince. With the gradual
centralisation of the government during Ivan's reign which brought an
ever-increasing number of men into the service of the grand prince, it
became necessary to reward this 'service class' not with hereditary
freehold estates, but with lands granted on a basis of life tenure, the
ownership of which was exclusively conditioned by the terms of service of
the tenant. This system of granting *pomest'ya* was not new; the first record
of a grant of conditionally owned land can be found in the will of Ivan I.
But it was only in the reign of Ivan III that the *pomest'ye* system became
generalised, all but superseding the granting of patrimonies (*votchiny*) in
reward for service.

The rapid growth of the *pomest'ye* system inevitably led to a land crisis.
The private domains of the grand prince were insufficient to meet the
needs of the government; so too were the state 'black' lands. The demand
for land could only be met by distributing confiscated estates in annexed
territories. Of these the lands of Novgorod provided by far the richest
supply. Already in 1479 and 1484 we hear of small-scale evictions of

tenants from Novgorod to the interior. But in 1488 and 1489 the first mass deportations took place. Over 8,000 boyars, 'well-to-do folk' (*zhit'i lyudi*) and merchants were removed together with their families and settled in the eastern areas of the Muscovite territory. Their estates were distributed in *pomest'ya* among 'service men' from the 'lower lands', the districts of Moscow and her neighbouring territories. The exact dimensions of this mass resettlement (*ispomeshcheniye*) are not known, but from the details available it would appear that some 1600–1800 service men were thus rewarded. Of these the sources mention 73 members of various princely families, 175 representatives of old Muscovite boyar families and 280 '*posluzhil'tsy*', former bondmen of Muscovite and Novgorod boyars whose lands had been confiscated, professional soldiers who had received their freedom on entering the service of the grand prince. From an examination of the topographical details of the resettlement it is possible to assess the importance attached by Ivan to this latter category of *posluzhil'tsy*. The largest percentage of *pomest'ya* in the vulnerable frontier zones were entrusted to them; and later the garrison of Ivangorod (built in 1492 on the east bank of the Narova river opposite the town of Narva) was manned almost exclusively by former servants of Novgorod boyars. By thus remunerating his service men with land which it was in their own interest to defend, Ivan created in areas of potential danger efficient military cadres of men who owed their freedom and their land to their sovereign on condition that they rendered him faithful service.

Although the confiscated territories of Novgorod converted into *pomest'ya* amounted to something like a million hectares and although similar methods were employed in other districts annexed by Moscow, still further land was required by the state to satisfy the needs of the evergrowing service class. It was not surprising that Ivan should turn his eyes on the vast estates of the church. During the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries the monasteries had increased out of all proportion to their former size and number. Thanks to their true colonising instinct, their acute sense of business, and their ability to exploit the pious generosity of the princes and boyars, the abbots filled their coffers and increased their domains, mainly at the expense of the impoverished landowners. Huge areas were bequeathed, mortgaged and sold to the monasteries. Their agents had no rivals on the land market. But the church had no desire to sacrifice even a part of its wealth to the state. And the leading ecclesiastical polemicists were careful to surround the church's possessions with an aura of inviolability. It is true that after the fall of Novgorod Ivan had expropriated considerable property belonging to the archbishop and the monasteries of Novgorod and in 1500 had converted an unspecified amount of Novgorod church property into *pomest'ya*. But these were isolated cases. Secularisation of church lands other than on Novgorod

territory was clearly unthinkable without the blessing and co-operation of the hierarchy. The tradition of inviolability was too strong within the church. Furthermore, the time had not yet come when the grand prince of Moscow could treat his clergy as he pleased; while preaching the crusade against the infidel Latins of Lithuania, he could ill afford to offend the representatives of Orthodoxy at home; a rift between church and state would hardly present an attractive picture to those orthodox elements in Lithuanian Russia whose support and desertion he was so anxious to obtain. The best he could do was to attempt to check the flow of privately owned lands into the hands of the bishops and abbots by forbidding landowners in certain newly annexed territories to bequeath or sell their estates without first informing the grand prince.

If Ivan was not willing openly to broach the question of the secularisation of church lands, discontented elements within the church were. At the conclusion of the church council of 1503, convoked in Moscow to deal with certain abuses within the church, the Elder (*starets*) Nil Sorsky, according to a late and not altogether reliable source, proposed 'that monasteries should not own lands, and monks . . . should feed themselves by the work of their hands'. It would appear that Nil was acting from disinterested motives; for him monastic estates were 'the deadly poison of monasticism', corrupting the monk and distracting him from the true spirit of piety. According to the same source, Nil's proposal was countered by Joseph of Volokolamsk whose objections were frankly practical. Landless monasteries were unlikely to attract 'pious and noble men', he said, 'and if there are no pious monks where shall we find metropolitans, archbishops and bishops?' The majority of the members of the council, who needed no persuading, supported Joseph. But they reckoned without the stubbornness of the grand prince. He demanded that an answer to Nil's proposal be brought to him personally. Three times the council's decision, bolstered up with canonical and historical justifications, was reported to him before he agreed to accept their findings. The 'possessors' or 'Josephians', as the supporters of Joseph were called, had won the day. And although Nil's followers, the 'nonpossessors' or 'Trans-Volga Elders', held their ground in the ensuing polemical battles and were later to attract to their camp men of the calibre of Maxim the Greek and the Abbot Artemy, the question of the secularisation of church property had been decided once and for all. Neither Ivan nor his successors were able to reverse the decision of the council of 1503; and throughout the sixteenth century the estates of the church remained for the most part outside the grasp of the state.

In spite of the victory won by the church in 1503 and the tenacity and astuteness displayed by her leaders, the relations between church and state were already becoming one-sided during Ivan's reign. In questions con-

cerning the faith the church required the grand prince to sanction her
decisions and to punish her wrong-doers; in political controversies she had
no alternative but to side with the autocrat; and in the delicate task of
formulating the relationship between the temporal power of the state and
the spiritual authority of the church, she found herself obliged by
circumstances to recognise the superiority of the former. No one realised
more clearly than Joseph of Volokolamsk the theoretical and practical
limits of the church's authority. In his campaign against the heresy of the
Judaisers he saw just how obstructive the 'defender of the faith' could be if
it suited his purposes. And the heresy was indeed a dangerous one, both to
the faith and to the state. It was introduced into Novgorod from Kiev in
1470. It seems that its members denied the fundamental tenets of
Christianity and practised certain Jewish rites. It quickly spread to
Moscow, infecting not only members of Ivan's court (including his
daughter-in-law, Elena), but also, if we are to believe Joseph, the
metropolitan himself. With unremitting tenacity Archbishop Gennady,
and later Joseph, campaigned against the heretics. But there was little they
could do without the co-operation of the grand prince who himself had
been responsible in 1479 for the appointment of two leading heretics to
important ecclesiastical posts in Moscow, and whose own daughter-in-law
was tainted with the heresy. Ivan, it is true, had convened a church council
in 1490 against the heretics, but the punishments awarded to those found
guilty were mild, and the heresy continued to flourish and spread. Joseph
wrote to those in power; he talked in private with Ivan; he urged the grand
prince's confessor to use his influence. At last in 1504, two years after the
disgrace of Elena and her son, Ivan consented to convene a second
council. Many of the leading heretics were excommunicated and burned;
some recanted and were imprisoned; and although Ivan ordered their
release a year later, Joseph's task was virtually completed.

   It was no coincidence that Joseph's formulation of the theory of the
supreme power of the sovereign was closely linked with the struggle
against the Judaisers. Indeed, it was to the grand prince as protector of the
faith that Joseph addressed his monumental work against the heretics, the
Illuminator (*Prosvetitel'*): the tsar's main duty, he argued, was the safe-
guarding of Orthodoxy; the punishment of the wicked the responsibility
and duty of the state. And so long as the grand prince was niggardly in
these duties, the obedience due to the sovereign remained, in Joseph's
definition, significantly qualified: 'obey not a tsar who leads you into
impiety and evil'. It was only after the Council of 1504 that the sovereign
received his apotheosis. 'The tsar by nature is like unto all men', we read in
the final chapter of the *Illuminator*, 'but in authority he is like unto God
Almighty.' At the same time the ecclesiastical panegyrists of Muscovy
were elaborating those theories of Moscow's Byzantine heritage which

were later, during the rule of Vasily III, crystallised in the writings of the monk Filofey. Ivan was styled 'the second Constantine'; Moscow 'the third Rome', 'the new Israel'. But these theories were expressed almost exclusively by the church. Little or no mention is made of Moscow's Byzantine heritage in the official writings of the day – in diplomatic correspondence, epistles, wills, speeches, decrees. The explanation of the grand prince's reluctance to make use of the extravagant formulas prepared by the church and to lay claim to the heritage of his wife can be found in his foreign policy. The goal of his military and diplomatic ventures was not the conquest of Constantinople from the sultan, the suzerain of his Crimean ally, but the reconquest from Lithuania and Poland of the lands formerly possessed by his Kievan predecessors. The title for which he demanded recognition was not emperor of all the Orthodox east, but sovereign of all Russia.

Ivan died on 27 October 1505. His death was not marked by extravagant eulogies from the pen of the chroniclers. There were no signs of national mourning. Yet he had done more than continue the work of his predecessors. He was not just another descendant of the House of Daniel of Moscow, stubborn and uninspiring, reaping the harvest sown by his forefathers. He was distinguished from his predecessors and his immediate successors by a remarkable shrewdness and foresight, by an uncanny grasp of international affairs. His military campaigns may not have been spectacular, but they were highly successful. His diplomatic methods may appear clumsy, but they were effective. He had few of the attributes of the brilliant or popular ruler. His indecisive behaviour in the face of the enemy in 1480 evoked the censure of the populace and the reproof of the clergy. Disliked by his boyars, he nevertheless commanded their fear and respect. Of his private life we know little. His only pleasures to have been recorded were those of the table. In appearance he was tall, thin and slightly stooping. So awe-inspiring were his features that women were said to have fainted at the mere sight of him.

By his will Ivan assured his eldest son of complete political supremacy. Vasily received two-thirds of all his father's estates; the remaining third, consisting of towns and districts of lesser importance, was divided among his four brothers. Furthermore, escheats of any of the younger brothers were to revert without partition to the grand prince. In Moscow itself all the principal revenues derived from the law courts and the customs, which had hitherto been divided among the grand prince and his brothers, were allocated almost exclusively to Vasily. Even in their own territories Vasily's brothers found themselves deprived of many of their former rights. They were forbidden to mint their own coin or to conduct relations with foreign powers. In their estates adjoining Moscow and in the capital

itself they lost not only their right to trade, but also the right to judge major criminal offences.

Vasily was thus firmly established on the throne. Ivan had good reasons for taking his precautions; both the Livonian master and the king of Poland expected Vasily's accession to be accompanied by internal disorders. But there were no manifestations of unrest. Dmitry and his mother remained safely in prison; their supporters maintained a healthy silence. And Vasily, though young, was not weak. If anything he was endowed with more stubbornness than his father. He was certainly more intolerant of those who opposed him, more autocratic in his bearing and more overweening towards his inferiors. He lacked only his father's greatness. He rounded off and consolidated Ivan's work with admirable efficiency – but no more.

The annexation of the two remaining Great Russian territories, Pskov and Ryazan, cost him little difficulty and no military effort. The first to be formally annexed was Pskov. Throughout the fifteenth century the republic had been almost entirely dependent on the grand prince of Moscow both for military aid against her western neighbours and for internal administration. Her affairs were managed by the grand prince's governor (*namestnik*) whose powers were steadily increased, while the authority of the popular assembly (*veche*) was correspondingly diminished. During the last thirty years of her 'independence' her military campaigns were exclusively directed by Moscow. Yet as an independent state, her domains were outside the reach of the grand prince. Only by formal annexation could he gain access to the estates of the landowners. In the autumn of 1509 a suitable pretext for ending the independence of Pskov arose. Vasily was quick to exploit a quarrel between his *namestnik* and the Pskovites. When arbitration failed he took matters into his own hands. In January 1510 the bell of the *veche* was removed; two *namestniki*, whose functions were mainly military, were appointed in lieu of the previous governor; the entire administration of the city was placed in the hands of a civil servant (*d'yak*); and 300 families of the leading citizens were deprived of their estates, deported to the interior and replaced by an equal number of families from the Moscow district. Pskov had become a province of Moscow. Eleven years later Ryazan was formally annexed when its last grand prince, who, in an effort to regain the independence of his forefathers, had entered into secret negotiations with the Tatars, was arrested by Vasily.

In the west Vasily's foreign policy was similar to that of his father. He consolidated and increased Ivan's gains in Lithuanian Russia, but was unable to continue his south-westerly thrust into the Ukraine. Sigismund I, who had succeeded his brother to the throne of Poland and the grand

principality of Lithuania in 1506, began to prepare for war with Moscow
early in 1507, in the hope of a grand coalition of Poland-Lithuania,
Livonia and the Tatars of Kazan and the Crimea. But Vasily forestalled
him by temporarily pacifying Kazan and attacking first. He also entered
into secret negotiations with Mikhail Glinsky, the most powerful land-
owner in Lithuania, who despite his acceptance of the Roman faith
became the rallying point of all the pro-Muscovite Russian elements of the
population. In the first phase of the war (1507–8) fighting was desultory
and inconclusive. Glinsky, after conducting harassing operations in
Polesie, deserted with his army of followers and his relatives to Moscow,
and the Lithuanians were obliged to conclude a treaty (autumn 1508)
whereby all the territorial acquisitions of Ivan III, with the exception of
Lyubech on the Dnieper, were recognised as Muscovite possessions.

  For four years an uneasy peace was kept. But in 1512 goaded on by
Glinsky who sought richer rewards in conquered territory, and encour-
aged by the preparations of the grand master of the Teutonic Order to
wage war on Poland with the support of the emperor, Vasily invaded
Lithuania. His objective was the city and district of Smolensk on the upper
reaches of the Dnieper. After two attempts (December 1512, June 1513)
the Russians succeeded in capturing the city in July 1514. In spite of an
overwhelming (but insufficiently exploited) Polish–Lithuanian victory two
months later, Smolensk remained in Russian hands. The war, however,
dragged on intermittently for the next five years. Notwithstanding his
treaty of aggression with Maximilian (1514) and his offensive and
defensive alliance (1517) with Albrecht, grand master of the Order, Vasily
could hope for no concerted action against his enemy. The Treaty of
Vienna (1515), concluded between the emperor and the king of Poland,
nullified the former's pact of aggression with Moscow and demonstrated
his duplicity; the war between Albrecht and Sigismund (1519–21) showed
only the weakness and the decline of the Order. After a series of bitter but
fruitless campaigns, culminating in the massive invasion of Muscovites
and Crimean Tatars in 1519, negotiations for peace were put in motion. In
1522 a five-year armistice (later extended to 1534) was concluded on the
basis of *uti possidetis*. The immediate aim of Vasily's western policy had
been achieved. Smolensk, the focal point of Russia's western defensive
system, the cultural and economic gateway to the west and south, was
securely in Russian hands, and was to remain so for a century to come.

  The problem that confronted Vasily on his eastern and southern
borders were graver and more complex than those which had faced his
father. For whereas Ivan had managed to live in peace with the Crimean
Tatars and had suffered little interference from the east, Vasily was, in the
second half of his reign, faced with the menace of a pan-Tatar coalition,
supported by the Ottoman Turks and organised by the Girey dynasty of

the Crimea. The Crimean Tatars were no longer the firm allies of Moscow. Since the final defeat of the remnants of the Golden Horde in 1502 they had had no need of Muscovite military aid; furthermore, the eastern – and the most convenient – half of their traditional raiding territory was now under Muscovite control. But whereas the ageing Mengli had been content with razzias (twice in the first ten years of Vasily's reign Moscow's Ukrainian possessions were ravaged by Crimeans), his son Muhammed-Girey had more ambitious plans. In 1521 Muhammed-Girey's brother Sahib ousted the pro-Muscovite successor of Muhammed Emin, Shah Ali, from Kazan, and in the same year Muscovy was invaded on two fronts. A vast army of Crimean Tatars, reinforced by Nogais and Lithuanians, crossed the Oka at Kolomna, while an army of Kazan Tatars under Sahib closed in on Moscow from the east. The besieged capital was saved only by a timely attack on the Crimea by the Tatars of Astrakhan. The invasion of 1521, however, marked the beginning of the decline of the power of the Girey dynasty. Muhammed himself was killed in 1523 after a vain attempt to subjugate Astrakhan, and his successors were too occupied ousting one another from the khanate for the next ten years to prove dangerous to Moscow. Nor were the Turks, whom Muhammed-Girey had sought to entice into an anti-Muscovite coalition, willing or able actively to support their Crimean vassals in any major foreign adventures. Undaunted by Sahib's formal acknowledgment of Sulaimān II's suzerainty in 1524, Vasily was determined to remove the Gireys from Kazan by force. But only in 1532 did the Muscovites succeed in replacing Sahib's nephew and successor, Safa-Girey, by Djan Ali, the brother of the ex-Khan Shah Ali. Once more events had shown that Kazan was not strong enough, militarily or economically, to exist independently of Moscow. Her temporary allies, the Nogai and Crimean Tatars, were too remote and too engrossed in their own affairs to afford effective aid; her suzerain, the sultan, showed no inclination to intervene in her struggle for independence; and her merchants saw in Russia an ever-growing market for their wares rather than a raiding ground for her soldiers.

In his dealings with his family and boyars Vasily showed himself still more intransigent than his father. His brothers he frankly despised. 'Who', he is alleged to have asked his advisers in 1525, 'is to rule after me in the Russian land and in all my towns and provinces? Shall I give [the power] to my brothers? Yet my brothers cannot even manage their own appanages!' Treated with humiliating contempt, spied on by the agents of the grand prince, they were unable to assert their authority or actively to resist their brother. Their entourages were subject to the scrutiny of the grand prince who had no scruples in removing or replacing their courtiers. They were not even permitted to marry until the Grand Princess Elena had borne her husband two sons. The boyars too had little reason to be

satisfied with the autocratic demeanour of their sovereign. No longer was
their counsel sought in all matters of state; instead the grand prince was
wont to consult his private secretaries (*d'yaki*), men far removed by birth
and rank from the traditional advisers of the princes of Moscow.
'Nowadays', complained the disgraced boyar Bersen Beklemishev, 'our
sovereign conducts all matters by confining himself with two others in his
bed-chamber.' The long-established right of the subject to 'meet' (i.e. voice
a grievance to) his sovereign was no longer encouraged, as Bersen himself
had found to his cost. And the right of the subject to 'depart' from the
grand prince was still further limited by the vigorous application of
klyatvenniye zapisi. Nor was the aggressive foreign policy of the govern-
ment viewed with favour by the majority of the boyars, for the frequent
wars – particularly in the west – brought in their train fresh streams of
border princelings to fill the already swollen court of Moscow and disrupt
the minutely elaborated order of precedence.

In the church – or rather in the predominantly 'Josephian' hierarchy
headed by the metropolitan Daniel – Vasily found a willing partner and a
subservient supporter. Not only was Daniel instrumental in the perfidious
arrest of V. I. Shemyachich which led to the annexation of the latter's
appanage, Novgorod Seversky (1523); in 1525, he also gave his sanction to
the canonically unjustifiable divorce of Vasily and his barren first wife,
Solomonia, and married the grand prince to Elena, the niece of Mikhail
Glinsky, much to the disgust of his opponents within the church, the
Trans-Volga Elders, and of the majority of the boyars who had little desire
to see the royal stock propagated. It was not until 1530, however, that
Elena produced an heir, the future grand prince and Tsar Ivan IV. Three
years later her husband died unexpectedly, having entrusted his infant son
to the care of the metropolitan and his wife's uncle, Mikhail Glinsky.

The death of Vasily unleashed the forces of discontent in the court of
Moscow. The unhappy minority of the grand prince was marked by an
unprecedented struggle for power. Freed from the despotic control of
Vasily, his brothers, his widow, his boyars all sought to establish their
authority and all failed. Conspiracies, *coups d'état*, treason, banishment
and murder followed each other in swift succession. Vasily's widow,
Elena, aided by her unscrupulous lover, Prince Obolensky-Telepnev,
survived as regent for five stormy years which witnessed the removal not
only of Vasily's ineffectual brothers, but also of her uncle, evidently
involved in a boyar plot to overthrow the government. But it was only
after her death in 1538 that the boyars were given a chance to show their
hand. As a result of a *coup d'état* engineered by the powerful Shuyskys,
descendants of the princes of Suzdal, Obolensky was arrested and
murdered and those boyars who had been imprisoned during Elena's rule
were released. During five years of chaos and confusion the power swung

from the Shuyskys to their rivals, the Bel'skys, descendants of the Gedymin of Lithuania, and back again to the Shuyskys. The metropolitan see, the occupation of which depended on the favours of the party in power, twice changed hands. Crown lands were expropriated and arbitrarily distributed. The treasury was plundered. Towns and villages were ransacked. District governors vied with one another in greed, ferocity and corruption. Matters were not improved in 1543 when the thirteen-year-old grand prince, incensed at the ignominious disgrace of his favourite, Vorontsov, had Andrey Shuysky murdered by the palace servants, for the Glinskys were quick to exploit the Shuyskys' downfall. For three and a half more years the anarchy continued. Even Ivan's solemn assumption of the title of tsar (January 1547) and his marriage to Anastasia, a member of the old Muscovite family of Zakharin, did not seemingly diminish the power of the Glinskys. It was only in the summer of 1547, when the rabble of Moscow seized and murdered Yury Glinsky, the tsar's uncle, that the rule of the Glinskys came to an end, and with it the first so-called Time of the Troubles.

If the young tsar's mind had been warped by the scenes of violence and depravity he had witnessed in childhood, it had also been poisoned against the boyars whose arrogance, egoism and sheer inability to govern he was never to forget. Yet the programme of the systematic and deliberate destruction of the boyar opposition was not yet begun; there followed instead a respite between the excesses of the boyars and the reprisals of the autocrat, a period of reform seemingly initiated by the so-called 'Chosen Council',[1] that private coterie of governmental advisers headed by the young and able favourite Adashev and the influential priest Silvester, and including in its numbers certain of the more public-spirited boyars. Information on Adashev and Silvester and their clique is scarce and indirect; little is known of the 'Council's' composition, functions or terms of reference; the extent of Ivan's participation in or approval of their reforming activity is uncertain. But there can be little doubt that the reforms carried through at the end of the 1540s and throughout the 1550s were far-sighted and shrewdly conceived. They aimed, first and foremost, at centralising and increasing the efficiency of the administration, a step necessitated by the vast growth of territory during the past hundred years and the failure of the central government to keep pace with this growth. They resulted, to a certain extent, in the strengthening of the service gentry at the expense of the boyars.

The most far-reaching of these reforms were in the field of local government. That relic of the appanage days, the archaic system of

---

1 The *Izbrannaya Rada*, or Chosen Council, was the name given by Kurbsky in his *History of Ivan the Terrible* to the associates of Silvester and Adashev.

kormleniye, whereby provincial governors were 'fed' (*kormilis'*) by the districts they were granted in reward for service, levying large irregular dues, tribute in kind and various taxes (justice, customs, marriage, etc.), was hopelessly out of date. Not only did the local population suffer from – and repeatedly complain of – the abuse with which the *kormlenshchiki* exercised their authority – extortionism, violence, miscarriage of justice, lawlessness; but the state also suffered from the variegated practices adopted by individual governors, the complete lack of uniformity in this decentralised system of local administration and the difficulties of mobilising at short notice widely scattered commanders and their troops. Already during the minority of the tsar steps had been taken to remove the machinery of criminal justice from the hands of the provincial governors by creating the office of 'district elder' (*gubnoy starosta*), elected by district representatives from the local service gentry and 'boyar children', and aided by similarly appointed subordinate officials responsible for the apprehension, trial and punishment of criminals. Although the main purpose of these measures was the suppression of brigandage rather than the limitation of the juridical powers of the local governors (who indeed continued to receive dues from criminal proceedings), it was nevertheless the first step in the process of replacing the arbitrary power of the governor by the authority of locally elected officials. In the early years of the great reforms further limitations were placed upon the rights of the local governors. In 1549 the service gentry were freed from the jurisdiction of the governors, became subject only to the central organs of justice and received the right to judge the peasants on their domains. The great legal code of 1550 made obligatory the presence of elected representatives of the local population at the assizes of the provincial governors. At the same time an effort was made to regularise the taxes and legal dues a governor might levy. The final blow was struck in 1555 when all cantons were permitted by law (but not compelled) to replace their governors by elective authorities responsible for local administration, justice and the levying of dues, now paid directly into the treasury instead of the pockets of the governors – a step which at once benefited the state (for the local authorities could be centrally and efficiently controlled by the government) and the population of the provinces who were now given the opportunity of freeing themselves from the arbitrary control of the *kormlenshchiki*.

Even more beneficial to the state were the measures taken to improve the efficiency and the conditions of service of the *dvoryanstvo*. In 1550 there occurred the first large-scale 'resettlement' (*ispomeshcheniye*) of Muscovite service men on Crown lands adjacent to the capital. The purpose of this resettlement was to provide approximately half the members of the central government and the Muscovite court (amongst whom were included the senior commanders of the army) with domains near the seat of administ-

ration and thus increase their efficiency and 'readiness for service', speed up mobilisation in case of war, and form reliable cadres of responsible administrators. By the decree of 1555 or 1556 the serviceman found his duties defined according to the size of his *pomest'ye*, was for the first time able to bequeath his fief to his son, provided the latter continued his father's service, and began to receive regular cash remuneration, as well as land, for his service. Steps were also taken to increase the efficiency of the army by limiting, but not abolishing, that clumsy and complex system of establishing social and official precedence by seniority of birth and service (*mestnichestvo*), and by raising the first cadres of a permanent standing army. At the same time the general centralisation of military command and public administration throughout the land was reflected in the creation and rapid expansion of various ministries (*izby* – late *prikazy*) manned mainly by *d'yaki* and centrally administering such affairs as military appointments (*razryadny prikaz*), distribution of fiefs (*pomestny prikaz*) and foreign affairs (*posol'sky prikaz*).

However much Ivan may have been in sympathy with the reforms, he was clearly unable to tolerate the reformers. In 1560 the 'Chosen Council' fell from power. Adashev was despatched to Dorpat where he died; Silvester was banished to the Solovetsky monastery. One has only to read Ivan's first letter to Kurbsky, who deserted to Lithuania in 1564, to realise the causes of the fall of Adashev's clique: opposition to Ivan on the question of the Livonian war, advocacy of an aggressive policy towards the Crimea, hostility towards Anastasia – or rather towards her family, the Zakharins – reluctance to admit the tsar to their council or to recognise his supreme sovereign power, unwillingness either fully to satisfy the service gentry or sufficiently to curb the power of the boyars. And, above all, treachery. For when in 1553 Ivan, seriously ill, commanded his cousin, Vladimir Andreyevich of Staritsa, and the boyars to swear allegiance to his infant son, Silvester and certain other members of the 'Chosen Council' had refused to obey the seemingly moribund tsar and had sided with those boyars who supported the candidature of Vladimir as heir to the throne. While the behaviour of Silvester and his followers in the events of 1553 probably reflected a split within the leading governmental circles, a reaction against the Zakharins ('your son is still in swaddling clothes; the Zakharins will rule us', Adashev's father is reported to have said to the tsar) rather than support for a general uprising, an armed attempt to place Vladimir on the throne, yet their actions were interpreted by Ivan as part of a vast conspiracy against his person.

The dismissal of Silvester and Adashev, followed by the removal, by murder and exile, of their partisans, was merely a prelude to the day of reckoning. Unbalanced by the events of 1564 – defeat in Lithuania, desertion of his general and counsellor, Prince Kurbsky, threat of invasion

on two fronts – Ivan staged his theatrical *coup d'état* at the end of the year. With his suite he left Moscow for Alexandrovskaya Sloboda, halfway between Moscow and Rostov. One month later two documents from him arrived in Moscow; the one accusing the clergy and the ruling classes of treachery and of responsibility for all the disorders within the state since the death of his father and announcing his decision to abandon the throne; the other informing the merchants and the populace of Moscow that he bore them no ill will. If this was a ruse to sound the affections of the people, it was entirely successful. The merchants and the populace petitioned the metropolitan to send a delegation to the tsar, begging him to return. Few could have desired a return to the chaos of the 1530s; yet few could have dreamed of the chaos – and the terror – to come.

    Ivan returned, and on his own terms. He demanded the right to deal with all 'traitors' in his own way, and he announced the formation of a 'special court' or *oprichnina* consisting at first of a thousand chosen men to be settled in certain districts from which all owners of patrimonies or of *pomest'ya*, if not members of the special court, were to be evicted and resettled elsewhere. The remainder of the state, known as the *zemshchina*, was to function as before, with its own council of boyars (*duma*), army, legal system and administrative organs. Only in matters of supreme importance, such as the declaration of war, were the boyars of the *zemshchina* to consult the tsar. The governmental organs within the *oprichnina* formed a complete parallel with those of the *zemshchina*, yet, it seems, they acted at first independently. The country was split into two. Later this duality of government was even further stressed by the temporary granting of the title of 'grand prince of all Russia' to the ex-ruler of Kasimov, the Tatar Simeon Bekbulatovich, as head of the *zemshchina*, while Ivan assumed the humble title of 'prince of Moscow' (1575–6). The number of *oprichniki* soon grew and with it their territory. Eventually the special court controlled approximately half the country, a vast wedge stretching from north to south, the *zemshchina* being gradually squeezed to the outer and less productive fringes. Certain streets and districts of the capital itself were reserved exclusively for the *oprichnina*. The members of the special court were picked from all strata of society, from the commonalty to the titled aristocracy. Even foreign adventurers found their way into its ranks. They wore distinctive uniform. They were united by an oath of unquestioning loyalty to the tsar and mortal hostility to the *zemshchina*. At best they were the chosen commanders and administrators of the new state; at worst, the executioners and secret police of the tsar.

    Executions and banishments followed Ivan's return to the capital in 1565. When it became realised that open protest at the ravages of the *oprichniki* merely provoked further reprisals, the opposition went under-

ground. Conspiracy appears to have followed conspiracy. The unmasking in 1567 of a – perhaps trumped up – plot to betray Ivan to the king of Poland was followed by three years of investigations and mass executions. Among the victims was the tsar's cousin, Prince Vladimir of Staritsa, poisoned together with his mother, wife and daughter. Reports of intended treason by the citizens of Novgorod – together with the city's failure to raise sufficient funds for the wars in the west – led to unparalleled massacres; the city was thrown open to the *oprichniki* who murdered and pillaged for six weeks. The toll of dead is said to have reached 60,000. The disastrous military events of 1571 – the sack of Moscow by the Crimean Tatars and the failure of the Russians to take Reval (Tallin) after a seven-months' siege – were ascribed by Ivan to treachery and inefficiency within the armed forces of both the *zemshchina* and the *oprichnina*. Again there were mass executions. But the *oprichniki* were not always provided with convenient pretexts for their excesses. Whole cities suffered without the preliminary accusation of 'treachery' being even proffered. A metropolitan was strangled for daring to raise his voice in protest. It seemed as though the country was undergoing a bloody civil war, yet a one-sided civil war, for the forces of Ivan met with little or no resistance.

Yet was the *oprichnina* nothing more than a weapon for liquidating 'boyar treachery', a monstrous police force built up and trained to satisfy the bloodthirsty appetites and lusts of a paranoiac? Or was the *oprichnina* the far-sighted scheme of a statesman of genius, the logical continuation of the agrarian reforms of Ivan III and of the *Izbrannaya Rada*, a social revolution intended to achieve what the tsar realised was unachievable under normal circumstances, namely the creation of a new government, a new class of service gentry, reliable and free from the ties of tradition? Unfortunately the scarcity of unbiased sources – the very existence of the organisation was indeed painstakingly concealed from foreign powers – makes it difficult to assess the purpose or even the functioning of the *oprichnina*. Conclusions can only be drawn from the results. As a social experiment the *oprichnina* was, in the long run, successful. In stripping much of the hereditary aristocracy of its power and raising the status of the service gentry, it brought to a logical conclusion the process initiated, as we have seen, by Ivan III. But whereas Ivan III had contented himself with rendering harmless or removing a mere handful of potentially dangerous opponents, his grandson, by the wholesale methods of murder and eviction, attempted to reduce the aristocracy to the level of the service gentry and to replace them in offices of state by his own chosen nobility. Yet though the boyar class as a whole, decimated by the purges of the 1560s and 1570s and financially ruined, gave way eventually to the new nobility and finally abandoned all claims to be the joint rulers and advisers

of the grand prince of Moscow, Ivan none the less, in the middle of his efforts to destroy them, realised that he could not rule without them. The disasters of 1571 had demonstrated that the 'wretched little *voevody*', as Kurbsky later styled the generals of the *oprichnina*, could not replace the experience and tradition of the boyar commanders. How clearly Ivan realised this is shown by the emergency measures taken after the sack of Moscow by the Tatars. The *oprichnina* itself was subjected to a purge and many of its most distinguished members were liquidated; it was forbidden, under pain of corporal punishment, to use the word *oprichnina* – from now on it was the 'court' (*dvor*); and a further 'resettlement' – this time in reverse – took place; certain confiscated patrimonies were in part returned to their original owners and the *oprichniki* settled upon these lands as *pomeshchiki* were themselves displaced and granted new lands. The significance of this measure becomes clearer still if we examine the effects of the *oprichnina* on the rural economy. The parcelling out of the large estates into *pomest'ya*, the excesses of the *oprichniki*, the instability of land-ownership and the subsequent impoverishment of the *pomeshchiki* caused the peasants from the central districts and the states north of the Volga to seek safer and more profitable lands in the east, in the newly conquered territory of the Volga, and in the south, on the Don steppes, in the no-man's-land between the Russian and Crimean frontiers. Not even the steps taken by the government to bind the peasants to the land, nor the half-hearted attempts to secularise church property, could avert the crisis in agricultural labour. The *pomeshchiki* were in many cases forced to resort to abducting agricultural workers from neighbouring lands in order even to subsist on their estates, let alone run them efficiently or make the requisite contribution to the war effort. Gradually the central and western rural areas became depopulated; in some of the districts of Novgorod adjoining the theatre of the Livonian war up to 90 per cent of the land lay fallow towards the end of Ivan's reign. The service gentry were unable to fulfil their military duties; the armies lacked manpower; the treasury became depleted. The *oprichnina* degenerated into little more than an instrument for squeezing resources for the long war in the west from an exhausted population.

It is significant that the great and lasting military achievements of Ivan's reign all occurred before the institution of the *oprichnina* and that the greatest – the conquest of the lower Volga – took place during the rule of the 'Chosen Council'. Throughout Ivan's minority the khanate of Kazan had again proved a thorn in Russia's side. In 1535 the pro-Muscovite Djan Ali was murdered and the Crimean Girey dynasty was reinstated in the person of Safa-Girey. Raid followed raid. A considerable portion of the Muscovite army was needed to deal with the frequent incursions in the east as well as the constant threat of invasion from the south. In 1545 the

Russians went over to the offensive. Unrest and internal dissension rapidly decreased the military efficiency of the Tatars. Between 1546 and 1552 the throne of Kazan changed hands six times, now the pro-Muscovite party gaining ascendancy, now the pro-Crimean. Yet it was only after two further unsuccessful campaigns (1547–8, 1549–50) that Kazan fell (October 1552). Five more years of punitive campaigns against the rebellious Tatars and the peoples of the central Volga area were needed before the submission of the khanate was complete. The position in Astrakhan was complicated by the interests of the Crimean Tatars and the Little Nogai Horde, who supported the Crimean puppet khan, Yamgurchey, on the one hand, and those of the pro-Muscovite Great Nogai Horde on the other hand. But resistance to pressure from Moscow was negligible and in 1556 the Russians occupied the city without a struggle. The annexation of Astrakhan was followed by the recognition of Moscow's suzerainty by the Great Nogai Horde in the Caspian depression east of the Volga. The whole of the Volga was now in Russian hands. The eastern frontiers of the state were secure; the way was open for colonial expansion into Siberia and the Far East; and the great trade routes to central Asia, Persia and the Caucasus no longer lay through territory hostile to Moscow.

After the successful conclusion of operations in the east it was clear that the young and virile state of Muscovy could scarcely content itself with the *status quo* on the southern and western frontiers. Three possible courses of aggrandisement and expansion lay open to the government – the subjugation of the Crimean Tatars in the south; the annexation of the White Russian and Ukrainian lands under Polish–Lithuanian domination in the west; or the conquest of Livonia and the Baltic seaboard in the north west. The first of these courses was persistently urged upon Ivan by the government of the 1550s. From the earliest days of Ivan's reign the Crimean Tatars had shown themselves unwilling to negotiate with Moscow and had proved a constant menace. While not strong enough to mount and maintain a full-scale invasion, they were able to cause grave inconvenience and severe damage by their frequent raids, especially when these raids were launched in collaboration with Moscow's enemies, as in 1535 when a timely attack on the Oka assisted the Lithuanians' invasion of the Seversky district, or in 1552 when Devlet-Girey, urged on by the sultan and the king of Poland, attempted to divert the Russians from Kazan. The *Izbrannaya Rada*, however, met with little success in their advocacy of an aggressive policy against the Crimea. True, from 1556 to 1559 a series of raids along the Don and Dnieper were carried out against Tatar territory, but these were more in the nature of a reconnaissance for a major invasion which never took place. After the fall of the government in 1560 Ivan turned to the defensive in the south. A series of fortified lines

(*cherty*) consisting of towns or strong points linked by a system of
defensive works – trenches, palisades and ramparts – was created on the
northern fringes of the steppes in the hope of blunting the spearhead of
any Tatar invasion; and later a permanent frontier guard force was
established to neutralise the diversionary and surprise effect of the raiders.
The tsar was clearly unwilling to commit himself to a major campaign
involving extended lines of supply and communication or to risk the
danger of a war with the Ottoman Turks without the assurance or even the
hope of military support from the west.

    The constant menace to his southern flank together with the ever-
growing unity of the Polish–Lithuanian state and the possibility of an East
European–Baltic–Turkish coalition directed against Moscow dissuaded
Ivan from attempting the annexation of the Russian lands in the west; the
problem was shelved in favour of what appeared to be a far easier and
altogether more rewarding task – the conquest of Livonia. There were
indeed many reasons for embarking on such a course. Not least among
these was the vulnerability of the country. The military power of the Order
of the Knights of the Sword was in a state of complete disintegration;
there was little unity between the order and the independent bishops; the
archbishop of Riga was openly polonophile – the master, Fürstenberg,
favoured agreement with Moscow. Strategically the seizure of Livonia
would endanger the state of Lithuania not only in the east, but also along
the whole of her northern frontier. But the economic advantages to be
derived from such a course of action far outweighed all other consider-
ations. Mastery of Livonia meant an outlet to the Baltic, and the
possession of the town of Narva and of the great harbours of Reval and
Riga meant direct trade with the west, the facilitation of the import of
metal goods and arms and the export of Russia's natural resources;
furthermore, a secure footing on the southern Baltic seaboard would
remove the possibility of economic blockade by the western and northern
powers.

    For a quarter of a century Livonia was the corner-stone of Ivan's
diplomatic and military endeavours. All Moscow's military energy was
expended in the fruitless effort to conquer the Baltic lands – fruitless,
because without a fleet the seaboard could not be seized or held, and
because Moscow was not alone in her designs on Livonia. Her interests
soon clashed with those of Denmark, Sweden and Poland–Lithuania in a
four-sided struggle for the old possessions of the Order and of the bishops.
Yet the other interested nations were slow to move. A full-scale invasion
in 1558 brought the whole of eastern Estonia (including Dorpat and
Narva, but excluding Reval, which refused to surrender) into Russian
hands; at the beginning of the following year the northern half of Latvia
was added to their conquests. Only then did Russia's future opponents in

the struggle for Livonia begin to show signs of alarm. The mediation of
the king of Denmark resulted in the conclusion of a nine-months'
armistice during which Lithuania signed a treaty with the new master
Kettler (who had replaced the pro-Muscovite Fürstenberg), agreeing to
defend the order in exchange for the temporary Lithuanian occupation of
the south-eastern fringe of Livonia.[1] But it was only after further
successful Russian operations in central Livonia in 1560, which led to the
virtual collapse of the Order, that the other powers actively intervened. By
the treaty of 28 November 1561 all the possessions of the Order were
formally ceded to Poland–Lithuania, Kettler becoming a vassal of the
Polish king with the newly created duchy of Courland and Semigallia in
the south-west as his fief. In the same year King Eric XIV of Sweden, at
the request of Reval, occupied northern Estonia, while the possessions of
the bishop of Oesel in the north-west had already been occupied by
Magnus, brother of the king of Denmark.

Faced with the alternative of war with Sweden and Denmark for the
northern districts, or with Poland–Lithuania for the southern half of
Livonia, Ivan chose the latter. The steady worsening of Danish–Swedish
relations culminating in the Seven Years War (1563–70), and the anti-
Polish tendencies of Eric XIV, led to the establishment of friendly
relations between Moscow and Sweden. Until the end of the 1560s Ivan
undertook no campaigns against western Estonia. His only military
venture of importance during this confused and complex period of
diplomatic negotiation was the seizure of Polotsk (1563), the key to the
main waterway (the western Dvina) to the Baltic and commanding the
eastern approaches to the capital of Lithuania. Apart from the great
Lithuanian victories at Ulla and Orsha between Polotsk and Smolensk in
the following year – victories which, happily for the Russians, the
Lithuanians failed to follow up – there were few clashes with Poland–
Lithuania until the end of the following decade. Ivan, indeed, during the
years of the radical reorganisation and the internal upheaval of the
Muscovite state, could do little more than maintain the *status quo* in
Livonia and White Russia by diplomatic bargaining with Lithuania and
attempt to form a coalition with England and Sweden. However, towards
the end of the 1560s the international situation had from the standpoint of
Muscovy considerably deteriorated. England expressed no desire to
enter into an offensive or defensive alliance with Russia; hopes of a lasting
Russo-Swedish pact were shattered on the accession to the Swedish throne

---

1 It is interesting to note that Ivan in his first letter to Kurbsky (1564) laid the blame on the
Izbrannaya Rada for his granting of a vital breathing space to the Order. '[I recall] how,
owing to the cunning suggestion of the Danish king, you gave the Livonians a whole year
to prepare themselves.'

of Sigismund's polonophile brother-in-law, John III, who ousted the mad Eric XIV in 1568; the fusion of Poland and Lithuania into a single state was finally achieved at the Diet of Lublin (1569); and at the same time the Turks were pressing Poland for a military alliance against Moscow. The only ally gained by Moscow in the general reshuffle was Denmark, annoyed by Sigismund's interference in her freebooting activities in the Baltic. Yet even Frederick II failed to assist his brother Magnus, the tsar's newly appointed vassal 'king' of Livonia and commander-in-chief of the Russian armies in the north-west, in the fruitless siege of Swedish-held Reval (1570–1).

Neither Moscow nor Poland–Lithuania was able or willing to embark on a major war at the beginning of the seventies. The king needed peace to put into operation the principles of the Union of Lublin and to consider the problem of the succession to the Polish throne; the tsar was wholly absorbed with the Tatar invasions (1571, 1572) and the need to set his house in order. Yet Ivan was far from uninterested in the affairs of Poland. During the interregna following Sigismund's death (1572–3, 1574–5) he twice proposed his candidacy, once for the Crown of Poland and once for the grand duchy of Lithuania. Whether or not he entertained serious hopes of being elected as king or grand prince, his chances were highly remote. After the flight of Sigismund's successor, Henry of Anjou (18 June 1574), Ivan's diplomatic manœuvres had clearly one aim only – to baulk the election of the sultan's vassal, Stephen Bathory, prince of Transylvania, by supporting the candidacy of the Habsburg Archduke Ernest. A peaceful partition of eastern Europe between the emperor and the tsar seemed an altogether better proposition than a strong king of a united Poland–Lithuania backed by the Porte.

With the election of Stephen Bathory to the throne of Poland (end of 1575) the Livonian war entered into its final phase. Taking advantage of the Polish king's preoccupation with the Danzig rebellion, Ivan threw all his resources into a last effort to conquer Livonia. Meeting virtually no resistance, the Russians overran the whole country (with the exception of Reval and Riga), pushing the scanty Polish and Lithuanian forces behind the Dvina. It was Ivan's last successful military venture. In the following year the tide of fortune changed. Deserted by Magnus, with no hope of an English or Austrian alliance, Ivan was powerless to resist the combined onslaughts of Poland and Sweden, together with the increasing threat of invasion from the Crimea. One by one Ivan's western strongholds fell – Wenden (1578), Polotsk (1579); in 1580 Stephen captured the strategic centre of Velikie Luki in an attempt to drive a wedge into Russian territory, thereby cutting off Ivan's forces in Livonia. It was only lack of money and the half-hearted attitude of the Polish Diet that forced Stephen to abandon more grandiose plans for a full-scale invasion of Moscow, and

to limit himself to extending the Polish corridor in Russian territory east of Livonia by attempting the capture of Pskov (1581). In the north nearly all the southern seaboard of the Finnish Gulf was in Swedish hands by the end of 1581. Further resistance by Ivan was unthinkable. Only the stubborn refusal of Pskov to capitulate spared the Tsar more humiliating terms at the peace treaty of Yam Zapolsky (January 1582) which was brought about by papal mediation. As it was, he renounced all claims to Livonia and the districts of Polotsk and Velizh; the only concession made by Stephen was the return of Velikie Luki. In the following year the whole of Estonia, as well as the towns and districts (*uyezdy*) of Ivangorod, Yam, Koporye and Korela were formally ceded to Sweden. Only the extreme eastern tip of the Gulf of Finland – the small coastal strip on either side of the mouth of the river Neva in the district of Oreshek – was left to Muscovy.

Ivan survived the Swedish treaty by one year. Worn out by a life of dissipation and torn by remorse for the death of his son Ivan, whom in a fit of ungovernable rage he had struck dead two years previously, he died suddenly on 18 March 1584 while playing chess. Although by the end of his reign the foundation had been laid for Russian sovereignty in Asia by the conquest and colonisation of the khanate of Siberia, and although the loss of Narva (1581) was to a certain extent compensated by the establishment of regular annual commerce with England and the Low Countries via the White Sea–northern Dvina route (discovered quite fortuitously by the English in 1553), Ivan left a sorry legacy to his son Fedor. The great venture in the north-west had failed. Russia was left with even less of the Baltic seaboard than before the war. In the west the frontiers remained much as they had been at the death of Vasily III. And in the south the threat of invasion was ever present. But it was the internal condition of the country that presented the gloomiest picture. The long war in the west, the depredations of the *oprichnina* and the upheaval of agrarian economy had exhausted the country economically. The treasury was empty. The central and western districts were barren. Discontent was rife. Ivan had truly sown the seeds of civil war. Writing four years after Ivan's death, the English ambassador, Giles Fletcher, summed up the results of the reign in the following words:

this wicked pollicy and tyrranous practise (though now it be ceased) hath so troubled that countrey, and filled it so full of grudge and mortall hatred ever since, that it wil not be quenched (as it seemeth now) till it burne againe into a civill flame.

THE NEW WORLD, 1521–1580

IN A life of bold decisions, none was more significant for the future than Cortés's decision to rebuild the city of Tenochtitlán-Mexico and to make it the capital of the kingdom of New Spain. The site had many serious disadvantages. It was an island, marshy and reputedly unhealthy; it produced no food of its own, except the fish caught in the lake; its drinking water had to be brought by expensive artificial means from the hills of Chapultepec, several miles away; it communicated with the mainland by causeways, and many among Cortés's following thought that these causeways, with their easily invested bridges, would be dominated by the Indians of the mainland rather than by the island Europeans. Moreover, a large Indian population still lived on the island, lurking among the ruins of buildings which Cortés had had pulled down in order to dump the rubble in the drainage canals, to facilitate the manœuvres of his cavalry. In short, the site might well be a trap, incapable of resisting siege, and peculiarly vulnerable in its provisioning and water supply.

Cortés, though certainly aware of the economic defects of the place, overrode the objections. He believed it to be as strong a site for Europeans as for Indians. Further, he probably wished to avoid a too rapid dispersal of his followers through the land they had only partly conquered, where they might still become the victims of their new vassals, or of their own disagreements. Finally Cortés was wise enough to appreciate the prestige of Tenochtitlán, its 'renown and importance', as he expressed it. Christianity has often sought to identify itself with the ruins of preceding civilisations in the relationship of new spirit occupying old forms. By reoccupying Tenochtitlán, by building churches and dwellings upon its temple sites, rather than leaving its ruins as a monument to Aztec grandeur, the Spaniards not only destroyed the pre-conquest appearance of the city; they also identified themselves with its traditions as a religious and political centre.

Throughout 1522 and 1523 the work of rebuilding went on. Immense numbers of Indian craftsmen and labourers were drafted to the city; according to the Texcocan chief Ixtlilxochitl, who directed the drafting, nearly the whole labouring population of the valley of Mexico was brought to work. Accidents and overwork caused the death of many Indians, and many thousands died in the epidemic of smallpox, intro-

624

duced by Europeans, which raged throughout these years. With reason the missionary friar Motolinia listed the rebuilding of Tenochtitlán as the seventh of the ten 'plagues' which afflicted the Indians of New Spain. The whole work was carried out with breathtaking speed, directed by the Spanish commanders with the same ferocious energy that had made the conquest possible. The scale of the undertaking astonished contemporaries. The new city, in size, in grandeur and regularity of layout, vied with the greatest capitals of Europe. The island population in the 1520s was certainly not less than a hundred thousand people, bigger by far than Toledo or Seville or any other Spanish city in Europe. For its support it drew upon the products of a rich agricultural region of vast extent and commanded the services of a great system of tributary labour, inherited from Aztec times, whose capabilities in the early days seemed almost limitless. More significant still, it was a mixed city in which Spaniards and Indians lived side by side in their respective barrios. The rebuilding of Tenochtitlán began that fruitful intermingling of Spanish and Indian ways which has remained characteristic of Spanish North America ever since; and the founding of Mexico City provided the model which many later conquerors were to seek to imitate.

Spanish society was strongly urban in character. In Castile, fortified corporate towns occupied a position of privilege and power, as was natural in a country whose history had been filled with intermittent war, with constantly shifting frontiers. Noblemen, though they drew their income from land or, preferably, from the possession of flocks and herds, built their palaces in the towns. Rural life was for peasants, many of them moriscos. In the reconquest of Christian Spain from the Moors, the occupation or the establishment of fortified towns had been an essential precaution; and similarly, it was natural for the Castilian conquerors of Mexico to establish themselves in corporate towns, while looking to the surrounding countryside for their support. The principal functions of these towns in the early days were not economic, but military and administrative. Even the military aspect of their life soon lost its importance, for with a few exceptions – the Chichimecas of New Galicia, the Araucanians of Chile – the Indians were much less dangerous, much more acquiescent, than the Moors in Spain. It was as social and administrative centres, as the strongholds of a new ruling class, that the towns of Spanish America early attained their dominant position. Every leader of a conquering army made it his first care to establish towns, to get them legally incorporated and to install his own immediate followers as the officers of municipal government. Of course, the majority of such towns were not Mexicos; many of them were at first mere temporary camps of thatched huts; but they shared with Mexico the essential characteristics of

legal incorporation, with jurisdiction over the surrounding country, control of Indian labour, and dependence upon Indian supplies for their subsistence.

In Mexico, as subsequently in most other towns of the Indies, the soldiers of the conquering army – or at least the more substantial among them, those who had financed themselves for the campaign – became the *vecinos*, the legally enrolled householders. From their numbers Cortés nominated the first city government, the *cabildo* of twelve *regidores* or councillors (in smaller towns the number of councillors was smaller). The *regidores* were to elect the two *alcaldes* or municipal magistrates, who with them were to hold office for a year, and upon retirement were to elect their own successors, subject to Cortés's approval. Office was thus to circulate among the restricted group of *vecinos*. The *vecinos* were to get their living not by the exercise of any urban trade; for though among their numbers there were men of almost every calling, they thought of themselves as soldiers and in any case had not come to the Indies to ply their old crafts. They were to be supported by grants of *encomienda*. The system of *encomiendas* was not new; it had long existed in Spain in territory taken from the Moors, in the Canaries, and in the West Indian islands; but in Mexico it received more precise definition and a far more extended use. An *encomienda* was a native village, or part of one, or a group of villages, 'commended' to the care of an individual Spaniard – an *encomendero* – whose duty was to protect the inhabitants, to appoint and maintain missionary clergy in the villages, and to undertake a share in the military defence of the province. The conquering army was thus to be settled as a quasi-feudal militia, residing in towns of Spanish foundation, but living upon the country. *Encomenderos* were entitled by their grants to support their households by levying tribute from the villages in their care, tribute which in the early days took the forms both of food and cotton clothing, and of unpaid forced labour. A grant of *encomienda*, however, involved no cession of land or jurisdiction. *Encomiendas* were not feudal manors, nor were they slave-worked estates. In law, at least, the Indians remained free men, and their rights over the land they occupied were unimpaired. In the valley of Mexico, and in many other places, Indian land custom already made provision for the payment of tribute to overlord peoples, and for the support of chieftains and priests, of temples and community houses. The Spaniards swiftly and brutally geared the system to their needs. *Encomenderos* set up as absolute lords over their supposed vassals, despatching retainers to strip the Indians of whatever they could and dividing up the booty amongst their households. And when such outright pillage declined, the right of *encomenderos* to forced labour, combined with the frenetic Spanish pursuit of precious metals and mania for building, meant that the Indians were now subjected to a régime of ill-treatment and overwork.

Their control of their land, whatever the law said, was also endangered; for if a community could not meet its tribute obligations, or if its headmen could be bribed, its lands might be offered for sale.

Moreover, the number of Spaniards who could be supported by *encomiendas* was relatively small, for – in the early days at least – the grants were large. Cortés arrogated to himself a vast *encomienda* in the valley of Oaxaca, comprising officially 23,000 tributary heads of house-holds, in fact many more. This was exceptional, of course, but *encomien-das* of 2,000 and more tributaries were common. The humbler soldier who received no *encomienda* had two choices open to him. The conditions of colonial society at first being wholly unsuitable for small-scale farming or the practice of European trades, he could either remain the follower, the *paniaguado*, of a great *encomendero*, and live upon his bounty; or he could move on to fresh conquests and hope eventually to secure Indians of his own. Society in these circumstances was necessarily restless, factious and disorderly. The permanence of any governmental system, moreover, depended among other things, upon royal confirmation. Cortés succeeded in securing confirmation of his initial arrangements – and prudently reserved a large proportion of the Anáhuac villages to the Crown – but Charles V and his advisers were naturally suspicious of the *encomienda* system, with its feudal implications, and royal second thoughts could be expected to modify it. Finally, the church, as represented by missionaries of the mendicant orders, was unlikely to be satisfied for long with the perfunctory provision of religious instruction which the law enjoined upon the *encomenderos*; nor were the *encomenderos* – loyal sons of church though most of them were – likely to welcome ecclesiastical intervention between them and their tributaries.

The conquest of New Spain was a spiritual as well as a military campaign, and the principal local opposition to the rule of swordsmen came from the soldiers of the church – the friars of the missionary orders. The Franciscans were the first in the field in Mexico, as the result of a request made to the emperor by Cortés himself. The first Franciscans sent out in 1524 – the famous Twelve under the leadership of Fray Martín de Valencia – and many of their successors, were strict Observants, carefully trained for their task. The same is true of the first Dominicans who, under Fray Domingo de Betanzos, went to Mexico in 1525. They were picked products of church reform in Spain, representing both the radical church-manship of Cisneros and the humanism and learning of Erasmus. Fray Jual de Zumárraga, nominated by Charles V as first bishop of Mexico in 1527, was a conspicuous admirer of Erasmus. The doctrinal books printed in Mexico under his direction – the *Doctrina Breve*, and the *Doctrina Cristiana* prepared as a catechism for Indian use – both show the profound influence of Erasmian thought; both insist on the primacy of

faith over works and advocate the unlimited diffusion of the Scriptures. The men who began the spiritual conquest of Mexico were thus daring religious radicals; but they were also members of a spiritual army whose leaders stood close to the throne. In the first decades of Mexican settlement they had almost a free hand, usurping, by royal direction, the pastoral and sacramental duties normally entrusted to secular clergy. Their leadership in the spiritual conquest ensured its efficiency and speed, and their impact upon colonial society in New Spain, despite the smallness of their numbers, was of explosive force.

The conversion which the missionaries sought to achieve was more than a mere outward conformity. Baptism was to be preceded by careful instruction in the faith, by preaching, by catechism, and by the establishment of schools in which the sons of leading Indians might be educated in Christian doctrine and European ways. The teaching, catechising and baptism of many hundreds of thousands could be achieved, by the small numbers of friars available, only by the concentration of Indians in urban communities close to the nucleus of church and convent from which the missionaries directed their enterprise. Naturally the friars settled in places where urban communities already existed; but such concentrations of population were rare in Indian New Spain. Outside capitals such as Tenochtitlán, Tepeaca, or Cholula, the great majority of Indians lived in scattered hamlets among their *milpas* of maize and beans. Much of the energy of the missionaries was therefore devoted to persuading or compelling the Indians to move into new towns built around church and convent and reserved for Indian habitation. By these means, they argued, new converts could have not only the moral advantages of urban life and missionary teaching, but also the economic and social advantage of segregation from lay Spaniards. A policy of racial segregation was followed, not for the comfort of Europeans but in order to protect Indians from the exploitation and demoralisation which might result from too close contact with Europeans, and to keep them under continuous ecclesiastical supervision. The success of the friars in establishing their ascendancy over the Indians was extraordinary. It owed most to the outstanding qualities of the missionaries themselves whose zeal, fortitude and millenarian fervour in spreading the word of God could, moreover, be backed up by brute force in dealing with those deemed stupid or recalcitrant.

The Aztec masses, on the other hand, were demoralised by military defeat and the fearful ravages of diseases spread by the Spaniards and their African slaves. Deprived of the guidance of their traditional rulers and priests, they were widely convinced that their gods had abandoned them. They were, furthermore, accustomed to living in accordance with an intricate and continuous ritual which governed all their communal

activities, including the all-important processes of agriculture. Ceremonial and work were intertwined and inseparable. The Spanish conquest, with its destruction of temples, its prohibitions of pagan dances, its forceful proselytising, weakened and in some places destroyed the old ritual organisation. Work – whether forced labour for an *encomendero*, or wage labour, or even subsistence agriculture – ceased to be part of a socio-religious ceremonial system and became a mere profane necessity. A void was created in the spiritual and social life of the Indians, which could be filled, though partially and often superficially, by the ritual of the church and the activities of church-building. The friars understood this necessity; and the very numerous and very large churches which were built, with Indian labour, all over New Spain, though they owed their massive strength to considerations of defence, also owed their magnificence to a desire to replace the lost splendour of the pagan temples. Similarly, the splendour of ecclesiastical ritual – far more elaborate than was common in Europe – was an attempt to meet the Indians' longing for the old ceremonial life which they had largely lost. On the other hand, the policy of the orders necessarily interfered with the control of Indian labour upon which Spanish economic activity depended. It involved the preservation, and indeed the extension, of Indian communal agriculture, for the support of the mission towns. Moreover, the demands of the missions for Indian labour – and their success in securing it – for the purpose of building churches, cloisters and new dwellings, competed directly with the demands of the *encomenderos* and other lay Spaniards; and their exemption from episcopal jurisdiction was a source of indiscipline within dioceses. Inevitably the friars on one hand, the *encomenderos* and the secular clergy on the other, became embroiled in a complex struggle for colonial power. The struggle did not immediately become acute, however, because the conquest did not stand still. As the friars began their spiritual conquest, the lieutenants, rivals and imitators of Cortés were already moving out from Mexico in search of new empires to conquer.

Cortés himself never forgot that the discovery and conquest of New Spain had originated in attempts to find a route to the Pacific and so to the Far East. Mexico occupied and its valley secure, Cortés quickly resumed the search, whether for a strait between the oceans, or for harbours which could become bases for Pacific exploration. Of his subsequent expeditions, only those to Pánuco – the first commanded by himself, the second by Sandoval – had a purely Atlantic object; and they were undertaken chiefly to counter the slave-raiding activities of Garay, governor of Jamaica, in the Pánuco area. The other expeditions organised by Cortés were all intended to open exploration to the west and south. Between 1522 and 1524 Michoacán and most of the Pacific coast area as far north as the Santiago river were conquered and granted in *encomienda*. In 1523 Pedro

de Alvarado led a well-equipped force through Tehuántepec into the region of the Maya cities of Guatemala, and Cristóbal de Olid was sent by sea to the bay of Honduras, to occupy the settled country there and to search for a strait. Both these expeditions encountered not only physical obstacles and stout Indian resistance, but also opposition from an unexpected quarter, from Pedro Arias de Avila's men exploring north from Darien. The two great streams of mainland conquest met along the southern borders of what are now the republics of Guatemala and Honduras, and a dangerous armed clash seemed imminent. To complicate the situation further, Olid repudiated Cortés's authority and set up an independent command. Cortés thought it necessary to deal with mutiny and possible civil war in person. It was the one serious blunder of his career. His army marched to Honduras across the base of the Yucatan peninsula, *through appallingly difficult country in which abrupt mountain* ranges alternated with dense rain-forest. One river and its riparian swamps had to be crossed by means of a floating bridge whose construction required the felling of over a thousand trees. Few horses survived the march, and the men who survived emerged from the forest broken in health and even, for a time, in spirit. Nevertheless, Cortés's presence sufficed to restore order among the Spaniards in Honduras – Olid had been murdered before his arrival – and to make diplomatic arrangements with the men from Darien which attached Honduras, for the time, to Mexico. Meanwhile Alvarado, as loyal as he was fearless and as capable as he was ruthless, had carried out a successful, rapacious and brutal campaign in Guatemala. The Mayas, vigorous, intelligent, with a developed city-building culture, lacked political unity, and Alvarado profited by the enmity between the principal peoples, Cakchiquel and Quiché, to support the one against the other and ultimately to subdue both. The Spanish city of Guatemala, on the first of its three successive sites, was founded in 1524, and *encomiendas* were distributed among its *vecinos* in the usual way. Upon hearing of Olid's defection Alvarado hastened north in an attempt to join Cortés, but his support proved unnecessary and the interruption of the settlement of Guatemala was brief. Alvarado succeeded in holding his men together and in standing off rival incursions from Darien. He visited Spain in 1527 and returned to America a knight of Santiago, with his government of Guatemala confirmed.

Cortés returned from Honduras to Mexico by sea in 1526. During his two years of absence local feuds and jealousies had distracted city and province, and a procession of hostile tale-bearers had left Mexico to damage his reputation in Spain. He was soon to be superseded; but meanwhile he resumed, with his old vigour, the business of organising New Spain, exploring its coastal provinces, and pursuing the search for a sea route to the East. The whole aspect of Pacific exploration had changed

since the capture of Mexico. Ferdinand Magellan, the Portuguese naviga-
tor who entered the service of Spain, had left Seville on his westward
voyage to the Spice Islands in the same year – 1519 – that Cortés had left
Cuba to conquer Mexico. Magellan knew, though probably Charles V did
not, that the Portuguese were already trading in the Moluccas and took a
calculated risk in going there. The events of his voyage are well known: the
shipwreck and the mutiny off the coast of Patagonia; the discovery and the
terrifying thirty-eight day passage of the strait that bears his name; the
seemingly endless crossing of the Pacific, which reduced the ships'
companies to a diet of rats and leather; the inhospitable landings in the
Ladrones and the Philippines, and the death of Magellan and forty of his
people in a local war. Sebastián del Cano, the Spanish navigator upon
whom the command devolved, sailed south from the Philippines with only
two ships remaining, skirted the coast of Borneo, and in November 1521
reached the Moluccas. The Spaniards were well received by the sultan of
Tidore upon whose territory they landed. They traded their merchandise
for cargoes of cloves and established a warehouse at Tidore, leaving a
small garrison to prepare for future expeditions. Then, since none of his
company felt inclined to face the dangers of Magellan's strait again, del
Cano divided his forces. The Trinidad set off across the Pacific for the
coast of Mexico, and was captured by the Portuguese before she was many
days out. Del Cano himself eluded the Portuguese and took his battered
Victoria through the Macassar strait, across the Indian Ocean, round the
Cape of Good Hope and back to Spain, with her precious cargo. She had
been away for three years. It was a prodigious feat of seamanship, and del
Cano shares with Magellan the honour of this astounding voyage. He was
the first captain to sail round the world.

Del Cano's triumphant return to Spain produced two parallel sets of
consequences. The first was a state of more or less open war between
Spaniards and Portuguese in the Moluccas. The second was a series of
outwardly amicable negotiations between Spain and Portugal in Europe.
During these negotiations, Charles V sent out from Spain a second fleet
for the Moluccas, under the Comendador Loaisa; and subsequently
despatched orders to Cortés in Mexico to send ships across the Pacific to
Loaisa's support. Loaisa's expedition was a disastrous failure. Only one
ship of a powerful fleet reached its destination, to find the Tidore factory
destroyed by the Portuguese. Cortés, very willing to establish a trade in
silk and spices from the Moluccas to Spain through Mexico, fitted out
three ships on the Pacific coast and sent them off after Loaisa in 1527,
under the command of his kinsman Alvaro de Saavedra; but Saavedra
fared no better than Loaisa. Only one of his ships reached the Moluccas
and none returned. It became clear that whatever happened in Europe, the
Portuguese were in command of the situation in the East and the value of

the Spanish claim was depreciating. The emperor, at war with France and on the verge of insolvency, in 1527 conceived the ingenious idea of selling or pawning his claim to the Moluccas before it should depreciate still further. In 1529, despite the opposition of the Spanish Cortés, the Treaty of Zaragoza was duly signed. By this treaty Charles V pledged all his rights in the Moluccas to Portugal for 350,000 ducats in cash, and an arbitrary line of demarcation was fixed fifteen degrees east of the islands. For forty years Spaniards in the New World concentrated their attention on the Americas and left the East alone. It was not until the 1560s that they resumed Pacific exploration in earnest and actually settled in the Philippines. Cortés's later Pacific expeditions were coastal reconnaissances, whose chief result was the discovery of Lower California.

In the year of the treaty of Zaragoza Cortés visited Spain to present himself at court, to defend and explain his proceedings in Mexico, and to urge his claims upon the royal gratitude. He would have done well, for his own sake, to have gone earlier, as Alvarado had done. It was characteristic of him that he did not leave his immediate tasks of exploration, conquest and settlement until interferences with his authority and attacks on his reputation made his position intolerable. In 1527 a court of appeal for New Spain had been established by the Crown. The president of this *audiencia*, Nuño de Guzmán, was a lawyer by profession but a *conquistador* of a particularly brutal type by choice. He had been governor of Panuco during Cortés's absence in Honduras and had amassed a considerable fortune by shipping Indian slaves to the Islands, though presumably this was then unknown to the Crown. He was a personal enemy of Cortés and a trusted adherent of Velásquez, the governor of Cuba, who had done all in his power to thwart the conqueror since 1519. With his fellow judges he was empowered to initiate an inquiry into the truth of the charges repeatedly brought against Cortés at the Spanish court, an inquiry which dragged on for years, with many petty recriminations, and was a principal motive in Cortés's journey to Spain. In 1529, therefore, Nuño was left in control of affairs in New Spain: but he was disliked by the 'old conquerors' and in addition became seriously embroiled with the mendicant orders, particularly with the powerful and uncompromising bishop, Zumárraga. Zumárraga opposed *audiencia* rule not as a partisan of Cortés, but as a zealous champion of the Indians of Mexico many of whom fell victims to the slave-hunting activities of Nuño and his colleagues in the vast *encomiendas* which they acquired, by confiscation, from the adherents of Cortés. Zumárraga reported to the Crown, with reason, that Nuño's treatment of the Indians might provoke an armed rising; he conducted in Mexico an impassioned campaign against Nuño culminating in a general interdict on the city. Nuño intercepted most of Zumárraga's letters, but some of his complaints reached Spain, and late in 1529 the

decision was taken to remove from office all the *audiencia* judges and the treasury officials of the province. Nuño anticipated the news of his disgrace by leaving Mexico in 1529 with a large armed following to make a new *entrada* to the north-west of New Spain, where he achieved a successful and very destructive conquest in the area later known as New Galicia. However, he did not enjoy his new command for long; arrested in 1536 and sent to Spain, he died in confinement four years later.

Cortés was in Spain at the time of the decision to replace Nuño. He had arrived at court with appropriate gifts and a train of Indian acrobats and had been warmly received by the emperor. He had been granted the title of marquis of the Valley of Oaxaca, and his great *encomienda* there had been confirmed. Beyond these rewards, the emperor's advisers had to decide how far he was to be trusted, and what use should be made of his great abilities, in the dangerous situation which had arisen in New Spain. Their decision was characteristic. Cortés was to return to Mexico as captain-general, to command such forces as were available in case of trouble; but he was not made governor. Civil government was once again to be entrusted to an *audiencia*, and this time great care was taken to select judges whose ability and integrity were beyond question and whose personality and policy would be acceptable to the missionary interest. The president was Sebastián Ramírez de Fuenleal, bishop of Santo Domingo, and the saintly humanist Vasco de Quiroga was one of his colleagues. This committee of very able lawyers and ecclesiastics administered New Spain for five years, endeavouring, without much success, to enforce royal orders modifying the rough government which the *conquistadores* had set up, and dealing as best they could with the factions which formed and quarrelled around the person of Cortés. Finally the Crown reached the obvious conclusion that friars, Indians and *conquistadores* could be governed only by a single strong hand and appointed a viceroy with far-reaching powers; but once again Cortés was passed over. The first viceroy was a soldier and a diplomat, cadet of a great noble house – Antonio de Mendoza, who took over the government of New Spain in 1535.

Of Cortés there is little more to say. He offered to lead troops against Nuño de Guzmán in New Galicia, but the offer was refused. With the approval of the Crown, the government of New Spain took every possible measure to whittle down his privileges and possessions, to interpret in the narrowest possible way the rewards he had been given by the emperor. Even the Indians of his *encomienda* were to be counted, so that their number could be restricted to the agreed 23,000. His Pacific expeditions were opposed and frustrated, especially after the arrival of Mendoza who himself wished to organise the exploration of the semi-legendary 'Cibola' to the north of the Mexican deserts. The energies of a great commander were thus more and more confined to business activities, to the manage-

ment of his sugar and cattle properties in Oaxaca and his house property in Mexico City. Finally in 1539 Cortés wearied of the New World and returned to Spain, where he lived in comfort but also in boredom, supported by the revenues of the *marquesado*. His reputation as an Indian fighter of unsurpassed skill and success was little valued in Europe, and neither his services nor his advice were sought by the Crown. He died at his house of Castilleja de la Cuesta, near Seville, in 1547.

The policy of the Crown in New Spain in the 1530s was aimed not solely at Cortés but at the whole *conquistador* society which he represented. It was intended to be both anti-feudal and pro-Indian; and for long the emperor's advisers assumed, uncritically, that the two were synonymous, or at least complementary. The *encomienda* was the key to the situation; or so the friars and the bureaucrats at that time believed. A frontal attack on the institution would be difficult and dangerous, though its ultimate abolition was the aim of the more radical of the Crown's advisers. Meanwhile, the Crown resolutely resisted attempts of *encomenderos* to make their *encomiendas* hereditary, or to assume feudal jurisdiction within their boundaries, and sought to whittle down their privileges and to reduce their number. Already in 1530 the second *audiencia* had secret instructions to begin the reduction, or the resumption by the Crown, of the larger *encomiendas*. This policy, it was hoped, would prevent the growth of a potentially dangerous class of colonial feudatories, release the Indians from an onerous servitude, and strengthen the direct authority of the Crown.

By 1530, not only had the main lines of Crown policy been indicated; the main instruments for its enforcement had been chosen. Success depended upon replacing the self-appointed captains and governors of the initial conquest by salaried officials appointed by the Crown. Some of these officials were soldiers and some ecclesiastics, but the great majority were school-trained lawyers. The standing committee of the Council of Castile, which had been set up in 1511 to deal with the business of the Indies, was constituted formally in 1524 as the separate Council of the Indies, a predominantly legal body. It combined, in the manner characteristic of Spanish institutions at that time, the functions of a supreme court of appeal in important cases with those of an advisory council and a directive ministry for the supervision of colonial affairs. The power of legislation, also, though legally reserved to the king, must often have been exercised by the Council with little more than a purely formal royal assent. Failing the personal intervention of the monarch, the empire had a legal bureaucracy at its head.

In the Indies, as in Spain, the professional lawyer was the natural and chosen agent of a centralising policy. *Audiencias* had already been established in Santo Domingo and in Mexico; by the end of the sixteenth

century their number in the New World was to be increased to ten.[1]
Primarily courts of appeal, they acted also as cabinet councils to advise the
civil or military governors of their respective provinces. They might hear
appeals against governors' decisions and actions and might report inde-
pendently to the council. They were expressly charged with the protection
of Indian rights, forming a connecting link between a paternal royal
authority and a subject people of alien culture, counteracting the centrifu-
gal tendencies of an avaricious and disorderly colonial society. In such an
environment they quickly secured or assumed even more extensive
powers. In the absence of colonial law schools they were of necessity
staffed by peninsular Spaniards, graduates recruited from a handful of
prestigious colleges in a small group of universities, then seats of a
vigorous intellectual life. *Audiencia* judges (*oidores*) thus differed widely in
training, temperament and interests from the *conquistadores*. Those
among them who carried out their instructions literally often clashed with
the *conquistadores* directly; those, on the other hand, who accepted the
interests and way of life of colonial Europeans competed with them for the
available pickings.

Not only the higher courts, but the provincial treasuries also, were
staffed from an early date by officers appointed by the Crown, replacing
the original appointments made by the conquerors. The royal *hacienda*
was carefully separated from the general administrative and judicial
system of the colonies. Each provincial capital had its treasury office, its
strong-box, its staff of officials – treasurer, comptroller, factor. The
officials were responsible for the collection of direct taxes such as the
quinto on precious metals; for the collection and sale of tribute in kind
brought in by the Indian communities held by the Crown; for disburse-
ments, such as official salaries, authorised in advance by the Crown; and
for the regular remittance of the surplus to Spain. Treasury officials were
directly responsible to the *contaduría* section of the Council of the Indies.
No payments might lawfully be made from the colonial treasuries without
the prior authorisation of the Crown, so that no viceroy or governor could
hope to establish a private kingdom with public money.

Not only did the Crown appoint higher officials in courts and counting-
houses; it early began to weaken the power of the 'old conquerors' in their
own strongholds, the corporate towns of the Indies. The revolt of the
Comuneros in Spain in 1520–1 had made a deep impression on the young
king, leaving him more than ordinarily suspicious of the privileges and
pretentions of municipal corporations, and of the local magnates who
often controlled them. The towns of New Spain, therefore, were able to

---

1 Santo Domingo, 1526; Mexico, 1527; Panama, 1535; Lima, 1542; Guatemala, 1543; New
Galicia, 1548; New Granada, 1549; Charcas, 1559; Quito, 1563; Manila, 1583.

secure titles and armorial bearings, but little else, by grant from the
Crown. Their power of raising local taxes was severely limited, their
procuradores were forbidden to meet together without express royal
permission, and any tendency towards concerted action was sharply
discouraged. Nothing in the nature of a colonial Cortés was allowed to
develop. At an early date also, the Crown secured control of the internal
composition of the major *cabildos*. In Mexico, where at first the annual
regidores had elected their successors, year by year, subject to the
governor's approval, the Crown began to appoint *regidores* for life in
1525. By 1528 the whole body consisted of these *regidores perpetuos*, and
elections, except those of the two *alcaldes*, ceased. Admittedly many of the
men who received *regimientos* from the Crown were 'old conquerors',
encomenderos or local notables of some sort; but others came straight
from Spain with their letters of appointment in their baggage, and all
owed their dignities to the favour of the king or of some high officer of
state. In 1529 the Crown for the first time appointed the town clerk of
Mexico, and one by one most of the principal offices of the city came into
the royal gift. It was an extremely useful form of patronage, from the
king's point of view, costing the treasury nothing. It effectively discour-
aged the growth of a spirit of municipal independence, without, however,
abating the feeling of municipal dignity.

   The coping was set upon this elaborate structure of royal patronage by
the appointment of the first viceroy, with a stipend generous enough to
place him above petty venality, but himself serving during royal pleasure.
The viceroy's powers were very great; but even he, lacking extensive local
patronage, having little armed force at his disposal and no power to spend
money from the royal chest, was in no position to make himself danger-
ously independent. Moreover, he was watched and to some extent checked
by the *audiencia* judges, and like all other officials had to submit to a
residencia – a judicial investigation of his tenure of office – at the end of his
term. Charles V was singularly fortunate in his first choice of a viceroy for
New Spain. With Mendoza firmly in command, with everyone, in the
manner characteristic of Spanish administration of the time, set to watch
everyone else, the independent spirit of the *conquistadores* seemed safely
under control, and the way seemed clear for the introduction of those
reforms of native policy which the missionary friars continued to urge
upon the government.

   During these far-reaching royal interventions in New Spain, however,
other *conquistadores* had been busy far away in South America; by the
time of Mendoza's arrival in Mexico, another equally formidable empire
had been subdued by Spanish arms; the work of missionaries and officials
was to do again, in much less favourable surroundings. Ever since the
occupation of Darien rumours had been current among the Spaniards

there of civilised and prosperous kingdoms to the south, but the reality long eluded discovery. The chief political and religious centres of ancient Peru lay high up on the Andine plateau, guarded by the gigantic ramparts of the eastern and western Cordillera. Here, at heights varying from 9,000 to 13,000 feet, over a period of some 400 years the Inca clan and dynasty of the Quechua people had established a military dominion which, at the time of the Spaniards' arrival, extended for nearly 2,000 miles from north to south and had its capital at Cuzco. Much of the land was state owned. Peasants from village clan communities laboured in the public service, working alike in agriculture and in such tasks as cloth-making and providing the army with its manpower. Discipline was enjoined by an elaborate and magnificent cult of ruler-worship and enforced by a military organisation which maintained fortresses and stores at strategic points, and a network of mountain roads and liana-cable bridges all over the empire. The Inca polity was far more closely organised than that of the Aztecs in Mexico, and its communications were better considering the extreme difficulty of the terrain. Inca religion was yet another creed of undiluted pessimism. Disasters were expressions of the malevolence of neglected deities who thus had to be placated by human sacrifice before the Incas engaged in anything with so unpredictable an outcome as war. Peruvian material culture was largely of the Stone Age, but Inca subjects were skilled workers in soft metals, made more use of copper tools than did the Mexicans, and employed gold and silver freely, for ornament and even for utensils. They were accomplished and artistic weavers, using not cotton but llama and vicuna wool. They had no writing, but employed a system of knotted cords for keeping accounts, such as tribute returns. Their agriculture was based not on grain crops such as maize, but on roots, chiefly varieties of potato. Their cities were solidly and skilfully built of dressed stone, not of adobe. Like the Mexicans, they had no knowledge of the wheel; but unlike them possessed a beast of burden, though a small and relatively inefficient one, the llama.

In the century or so before the Spanish invasion the Incas had extended their domination north into modern Ecuador, south into Chile as far as the Maule River, and over the region of the well-developed and highly individual Chimu culture of the coastal plain of Peru. These relatively recent acquisitions were a source of weakness to the empire. It was from the northern coastal regions that rumours of Inca wealth reached the Spaniards in Darien, and their inhabitants, still resentful of Inca rule, received the European invaders with acquiescence, if not with enthusiasm.

Peruvian enterprise was initiated in Darien by a syndicate comprising two soldiers of fortune from Estremadura, Francisco Pizarro and Diego de Almagro, and a priest of considerable financial skills, named Luque, who, however, took no active part in the campaigns. After long and varied

careers in Indian fighting, Pizarro and Almagro were prosperously established in Panama, as was the lawyer Gaspar de Espinosa who financed (and frequently reconciled) the pair and who contemplated, amongst other schemes, the digging of a canal from the Caribbean to the Pacific. The partners spent four years in voyages of coastal exploration, in which they collected enough evidence to encourage them to approach the emperor for a formal capitulation. Pizarro's journey to Spain coincided with the triumphal appearance of Cortés at the court – a favourable omen; and Pizarro secured an appointment as *adelantado* and governor of the kingdom which he undertook to conquer. He returned to Panama with his four half-brothers and other volunteers. Leaving Almagro in Panama to follow later with reinforcements, Pizarro finally set out in 1530 with about 180 men and twenty-seven horses for the conquest of Peru.

The arrival of Pizarro at Túmbez on the northern coast of Peru coincided with the final stage of a succession war in which the reigning Inca, Huáscar, was defeated and dethroned by his usurping half-brother Atahualpa who chose as his capital not Cuzco but Cajamarca in northern Peru. Reports of this conflict encouraged Pizarro, after establishing himself in the Túmbez region and founding the 'city' of San Miguel, to march inland to Cajamarca. Here, by means of a surprise attack under cover of a formal conference, the Spaniards succeeded in killing most of Atahualpa's immediate retinue and capturing the ruler himself. Aided by surprise, by a favourable political situation, and by a breathtaking boldness that frightened the conquerors themselves, Pizarro and his men decided the fate of the Inca empire in a single afternoon. Almagro, with 200 men, arrived shortly afterwards. The Inca forces, deprived of the authority of their ruler, were unable effectively to resist the conquerors' march, with about 600 men, on Cuzco, which was taken and sacked in November 1533. The gold looted from Cuzco, together with the roomful of gold vessels which Atahualpa collected in the vain hope of buying his freedom was melted down, the royal fifth subtracted, and the rest distributed; enough to make every man in the army rich for life, though comparatively few lived long to enjoy it.

Despite the hardships, the almost incredible mountain marches, and the fighting that lay behind, Cuzco was the beginning rather than the end of Pizarro's worst difficulties. Hitherto the campaign had followed approximately the same lines as that of Cortés in Mexico, though with the great and fundamental difference of a divided command. After the capture of Cuzco the pattern of events diverged. The power of the Mexican imperial house had been extinguished with the death of Montezuma, but in Peru attempts to set up a puppet regime allowed the re-emergence of an Inca state which survived till 1572. Moreover, Pizarro, unlike Cortés, did not

establish the centre of his power in the ancient capital of the kingdom, but founded in 1535 an entirely new Spanish capital – Lima, the City of the Kings, close to the sea in the Rimac valley. The choice was natural on military grounds, for Cuzco was remote from the harbours on which Spanish Peru depended for reinforcements and supplies from the outside world, and its mountainous surroundings made the use of cavalry, the chief Spanish arm, difficult if not impossible; but by this decision Pizarro emphasised the division between Spanish coast and Indian mountain and lost one means of attaching the Peruvians to a new allegiance. Peru never experienced the rapid interaction of European and Indian ways which was characteristic of the early history of Mexico. Pizarro was in any case a man of a very different stamp from Cortés. He had the disadvantage of not being, in the conventional social sense, a gentleman. In Spain he was the illegitimate son of obscure peasants, in the Indies a warrior among warriors, owing his leadership to vaulting ambition, boundless courage, and skill in fighting. He was illiterate, and therefore dependent upon secretaries. Shrewd though he was, he lacked Cortés's charm and diplomacy, his sensitive understanding of human situations, his genius for attaching even defeated enemies to himself. The judicial murder of Atahualpa was a blunder, condemned by many Spaniards. Pizarro had, moreover, jealous rivals in his own camp, and serious disputes soon arose among the conquerors. The first news of trouble came from San Miguel, whose governor, Belalcázar, had marched north into the region of Quito at the invitation of some of its inhabitants to rid them of their Inca governors and to establish a conquest of his own. The situation was complicated by the unexpected arrival from Guatemala of the restless and warlike Alvarado who also had designs on Quito. First Almagro and then Pizarro hastened north to avert civil war. Almagro and Belalcázar (who were *compadres*) made common cause against Alvarado, who after an interview with Pizarro agreed to return to his own government. Belalcázar retained his conquest of Quito.

Meanwhile Hernando Pizarro, the conqueror's half-brother, who had been sent to Spain with news and presents, had returned with despatches granting to Francisco Pizarro the title of marquis, and to Almagro that of *adelantado* in a necessarily undefined area to the south of that governed by Pizarro. Almagro promptly claimed Cuzco as part of his grant; Pizarro refused to give up the city; and after a face-saving reconciliation Almagro departed on an expedition to explore and conquer his southern kingdom. He was away for two years, during which his army traversed the bleak *Altiplano* of what is now Bolivia and penetrated far into Chile, returning by way of the coastal desert of Atacama. Almagro's people suffered great hardships from cold and hunger, from heat and thirst; they lost most of

their horses and many of their own number; found no more cities and no plunder worth the name; and returned to Cuzco in April 1537 still more bitterly jealous of Pizarro's good fortune.

During Almagro's absence Pizarro had to face a dangerous and widespread Indian rising led by Manco Inca, a successor of Huáscar whom Pizarro tried, unsuccessfully, to use as a puppet ruler. Manco failed to make any impression on Lima, but invested Cuzco closely and cut the city off from reinforcements sent from the coast. In desperation Pizarro called for assistance from neighbouring colonies, but before it could be of any use the rising had collapsed. Indian armies were too large to keep the field for long periods, with the primitive means of transport available, and after some six months Manco's army began to dwindle; but before Pizarro could take advantage of this weakening, Almagro arrived with his army from Chile, took Manco in the rear and defeated him, marched into Cuzco and seized the government of city and province. This was the origin of the first of the civil wars of Spanish Peru, the war of Las Salinas, fought in a country now over-burdened with unemployed and unrewarded rein-forcements. Like many subsequent disturbances in Peru, the war was a quarrel not only between two factions of Spaniards, but between the coast and the mountains, between the cities of Lima and Cuzco. Lima won; Almagro, after many vicissitudes, was defeated in 1538, and strangled by order of Hernando Pizarro, who took him prisoner. He had been an open-handed and popular leader, and his death made many enemies for the Pizarros. Francisco Pizarro's own turn came three years later. In 1541 he was murdered in Lima by a group of the 'men of Chile'; and a second civil war, the war of Chupas, flared up between the partisans of the two dead chieftains.

Manco Inca, who after his defeat lived for ten years as a fugitive ruler, may well have reflected on the ironical fate which befell the conquerors of his people – little bands of armed spoilers seeking one another out and fighting to the death among great mountains, with an empire at their feet awaiting an organising hand. The area under Spanish influence had expanded greatly during the war of Las Salinas and afterwards. Belalcázar had extended his dominion from Quito through forest country inhabited by primitive tribes, north to Popayán, and beyond into the isolated but settled land of the city-building Chibchas. Here his advance met that of Gonzalo Jiménez de Quesada, who marched south from the Caribbean up the Magdalena river to the populous and prosperous savannahs of Bogotá. On this occasion the leaders, approximately equal in strength, agreed on a division of territory. Santa Fe de Bogotá became in due course the capital of the Spanish kingdom of New Granada. Belalcázar – who had added a new technique to the methods of conquest by driving a great herd of pigs along with his army, a source of food supply on the march

and a great acquisition to the country – became governor of Popayán. Far to the south, Almagro's reconnaissances of Chile had been followed up by Pedro de Valdivia who founded the city of Santiago in 1541. Valdivia's conquest was unusual in two respects. As a result of Pizarro's death he found himself without a master and became one of the few elected governors in the Indies by the choice of the *vecinos* of Santiago, much as Cortés had been 'elected' at Vera Cruz. Finding no gold and no settled Indian culture, he succeeded in establishing a modest but soundly based Spanish farming community, in one of the loveliest and most fertile valleys in the world. But the Spaniards had bitten off more than they could chew. Vigorous resistance from the Araucanian Indians forced them to retreat in the mid 1500s – their first withdrawal in the New World – and south of the Bío-Bío river their hold long remained fragile.

All these captains had been, in form at least, the lieutenants of Francisco Pizarro. Pizarro's death left a vacuum in Peru which only the Crown could fill. The war of Chupas, accordingly, differed from the earlier quarrels in that a royal governor despatched from Spain was actively engaged. The licentiate Vaca de Castro, president of the new *audiencia* of Panama, sent to Peru to investigate the disorders there, held a commission to succeed Pizarro in the event of the marquis's death; and accordingly on arrival assumed command of the Pizarro faction, turning it thereby into a royal army operating against an armed rebellion. The Almagro party was defeated, and many of its leaders executed; and, more difficult, Castro with a lawyer's skill and patience dissuaded Gonzalo Pizarro from claiming, sword in hand, the succession to his brother's authority.

Castro's part in the war of Chupas was a brief prelude to a far more drastic royal intervention which was to affect profoundly the course of events in both New Spain and Peru. For more than a decade the Crown had been urging its officials in New Spain to restrict the power and privileges of *encomenderos*. No effective action had been taken. Not only were the *encomenderos* well entrenched and locally powerful; the officials also quickly came to recognise the *encomienda* as the most powerful single instrument of the Spaniards in the colonisation of the Indies. The anti-feudatory and humanitarian legislation promoted at court by missionaries like Las Casas met opposition in the colony, at least until mid-century, from the officials entrusted with its enforcement, because every realistic administrator engaged in colonial government knew that without *enco-miendas* there would be no colonisation. Even the missionaries were not of one mind. Many friars in the colonies – the Dominican Fray Domingo de Betanzos, for example – opposed the expropriation of *encomiendas*; and towards the middle of the century the mendicant orders were being forced, by episcopal attacks on their immunities, into an uneasy alliance with the *encomenderos*. Nevertheless, Las Casas and others of his mind maintained

an unremitting pressure at court, and events in Peru gave support to their arguments. *Encomiendas* had been granted in Peru as in New Spain, but there had been little leisure for peaceful organisation. The constant fighting had taken a far heavier toll of Indian lives and property than in New Spain, and the mitigating influence of the missionary orders had been far less effective. By the time that Peru was conquered, Erasmian radicalism within the Spanish church had lost much of its vigour. Peru received no picked band of zealots comparable with the Twelve. The evangelisation of the Indians and their training in European crafts were far less successful than in New Spain; on the other hand, the indiscipline of colonial feudatories took far more dangerous forms, and the Crown had still more cogent reasons for attacking their privileges.

In 1542 the Crown, partly at the insistence of Las Casas, made a sweeping frontal attack on the whole *encomienda* system. The 'New Laws of the Indies' were a comprehensive code for the whole field of colonial government, but the most significant and revolutionary clauses concerned *encomiendas*. All *encomiendas* were to revert to the Crown on the death of their present holders; no official, lay or ecclesiastical, might be an *encomendero*; and the *encomiendas* of all who had taken part in the civil disturbances in Peru were to be confiscated immediately. This last clause, if interpreted literally, would have deprived every *encomendero* in Peru of his Indians forthwith. In New Spain Mendoza persuaded or bullied the *visitador* entrusted with the enforcement of the New Laws to suspend their promulgation indefinitely. Peru, however, had no effective royal government, and the first viceroy was appointed and sent out, along with the staff of a new *audiencia*, specifically to put the new code into operation. He was Blasco Núñez de la Vela, a professional soldier, an inflexible and unintelligent martinet. His insistence, against the advice of the *audiencia* judges, on the immediate enforcement of his instructions, provoked an armed rising, led by Gonzalo Pizarro, and a fresh civil war, in which Núñez was killed in battle, early in 1546. Gonzalo Pizarro became, for a time, the effective ruler of Peru. Had he repudiated his allegiance altogether, as his grim camp-master Carbajal advised, he might have established an independent kingdom. Habits of loyalty, however, though loose, were strong. Gonzalo Pizarro so little understood the growing bureaucratic absolutism of Charles V that he attempted, like a *conquista-dor* bargaining from strength, to secure royal recognition of his authority; but the time for such loose feudal agreements had passed. The attempt to negotiate merely enabled Núñez's successor in the government, the priest Pedro de la Gasca – having already, from Panama, secured command of the sea -- to land in Peru, to detach many jealous individuals from Gonzalo, and eventually to raise an army which defeated him. Gonzalo and his principal lieutenants were beheaded in March 1548. Of the five

violent and ungovernable brothers who had conquered Peru, only Hernando survived, to end his days in a Spanish prison. The establishment of order throughout the viceroyalty was a slow and difficult process; but by 1560 the viceroy – the brutal Cañete – was able to report that the southern realms were entirely at peace. Colonial feudalism of an armed and overt kind had been put down; in Peru, as in New Spain, the official replaced the *conquistador*.

Though inflexible in suppressing armed rebellion, the Council of the Indies had already received and digested Mendoza's cogent advice, and had recognised its mistake in pushing the *encomenderos* too hard. Both central and local governments were working towards a compromise solution. The *cédula* issued by the emperor at Malines in 1545 re-established the old rules concerning the succession of *encomiendas*; they were to run, as before, for two lives, a limit often exceeded in practice. On the other hand, a series of subsequent decrees in 1549 and 1550 prohibited the exaction of services by *encomenderos*, and in particular the employment of Indians as porters. The institution survived, therefore, but changed in character. No doubt *encomenderos* did extort illegal services, but in law they were entitled only to the tribute of their Indians – tribute paid partly in money and partly in produce, at rates fixed from time to time by the *audiencias*. The *encomienda*, so defined, was to become a mere pension to pay for the support – and to buy off the opposition – of the 'old conquerors' and their descendants. Villages which had not been granted in *encomienda*, or which escheated to the Crown in course of time, were entrusted to the care of district officers, *corregidores*; and these *corregimientos*, which were temporary salaried offices, not feudal grants for a term of lives, gradually replaced *encomiendas* as the normal reward for local services. The problem of inducing the Indians to work for wages, and to contribute to the economic life of a community wider than a single *pueblo*, was taken out of private hands and became a public concern. Though personal servitude had become illegal, governors were empowered to compel 'idle' Indians to seek employment, and all Indian villages were required to furnish a weekly quota of labourers for hire, for recognised public purposes; a system generally known as *repartimiento* in New Spain and *mita* in Peru.

In New Spain the legislation of 1545–50 was enforced with considerable success by the second viceroy, Luis de Velasco, who governed the province from 1550 to 1563, and by the *visitadores* whom he sent out for the purpose. In Peru, effective enforcement was not achieved until the time of Francisco de Toledo, the organising genius who in twelve years of government (1569–81), gave the viceroyalty of Peru its settled, permanent, bureaucratic stamp, and who, incidentally, ordered the execution of Túpac Amarú, the last recognised Inca prince. Enforcement would have

been difficult, perhaps impossible, in both viceroyalties, but for powerful social and economic forces working in the same direction. Clearly the best way to prevent the use of Indians as porters was to encourage the breeding and use of pack animals; and the best remedy for a limited, semi-feudal society based on *encomiendas* was the provision of other occupations by which Europeans could earn a living, without outraging their prejudices on the subject of work unsuitable for gentlemen. In fact, in the second half of the sixteenth century *encomiendas* declined steadily in value, because of government interference, mounting inflation (since tributes were assessed largely in money terms), and decreases in the Indian population. This demographic disaster stemmed in part from Spanish maltreatment of the Indians and disruption of their traditional ways of life, but above all from the ravages of European-borne diseases against which Amerindians had no natural resistance. At the same time more and more Indians – in New Spain at least – acquired European skills or developed their own crafts, either for wages or on their own account. The use of coined money spread, a money economy began to replace direct subsistence, and Spaniards discovered new sources of livelihood which far outstripped the old *encomiendas* in importance. Of these sources the most characteristic and lucrative were mines and stock ranches.

In the arid uplands of Castile, from which most of the *conquistadores* came, pastoral pursuits, the grazing of semi-nomadic flocks and herds, had long been preferred to arable farming. The preference was social and military as well as economic; it was the legacy of centuries of intermittent fighting, of constantly shifting frontiers. The man on horseback, the master of flocks and herds, was the man best adapted to such conditions, in the New World as in the Old. There were, it is true, a few favoured localities such as Puebla in New Spain or Antioquia in New Granada, where Spanish landowners grew wheat for sale in nearby cities, or at the ports for victualling ships; but in most parts in the Indies, cattle and sheep raising became in Mendoza's time the principal occupation of the wealthier Spaniards. In countries with no native horses, oxen, sheep, pigs or cattle, settlers needed animals for transport, haulage and food. European livestock, introduced into virgin pastures and benign climates, and untroubled by any major indigenous predators, multiplied at an astonishing rate. Every chronicler of New Spain mentioned, usually with amazement and delight, the prodigious numbers of beasts which the country supported. Mendoza himself introduced the merino sheep, the basis of an incipient woollen industry which, incidentally, earned a sinister reputation for coercion and ill-treatment of Indian labourers in its *obrajes*. Of the spread of cattle, the price of beef in the Mexico market is eloquent evidence: in 1538, 17 maravedis the *arrelde* of 4 lb.; in 1540, 10 maravedis; in 1542, 4 maravedis. The price was fixed at the last figure by municipal

ordinance, and penalties exacted for selling cheaper; for the city *regidores* were almost all ranch owners. With beef so cheap, no Spaniard needed to starve or work for wages, and great men who owned cattle ranges could keep open house and feed large bands of retainers. Except in the neighbourhood of big cities, the beef was comparatively unprofitable; the chief value of the beast lay in their hides, for saddlery and for protective clothing, and in tallow, for making candles and for coating the hulls of ships as protection against marine borers. When hides and tallow had been removed, the carcasses of slaughtered cattle were often left to rot where they lay. In such conditions production, to be profitable, must be on a very large scale, and grazing grants went chiefly to wealthy settlers who could afford to stock them. The grants were loosely defined, initially in terms of radius from a fixed spot, and little attempt was made to survey boundaries. Naturally the beasts invaded the unfenced *milpas* of the Indian villages, despite repeated legislation, and despite the efforts of colonial courts to protect Indian property. In the valley of Toluca, forty-five miles north-east of Mexico, for instance, cattle were introduced in 1535. Twenty years later the valley carried 150,000 head. The Franciscans of Toluca reported that the local Indians, except for a few employed as shepherds or cow-hands, had fled to the hills, and the price of maize had gone up from $\frac{1}{2}$ *real* the *fanega* to 4 *reales*. Some single owners, they said, had over 15,000 head, and government could do nothing because of the influence of ranchers and cattle-owning officials and of the secular clergy in Mexico City who lived on the tithes. Toluca was one example among hundreds. The spread of stock ranching was undoubtedly a major cause of depopulation in central New Spain, and over-grazing the principal cause of the soil erosion which has plagued Mexico ever since. In Peru, horned cattle were of less importance, but sheep, and pigs rooting in the potato patches, created similar conditions in many parts of the highlands. In both areas stock ranching, often combined with abuses of the *encomienda* system, tended to the destruction of Indian communal farming and to the establishment of European-owned *latifundia*.

First *encomiendas* and then stock ranches produced the accumulations of capital which made possible the large-scale mining of precious metals. Gold and silver mining in the early days of the conquest was a simple affair of prospecting and washing in likely streams; but about the middle of the sixteenth century immensely productive silver veins were discovered at Zacatecas and Guanajuato in New Spain, and at Potosí – richest of all – in what is now Bolivia. Most mining was initially of a modest scale and crude nature, financed by wealthy *encomenderos* and local merchants and landowners. It was carried on by *encomienda* Indians, using their traditional techniques, and working for those fortunate enough to be able to claim or secure their services. But exploitation soon became more varied

and complex. Mercury, which produced better results than the lead at first tried in refining silver ore, came into use and brought a surge in output from the mid 1500s. Installations entailing the outlay of considerable capital appeared, as at Potosí. These developments produced lawless and exciting silver rushes, and special courts were hastily set up in the mining camps to register claims and settle disputes. The Crown claimed a share, usually one-fifth, of all metal produced. A considerable body of officials was employed to weigh, test and stamp the silver ingots as they issued from the mines and to take out the royal share which, after authorised disbursements, was shipped to Spain, along with the larger quantities of bullion sent home by individuals, either as an investment, or in payment for European goods imported. Although some Spaniards, and more Indians, worked small claims by hand, the typical silver miner was a capitalist on a fairly large scale. Mining and ranching were complementary, since the miners needed steady supplies of beef, leather and tallow candles, and often the same people were concerned in both.

Mining, like ranching, bore hardly on the Indian population but in a different way. It created a great demand for pick-and-shovel labour. In the Mexican mines, the best of which lay in the desert or semi-desert regions of the north, inhabited only by hostile nomads, wage labour – African, Indian, *mestizo*, mulatto – was coming to predominate by the end of the century. At Potosí, to begin with, skilled Indians from outside the clan communities operated mines under contract for Spaniards, using indigenous tributary labour. But as shafts became deeper, less productive and more expensive such arrangements disappeared. Prohibitive transport costs ruled out the employment of African slaves and most of the work came to be done by Indians who, though paid, were recruited by coercion under the *mita* system, with, from the 1570s, workers from a whole series of Andean communities being obliged to serve in rotation in silver and mercury mining. Many Indians fled to avoid service, thereby crippling the indigenous economy. Over-work and under-feeding, but even more the epidemics which spread in crowded conditions, took a heavy toll of those in the mines; and epidemic disease was carried by the mine-workers back to their villages. Those Indians who accepted European ways, more or less, who acquired European crafts or plied Indian crafts near European centres, were effectively protected against ill-treatment (though not, of course, against disease) and could become modestly wealthy; so could the headmen who organised the labour supply; but Indians who stayed in their villages and tried to carry on in the old way had the worst of both worlds. In general, as the provinces grew rich and prosperous, so they grew less populous. In New Spain the Indian population dropped dramatically from something like 27,000,000 around 1500 to perhaps only

1,000,000 a century later, and that of Peru from about 7,000,000 to little over half a million between 1500 and 1620.

Both New Spain and Peru produced silver; it was their chief value in Spanish estimation. But Peru produced much more silver than New Spain, and beyond bare subsistence needs produced little else. The conquerors of Peru remained a small Spanish community, with a good deal of specie at their disposal and with an avid desire for consumer goods. New Spain, on the other hand, where Spanish and Indian communities had begun to mingle and fuse, was industrious and productive and short of specie owing to the efficiency of silver-tax collection and the large private remittances made to Spain, especially by the Cortés estate. It became profitable to ship goods of Spanish origin down the coast to Peru to supplement the costly trickle of imports across the Isthmus. With these trans-shipments went Mexican products (mules, sugar, preserved fruit), European-type wares made in New Spain by Spanish or Indian craftsmen, and an interesting assortment of Indian wares – polished obsidian mirrors, lacquered gourds, feather-work tapestry and the like. The Cortés estate invested considerable sums in this trade, shipping chiefly its own products. In the 1560s the conquest of the Philippines by Miguel López de Legazpi[1] – who was a land-owner and had been an official in Mexico – led to the establishment of a regular trade across the Pacific between Manila and Acapulco; and as a result great quantities of silk and other Chinese goods were similarly trans-shipped to Peru. It was this development of the trade, and the resulting leak of Peruvian silver into the specie-hungry Orient, which led the Crown to intervene and eventually in the seventeenth century to prohibit trade between the viceroyalties altogether.

A close regulation of trade had always been characteristic of Spanish imperial policy, and the subordination of Pacific to Atlantic considerations was entirely consistent. The trans-Atlantic shipping of Spain was concentrated in the port of Seville, and from 1543 was a monopoly in the hands of the *consulado* – the merchant guild – of that city. The *consulado* was a powerful body, well able to defend its privileged position and to abuse it. By an elaborate series of fictions, merchant houses all over Spain became members by proxy of the Seville guild, consigning their cargoes in the names of resident Seville merchants. Even foreign commercial firms, German, English and Flemish, adopted this device, so that the genuine members of the guild performed a vast commission business which later came to overshadow their own legitimate trade. Seville was the bottleneck of the Indies trade, a bottle-neck still further narrowed by the minute regulation which the Crown enforced through its agency, the Casa de

Cf. below, p. 678.

Contratación. The Casa collected the duties on the Indies trade and
received and transmitted the revenue shipped from America. It contained
within itself a court for the settlement of commercial disputes, a hydrogra-
phical department, and a school of navigation. It inspected and licensed
emigrants, to prevent emigration of Jews and heretics; ships, to ensure
their seaworthiness; and navigators, to ensure their competence. Some
commodities might only be exported with special licence – firearms and
negro slaves, for example. In general, the licensing regulations were an
irritating hindrance to legitimate commerce, and a challenge to the
ingenuity of law-breakers.

Sixteenth-century Spain was primarily a producer of raw materials,
exporting wine, olive oil and wool in return for foreign wares; but it
possessed industries also, and in some types of manufacture – silk, fine
woollens, gloves, leathers, arms and cutlery – Spanish craftsmen not only
supplied a large part of the domestic market, but furnished a surplus for
export to the Indies. The increase, between 1530 and 1594, in the
population of such towns as Burgos, Segovia and Toledo, suggests that
industrial activity was growing also; but it certainly did not grow fast
enough to keep pace with the growth of demand in the Indies. There was a
rigidity in the economic structure of Spain which made a rapid expansion
of the export trade extremely difficult. Among the causes of the rigidity
were the contempt widely felt for humdrum employment, and the result-
ing shortage of labour; the exclusive conservatism of municipal corpor-
ations and craft guilds; the privileges accorded to transhumant sheep-
raising, which damaged arable interests and led to shortages of food; the
large and growing proportion of people in unproductive occupations,
especially the church and the profession of arms; heavy taxation, which
impeded the accumulation of capital; constant European war and the
ravages inflicted by plague on an undernourished population at the end of
the sixteenth century. These factors particularly affected Castile, the
kingdom most directly concerned; for the flourishing commercial centres
of Catalonia and Aragon were committed to their Mediterranean connec-
tions and had no great interest in the Indies trade. *Mutatis mutandis*, many
of these factors operated also in the Indies, making Spaniards there more
dependent than they need have been upon native labour and imported
European goods. The whole of the Indies was an eager market for cloth,
weapons, tools and hardware of all sorts, books, paper, wine, oil and
slaves. Except for oil and wine – largely produced by *morisco* labour –
Spanish merchants could not export these goods in sufficient quantities or
at competitive prices. The Indies trade, therefore, was a standing temp-
tation to slavers, smugglers and illicit traders, mostly Portuguese in the
first half of the century, but later from northern Europe also. John
Hawkins, who organised three large-scale voyages to the Caribbean with

slaves and textiles in the 1560s, was the forerunner of many others, Flemish, French (Norman and Breton in particular), English and Dutch. Meanwhile silver flowed out illicitly across the Pacific – in amounts soon rumoured to be ten times the official maximum – and equally illicitly down from Potosí to the outlet of the Río de la Plata.

The large proportion of silver in their cargoes made homeward-bound Indies ships a temptation also to marauders – privateers, chiefly French during the incessant wars between France and Spain, but later Dutch and English too; and pirates at all times. About the middle of the century it became necessary to send the bullion shipments under convoy. From 1564 two armed fleets were despatched from Spain every year, one to Mexico and the Gulf ports, the other to the isthmus of Panama. Both fleets wintered in America and reassembled at Havana the following spring for the return voyage. Each fleet consisted of from twenty to sixty sail, usually escorted by from two to six warships. It was forbidden for any ship to cross the Atlantic except in one of these convoys, unless special licence had been granted. The system, including the supporting cruiser squadrons based at Santo Domingo and Cartagena, and the formidable defences at Havana, was planned by one of the greatest sea commanders of the time, Pedro Menéndez de Avilés, and on the whole it proved effective. Odd stragglers were lost in most years, but on no occasion in the sixteenth century was a whole sailing intercepted and defeated, and regular sailings were maintained for a century and a half. The successes of Drake in 1585–6 were achieved against coastal towns, and their results were purely temporary. On the other hand, the cost of the convoys was borne by a heavy and complicated series of duties on all goods carried to and from America; so the safety of the fleets was dearly bought, and the whole arrangement added greatly both to the delays of obtaining goods in the colonies and to the price of the goods when they eventually arrived.

Throughout most of the sixteenth century the Portuguese were among the chief illicit traders to the Spanish Caribbean settlements. They possessed, in the Azores, a useful port of call, and in West Africa a series of slave barracoons, maintained by agreement with coastal rulers. African slaves had been employed from the early years of the century in the sugar production of Hispaniola, and later on the Main and in coastal Mexico. Traders licensed by the Spanish government to supply slaves to the colonies had to buy their slaves from Portuguese middlemen; and Portuguese slavers often ran cargoes across on their own account, either as subcontractors or as smugglers. A transatlantic slave trade in Portuguese hands, therefore, was already established when, in the latter part of the century, a demand for slaves grew up in Portugal's own American possessions in Brazil. For the first thirty or forty years after Cabral's landfall the Portuguese, fully occupied in the east, made no use of Brazil

except as a source of wild brazil-wood for the dyeing industry, and as a dumping ground for transported criminals – *degredados*. The coast was visited as much by French wood-cutters as by Portuguese; and it was partly the desire to assert the rights of prior occupation against the French which impelled the Portuguese government in the 1530s to take active steps to promote settlement there. In 1530 an armed fleet under Martim Affonso de Souza was sent to prospect the 3,000 miles of coast from Maranhão to Rio Grande do Sul, to eject French settlers and seize French ships. De Souza spent two years on the coast and founded the first two permanent settlements in Brazil: São Vicente, near modern Santos, and Pernambuco, the centre of the dyewood region, where the French had attempted to establish a fort. In 1533 John III divided the Brazilian coast – and, in theory, the hinterland to the 'line of demarcation' – into twelve captaincies which were granted to proprietary landlords known as *donatários*. The *donatários* were required to settle and defend their territories at their own expense, receiving in return extensive administrative, judicial and fiscal powers over such colonists as they could induce to emigrate: powers such as many Spanish *conquistadores* had sought and been denied. The Portuguese, however, could furnish neither the men nor the capital for the rapid settlement of Brazil by a system of purely private enterprise. Neither gold nor diamonds were found until late in the seventeenth century, and pioneering in the tropics held little attraction for men who could, if they chose, engage in the commerce of the East. Four of the original grants were never taken up; four succumbed to Indian attacks; two only – Pernambuco and São Vicente – had begun by mid-century to yield a profit to their holders; and French interlopers continued to visit the coast. In 1549 John III, recognising the weakness of the captaincy system for the purposes of settlement and defence, took the first steps towards the establishment of royal government: the proclamation of Bahía as the capital of Brazil and the appointment of Tomé de Souza as captain-general. De Souza already had considerable experience of administration and war in Africa and the East. The formidable expedition which accompanied him to his post included, besides soldiers, settlers and officials, six Jesuits under Manoel de Nóbrega; members of this newly founded order were to play a prominent part in the growth of the Portuguese empire in the Old World and the New, and their missions among the primitive Tupi-Guarani peoples were to set a characteristic stamp upon the whole history of interior Brazil. Nóbrega remained in Brazil until his death in 1570; his ministry overlapped and influenced the government of that great soldier and administrator, Mem de Sá, captain-general from 1557 to 1572. Mem de Sá was perhaps the most effective and forceful of the founders of colonial Brazil. One of his major tasks was the eviction of the French from central Brazil, and the foundation (in 1567) of

the settlement of Rio de Janeiro near the site of the principal French encampment. He was the first captain-general to devise and enforce a consistent native policy, intended to discipline the warlike, to convert the heathen, to protect those who submitted against enslavement and ill-treatment; in particular, to abolish cannibalism and to induce the Indians to settle in agricultural communities. These were among the aims of Spanish policy also; but the primitive forest Indians of Brazil were less promising neophytes than the settled peoples of central Mexico or highland Peru, and Portuguese policy was correspondingly less ambitious and less effective.

Portuguese society in Brazil was markedly rural in character. There were no Mexicos or Limas, and most of the 'towns' were mere hamlets. Apart from subsistence crops – native cassava and introduced maize – and the dyewood which grew wild, the principal product was sugar, intro-duced from Madeira. The soil of the country's north-east littoral was rich and virgin, the climate ideal and access to eager markets in Europe comparatively easy. Sugar was best grown, in Brazil as elsewhere, on relatively large estates, with slave labour. The Brazilian Indians proved unsuitable as estate labour, but the Portuguese were better placed than other Europeans for obtaining slaves from West Africa, and by the end of Mem De Sá's government the pattern of 'great house', slave quarters and cane fields was established. By 1580 there were some sixty sugar mills in operation. The population amounted to roughly 20,000 Portuguese, 18,000 settled Indians and 14,000 negro slaves. This thin scattering of people was confined to a narrow coastal fringe, the hinterland as yet untouched; but eight of the old captaincies possessed established settle-ments, and Bahia, the capital, had some pretensions to the title of city. Brazil was in this state, still almost empty of people but with a few scattered Portuguese settlements achieving a modest prosperity, when in 1580 the King-Cardinal Henry, last of the rulers of the house of Aviz, died leaving a vacant throne. Philip II, by a mixture of bargaining, bribery, persuasion and force, asserted his own claim to succeed; and Portugal and the Portuguese possessions came under the rule of a Spanish king.

Already before 1580 the Spaniards had succeeded the French as the principal competitors for the control of Brazil. In 1536 Pedro de Mendoza had built his shortlived fort at Buenos Aires, the first move in a long rivalry in the Río de la Plata area, and his people founded Asunción in 1537. Orellana in 1541–2 had crossed the Andes from Peru, made his astonishing canoe passage down the Amazon, and established the Spanish claim to the Amazon valley west of the line of demarcation. Both at the northern and the southern extremeties of the line, where it was thought to cross Brazil, Spanish activities continued to alarm the government in Lisbon. In practice, however, the Portuguese settlements on the north-east

coast were remote from these activities; and even the events of 1580 had little immediate effect upon Brazil. In a *carta patente*, issued at Lisbon on 12 November 1582, Philip II undertook to leave both the commerce and the administration of the Portuguese colonies in Portuguese hands, and in general he kept his promise. Portugal and its possessions were simply one more addition to a heterogeneous collection of separate kingdoms, united only by allegiance to the Habsburg king. It was only by slow degrees, and incompletely, that the influence of Spanish bureaucracy permeated the easy-going society of Portuguese Brazil.

By 1580, then, Philip II was ruler of all the European settlements so far established in the New World. The achievement of Iberian conquest and government was an impressive one. The Crown had been well served, not only by soldiers and settlers, but by administrators, lawyers and ecclesiastics. Enduring kingdoms had been created; and a great body of statute law had been enacted, governing the relations between conquerors and conquered, and the authority of the Crown and the royal courts over them all. Much of this legislation – the New Laws, for example, and the *Ordenanzas sobre Descubrimientos* of 1573 – was a model of enlightenment for its time. That it was imperfectly enforced is true, and not surprising. Most sixteenth-century legislation was imperfectly enforced; but, at least, the generous provisions of courts, staffed by salaried professional judges who might be expected to be reasonably impartial, ensured that the royal decrees were more than mere pious exhortations. Not only in conquest, settlement, legislation, government, but also in the abstract field of political theory, the Spanish achievement in the New World left enduring and memorable traces. Francisco de Vitoria's *Relectiones de Indis* contain the first systematic discussion of the right and wrongs of conquest, the beginning of modern international law. Juan Ginés de Sepúlveda wrote the first reasoned treatise justifying the subjugation and tutelage of primitive by more civilised peoples. Las Casas, in his refutations of Sepúlveda, wrote not only indignant catalogues of crimes, not only distinguished contributions to humanitarian literature, but serious and cogent defences of human liberty and constitutional government. It is a measure of the selfconfidence of sixteenth-century Spain, and of Spanish respect for liberty and law, that in the days of Charles V – a great king and a great autocrat – treatises denouncing the excesses of the *conquistadores* (who, after all, were in a sense the agents of the Crown), treatises criticising the whole enterprise of the Indies, treatises even in some circumstances advocating tyrannicide, could be circulated and read without scandal. Conversely, the treatises describing and justifying the government of the Indies – many of them, like Juan de Matienzo's *Gobierno del Perú*, written by colonial officials – are for the most part temperate and well informed. This, however, was little comfort to those Amerindians

exposed, as were no other non-European peoples, to the policies of invaders unchecked by the restraints of climate, disease or powerful states. Some, like the Arawaks of the Greater Antilles, were wiped out. Others were dramatically reduced in numbers. The enslavement of Indians was forbidden in the Caribbean islands as early as 1500 and on the mainland by the 1540s. Nevertheless it continued, as it did in Brazil, along with other forms of oppression. It was the fate of alleged cannibals and those who resisted or rebelled against Spanish rule. And without the profits of slaving soldiers and settlers were unwilling to serve on such unappealing frontiers as those of northern Mexico and southern Chile.

In many areas, most notably Mexico, one-time Indian land passed into European hands. The structure and ethnic mix of indigenous society was irrevocably changed by the arrival of the white man and his African slaves, formidable oppressors, like their masters, of the Indians they despised. The first Africans reached the Caribbean in 1502. Even before the conquest of Mexico they were so numerous that there was alarm at the likelihood of revolt, and on the Peruvian coast they outnumbered Spaniards by the end of the century. Whole areas of the Iberian Americas thus consisted of isolated colonial townships or estates set amongst huge numbers of non-European subjects of uncertain loyalty if not outright hostility. Nor were these the only weaknesses. One of the legacies of the Spanish conquest was that breed of dashing and ambitious young men sired by the victors from aristocratic Indian mistresses and so alienated from Spanish rule as to plot revolt in Peru in 1567 or to engage in bouts of drunken violence. Meanwhile there was emerging, as officials anxiously observed in the mid 1500s, a generation of American-born Spaniards (creoles) who neither knew the king nor wished to know him, and who were conscious of the low esteem in which they were held by their fellows from the peninsula.

Nevertheless by the standards of the time Spanish imperial government was efficient and effective. Much of the Indian population became, nominally at least, Christian. The wilder ambitions of the settlers were restrained. The wealth of the Americas was at the disposal of the Spanish Crown and its rivals were excluded from the mainland of the Spanish Indies. In part this reflects the fact that the main areas of Spanish settlement were too remote and inaccessible to be reached by casual incursions. In part it reflects the nature of Spanish government, enmeshed in checks and balances. Viceroys, often innovators, faced conservative and legalistic *audiencias*. These in turn were restrained by the viceroys, and both were weakened by the state's prudent separation of the imperial treasuries from the rest of the administration. Besides which the king could deploy that formidable instrument of the royal will, the imperial church, over which his control was, as he proclaimed, 'absolute'. And

when all else failed the Inquisition (introduced into Peru in 1570 and Mexico the year after) was blatantly used, as in the homeland, for political ends. But perhaps nothing ensured the longevity of Spanish imperial rule more than the degree to which wealthy and powerful creoles could, in one way and another, modify the policies of the mother country to suit their tastes.

Imperialism, however, lays burdens, both economic and political, upon the homeland of the conquerors, and its rewards are often illusory. Many Spaniards – *conquistadores*, settlers and officials – made fortunes in the Indies which they could hardly have dreamed of in Spain; but the steady drift overseas of men of courage and ability was a serious loss to Spain. The silver of the Indies, the most valued prize of empire, which paid the armies of Italy and Flanders, in the end created more problems than it solved. The defence of the fleets carrying it became a major and costly objective of Spanish policy and their capture a prime ambition of opponents. But Spain's economy was not ruined by inflation caused by the influx of American silver. Prices had been rising, as elsewhere in Europe, before its arrival as the result of the pressure of a growing population on limited resources in food and manufactures. And much of the silver imported – transmitted to bankers, merchants and paymasters elsewhere – was hardly in the country long enough to exert an inflationary pressure. Nevertheless the possession of such resources allowed the purchase outside Spain of whatever was needed, eventually sealing the fate of much of the country's own agriculture and industry.

Of specie remittances to Spain, between a quarter and a third were Crown revenue under various heads of taxation. Until about the middle of Philip II's reign this Indies revenue was not a major item in the total receipts of the Crown, not more than about 10 per cent in most years. In the last two decades of the sixteenth century it mounted rapidly, and in one year – 1585 – reached 25 per cent. Moreover, the income which private individuals drew from the Indies helped to increase the yield of taxation in Spain. The Indies revenue, therefore, though much smaller than most contemporaries, Spanish and foreign, supposed, was important enough to affect royal policy considerably, and to produce effects more insidious than monetary inflation alone. A nation cannot live, or fancy itself to be living, by the efforts of subjects overseas, without some demoralisation of its public life at home. As early as 1524 the Cortes of Castile had protested against the proposal to sell the Moluccas to Portugal, on the ground that the possession of the islands secured to the emperor a steady income, independent of taxation. The deputies were prepared to relinquish their only political bargaining counter – the control of financial supply – in order to relieve the immediate burden of taxes. According to the economic theories of the time the argument was reasonable; but it augured ill for the

constitutional future of Spain. The possession of the Indies encouraged Philip II more and more to ignore unwelcome advice from the Cortes, from the nobility and from public opinion generally, in Castile. The possession of the Indies also helped to make permanent the preponderance of Castile – the most warlike, the least productive, in many ways the most backward of the Iberian kingdoms – over the rest of the peninsula. Finally, exaggerated estimates of the value of the Indies intensified the fear and hostility which Habsburg policy provoked in many parts of Europe, while encouraging and indeed obliging the Spanish Crown to pursue an international policy which it could not afford to maintain, and which was to lead it to impoverishment and defeat. But the country was still far from being ruined, notwithstanding the enormous burdens piled on it. Inquiries in 1575–80 revealed growing population and widespread prosperity. Spain continued to furnish redoubtable naval forces and many of its ports were still flourishing in the following century. But most ominously it was clear by the end of Philip's reign that the material benefits of empire were going to others, for whose enrichment the Spaniards were, 'like Indians', carrying the treasure of the New World to Europe.

EUROPE AND THE EAST

FIRST among Europeans to reach the East by sea were the Portu-
guese. Opening the new route round the Cape in 1498, they quickly
appreciated the opportunities of the vast maritime economy,
reaching from East Africa to the Pacific, they had now entered. By force,
blandishments and the adept exploitation of local rivalries they had
acquired, by the time Afonso de Albuquerque relinquished the office of
governor (1515), a string of posts reaching from the Persian Gulf to
Indonesia. The office of viceroy was instituted in what came to be termed
the 'State of India' and some of the familiar machinery of Portuguese
royal government was introduced. But with distances so great and the
resources of the Lusitanian monarchy so few the authority of the Crown
was never more than feeble. Meanwhile private ambitions flourished and
private wealth grew. In 1580 the king had the burdens of government and
private merchants most of the profit from trade, a sure sign that overseas
enterprise had failed to fulfil the hopes which members of the royal family
of Portugal had put in it since the early part of the fifteenth century.

Portuguese interest in the East stemmed from hopes of a godly blow
against infidels and a quest for land and riches in the eastern Atlantic and
West Africa in which a vital, but by no means unique, role had been
played by Prince Henry 'the Navigator'. As governor of the military Order
of Christ, the prince sent out his first explorers of the African coast in
1421. About thirty-five years later the pope granted the Order of Christ
spiritual jurisdiction and freedom to trade 'as far as the Indians'. From
that time, if not before, the Portuguese were probably concerned with the
idea of a sea route to India. They did not find it swiftly: not till 1488 did a
Portuguese vessel pass east of the Cape of Good Hope. Shortly afterwards
King John II seems to have received news of ports of western India and
south-eastern Africa. It now became almost certain that men could reach
Asia by sea. But no Portuguese tried to do so until 1497 when Vasco da
Gama set out on his first major voyage, in command of a royal fleet.

The initial Portuguese ventures in Asia were directed by the Crown.
Manuel I (1495–1521), under whom da Gama sailed, followed the same
policy as John II (1481–95) and regarded Portuguese activity in West
Africa and beyond as the business of royal officials. With a few exceptions,
the king alone sent expeditions to the East: he financed them from royal
revenues or loans and tried to take the lion's share of profits on trade

between Asia and Europe. He also appointed the commanders of ex-
peditions, gave them detailed orders and laid down who might go with
them. The law always forbade departures for Asia without royal licence,
and few Portuguese of the sixteenth century began life in the East as
private adventurers. They generally went there as military or civil servants
of the Crown, or else as clergy: they were supposedly paid by the king and
sometimes highly conscious of their dignity as his servants. At the outset
these arrangements gave added force to Portuguese actions in Asia. Above
all, they put control of policy into royal hands.

   In next to no time it was Manuel's intention to divert into Portuguese
hands the immensely valuable spice trade which, very largely under
Muslim control, flowed westwards through the Red Sea and the Persian
Gulf. With this rerouted along the ways opened by da Gama Muslims
would be ruined, the Christian cause well and profitably served and the
king of Portugal enriched. Nor were such projects fantasy. They
demanded not territorial conquests, which the Portuguese, whatever they
might threaten, were in no position to undertake, but the control of a
number of strategic ports and maritime routes. In their attempt to fulfil
these ambitions the Portuguese profited from friction between Shia and
Sunni Muslims and between Hindus and Muslims, and from the absence
on the crucial west coast of India of any overall political authority.
Instead they encountered there a series of principalities, Muslim as far
south as Goa, Hindu beyond, all without naval forces but all acutely
aware of the revenues accruing from commerce. Hence it was that they
were received in Hindu Cochin when rebuffed by its rival, Hindu Calicut.
More important still, neither in the Arabian Sea, the Indian Ocean, nor
the waters east of Sri Lanka was there any dominant power and
particularly no dominant naval power. To the major potentates of the
Indian subcontinent the sea was distant and unimportant. The Chinese,
who could well have asserted some authority, had, after brief curiosity
about the outside world in the fifteenth century, relapsed into their normal
xenophobic isolation. The Ottoman Turks were at this very time fully
committed to expansion in the Mediterranean and eastern Europe. The
Egyptian Mamluks, once unequalled as soldiers – but without timber
never of any consequence at sea – were in irrevocable decline. In these
circumstances Portuguese fleets soon wielded great power in parts of the
Indian Ocean, though they could not maintain it in many places at the
same time.

   The nature of eastern commerce also helped the Portuguese. Valuable
products were grown or manufactured in a limited number of places. They
were marketed in a commerce which, because of the distances involved
and the restrictions imposed on the movement of shipping by seasonal
(monsoon) winds, was channelled through a number of rich, and as it

soon transpired, highly vulnerable entrepôts, most notably Malacca, Aden and Ormuz. Pepper vines, for instance, grew principally in Malabar, northern and western Sumatra, Kedah and western Java. About 1500 it seems that pepper from the last three places went mostly to China, Siam, Pegu and Bengal. It follows that Malabar then virtually controlled the highly profitable exports of pepper to Europe and the Near East. For the purposes of international trade, ginger was another product found primarily in Malabar, while the best cinnamon came from the nearby island of Sri Lanka. The so-called finer spices – cloves, nutmegs and mace – throve in an even more restricted area. Cloves grew only in the Moluccas, and nutmeg and mace, which come from the same plant, could be gathered only in and near the tiny Banda Islands, a little to the south of the Moluccas. To reach India, most goods from the Malay Archipelago, together with Chinese exports like brocades, porcelains and musk, had to pass through the Malacca or Sunda Straits, both of which are narrow and easy to blockade. At the end of the fifteenth century a large part of the westward bound trade of China and the Archipelago apparently passed through the port of Malacca. Chinese goods came to India in this way because of the difficulties and expense of transport by land and also because of the power of Malacca and its convenience as a place to pick up exports from the Archipelago, India or the Levant. Further west, trade between India and the Near East went mainly through the narrow waters at the mouth of the Red Sea or the Persian Gulf.

In 1500 much overseas commerce with the countries of Asia lay in the hands of communities of foreign merchants. Arabs predominated in trade to places on the shores of the Arabian Sea. In East Africa they ruled independent cities; on the west coast of India they had strong settlements and influence from Malabar to Gujarat. Foreign traders were also powerful at Malacca, where Javanese, Tamils and Gujaratis all had important colonies. In some ports most foreigners opposed the Portuguese, who won influence only with the support of a local ruler: this was what happened in Malabar. In Malacca the situation was partly reversed: some merchants were friendly, others – and the ruler – were hostile.

These things – the production of certain goods only in small areas, the narrowness of various important channels of trade and the amity of some Asian rulers and merchants – aided the Portuguese considerably. Without such assistance they could never have intervened successfully in eastern trade, for too many markets were specialised and easily upset, or else under a Muslim ascendancy. Given this assistance and Portuguese sea power as well, the position was at least promising. The Portuguese soon found that local rivalries helped as well as embarrassed them. More important, they quickly saw that their fleets could not merely hamper eastern commerce, but seek to deflect it from its course. Where prized

crops grew only in small regions, they might think of monopolising them; where trade ran in narrow channels, they might stop it or levy a toll on it. Conditions encouraged the Portuguese to make bold plans. The danger was that they would aim too high. Men were soon at hand with schemes for making new conquests or seizing rich trades: the government was continually tempted to let its ambition outrun its resources. Kings and governors had to bear in mind the limitations of Portuguese power; fortune sometimes gave the Portuguese more chances than they could profitably use.

Despite these advantages, the Portuguese did not at once leap into power in the East, nor yet into prominence. Vasco da Gama's expedition was essentially a reconnaissance. He commanded a small fleet of four vessels and about 170 men; he had instructions to deliver letters of credence to the princes that he met, and he may have been told to inform each one that was important and a Christian that the king of Portugal 'was his brother and friend'. He left Lisbon in July 1497. Eight months later he reached Mozambique, one of the East African ports under Arab rule. There he had an unfriendly reception which was repeated farther up the coast at Mombasa, another Arab settlement. Only at Malindi, a rival city of Mombasa, was he well entertained. Thence he crossed the Arabian Sea to Malabar where he anchored off Calicut on 20 May 1498. Gama stayed over three months in Calicut, trying to establish cordial relations with the ruler and to get a cargo of local products. He had little success. Lack of suitable goods for exchange and the antagonism of the powerful colony of Arab merchants prevented him from getting much cargo: the Arabs even helped to cause strained relations between Gama and the samuri,[1] the ruler of Calicut. The Portuguese left Calicut in August 1498 and got back to their own country in June 1499. Besides samples of Eastern goods, they brought back the impression that the Hindu inhabitants of Malabar were Christians of an heretical type.

In the light of this news Manuel I thought that he could seek the samuri's help against the Muslims, to which end he prepared a second expedition. It was far larger than the first, for it comprised thirteen vessels and 1,500 men. The commander, Pedro Alvares Cabral, was ordered to establish trading relations and a business agency – a factory – at Calicut, and to land priests for the better instruction of the ruler and people in the Christian faith. After loading a return cargo, Cabral was to explain the attitude of the Portuguese to the Muslims and to give warning that he was bound to attack Muslim vessels on the high seas; he was to go on to urge the samuri to drive the Arabs from Calicut, 'because in this he would

---

1 The title samuri derived from Malayalam *tamaturi* or *tamuri*, meaning sea king. The normal Portuguese version of the title is Samorim.

comply with his duty as a Christian king, if he would expel them from his country and not allow them to come there nor to trade in it'. Cabral left Lisbon in March 1500 and reached Calicut in September of the same year, but with only six ships. He soon found that the samuri was not a Christian: with this discovery went the collapse of Portuguese hopes of receiving particularly favourable treatment. Cabral got permission to establish a factory, but the Arabs hampered its trade. An attempt to check this obstruction led to a riot in which forty-eight Portuguese were killed and the factory destroyed. Cabral retaliated by burning some vessels and bombarding the town. He then went to Cochin, a rival town of Calicut farther down the coast, whither he had previously been invited. There he set up a factory and obtained a small cargo of ginger and pepper. In January 1501 he sailed for home.

King Manuel's plans had failed. The effort to win an ally in India had come to nothing because it had been based on a false assumption. The attempt to trade had won small success, chiefly owing to the opposition of the Arabs, who had no wish to see their prosperity impaired by their religious adversaries. From 1501 to 1505 the Portuguese in the East were mainly employed in trying to establish themselves at Cochin and Canna-nore, in the teeth of resistance from Arab merchants and their Hindu allies at Calicut. During this time, there was little Portuguese expansion farther afield.

In 1502 Manuel sent Vasco da Gama to India to exact reparation for the losses suffered in 1500. Gama confirmed the friendship with Cochin and the enmity with Calicut. In many ways this was unavoidable. Once Calicut became unsafe for the Portuguese, it was natural that they should accept an invitation to Cochin and try to win the rajah's good will. Friendship with the Portuguese tended to strengthen Cochin and thereby roused the hostility of Calicut. Consequently, Cochin had to expect an attack by the samuri after Gama left for Portugal. The rajah of Cochin was ill placed to meet this attack because his state was the weaker power: the only way he could save himself was by calling in Portuguese help. The upshot was that Cochin came to depend on the support of the Portuguese: between 1503 and 1505 it declined in status from a friend to a subordinate. By the beginning of 1505 Cochin had become a dependent whose defence preoccupied commanders of Portuguese fleets and placed a financial burden on the Portuguese government. Yet the Portuguese had to protect Cochin, for it was their only foothold in the East. If Gama's voyage led to difficulties, it also pointed to their solution. The weakness of Cochin enabled him to fix the prices at which he bought pepper there. In 1504 the Crown went a step further: the commander of the fleet going to India in that year was ordered to prevent any vessel leaving Cochin while the Portuguese fleet was in harbour and so to attempt a monopoly. It was

possible to turn the dependence of Cochin to some profit. At the same time, the enmity of the samuri was not very terrible. Gama's second voyage confirmed the superiority of a few well-gunned Portuguese vessels over a mass of lightly armed Malabari craft. Above all, Gama's second expedition gave the Portuguese their first large cargo of spices. It made it possible to think that, if the success could be repeated, the money gained from sales of spices in Europe could finance an ambitious scheme of expansion in the East, carried out by the Portuguese alone.

Even before Gama's return the Crown had not confined its attention to Malabar. In 1502 and 1503 Manuel sent small fleets to cruise at the mouth of the Red Sea, with orders to attack Muslim vessels. In 1505 he adopted a much bolder policy. In March of that year he sent Dom Francisco de Almeida to be his viceroy and permanent representative in the East. Almeida had far-reaching instructions. First, he was to establish forts at Kilwa and Anjadiva. Kilwa was a hostile Muslim city on the East African coast and Anjadiva an island off the west coast of India where Portuguese vessels usually called for water on their way to and from the East. Next, Almeida was to start other forts at Cannanore and Cochin.[1] His third task was to sail to the mouth of the Red Sea and begin a fortress in a suitable place, 'so that no more spices can pass to the land of the Soldam [Egypt] and all those of India may lose the notion of being able to trade with anyone but us, and also because it is near Prester John there'. Returning from the Red Sea to Malabar, Almeida was to commence a fort at Quilon (Kollam), a pepper-exporting centre which lay to the south of Cochin; the Portuguese had visited it for the first time in 1503. The viceroy was to supervise the loading of cargoes of pepper for Portugal and to deal with Calicut, making peace only if the rajah of Cochin approved and the samuri consented to expel the 'Mecca Muslims', that is, the Arabs. If possible, Almeida was to send vessels to Ormuz and up the Indian coast to Dabul, Chaul and the Gujarat where the Portuguese were to attack all Muslim shipping; the Muslim rulers of these places might obtain peace only if they agreed to pay tribute and let Portuguese vessels enter their ports to buy supplies for the fortresses. Finally, the king urged the viceroy to send expeditions of discovery to Sri Lanka, Pegu, Malacca and other places. To carry out these projects Almeida was to have a fleet of a dozen medium-sized vessels and 1,500 men-at-arms.

Almeida's instructions marked the beginning of an ambitious and rapid expansion which lasted in full force until Manuel's death in 1521 and gradually petered out in the following decade. In 1505 the Portuguese started an attempt to stifle or check a good part of the seaborne trade of the Muslims in the East: simultaneously, they sought to monopolise the

---

1 The Portuguese had already built a wooden fort at Cochin in 1503.

carriage of pepper and ginger to Europe and to increase their power in various regions between East Africa and the Moluccas.

Almeida could not carry out all the plans thrust upon him, but he did achieve a good deal. In 1505 he founded fortresses at Kilwa, Mombasa, Anjadiva, Cannanore and Cochin. In 1506 a fleet which was meant to attack Muslim shipping got off course and paid the first Portuguese visit to Sri Lanka. In the same year the samuri received a crushing defeat at sea and the Portuguese harried Muslim vessels off the Malabar Coast; in 1507 they carried the campaign north to Dabul and Chaul. In 1506, in response to a reminder from the king who was anxious to forestall a threatened Spanish approach from America, Almeida despatched men to Malacca, but they failed to get beyond the Coromandel Coast. The viceroy did not establish a fort at the mouth of the Red Sea, but that did not matter. In 1506 the king sent out a fleet to capture the Muslim fort on the island of Sokotra, which he had now chosen as the site for a Portuguese base near the Red Sea, and the task was accomplished in 1507. Most of the vessels went to India, but a small squadron remained to blockade the entrance of the Red Sea. Its commander, Afonso de Albuquerque, disobeyed his orders and went to Ormuz (at the mouth of the Persian Gulf) which he made tributary to the king of Portugal in October 1507. He began to build a fort there but could not complete it because of local resistance and the desertion of some Portuguese. Meanwhile, other Portuguese expeditions had started forts at Sofala, the southernmost port in East Africa, in 1505, and at Mozambique in 1507.

All this made up considerable and varied activity, but Almeida was soon to reap a whirlwind. Before 1505 Portuguese attacks on Muslims were confined mostly to vessels which plied between Malabar and the Red Sea, and Portuguese successes had been the temporary and partial achievements of visiting fleets. From the time Almeida reached India, Portuguese attacks became more generalised and effective. Muslim states now began to stiffen their attitude to the newcomers. For some time there had been talk of efforts by the samuri to make an alliance with Egypt and Gujarat, and for some time there had been rumours of an Egyptian fleet coming to annihilate the Portuguese in India. With the growth of Portuguese activities between 1505 and 1507 both the alliance and the fleet became a reality. Towards the end of 1507 an Egyptian fleet reached Diu, in Gujarat. In March the following year the Egyptians and Gujaratis caught a Portuguese fleet at Chaul and defeated it. The reverse was serious. The Portuguese had already run into other difficulties. Attacks provoked by the Muslim ruler of Goa had partly caused the abandonment of Anjadiva in 1506. In the same year there was a rising against the Portuguese at Sofala; another occurred at Cannanore in 1507. Luckily for the Portuguese, the Muslims did not pursue their victory at Chaul and sail

south to attack Cochin. The Portuguese had time to regather strength, and in February 1509 the viceroy defeated the hostile fleets at Diu. The battle gave the Portuguese temporary naval supremacy in the Arabian Sea.

A few months later Afonso de Albuquerque became governor of the Portuguese in India, retaining authority until his death in December 1515. When he took office he found the Portuguese feeble on land and strong but misguided at sea. Some fortresses were badly sited, others hampered by local politics, nor had the Portuguese always used their fleets wisely. Albuquerque soon changed matters. A vigorous leader, he built on the power conferred by the battle of Diu. When he died he left behind the beginnings of a maritime empire, with good naval bases, squadrons to command trade routes and a fairly consistent policy towards Asian merchants. Albuquerque impressed his ideas on many aspects of Portuguese activities in the East. He scored such notable triumphs that a contemporary wrote: 'Mohammed is concerned and cannot go farther and flees as much as he can ... and the truth is that Mohammed will be destroyed and destroyed he cannot help but be.'

Albuquerque was one of that handful of men of outstanding ability who ensured the establishment of a Portuguese empire. He was tireless, unscrupulous and ingenious, enforcing his will brutally and often vindictively. But when he wished he could hold loyalties by his affability and personal bravery. He was an adept pragmatist who recruited ideas and talents wherever he could. Local dancing girls, war-elephants and mercenaries were all enlisted in Portuguese service and, though his most celebrated exploits were undertaken on royal instructions, the capture of Goa was suggested to him by the Hindu military adventurer Timoja. But above all he realised that the greatest riches were to be reaped in the East by participating in local (i.e. 'country') trades, not in the carriage of goods from Asia to Europe.

Almeida towards the end of his tenure of office had, like some of his compatriots established in the footholds on the Malabar coast, reached the conclusion that the best prospects for Portugal lay not in conquests but in absorption into the inter-Asian commercial network. Albuquerque, however, like his royal master saw little merit in dependence on the uncertain goodwill of local rulers. His plan, and that of the Crown, was for Portugal to seize those entrepôts which would give her control of the entire traffic of the Indian Ocean. The capture of Aden, Ormuz, Diu, Malacca and (later) Massawa was projected. The natives would be overawed and local potentates brought to understand that the Portuguese were in the East to stay. From fortified bases Portuguese vessels could sail out and act against their opponents. Albuquerque was anxious to prevent a second sally into the Arabian Sea by the Egyptian fleet, which he considered the hope and comfort of the enemies of the Portuguese in

India. Once the fortresses were built and the Portuguese position in India secure, the way would lie open for an advance up the Red Sea and an attack on Jiddah and, perhaps, on Mecca as well.

Albuquerque's plan involved great military exertions and heavy expenses. To meet the latter he hoped to resolve the old crusading dilemma about trade with the infidels. Commerce was as essential to the Portuguese government in Asia as it had been to the kingdom of Jerusalem. But it was impossible to trade only with Hindus, as Manuel I suggested. 'The Hindus and these native Christians', wrote Albuquerque, with some exaggeration, 'have little capital to destroy the trade and companies of the Moors quickly, for the Moors are rich men with much capital and they trade in a big way and with a large number of vessels.' Trade in the East meant doing some business with Muslims whose commerce was too vast and deep-rooted to be annihilated by the Portuguese. Albuquerque tried to answer this problem by crushing part of Muslim trade and regulating much of what remained. The fortresses he wished to build were not to be mere naval bases. They would lie at important centres of trade whose domination, together with that of Malacca, was to make the Portuguese controllers of some of the chief commerce of Asia. All trade to the Red Sea was to end, but it might continue with other places under licence. In addition, Albuquerque planned to enlarge the king's trade in the East.

In his first year of power Albuquerque seized Goa which he intended to make the central base of the Portuguese in Asia. Malacca followed in 1511. In the same year the Portuguese abandoned the fort at Sokotra: Albuquerque considered the island unsuitable for any useful purpose. In 1513 the governor attacked Aden without success, but his subsequent entrance into the Red Sea was said to have made a strong impression in the East. His attempts to get a fortress at Diu by negotiation failed, but he did manage to end the war with Calicut. In 1513 a new samuri, who had poisoned his predecessor at Albuquerque's instigation, granted the Portuguese a site for a fortress at Calicut and the right of pre-emption on all pepper. This reconciliation, however, combined with the various monopolies now claimed for Goa, ensured the hostility of the Mapilla Muslims of the Malabar coast with whom the Portuguese had previously dealt and turned them into formidable maritime opponents. In 1515 Albuquerque revisited Ormuz where he put Portuguese authority on a firm footing. He planned to go to the Red Sea in 1516, but was prevented by his dismissal and death. He had established his country's power from Malaya to the Persian Gulf. By 1515 the Portuguese had considerable political authority on the west coast of India and near the cities of Malacca and Ormuz. They had forts in key positions, and their fleets had a strong influence on the course of trade. On the other hand, he failed to make the Portuguese

enterprise financially self-supporting and continually complained of shortages of men, money and materials. Yet the king's trade certainly advanced while he was governor.

Albuquerque was not above error. He probably overestimated the wealth of the Malay Archipelago, and his policy in the Far East may have encouraged too many of his countrymen to go there. He gave trade a yet more important place in Portuguese affairs and may thereby have caused men to think less of war with Muslims. He may also have laid too much stress on the need for forts which Almeida had thought both costly and unnecessary. 'The greater number of fortresses you hold', the viceroy had written to the king, 'the weaker will be your power. Let all your force be on the sea, for if we should not be powerful at sea everything will at once be against us.' The truth seems to be that Almeida was obsessed by the disaster that would follow a loss of sea power. Albuquerque looked to bases to enable fleets to act more effectively. He may have hoped for too much from the fortresses but he was generally careful to adjust his policies to the needs and capacity of the few thousand men and few dozen ships that represented Portugal in the East. Despite mistakes, he vastly improved the Portuguese position in Asia. After his death his successors spent much time in trying to consolidate the gains – political and commercial – that he had made.

While Albuquerque was governor the King's trade and administration in Asia became more organised. By 1515 royal trade had already fallen into a routine. The Crown claimed a monopoly of certain items of Asian commerce. The India Ordinances of 1520 defined them as pepper, ginger, cinnamon, cloves, nutmeg, mace, lac, silk and crude borax. No one – Christian, Muslim, Hindu or other – was to trade in these goods without royal permission. But except in limited areas under direct Portuguese control, most notably on the west coast of India, such a monopoly could not be enforced. Systematic blockade was beyond Portugal's feeble naval resources and not in any case to the taste of many of the Crown's major officers. Even as early as 1508 spices were moving freely to the Red Sea in vessels from Atjeh (Sumatra), sailing on routes outside the range of Portuguese patrols. Thereafter the Portuguese failed, except momentarily, to close the Red Sea where the vital port of Aden fell to the Ottomans in 1538. They were similarly unable to close the Sunda Strait, which left open a major route between the Indian Ocean and China and Japan. Nor was blockade always politically feasible. The Persian Gulf could hardly be shut if the Shah was to be enrolled as an ally against the Turks. The commerce of Muslim Gujaratis could not be restricted as long as Portugal was dependent on them for the cotton textiles essential to her East African and Indonesian trades. Moreover, the Crown's officers in the East, little exercised by the grand strategies dreamed up in Lisbon, were only too

happy to permit (for a suitable reward) supposedly prohibited trades – like that with the Red Sea, openly accepted from the late 1530s – or to participate in them. And the kings themselves, to raise money, to pay their servants or to reward or placate the influential, licensed the breach of monopolies. Hence in the course of the sixteenth century the royal monopoly handled at best only about 10 per cent of the pepper exported from Malabar and of the cloves shipped from the Moluccas.

The ideal was very different. The Portuguese, so they claimed, were lords of the sea. Vessels other than their own could sail only with their permission and those trading with the enemies of Portugal could be seized on sight. Freedom of the seas, a royal apologist explained, was restricted to the waters of Christian Europe, where the principles of Roman law prevailed. Hindus and Muslims were outside its provisions just as they were outside the laws of Christ. Nor could they assert any right to sail in eastern waters since before the arrival of the Portuguese they had neither claimed nor enjoyed any title over these seas. But irrespective of such convenient erudition the kings of Portugal were not prepared to admit competitors in regions which their subjects had reached at such a cost in men, money and ships. They could, therefore, control, tax and direct all seaborne commerce in the Indian Ocean – experience having soon shown to even the most sanguine that such ambitions could not be realised to the east of Indonesia.

A royal monopoly of trade with Asia was established in 1505–6, with the import of spices, drugs and dyes and the export of the commodities needed for their purchase defined as matters for the Crown alone. The entire trade was handled by the newly created India House in Lisbon which also, until the mid sixteenth century, despatched the royal spices to the king's factor in Antwerp, the sole market for their sale in the North. In the heyday of the trade, spice, which meant chiefly pepper, was reaching Lisbon at the rate of anything from 1,600 to 3,500 tonnes a year, and half the revenues of John III came from the Asian and African trades. In exchange Portugal exported copper, coral, quicksilver and above all bullion, since Europe had little else to offer which the East either needed or could afford.

Commerce with the East was conducted by an annual fleet of five or six vessels, the leviathans of the day. Some were royal and some were private, fitted out under government supervision, sailing a round trip lasting at least eighteen months – the longest and most arduous passage regularly attempted by European sailing craft before the nineteenth century. Such for a time were the rewards (90 per cent net and more) and attractions of monopoly that the Crown sought to extend its scope. The import of horses from Persia and Arabia to western India became a royal preserve. The trades from Goa to Malacca and from Diu to East Africa were declared

Portuguese monopolies. There was a shortlived royal monopoly of Moluccan cloves, and by the mid 1500s the immensely valuable voyage from Goa via Macao to Nagasaki was limited to an annual ship whose commander was appointed by the king.

At the same time a rudimentary royal administration developed in Asia. Men serving there had their names entered on *matricula* rolls, together with the date of their arrival and the rate of pay they were entitled to. If a soldier were fined or an official's accounts found out of order, a note was inserted in the registers, so that the government might retain any money still due to him. Men as a rule had credit balances, for the government soon fell behind in the payment of its servants in the East. Arrears of pay could press hard on a Portuguese man-at-arms, for the Crown seems usually to have given him neither free clothes, weapons nor accommodation. He often had to buy his weapons, but if he purchased them from the government he could have the cost deducted from his pay. If his pay was heavily in arrears, he virtually gave nothing for his weapons.

When men were not paid, one of five things tended to happen. A man could sell his pay claim, at a discount, to someone with ready cash. Though illegal, this was always being done. From quite early in the sixteenth century people bought up soldiers' pay and used their own or others' influence to get themselves paid in full by the government. Alternatively, a soldier could try to find a powerful patron to protect him. Portuguese soldiers in the East were not grouped in regular companies or battalions, but were merely attached or attached themselves to individual captains. During the monsoon rains *fidalgos* would keep open house to attract the retainers who could ensure their authority. In times of war captains would attempt to attract the best men to their service. Third, if he could not find a patron, a soldier could become a beggar. Or, fourth, he could sell his weapons. And, finally, he could desert and become an adventurer. Of these five things all but the second – attachment to a patron – were illegal or dangerous to Portuguese power. To check such weaknesses, to alleviate the usual shortage of European females in most overseas settlements and to provide a loyal imperial population, Albuquerque encouraged the marriage of Portuguese rank and file to converted Hindu and Muslim women. The happy couple were then rewarded, as Roman veterans had once been, with a grant of land, or the man was established in a trade or skilled occupation. The policy was not new, having already been tried with limited success in West Africa. Nor had it anything to do with racial equality. The brides, it was urged, were more or less white; their husbands according to some influential voices, mere trash. In Malacca there were only thirty-eight such couples in 1525, but in Goa far more, and on the whole miscegenation gave Portugal a tenacious colonial population she would otherwise have lacked.

Albuquerque tried to reform the administration. He tightened the system of accounting and acted vigorously against private trade, but never managed to stamp out corruption. After his death it grew worse, while methods of government became more elaborate in an effort to check it. Representatives of the Crown never found it easy to control men scattered here and there on the coasts and islands of Asia. Officials at outposts were particularly prone to disobedience and sometimes disregarded the governor's orders. Each fortress had its captain or governor who often ruled the fort and the adjacent town. He directed affairs through two or three types of officials. Military and naval officers kept discipline in the garrison and led warlike expeditions; the factor and his underlings carried on the king's trade, collected taxes and disbursed money to cover expenses.

The structure of indigenous society and government was almost everywhere left unchanged. Notwithstanding repeated royal and ecclesiastical pronouncements on Portugal's divinely appointed mission to overthrow infidels and spread Christianity, and notwithstanding the constant Portuguese denigration of the martial abilities of most Asians, the creation and survival of the 'State of India' were heavily dependent on local peoples, some converted to Christianity, the majority not. In Goa especially the Portuguese employed the labour system they found and the existing machinery of revenue collection and administration. Use of Asian seamen in the royal ships was being urged as early as 1505, and Muslims provided more and more of the crews of Portuguese vessels. And just as the Spaniards were to do in the Americas, the Portuguese made extensive use of indigenous military skills and resources. Goa was taken and held with the aid of forty Hindu captains and their troops, and in the ensuing years Goan and Malabar infantry under their own officers served the Portuguese by the thousand anywhere from Aden to Indonesia.

Portuguese society in the East was minutely graded according to race, colour, occupation, rank and parentage. At the bottom were the slaves, Asian and African. At the top were the Portuguese born in the East of Portuguese parents, and at the very apex those Portuguese of noble blood born in Portugal itself. In a society obsessed with rank and status and the respect and privileges they were expected to confer, friction and disorder were endemic. Each fortress of the *Estado* had a Portuguese judge (*ouvidor*) to deal with crime among his countrymen: his bailiff and peons arrested offenders. Gentlemen (*fidalgos*), knights, judges, doctors of law or medicine could not be arrested either in Portugal or the East unless they had committed a crime for which the penalty was death. In other cases they could only be made to give a bond to restrict their movements: in the East this generally meant a form of house arrest. Fortress judges had complete jurisdiction over slaves and ordinary soldiers: other people could

appeal to the governor in India in criminal cases. Civil suits could be carried to the governor when they concerned large sums of money. At first, the chief justice in India (*ouvidor-geral da India*) disposed of these appeals; not till 1544 did the Crown set up a high court (*Relação*) and chancery for India.

In Goa and Cochin Portuguese settlers soon obtained the right to elect municipal councils; other communities eventually gained the same privilege. In the second half of the century these councils (*senados da Camara*) occasionally acquired considerable influence. They watched over local trade and public works, including hospitals. The state recognised a responsibility towards its sick servants: in nearly every fortress it started and financed, but did not always administer, a hospital for Portuguese. Private charity supplemented this care. By 1520 Portuguese Asia had its first House of Mercy (Casa da Misericordia); half a century later it had nearly twenty scattered among important colonies from China to Ormuz. Run by brotherhoods of affluent and literate men and supported by gifts and legacies, Houses of Mercy aided the needy, ran some royal hospitals, and founded others of their own. They also kept an eye on the possessions of Portuguese who died. Strictly, it was the job of a royal official (*provedor das fazendas dos defuntos*) to sequester and then sell such goods. The price they fetched was supposed to be credited to the dead man's heirs in Portugal or elsewhere, with allowances to pay off his debts and reward the *provedor* for his services. The vigilance of Houses of Mercy helped to check fraud and loss. In the early days the state itself undertook work of charity: it distributed alms to 'poor Christians of the country and the children of necessitous Portuguese'.

Portuguese Asia had no regular civil service, with a neat hierarchy and ingrained respect for routine. The king granted office as a mark of favour: men obtained it on his judgment of their merits, as a reward for past efforts or as a recognition of promise for the future. They were appointed as individuals rather than as people taking normal steps in a *cursus honorum*. Their triumphs and failures in the East were primarily personal. Portuguese administration in Asia stressed the individual rather than the system. Its co-ordination was weak and it lacked *esprit de corps*. Fortresses were often troubled by disputes between officials. Such quarrels spelt danger in the years just after Albuquerque's death. He left his successors two immediate legacies, but the Portuguese could attain neither without discipline and resolute effort. One was the desire for a fortress at Aden and an advance up the Red Sea, the other an interest in expansion in the Far East. In 1516 the first seemed important. A new Egyptian fleet had assembled: though in the end it achieved nothing, it appeared threatening for a time. The Portuguese did not do much better. Two of their governors

led futile expeditions into the Red Sea in 1517 and 1520. Small Portuguese fleets sailed to blockade the entrance to the Red Sea in 1516 and 1518: the first never reached its destination, the second did little.

The Portuguese had more success in the Far East. The years from 1512 to 1520 were the heyday of their expansion in south-east Asia. Albuquerque had hoped that trade there would help finance wars west of Sri Lanka. After he conquered Malacca he took steps to revive its commerce. Lesser men backed his efforts vigorously: vessels soon left Malacca to trade with Bengal, Pegu, Sumatra, Kedah, Java, the Moluccas, the Bandas, Pahang, Patani, Siam and China. In 1519 the Portuguese even tried to find a mythical island of gold, said to lie south-west of Sumatra. Most of these Portuguese voyagers were fairly peaceful, but they sometimes attacked Muslim shipping. News or rumours of this habit won them a bad reception in Bengal in 1518 and in Pegu in 1521. Moreover, as a result of their policies or conquests, Muslim traders rerouted their commerce, stimulating the rise of such new and competing markets as Johore and Atjeh.

The expansion may have been too swift: it was certainly hard to govern. There were complaints of overstocked markets and a fall in the price of goods that the Portuguese wished to sell. Just as serious was the cry that most profits from trade were going to private men. Once or twice, Crown and governors made feeble attempts to assert the royal monopoly of trade in spices in the Malay Archipelago, but they dared not act strongly for fear of ruining merchants at Malacca. Military dangers also confronted the Portuguese in that city: in 1513 they had to beat off an attack by a large Javanese fleet from Japara, and from 1512 to 1526 they were frequently harassed by followers of the ex-sultan of Malacca. Malay plots, and deaths and dissensions among Portuguese officials, added other trouble. After 1520 misfortunes multiplied and Portuguese expansion came gradually to a halt. It received a big check from the growth of Spanish interest in the Spice Islands – the Moluccas. Spain claimed that the line of demarcation fixed by the Treaty of Tordesillas ran right round the world, with the Moluccas falling in the area allotted to herself. Avoiding an open challenge to Portuguese authority, her kings did not send vessels to Asia by the Cape route but preferred to look for a strait which would lead through the New World to the eastern seas. From the days of Columbus men had sought this passage without success. In 1518 Manuel learned that the king of Castile, soon to be the Emperor Charles V, was preparing a fleet which was to go to the Spice Islands by the yet undiscovered westward route under the command of Ferdinand Magellan. The Portuguese government took alarm. Magellan was a Portuguese who had recently entered Spanish service: he had spent some years in the East and been present at the capture of Malacca in 1511. If he failed to

find a new route, he might go by the old one which he had already used. Thus the king took up the challenge from Spain. At the same time he showed much ambition to increase his power in Asia where he was very aggressive in the last years of his reign. Between 1519 and 1521 he ordered seven new fortresses to be built in the East: China, the Moluccas, Sumatra, the Maldives and Madagascar were to have one each, as were the north Indian ports of Chaul and Diu. Two fortresses – those in China and the Moluccas – were clearly intended as bastions against Spanish encroachment. Magellan's voyage has already been described;[1] here we may note that a Portuguese expedition, arriving at Tidore after the Spanish vessels had left, seized the men left behind and confiscated their goods. In June 1522 the Portuguese began to build a fortress at Ternate, another island in the Moluccas.

The Spaniards had failed to hold their own in the Spice Islands, but the Portuguese feared that new Spanish expeditions would sail to the East. In 1524 representatives from both sides met between Badajoz and Elvas to decide the questions of the possession and ownership of the Moluccas; the discussions soon turned into wrangles and failed to settle either matter. Anticipating this conclusion, the new king of Portugal, John III, gave revealing orders to Vasco da Gama who sailed for India in April 1524 to become viceroy. Ever since he had ascended the throne in 1521, John III had adopted a more cautious policy than Manuel I, and his wariness grew in face of the continued danger from Spain. The viceroy received orders to demolish four fortresses in India, Sri Lanka and Sumatra, but was told to build one at Sunda, that is, in western Java. These orders are a sign of the financial state of the Portuguese enterprise in the East. It is doubtful if the Crown's annual receipts from the sale of cloves, nutmegs and mace in Europe before 1524 ever approached, at most, one quarter of the money obtained from sales of pepper at Lisbon and Antwerp. True, royal agents sold the finer spices in Asia, but so they sold pepper. Despite the spread of Portuguese activities in south-east Asia from 1511 to 1520, it is likely that the financial basis of Portuguese power in the East still lay where Gama had put it in 1502 – on pepper.

The importance of pepper apparently accounted for the instruction to build a fort at Sunda – a pepper-producing area which the Spaniards might well visit – at a time when other fortresses were to be given up. In 1525 the king probably sent the governor orders which again stressed the importance of Sunda. The Crown was as keen as ever to prevent competition for supplies of pepper, but now seems to have been ready to give up its open monopoly of the finer spices of the Moluccas. The orders of 1525 were drafted in the knowledge that another Castilian fleet was

---

1 Above, p. 631.

about to leave for the East. It sailed in July 1525, but only one of its seven vessels reached the Moluccas – the flagship, which arrived off the island of Geilolo in October 1526. The crew of this one vessel, reinforced from the New World in 1528 and helped by the sultan of Tidore, caused much trouble until it capitulated to the Portuguese in October 1529. Five months previously the emperor had sacrificed his claims in the treaty of Zaragoza.[1]

Meanwhile, the Portuguese had suffered defeats in China and near Malacca. In 1521 the Chinese broke off relations with the Portuguese; in the following year they repulsed a small fleet whose commander had come from Portugal with orders to start a fortress near Canton. In 1521 the Portuguese failed to capture Atjeh[2] and Bintan: the first was the capital of a rising sultanate in North Sumatra, the second the island stronghold of the ex-sultan of Malacca, lying south-east of the Singapore Strait. The Portuguese founded a fort at Pasai, in North Sumatra, in 1521, but abandoned it in 1524. In the next year Malays from Bintan besieged Malacca. Not till 1526 did the situation in Malayan waters improve, with the ejection of the ex-sultan of Malacca from Bintan. But Atjeh was now a threat to the Portuguese at Malacca, while three attempts to found a fortress at Sundra misfired between 1526 and 1529.

West of Sri Lanka the chief Portuguese troubles were revolts in Ormuz and wars with the Gujarat and on the Malabar Coast. Plans for fortresses in the Maldives and Madagascar had soon collapsed; elsewhere, the fort at Colombo was given up in 1524, after six years' occupation; the fort at Calicut met the same fate in 1525. As a crowning evil, 1527 was a year of bitter disputes over the succession to the governorship. Yet the 1520s were not wholly bleak. Afonso Mexia, the financial superintendent of Portuguese India from 1524 to 1531, improved methods of administration, and Lopo Vaz de Sampayo, unchallenged governor from 1527 to 1529, built up a strong navy. Between 1523 and 1528 the Portuguese managed to send four fleets to blockade the entrance to the Red Sea. They also gained success in war against the naval forces of Diu, culminating in a crushing defeat of the Gujaratis in 1529.

By that time the Portuguese in the East had passed out of their age of gold. As an enterprise of state, Portuguese Asia had begun to contract: the vision of its rulers had narrowed. In a long governorship of nine years (1529–38) Nuño da Cunha fixed most of his attention on the west coast of India, where he won small gains at heavy cost. He entangled the Portuguese more deeply in local affairs and his policy was less co-ordinated than Albuquerque's. Yet he awoke no sense of great decline: if

1 Cf. above, p. 632.
2 Often written as Achin on English maps.

the age of bronze had arrived, some people still mistook it for gold. Cunha sailed for India in 1528. Three thousand men-at-arms went with him: never before, said the chronicler Castanheda, had such a brilliant company gone to Asia under the Portuguese flag. He reached India in 1529 and soon began vigorous war on the Malabar Coast. In 1531 he started a fortress at Chaliyam, six miles from Calicut. At first, he did not neglect the Red Sea: fleets sailed to blockade its entrance in every year from 1531 to 1534. He had orders to build a fortress at Diu, to seal off its now flourishing spice trade, a task which preoccupied him for most of his term of office. In 1531 he led to Diu the most powerful armada the Portuguese had ever gathered in India: it is said to have mustered over a hundred vessels with 8,000 men, 3,000 of them Portuguese. This force failed to do more than bombard the city and harass the nearby coast. The Portuguese again raided the coast of Gujarat in 1532 and 1533. The sultanate was then in sore straits, for it was at war with both the Portuguese and the newly established Mogul empire of northern India. In 1533 the sultan tried to buy off the Portuguese by giving them land for a fortress at Bassein, on the east side of the gulf of Cambay. Less than two years later Cunha pressed his advantage further and extorted a treaty which gave him a site for a fortress at Diu, at which all Gujarati ships entering or leaving the ports of the Gulf of Cambay were to call and pay their dues.

Disputes between the Gujaratis and Portuguese did not end after the Portuguese got their long-coveted foothold at Diu. Each side distrusted the other. In 1537 the sultan was killed in a scuffle with Portuguese in the harbour of Diu. Cunha then tried to support one of the two claimants to the throne. With the defeat of the governor's candidate by his rival, the Portuguese position at Diu became critical. A truce with the new sultan eased the tension for only a short time. In June 1538 the Gujaratis laid siege to Diu; during the past year the Portuguese had occupied the city as well as their fort. By August only the fort remained to them. Worse was to come. The Gujaratis had previously sought help from the Ottoman empire, which had conquered Egypt and Syria in 1516–17. The Turks, who had a strong navy, were ready to act, and on 4 September 1538 a large Turkish fleet anchored in the port of Diu. The peril of 1508 had revived. Powerful enemies had coalesced. The arrival of the Turks in India showed how mistakenly the Portuguese had followed out Albuquerque's plans. The great governor had insisted on fortresses at Aden and Diu, but he had put Aden first and he had stressed the need for naval operations in the Red Sea. In the 1530s Crown and governor were apparently obsessed with the idea of a fortress at Diu. They became blind to the importance of the Red Sea: between 1535 and 1538 Cunha did not send a single fleet there. In September 1538 it seemed that his neglect would reap a terrible reward.

Luckily for the Portuguese, dissensions among their enemies caused the departure of the Turkish fleet in November 1538. Diu still held out, and in 1539 a newly arrived Portuguese viceroy obtained peace with Gujarat. The Portuguese now turned their attention to the Red Sea where they planned to attack the Turkish fleet; they also hoped to capture Aden. An expedition did sail to the Red Sea in 1541; some of its members reached Suez, but they found the defences too strong for an assault on the beached galleys of the Turks. Some years later (1563–4) the Sultan proposed that Portugal should grant his subjects freedom of navigation in the Indian Ocean and the right to found trading posts in western India, for which they would pay the appropriate dues to the *Estado*. In exchange Portugal could establish factories in the Middle East and send merchantmen into the Red Sea. But, convinced that the Turks would put them out of business, the Portuguese rejected the offer.

There were troubles elsewhere. The concentration of resources on attempted conquests in the Red Sea and the failure of the Portuguese blockade of its waters allowed local Muslim traders from Malabar to send pepper in convoys of elusive small craft either to Gujarat or directly to the Red Sea, and to build up a vigorous overland commerce with Coromandel. Malacca passed through wars with Johore and Atjeh between 1534 and 1537, but survived them without much harm. In the Moluccas the Portuguese experienced worse troubles, especially while the avaricious Tristão de Ataíde was captain of the fortress at Ternate. During his time (1533–6) most of the islands of the Moluccas rose against the Portuguese, who were nearly driven out. Ataíde's successor, António Galvão, had to quell the rising. He did rather more besides. In the four years that he stayed in Ternate he so won the affection of the people that they are said to have called him the father of their country. In Bengal the Portuguese met with hostility in 1533: the ruler became friendly only when he was hard pressed by enemies. Despite disturbances in south-east Asia and India, private Portuguese commerce probably increased in many parts of the eastern seas during this decade. The state might suffer, but some private men prospered.

The great problem of Portuguese Asia was still finance. Though Albuquerque had meant to provide the government with ample revenue, he had never succeeded: some of his plans were never carried out, while others proved too sanguine. But at least he saw that the Estado da India must raise enough money to support itself. After his death the Portuguese government did not always give sufficient thought to this question. In the 1530s it spent heavily on fleets and armies which it used for unremunerative schemes, thus increasing its needs without attempting to satisfy them. Corruption among officials made matters worse. The kings of Portugal never received all their rightful Asian revenue in the sixteenth century and

they frequently paid in excess for goods and services. John III tried to check the misdeeds of his servants, but it was hard to control men who were far from Portugal and subject to strong temptations. Few reforms seem to have won permanent success and, since before 1520, tale-bearers said that abuses in Asia were getting worse. Consequently, the extra expenses of the 1530s forced the king to borrow large sums which he could ill repay. He got deeply into debt: in 1544 he owed nearly two million cruzados, an enormous sum. For the rest of the century poverty oppressed the Portuguese government in Asia and its weakness gradually became apparent to all. Until Cunha relinquished office the decline of Portuguese power in the East was more real than observed: thereafter, the government's severe shortage of money revealed the truth. Lack of men was also becoming acute. Desertion from the king's service seems to have grown after 1530: it was probably given a fillip by the outbreak of wars in Pegu and Siam, where a number of Portuguese served as mercenaries, and by the rich opportunities for trade and piracy now discovered in the Bay of Bengal. In addition, it may be fair to point to a spiritual decline. The Portuguese could still fight well, but they seem to have lost much of the zest of their early days in the East. Few now spoke of destroying Muhammad. In part, a less warlike attitude was natural as the Portuguese came to have more commercial and other contacts with the Muslims.

In the 1540s two governors tried to improve the financial position. Martin Afonso de Sousa (1542–5) gained money for the king by debasing the coinage at Goa and by sending Simão Botelho to reform the customs collection at Malacca. Outside Portuguese possessions, the governor meddled in the politics of Bijapur, the Indian state nearest Goa, to the profit of himself and the Crown. Sousa's successor was Dom João de Castro who hoped to cut down expenses. He failed to do so because of renewed war with Gujarat. Neither Sousa nor Castro found the answer to the financial difficulties of the Portuguese, and when Castro died in 1548 the king still had costly entanglements in India and large debts at home. In 1552 he owed nearly three million cruzados.

Two things probably saved the Portuguese enterprise in the East from accelerated decline. One was a spiritual revival; the other was the development of private Portuguese trade in Asia. Priests had always served with the Portuguese in the East. The Franciscans founded a convent at Goa in 1517, and in 1538 the city became the seat of a bishopric. In the early days the church ministered chiefly to Portuguese and their families; missionary work was not one of the main activities of a clergy who sometimes failed to maintain high standards of behaviour among *fidalgos* or themselves. This situation changed after Francis Xavier reached India in 1542. One of the first members of the Society of Jesus,

Xavier travelled about Asia for the next ten years until he died 'a poor and humble death, not unperplexed'[1] on an island off the coast of China. During his stay in the East Xavier gave the Portuguese a new ideal of proselytism to replace the dying ideas of religious war; he also taught them to accept a stricter religious discipline.

Xavier and his successors achieved much. As time passed the Jesuits and members of other orders kept a closer watch on the faith and morals of the Portuguese in Asia. In 1557–8 the creation of the archbishopric of Goa with suffragan sees at Cochin and Malacca gave some help in this task; more powerful aid came from the establishment of the Inquisition at Goa in 1560. The orders paid attention to education and built many churches. With the support of the secular power, particularly in the time of a devout viceroy like Dom Constantino de Bragança (1558–61), the Fathers made many converts among the Indians near Goa, and where persuasion failed bribes, force or discrimination usually worked. The state issued decrees which gave privileges to converts. Outside Portuguese possessions the religious won victories from Sokotra to Japan. Before 1542 few Portuguese priests in Asia showed much interest in their surroundings, but the Jesuits and other religious now learned Asian languages and made some study of Asian beliefs and doctrines. In some places they tried to convert the ruler, thinking that if he were won his subjects would follow him, or concentrated on members of the influential Hindu priestly caste. Elsewhere they laboured among humble people. Xavier himself showed special concern for the poor fishermen of the Cape Comorin Coast and baptised many of them. Other Jesuits carried on the work: in 1552 the Christians there were said to number 60,000 with thirty big churches. In Sri Lanka the young king of Kotte became a Christian in 1557. In 1579 Akbar, the greatest of the Mogul emperors, sent to ask for some learned priests. With high but mistaken hopes three Jesuits went to his court in 1580. Little could be done in Malaya and Sumatra, but the Dominicans began a mission at Solor, in the Lesser Sunda Islands, probably in 1562. In the Moluccas Christianity suffered several ups and downs, but, though driven from many places, it was still holding out in Amboina in 1580. In China the missionaries made little progress before 1583. Japan was the scene of greater achievement, notably in the island of Kyushu. By 1580 there were eighty-five Jesuit missionaries in Japan and it was reported that the number of converts ran to 150,000. Five-sixths of these Christians lived in Kyushu, mostly on the lands of lords who had turned Christian. By 1583 it was estimated that there were 600,000 Christian converts throughout Asia. But all too often, as with the work of missions elsewhere, converts understood little of the faith they now embraced,

---

1 J. Brodrick, *Saint Francis Xavier* (1952), p. 526.

whilst the Jesuits in particular, with the concessions they made to indigenous custom and belief – whether caste or (as in China) ancestor worship – appeared to many to be fostering a religion more oriental than Christian.

While Jesuits worked with missionary zeal, private Portuguese merchants developed a rich trade between Asian ports. This commerce flourished in the second half of the sixteenth century and in 1580 was probably more prosperous than ever before, accounting for 70 per cent of the value of Goa's trade. It was mostly handled by Eurasians (*mestiços*), descended from those Portuguese who had married or settled down with local women. It was particularly vigorous in Gujarat, Malabar, Coromandel and the Bay of Bengal, but extended (and was to survive) far beyond the bounds of the Estado, westwards into the Red Sea and eastwards into Siam and the countless islands of Indonesia. The Crown did not share in the success. It had never managed to control private trade in Asia: at most it got customs duties and frequently it got nothing. It had concentrated on the trade from Asia to Europe which expenses and indigenous competition made less profitable after 1550. In the 1570s the king even farmed out his monopoly of trade by sea between the two continents. Only one branch of private trade fell under strong royal influence – the Japan trade, which was perhaps the most profitable of all.

The Portuguese probably discovered Japan in 1543. Soon afterwards they began a trade between China and Japan which circumstances made lucrative for them. China forbade its subjects to go abroad and had, since 1480, closed its ports to Japanese. Yet she needed Japanese silver and Japan wanted Chinese silks. Smuggling could satisfy only part of these markets, leaving the Portuguese to supply the remainder at a high profit to themselves. The Portuguese strengthened their position in China after they obtained a permanent foothold at Macao in 1555. From that time their relations with the Chinese authorities gradually improved. In Japan the Portuguese made important trading contacts with Kyushu. After 1571 they sailed chiefly to the island's new port of Nagasaki; until 1590 the government of the town lay virtually in the hands of the Jesuits and the commanders of Portuguese voyages. By 1550 Portuguese commerce with Japan was already a royal monopoly. Every year the king or his viceroy in India allotted the trade to a captain-major of the voyage of China and Japan. Sometimes the Crown sold the privilege to make the journey: even if it did not do so, customs duties gave it a share of the large profits. Revenue from the voyage became a mainstay of the government, but could not prevent the decline of the Estado da India as a political force.

The new revenue was all the more needed because the Portuguese financial position had grown worse in Europe. The king of Portugal had relied mostly on Antwerp for loans, but its financiers were less able to lend

after the monetary crisis of 1557. Even before this occurred lack of money made Portuguese action in the East mainly defensive. In 1552 the Turks tried to capture Ormuz, but failed. In the next two years the Portuguese scored some success in two sea fights with the Turks in the Persian Gulf. But they did not counterattack in the Red Sea, as they had done after the first siege of Diu. Between 1554 and 1580 they were much occupied with petty wars and campaigns in Sri Lanka and on the west coast of India. Portuguese intervention in Sri Lanka developed rapidly after 1539. It started as an effort to protect the friendly king of Kotte; later it was influenced by the desire to spread the Christian faith. Wars and sieges punctuated the history of Portuguese relations with the Sinhalese and by 1580 the island was yet another expensive entanglement for the Portuguese government. War in India also increased the financial burdens of the Crown: among other things it led to the foundation of new forts at Daman, Mangalore, Honavar and Basrur.

In the Malay Archipelago the Portuguese suffered many attacks. Between 1550 and 1580 Malacca had to face five onslaughts: three of them were made by Atjeh, which was striving for dominance in Sumatra and the Malay Peninsula. In 1571 the home government tried to improve affairs by creating a separate governorship for Malacca: the holder of the post was probably meant to conquer Atjeh. Lack of resources caused the plan to fail. In the late 1570s there were naval combats between the Portuguese and the Achinese, especially near the Singapore Strait where the Portuguese inflicted three defeats on their enemies. But the danger was scotched, not killed. In the Moluccas continual fighting and disputes led the Portuguese to evacuate the fortress at Ternate in 1574, though they still maintained footholds in Tidore and Amboina. Spanish interest in the western Pacific was another threat to them in south-east Asia. In 1542 an expedition left Mexico to found a colony in the 'Western Isles', afterwards called the Philippines. It failed. Just over twenty years later, in 1564, another expedition, which comprised four vessels and 350 men, set out from the New World under the command of Miguel López de Legazpi. The Spaniards reached the Philippines in the following year and were favourably received. They founded a settlement at Cebu and then, very slowly, started to extend their power to other islands. The Portuguese tried to expel them in 1569, but were driven off. Two years later Legazpi occupied Manila, in Luzon. Unlike Portuguese outposts in the East, Spanish establishments in the Philippines were primarily colonies of settlement, though, under an ambitious governor in the late 1570s, Spaniards thought up a madcap scheme for the conquest of China. In the same period they also tried, without much success, to gain authority at Brunei. Despite these projects, the Philippines gradually settled down into the normal Spanish colonial system. An *audiencia* was established at

Manila in 1583. Any military danger to Portuguese possessions from the Philippines disappeared with the union of Portugal and Spain in 1580, news of which reached Goa in 1581. It raised no outcry there or at any other place in Asia. The Estado da India passed peacefully into the hands of Philip of Spain, who promised that his Portuguese and Spanish colonial dominions would remain separately organised.

Philip was now the ruler of an eastern empire largely geared to plunder and to the conduct of a commerce more exclusively devoted to luxuries than any other in which Europeans were engaged. It was at its zenith, in terms of the wealth enjoyed by private individuals, at the end of the sixteenth century, when it consisted of three distinct but interlocking economies. The most distant centred on Macao, where there were some 600 male householders of Portuguese birth or descent in a total multiracial population of about 20,000. The city's affluence derived from its mono-poly of the Sino-Japanese trade, rumoured to produce profits of 150 per cent at the least. To the south was Malacca, an established entrepôt of legendary wealth, from where, at profits said to reach 400 per cent, the Portuguese could sell spices to China and tax and plunder the commerce of the waters of Malaysia and Indonesia. On the western coast of the Indian subcontinent a string of fortresses and trading posts constituted the core of the State of India, while control of Ormuz allowed the Portuguese to trade to the Persian Gulf and the Middle East and to take what they could from indigenous shipping. The imperial capital was the fortified island of Goa, with the city of the same name containing some 60,000 people of assorted race and creed. It flourished as the focus of trade with Europe and as the entrepôt alike for the import of horses from Persia (Iran) and Arabia, and of gold and precious stones from Burma. Profits of 60 per cent, it was reported, were effortlessly made on currency transac-tions alone.

Yet the state was growing weaker. In essence it was a chain of fortresses and posts – fifty at least – stretching from East Africa to Indonesia. All were vulnerably sited on coasts. Worse still, they were usually inadequa-tely manned and maintained, were isolated among hostile neighbours, and required support and supply by sea. Not surprisingly the Estado was continually in debt and usually hard pressed if it had to equip a special expedition. It could not even disguise its predicament. The poorest soldiers could see what was happening and had favourite explanations for it. According to them, all evils reduced to two: the poverty of the government and the misconduct of officials. There was some truth in this assertion, but it did not completely account for the decline. As early as Albuquerque's time there was corruption and a shortage of money. At bottom, the strength of the state had never lain in a full treasury and a pure administration. It is more likely that, at the beginning of the sixteenth

century, Portuguese power in Asia rested on two bases: unity of purpose between the king and his servants, and the strength of the Portuguese fleet.

Unity was vital. The distance of India from Portugal not only made it hard for the king to control his subjects in the East: it made it almost impossible for him to compel their assistance for any long period. At the same time, *fidalgos* and officials often had high notions of their rights. Apart from legal privileges, they sometimes claimed the right to advise the king's military commanders. If a commander refused to heed the *fidalgos'* counsel, he might have to face their obstruction or even desertion. Most serious of all, *fidalgos*, knights and royal servants frequently thought they had a special title to the king's bounty. They tended to consider office in the East as a reward for past services. Consequently, there was always the chance that they would make the reward as large as possible, generally by interfering with trade or administration to the detriment of the king's revenue. Far away in Portugal the monarch could do little to check these misdeeds. Private men could severely hamper Portuguese government in the East; sometimes they might almost paralyse it. If the king wished to gain success in Asia, and if his government there was to flourish, private men had not only to accept his aims, but of their own free will help achieve them. In the time of Manuel I the Portuguese in the East seem to have had a broad unity of aim. On smaller matters, such as a plan for a battle or the division of spoils, they differed many times, but they generally agreed that they were in Asia to fight Muslims and seize their trade. On this large issue king, merchant, military leader and priest could all come to terms. In those days the general aim of Portuguese enterprise in the East could embrace selfish and unselfish desires at the same moment, with little conscious contradiction. In Asia it seemed that to profit from trade was to smite the Muslim, and that to smite the Muslim was the way to profit.

Two things gave this unity practical force in the reign of King Manuel. The first was the vigour of Portuguese life; the second was the king's direction of enterprise overseas. At the beginning of the sixteenth century the energy which the Portuguese showed in Asia and Africa was paralleled by a stir of activity at home. Manueline decoration, the dramas of Gil Vicente, notable experiments in poetry, the spread of classical studies and advances in nautical science, law and administration all date from this period. And in Asia the king's control reinforced action, for Manuel at least prevented his subjects from scattering their efforts disastrously. United in spirit and under one director, the Portuguese swept round the Eastern Seas between 1500 and 1520. However, by this latter date purpose had already started to weaken. Affairs in the East were more complex than the king had first assumed. Duty and interest did not coincide on every occasion. The Portuguese government in the East did not always profit when Muslims were killed: at the same time it needed profit, for it could

not live without it. Albuquerque tried to resolve this dilemma, but his success was limited and his methods opened the way to increased corruption. After his death the state's policy grew distracted and more doubtful; correspondingly, private men became less ready to accept the king's control. By 1540 the old balance of ideals and interests had almost completely disappeared. Thoughts of religious war were in the background: most priests and laymen had ceased to regard Portuguese enterprise in the East as a crusade, except in a remote sense. In a crisis Portuguese would generally still rally to defend the fortresses of their king: Portuguese possessions could still put up a tough defence when attacked. At other times private men worked chiefly for their own good. Deprived of their close support, the Portuguese government in the East declined. In the 1570s it could only defend its possessions and try, here and there, to snatch a small advantage. Though the Portuguese had kept their vigour, it was expressed in the second half of the sixteenth century in missionary activity and widespread private trade, while the state now took second place.

Thus by 1580 the Estado was weak, its usual shortage of manpower now aggravated as emigrants from the mother country were attracted to the opportunities of Brazil. Its resources, such as they were, were swallowed up in maritime struggles against the Ottoman Turks, Muscat, Malay and Malabar, while the chance to milk the indigenous economy of India was undermined by the growth of Mughal power and the consequent construction of a network of roads in the subcontinent, bringing a shift of trade from sea to land. Nevertheless its fleets still gave the Estado an influence and authority which survived until the arrival of the Dutch in the East in 1595. Even then the next 150 years saw the working out of the lesson the Portuguese had taught: that the greatest opportunities for wealth in Asia lay in the country trades, and for the exploitation of these seapower was vital.